

OFFICIAL



Australian Government
Department of Defence
Defence People Group

First Assistant Secretary
People Services
Department of Defence
R1-1-C009
PO Box 7902
CANBERRA BC ACT 2610

EC23-000372

Mr Jay Kopplemann
Executive Officer
Defence Honours and Awards Appeals Tribunal
Locked Bag 7765
CANBERRA BC ACT 2610

Dear Mr Kopplemann

**INQUIRY INTO RECOGNITION FOR SERVICE WITH RIFLE COMPANY
BUTTERWORTH**

Thank you for your letter of 24 November 2022 regarding additional documents and information requested by the Tribunal following the public hearing of 23 November 2022.

During the hearing of 23 November 2022, the Tribunal Chair identified a number of questions that Defence would be required to address, with a response to be provided by 31 January 2023. I committed to providing as fulsome a response as possible, while noting that it would be challenging to provide a comprehensive response in this timeframe given the additional work required, the availability of information, and the Defence reduced activity period that is designed to provide Defence personnel with respite.

Your letter of 24 November 2022 identified additional questions that were not requested during the hearing; namely, responses to preliminary questions issued by the Tribunal on 19 August and 18 October 2022. Defence had previously been advised, verbally and by email, that it would not be required to provide responses to these questions. The addition of these questions has imposed a significant additional workload above what was expected and committed to during the hearing of 23 November 2022. Nevertheless, Defence has made best efforts to respond to as many of these questions as possible.

This Defence submission provides responses to questions where information is available at this point in time. For some questions, responses have not been provided and instead an explanation has been included to identify whether further work is underway or that a response is not be able to be provided. Where the reason for no response or a partial response is that further work is underway, Defence will provide a further submission with these responses in due course. Alternatively, Defence representatives will be prepared to discuss response to these questions at a future hearing.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

This Defence submission comprises a number of enclosures (1 to 6 inclusive) addressing the following matters:

- Responses to assertions of fact made in individual and representative group submission to this inquiry.
- Analysis of Rifle Company Butterworth service by reference to the assertions of fact and the terms of the 1993 Cabinet endorsed definitions of warlike and non-warlike service, and the Ministerial 2018 endorsed definitions of warlike, non-warlike and peacetime service.
- Analysis of the reasons why service listed in the matrix submitted at Attachment F to Submission 65b from the Rifle Company Butterworth Review Group and Rifle Company Butterworth Veterans' Group, which has been recognised with the Australian Active Service Medal, materially differs from Rifle Company Butterworth service.
- Ministerial submissions proposing and seeking agreement to the 2018 updated nature of service definitions; the scaling back of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments in 1988; the 1989 change to the role and purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments; Senator Feeney's 2012 letter to the then Hon Bruce Billson MP; and any record of the discussion requested by then Minister Chester on 22 February 2019.
- The preliminary questions issued by the Tribunal on 19 August 2022 (your DHAAT/OUT/2022/485 refers).
- The supplementary questions asked of Defence by the Tribunal on 18 October 2022 (your DHAAT/OUT/2022/520 and my EC22-004607 of 16 November 2022 refer).

Enclosure 7 is a list of supporting attachments.

Defence notes the statement made by the Tribunal Chair at the 23 November 2022 inquiry hearing, "We don't think the New Zealand re-assessment aids the argument for warlike service", and the fact that none of the Tribunal's questions so far relate to the New Zealand Government's recent decision to extend eligibility for the New Zealand Operational Service Medal. The Terms of Reference for the inquiry detail the Tribunal is to specifically have regard to the New Zealand decision and to consider if this should bring about any change to Australian medallic recognition. Defence seeks clarity on the Tribunal's intent for the remainder of the inquiry and whether this aspect of the Terms of Reference will be considered in any future hearings.

OFFICIAL

My point of contact for this matter is the Director Honours and Awards, Mr Ian Heldon, on telephone [REDACTED] or email: [REDACTED]

Yours sincerely

Paul
ROBARDS 1

Digitally signed by Paul
ROBARDS 1
Date: 2023.01.31 20:24:42
+11'00'

Dr Paul Robards AM
Acting First Assistant Secretary People Services
Defence People Group

31 January 2023

Enclosures:

1. Assertions of Fact
2. Analysis of Rifle Company Butterworth Service
3. Analysis of Attachment F to Submission 65b
4. Provision of Specified Documents
5. Preliminary Questions of 19 August 2022
6. Supplementary Questions of 18 October 2022
7. List of supporting attachments

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 1 to EC23-000372

Assertions of fact

Background

1.1 The individual and representative group submissions to the inquiry make numerous assertions of fact about Rifle Company Butterworth service and seek to draw various conclusions from those assertions. The Tribunal provided identified a number of assertions relating to a number issues including but not limited to:

- DP1 status as a precondition to Rifle Company Butterworth deployment;
- The requirement to have a current will or to acknowledge a personal choice not to do so;
- The content of pre-deployment briefings;
- The content of arrival briefings;
- The content of periodic briefing updates during deployment;
- The application of summary military discipline processes while on deployment;
- The recording of disciplinary action taken by annotation of files with the terms “Whilst on War Service” or “WOWS”;
- The frequency of Quick Reaction Force duty on deployment;
- The occasions on which the Ground Defence Operations Centre was activated;
- The issue of live ammunition;
- The degree of weapon readiness beyond “Load”;
- Rules of Engagement;
- The nature and relevance of any internal training undertaken while on deployment;
- The lack of combined training with Malaysian Forces; and
- The nature and relevance of duties undertaken away from Air Base Butterworth.

1.2 The Tribunal asked Defence to advise of any assertion of fact that it says is incorrect and, in each such case, to indicate:

- Why Defence says the assertion is incorrect;
- What Defence says is the correct statement of fact; and
- Whether Defence requires evidence as to the asserted fact to be given under oath or affirmation and subject to questioning by Defence.

1.3 Defence notes the “Tribunal acknowledges that Defence will not be taken to have endorsed any conclusion sought to be drawn in a submission simply because it has not challenged an associated assertion of fact.”

OFFICIAL

Defence Response

1.4 Defence has reviewed the submissions and the list of assertions in the Tribunal's letter of 24 November 2022. With some limited exceptions discussed in the following paragraphs, Defence accepts that the contents of the submissions reflect the experiences of individual members of Rifle Company Butterworth during the period 1970 to 1989. Some submissions identify events or circumstances that are not detailed in available records. Defence does not necessarily say that these did not occur, instead that there are no records identified to confirm that they did.

1.5 Defence respects the service of all Rifle Company Butterworth veterans and their descriptions of their own experiences. Defence does not require any of the submitters to provide evidence under oath or affirmation nor to be subject to questioning by Defence, noting the Tribunal may wish to do so.

1.6 While Defence acknowledges the list of assertions, this does not necessarily mean that each assertion is relevant to medallic recognition or nature of service classifications.

1.7 Submission 116 from Mr Hannan describes a night ambush during a training exercise, where instead of receiving blank fire in return, they received live fire. Defence has not identified any evidence to confirm that this occurred.

1.8 Submission 121 from Mr Ellard describes flying into Vietnam aboard a Royal Australian Air Force C130 Hercules aircraft in 1975, and events he witnessed while in Vietnam. This was at the time of Australia's participation in multi-national efforts to airlift refugees and humanitarian aid. The Royal Australian Air Force contingent formed for this purpose was known as Detachment S. Mr Ellard's description of events, though, is inconsistent with the official history¹, official records of the time², and statements in submissions 33 and 63 to this inquiry which confirm the C130 Hercules with Army personnel on board did not land in Vietnam.

1.9 On 30 March 1975, the first C130 Hercules (A97-160) dispatched to Saigon had on board a contingent section of eight Australian Regular Army soldiers. However, as the aircraft was descending into Tan Son Nhut Airport in Saigon it was directed to turn around and return to Butterworth, because of the presence of those personnel on board. A97-160 remained airborne and returned to Butterworth where the section of soldiers was disembarked. The aircraft then flew back to Saigon. The Australian Government did not want Australian Army personnel in Vietnam on account of political considerations concerning the introduction of foreign troops into Vietnam.³ Copies of relevant documents are at Attachments A to D inclusive.

1.10 Defence notes that over the period 1970 to 1989 many thousands of individuals including members of the Australian Army and the Royal Australian Air Force, and Air Force families spent time at Butterworth. While acknowledging the experiences of those who have provided submissions received, and that any individual had the opportunity to

¹ Chris Coulthard-Clark, *The RAAF in Vietnam: Australian Air Involvement in the Vietnam War 1962-1975*, Allen & Unwin in Association with the Australian War Memorial, Sydney, 1995, pp. 322-31.

² NAA: A4531, 8/2/4, 'Saigon - RAAF evacuation of Vietnamese refugees and airlift of supplies'. A digitised copy of this file can be accessed on the National Archives of Australia *RecordSearch* database.

³ See Headquarters Butterworth signal DTG 300345Z MAR 75, 30 March 1975; Cablegram CH193949, 'Evacuation of Vietnamese Refugees', 30 March 1975; Headquarters Butterworth signal DTG 300645Z MAR 75, 30 March 1975; and Cablegram CH193972, 'Evacuation of Vietnamese Refugees', 30 March 1975; all on NAA: A4531, 8/2/4.

OFFICIAL

make a submission, Defence notes there are many voices unheard and in particular there is a lack of views from Air Force members and their families. Mathew Radcliffe's book 'Kampong Australia: the RAAF at Butterworth' provides relevant insight to the experiences of others at Butterworth.⁴

⁴ Mathew Radcliffe, *Kampong Australia: the RAAF at Butterworth*, NewSouth Publishing, Sydney, 2017.

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 2 to EC23-000372

Assessment of Rifle Company Butterworth Service using previous and current Australian Defence Force nature of service definitions

Background

2.1 The Tribunal requested Defence provide detailed, in-depth analysis of Rifle Company Butterworth service by reference to the uncontested assertions of fact and the terms of each of:

- The 1993 Cabinet endorsed definition of warlike service;
- The 1993 Cabinet endorsed definition of non-warlike service;
- The Ministerial 2018 updated definition of warlike service;
- The Ministerial 2018 updated definition of non-warlike service; and
- The Ministerial 2018 updated definition of peacetime service.

Defence Response

Introduction

2.2 The nature of service of any operation is determined by a number of elements of each definition of a nature of service classification. In 1993 the definitions of warlike service and non-warlike service were determined. These definitions were revised in 2018 to provide additional clarity on the definition of peacetime service as the terminology previously used that all operations determined for nature of service 'as other than warlike or non-warlike were classified as peacetime' was considered confusing. A definition of peacetime service was determined by Government in 2018.

Determining previous classification of Australian Defence Force service

2.3 Guiding the assessment of any current and past nature of service are the decisions made by Government and the Australian Defence Force chain of command. The senior committee in the Australian Defence Force is the Chiefs of Services Committee or COSC. The decision from the 2003 Chiefs of Services Committee has formed the basis of nature of service consideration.

2.4 In the 19 February 2003 Chiefs of Services Committee response to Government on the Review of Veterans' Entitlements (the Clarke Review)⁵ it notes 'The COSC had an overriding concern with the approach taken by the Clarke Committee, which led to it recommending retrospectivity. The COSC did not support the concept of applying today's

⁵ As discussed in Chief of the Defence Force minute 268/2003 to the Minister for Veterans' Affairs and Minister Assisting the Minister for Defence, 4 March 2003. Noted to the Hon Danna Vale MP on 13 April 2003.

OFFICIAL

standards and values ... in determining the nature of service of military operations to past conflicts and operations'.⁶

2.5 Additionally 'The COSC took the view that military authorities made decisions and recommendations to Government about the operations for which they were responsible in good faith and drawing on the best intelligence and knowledge available at the time. In the opinion of the COSC, it would be confusing for personnel deployed on operations if decisions based on advice for the CDF could be overturned for no other reason than the emergence of different standards and values over time ... This is not to suggest ... that genuine anomalies should not be dealt with through the appropriate processes'⁷

Nature of Service and Medallic recognition

2.6 In the Cabinet decision JH00/0088 of 21 March 2000⁸, which responded to the '*Review of Service Entitlements Anomalies, in respect of South-East Asian Service 1955 – 1975*', the Cabinet agreed 'the awarding of medals is not a suitable test for repatriation entitlements and, where appropriate, any such nexus be removed from the [Veterans' Entitlements] Act [1986]'.

2.7 This Cabinet Decision has previously been provided to the Defence Honours and Awards Appeals Tribunal.

Assertions of fact by Rifle Company Butterworth (1970-1989) Veterans

2.8 The Defence Honours and Awards Appeals Tribunal provided Defence with a number of assertions claimed by Rifle Company Butterworth Veterans to support the argument that their service was warlike. These are noted in Enclosure 1 to this submission.

2.9 This assessment against the nature of service classification will not consider the Royal Malaysian Air Force personnel, security and supporting civilian staff, and Royal Australian Air Force personnel located concurrently with Rifle Company Butterworth on Air Base Butterworth.

2.10 This assessment noted that Rifle Company Butterworth, average strength of about 130 personnel (less than 10% of Air Base Butterworth daily working population), were employed in Air Base Butterworth for periods of one month to three months non-continuously between 1970 and 1989 to provide an Army presence in Malaysia, support the security of Royal Australian Air Force aircraft and to conduct training. The Rifle Company Butterworth lived and worked alongside Royal Australian Air Force personnel and their families, with routine visits by Royal Australian Navy warships⁹, where the ships'

⁶ Ibid.

⁷ Ibid.

⁸ NAA: A14370, JH00/0088, 'Cabinet Submission JH00/0088 - Review of Service Entitlement Anomalies in Respect of South-East Asian Service 1955-1975 - Decision JH00/0088/CAB'.

⁹ Ship's company strength varied across the typical surface warship classes that visited Malaysian ports in the period 1970 to 1989 (approximately 200 for an Adelaide class guided missile frigate, 250 for a River class destroyer escort, 320 for a Daring class destroyer and 330 for a Charles F. Adams (Perth) class guided missile destroyer).

OFFICIAL

companies proceeded ashore on short leave. The deployment of Rifle Company Butterworth at Air Base Butterworth supported Australian foreign policy objectives and was underpinned by the Five Powers Defence Agreement.

2.11 Deployment of Rifle Company Butterworth was directed through various military documents and activities, which are routine steps to deploy and employ troops domestically and overseas. These are assessed to have been completed thoroughly and professionally. Most of the documentary records are publicly available and have been provided to the Tribunal and include:

- a. Orders, Instructions and Administrative procedures that articulate the deployment and employment of personnel, roles and responsibilities, training and limitations, legal functions and controls to support the chain of command, and rules of engagement.
- b. Individual overseas deployment preparation that directed that deployed troops, achieve Deployment Preparation state 1 (DP1), and the completion of individual Wills, jungle training and additional fitness to support acclimatisation, and live firing training.
- c. Establishment of long range (out of home country) logistic and health support, including prepositioning ammunition of various natures to support training, establishing health capability and various recreation areas.
- d. Conducting relevant contingency planning which included: routine re-employment, re-deployment and evacuation planning of Australian diplomatic, family and support staff, Australian Defence Force, Australian Defence Force families and other Australians as the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade and the Australian Defence Force complete for any country.

2.12 With the volume of documents now available to the public and the Tribunal, Defence still cannot guarantee that all intelligence assessments and other classified documents supporting deployed forces, not just into Malaysia, at the time have been provided. The documents Defence has found, have been provided to the Tribunal and Veteran groups.

2.13 Most of the veteran assertions of particular activities e.g. DP1 status, preparing a Will, pre-deployment and arrival briefings, are used in a variety of situations and there is nothing about these that infer non-warlike or warlike service. Consideration of specific assertions including the carriage of live ammunition and the conduct of activities outside Air Base Butterworth, which have been suggested that they support further consideration of a particular nature of service, will be addressed separately at each definition.

OFFICIAL

Current process to determine the Nature of Service classification of a new Australian Defence Force operation

2.14 While the process is streamlined and communicated more quickly with today's technology, the process of determining an operation's nature of service has remained relatively consistent. In the conduct of planning for capability options for the Government, each new Australian Defence Force operation is initially evaluated against the Government approved nature of service definitions for the warlike, non-warlike and peacetime classifications. If the initial evaluation finds that the Australian Defence Force operation is appropriately classified as peacetime service, the Chief of the Defence Force's agreement is sought and the operation's classification remains peacetime. As no legislative action is required, the Government may be informed but no further Government endorsement of nature of service of the operation is required.

2.15 If the initial nature of service evaluation indicates that an Australian Defence Force operation may warrant a non-warlike or warlike classification, a more detailed assessment is conducted. Operational Headquarters, Health and Intelligence stakeholders contribute to the detailed nature of service assessment by considering factors within their area of expertise. Should this assessment determine that a non-warlike or a warlike classification is appropriate, a ministerial submission is provided to the Chief of the Defence Force to recommend to the Minister for Defence their approval of the particular nature of service classification.

Assessment of Rifle Company Butterworth service against the 1993 and 2018 definitions

2.16 The following assessment of Rifle Company Butterworth service against the 1993 and 2018 definitions requested by the Defence Honours and Awards Appeals Tribunal was conducted without support of the Defence Intelligence Group, Headquarters Joint Operations Command or Joint Health Command. The focus of these Defence commands is on current Australian Defence Force operational service, not reviews of historical records and research of previous Australian Defence Force service.

2.17 The assessment has reviewed data available to assess the records of functions and post operational ('end of tour') reports of Rifle Company Butterworth presence at Air Base Butterworth. This included: the tasks and missions undertaken by Rifle Company Butterworth, the threat assessments from the Joint Intelligence Organisation, and the rules of engagement issued for Rifle Company Butterworth duty. The assessment also took into account the Royal Australian Air Force and their families' presence and maintaining family married quarters, officers' and soldiers' clubs and accommodation that were located outside Air Base Butterworth or on Penang Island.

OFFICIAL

ASSESSMENT OF RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH SERVICE USING 1993 NATURE OF SERVICE DEFINITION – WARLIKE

Definition

2.18 Warlike operations are those military activities where the application of force is authorised to pursue specific military objectives and there is an expectation of casualties. These operations can encompass but are not limited to:

- a. a state of declared war;
- b. conventional combat operations against an armed adversary; and
- c. Peace Enforcement operations which are military operations in support of diplomatic efforts to restore peace between belligerents who may not be consenting to intervention and may be engaged in combat activities. Normally but not necessarily always they will be conducted under Chapter VII of the United Nations Charter, where the application of all necessary force is authorised to restore peace and security or other like tasks.

Is Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) assessed as warlike service?

2.19 The following points provide an assessment against the key elements of the 1993 warlike definition:

- *‘The application of force is authorised to pursue specific military objectives.’* The application of force that was authorised, as expressed through the Rules of Engagement, was defensive in support of security tasks, limited to the confines of Air Base Butterworth, and not designed to pursue military objectives.¹⁰
 - A key task of Rifle Company Butterworth is to provide (additional) security to Royal Australian Air Force aircraft and personnel at Air Base Butterworth. The purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth stated in documented records was to maintain a presence in Malaysia, support security of Australian Defence Force assets and to conduct training.
 - The 1978 Unit Standing Orders for Rifle Company Butterworth (Attachment E) directed Rifle Company Butterworth personnel that ‘If in doubt, do not shoot’, reinforcing the careful consideration of the challenging domestic security of the

¹⁰ The Australian Defence Force Glossary defines ‘military objectives’ as legitimate objects of attack and comprise:

- a. all combatants who have a capacity and are willing to fight
- b. establishments, buildings and locations at which the armed forces or their materials are located
- c. other objects which, by their nature, location, purpose or use make an effective contribution to military action and whose total or partial destruction, capture or neutralisation, in the circumstances ruling at the time, offers a definite military advantage.

OFFICIAL

air base, its proximity to the civilian population, development of housing and active farming adjacent the airstrip.

- The Australian Defence Force standing Rules of Engagement includes the right of self-defence in all Australian Defence Force activities domestically and wherever employed.¹¹
- *‘There is an expectation of casualties.’* There was no record of an expectation of casualties from Rifle Company Butterworth rotations. Non-battle casualties, including deaths by traffic accidents or misadventure, are not relevant to nature of service assessments.
 - There are no documents indicating an expectation of casualties within Rifle Company Butterworth or other Australian Defence Force members or Australian families during the period 1970 to 1989.
 - No. 4 RAAF Hospital at Butterworth was established because the British hospital at Taiping was closing in 1965, and Australia found it necessary to provide alternative hospital and health facilities for the thousands of personnel from the Royal Australian Air Force, Royal Air Force, Australian and British Army, and their dependants.¹² No. 4 RAAF Hospital was not established because of an increased external threat from an Australian adversary.
- *‘A state of declared war.’* Australia did not declare or recognise that a state of war existed in Malaysia and was not involved in internal Malaysian affairs.
 - The Government of Malaysia did not ask Australia for military assistance after 14 September 1966, which marked the end of the Indonesian Confrontation.
- *‘Conventional combat operations against an armed adversary.’* Rifle Company Butterworth did not conduct authorised conventional or any other combat operations against any adversary. Rifle Company Butterworth carried out garrison (in similar terminology - Port, Base, or Barracks) security duty and was not authorised to carry out patrols, i.e. searching for an adversary, outside Air Base Butterworth.
 - Rifle Company Butterworth was not authorised to conduct offensive operations or to use force to achieve a military objective. Rifle Company Butterworth was not to be involved in internal Malaysian affairs, local civil disturbances, or to be employed in security operations outside the gazetted area of the Air Base Butterworth. Rifle Company Butterworth was not authorised to undertake offensive patrols outside the confines of Air Base Butterworth. There were training activities in designated training areas outside the base.

¹¹ ‘CDF ROEAUTH – Standing Rules of Engagement Serial Five’ (reissued from time to time).

¹² Royal Australian Air Force press release S3869/65, ‘New RAAF Hospital at Butterworth Malaysia’, 2 March 1965, states “The Minister for Air, Mr Peter Howson, said today that the hospital would be known as No 4 RAAF Hospital, Butterworth, Mr Howson said that with the decision to close down the British Military Hospital at Taiping early in 1965, it had been found necessary to provide alternative hospital facilities for RAAF, RAF, Australian and British Army personnel and their dependents in the area.”, accessed at [ParlInfo - New RAAF hospital at Butterworth Malaysia \(aph.gov.au\)](#).

OFFICIAL

- ‘*Peace Enforcement operations.*’ Rifle Company Butterworth service was not a Peace Enforcement operation. The Australian Defence Force was not authorised to be involved in internal Malaysian affairs. Standard duty was confined to security of Australian Defence Force assets and training in designated training areas when available.
- The overall risk associated with Rifle Company Butterworth security and training tasks was low. This is based on intelligence assessments from the Joint Intelligence Organisation, which assessed the threat of communist terrorist attack on Air Base Butterworth as unlikely and threat, low.
 - Threat assessments are routinely produced for Australian Defence Force operations and activities, including peacetime operations, other activities and training exercises.

Addressing other Rifle Company Butterworth veteran assertions

2.20 The carriage of live ammunition is not a consideration when determining nature of service. However the intent to use any nature of ammunition might be a consideration. The intent to use ammunition is directed through Orders For Opening Fire and Rules of Engagement associated with the task and purpose of a mission. As the Rules of Engagement for Rifle Company Butterworth were defensive only and further clarified by additional orders, as noted in numerous examples, to include ‘If in doubt, do not shoot’ reinforces that no armed adversary was expected and that there is no intent to use the ammunition unless absolutely necessary for defensive purposes.

2.21 The carriage of live ammunition is explained in records for safety and other purposes including wild animal threats. The added burden, stress and risk of carrying live rounds is acknowledged but not a consideration for nature of service classification.

2.22 Defence notes that the use of the term ‘War Service’ for disciplinary matters has an extensive history. In particular, paragraph 44 of the Explanatory Memorandum to the Defence Force Discipline Bill 1982 explained the codes of discipline for the Army prior to the introduction of the legislation. Specifically, it was noted that “the expression ‘war service’ is something of a misnomer because ... it not only includes service in time of war, but also active service ... and all service outside Australia in time of peace”.¹³ As such, the statement ‘Whilst on War Service’ reflected the military discipline arrangements and processes applicable to units deployed overseas. It provided increased powers of punishment for officers commanding and commanding officers of units deployed overseas, and does not refer to a nature of service classification.

Summary

2.23 It is assessed that Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) did not meet the elements of the 1993 ‘warlike’ definition.

¹³ Defence Force Discipline Bill 1982, Explanatory Memorandum, para. 44, accessed at [ParlInfo - Defence Force Discipline Bill 1982 \(aph.gov.au\)](#).

OFFICIAL

ASSESSMENT OF RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH SERVICE USING 1993 NATURE OF SERVICE DEFINITION – NON-WARLIKE

Definition

2.24 Non-warlike operations are defined as those military activities short of warlike operations where there is risk associated with the assigned task(s) and where the application of force is limited to self-defence. Casualties could occur but are not expected. These operations encompass but are not limited to:

- a. *Hazardous*. Activities exposing individuals or units to a degree of hazard above and beyond that of normal peacetime duty such as mine avoidance and clearance, weapons inspections and destruction, Defence Force aid to civil power, Service protected or assisted evacuations and other operations requiring the application of minimum force to effect the protection of personnel or property, or other like activities.
- b. *Peacekeeping*. Peacekeeping is an operation involving military personnel, without powers of enforcement, to help restore and maintain peace in an area of conflict with the consent of all parties. These operations can encompass but are not limited to:
 - (1) Activities short of Peace Enforcement where the authorisation of the application of force is normally limited to minimum force necessary for self-defence;
 - (2) Activities, such as the enforcement of sanctions in a relatively benign environment which expose individuals or units to “hazards” as described above;
 - (3) Military observer activities with the tasks of monitoring ceasefires, re-directing and alleviating ceasefire tensions, providing “good offices” for negotiations and the impartial verification of assistance or ceasefire agreements, and other like activities; or
 - (4) Activities that would normally involve the provision of humanitarian relief.

Notes

2.25 Humanitarian relief in this context does not include normal peacetime operations such as cyclone or earthquake relief flights or assistance.

2.26 Peacemaking is frequently used colloquially in place of Peace Enforcement. However, in the developing doctrine of peace operations, Peacemaking is considered as the diplomatic process of seeking a solution to a dispute through negotiation, inquiry, mediation, conciliation or other peaceful means.

Is Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) assessed as non-warlike service?

2.27 The 1993 ‘warlike’ considerations noted above remain extant. The following points provide a further assessment against the key elements of the 1993 ‘non-warlike’ definition:

OFFICIAL

- a. *'There is risk associated with the assigned task(s).'* The Joint Intelligence Organisation always assessed the threat of communist terrorist attack on Air Base Butterworth as LOW and unlikely.
- (1) Threat assessments are routinely produced for Australian Defence Force operations and activities, including peacetime operations, other activities and exercises.
 - (2) Rifle Company Butterworth Rules of Engagement were defensive, which included the right of self-defence. The 1978 Unit Standing Orders for Rifle Company Butterworth directed Rifle Company Butterworth personnel that 'If in doubt, do not shoot', reinforcing the careful consideration of the challenging domestic security of the air base, its proximity to the civilian population, development of housing and active farming adjacent the airstrip.
- b. *Hazardous.* Rifle Company Butterworth service did not include *mine avoidance and clearance, weapons inspections and destruction, Defence Force (ADF) aid to civil power, Service protected or assisted evacuations.*
- (1) Evacuation plans for Australian Defence Force and families from Butterworth were developed by the Royal Australian Air Force before Rifle Company Butterworth rotations commenced. These plans were refined to include Army infantry rifle companies once the company rotations began. There was no consideration by Government or Defence across the period of initiating an evacuation of Royal Australian Air Force families or Australian Defence Force personnel. The development of such contingency plans is normal foreign affairs and military procedure.
 - (2) The conduct of contingency planning does not equate to actually facing a hostile force.
- c. *Hazardous. ... other operations requiring the application of minimum force to effect the protection of personnel or property, or other like activities*
- (1) The Ground Defence Operations Centre at the Air Base Butterworth was established to manage all types of emergencies at the air base, including security related emergencies. The Officer Commanding Royal Australian Air Force Base Butterworth was responsible for the command of the Ground Defence Operations Centre and the Officer Commanding the infantry rifle company was appointed as one of the ground defence advisers to support the operation of the Operations Centre. While the Ground Defence Operations Centre was exercised on a regular basis, especially during air defence exercises, simulation of a declared emergency or in the movement of highly

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

inflammable material, there is no record of a security emergency being declared at Royal Australian Air Force Base Butterworth over the period.¹⁴

(2) Examples of the activity level include:

- i. An account attributed to Major R. Chandler, Officer Commanding C Company, 2 Battalion, Royal Australian Regiment at Butterworth in the period 14 February to 23 May 1979, states the tour of Butterworth was "... an ideal opportunity for the Company to train without the interruptions which often occur in a training programme in Australia' (Attachment F). A 'Researcher's Comment' of unknown provenance says in part 'There was nothing approaching operational activities against a live enemy at any stage during the C Coy 2/4 RAR sojourn at Butterworth.'¹⁵
 - ii. The End of Tour Report by the Officer Commanding B Company, 1 Battalion, Royal Australian Regiment (then Major R.J. Linwood) for the period 9 December 1981 to 17 February 1982 is primarily about training, discipline and medical issues (Attachment G).¹⁶ The section on the Quick Reaction Force states "No real incidents occurred, however twice daily and twice nightly the QRF was reacted on drill call-outs. No operational tasks were issued by OC RAAF Base BUTTERWORTH". Security levels were increased over certain periods as a routine precaution.¹⁷ The report concludes, "With the exception of three soldiers, the entire company have gained valuable experience in a semi-operational Asian environment."¹⁸ Then Major Linwood's End of Tour report is consistent with other available End of Tour reports (Attachments H to O inclusive).
- d. Other considerations to determine if the elements of the hazardous definition were met for non-warlike nature of service include:

- (1) Rifle Company Butterworth provided a Quick Reaction Force in case of an intrusion onto Air Base Butterworth, in support of the Ground Defence Operations Centre. The Quick Reaction Force, which was exercised frequently, was never called to action in response to an actual documented intrusion by an adversary. Records of investigating broken fence lines or 'breaches' at Air Base Butterworth are noted to have been discovered however the gaps were assessed as having been there for some time, i.e. potentially a routine activity by the local population.

¹⁴ See NAA: A9186, 198, 'RAAF Unit History sheets (Form A50) [Operations Record Book - Forms A50 and A51] Base Squadron Butterworth Jun 66 - Dec 87'; and NAA: A9435, 75, 'Commanding Officers' reports - Monthly reports unit history sheets (A50) - Base Squadron, Butterworth, 1944 to 1988'. Both records are digitised.

¹⁵ Chandler, Major R., 'C Coy 2/4 RAR Tour of Air Base Butterworth 14 Feb - 23 May 79', undated.

¹⁶ 'End of Tour Report by B Coy 1 RAR, 9 Dec 81 - 17 Feb 82', 16 February 1982. Inconsistencies appear when comparing Mr Linwood's End of Tour report with his submission to this Inquiry.

¹⁷ Ibid., paras. 8-12.

¹⁸ Ibid., para. 73.

OFFICIAL

- (2) Normal daily life for the Royal Australian Air Force families continued throughout the period. Royal Australian Air Force families were located either in the married quarters on the other side of the major highway from Air Base Butterworth or on Penang Island, in the suburbs. Royal Australian Air Force personnel and families were allowed to visit other areas of Malaysia with the exception of the Thai/Malaysia border area. Access to the married quarter areas was open, i.e. no special security arrangements, for the entire 20 year period of 1970 to 1989.
 - (3) The Officers and Sergeants Mess were located adjacent and off Air Base Butterworth, i.e. across the highway from Air Base Butterworth, and had no security restrictions imposed, i.e. no assessed threat to personnel.
 - (4) Single (unaccompanied) Royal Australian Air Force personnel were permitted to live off base.
 - (5) Throughout the period 1970 to 1989, the Royal Australian Navy continued to make peacetime port calls (Australian presence to support regional stability) and conduct routine local leave ashore.
 - (6) Rifle Company Butterworth personnel were allowed to visit bars, restaurants and shops in Butterworth town and on the island of Penang. No additional security measures were taken for these visits.
- e. Noting this routine pattern of life for those Australian Defence Force personnel and others at Butterworth, Rifle Company Butterworth duty at Air Base Butterworth was not considered *hazardous* as considered in the non-warlike definition.
- f. *Peacekeeping*.
- (1) Rifle Company Butterworth did not support the Government of Malaysia, the United Nations or other body such as the Multinational Force and Observers maintain peace or security in Malaysia. The Government of Malaysia did not ask Australia for any assistance after September 1966, the end of the Indonesian Confrontation.
 - (2) Rifle Company Butterworth was not authorised in the application of force other than as directed by the specific defensive rules of engagement in support of security of Australian Defence Force assets and personnel on Air Base Butterworth.
 - (3) Rifle Company Butterworth was not tasked with enforcement of sanctions or other tasks that might expose them to hazards relating to this task.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

- (4) Rifle Company Butterworth were not Military Observers monitoring in-country tensions.
 - (5) Rifle Company Butterworth was not tasked as a part of any Australian operation to provide humanitarian relief in any location in Malaysia.
- g. Noting the elements of *Peacekeeping* in the 1993 non-warlike definition it is assessed that Rifle Company Butterworth did not fulfil any of these roles and therefore its service was not assessed as *Peacekeeping*.

2.28 The carriage of live ammunition is addressed in the assessment of warlike nature of service and the considerations are the same.

2.29 Consistent with the nature of service warlike consideration, the term 'Whilst on War Service' and supporting definitions provided increased powers of punishment for officers commanding and commanding officers of units deployed overseas, and does not refer to a nature of service classification.

Summary

2.30 It is assessed that Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) did not meet the elements of the 1993 'non-warlike' definition and therefore remains classified as peacetime service. Peacetime service was further defined in the 2018 definitions were endorsed by Government.

OFFICIAL

ASSESSMENT OF RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH SERVICE USING 2018 NATURE OF SERVICE DEFINITION – WARLIKE

Definition

2.31 *Warlike* service exposes Australian Defence Force personnel to a direct risk of *harm* from *hostile forces*.

2.32 A *warlike* operation is an Australian Government authorised military operation where Australian Defence Force personnel are exposed to the risk of *harm* from *hostile forces* that have been assessed by Defence as having the capability and an identified intent to directly target Australian Defence Force personnel. Australian Defence Force personnel are authorised to use force to pursue specific military objectives and there is an expectation of Australian Defence Force casualties as a result.

Notes

2.33 *Harm*. The Nature of Service classification of Australian Defence Force operational service is based on an assessment of the level of exposure to the risk of harm – both physical and psychological – from hostile forces, but not environmental factors which are recognised elsewhere in the Australian Defence Force remuneration framework and the conditions of service package.

2.34 *Hostile Forces*. Hostile forces comprise military, paramilitary or civilian forces, criminal elements or terrorists, with or without national designation, that have committed a hostile act, exhibited hostile intent, or have been designated hostile by the Australian Government.

2.35 *Threat Assessment*. For the purposes of the Nature of Service definitions, the level of threat from hostile forces must be derived from an authorised assessment provided by the Defence Intelligence Organisation or Headquarters Joint Operations Command - J2 (Joint Operations - Intelligence).

2.36 *Terrorism*. A general threat of terrorism which does not specify a direct threat to Australian Defence Force personnel does not predicate a higher Nature of Service classification than peacetime. To classify an Australian Defence Force operation as other than peacetime based on terrorism, there must be a Defence identified specific threat to the Australian Defence Force presence.

Is Rifle Company Butterworth Service (1970-1989) assessed as warlike service?

2.37 The following points provide an assessment against the key elements of the 2018 warlike definition:

- a. *Direct risk of harm from hostile forces*. Threat assessments are routinely produced for Australian Defence Force operations and activities, including peacetime operations, other activities and exercises. Risks of harm from hostile forces associated with Rifle Company Butterworth tasks was assessed as unlikely and low throughout the period and

OFFICIAL

aligned with the Joint Intelligence Organisation which always assessed the threat of communist terrorist attack on Air Base Butterworth as unlikely and threat, low.

- b. *An identified intent to directly target Australian Defence Force personnel.* In the 20 year period of 1979 to 1989, intelligence and threat assessments consistently noted that communist terrorists were unlikely to attack Air Base Butterworth. In the period there were no recorded attacks or offensive action by hostile forces made on Air Base Butterworth. There are no reports of any intent to directly target Australian Defence Force personnel on or off duty or the Royal Australian Air Force families resident adjacent Air Base Butterworth or on Penang Island.
- c. *Direct risk of harm from hostile forces ...authorised to use force to pursue specific military objectives.* The Australian Defence Force, including Rifle Company Butterworth and Royal Australian Air Force aircraft, were not authorised to be involved in internal Malaysian affairs. There are no records of Australian Defence Force personnel being directly or indirectly involved in any clashes, incidents or events between communist terrorists or in support of Malaysian authorities conducting military operations. An objective for Rifle Company Butterworth, more appropriately designated as a task, was to provide security to Royal Australian Air Force aircraft at Air Base Butterworth. There is no record of the Rifle Company Butterworth security task involving contact with any hostile forces.
- d. *Direct risk of harm from hostile forces ...authorised to use force to pursue specific military objectives ...an identified intent to directly target Australian Defence Force personnel... expectation of Australian Defence Force casualties.* Rifle Company Butterworth service was not part of an Australian Government authorised military operation against a hostile force. There was no identified threat of an intent to directly or indirectly target Australian Defence Force personnel. Rifle Company Butterworth was not authorised to use force to pursue specific military objectives. The Rifle Company Butterworth security task was limited to the gazetted area of the Air Base Butterworth. There are no records that indicate an expectation of casualties for those Australian Defence Force personnel employed at Air Base Butterworth or from Rifle Company Butterworth.
- e. *Authorised to use force to pursue specific military objectives.*¹⁹ Rifle Company Butterworth was not authorised to conduct offensive operations or to use force to achieve a military objective. Rifle Company Butterworth was not to be involved in internal Malaysian affairs or local civil disturbances or to be employed in security tasks outside the gazetted area of Air Base Butterworth. Rifle Company Butterworth did not undertake authorised offensive patrols outside the confines of Air Base Butterworth. There are records of training activities in designated training areas.
- f. *Authorised to use force to pursue specific military objectives.* Rifle Company Butterworth Rules of Engagement were defensive, which included the right of self-defence. The 1978 Unit Standing Orders for Rifle Company Butterworth reinforced

¹⁹ As defined in the Australian Defence Force Glossary (see footnote 10).

OFFICIAL

the additional care to be taken with the defensive rules of engagement which directed Rifle Company Butterworth personnel that 'If in doubt, do not shoot'. Reports of Malay local nationals intruding onto the base from time to time and incidents of theft were recorded.

- g. *Terrorism.* Harm, hostile forces and threat assessment have been addressed above. The clarification in the 2018 definition of warlike includes the qualifier that 'To classify an Australian Defence Force operation as other than peacetime based on *terrorism*, there must be a Defence identified specific threat to the Australian Defence Force presence'. As there is no record of a specific threat or terrorist threat to the Australian Defence Force presence at Air Base Butterworth throughout the period 1979 to 1989, the threat of terrorism was not considered likely and therefore does not support Rifle Company Butterworth meeting the definition of warlike service.

2.38 Considering the elements of the 2018 warlike definition against Rifle Company Butterworth service it is assessed that the Company was not in direct risk of harm from hostile forces. The risk of attack or harm at their workplace, Air Base Butterworth, was assessed as unlikely or low. There are no records of offensive action or an attack taking place at Air Base Butterworth. There is no record of there being an expectation of casualties. The Rifle Company Butterworth task was to maintain security of Australian Defence Force assets, namely Royal Australian Air Force aircraft on Air Base Butterworth. This involved security duties and a quick reaction force, prepared to be on short notice, to support security of the Air Base Butterworth. This is considered peacetime duty.

Addressing other Rifle Company Butterworth veteran assertions

2.39 The carriage of live ammunition is not a consideration when determining nature of service. However the intent to use any nature of ammunition might be a consideration. The intent to use ammunition is directed through Orders For Opening Fire and Rules of Engagement associated with the task and purpose of a mission. As the rules of engagement for Rifle Company Butterworth were defensive only and further clarified by additional orders, as noted in numerous examples, to include 'If in doubt, do not shoot' reinforces that no armed adversary was expected and that there was no intent to use the ammunition unless absolutely necessary for defensive purposes.

2.40 The carriage of live ammunition is explained in records for safety and other purposes including wild animal threats. The added burden, stress and risk of carrying live rounds is acknowledged but not a consideration for nature of service classification. The weapons' status of 'load', 'action' and 'instant' are directions given by local commanders subject to the circumstances presented to them at the time, including during training.

2.41 Defence notes, for this definition also, that the use of the term 'War Service' for disciplinary matters has an extensive history. In particular, paragraph 44 of the Explanatory Memorandum to the Defence Force Discipline Bill 1982 explained the codes of discipline for the Army prior to the introduction of the legislation. Specifically, it was noted that "the expression 'war service' is something of a misnomer because ... it not only includes

OFFICIAL

service in time of war, but also active service ... and all service outside Australia in time of peace". As such, the statement 'Whilst on War Service' reflected the military discipline arrangements and processes applicable to units deployed overseas. It provided increased powers of punishment for officers commanding and commanding officers of units deployed overseas, and does not refer to a nature of service classification

Summary

2.42 It is assessed that Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) did not meet the elements of the 2018 'warlike' definition.

OFFICIAL

ASSESSMENT OF RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH SERVICE USING 2018 NATURE OF SERVICE DEFINITION – NON-WARLIKE

Definition

2.43 *Non-warlike* service exposes Australian Defence Force personnel to an indirect risk of *harm* from *hostile forces*.

2.44 A *non-warlike* operation is an Australian Government authorised military operation which exposes Australian Defence Force personnel to the risk of *harm* from designated forces or groups that have been assessed by Defence as having the capability to employ violence to achieve their objectives, but there is no specific threat or assessed intent to target Australian Defence Force personnel. The use of force by Australian Defence Force personnel is limited to self-defence and there is no expectation of Australian Defence Force casualties as a result of engagement of those designated forces or groups.

Notes

2.45 *Harm*. The Nature of Service classification of Australian Defence Force operational service is based on an assessment of the level of exposure to the risk of harm – both physical and psychological – from hostile forces, but not environmental factors which are recognised elsewhere in the Australian Defence Force remuneration framework and the conditions of service package.

2.46 *Hostile Forces*. Hostile forces comprise military, paramilitary or civilian forces, criminal elements or terrorists, with or without national designation, that have committed a hostile act, exhibited hostile intent, or have been designated hostile by the Australian Government.

2.47 *Threat Assessment*. For the purposes of the Nature of Service definitions, the level of threat from hostile forces must be derived from an authorised assessment provided by the Defence Intelligence Organisation or Headquarters Joint Operations Command - J2 (Joint Operations - Intelligence).

2.48 *Terrorism*. A general threat of terrorism which does not specify a direct threat to Australian Defence Force personnel does not predicate a higher Nature of Service classification than peacetime. To classify an Australian Defence Force operation as other than peacetime based on terrorism, there must be a Defence identified specific threat to the Australian Defence Force presence.

Is Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) assessed as non-warlike service?

2.49 The 2018 ‘warlike’ considerations noted above remain extant. The following points provide a further assessment against the key elements of the 2018 ‘non-warlike’ definition:

- a. Hostile forces. *A general threat of terrorism which does not specify a direct threat to Australian Defence Force personnel does not predicate a higher Nature of Service classification than peacetime (relevant throughout)*. Communist terrorists in Malaysia

OFFICIAL

were acknowledged as insurgents that employed violence to achieve their objectives. While violence was recorded as utilised against Malaysian authorities, there were no attacks against Australian Defence Force or civilian personnel or equipment, including against unarmed off-duty personnel and families moving freely within the local community and touring Malaysia. The threat assessments for an attack or threat against Air Base Butterworth, the Rifle Company Butterworth primary work location and location of its security responsibilities, were consistently assessed as an attack is unlikely and the threat, low.

- b. Rifle Company Butterworth was not authorised to conduct offensive operations. Rifle Company Butterworth was not to be involved in internal Malaysian affairs or local civil disturbances or to be employed in security operations outside the gazetted area of the Air Base Butterworth. Rifle Company Butterworth did not undertake authorised combat patrols outside the confines of Air Base Butterworth. There were training activities in designated training areas.
- c. The Rules of Engagement for Rifle Company Butterworth for nightly Australian Defence Force asset (Royal Australian Air Force aircraft) security and the conduct of Quick Reaction Force responsibilities were defensive.
- d. Rifle Company Butterworth Rules of Engagement were defensive, which included the right of self-defence. The 1978 Unit Standing Orders for Rifle Company Butterworth directed Rifle Company Butterworth personnel that 'If in doubt, do not shoot', reinforcing the careful consideration of the challenging domestic security of the air base, its proximity to the civilian population, development of housing and active farming adjacent the airstrip.
- e. Normal daily life for the Royal Australian Air Force families and community continued throughout the period.
 - (1) Royal Australian Air Force families were located either in the married quarters on the other side of the major highway from Air Base Butterworth or on Penang Island. Royal Australian Air Force personnel and families were allowed to visit other areas of Malaysia apart from the Thai/Malaysia border area. Access to the married quarter areas had no documented additional security measures in place for the 20 year period.
 - (2) The Officers and Sergeants Mess were adjacent and not on Air Base Butterworth and had no documented additional security measures.
 - (3) Single (unaccompanied) Royal Australian Air Force personnel were permitted to live off base.
 - (4) Throughout the period 1970 to 1989, the Royal Australian Navy continued to make unrestricted port calls (Australian presence to support regional stability) and conduct routine local leave ashore.
 - (5) Rifle Company Butterworth personnel were allowed to visit bars, restaurants and shops in Butterworth town and on the island of Penang. No documented additional security measures were taken for these visits.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

- (6) Although evacuation plans were developed for Australian personnel at Air Base Butterworth, these plans were never activated. Evacuation plans for Australian Defence Force personnel and families from Butterworth were developed by the Royal Australian Air Force before Rifle Company Butterworth rotations commenced. These plans were refined to include Army infantry rifle companies once the company rotations began. There was no recorded consideration by Government or Defence across the 1970 to 1989 period of initiating an evacuation of Royal Australian Air Force families or Australian Defence Force personnel from Butterworth or Malaysia. The development of such contingency plans is normal foreign affairs and military procedure.
- (7) The conduct of contingency planning does not equate to actually facing a hostile force.
- f. *Risk associated with Rifle Company Butterworth tasks.* The Joint Intelligence Organisation always assessed the threat of communist terrorist attack on Air Base Butterworth as LOW and unlikely. Rifle Company Butterworth was not under any indirect risk of harm from hostile forces.
- g. *Terrorism.* Communist terrorist activity in Malaysia over the period 1970 to 1989 is acknowledged. However, there was no evidence of a specific threat or intent from communist terrorists toward the Australian Defence Force presence at Air Base Butterworth. As noted in the nature of service non-warlike definition, “A general threat of terrorism which does not specify a direct threat to Australian Defence Force personnel does not predicate a higher Nature of Service classification than peacetime.”

2.50 Considering the elements of the non-warlike definition against Rifle Company Butterworth (1970-1989) service it is assessed that the Rifle Company Butterworth was not under any indirect risk of harm from hostile forces. Threat assessments for communist terrorist attack at Rifle company Butterworth’s workplace, Air Base Butterworth, was assessed as unlikely or low. There are no records of offensive action or an attack taking place at Air Base Butterworth. There is no record of there being an expectation of casualties.

Addressing other Rifle Company Butterworth veteran assertions

2.51 The carriage of live ammunition is not a consideration when determining nature of service. This consideration was addressed in the assessment of the elements of the 2018 warlike definition and remains relevant.

2.52 However, the intent to use any nature of ammunition should be considered. The intent to use ammunition is directed through Orders For Opening Fire and Rules of Engagement associated with the task and purpose of a mission. As the rules of engagement for Rifle Company Butterworth were defensive only and further clarified by additional orders, as noted in numerous examples, to include ‘If in doubt, do not shoot’ reinforces that no armed adversary was expected, and that there is no intent to use the ammunition unless absolutely necessary for defensive purposes.

OFFICIAL

2.53 The carriage of live ammunition is explained in records for safety and other purposes including wild animal threats. The added burden, stress and risk of carrying live rounds is acknowledged but not a specific consideration for nature of service classification. The weapons' status of 'load', 'action' and 'instant' are directions given by local commanders subject to the circumstances presented to them at the time, including during training.

2.54 Consistent with nature of service 2018 warlike consideration, the term 'Whilst on War Service' and supporting definitions provided increased powers of punishment for officers commanding and commanding officers of units deployed overseas, and does not refer to a nature of service classification.

Summary

2.55 It is assessed that Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) did not meet the elements of the 2018 'non-warlike' definition.

**ASSESSMENT OF RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH SERVICE USING 2018
NATURE OF SERVICE DEFINITION – PEACETIME**

Definition

2.56 A *peacetime* classification acknowledges that an element of hazard and risk is inherent to Australian Defence Force service and that personnel are appropriately trained and compensated for their specific military occupation. Service on *peacetime* operations is not the same as serving overseas on a posting or short-term duty.

2.57 A *peacetime* operation is an Australian Government authorised military operation or activity that does not expose Australian Defence Force personnel to a Defence-assessed threat from *hostile forces*. Therefore, there is no expectation of casualties as a result of engagement with hostile forces. There may be an increased risk of harm from environmental factors consistent with the expectation that Australian Defence Force personnel will from time to time perform hazardous duties.

2.58 *Harm*. The Nature of Service classification of Australian Defence Force operational service is based on an assessment of the level of exposure to the risk of harm – both physical and psychological – from hostile forces, but not environmental factors which are recognised elsewhere in the Australian Defence Force remuneration framework and the conditions of service package.

2.59 *Hostile Forces*. Hostile forces comprise military, paramilitary or civilian forces, criminal elements or terrorists, with or without national designation, that have committed a hostile act, exhibited hostile intent, or have been designated hostile by the Australian Government.

2.60 *Threat Assessment*. For the purposes of the Nature of Service definitions, the level of threat from hostile forces must be derived from an authorised assessment provided by the Defence Intelligence Organisation or Headquarters Joint Operations Command-J2 (Joint Operations - Intelligence).

2.61 *Terrorism*. A general threat of terrorism which does not specify a direct threat to Australian Defence Force personnel does not predicate a higher Nature of Service classification than peacetime. To classify an Australian Defence Force operation as other than peacetime based on terrorism, there must be a Defence identified specific threat to the Australian Defence Force presence.

Is Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) assessed as peacetime service?

2.62 The 2018 ‘warlike’ and ‘non-warlike’ considerations noted in the elements of the 2018 definitions above remain extant.

2.63 Australian Defence Force service defaults to peacetime service unless determined by the Minister for Defence to be warlike or non-warlike service. As assessments of Rifle Company Butterworth service under the 2018 Nature of Service definitions have not

OFFICIAL

returned either a warlike or non-warlike classification, Rifle Company Butterworth service is therefore classified as peacetime service.

2.64 *A peacetime classification acknowledges that an element of hazard and risk is inherent to Australian Defence Force service.* The purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments was to continue an Australian Army presence in Malaysia after the relocation of the Australian infantry battalion from Terendak to Singapore in 1970. Other roles of the Rifle Company Butterworth were to assist in the security of Australian Defence Force assets at Air Base Butterworth, and to conduct training, either independently or with the Malaysian Armed Forces. The first two outcomes are recorded as being achieved. Documents record the opportunities to train with the Malaysian Armed Forces, in particular the Army elements, was inconsistent.

2.65 The following points provide a further assessment against the key elements of the 2018 ‘peacetime’ service definition:

- a. While assessing the elements of this 2018 definition against historical records Defence notes there is no documentary record of any attacks against Air Base Butterworth or Australian Defence Force personnel or assets at Air Base Butterworth throughout the period 1970 to 1989.
- b. Rifle Company Butterworth was not an authorised Australian Defence Force military operation against a hostile force. The security tasks conducted by Rifle Company Butterworth at Air Base Butterworth were authorised, as were training activities.
- c. The Joint Intelligence Organisation assessed that a communist terrorist attack on Air Base Butterworth, the work location of Rifle Company Butterworth, was unlikely and the threat was low.
- d. There was no expectation of casualties as there was not expected to be an engagement with hostile forces. Both Rifle Company Butterworth and Royal Australian Air Force aircraft were not authorised to be involved in internal Malaysian affairs nor therefore drawn into direct contact with a hostile force.
- e. There are no documented attacks against the Air Base Butterworth for the period under consideration and no related casualties.
- f. The environmental factors are consistent with the expectation that Australian Defence Force personnel will from time to time perform hazardous duties within a peacetime environment. Tropical weather and lengthy overnight duty do not alter a peacetime assessment.
- g. *Terrorism.* Communist terrorist activity in Malaysia over the period 1970 to 1989 is acknowledged. However, there was no evidence of a specific threat or intent from communist terrorists toward the Australian Defence Force presence at Air Base Butterworth. As noted in the 2018 definitions, “A general threat of terrorism which does

OFFICIAL

not specify a direct threat to Australian Defence Force personnel does not predicate a higher Nature of Service classification than peacetime.”

- h. All other aspects of this service noted against the elements of the definition of warlike/non-warlike are also taken into account.

2.66 In considering the elements of the peacetime definition against Rifle Company Butterworth (1970-1989) service it is assessed that the Company was not under any direct or indirect risk of harm from hostile forces. Threat assessments for communist terrorist attack at Rifle Company Butterworth’s workplace, Air Base Butterworth, was assessed as unlikely and the threat as low. There are no records of offensive action or an attack taking place at Air Base Butterworth. There is no record of there being an expectation of casualties.

Addressing other Rifle Company Butterworth veteran assertions

2.67 The carriage of live ammunition is not a consideration when determining nature of service. This consideration was addressed in the assessment of the elements of the 2018 warlike and non-warlike definitions and remains relevant.

2.68 As the rules of engagement for Rifle Company Butterworth were defensive only and further clarified by additional orders, as noted in numerous examples, to include ‘If in doubt, do not shoot’ reinforces that no armed adversary was expected, and that there is no intent to use the ammunition unless absolutely necessary for defensive purposes.

2.69 The carriage of live ammunition is explained in records for safety and other purposes including wild animal threats. The added burden, stress and risk of carrying live rounds is acknowledged but not a specific consideration for nature of service classification however it does meet the elements of the definition in that *peacetime classification acknowledges that an element of hazard and risk is inherent to Australian Defence Force service.*

2.70 Additionally the definition addresses this consideration *and that personnel are appropriately trained and compensated for their specific military occupation.* There are many examples of Rifle Company Butterworth’s preparation, training, briefings, and live fire activities to support readiness and its likely tasks at Air Base Butterworth.

2.71 As considered in the warlike and non-warlike assessments the weapons’ status of ‘load’, ‘action’ and ‘instant’ are directions given by local commanders subject to the circumstances presented to them at the time, including during training.

2.72 Consistent with the nature of service warlike and non-warlike considerations, the term ‘Whilst on War Service’ and supporting definitions provided increased powers of punishment for officers commanding and commanding officers of units deployed overseas, and does not refer to a nature of service classification.

Summary

2.73 It is assessed that Rifle Company Butterworth service (1970-1989) meets the elements of the 2018 ‘peacetime’ definition.

Conclusion

2.74 The aforementioned paragraphs address the Defence Honours and Awards Appeals Tribunal's request for Defence to analyse Rifle Company Butterworth service in the period 1970 to 1989 against the elements of each of the 1993 and 2018 Nature of Service definitions.

2.75 This assessment concludes that Rifle Company Butterworth service is not supported by the 1993 or 2018 nature of service warlike or non-warlike classifications, however, Rifle Company Butterworth service does accord with the elements of the 2018 nature of service peacetime service classification.

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 3 to EC23-000372

Analysis of Attachment F to Submission 65b

Background

3.1 Defence acknowledges the Tribunal's request for further analysis and in response restates its position as detailed in the letter of 16 November 2022 to the Tribunal (EC22-004607). In summary, the Defence position is that:

- Operations are not compared against each other to determine the nature of service.
- Nature of service assessments are not influenced by precedent.
- Operations are assessed on their own merits.

3.2 Defence refers the Tribunal to relevant responses provided at Enclosure 5 to this submission and in particular *Section 2 – Service classifications for Defence honours and awards purposes*.

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 4 to EC23-000372
Provision of Specified Documents

Background

4.1 The Tribunal asked Defence to provide the following documents:

- a. Ministerial submissions proposing and seeking agreement to the 2018 updated nature of service definitions;
- b. Ministerial submissions relating to the 1988 scaling back of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments;
- c. Ministerial submissions relating to the 1989 change to the role and purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments;
- d. Senator Feeney's 2012 letter to the Hon Bruce Billson MP; and
- e. Any record of the discussion requested by then Minister Chester on 22 February 2019.

Defence Response

4.2 In relation to paragraph 4.1.a, provided at Attachment P is a copy of Ministerial Advice MA17-003644: Review of the Definitions of Nature of Service Classifications for Australian Defence Operations. This brief was signed by the then Minister for Defence on 27 February 2018.

4.3 In relation to paragraph 4.1.d, provided at Attachment Q is a copy of then Senator the Hon David Feeney's 21 March 2012 letter to the Hon Bruce Billson MP.

4.4. In relation to paragraph 4.1.e, provided at Attachment R is a copy of Ministerial Submission MS19-000464: Supplementary Advice to MC18-003435 - Rifle Company Butterworth (RCB) - Follow on from MINDP/VCDF Meeting held on 5 March 201[9].²⁰

Scaling back of and change to the role and purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth Deployments

4.5 Defence has not identified any ministerial submissions relating to the scaling back of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments in the late 1980s. Available open source information demonstrate the Royal Australian Air Force presence at Butterworth was significantly reduced at that time, while the presence of Rifle Company Butterworth continued though that period and beyond.

4.6 On 16 March 1984, the then Minister for Defence, the Hon Gordon Scholes MP, said the Royal Australian Air Force is to maintain a presence at Butterworth, and among other things, the "... we will continue to deploy ... the Army company to Butterworth".²¹ Minister Scholes discussed this policy in April 1984 in talks with the then Prime Minister of Malaysia, Dr Mahathir.²² Related media releases are provided at Attachment S and T.

²⁰ The document title incorrectly states '5 March 2016'. It should read '5 March 2019'.

²¹ Defence News Release No. 44/84, 'RAAF to remain at Butterworth', 16 March 1984.

²² Defence News Release No. 72/84, 'Defence Minister holds discussions with Malaysian Prime Minister, 24 April 1984.

OFFICIAL

4.7 The 1987 Defence White Paper (Attachment U) affirmed the Government's policy, observing:

"A squadron of RAAF Mirage fighters stationed at Butterworth in Malaysia is our primary contribution to the Integrated Air Defence System which operates under the FPDA. This contribution will be maintained after the F/A-18s replace the Mirages by rotational deployments of F/A-18s to Butterworth and Singapore, supplemented by F-111s."²³

...

"Australia will continue to deploy an Army rifle company to Malaysia under the FPDA, and to operate Orion long range maritime patrol aircraft from Butterworth to maintain surveillance over the South China Sea and north-east Indian Ocean."²⁴

...

"The [Hawke] Government has previously announced that the RAAF presence at Butterworth Air Base in Malaysia is to be maintained after the withdrawal of the Mirage fighters from service by rotational deployments of the new F/A-18 Hornet tactical fighter to Malaysia and Singapore, supplemented on some occasions by F-111 aircraft."²⁵

...

"The Government has also announced its commitment to continue to deploy an Australian Army rifle company in Malaysia under the auspices of the FPDA."²⁶

4.8 The Defence Report 1987-88 (Attachment V) reflects:

"The nature of the Royal Australian Air Force presence at Butterworth changed with the withdrawal and disbandment of 79 Squadron (Mirage aircraft) in May 1988. Rotational deployments of strike and fighter aircraft which are planned for a minimum of at least 16 weeks each year to Butterworth and Singapore for a series of air defence exercises will begin later in 1988".²⁷

4.9 The withdrawal of 79 Squadron was soon followed by the headquarters and the base squadron which were disbanded on 30 June 1988. On 1 July 1988, Royal Australian Air Force Support Unit Butterworth was formed in place of Base Squadron Butterworth.²⁸ It became 324 Combat Support Squadron in the late 1990s, and then 19 Squadron in 2014.

4.10 On the face of it, these events did not create a like scaling back of Rifle Company Butterworth. As indicated above, Government statements and the 1987 White Paper express

²³ Department of Defence, *The Defence of Australia 1987*, Australian Government Publishing Service, Canberra, March 1987, para. 1.38

²⁴ *Ibid.*, para. 1.39.

²⁵ *Ibid.*, para. 2.39.

²⁶ *Ibid.*, para. 2.39.

²⁷ Department of Defence, *Defence Report 1987-88*, Australian Government Publishing Service, Canberra, 1988, p. 15.

²⁸ See Royal Australian Air Force Historical Section, *Units of the Royal Australian Air Force: A Concise History, Volume 1: Introduction, Bases, Supporting Organisations*, Australian Government Publishing Service, Canberra, 1995, pp. 124-7; and Chris Clark and Sanu Kainikara (eds), 'Butterworth: The RAAF's Only Overseas Base', in *Pathfinder Collection Volume 1*, Air Power Development Centre, Canberra, 2005, pp. 141-4 (a copy is at Document 20 of 'Rifle Company Butterworth Package of Inquiry Documents – For Public Release').

OFFICIAL

clear intent that Australia will continue to deploy an Army rifle company to Malaysia under the Five Power Defence Arrangements.

4.11 The presence of Rifle Company Butterworth continued past the 31 December 1989 terminal date of the Australian Service Medal with Clasp 'SE ASIA', and the three-month rotational deployments continue to this day. Of note, the Defence Report 1989-90 (Attachment W) which covers the period leading up to and beyond 31 December 1989, states:

“We maintained our commitment to the Five Power Defence Arrangements through our presence at Butterworth and participation in the Integrated Air Defence System (IADS) and Five Power exercises. The Australian presence at Butterworth included rotations F/A-18 and F-111 deployments from Australia, P-3C long-range maritime patrol aircraft conducting surveillance operations and an infantry company for base security.”²⁹

²⁹ Department of Defence, *Defence Report 1989-90*, Australian Government Publishing Service, Canberra, 1990, p. 122.

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 5 to EC23-000372

Preliminary Questions of 19 August 2022

Background

5.1 Attached to the Tribunal's letter DHAAT/OUT/2022/547 of 24 November 2022 is the preliminary list of questions issued by the Tribunal on 19 August 2022 under cover of DHAAT/OUT/2022/485. Pages 4 to 11 inclusive of DHAAT/OUT/2022/547 refer.

5.2 The Tribunal annotated the list of questions identifying where the Tribunal no longer requires answers; or has documentation, research material or information available in submissions to address particular questions.

Defence Response

5.3 The preliminary list of questions has been broken down into eight sections. As detailed in the covering letter, Defence provides responses to questions where information is available at this point in time. For several questions, responses have not been provided and instead an explanation has been included to identify whether further work is underway or a response is not be able to be provided. Where the reason for no response or a partial response is that further work is underway required, Defence will provide a further submission with these responses in due course and when complete. Alternatively, Defence representatives will be prepared to discuss these questions at a future hearing.

OFFICIAL

Section 1 – Service classifications for Australian Defence Force management purposes

Section 1 comprises three questions which Defence has labelled 1(a) through 1(c) for ease of reference.

1(a) During the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, what terms were used by the Australian Defence Force to classify the nature of different types of Australian Defence Force service (e.g., warlike, non-warlike, peacetime, other) for Australian Defence Force management purposes?

- *What was the definition of each such term?*
- *What was the statutory, Government, Ministerial, Australian Defence Force or other authority for each such definition?*
- *If these terms changed during the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, or retrospectively, when did this occur?*

1(b) Following the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, what terms have been or are now used to classify the nature of different types of Australian Defence Force service (e.g. warlike, non-warlike, peacetime, other) for Australian Defence Force management purposes?

- *What was/is the definition of each such term?*
- *What was/is the statutory, Government, Ministerial, Australian Defence Force or other authority for each such definition?*

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised the above questions have been adequately answered by the materials relating to the 1993 Cabinet endorsed definitions and the 2018 ministerial updates to those definitions, *except that it seeks ministerial submissions proposing and seeking agreement to the 2018 updated nature of service definitions*. This is addressed in Enclosure 4 to this submission.

1(c) Since 1970, what overseas Australian Defence Force service has been declared as warlike for Australian Defence Force management purposes?

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised it no longer requires this question to be answered, *so long as the more detailed and complete analysis of the matrix submitted as Attachment F to Submission 65b is provided*.

This is addressed in Enclosure 3 to this submission.

OFFICIAL

Section 2 – Service classifications for Defence honours and awards purposes

Section 2 comprises five questions which Defence has labelled 2(a) through 2(e) for ease of reference.

2(a) Do the definitions of “non-warlike”, “warlike” and “peacetime” service used for ADF management purposes equally apply when those terms are used in Regulations relating to Defence honours and awards?

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised it no longer requires this question to be answered, *unless Defence contends that Cabinet Decision 1691 did not provide that the 1993 definitions were to apply equally for conditions of service, veterans’ entitlements and medallion recognition.*

Consistent with its submission of 06 July 2022, Defence maintains that the definitions of “warlike”, “non-warlike” and “peacetime” service used for nature of service and veterans’ entitlements purposes do not apply to the terms in Regulations relating to Defence Honours and Awards.

Defence acknowledge that Cabinet Minute 1691 of 17 May 1993 includes the statement that Cabinet agreed ‘the recommendation for the award of medals would be aligned to the definitions of “warlike” and “non-warlike” service.’

Subsequent to the 17 May 1993 Cabinet Decision, two relevant reviews occurred which included several recommendations for consideration by government:

- the 1994 Committee of Inquiry into Defence and Defence Related Awards (CIDA); and
- the 2000 Review of Service Entitlement Anomalies in respect of South-East Asian Service 1955-1975 (Mohr).

In support of its position, Defence relies on the later Cabinet Minute JH00/0088 of 21 March 2000 which included the statement that Cabinet agreed ‘the awarding of medals is not a suitable test for repatriation entitlements and, where appropriate, any such nexus be removed from the Act;’

The Cabinet Submission JH00/0088 included the following relevant paragraph:

‘15. A constant theme in the Mohr Report is the inappropriateness of maintaining any connection between the award of medals and entitlements to repatriation benefits. This is consistent with the theme of CIDA which considered that matters relating to honours and awards should be considered on their merits and should not be influenced by the possible impact, real or perceived, on veterans’ entitlements. I believe this policy should be adopted formally and the existing nexus should be removed as part of the legislative amendments required.’

OFFICIAL

The Mohr Report states:

‘I hasten to confirm the generally expressed view that the receipt of medals does not necessarily mean that repatriation benefits would flow as a natural consequence or vice versa. The two areas of benefits are really unconnected and for good reasons.’

In further support of the Defence position on the separation between nature of service/veterans’ entitlements and medallic recognition, Defence highlights the 28 June 2001 approval by the then Minister Assisting the Minister for Defence, the Hon Bruce Scott MP, of the policy for the future award of the Australian Service Medal and Australian Service Medal 1945-1975 including a number of specific conditions for which the medal may be awarded. That policy document has already been provided to the Tribunal.³⁰

The declaration of ‘non-warlike’ for nature of service and veterans’ entitlements purposes was just one of several possible conditions for the declaration of ‘non-warlike’ for the purpose of the award of the Australian Service Medal. The Minister agreed ‘that the ASM should still be awarded for service which, although it may not be subject of a formal declaration of ‘non-warlike’ operation by the responsible Minister, can still be regarded as non-warlike service and declared accordingly under the ASM 1945-75/ASM regulations’.

2(b) *Has any service classified as “warlike” for Australian Defence Force management purposes not been recognised as “warlike” for the purposes of Defence honours and awards?*

Defence Response:

To inform this response, Defence refers to the *Veterans’ Entitlements (Warlike) Determination 2019*, Compilation No. 3 dated 6 April 2022 ([Attachment X](#)). This is an authorised compilation of determinations of warlike service made under subsection 5C(1) of the *Veterans’ Entitlements Act 1986*.

Most of the operations listed in the determination have been recognised as ‘warlike’ for the purpose of awarding the Australian Active Service Medal. Some are not recognised by the Australian Active Service Medal because of the evolution of Defence honours and awards, or the small numbers of personnel involved through Third Country Deployment arrangements.

For example, the Australian Operational Service Medal was instituted in 2012 and succeeds the Australian Active Service Medal and Australian Service Medal. It was instituted as the preferred form of medallic recognition for future Australian Defence Force operations, irrespective of the Nature of Service classification. Relevant commentary is provided in the dot points below.

- *Item 1 – Vietnam, 12 January 1973 to 29 April 1975*

The Australian Active Service Medal 1945-1975 with Clasp ‘VIETNAM’ recognises service up to and including 27 January 1973, and the Australian

³⁰ Chief of the Defence Force minute CDF 777/2000 to the Minister Assisting the Minister for Defence, ‘ADF Medals Policy – where we have been and where we are going’, 2 January 2001.

OFFICIAL

Active Service Medal with Clasp 'VIETNAM 1975' recognises service in the period 29 March 1975 to 28 April 1975.

- *Items 13, 15, 20, 21 and 22 – Allied Operations*

Australian Defence Force personnel deployed on these operations with a foreign defence force under Third Country Deployment arrangements. Participating Australian Defence Force personnel were dual force assigned to the equivalent Australian operation (Operation SLIPPER) to receive the appropriate conditions of service package. This includes the Australian Active Service Medal with Clasp 'ICAT' and if applicable, the Afghanistan Medal.

- *Item 27 – Libya, 31 March 2011 to 31 October 2011*

Due to the small number of Australian Defence Force personnel deployed on this operation under approved Third Country Deployment arrangements, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization Non-Article 5 Medal was accepted as the preferred medallic recognition of this service.

- *Items 28 to 31 – Operations OKRA, HIGHROAD, AUGURY and STEADFAST*

These operations are recognised by the Australian Operational Service Medal - Greater Middle East Operation.

- *Item 32 – Operation ORENDA, on and after 1 April 2020*

Medallic recognition is being considered under the Australian Operational Service Medal framework.

2(c) *Has any service classified as “non-warlike” for Australian Defence Force management purposes not been recognised as “non-warlike” for the purposes of Defence honours and awards?*

Defence Response:

To inform this response, Defence refers to the *Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019*, Compilation No. 4 dated 5 April 2022 (Attachment Y). This is an authorised compilation of determinations of non-warlike service made under subsection 5C(1) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986*.

Most of the operations listed in the determination have been recognised as 'non-warlike' for the purpose of awarding the Australian Service Medal. Others are not recognised by the Australian Service Medal because of the short duration of the operation, the small numbers of personnel involved through Third Country Deployment arrangements or because they are recognised by another award.

For example, the Australian Operational Service Medal was instituted in 2012 and succeeds the Australian Active Service Medal and Australian Service Medal. It was instituted as the preferred form of medallic recognition for future Australian Defence

OFFICIAL

Force operations, irrespective of the Nature of Service classification. Relevant commentary is provided in the dot points below.

- *Item 4 – Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Survey Team in Congo, 25 July 1997 to 7 August 1997*

The extent of Australia's participation in this United Nations activity is not known. The volumes of the Official History of Australian Peacekeeping, Humanitarian and Post-Cold War Operations do not discuss it, nor is it mentioned in Peter Londey's earlier work, 'Other people's wars: a history of Australian peacekeeping' (Allen & Unwin, Crows Nest, 2004). The short duration of this activity (14 days) does not meet the threshold for an award of an Australian Service Medal.

- *Items 15 and 26 – Operation PLUMBOB, 8 to 24 June 2000; and Operation QUICKSTEP TONGA, 18 to 30 November 2006*

The short duration of these activities (17 and 13 days respectively) does not meet the threshold for an award of an Australian Service Medal.

- *Item 28 – Libya, 31 March 2011 to 31 October 2011*

Due to the small number of Australian Defence Force personnel deployed on this operation under approved Third Country Deployment arrangements, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization Non-Article 5 Medal was accepted as the preferred medallic recognition of this service.

- *Items 30 to 33A, 36 and 36A – Operations ACCORDION, MANITOU, OKRA, AUGURY and LITTEN*

These operations are recognised by the Australian Operational Service Medal - Greater Middle East Operation.

- *Item 34 – Operation HAWICK (MH17 air disaster in Ukraine)*

Eligible Australian Defence Force personnel who deployed as part of the whole-of-government response to the MH17 disaster were awarded the Humanitarian Overseas Service Medal with Clasp 'UKRAINE'.

- *Items 35 and 38 – Libya, 16 May 2016 to 2 August 2016, and 30 June 2017 to 5 June 2019 respectively*

A small number of Australian Defence Force personnel deployed on these operations under approved Third Country Deployment arrangements. There is no specific Australian medallic recognition for these operations. Members in receipt of a foreign service award may apply to have it approved for acceptance and wear.

- *Item 37 – Operation QUADRANT*

The Australian Service Medal with Clasp 'SPECIAL OPS' recognises eligible activities as determined by the Chief of the Defence Force.

OFFICIAL

- *Item 39 – Operation FORTITUDE*

Australia provided mentoring, training, advice and assistance to the Republic of Fiji Military Forces United Nations Disengagement Observer Force (UNDOF) contingent in the Israeli-occupied Golan Heights. Australia's contribution was one Australian Defence Force officer. Medallion recognition has not yet been decided.

- *Item 40 – Operation LILIA, on and after 25 November 2021*

Medallion recognition is being considered.

2(d) *Has any service classified as “peacetime” for Australian Defence Force management purposes been classified as “non-warlike” or “warlike” for the purposes of Defence honours and awards?*

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised it no longer requires this question to be answered.

Listed below are representative examples of peacetime service that have been declared to be ‘non-warlike’ for Defence honours and awards purposes, under the Australian Service Medal 1945-1975 Regulations and the Australian Service Medal Regulations respectively:

- Australian Service Medal 1945-1975 with Clasp ‘PNG’
- Australian Service Medal 1945-1975 and Australia Service Medal with Clasp ‘SE ASIA’
- Australian Service Medal with Clasp ‘IRIAN JAYA’
- Australian Service Medal with Clasp ‘MIDDLE EAST’
- Australian Service Medal 1945-1975 and Australia Service Medal with Clasp ‘SPECIAL OPS’ for specific operational activities determined by the Chief of the Defence Force
- Australian Service Medal with Clasp ‘CT/SR’

2(e) *When was medallion recognition extended to Rifle Company Butterworth service? What was the basis for this decision? Was there an associated nature of service review? If so, please provide a copy.*

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that the documents already available satisfy this question.

OFFICIAL

Section 3 – Service classifications for Department of Veterans' Affairs

Section 3 comprises six questions which Defence has labelled 3(a) through 3(f) for ease of reference:

3(a) *Has any service classified as “warlike” for Australian Defence Force management purposes not been declared as “warlike” for Department of Veterans' Affairs purposes?*

3(b) *Has any service classified as “non-warlike” for Australian Defence Force management purposes not been declared as “non-warlike” for Department of Veterans' Affairs purposes?*

3(c) *Has any Australian Defence Force service not declared as “warlike” for Australian Defence Force management purposes or for defence honours and awards eligibility purposes ever been declared as “warlike” for Department of Veterans' Affairs purposes?*

3(d) *Has service on Rifle Company Butterworth deployments been declared as “non-warlike” for Department of Veterans' Affairs purposes?*

3(e) *On 4 October 2007 then Minister Billson advised the Rifle Company Butterworth Review Group that he was prepared to declare Rifle Company Butterworth service as “hazardous” under section 120 of the Veterans Entitlements Act 1986. Was that declaration made? If not, why not?*

3(f) *Does Defence disagree with any statement made by Department of Veterans' Affairs about service classifications at the following links:*

- <https://clik.dva.gov.au/service-eligibility-assistant/additional-information/understanding-service-eligibility-instruments>
- <https://www.dva.gov.au/sites/default/files/files/health%20and%20wellbeing/rehabilitation/rchandbook.pdf>³¹

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it regards the documentation already available to it and the advice provided at hearing by the Department of Veterans' Affairs as sufficient in relation to these matters. While acknowledging that advice, Defence makes the following comments against question 3(c):

It is important to be aware that eligibility for Defence honours and awards is separate and distinct from eligibility for repatriation benefits. A person may be eligible for medallic recognition, but not meet the relevant criteria for repatriation benefits or vice versa. For instance, there may be a minimum timeframe of service within a specified area required for medallic eligibility; but to be eligible for repatriation benefits a person's presence in the area, without any set timeframe, can be sufficient, provided any other relevant eligibility criteria are met. Conversely, a person may have been granted a medal in relation to service but on investigation be found not to have met the requirements of Veterans' Affairs legislation.

³¹ The link to the downloadable version of the *Rehabilitation and Compensation Advocate's Handbook* is now www.dva.gov.au/sites/default/files/2022-08/ATDP-RandC-Handbook-v1.05-180522.pdf.

OFFICIAL

In other instances some individuals may have been granted, for example, the Australian Active Service Medal as an eligible civilian but not have eligibility for benefits from the Department of Veterans' Affairs.

Further, Defence notes that often service may be referred to as 'non-warlike' for medallic recognition purposes (meaning service other than warlike), but is not declared non-warlike for the purpose of the Veterans' Entitlements Act or the Military Rehabilitation and Compensation Act, and so does not attract the benefits associated with that service under those Acts. For example, eligibility for the Australian Service Medal with Clasp 'CT/SR' does not equate to 'non-warlike' service for the purpose of Veterans' Affairs legislation. However, there are no occasions where there has not been a declaration of warlike service, or no medal provided for 'warlike' service, that has separately been declared as warlike for Veterans' Affairs legislation purposes.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Section 4 – Legal basis of Australian presence on Air Base Butterworth

Section 4 comprises three questions which Defence has labelled 4(a) through 4(c) for ease of reference.

The Tribunal advised that it considers the documentation currently available in submissions and from the Tribunal's own research adequately deals with these issues. While acknowledging that advice, Defence makes the following comments:

4(a) During the period of the Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, was Air Base Butterworth:

- *an Australian air base;*
- *a Malaysian air base; or*
- *a joint Malaysian/Australian air base?*

Defence Response:

The Royal Australian Air Force formally took control of Air Base Butterworth from the Royal Air Force on 30 June 1958. In line with the Anglo-Malayan agreement, ownership of Air Base Butterworth was transferred to the Malaysian Government in March 1970, but the Royal Australian Air Force was immediately given joint control over the base. The base was transferred to the Royal Malaysian Air Force on 31 March 1979.

4(b) During the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, what was the legal basis under which Royal Australian Air Force assets and personnel were based at Air Base Butterworth? – please provide relevant documents.

Defence Response:

The Five Power Defence Arrangements signed on 1 December 1971 (retrospective to 1 November 1971) was the legal basis under which Royal Australian Air Force assets and personnel were based at Air Base Butterworth. The Five Power Defence Arrangements included a provisions that Australia, New Zealand and the United Kingdom may maintain forces in Malaysia and Singapore, undertake to provide training ... and related assistance to the Armed Forces of Malaysia and Singapore.

In a 1 December 1971 note to the Malaysian Deputy Minister of Defence, the Australian High Commissioner, Kuala Lumpur, said:

“... (c) The Government of Malaysia agrees that the Australian force stationed at Butterworth, composed of two squadrons of fighter aircraft and their supporting units and from time to time an infantry company, may continue to be stationed there, so long as that is mutually agreed, in accordance with the purposes expressed in the Five-Power Communique of the 16 April 1971. With the object of securing mutual agreement, the Government of Australia and the Government of Malaysia will consult together over any proposal to alter the size or character of that force.”

OFFICIAL

4(c) During the period of the Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, what were the legal rights and obligations of the Australian Defence Force to protect Royal Australian Air Force assets and personnel based at Air Base Butterworth? – please provide relevant documents, such as the Joint Defence Plan, OPORD 1/71. Annex A to Air Base Butterworth OPORD 1/71 (Sep 71) Legal aspects of a shared defence situation in the defence of ABB, or similar.

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Section 5 – Purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments

Section 5 comprises five questions which Defence has labelled 5(a) through 5(e) for ease of reference.

5(a) Does Defence now contend that the sole or primary purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments was training:

- *for Rifle Company Butterworth personnel;*
- *for Malaysian defence personnel; or*
- *jointly with Malaysian defence personnel?*

Defence Response:

Defence maintains the position that the role of Rifle Company Butterworth was to provide a ground presence in Malaysia, to conduct training in accordance with parent battalions' training requirements and to assist, if required, in the protection of Australian assets at Air Base Butterworth.

An interim directive to the Officer Commanding the rifle company detached to Air Base Butterworth states the purpose of the detachment as (Attachment Z):

“3. The primary purpose of maintaining a detached company at Butterworth is to provide an Australian (and New Zealand) presence in Malaysia, to assist in enhancing ANZ political and diplomatic influence in the area and to assist in the development of Malaysia's military forces and foster co-operation with them.

4. In addition, in the event of civil disturbances and, when approved by HQ 28 Commonwealth Infantry Brigade, your company may be used to:

- a. Supplement the normal protective security of Air Base Butterworth; and
- b. Assist with the protective security of RAAF Butterworth families, should such protection be necessary.”³²

Under the 'Training' heading it states: '.... you are to undertake appropriate training to prepare your company for its duties IAW ABB local defence plan'. Followed by 'Throughout its tour of duty, your company will continue unit training in accordance with the Training Directive issued by your parent battalion'.³³

Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction 2/79 dated 6 July 1979 (Attachment AA) states the tasks of Rifle Company Butterworth as:

³² 'Interim Directive to Officer Commanding a Rifle Company Detached to Air Base Butterworth', May 1971, on NAA: A703, 564/8/28 Part 3, 'RAAF Butterworth - Ground defence plans'. A digitised copy of this file can be accessed to the National Archives of Australia *RecordSearch* database.

³³ Ibid.

OFFICIAL

- “a. to train in accordance with instructions issued by the commanding officer of the parent battalion;
- b. to be prepared to train, in conjunction with the Malaysian Armed Forces, on combined exercises; and
- c. to undertake security duties as directed by OC RAAF Butterworth.”³⁴

5(b) Does Defence agree that the sole or primary purpose of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments was the protection of Australian personnel and assets based at Air Base Butterworth? If not, what does Defence say was the sole or primary purpose?

Defence Response:

Defence does not agree with that view. Please refer to response to question 5(a) above.

5(c) In what overseas countries other than Malaysia did the Royal Australian Air Force have assets and personnel based during the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments?

- *In each such case, were Australian Army assets and personnel deployed for the protection of those Royal Australian Air Force assets and personnel?*
- *What was the status at each relevant time of Air Force’s Airfield Defence Guard mustering? Why was infantry deployed for the defence of an airbase in lieu of the Air Force mustering who (now) are responsible for air base security?*

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered.

5(d) Following the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments, in what overseas countries other than Malaysia has the Royal Australian Air Force had assets and personnel based?

- *In each such case, were Australian Army assets and personnel deployed for the protection of those Royal Australian Air Force assets and personnel?*

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered.

5(e) Apart from major exercises, at any Royal Australian Air Force base in Australia, from 1970 to date, has the Australian Army provided protection for Royal Australian Air Force assets and personnel?

- *If yes, which bases, when and for what reason?*
- *In each such case, were the rostering of Army personnel the same as those for Rifle Company Butterworth personnel during the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments?*

³⁴ Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction No 2/79, ‘General Instructions for the Australian Rifle Company at Air Base Butterworth’, 6 July 1979, para. 5.

OFFICIAL

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information that this has occurred.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Section 6 – Threat to Air Base Butterworth security

Section 6 comprises two questions which Defence has labelled 6(a) and 6(b) for ease of reference.

6(a) *From time to time during the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments:*

- ***Was there an operation declaration of a state of emergency or similar by the Malaysian Government?***
- ***Did the Malaysian Government enact or authorise the use of special security powers?***

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered.

6(b) *During the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments:*

- ***What from time to time was the assessed security risk to Australian assets and personnel at Air Base Butterworth?***
- ***What from time to time was the assessed consequence of an attack on Australian assets and personnel at Air Base Butterworth?***

In each case, please provide copies of the risk and consequence assessments.

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered, *unless Defence believes there are other documents of relevance beyond what has already been provided in submissions. The Tribunal notes that, in this question, the word “risk” is used in the same sense as in the 1993 and 2018 definitions. The Tribunal would be appreciative if Defence could provide a Military Threat Assessment that it considers would be issued today in circumstances where Australian Defence Force personnel were subject to the same likelihood of harm as evidenced by those historical documents.*

Defence acknowledges the Tribunal would be appreciative if it could provide a Military Threat Assessment that it considers would be issued today in circumstances where Australian Defence Force personnel were subject to the same likelihood of harm as evidenced by those historical documents.

Defence commands responsible for conducting Military Threat Assessments (the Defence Intelligence Group, Joint Operations Command and Joint Health Command) conduct the assessments on current Australian Defence Force operational service. Defence is not able to provide the Tribunal with a hypothetical modern day Military Threat Assessment based on service described in historical documents.

OFFICIAL

Section 7 – Preparation of Rifle Company Butterworth personnel

Section 7 comprises five questions which Defence has labelled 7(a) through 7(e) for ease of reference.

7(a) *What instructions were issued from time to time for the content of briefing to be provided to Rifle Company Butterworth personnel before deployment to Air Base Butterworth from either Singapore or Australia?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

7(b) *What pre-conditions had to be met by Army personnel before deployment with Rifle Company Butterworth?*

- *Additional training?*
- *Physical fitness?*
- *Provisioning and equipment standards?*
- *Consent to posting?*
- *Current will (or acknowledgment of decision not to complete)?*
- *Numbers of medically qualified or trained personnel?*

Defence Response:

The available End of Tours Reports indicated that pre-deployment training was conducted in accordance with Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction 2/79 dated 6 July 1979 (Annex B to Attachment AA refers).³⁵

Australian Defence Force personnel are required to maintain a directed level of fitness, regardless of their duties or posted location. The Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction 2/79 states that personnel are to 'DP1' at the time of their deployment, and only personnel of good character and performance are to be chosen.³⁶

No additional kitting was required as personnel carried all of their required equipment.

Personnel were not posted to Rifle Company Butterworth. Rather, they were posted to their parent battalion and deployed to Malaysia if their company was assigned for Rifle Company Butterworth duty.

In a 1971 Army Routine Order (excerpt at Attachment AB) it is stated that "Units are to ensure that each member on full time duty who is eligible to make a will is advised and encouraged to do so."³⁷

³⁵ Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction No 2/79, Annex B.

³⁶ Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction No 2/79, paras. 42-3.

³⁷ Army Routine Order, 'Wills – Making Custody and Disposal', 29 October 1971.

OFFICIAL

Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction 2/79 states the strength of Rifle Company is to include two medical orderlies.³⁸ Thus it was the practice to have Royal Australian Army Medical Corps qualified personnel, with all personnel having completed some form of medical training including basic first aid.

7(c) *Did these pre-conditions, or any of them, differ from the pre-conditions for deployment on peacetime service in Australia? If so, in what respects?*

Defence Response:

The pre-conditions for deployment on peacetime service in Australia vary dependent on the deployment and may encompass some or all of the conditions identified above.

7(d) *Why were Rifle Company Butterworth personnel required to undergo jungle training before deployment, given that their Rifle Company Butterworth responsibility was confined within the boundary of Air Base Butterworth?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

7(e) *What pre-conditions must be met by Army personnel assigned to garrison duty within Australia?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

³⁸ Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction No 2/79, para. 7.

OFFICIAL

Section 8 – Situation on Rifle Company Butterworth deployment

Section 8 comprises 40 questions which Defence has labelled 8(a) through 8(an) for ease of reference.

8(a) *What instructions were issued from time to time for the content of briefing to be provided to Rifle Company Butterworth personnel upon arrival at Air Base Butterworth?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(b) *What instructions were issued from time to time for the content of briefing to be subsequently provided to Rifle Company Butterworth personnel during their period at Air Base Butterworth?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(c) *Was the application of military discipline during Rifle Company Butterworth deployments the same as that for peacetime service in Australia?*

- *If not, what was the nature and reason for any difference?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(d) *While on Rifle Company Butterworth deployment:*

- *Could Rifle Company Butterworth personnel be accompanied by spouses or children?*
- *Were Rifle Company Butterworth personnel required to live on base?*
- *Were Rifle Company Butterworth personnel permitted to leave Air Base Butterworth while not on duty? If yes, on what conditions?*

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it considers this question to have been adequately answered.

Rifle Company Butterworth personnel were not accompanied by their dependents. However, there is evidence of spouses travelling to Butterworth on indulgence passages. For example, the End of Tour Report for C Company, 8/9 Battalion's deployment of September to December 1980 (Attachment J), states:

OFFICIAL

“27. The wives of 5 members took the opportunity to use the recently introduced OPSAT³⁹ provisions. These dependents were moved to Butterworth on RAAF 707. Due to the heavy bookings for the return journey they were forced to return home by civil air.

28. In all cases they were able to obtain accommodation at the RAAF Hostel, Penang. This is available on a daily basis but members on OPSAT have a nil priority. Cost will be \$M10.00 per day, exclusive of meals.”⁴⁰

The available End of Tour Reports (Attachments F to O inclusive) provide consistent evidence that Rifle Company Butterworth personnel were granted local leave to visit Penang and Butterworth, and that arrangements were made for group tours to Bangkok and Singapore.

³⁹ Opportunity Space Available Travel.

⁴⁰ End of Tour Report – C Coy 8/9 RAR – 9 September 1980 to 3 December 1980, paras. 27-8.

OFFICIAL

8(e) During the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments:

- ***Were some Royal Australian Air Force personnel required to live on base?***
- ***Were some Royal Australian Air Force personnel permitted or allowed to live off base?***
- ***Were Royal Australian Air Force personnel living on base permitted to leave Air Base Butterworth while not on duty? If yes, on what conditions?***

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it considers this question to have been adequately answered.

8(f) What security arrangements were provided for Royal Australian Air Force personnel who did not live on base?

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(g) What plans were in place for the extraction of families from Malaysia in the event that it was required?

- ***Who was responsible for the maintenance of this plan?***
- ***Was this plan updated regularly, rehearsed, trialled or enacted?***
- ***What 'trip-wires' would likely have generated a decision to evacuate families from Malaysia?***
- ***On balance, and noting the numbers of dependents involved (approx. 2800), how long might this operation have taken, and what sort of lead time would have been required to prevent families from being exposed to unacceptable levels of risk?***

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(h) During the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments:

- ***Are there any records of hostile intrusions onto or attacks on Air Base Butterworth?***
- ***Are there any records of Rifle Company Butterworth personnel being injured or killed during deployment?***

Defence Response:

There are no records of hostile intrusions onto or attacks on Air Base Butterworth during the period of Rifle Company Deployments.

OFFICIAL

Defence is aware of four personnel who died because of incidents that occurred during their service with Rifle Company Butterworth in the period 1970 to 1989. None were battle casualties.

- 1203644 Private Wayne Charles Sutherland who died on 7 October 1971. He was struck by lightning during an exercise at Mersing.
- 1738959 Lance Corporal James Mills who died on 16 November 1978. Lance Corporal Mills was seriously injured in a motor vehicle accident on 4 November 1978 and admitted to 4 RAAF Hospital. On 11 November 1978 he was evacuated to Brisbane, where he died on 16 November 1978.
- 49785 Lance Corporal William Richard Barnfield who died on 4 May 1984, as a result of injuries sustained in a motor vehicle accident on 3 May 1984.
- 2303070 Private Philip Barry Curtiss who died on 10 February 1989 while on a period of short leave. Private Curtiss died due to misadventure in an accident aboard a passenger train in the vicinity of Nakhon Si Thammarat in Southern Thailand.

The available End of Tour reports speak in general terms of injuries, illnesses and hospitalisations that occurred during those rotations. Please refer to the relevant attachments. There is no evidence of any connection to the actions of a hostile force.

8(i) *Were Rifle Company Butterworth personnel issued with weapons any different to those issued to Army personnel on duty in Australia?*

- *If yes, what were those differences and why did they occur.*

Defence Response:

The available End of Tour reports indicate Rifle Company Butterworth carried and used standard infantry weapons to support their training.

8(j) *Did the service records of any Rifle Company Butterworth personnel contain a form AABS3 (or any other form) annotated “WOWS” or “Whilst on War Service” or similar?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(k) *Is there a nexus between a disciplinary environment (Whilst on War Service) and the physical environment to the extent that Whilst of War Service disciplinary standards apply exclusively to warlike situations?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

OFFICIAL

8(l) What records are there of Rifle Company Butterworth personnel:

- *conducting training of Malaysian military personnel;*
- *engaging in joint training with Malaysian military personnel;*
- *engaging in training away from Air Base Butterworth separately from Malaysian military personnel; and*
- *undertaking duty other than training away from Air Base Butterworth? - please provide details*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(m) What Rules of Engagement were issued to Rifle Company Butterworth personnel from time to time?

- *How did such Rules of Engagement differ from those issued to Army personnel in Vietnam or other conflicts?*
- *Are Rules of Engagement issued to Army personnel on garrison duty in Australia?*
 - o *How do such ROE differ from those issued to Rifle Company Butterworth personnel?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(n) In the C2 arrangements of the day, how would ROE REQUESTs or equivalent have likely been handled/processed?

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(o) Who within the ADF “owned” the Rifle Company Butterworth Rules of Engagement/Orders for Opening Fire; who was accountable for processing ROE REQUESTs or equivalent?

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(p) Noting that the Rifle Company Butterworth Orders for Opening Fire limited the ability to engage beyond the base perimeter, is there any evidence that off-base operations, such as guarding the Mirage crash site approx. 5km North of Air Base Butterworth in Apr 1974, any of the detachments to Paluda, or transits to and from the range, generated an ROE REQUEST for amended Rules of Engagement?

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any such evidence.

In response to a similar incident that occurred on 29 October 1981 involving the loss of Mirage A3-32, the End of Tour Report for B Company, 6 Battalion, Royal Australian Regiment (Attachment N) states the company provided a security piquet on the wreckage of the crashed Mirage from 29 October to 5 November 1981. The Officer Commanding described the Company's tasks as:

- “a. a three man piquet on the recovery boat above the wreckage site from 1600 hours to 0800 hours daily,
- b. a two man piquet to provide security for recovered wreckage on the beach, and
- c. a section to search the beach for wreckage on 31 Oct 81.”⁴¹

The report offers no indication that the personnel involved were armed whilst carrying out those duties.

8(q) *Are Australian Rules of Engagement seen as guidance or as direction to Commanders?*

Defence Response:

Rules of Engagement reflect a direction to commanders.

8(r) *Is the inherent right of self-defence (including the ability to employ lethal force) an artefact of Rules of Engagement/Law of Armed Conflict/National/International/Other Law?*

- ***Is an Australian civilian, for example, able to deploy lethal force in self-defence (subject to similar provisos/limitations just as the Rifle Company Butterworth could?)***

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(s) *Under the December 1978 Orders for Opening Fire, what level of force was available to the Rifle Company Butterworth to protect the base and its personnel (i.e. distinguishing between individual/unit self-defence and the right to protect others; and removing the inherent right of self-defence from consideration)?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

⁴¹ Officer Commanding B Company 6RAR, 'End of Tour Report, B Company 6RAR, 9 Sep to 9 Dec 81', 8 December 1981, para. 9.

OFFICIAL

8(t) In other words, did the Rifle Company Butterworth Rules of Engagement provide for the use of lethal force in the defence of others?

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(u) Where do the Rifle Company Butterworth Rules of Engagement (Orders for Opening Fire) sit on the 'spectrum' of Orders for Opening Fire options?

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(v) Noting that the M60 GPMG was routinely deployed as part of the Quick Reaction Force, how likely is it that the weapon could have been confidently employed in accordance with the Rules of Engagement, particularly with respect to the requirement to 'shoot to wound'?

Defence Response:

The General Purpose Machine Gun (GMPG) M60 was not designed as a 'precision weapon system' that can engage selected individual targets. It is an area weapon with a high rate of cyclic fire.

8(w) What should the Tribunal make of the size and nature of the Rifle Company Butterworth weapons holdings (including HEAT and Anti-Armour weapons and ammunition), particularly as it relates to the Rules of Engagement?

Defence Response:

The allocation of explosive ordnance for Rifle Company Butterworth may have been greater than within Australia due to the challenge of resupplying explosive ordnance to a place outside of Australia.

8(x) Throughout the duration of the deployment, how often was the Rifle Company Butterworth executive briefed/re-briefed on relevant changes to tactical environment?

- **How and when were these briefs conducted?**

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(y) Were there any Malaysian Armed Forces Liaison Officers assigned to the Rifle Company Butterworth on a standing basis?

Defence Response:

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Defence has not identified any information or evidence in relation to the presence of Malaysian Armed Forces Liaison Officers.

8(z) *Did the Rifle Company Butterworth have any Liaison Officer positions embedded within the Malaysian Armed Forces?*

Defence Response:

Liaison between Rifle Company Butterworth and the Malaysian Armed Forces and the Royal Australian Air Force was facilitated through 65 Ground Liaison Section.

Defence also notes Submission 036a which speaks to the submitter's duties as the Officer Commanding 65 Ground Liaison Section (later known as Land Command Liaison Section) in the period 1988 to 1990.

8(aa) *What was the mandated degree of weapons readiness for Rifle Company Butterworth personnel while on duty?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(ab) *What was the degree of weapons readiness as it applied to live rounds?*

Defence Response:

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(ac) *Was Quick Reaction Force temporal and tactical performance assessed by Rifle Company Butterworth staff (observers)?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(ad) *Were there routinely observers on the ground at Key Points throughout Quick Reaction Force drills?*

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(ae) *When were weapons issued (e.g., 0800 daily for the duration of Quick Reaction Force duty vs continuous access)?*

Defence Response:

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Defence is undertaking further work on this question and will provide a response to the Tribunal in due course when complete.

8(af) How often, given normal scheduling limitations, might any given Rifle Company Butterworth member have performed Quick Reaction Force duties, perimeter patrols or any other armed activity (not including training)?

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(ag) On average, what proportion of the three month tour would have been dedicated to other tasks/events including other individual or collective training, administration or leave?

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(ah) Were only those on Quick Reaction Force/Perimeter patrolling duties at any given time armed?

- **How were Lines Piquets armed?**

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(ai) Noting the above, how many days of a tour on average would a Rifle Company Butterworth member have carried a firearm?

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to answer this question and as a result a response cannot be provided.

8(aj) Is the extent to which the Rifle Company Butterworth was (permanently) armed a fair indication of the direct threat to the base? If not, why not?

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any information to support the assertion that Rifle Company Butterworth was permanently armed.

8(ak) Noting that the Rules of Engagement version attached to several submissions (Annex C Appendix 3 to AS RIFLE COY USOs) is dated December 1978, please provide copies of all versions of the Rules of Engagement issued during the period of Rifle Company Butterworth deployments.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Defence Response:

Defence has not identified any further versions of Rules of Engagement beyond what has already been located by the Tribunal and contained in submissions identified. Defence considers the available versions to be broadly representative of the Rules of Engagement for the duration of 1970 to 1989.

(al) Was every member of the Rifle Company Butterworth required to read and sign the Unit Standing Orders regularly?

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered.

8(am) Are there any indications that the Mirage accident (A3-18) in Apr 74 was the result of Communist Terrorist activity having regard to:

- ***Mission profile;***
- ***Failure modes/indications;***
- ***Likelihood of damage being sustained on departure?***

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered.

A digitised copy of the Royal Australian Air Force Court of Inquiry can be accessed through the National Archives of Australia *RecordSearch* database facility.⁴²

A short accident summary sourced from the History and Heritage Branch - Air Force (Attachment AC) attributes the cause of the accident to:

“The failure of a first stage compressor blade, outside the fence, caused extreme internal damage to the engine resulting in loss of thrust to the extent where engine power was insufficient to maintain aircraft height.”⁴³

8(an) What is the view of the Defence Force Safety Bureau in relation to bullet holes in the aircraft as reported in Submission 49 by Mr Les Ray?

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that it no longer requires this question to be answered.

⁴² NAA: E1079, R3: ‘Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry - Report on Accident to Mirage Aircraft A3-18 - Air Base Butterworth’.

⁴³ ‘Mirage Major Incident: A3-18’, held by the History and Heritage Branch - Air Force.

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 6 to EC23-000372

Supplementary Questions of 18 October 2022

Background

6.1 Attached to the Tribunal's letter DHAAT/OUT/2022/547 of 24 November 2022 is the list of four supplementary questions asked of Defence on 18 October 2022 under DHAAT/OUT/2022/520 (page 12 refers).

6.2 The Tribunal annotated the list of questions identifying where the Tribunal no longer requires answers; or has documentation, research material or information available in submissions to address particular questions.

6.3 Defence has labelled the four questions (a) through (d) for ease of reference.

Has there been any Cabinet or ministerial decision since 17 May 1993 that amends, revokes or otherwise affects Decision 1691 of that date; if so, please provide a copy of any such other decision and any associated Cabinet or Ministerial Submission.

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that Defence has already answered this question in relation to Cabinet Decision 1691, and requested further documentation in relation to ministerial decisions to update the 1993 definitions.

Further documentation in relation to this aspect is provided at Enclosure 4 to this submission.

On 18 September 2007 then Minister Billson signed instruments under the Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986 declaring service with Rifle Company Butterworth to be either non-warlike service or hazardous service. Has any submission been made to any Minister concerning the non-registration of those instruments on the Federal Register of Legislation or otherwise concerning the amendment, variation or revocation of those instruments; if so, please provide a copy of any such submission and of the ministerial decision made in response to any such submission.

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that this has already been answered by Defence, but Senator Feeney's letter to the Hon Bruce Billson MP and any record of discussions requested by Minister Chester are requested.

Further documentation in relation to this aspect is provided at Enclosure 4 to this submission.

OFFICIAL

In respect of each independent or ministerially directed inquiry or report that concerned service with Rifle Company Butterworth, please provide copies of:

- *Each submission made to any Minister concerning the acceptance or rejection of the findings or recommendations of the inquiry or report;*
- *Each decision made by the Minister in response to that submission; and*
- *Any media release or public announcement advising of that decision.*

[alternatively, if such documents have already been provided to the Tribunal by the Department, please advise where they may be found]

Defence Response:

The Tribunal advised that no further action is requested at this stage.

Please provide a response to Attachment F to Submission 65b from Rifle Company Butterworth Review Group and Rifle Company Butterworth Veterans' Group.

Defence Response:

This aspect is addressed at Enclosure 3 to this submission.

OFFICIAL

OFFICIAL

Enclosure 7 to EC23-000372

List of supporting attachments

Note: Redactions have been applied to Attachments G to O inclusive to remove personal identifying information.

- A. Headquarters Butterworth signal DTG 300345Z MAR 75, 30 March 1975
- B. Cablegram CH193949, 'Evacuation of Vietnamese Refugees', 30 March 1975
- C. Headquarters Butterworth signal DTG 300645Z MAR 75, 30 March 1975
- D. Cablegram CH193972, 'Evacuation of Vietnamese Refugees', 30 March 1975
- E. Rifle Company Butterworth Unit Standing Orders, 1978
- F. Major R. Chandler, 'C Coy 2/4 RAR Tour of Air Base Butterworth 14 Feb - 23 May 79', undated
- G. End of Tour Report - B Coy 1 RAR - 9 December 1981 to 17 February 1982
- H. End of Tour Report - Support Coy 1 RAR - 23 February 1980 to 12 June 1980
- I. End of Tour Report - C Coy 3 RAR - 11 June 1980 to 10 September 1980
- J. End of Tour Report - C Coy 8/9 RAR - 9 September 1980 to 3 December 1980
- K. End of Tour Report - B Coy 2/4 RAR - 3 December 1980 to 4 March 1981
- L. End of Tour Report - A Coy 1 RAR - 3 March 1981 to 2 June 1981
- M. End of Tour Report - B Coy 5/7 RAR - 2 June 1981 to 9 September 1981
- N. End of Tour Report - B Coy 6 RAR - 9 September 1981 to 9 December 1981
- O. End of Tour Report - D Coy 2/4 RAR - 16 February 1982 to 19 May 82
- P. Ministerial Advice MA17-003644: Review of the Definitions of Nature of Service Classifications for Australian Defence Operations
- Q. Senator the Hon David Feeney letter to the Hon Bruce Billson MP, 12 March 2012
- R. Ministerial Submission MS19-000484: Supplementary Advice to MC18-003435 - Rifle Company Butterworth (RCB) - Follow on from MINDP/VCDF Meeting held on 5 March 201[9]
- S. Defence News Release No. 44/84, 'RAAF to remain at Butterworth', 16 March 1984
- T. Defence News Release No. 72/84, 'Defence Minister holds discussions with Malaysian Prime Minister, 24 April 1984
- U. Defence White Paper 1987, *The Defence of Australia*, March 1987
- V. *Defence Report 1987-88*
- W. *Defence Report 1989-90*
- X. Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Determination 2019 (Compilation No. 3, 6 April 2022)
- Y. Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019 (Compilation No. 4, 5 April 2022)
- Z. Interim Directive to Officer Commanding a Rifle Company Detached to Air Base Butterworth, May 1971
- AA. Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction No 2/79, 6 July 1979
- AB. Excerpt of Army Routine Order 120-71, 'Wills - Making Custody and Disposal'
- AC. History and Heritage Branch - Air Force, 'Mirage Major Accident: A3-18'

OFFICIAL

UNCLASSIFIED
INWARD CABLEGRAM PRIORITY

DISTRIBUTION:
AMBASSADOR
DEFENCE ATTACHE

TOR 1224 30.3.75

O.CH193965 1303 30.3.75 UNC

TO.
PP SAIGON/1996

FM. CANBERRA /

U N C L A S S I F I E D

O P 300345Z MAR 75
FM HQBUT
TO RAYWPP/DEFAIR CANBERRA
UNFO RAYWYY/DEFENCE CANBERRA
RAYWEE/FOREIGN AFFAIRS CANBERRA
RAYWEE/AUSTEMBA SAIGON
RAYROP/HQOC
RAYRMD/HQRIC

BT

UNCLAS

AOR473

FOR DGOR FROM OC PD YOUR A0981 30 MAR 75 ACKNOWLEDGED PD
HERCULES STATUS AT BUTTERWORTH PD A97 209 CMM 215 CMM 180 CMM 181
CMM 190 ALL SERVICEABLE AND AWAITING FURTHER ORDERS PD A97 160
AIRBORNE AND RETURNING WMKB TO OFF LOAD ARA SECTION OF 8 SOLDIERS
BEFORE POSITIONING SAIGON LATER TODAY

BT

XC. O.CH193965 1303 30.2.75 1996

CM.

NNN

UNCLASSIFIED

RESTRICTED

FIELD FORCE COMMAND

STAFF INSTRUCTION NO 2/79

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY

AT AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH

AMENDMENTS

Amendment No

Date Entered

Signature

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

AUSTRALIAN ARMY

Telephone: 310455

INDIAL: 3393569

In Reply Please Quote:

722-K11-17

HEADQUARTERS FIELD FORCE COMMAND
Victoria Barracks
PADDINGTON NSW 2021

6 Jul 79

See Distribution List

HEADQUARTERS FIELD FORCE COMMAND STAFF INSTRUCTION NO 2/79
GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE AUSTRALIAN RIFLE
COMPANY AT AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH

- References:
- A. Directive by GOC FF Comd to OC Australian Rifle Coy Butterworth dated 6 Mar 78
 - B. Directive by OC RAAF Butterworth to Australian Rifle Coy Comd Butterworth

INTRODUCTION

General

1. Air Base Butterworth is a Royal Malaysian Air Force (RMAF) base situated on the Malaysian mainland, six miles north east of Penang Island. Security of the base is a Malaysian responsibility.
2. In accordance with the terms of the Five Power Defence Arrangements entered into by the Australian and Malaysian Governments, an Australian Army rifle company is deployed on a 3 monthly rotational basis from Australia to Air Base Butterworth to provide an opportunity for training and to develop further co-operation between the Malaysian Armed Forces and the Australian Defence Force. The rotational plan accords with Australian national policy of deploying troops overseas for training exercises.
3. The rifle company will undertake normal training including exercises with Malaysian Armed Forces when arranged and, if necessary, be available to assist in the protection of Australian personnel, assets and property at Air Base Butterworth as directed by the Officer Commanding RAAF Butterworth.
4. This instruction is in three parts:
 - a. Part 1 - Operational Aspects;
 - b. Part 2 - Personnel Aspects; and
 - c. Part 3 - Logistic Aspects

/ Part 1

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-2-

PART 1 - OPERATIONAL ASPECTS

Tasks

5. The tasks of the company are:
- a. to train in accordance with instructions issued by the commanding officer of the parent battalion;
 - b. to be prepared to train, in conjunction with the Malaysian Armed Forces, on combined exercises; and
 - c. to undertake security duties as directed by OC RAAF Butterworth.
6. An outline of the security duties required to be performed is contained in Reference B which has been distributed to Task Force headquarters level.

Manning

7. The strength of the company is to be 132 personnel. It is to be based on Establishment 4001-XX-2, and include the following personnel:
- a. two medical orderlies;
 - b. one storeman familiar with ammunition handling, storage and accounting procedures, (See also para 92);
 - c. one fitter armament;
 - d. six drivers, including at least one NCO, with B5 endorsed Army driving licences;
 - e. one physical training instructor;
 - f. three RAE tradesmen, including at least one carpenter; and
 - g. two military policemen, RACMP, including one qualified as an investigator.

Consideration should be given to including a postal NCO and an additional clerk.

8. Additional specialists, such as an FO or Education Offr may be included at the discretion of HQ 1 Div if desired, however the number of additional specialists is to be kept to a minimum, and the total of 132 all ranks is not to be exceeded.

9. In addition to the drivers included above, at least one soldier in each rifle and support section is to hold a current Army driving licence.

10. Regimental details of RACMP personnel are to be advised to 65 GL Sect as early as practicable, prior to deployment, for rostering purposes.

/ Replacement Policy

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-3-

Replacement Policy

11. Members who return to Australia during the tour of duty are not to be replaced, except in the case of key personnel.

Deployment

12. Planning.

- a. HQ 1 Div is to prepare and submit to HQ FF Comd, by 1 Oct annually, the planned programme for deployments during the following year, covering the following general periods:
 - (1) December to February;
 - (2) March to May;
 - (3) June to August; and
 - (4) September to November.
- b. Firm deployment dates for relief companies are determined by consultation between Army Office and Air Force Office, and will be notified at least four weeks prior to deployment.
- c. The actual mounting and withdrawal is to be conducted by HQ 1 Div.

13. Movement.

- a. All movement to and from Butterworth is to be by service air, including Butterworth Courier (C130) and B707, supplemented where required by Defence Force Charter (DFC), arranged by Air Force Office.
- b. Movement arrangements are to be made by the parent battalion through that unit's normal servicing MCO.
- c. Movement documentation is to be endorsed with the function purpose code 3-4293.
- d. ARMYLOAD RICHMOND should be included as an information addressee on all messages relating to the movement of the reconnaissance and advance parties, to enable tentative bookings to be made. Such bookings will remain subject to confirmation through the normal MCO system when the visits are confirmed.

14. Reconnaissance.

- a. The company commander and CQMS of the nominated relief company are to conduct a reconnaissance of the Butterworth area and training facilities about eight weeks prior to deployment. Where possible, the reconnaissance should coincide with the deployment of a platoon from the current company to PULADA (see paragraph 20 c), and should allow for about seven days in country.

/ b. HQ FF Comd

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-4-

- b. HQ FF Comd will advise HQ 1 Div of suitable dates once details of FULADA training are known.
- c. Staff clearance action is to be initiated by HQ 1 Div through HQ FF Comd not later than four weeks prior to the proposed reconnaissance. 65 GL Sect is to be an information addressee on all such correspondence.

15. Advance Party. A company advance party is to move to Butterworth by RAAF Courier at least seven working days before the arrival of the main body. The advance party is to include:

- a. Coy 2IC;
- b. CQMS;
- c. Tpt NCO;
- d. ammunition storeman; and
- e. the commander of the first duty section.

It is recommended that all company group Army driving licences be taken to Butterworth by the advance party for endorsement by the RAAF Transport Officer. (See paragraph 109 b).

16. Main Body. The main body is to move to Butterworth by air as arranged by Air Force Office. (See paragraph 12 b). Return movement to Australia is by return flight of the aircraft which positions the relieving company. Key personnel are not to return to Australia prior to arrival of the relieving company without the approval of HQ FF Comd.

Briefing

17. The Company Commander is to report to S02 (Ops) HQ FF Comd for briefing immediately prior to departure on his reconnaissance. Date and timings are to be confirmed with HQ FF Comd fourteen days prior to his departure. A whole day should be allowed for the briefing. (See also paragraph 14).

18. On his return from the reconnaissance, the company commander is to contact S02 (Ops) HQ FF Comd by telephone for debriefing.

Training

19. Prior to Departure.

a. Individual Training.

- (1) All members are to be brought to DP1 standard.
- (2) All members are to be briefed on Malaysian history, culture and social customs etc prior to embarkation. These briefings should be arranged through formation intelligence staffs.
- (3) See also paragraphs 50 and 92.

/ b. Security

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-5-

- b. Security Training. Wherever possible, training for security duties should be carried out before departure. Suggested objectives, syllabi and training programme are at Annex B.

20. In Malaysia. While at Butterworth, the company is to carry out training in the following categories:

- a. continuation of the parent battalion training programme. As availability of training areas cannot be guaranteed well in advance, it is recommended that training programmes be produced in a series of weekly packets, which can be readily adapted to fit changed range availability dates;
- b. local security training as may be required by OC RAAF Butterworth;
- c. platoon training at Malaysian Army Combat Training Centre (known as PULADA) under arrangements made by the Australian Defence Adviser, Australian High Commission, Kuala Lumpur; and
- d. combined training with the Malaysian Armed Forces as arranged by the Australian Defence Adviser.

21. Training Areas and Combined Training. The OC RAAF Butterworth will liaise with the Australian Defence Adviser on matters relating to training areas and to combined training exercises with the Malaysian Armed Forces. Any training areas used by the company are to be well clear of areas in which counter insurgency operations are being carried out or where there is insurgent activity. Training areas which are presently available are listed in Annex C.

22. Carriage of Ball Ammunition on Field Training Exercises. Because of the possibility of chance encounters with wild animals or belligerents, a company commander may wish to issue a limited amount of ball ammunition to provide a degree of safety during field training activities for which blank ammunition is also to be issued. Carriage of ball ammunition for this purpose is authorised, subject to prior approval of OC RAAF Butterworth and the conditions listed at Annex D. Requests for approval for the carriage of ball ammunition are to specify the area of the proposed activity and the number of rounds to be carried by each nominated member.

23. RAAF Air Support.

- a. Rotary Wing. The RAAF operate two UH1 at Butterworth for SAR duties. One of these acft is required to be on SAR standby at all times during flying operations. Subject to both UH1 being serviceable, one may be made available for company training for up to twenty hours per tour. The company is to bid for these aircraft through 65 GL Section.
- b. Fixed Wing. Subject to availability, RAAF C47 (Dakota) or C130 are used to move the main body of each exercise group between Butterworth, Pulau Langkawi and PULADA. The company is to bid for these aircraft through 65 GL Section.

/ 24. Training Films.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-6-

24. Training Films. Training films (excluding commercially hired films such as "Zulu" and "Bedford Incident") are available for use by the company at Butterworth. Films should be requested by signal to the Army Audio Visual Unit (AUDIOVIS CANBERRA). As training films are in frequent demand, every effort should be made to hold them at Butterworth for the shortest possible time. Requests for films, and movement arrangements, are best made through the parent battalion. A copy of the Australian Army Catalogue of Audio Visual Aids is not held at Butterworth and should be taken if required. A projector and screen are available.

25. Training Pamphlets. A limited number of training pamphlets and publications is held at Butterworth. Despite this, it is recommended that companies take their own pamphlets as appropriate to their proposed training programme. Detailed requirements should be determined during the reconnaissance.

Communications

26. Allotment of Radio Frequencies. HF and VHF frequencies will be allotted by OC RAAF Butterworth, through the Radio Officer.

27. Signal Address. The signal address is RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH.

28. ASNZ Codes. Codes are drawn from RAAF Butterworth. Number, rank, name, nationality and security grading of intended custodian(s) are to be advised by signal to DCOMMS at least four weeks prior to deployment to allow appropriate access authorities to be raised and forwarded to RAAF Butterworth. Regimental details and specimen signatures of members authorized to collect codes are to be lodged with the RAAF Radio Officer prior to arrival of the company in Butterworth. These should be provided by the Company Commander during his reconnaissance.

Directives/Instructions/Orders

29. The directive by the General Officer Commanding Field Force Command to the Officer Commanding, Australian Rifle Company, Butterworth (Reference B) was issued separately on 6 Mar 78 and is held at Butterworth.

30. Headquarters Field Force Command Staff Instruction No 1/78 dated 16 Jun 78 is cancelled with immediate effect.

31. The incoming company commander is to take over from the outgoing company commander the following documents:

- a. Directive by GOC Field Force Command to the Officer Commanding the Australian Rifle Company Butterworth dated 6 Mar 78;
- b. Directive by OC RAAF Butterworth to Officer Commanding the Australian Rifle Company Butterworth; and
- c. FF Comd Staff Instruction No 2/79.

32. A filing system (Ops, Pers and Log Aspects) is to be established on matters of a continuing interest and handed over to relieving companies. This should include details of activities, reports and other correspondence of this nature.

/ Visits

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-7-

Visits

33. Proposed visitors to Butterworth are to obtain clearance through Army Office (DGCO Visits). Where possible, visits should be forecast to HQ FF Comd by 15 Nov each year. Approval for visits will normally be restricted to the commanding officer of the battalion providing the company, and selected staff officers from HQ FF Comd and HQ 1 Div. Only in exceptional circumstances will travel by other than service air be authorised.

Reports

34. At the completion of each tour of duty, the outgoing company commander is to submit a report on his tour of duty, to HQ FF Comd through OC RAAF Butterworth.

Information to the Media

35. Press statements relating to the company are to be issued by the Department of Defence as necessary. No publicity is to be sought.

Command and Control

36. The company is to be subject to the Joint Order (see paragraph 58) under the terms of Defence Force Regulation (DFR) 4 relating to the Army and RAAF acting together at Air Base Butterworth. The Officer Commanding RAAF Butterworth is to exercise operational command of the company, whilst it is detached to Air Base Butterworth, and is also to exercise administrative control in the following matters of local administration:

- a. transport;
- b. leave;
- c. use of civil air transport;
- d. off base movement; and
- e. general conduct.

Responsibility for the training of the company remains with the commanding officer of the parent battalion. For all other matters, the company is under command of HQ FF Comd.

37. The outgoing company commander is to command all personnel from both companies during the period of changeover until the changeover is completed.

38. Liaison between the company and RAAF Butterworth on all command and administrative matters affecting the rifle company is to be through OC 65 GL Section.

40. In addition to Unit Standing Orders, the company is to comply with RAAF Formation Standing Orders (FSO's) and Base Squadron Standing Orders (BSSOs). Should difficulty arise on any aspect of local administration, or guidance be required on the implementation of this instruction, direction is to be sought through HQ FF Comd.

/ 41. Standing Orders

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-8-

41. Standing Orders for the Australian Rifle Company, Butterworth, are maintained by OC 65 GL Sect, and have been coordinated with the relevant RAAF staff sections. These orders are to be issued under an appropriate cover page by each company commander. Where amendments are considered necessary, they are to be submitted to OC 65 GL Sect to ensure that necessary coordination is carried out. Minor changes of a short term nature are to be published in company Routine Orders.

/PART 2 - PERSONNEL ASPECTS

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-9-

PART 2 - PERSONNEL ASPECTS

Eligibility

42. Each member selected for duty with the company is to have reached 18 years of age prior to departure for Malaysia and is to have sufficient residual service in his unit to complete the tour of duty plus an additional two months on RTA. All troops are to be DP1 at time of deployment.

43. HQ 1 Div is to ensure that only members of good character and performance are chosen for this activity. Soldiers with a poor record of conduct, or existing or potential compassionate problems are to be excluded from the contingent.

Passports

44. Each member is to be issued with a passport prior to embarkation. Officers are to be issued official (green) passports, and other ranks ordinary (blue) passports.

Medical and Dental

45. General. 4 RAAF Hospital Butterworth provides full medical and emergency dental support for the company.

46. Pre-deployment. Units are to ensure that each member selected for duty with the company undergoes a priority dental examination in accordance with MPA Vol 3 Chap 36 para 3605, and is classified PES(FE) prior to deployment.

47. Documentation.

- a. Personal Medical Documents and Dental Records.
Med 4s, Med 5s and F Dent 1 are to be lodged with the hospital on arrival at Butterworth.
- b. International Certificate of Vaccination (ICV).
Before departure ICVs are to be checked and updated for the period of the tour. Members are to be in possession of ICV on emplanement.

48. Malaria Prophylaxis. Maloprim is to be used as the malaria prophylactic drug by all members of the company group. One tablet to be taken on the same day of each week, and a roll book is to be kept and checked. All members of the company group are to complete a malaria eradication course on return to Australia.

Drug Abuse

49. The abuse of drugs in South East Asia, including Malaysia, is wide spread. Drugs of abuse are readily available, and by Australian standards, inexpensive to obtain. There should be no doubt in the minds of all company members that the possession, use or trafficking in illicit drugs is illegal in both Malaysian and Australian civil and military law. Malaysian civil authorities will make no exceptions for Australian servicemen involved in drug offences.

50. A program of education on the dangers of drug abuse is to be included in pre embarkation training for each company (including attached personnel) proceeding to Butterworth. The assistance of local Military Police should be sought in the preparation of this program. OC 65 GL Sect is to arrange for the briefing of the company on local drug problems as soon as possible after their arrival at Butterworth.

RESTRICTED

-10-

51. In dealing with a suspected or known drug abuse incident, the company commander is to liaise and cooperate closely with OC RAAF Butterworth.

Personnel Occurrence Reports

52. Occurrences affecting personal administration and personnel accounting, which are recorded by CARO, should be forwarded by POR to the member's parent unit for onforwarding to CARO. Occurrences to be reported are listed in MPA Vol 1 Chap 3.

Incident Reports

53. Incidents are to be reported in accordance with MPA Vol 3 Chap 83. Distribution of signals and other correspondence is to be in accordance with paragraph 8319 of that chapter. HQ FF Comd is the superior headquarters for incident reporting procedures.

54. Where MPA Vol 3 Chap 83 directs that incidents are to be reported to RACMP or SIS, such incidents are to be reported to the RAAF Service Police (SP) at Butterworth. Incident reports are to include advice that the RAAF SP have been informed. Where applicable, copies of RAAF SP reports are to be included as enclosures to reports submitted by or for the company commander.

Leave

55. In addition to the normal standard element of recreation leave, members are eligible to receive the following:

- a. the overseas element of recreation leave at the rate of 5/6 of one day per month while serving in Malaysia;
- b. the normal entitlement to emergency leave from an overseas country to Australia. The approving authority for the granting of emergency leave, and where applicable free travel, is OC RAAF Butterworth. Department of Defence (Army Office) (DPS), HQ FF Comd and the parent unit are to be included as information addressees on all signals relating to applications for emergency leave.

56. The company commander may approve local leave within constraints laid down by OC RAAF Butterworth. At present these constraints are:

- a. a maximum of seven days continuously per member is to be permitted unless exceptional circumstances exist; and
- b. leave is to be restricted to the area of Peninsular Malaysia, Bangkok, or Singapore, unless exceptional circumstances exist.

57. Leave planning should commence prior to the company departing Australia.

Discipline

58. Joint Order.

- a. The joint order made under DFR 4 dated 26 Feb 76, which declares Army and RAAF to be acting together in Malaysia, continues to apply. A copy of this order is contained in Part 3 of the Army Law Manual, page 16.

/ b. DFR 5, 6

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-11-

- b. DFR 5, 6 and 7 provide for Officers, Warrant Officer and Non Commissioned Officers of one Service to have power over members of another Service for all command and discipline purposes except punishment while outside the territorial limits of Australia.

59. Disciplinary Code. The company is deemed to be on war service pursuant to Defence Act 54 and is subject to the Army Act under Defence Act 55. If it is necessary to charge a member of the Australian Army outside the territorial limits of the Commonwealth, such charge will be preferred under the relevant section of the Army Act (Part VI ALM Vol 1) and such charge will be prefaced by the letters "WOWS" ("While on War Service").

60. Powers of Punishment.

- a. Company Commander. The company commander is a detachment commander and therefore has the powers of a commanding officer under AMR 238 (4).
- b. Superior Authority. The GOC FF Comd is the superior authority for the company.

61. Courts Martial. The superior authority as detailed in paragraph 60 b remains responsible for Courts Martial.

62. Detention. Sentences of up to 28 days detention are to be served at the RAAF detention facility at Butterworth, unless return to Australia is desirable. Sentences in excess of 28 days are to be served at 1 MCE.

63. Legal Services. The RAAF Legal Officer is available to advise members of the company on legal matters. He has the right of entry into Malaysian Lower Court hearings to act as Counsel.

Finance

64. Pay Variation Advices (PVAs). Prior to the company's departure from Australia, the parent unit is to forward to the Controller of Army Pay (CAP) a Change of Pay Station or Pay Point proforma (WF 289) for each member showing the paypoint as "99". These forms are to be forwarded under cover of a memo advising the company's Butterworth postal address to enable the dispatch of PVAs to Butterworth. On departure from Butterworth for RTA, the company is to submit to CAP, Form WF 289 for each member, changing the paypoint to that of the member's parent unit, quoting the unit EDP number.

65. Allowances.

- a. Outfit Allowance. (Manual of Overseas Allowances, Chapter 3)

- (1) Providing members have not been paid the basic element of outfit allowance in the preceding two years they are entitled to receive \$A120 with 50% vouchering required.
- (2) Army Office is the approving authority for the payment of outfit allowance. Nominal rolls of company members are to be forwarded to reach Army Office one month prior to the company's departure, with an information copy to HQ FF Comd.

/ b. Short Term

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-12-

- b. Short Term Duty Rates of Overseas Allowance (MFR 152). Malaysian living allowance is payable at the ruling rates which may be obtained from any Regional Accounts Office in Australia or through the RAAF Accounting Officer Butterworth.
- c. Category O members will be required to pay R and Q charges.
- d. Separation allowance is payable.

66. Exchange Rates. ACCTO Butterworth will advise relevant rates of exchange from time to time for use on paylists, TS5As and in currency exchanges. Members should exchange Australian for Malaysian currency prior to departure from Australia, as money changing facilities will not be immediately available on arrival at Butterworth.

67. Loss of Public Monies. In the event of any loss of Public Monies the company commander is to take prompt action under the provision of MPA Vol 3 Chap 83. See paragraph 53 and 54 for reporting procedures.

68. Compensation. The normal provisions are to apply. In particular the provision of MPA Vol 3 Chap 86 and MFR 149, which relate to the insurance of personal effects and reimbursement of insurance premiums for personal effects taken overseas on short term duty, are to be brought to the attention of all members.

69. Taxation.

- a. Members will remain on normal Australian taxation deductions.
- b. Prior to the company's departure, the parent unit is to prepare form Taxation Zone Variation Notification (WF 288) and include "1" (Refer Note 4 c at reverse of form) in the Type of Report column.
- c. Prior to departure from Butterworth, the Company is required to prepare Form WF 288 again with "1" in the Type of Report column and the date prior to departure for Australia.
- d. Submission of WF 288s in accordance with b and c above, will result in endorsement of Malaysian Service on Taxation Group Certificates. Members should be advised, however, that there is no concession for service in Malaysia unless they serve in the area for a total of at least six months of the tax year.

Customs

70. Briefing. Before departure from Australia the company commander is to ensure that all members are briefed on Malaysian customs requirements and Australian re-entry requirements. Advice should be sought from the unit's servicing MCO.

Postal

71. The postal address for personal mail is:

Number, Rank, Name,
Company, Unit
Air Base Butterworth
C/-GPO PENANG
MALAYSIA

/ 72. Official mail

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-13-

72. Official mail is best addressed to the unit care of:

BUTTERWORTH BOX
RAAF RICHMOND NSW 2755

73. Full postal facilities are available from the RAAF Post Office on the Base. Official mail will be distributed through the Orderly Room, Headquarters RAAF Butterworth.

Amentities

74. Army Central Amenities Fund (ACAF) has approved the reimbursement of up to \$840.00 annually towards the cost of registration fees and hiring charges for Butterworth Company involved in local sporting activities. The following procedures should be used:

- a. each company pays the fees during its tour of duty from an advance from the parent unit Regimental Funds Account, and acquits receipts to that account;
- b. the Regiment Funds account consolidates all receipts and submits a claim to ACAF on completion of the company tour; and
- c. ACAF reimburses the Regimental Funds account on receipt of the consolidated claim.
- d. Army Office DPS A33-1-99 dated 10 Mar 78 authorises the above procedure and should be quoted on all claims to ACAF.

Welfare

75. The company commander is to be briefed on the Army welfare system by the appropriate Army Community Service Section, prior to his departure.

76. All members are to complete two copies of the Family Registration Form (Annex C to MPA Vol 3 Chap 69) which are to be forwarded by the parent unit to the military district headquarters in which the member's NOK resides.

77. Military districts are to advise the member's NOK of the methods by which they may contact, and obtain assistance from, the Family Liaison Organization during the member's absence.

78. Welfare matters should be discussed with RAAF Butterworth and, where possible, solved locally. A RAAF Welfare Officer is located on the base.

Education

79. An RAAF Education Section is located on the base. Members may undertake continuation coaching under the supervision of the Education Officers, or seek guidance on education training. These officers however can not be made available for formal instruction, and the attachment of an RAAEC officer to the company group is recommended to allow the conduct of formal courses such as AACE 2. (See also paragraph 8).

/ Chaplains

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-14-

Chaplains

80. Base Chaplains for Roman Catholic, Church of England and Other Protestant Denominations, are located on the Base.

Dress

81. Polyester shorts and short sleeved shirts are acceptable in both the Officers' Mess and the Sergeants' Mess. To cater for special activities, officers and sergeants should take mess dress hot weather and one set of polyester summer dress (tie, long sleeved shirt and slacks). The company commander requires a lounge suit to wear at civil functions.

Publications

82. The company is to take to Butterworth its own amended copy of the Army Law Manual and all volumes of the Manual of Personnel Administration.

/PART 3 - LOGISTICS ASPECTS

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-15-

PART 3 - LOGISTIC ASPECTS

General

83. The Australian Rifle Company is a self accounting unit. The Officer Commanding the Australian Rifle Company Butterworth is the account holder. He is assisted in this function by a RQMS, permanently allotted to the company and stationed at Butterworth. The RQMS provides continuity and maintains the account on behalf of the account holder.

Responsibilities

84. The Officer Commanding the Australian Rifle Company Butterworth, the Regimental Quartermaster Sergeant, and the Company Quartermaster Sergeant, each have specific duties and responsibilities in respect to the operation and maintenance of the company stores and account and provision of logistic support to the company. These duties and responsibilities are:

a. Officer Commanding.

- (1) responsibilities as listed in Equipment Instructions 1964, Part 1, Chapter 4; and
- (2) compliance with any specific instruction and/or requirement directly or indirectly arising from this Staff Instruction and any other staff directive or instruction issued or provided to the company for compliance or assistance in the management of the stores account and any related logistic function.

b. Regimental Quartermaster Sergeant. (RQMS AS Rifle Company Butterworth). This position is held against Establishment No 0267-XX-1 (Personnel Seconded and Detached). The position is allotted under command less local administration of Australian Rifle Company Butterworth and under command for local administration 65 GL Section. The responsibilities of the RQMS are those given for a Unit Quartermaster in Equipment Instructions 1964, Part 1, Chapter 5. The Duty Statement for the position is at Annex E.

c. Company Quartermaster Sergeant. This appointment is a normal rifle company establishment position. The incumbent is responsible to the Officer Commanding for the performance of the tasks listed under ECN T331-1 in the Manual of Army Employments 1966, and particularly:

- (1) daily maintenance of the company;
- (2) supervision of the duties and performance of the company storeman;
- (3) providing forecasts of requirements to the RQMS; and
- (4) assistance to the RQMS in the maintenance of the company stores account.

/ Account

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-16-

Account

85. Account No N2726 is allotted to the company. The Unit Designation to be enfacod on all documentation, is "RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH".

86. Force Activity Designator (FAD). The Company is allocated FAD 111 in terms of the Manual of Movement Control, Volume 1, 1974.

87. Delegations. Delegations for the financial adjustment of stores and supplies accounts arising from unserviceability, losses, deficiencies, surpluses and damage, are detailed in Defence Instruction (Army) FIN 9-4, promulgated under cover of Issue No 13/78, dated 20 Jun 78. It is to be noted that until such time as tolerance figures are determined and notified, all losses and deficiencies which do not result from burglary or theft by non-employees, will fall into Category 2.

88. Adjustment. The provisions of MBI 5-1, as amended by Defence Instruction (Army), Issue No 13/78, dated 20 Jun 78, apply.

89. Superior Authority. Stores discrepancies beyond the delegation of the company commander are to be forwarded direct to HQ FF Comd for approval.

90. Concessions. No accounting concessions are authorised. Except for variations in respect of RAAF supplied stores and services, the provisions of Equipment Instructions 1964 are to apply. The RQMS is responsible to ensure that the account holder is kept informed of all RAAF accounting requirements affecting the company.

91. Audit. The account is included in the Defence Audit (RAAF Butterworth) programme. Internal audit is the responsibility of the account holder.

92. Pre Deployment Training. Because many of the accounting functions and responsibilities of the company at Butterworth are quite different from those normally encountered, some instruction is necessary for certain key appointments before deployment. The following training is to be conducted or arranged by the parent unit prior to departure of the company from Australia. Training of the ammunition storeman is to include attachment of the member to the parent unit's servicing ammunition supply company for a period in the order of two weeks.

Serial	Appointment	Responsibility	Instruction Required
1	OC	Account Holder	a. Responsibilities of account holder. b. Documentation. c. Stocktaking.. d. Delegations.
2	CQMS	Maintenance of sub-accounts, Coy daily maintenance.	a. Sub-accounting. b. Expense stores forecasting. c. Documentation. d. Spot checking.
3	Ammo Stmn	Ammunition Storage and accounting	a. Security. b. Safety. c. Issue Procedure. d. Receipts procedure e. Spot checking.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-17-

93. Documents. The RQMS is to maintain the following documents/publications:

- a. Equipment Instructions 1964;
- b. Unit Equipment Table;
- c. appropriate Block Scales;
- d. appropriate Complete Equipment Schedules;
- e. Manual of Movement Control, Volume 1, 1974; and
- f. Control and Census of War Material - Ordnance Items of Supply.

94. Handover/Takeover. A 100% handover/takeover stocktake of all Army stores on charge to the Australian Rifle Company Butterworth is to be arranged by the outgoing company commander prior to the arrival of the main body of the relief company. This stocktake is to be the basis for the taking over of stores and equipment from the outgoing company. Procedures for stocktaking and the adjustment of stocktaking discrepancies are shown in Equipment Instructions 1964, Part 4, Chapters 12 and 13. RAAF procedures are to be applied to cover the handover of RAAF Barracks Stores, RAAF Transport, etc.

95. Demand System.

a. Normal demands.

- (1) Controlled stores - submit Combined Indent and Receipt Voucher (AF G982E) plus accompanying documentation to:

HQ 2 Sup Gp
Victoria Barracks
PADDINGTON NSW 2021

- (2) Non-Controlled Stores - submit Combined Indent and Receipt Voucher (AF G982E) to:

21 Sup Bn
MILPO
LIVERPOOL NSW 2172

b. Signal Demands. (Refer MBI 168-6 Amdt 2)

- (1) Controlled Stores - Signal demand to:

SUPGP SYDNEY
INFO: 21 SUP BN MOOREBANK
31 SUP BN BANDIANA
LOGCCMD MELBOURNE

- (2) Non-Controlled Stores - Signal demand to:

21 SUP BN MOOREBANK.

/ 96. Equipment and

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-18-

96. Equipment and Stores

- a. General. A complete set of company stores, less personal weapons and items on personal (AAB 83) issue is maintained at Butterworth. These company stores comprise a company's entitlement of stores and equipment based on the Equipment Table for an Infantry Battalion, supplemented by essential block scale items and a scaling needed for the company to train and carry out its role. The complete set of company stores is to be handed over to each relieving company. Personal weapons and associated Complete Equipment Schedule items are to remain on temporary issue to individuals (AAF F12) and be transported to Butterworth in bulk or by the member. For movement to and from Butterworth and within Malaysia, personal weapons are to be carried in "Bags, cloth, rifle".
- b. Scaling. The following levels of stores and supplies are to be maintained at Butterworth by the Company to cover a 3 month tour:
- (1) an estimated scaling of spare parts to maintain:
 - (a) company radio sets; and
 - (b) company weapons.
 - (2) Army stationery requirements;
 - (3) a 10% maintenance scaling of clothing and personal equipment;
 - (4) a small pool of company stores estimated as stock required to replace stores rendered unserviceable;
 - (5) a supply of commonly used expendable/consumable stores/supplies; and
 - (6) combat rations, hexamine tablets and cookers.
- c. Maintenance of Stores Pool. Stores are to be demanded periodically, to replace items written off, so that unit holdings are sufficient to maintain the company and to hand over a complete set of stores and equipment to the relieving unit.
- d. Clothing.
- (1) Block Scales 3002/20 and 3004/10 apply.
 - (2) The issue of the following items of clothing is authorized under Block Scale 3002/20:
 - (a) Shorts, men's polyester blend, Khaki, pr 1.
 - (b) Stockings, men's wool and nylon, stretch knit, khaki. pr 2.
 - (c) Puttees, khaki, short pr 1.
- RESTRICTED
- / (3) The issue

RESTRICTED

-19-

- (3) The issue of two sets of shorts, drill green S62 is authorized under Block Scale 3004/05.

e. Weapons.

- (1) Type. A normal allocation of company weapons including GPMG M-60 is to be taken. An additional 16 SLRs are to be taken for the attached personnel.
- (2) Weapon Reserve. The following weapons reserve has been established at Butterworth:
- | | | |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|
| (a) | Rifle 7.62 mm L1A1 | 5 |
| (b) | Rifle 5.56 mm M16A1 | 3 |
| (c) | Machine Gun General Purpose M-60 | 4 |

f. Radios.

- (1) The following radio sets are to be held by the Company at Butterworth:
- | | | |
|-----|-------------|----|
| (a) | PRC F1 | 3 |
| (b) | ANPRC 25/77 | 19 |
- (2) Batteries are to be demanded by submission of a demand on HQ 2 Sup Gp. Demands are to be in accordance with previously submitted forecasts (2 MD RO 274/78 refers).

- g. Sleeping Equipment. Lightweight sleeping equipment (Block Scale 3004/10) is to be issued to individuals on AAB 83 and written off unit charge before movement from Australia.

- h. There are sufficient of the following items held at Butterworth for issue to each company member if required:

- (1) trunks cabin metal;
- (2) helmets steel; and
- (3) tools entrenching.

RAAF Logistic Responsibilities

97. General. RAAF Butterworth has accepted the following administrative responsibilities:

- a. provision of offices, accommodation, stores, quarters and messes for all ranks;
- b. maintenance of buildings occupied by the company;

/ c. maintenance of

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-20-

- c. maintenance of accommodation stores, electricity and water;
- d. expense items associated with the maintenance of accommodation;
- e. local labour for ground maintenance and hygiene duties;
- f. minor repair of radios;
- g. POL, including local purchase during exercises;
- h. ammunition storage facilities;
- i. stationery peculiar to RAAF administration and urgent requirements for office stationery;
- j. provision of transport (six trucks cargo 3 ton, 4 x 4, and two trucks utility $\frac{1}{2}$ ton);
- k. rations, excluding combat rations;
- l. postal;
- m. telephones and communications;
- n. laundry of bed linen;
- o. fire;
- p. hygiene;
- q. expendable medical stores support; and
- r. repair of vehicles.

98. Accounting for RAAF Stores. The company is to comply with RAAF Accounting Procedures, using the appropriate RAAF forms.

99. Army Responsibilities. Army is responsible for supplies and equipment which cannot be provided from RAAF sources.

Accommodation

100. Barracks.

- a. Officers and Sergeants - accommodated in respective messes; and
- b. Other Ranks accommodation for 122 personnel.

101. Accommodation Stores. RAAF accommodation stores are available for issue to the company.

/102. Accounting for

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-21-

102. Accounting for Accommodation Stores. Accommodation stores are to be issued from RAAF Barracks Store to the company commander in bulk, on an inventory "Articles in Use - Distribution Sheets" (AIU EA23 ABOE2/4). The company is to issue barrack stores to individuals and furniture and equipment to each office, etc, on individual inventories (EA23 Inventory Distribution Sheet ABOE2/4).

103. Expense Stores.

- a. Expendable Stores. A three month scaling of expendable stores not provided by the RAAF is to be held by the company. The scale is to be as complete as possible at the time of hand-over. Any stores required by relieving units, in addition to the scale, are to be taken with the unit from Australia.
- b. RAAF Expense Stores (Class C Stores). These are non-accountable items, eg - light bulbs, detergents, etc used in accommodation maintenance. They are to be demanded on RAAF Counter Slip (EA 47) from the Main Central Store.

104. Demands for Other Types of RAAF Stores. All RAAF Stores transactions are subject to automatic data processing. The requisitioning unit's preparation of forms is reduced to the minimum. All essential details contained in "The reportable area of the form" are to be entered by RAAF personnel (in consultation with the RQMS) to ensure that correct RAAF part numbers and nomenclatures are used.

RAAF Stationery

105. The necessary RAAF forms are available from Forward Supply Equipment Store, Butterworth.

Messing

106. Cooks. The company is to detach cooks for employment under the direction of the Base Catering Officer.

107. Combat Rations.

- a. An operational reserve of three days is to be held at Butterworth. This reserve is to be turned over monthly.
- b. A stock of rations for field exercises is held at Butterworth. Company Commanders are to advise the RQMS during their reconnaissance of their forecast requirements for exercises.
- c. Replenishment is to be by signal demand on 231 Sup Coy.

108. Meal Passes. Personnel will be issued individual meal passes on marching in and must have them available for inspection when attending meal parades. The purpose is to support checks that living out personnel are conforming to RAAF meal purchase rules. Passes must be surrendered following the last meal on the Base.

/ Transport

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-22-

Transport

109. a. Allocation. The following RAAF Transport is allotted for the company's use:
- (1) Trucks, cargo, 3-ton, 4 x 4 - 6 (of which only 4 or 5 are normally available due to the RAAF maintenance programme)
 - (2) Trucks, utility, $\frac{1}{2}$ ton - 2
- b. Driving Licences. Army driving licences are to be endorsed by the RAAF Transport Officer before drivers operate RAAF Transport. (See paragraph 15).
- c. Management and Maintenance. RAAF transport is to be controlled and operated in accordance with BSSOs and AAP 876.
- d. Local Running - Messes. The Messes are located at a considerable distance from the company lines. The company is authorised to coordinate and use service transport to convey personnel to each meal and return on a one trip basis.
- e. Vehicle Accidents. RAAF SP are to be called to all accidents where service vehicles are involved and the RAAF Transport Section duty controller notified as soon as possible. The SP should also be summoned to all accidents in which servicemen are involved. This is to be effected in co-operation with the civil police.

Local Labour

110. RAAF. RAAF has accepted responsibility for the employment of local labour for gardening, grass cutting and the daily cleaning of toilets and ablutions. Requests for, or complaints about, this service should be lodged by telephone to the NCO I/C Base Services.

111. Army. The cleaning of barracks and offices is a sub-unit responsibility. Civilian labour may be engaged for employment in the barracks, payment being made by the members in each block requiring the service, on a monthly basis. Such employees must be cleared for employment by RAAF security authorities.

RAEME Equipment Repair

112. Weapons. Replacement action is to be taken on weapons which are beyond the capacity of the company fitter armament to repair.

113. Radios. RAAF technicians will undertake limited minor repair of radios. This may be arranged through the Senior Radio Officer.

Trunk Calls

114. Names of members eligible to make trunk calls, together with their signatures, are to be lodged with the Senior Radio Officer. This should be limited to the company commander and second in command.

Armoury and Weapon Security

115. All weapons are to be stored in the company armoury within company lines when not required for training. All accountable weapon spare parts are also to be stored in the armoury.

/ 116. Weapons security

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-23-

116. Weapons security instructions are included in Standing Orders for the Australian Rifle Company, Butterworth.

Ammunition

117. Entitlement. The entitlement to ammunition is detailed at Annex F.

118. Storage. RAAF will store operational reserve and training ammunition in the Base Magazine (in accordance with RAAF procedures). Ready-use ammunition is to be stored in the company magazine.

119. Control. Instructions regarding the handling and storage of ammunition are included in Standing Orders for the Australian Rifle Company, Butterworth.

120. Replenishment.

- a. Training ammunition is to be replenished from Australia on a twice yearly basis to bring holdings to twice the level detailed in Column (g) of Annex F.
- b. RQMS Rifle Coy Butterworth is to submit replenishment demands by signal to 2 Sup Gp, with information copies to Army Office, HQ FF Comd, HQ Log Comd and HQ 1 Div by 1 Feb and 1 Aug each year.

121. Reserves. Operational reserves stored at Butterworth are to be turned over in accordance with advice from SATO 2 Sup Gp or his representative. These reserves are to be broached only on the authority of the Officer Commanding RAAF Butterworth.

122. Disposal of Ammunition Produce. Brass produce is to be issued to Base Squadron, Butterworth, for disposal through the District Contracts Board, Penang, under RAAF arrangements. Cotton bandoliers, boxes ammunition wood, and wooden fittings are to be placed on a Board of Survey and destroyed by burning. Boxes ammunition metal are to be returned to the Ammunition Platoon, 21 Sup Bn, by RAAF scheduled flights on an opportunity freight basis. Prior to movement of boxes ammunition metal, a certificate that the box is "free of explosive" is to be affixed.

123. Inspection. SATO/ATO HQ 2 Sup Gp will conduct six monthly technical inspections of ammunition held at Butterworth by the company.

Hand/Takeover of Barracks and Stores Accounts

124. Responsibility. The outgoing company commander is to complete all details associated with:

- a. the recovery of monies for all damages and loss;
- b. the preparation of requests for minor repairs (RMRs) for the repair of barracks and barracks stores damage;
- c. the completion of all investigations surrounding such loss and damage;
- d. the reporting and adjusting of all discrepancies during his tenure, or detected during the hand-over; and
- / e. The completion

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-24-

- e. the completion and forwarding of Loss and Damage Reports for Army stores lost or damaged.

125. The incoming company commander is not to accept the accounts until the requirements of paragraph 124 have been met.

126. Certificates. The handover of RAAF barracks and stores is to be effected in accordance with AFO 15-B-2 and AFO 19-B-9, Certificate D. The handover of Army stores is to be in accordance with the requirements of Army Equipment Instructions.

127. During handovers the RAAF will provide a representative of the RAAF Articles-in-Use (AIU) Account Holder.



(J.I. WILLIAMSON)

Major General

General Officer Commanding

- Annexes:
- A. Rules of Engagement
 - B. Pre Deployment Security Training
 - C. Training Areas
 - D. Carriage of Ball Ammunition on Field Training Activities
 - E. Duty Statement - RQMS
 - F. Scales of Ammunition

Distribution:

1 Div	(24)
65 GL Sect	(3)
AS Rifle Coy Butterworth	(2)

For Information:

Department of Defence (Central Office)	(2)
Department of Defence (Army Office)	(10)
Department of Defence (Air Force Office)	(6) (Includes copies for HQ OC and OC RAAF Butterworth)
Log Comd	(4)
Trg Comd	(2)
Australian Defence Adviser, Kuala Lumpur	
1 MD	(2) (Includes 1 copy for DSG NQ)
2 MD	
3 MD	
4 MD	
5 MD	
6 MD	
7 MD	
1 Tpt and Mov Gp	(3)
2 Tpt and Mov Gp	(3)
4 Tpt and Mov Gp	(3)

/ 2 Sup Gp

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-25-

2 Sup Gp	(4) (Includes copies for SATO and 21 Sup Bn)
3 Sup Gp	(Includes copy for 31 Sup Bn)
1 GP Gp	(2)
Army Load	Coordination Staff Richmond

Internal:

GOC	
COFS	
COL (Ops)	
COL (Admin)	
Ops Br (Ops)	(3)
Ops (Trg)	(2)
Admin Br	(4)
Coord Sect	
Briefing Package	
File	
Spare	(5)

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX A TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

General

1. All ranks are to be made aware through briefings and discussions of the difficulties and necessity for, identifying friend from foe. Although required to, many Malaysians who have access to the Air Base may not carry identity cards/entry passes and probably have only a vague awareness of authorized and unauthorized areas.
2. It is imperative that all ranks know and understand the Rules of Engagement and methods of ensuring own troops safety. The most important implication of engagement by fire is 'IF IN DOUBT - DO NOT SHOOT'.

Legal Basis

3. The entire area within the boundary fence of the Air Base, including the area enclosing the Transmitter Station, Hospital, Messes and Married Quarters to the west of the main Butterworth - Alor Star road, has been declared a 'Protected Place' under the Protected Places and Protected Areas Ordinance 1959. This gives the right to control access (sentries, passes etc) and the apprehension of any suspicious person, if necessary by the use of force including firearms.
4. An area extending beyond the boundary fence, but in some parts not completely surrounding the Air Base complex, has been declared a 'Protected Area' under the same Ordinance. This does not give the right to control access within the area but does give a right to control movement and conduct within the area, including a right of enquiry or search of persons in the area and similar rights for the apprehension and removal of suspicious persons, if necessary by the use of force.
5. The main difference between a 'Protected Place' and a 'Protected Area' regarding the use of firearms is, subject to the conditions of succeeding paragraphs; within a 'Protected Place' the right to shoot is automatic whereas within a 'Protected Area', since all relevant 'Protected Areas' are outside the perimeter fence, the order to open fire must come from the Base Commander.

Rules of Engagement

6. Application. These rules are to be applied within the Air Base regardless of curfew, periods of increased security, air defence exercises or time of day or night. All ranks must be made aware of the friendly national organizations which operate within the Air Base. A list of all units operating within the Air Base is shown at Appendix 1.
7. Orders for Opening Fire. You may open fire at a person or persons only in the following circumstances:

/ a. If you are

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

A-2

- a. if you are ordered to guard any building, vehicle, aircraft, tent or construction being used as a dwelling or place of storage, or the occupants or contents therein; you may open fire at any person who is in the act of destroying or damaging by fire or explosives the building, vehicle, aircraft, tent or construction, or the occupants or property contained therein PROVIDED THERE IS NO OTHER MEANS OF PREVENTING THE PERSON FROM CARRYING OUT THE ACT OF DESTRUCTION OR DAMAGE;
 - b. if you or any other person is illegally attacked in such a way as to give you reason to fear that death or grave bodily injury will result; you may open fire on the person carrying out the attack PROVIDED THERE IS NO OTHER MEANS OF PREVENTING THE PERSON FROM CARRYING OUT THE ATTACK; or
 - c. to effect the detention or arrest of a suspected illegal entrant, or to prevent the escape of an arrested illegal suspect; you may open fire to effect the arrest or to prevent the escape of the illegal suspect PROVIDED THERE IS NO OTHER MEANS OF EFFECTING THE ARREST OR PREVENTING THE ESCAPE.
8. In all cases before opening fire you are to warn the person whom you intend to shoot of your intention to open fire by using the challenge 'HALT OR I FIRE - BERHENTI ATAU SAYA TENBAK' repeated THREE TIMES.
9. At all times, before opening fire you must remember:
- a. IF IN DOUBT DO NOT SHOOT;
 - b. you must not shoot unless it is the least force necessary to carry out the orders you have been given;
 - c. shoot to wound and not to kill;
 - d. use the minimum number of rounds necessary; and
 - e. your right to shoot ceases as soon as the necessity for such action has passed, ie; if your first round wounds the person so that he can no longer continue the act which caused you to open fire, you are not to shoot him again.
10. You are to take careful note of the fact that your right to shoot normally ceases at the Air Base boundary fence (including the Hospital, Messes and Married Quarters areas). You are not to shoot at a person on the other side of the fence unless specific orders to the contrary have been issued.

Appendix: 1. Distinguishing Details - Friendly National Organisations which operate within Air Base Butterworth

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 1 TO
ANNEX A TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

FRIENDLY NATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS
WHICH OPERATE WITHIN THE AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH

1. The following Units/National Organizations operate within the Air Base:

a. RMAF

- (1) Headquarters RMAF Butterworth.
- (2) No 3 Squadron RMAF.
- (3) No 12 Squadron RMAF.
- (4) No 26 Company, Special Security Police, Malaysian Military Police.
- (5) No 1 Air Defence Centre RMAF.

2. Details of dress, duties and weapons carried by RMAF units are:

a. Headquarters RMAF Butterworth

- (1) Dress - flying suit or camouflage greens.
- (2) Duties - fixed piquet defence.
- (3) Weapons - SLR 7.62 mm or AR M16.

b. No 3 and No 12 Squadron RMAF

- (1) Dress - flying suit (orange or green) or camouflage greens.
- (2) Duties - operational pilots/crews of F5E Nuri and Alouette aircraft, or fixed piquet defence.

c. No 26 Company, SSP, MMP

- (1) Dress - polyester greens with cap or camouflage greens.
- (2) Duties - Control of entry, fixed piquet defence and external perimeter patrols as required (foot and/or vehicle).
- (3) Weapons - SLR 7.62 mm, AR M16, Sterling SMG, Pistol 9 mm. (Note - other automatic rifles, similar to the AR M16 may be carried when ordered).

d. No 1 Air Defence Centre RMAF

- (1) Dress - camouflage greens.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

1-A-2

(2) Duties - fixed picquet defence and internal patrols within IADS complex.

(3) Weapons - SLR 7.62 mm, Pistol 9 mm.

3. Details of dress, duties and weapons carried by other Malaysian national Organisations are:

a. Headquarters 6 MIB (Army Units)

(1) Dress - Camouflage greens.

(2) Duties - external perimeter patrols, limited air defence role (40 mm Bofors).

(3) Weapons - AR M16, Pistol 9 mm.

b. Headquarters 6 MIB (Police Field Force Battalion)

(1) Dress - Khaki or blue uniforms.

(2) Duties - control of entry or road block duties.

(3) Weapons - Pistol .38, Sterling SMG, shot guns.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX B TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

PRE-DEPLOYMENT SECURITY TRAINING

1. To enable the company to properly carry out security duties on arrival in Butterworth, it is recommended that the company complete security training prior to deployment. Suggested collective objectives; enabling and instructional objectives; block and detailed syllabi; and daily training programme are at Appendices 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively.

2. Some training and familiarisation will still need to be conducted at Butterworth, in particular:

- a. search-light and generator instruction;
- b. familiarisation with key points;
- c. appreciation of the enemy threat and likely approaches; and
- d. quick reaction exercises.

- Appendices:
- 1. Collective Objectives
 - 2. Enabling and instructional objectives
 - 3. Block and detailed syllabi
 - 4. Daily training programme

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED
COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVES
RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES

APPENDIX 1 TO
ANNEX B TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

SUBJECT: PATROL AND SEARCH

OBJECTIVE NO C1

Performance	Test Conditions	Test Standards	Reference	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
Conduct a security patrol and search a vulnerable point in an urban environment.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Practical by day and night, on foot. 2. Given: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. normal sect wpns, b. webbing, c. blank ammo, and d. a briefing outlining the patrol route, vulnerable point location, suspected threat, and rule of engagement. 3. The test is undertaken by a seven man section. 4. The location requires roads buildings and domestic vegetation. The patrol should cover 200 to 300 metres in a built up area before reaching the vulnerable point. 5. An incident is to occur at the vulnerable point (eg in a building) wherein an unarmed intruder is disturbed and attempts to flee. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The correct state of weapon readiness and rules of engagement are to be applied. 2. During cordon duties or on halts, correct fire positions are to be adopted and maintained. 3. The correct method of search of a building is to be undertaken. 4. During the patrol, arcs are to be correctly searched and any unusual or suspicious activities are to be identified. 5. On the intervention of a superior officer or of an official from another organization, soldiers are to react correctly. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Aid to the Civil Power 1964. 2. Rifle Coy Butterworth Standing Orders. 3. IT Vol 4 Part 2. 	

RESTRICTED

1-B-2
RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 1

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVES
RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES

SUBJECT: ROAD BLOCKS

OBJECTIVE NO C2

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
Set up and conduct a road block.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Practical test by day and night involving a section group2. Given:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. an urban environment,b. a number of civilian and military vehicles moving along a road,c. equipment to construct a road block,d. normal section weapons,e. basic webbing,f. blank ammo, andg. a briefing covering:<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) task,(2) rules of engagement,(3) states of weapon readiness, and(4) duration of the block.3. One of the vehicles is to contain an unauthorised occupant, another an authorised person without an ID card and a third is to be carrying illegal items.4. The test should conclude once the unauthorised person has been handed over to another authority,	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Soldiers are to be polite and courteous at all times and are to handle detainees firmly but without undue force.2. The road block is to be correctly constructed and laid out.3. All unauthorised incidents are to be identified and handled correctly.4. The correct state of weapon readiness and rules of engagement are to be applied.5. Vehicles are to be stopped and searched correctly.6. A vehicle log book is to be maintained with accuracy.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Aid to the Civil Power 1964.2. Rifle Coy Butterworth Standing Orders.	

RESTRICTED

SUBJECT: VEH OPS

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVES
RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES

OBJECTIVE NO: C3

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
Conduct mobile patrols.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Practical test by day and night. 2. Given: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. normal section weapons, b. basic webbing, c. a truck prepared for tactical loading, and d. blank ammo. 3. The test involves deployment of a section group by truck over 600 metres through an urban environment, commencing from a standby room and finishing at a vulnerable point. 4. A briefing is to be given, covering; <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. task; and b. state of weapon readiness. 5. The test finishes once the section is positioned at the vulnerable point. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The correct mounting and dismounting rules are to be applied. 2. Speed of reaction is to be adequate. 3. The correct rules of engagement are to be applied. 4. Members are to be alert at all times during the move by truck. 5. Correct MT ambush drills are to apply. 6. Seating on the truck is to be tactically sound. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. DIB 11, Sect 48. 2. Rifle Company Standing Orders. 	

1-B-4
RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 1

SUBJECT: CROWD CONTROL

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVES
RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES

OBJECTIVE NO: C4

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
Control a crowd	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Practical test.2. Given:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. normal section weapons,b. basic webbing,c. blank ammo,d. a crowd of 10-15 persons who arrive after the section is in position and includes press men, ande. stores for constructing a barrier.3. The scenario is a mock aircraft crash with wreckage over a 50 metre square area. The section is required to prevent pilfering or movement of aircraft wreckage by unauthorised persons.4. Minor interference type incidents are to be staged.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Members are to be polite and courteous at all times.2. The bearing of members is to be distinctly military at all times.3. The rules of engagement are to be correctly applied.4. No unauthorised persons are to be permitted to:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. interfere with aircraft wreckage,b. disrupt recovery operations,c. enter the cordon, ord. take photographs in the close proximity.5. On arrival of a superior authority, a correct handover briefing is to be given by the section commander.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Aid to the Civil Power 1964.2. Rifle Company Standing Orders.	

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ENABLING AND INSTRUCTION OBJECTIVES
PERFORMANCE STATEMENTS - RIFLE COY
BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES TRAINING

APPENDIX 2 TO
ANNEX B TO
HQ FFCDM STAFF INSTR
2/79 DATED 6 JUL 79

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVE C1: CONDUCT AN URBAN PATROL AND SEARCH A VULNERABLE POINT

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| E1.1 Patrol an urban street. | E1.2 Cordon a building. | E1.3 Search a building. |
| I1.11 Describe the different types of formations used. | I1.21 Explain the purpose of a cordon. | I1.31 State the rules of engagement |
| I1.12 Explain the potential hazards during urban patrols. | I1.22 Describe the methods of cordoning a building. | I1.32 Describe the grouping within a search party |
| I1.13 Demonstrate the method of movement past buildings etc when a threat is anticipated. | I1.23 Indicate the locations of members of the cordon around a building. | I1.33 Demonstrate the method of search. |
| I1.14 Describe the equipment which should be used during urban patrols. | | I1.34 Describe the equipment required for a search. |
| I1.15 Adopt fire positions in an urban environment. | | I1.35 Explain the action required on disturbing an intruder. |
| I1.16 Demonstrate the action taken on halts. | | I1.36 Explain the action required on contact. |

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVE C2: SET UP AND CONDUCT A ROAD BLOCK

- | | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| E2.1 Construct a road block. | E2.2 Conduct a vehicle search. | E2.3 Conduct a body search | E2.4 Operate a road block. |
| I2.11 List the items required to construct a road block. | I2.21 List the likely items for which a search is made. | I2.31 List the likely items for which a body search is made. | I2.41 Complete a vehicle log book. |
| I2.12 Identify the best position for a road block. | I2.22 Indicate the locations in the car which should be searched. | I2.32 Indicate the locations on the body which should be searched. | I2.42 Use visual hand signals to position vehicles. |
| I2.13 State the purpose of a road block. | I2.23 Demonstrate the method of searching in pairs. | I2.33 State the legal rights of the searcher and of the person being searched. | I2.43 Indicate the position at which road block operators should stand. |
| I2.14 Describe the various elements of a road block (ie the barrier, the holding area, and the searching area). | I2.24 State the legal rights of the searcher. | | I2.44 Explain the method of handling a detainee. |

/ I2.25 Explain the

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED
2-B-2

APPENDIX 2

I2.25 Explain the action taken on discovering a dangerous or illegal item.

I2.45 Explain the method of causing minimum disruption to traffic flow.

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVE C3: CONDUCT MOBILE PATROLS.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| E3.1 React to an MT ambush. | E3.2 Adopt tactical seating in a vehicle. | E3.3 Embus and debus. |
| I3.11 Engage an enemy from a moving vehicle. | I3.21 Indicate the location of each member of a section in a vehicle | I3.32 Explain the safety problems associated with debussing. |
| I3.12 Debus from a moving vehicle. | I3.22 Demonstrate the method of holding a weapon during a vehicle move. | I3.32 Demonstrate the correct method of jumping from a stationary vehicle. |
| I3.13 React to debus/MT ambush orders given by a section commander (ie to which side of the road or location for vehicle to move to). | I3.23 Indicate the arcs of search of individual section members. | I3.33 Demonstrate the correct method of jumping from a moving vehicle. |
| I3.14 Describe the responsibilities of a vehicle sentry during MT ambush. | I3.23 Explain the responsibilities of a vehicle sentry while on the move. | I3.34 Describe the responsibilities of a vehicle sentry on halts. |
| | | I3.34 Demonstrate correct method of embussing and, in particular, of assisting a section to embus quickly. |

COLLECTIVE OBJECTIVE C4: CONTROL / CROWD

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| E4.1 Set up a cordon barrier using rope and available material. | E4.2 Occupy a cordon position. | E4.3 Withstand the stress of verbal and physical abuse from a crowd. |
| I4.11 List the types of materials which could be used as a temporary barrier. | I4.21 Indicate the best location for member of a cordon. | I4.31 Speak to a small crowd and explain the limitations of their movement and your intentions |
| I4.12 State the requirements of a cordon barrier eg, distance away from the item/activity being cordoned, distance between supports and height. | I4.22 Describe the likely reasons for raising a cordon. | I4.32 Explain the reason for maintaining a military bearing and for carrying military weapons during this type of operation. |
| I4.13 Explain the legal powers of a soldier in erecting a cordon barrier on private property or in a public place. | I4.23 List the likely equipment required by members of the cordon. | I4.33 Demonstrate the method of withstanding the push of a crowd. |
| | I4.24 Explain the additional problems associated with occupying and operating a cordon by night. | I4.34 Explain the legal powers of a soldier in Malaysia in relation to dealing with a crowd. |

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

3-B-2

APPENDIX 3

Serial 4: Crowd Control: C4

Objective	Performance	Method	Periods
E4.1	Set up a cordon barrier	Lesson and prac	1
E4.2	Occupy a cordon position	" "	1
E4.3	Withstand the stress of physical and verbal abuse from a crowd.	" "	1
	Practice	Prac	2
C4	Terminal test	Test	1
	<u>TOTAL</u>		6

RESTRICTED

RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES TRAINING
BLOCK AND DETAILED SYLLABI

Reference: A. Collective objectives.

BLOCK SYLLABUS

Serial	Subject	Objective	Periods
1	Patrols and search	C1	12
2	Road blocks	C2	6
3	Vehicle operations	C3	7
4	Crowd control	C4	6
	TOTAL		31

DETAILED SYLLABUS

Serial 1: Patrols and Search: C1

Objective	Performance	Method	Periods
E1.1	Patrol an urban street	Lesson and prac	3
E1.2	Cordon a building	" "	1
E1.3	Search a building	" "	3
	Practice	Prac	3
C1	Terminal test	Test	2
	TOTAL		12

Serial 2: Road Blocks: C2

Objective	Performance	Method	Periods
E2.1	Construct a road block	Lesson and prac	1
E2.2	Conduct a vehicle search	" "	1
E2.3	Conduct a body search	" "	1
E2.4	Operate a road block	Prac	1
	Practice	Prac	1
C2	Terminal test	Test	1
	TOTAL		6

Serial 3: Vehicle Operations: C3

Objective	Performance	Method	Periods
E3.1	React to an MT ambush	Lesson and prac	2
E3.2	Adopt tactical seating in a vehicle	" "	1
E3.3	Embus and debus	" "	1
	Practice	Prac	2
C3	Terminal test	Test	1
	TOTAL		7

RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 4 TO
ANNEX B TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

RIFLE COY BUTTERWORTH SECURITY DUTIES TRAINING

DAILY PROGRAMME

- References: A. Collective objectives
B. Block and detailed syllabi

Day 1		Day 2	
Period	Objective/Activity	Period	Objective/Activity
1	E1.3	1	Practice C1
2	E1.3	2	Terminal test C1
3	E1.3	3	Terminal test C1
4	E1.1	4	E2.1
5	E1.1	5	E2.2
6	E1.1	6	E2.3
7	E1.2	7	E2.4
8	Practice C1	8	E3.3
9 (night)	Practice C1	9 (night)	Practice C2

Day 3		Day 4	
Period	Objective/Activity	Period	Objective/Activity
1	Terminal test C2	1	Terminal test C3
2	E3.2	2	Practice C4
3	E3.1	3	Practice C4
4	E3.1	4	Terminal test C4
5	Practice C3		
6	E4.1		
7	E4.2		
8	E4.3		
9	Practice C3		

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX C TO

HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79

DATED 6 JUL 79

TRAINING AREAS

Training Areas

1. The following training areas have been made available for use by the Rifle company:

- a. Gurun Field Firing Range. This range is known locally as Hobart Camp. 6MIB allow the Coy to use the anti tank, field firing and grenade ranges on a daily basis. Practices which require a platoon to remain on this range or to bivouac at the camp are not easily arranged as MINDEF approval is required unless Malaysian troops are present.
- b. Langkawi Island. The western portion of Pulau Langkawi has been made available for platoon fieldcraft exercises. 6 MIB has directed 65 GL Sect to seek approval from MINDEF direct.
- c. Kota Tinggi. The combat Training Centre (PULADA) located near Kota Tinggi is available for platoon training exercises in the Gazetted Training Areas. Limited accommodation and use of rifle ranges is also available. These facilities are arranged by 65 GL Sect through the Australian Defence Adviser Kuala Lumpur.

Ranges

2. The following ranges are available for use by the company:

- a. Baghdad Classification Range. This 600m range is adjacent to 6 MIB lines at Sungei Petani. It is heavily booked most months of the year.
- b. Sungei Dua Classification Range. Also a 600m range, it is adjacent to the area once known as Minden Barracks, on Penang Island. Since the removal of the Customs check point on the Butterworth ferry terminal the problem of moving weapons and ammunition between Penang and Butterworth no longer exists.
- c. Kulim Police Ranges. Both 25m and 100m ranges are now in operation. A design fault in the target frames makes it unsafe to use a butt party for classification practices. However, the fault will be rectified eventually. This range is available most days and provides a reasonable alternative when the other classification ranges are not available.
- d. Bukit Merah Classification Range. This range, controlled by Butterworth Police Station is a 600m range located approximately 6 kilometers east of Butterworth. It is not suitable for walk up type practices due to the presence of rice paddy between the firing mounds.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX D TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

CARRIAGE OF BALL AMMUNITION
ON FIELD TRAINING ACTIVITIES

1. When ball ammunition is issued in accordance with para 22, the following conditions are to be observed:

- a. Authorized Personnel. Selected officers, warrant officers and non-commissioned officers may each be issued with one magazine containing ball ammunition. Where a small group is required to operate independently without an offr, warrant offr or NCO, the senior member of that group may be issued with one magazine containing ball ammunition.
- b. Method of Marking. Each magazine containing ball ammunition is to be "sealed" by a piece of heavy duty adhesive tape affixed over the top of the magazine in such a manner as to prevent a round being fed into the chamber without prior removal of the tape, and marked by a strip of white masking tape placed around the magazine near the base.
- c. Method of Carriage. Each magazine containing ball ammunition is to be carried in a basic pouch sealed by tape in such a manner that inadvertent opening of the pouch is unlikely.
- d. Briefing. The company commander is to ensure that all personnel to whom ball ammunition is issued are briefed on the handling of and accounting for that ammunition, and the circumstances under which it can be used.
- e. Control. The use of ball ammunition is to be controlled by the senior member present, who is to nominate the member or members who are to load and fire.
- f. Blank Ammunition. Members issued with ball ammunition are not to carry or fire blank ammunition, or carry or fit to their weapons a blank firing attachment.
- g. Accounting. The company commander is to ensure that all ball ammunition is strictly controlled, and accounted for at the completion of the activity for which it was issued. All issues made prior to or during the exercise are to be properly recorded and receipted by signature.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX E TO
HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79
DATED 6 JUL 79

DUTY STATEMENT
REGIMENTAL QUARTERMASTER SERGEANT
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH

General

1. The position is provided by Establishment No 0267-XX-1 PERSONNEL SECONDED AND DETACHED. The position is allotted under command less local administration Australian Rifle Company Butterworth, Under Command for local administration to 65 GL Sect.

Responsibilities

2. The incumbent is responsible to the Officer Commanding Australian Rifle Company Butterworth for:

- a. ensuring that the Unit entitlement of stores, equipment, ammunition, supplies (including rations), petrol, oil and lubricants, is available when needed and that it is issued only in accordance with the authorised scale;
- b. ensuring the observance of all regulations, orders and instructions relating to the storage, care, preservation, accounting and disposal of stores, equipment, ammunition, supplies, petrol, oil and lubricants held by the unit;
- c. maintenance of Register of Assets documentation relating to land and buildings, etc, occupied by the Unit;
- d. maintenance of unit stores and other items in a serviceable condition, including restoration to serviceability by the appropriate repair authority;
- e. ensuring the observance of all regulations, orders and instructions relating to the storage, care and accounting for equipment held by the unit. He must report to the Officer Commanding at frequent intervals on the state of the equipment and the accounts, and is to inform the Officer Commanding at once whenever instructions cannot or have not been carried out;
- f. ensuring that sub-account holders comply with the appropriate instructions for the maintenance and operation of sub-accounts;
- g. ensuring that every assistance is given to stocktaking officers and members of audit staffs. He is to arrange for the layout of equipment for stocktaking and to assist stocktaking and audit officers in locating and identifying stores; and
- h. maintaining Unit Stores Account No N2726 and all subsidiary accounts.

/ Duties

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

E-2

Duties

3. The HQMS Australian Rifle Company Butterworth:
- a. provides advice to the Officer Commanding on all logistic and stores accounting matters affecting the Company;
 - b. maintains liaison with the appropriate administrative and logistic officers of RAAF Butterworth through 65 GL Sect;
 - c. maintains an accurate record of ammunition usage and prepares indents for replenishment;
 - d. supervises the preparation of all indents and requisitions for stores and equipment, including expense items;
 - e. initiates follow up action on all outstanding indents and receipt vouchers;
 - f. supervises the receipt and subsequent accounting action for all stores received;
 - g. prepares, submits and reviews discrepancy reports as required;
 - h. supervises the operation of all subsidiary accounts and contract performance;
 - i. carries out regular spot checks of company stores;
 - j. prepares the account and all subsidiary accounts for handover/ takeover stocktake between account holders and processes all resulting documentation to finality;
 - k. prepares Boards of Survey and IO's Reports and processes associated documentation to finality;
 - l. supervises the preparation of and submits repair requisitions to the appropriate RAAF/ARMY repair agencies;
 - m. supervises the activities and duties of the following company appointments;
 - (1) CQMS,
 - (2) Company Storemen,
 - (3) Ammunition Storeman, and
 - (4) Drivers;
 - n. prepares and submits forecasts for all items subject to forecast;
 - o. prepares and submits census and other logistic returns as required; and
 - p. performs other logistic duties as directed by the Officer Commanding Australian Rifle Company Butterworth.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX F TO

HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79

DATED 6 JUL 79

SCALES OF AMMUNITION
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH

Serial	Nomenclature	Operational Reserve (Rounds per Coy)				Company Training Allocation (for 3 mth tour)	Allocation/ Entitlement Serial No
		1st Line		2nd Line	Total		
		With Wpns	In Reserve				
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)
1	Cart 5.56 mm Ball	6,000	6,000	6,000	18,000	15,000	18
2	Cart 5.56 mm Blank					7,000	19
3	Cart 7.62 mm Ball	10,840	6,140	7,640	24,680	37,000	21
4	Cart 7.62 mm B/T Linked	5,000	3,000	5,000	13,000	32,000	23
5	Cart 7.62 mm Tracer	2,280	1,500	3,000	6,780	800	26
6	Cart 7.62 mm Blank					9,600	27
7	Cart 7.62 mm Blank Linked Belt					5,600	28
8	Cart 9 mm Ball	156			156	3,990	29
9	Grenade Hand Frag Comd B M26	123			123	430	41
10	Grenade Smk No 83 Blue	45	95	95	235	4	47
11	Grenade Smk No 83 Green					11	48
12	Grenade Smk No 83 Red					4	49
13	Grenade Smk No 83 Yellow					11	50
14	Cart 40 mm HE M406	540	180	360	1,080	288	53
15	Cart 40 mm Prac M407					288	54
16	Rkt Heat 66 mm	13	13	13	39	50	101
17	Rkt 21 mm Subcal					80	102
18	Cart 84 mm Heat				40	10	103
19	Cart 84 mm Illum				20	20	104
20	Cart 84 mm Prac					30	105
21	Cart 6.5 mm Ball					220	106
22	Cart 6.5 mm Tracer					300	107
23	Flare Surface Trip M49				32	16	150
24	Sig Illum Ground M125 (Green)	16	16	16	48	20	152
25	Sig Illum Ground M126 (Red)	16	16	16	48	10	153
26	Sig Illum Ground M127 (White)	16	16	16	48	50	154
27	Sim Proj Ground Burst M115					50	166
28	Sim Hand Grenade M116					50	167
29	Mine A/Pers M18A1 W/accessories				15	8	173
30	Mine A/Pers Prac F3 (M14)					10	178
31	Caps Blasting Electric				20	10	187 *
32	Caps Blasting Non-Electric				20	50	188 *
33	Charge Dml PE3/PE4				60	NIL	190
34	Charge Dml 1½lb				36	35	191 *
35	Primer CE 1½oz				20	40	198 *
36	Cord Detonating (Metres)				150	70	200 *
37	Fuze Blasting Time (Feet)				96	312	202 *
38	Fuze Instantaneous (Metres)					15	203
39	Firing Device Dml F1A1				10	NIL	204
40	Firing Device Dml F2A1 Prac					3	206
41	Coupling Base Firing Device F4				10	NIL	205
42	Igniter Time Blasting Fuse Percussion M60				10	NIL	218
43	Matches Wind proof				4	4	221 *

NOTE: The quantities in column (g) of those items marked with an asterisk are included to allow for demolition of blinds as necessary. It is not intended that those quantities be expended during a tour of duty, and replacement is therefore only to be effected where necessary to maintain holdings at the authorised level.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ARO 120/71

29 OCT 71

WILLS - MAKING CUSTODY AND DISPOSAL

Units are to ensure that each member on full time duty who is eligible to make a will is advised and encouraged to do so, and is informed of the Army facilities available to assist him.

The notes at Annex A are for use by officers who have to assist members in this matter. Particular attention is directed to paras 5-8 of Annex A when soldiers under the age of 21 are being advised. The annex to this ARO sets out material on the following points:

- a. What is a will.
- b. The importance of making a will.
- c. Eligibility (testamentary capacity to make a will).
- d. Special provisions affecting minors who are members of the Defence Force.
- e. Making and proving a will.
- f. The need for a periodic review of a will to meet changing circumstances.

Legal Advice and Assistance

There is no legal requirement that a will be drawn up with the assistance of a qualified lawyer, but a member desiring to make a will should obtain that assistance where possible. Accordingly, units are to arrange for officers of the AALC to advise any member who wishes to make or change a will and who desires legal assistance. Such assistance from a legal officer will be free of charge.

In some cases it will be appropriate for the legal officer to draw up the will for the member. In other cases, because of the nature of the assets involved, it will be more appropriate for the legal officer to advise the member to consult a private practitioner at his own expense, if applicable, the Legal Service Bureau. Members who have made a will without seeking legal advice are counselled to have that will examined by

MIRAGE MAJOR ACCIDENT

A3-18

Type: Mirage IIIO

Location: Right Base Runway 18 Butterworth

Date: 1 Apr 74

Pilot: FLTLT L. Boyd

1. Flight. At 8,000 feet and 300 kts, as the Pilot attempted to increase power after the first pass at Song Song Range during a routine bombing exercise, the engine commenced a series of compressor stalls and remained stalled until below 7000 RPM. The engine then appeared to stabilise at 7,800 RPM however thrust was insufficient to maintain height, and with T4 at 500°C the engine stalled again. An attempt to light the afterburner was unsuccessful. At 500 feet and 160 kts with the aircraft in a shallow dive the Pilot attempted to eject but was unsuccessful due to a known deficiency in the ejection system. By the time the second attempt to eject had been effective, the aircraft was at 180 feet and 160 kts.

2. Result. The aircraft crashed and burned and the Pilot received minor lacerations.

3. Cause. The failure of a first stage compressor blade, outside the fence, caused extreme internal damage to the engine resulting in loss of thrust to the extent where engine power was insufficient to maintain aircraft height.

OUTWARD CABLEGRAM

CONFIDENTIAL

2168.

0.5A2166

II CANBERRA

SAIGON

8/2/4

CH193949

CONFIDENTIAL

EVACUATION OF VIETNAMESE REFUGEES
FOR RAAF HEADQUARTERS BUTTERWORTH.

BECAUSE OF POLITICAL CONSIDERATIONS CONCERNING INTRODUCTION OF FOREIGN TROOPS INTO SOUTH VIETNAM I REQUESTED THAT NO SOLDIERS COME ON THE FIRST C130 ORIGINALLY SCHEDULED TO ARRIVE SAIGON 12.00 TODAY 30 MARCH. THE AIRCRAFT RETURNED TO BUTTERWORTH AND WILL ARRIVE NOW LATER TODAY. I WOULD SUGGEST THAT DECISIONS ^{ABOLIT} INCLUDING AUSTRALIAN SOLDIERS FOR GUARD PURPOSES BE DELAYED PENDING FURTHER ADVICE FROM US.

2. OUR LATEST INFORMATION ON THE AIRLIFT IS THAT SITUATION IN DANANG IS VERY CONFUSED. THERE ARE REPORTS THAT NVA FORCES HAVE ENTERED THE CITY. I BELIEVE THAT THE CITY ~~WEEK~~ ITSELF MAY BE CLOSE TO FALLING. ALL ATTEMPTS AT CONTINUING THE AIRLIFT REMAIN SUSPENDED BUT EFFORTS ARE BEING MADE BY SEA. IT IS NOT BEYOND ALL POSSIBILITY THAT SOME SORT OF ARRANGEMENT MAY BE MADE TO ALLOW FURTHER EVACUATION OF REFUGEES BY AIR. WE ARE REMAINING CLOSELY IN TOUCH WITH AUTHORITIES ON THIS.

3. NO REPEAT NO AIRLIFTS HAVE YET BEEN ORGANISED OUT OF TUY HOA, QUI NHON OR NHA TRANG AS ROADS TO SOUTH ARE STILL OPEN. AIRLIFT HOWEVER MAY BE REQUIRED IN NEAR FUTURE.

4. I RECOMMEND THAT ALL C130'S AND C47'S REMAIN AT BUTTERWORTH FOR TIME BEING. WE HAVE SUGGESTED TO COMMANDING OFFICER THAT THEY BE PLACED ON SIX HOUR STAND BY.

5. COULD CONSIDERATION BE GIVEN IF TIME PERMITS AND SUPPLIES ARE AVAILABLE TO USING ONE OR TWO C130'S TO FLY IN EITHER RELIEF SUPPLIES OF FOOD OR SHELTER MATERIALS OR ESSENTIAL MEDICINES AND DRUGS PLEASE?

G.J. PRICE

30.3.75

AMBASSADOR

20

CONFIDENTIAL

OUTWARD CABLEGRAM

DETAILS OF REQUIREMENTS AS SOON AS POSSIBLE.

..
 .ATEFUL IF YOU WOULD CLARIFY TO ALL PARTIES CONCERNED ~~WHEN~~ THAT
 IT WOULD BE PREFERABLE IF REQUESTS FOR TASKS ORIGINATE FROM THE
 AUSTRALIAN EMBASSY SAIGON ON MY AUTHORITY IN VIEW OF OUR CONNECTIONS
 WITH THE COMPETENT AUTHORITIES IN CHARGE OF PLANNING REFUGEE EVACUATION
 OPERATIONS IN SAIGON.

PRICE

CONFIDENTIAL

INWARD CABLEGRAM

RESTRICTED
IMMEDIATE

DISTRIBUTION:
AMBASSADOR
DEFENCE ATTACHE

TOR 1615 30.3.75

CSAO31

0.CH193971 1724 30.3.75 CLA

TO.
II SAIGON/1997

FM. CANBERRA /

R E S T R I C T E D

O 300645Z MAR 75
FM HQBUT
TO RAYWEE/AUSTEMBA SAIGON
RAYWPP/DEFAIR CANBERRA
BT

R E S T R I C T E D
AOR 474

FOR DA SAIGON AND DCAS FROM OC PD VIETNAM EVACUATION PD RE DA/OC
TELECON AM HRS 30 MAR 75 AND IN PARTICULAR NEED TO RETURN
A97 160 TO WMKB TO OFF LOAD SECTION OF ARA SOLDIERS BEFORE
AIRCRAFT LANDED SAIGON PD MY IMMEDIATE A52 291450Z MAR 75 TO
SAIGON PARA 3 EXPRESSED MY INTENTION TO USE ARA PLATOON QUOTE
FOR PROTECTION OF RAAF AIRCRAFT AND PERSONNEL ASSETS IN SVN AT
LOCATIONS TO BE DECIDED BY MY ASO UNQUOTE PD THIS WAS MY ONLY
ALTERNATIVE BECAUSE EYE DO NOT HAVE ADG RESOURCES TO PROVIDE FOR
MORE THAN ONE A/C AS SUGGESTED BY HQRIC AO15 29 MAR 75 PD
AS EYE AM NOW AWARE AFTER OUR CONVERSATION THAT THIS IS
UNACCEPTABLE CMM EYE WOULD APPRECIATE YOUR IMMEDIATE ADVICE
ON WHAT MEASURES YOU PROPOSE TO PROVIDE FOR PROTECTION OF RAAF
AIRCRAFT CMM CREWS AND OUR OTHER ASSETS WHILE THIS OPERATION
PROCEEDS PD IN PARTICULAR EYE AM MOST CONCERNED ABOUT MEASURES
TO CONTROL PASSENGER LOADING AT EVACUATION AIRFIELDS AND MEANS
WHICH CAN BE UTILIZED TO GIVE REASONABLE ASSURANCES TO MY CREWS
THAT PIRACY IS NOT LIKELY TO OCCUR DURING EVACUATION MISSIONS
PD EYE WOULD APPRECIATE COPY THIS MESSAGE BEING PASSED TO ASO
AFTER RECEIPT

~~BT~~. 0.CH193971 1724 30.3.75 1997

CM.

RESTRICTED

INWARD CABLEGRAM

25
CONFIDENTIAL
IMMEDIATE

DISTRIBUTION:

AMBASSADOR
1ST SECRETARY
1ST SECRETARY (POL AND INF)
2ND SECRETARY (COMM AND ECON)
DEFENCE ATTACHE

TOR 1635 30.3.75

0.CH193972 1910 30.3.75 CLA

TO.
II SAIGON/1998

FM. CANBERRA / REF 0.SA2166

C O N F I D E N T I A L

EVACUATION OF VIETNAMESE REFUGEES

REPEATED IMMEDIATE FOR RAAF HEADQUARTERS BUTTERWORTH.

2. PRIME MINISTER AGREES IN PRINCIPLE THAT C130'S COULD BE USED FOR APPROPRIATE HUMANITARIAN TASKS IF AIRLIFT OF REFUGEES FROM DA NANG IS NO LONGER FEASIBLE. WE CANNOT HOWEVER GIVE YOU DISCRETION ON TASKING THIS WOULD HAVE TO BE CLEARED BY US HERE. GLAD YOUR SPECIFIC RECOMMENDATIONS ON TASKING AS SOON AS POSSIBLE. WE ASSUME THAT YOU WILL BE CONSULTING INTERNATIONAL RELIEF ORGANISATIONS AS WELL AS GVN AND UNITED STATES EMBASSY.

3. WE WOULD ALSO BE PREPARED TO CONSIDER ASSISTING IN MOVEMENT OF RELIEF SUPPLIES FROM NEARBY COUNTRIES. AT PRESENT WE HAVE NO ARRANGEMENTS TO SUPPLY RELIEF SUPPLIES FROM AUSTRALIA. YOU WILL KNOW THAT OUR CONTRIBUTIONS FOR RELIEF HAVE BEEN THROUGH INTERNATIONAL AGENCIES.

4. WE AGREE WITH YOUR RECOMMENDATION THAT AIRCRAFT AT BUTTERWORTH SHOULD BE AT SIX HOUR STANDBY.

5. WE STRONGLY ENDORSE ACTION YOU HAVE TAKEN IN SENDING BACK ARA. WE WOULD NOT WISH IN PRESENT CIRCUMSTANCES TO CONTEMPLATE INTRODUCTION OF AUSTRALIAN ARMY PERSONNEL INTO VIETNAM. EQUALLY HOWEVER WE FULLY SHARE OC BUTTERWORTH'S CONCERN FOR SAFETY OF PERSONNEL AND AIRCRAFT. IN YOUR RECOMMENDATIONS ON TASKING YOU SHOULD PROVIDE FULL DETAILS AND ASSESSMENT OF SECURITY OF PROPOSED OPERATIONS. WE WOULD GIVE WEIGHT TO UNITED STATES VIEWS AS TO ADEQUACY OF ARRANGEMENTS.

6. DEFENCE CONCURS WITH FOREGOING.

XC. 0.CH193972 1910 30.3.75 1998 0.SA2166 C130

CM.

NNNN

CONFIDENTIAL

RESTRICTED

Information given in this document is not to be communicated directly or indirectly to the press or to any persons not authorized.


UNIT STANDING ORDERS

AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY

AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH

MALAYSIA

(Revised 12 Dec 78)



(P.S.N. JAMES)
Major
Officer Commanding
Australian Rifle Company

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

II

AMENDMENT CERTIFICATE

[illegible]

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

III

AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY

STANDING ORDERS

CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
Title Page	I
Amendment Certificate	II
Contents	III
	<u>Para</u>
<u>ROUTINE</u>	
Daily routine	3
Company duties	4
Base Post Office - hours of business and postal rates	36
Official telephones - direct exchange lines	37
<u>Annexes</u>	
A. Orders - Duty Officer	
B. Orders - QRF Commander	
C. Orders - QRF	
D. Orders - Security Picquet	
E. Orders - Armscote Picquet	
F. Orders - Duty Driver	
G. Orders - Transport NCO	
<u>RESTRICTIONS</u>	
Bounds	5
Consumption of alcohol	6
Duty Free Beer	7
Drugs and addictive substances	8
Consumption of intoxicating liquor by drivers	9
Unauthorised use of vehicles	29
Vehicle hire	34
<u>DISCIPLINE</u>	
Discipline	2
Speeding	28
<u>Annex</u>	
H. Orders - CB	
<u>DRESS</u>	
Dress - Work	10
Dress - Standards of civilian dress	11

/Dress - Standards

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

IV

Dress - Standards of dress for travel outside RMAF Base Butterworth	12
Dress - Dress while driving RAAF vehicles	13
Identity cards	14

TRAVEL

Dress - Standards of dress for travel outside RMAF Base Butterworth	12
Leave	15
Travel - Travel by Australian Service personnel to Thailand	16
Travel - Indulgence travel Tengal - Butterworth	17
Vehicle hire	34
Customs and postal regulations	35
Customs requirements on RTA	41

SECURITY

Identity cards	14
Security	18
Security of personal effects	19
Security - Loss or theft of private property	20
Security - Security of classified matters	21
Security - Security of RAAF bicycles	22
Security - Security and control of keys	23
Movement of ammunition outside of the base	39

Annexes

- D. Orders - Security Picquet
- E. Orders - Armscote Picquet
- I. Inventory - Working Keys
- J. Inventory - Duplicate Keys

ADMIN AND LOG

Medical	24
Messing	25
Customs and postal regulations	35
Private overseas trunk line telephone calls	38
Movement of ammunition outside of the base	39
Customs requirements on RTA	41
Q Checks	42

Annex

- K. Coy periodic Q Checks

/TRANSPORT

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

V

TRANSPORT

Consumption of intoxicating liquor by drivers	9
Dress - Dress while driving RAAF vehicles	13
Transport	26
Passengers in RAAF vehicles	27
Speeding	28
Unauthorised use of vehicles	29
Unattended vehicles	30
Use of seat belts in RAAF transport	31
Control of aerodrome vehicular traffic	32
Restricted traffic flow - south gate	33
Movement of ammunition outside of the area	39

Annexes

- F. Orders - Duty Drivers
- G. Orders - Transport NCO

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 1 -

AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY
STANDING ORDERS

1. General.

- a. These orders are to read in conjunction with the following:
 - (1) RAAF Butterworth Formation Standing Orders; and
 - (2) Base Squadron Butterworth Unit Standing Orders.
- b. RAAF Instructions and Orders are to be strictly observed by all members of the Australian Rifle Company.
- c. All ranks of the AS Rifle Company are to comply with SO from time of arrival at Air Base Butterworth until departure for return to Australia.

2. Discipline.

- a. By virtue of Visiting Forces Legislation, Declarations and Orders made thereunder and specific appointments made by provost marshalls of the forces of Australia, New Zealand and United Kingdom, there is full reciprocity of arrest amongst all members of the Australian, New Zealand and British forces serving in both Malaysia and Singapore.
- b. All Service personnel are therefore to note that:
 - (1) Any member of the Australian, New Zealand and British forces may lawfully be arrested by another member of the stated forces, regardless that the person effecting the arrest is of a senior relative rank.
 - (2) Any member of the Australian, New Zealand and British forces may lawfully be arrested by a provost officer or any provost personnel of the stated forces acting under the authority of a provost officer, regardless of relative rank, provided that an officer shall not be arrested by any provost personnel, except on the specific order of another officer.
- c. All personnel are therefore warned that any failure to treat personnel of senior relative rank or provost personnel as having powers equivalent to such personnel in their own Service, may result in the commission of an offence under their own Service disciplinary code.

/d... RAAF Provost

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 2 -

- d. RAAF provost have powers of arrest of members of AS Rifle Coy.
- e. OC AS Rifle Coy, as a DET COMD, has the disciplinary powers of CO on war service for the duration of the tour at Butterworth.
- f. Any alleged offence involving AS Rifle Coy members is to be reported to the duty officer immediately. The duty officer is to record the detail in his log and, unless it is of a minor nature, report the details to the OC as soon as possible.
- g. Saluting. Normal compliments are to be paid to officers of all Services and Nations.

3. Daily Routine.

a. Routine Working Hours.

<u>Time</u> (a)	<u>Activity</u> (b)
(1) 0600	CB parade - Duty Room
(2) 0715-0730	CB Drill parade
(3) 0730-0800	Platoon parades/platoon administration
(4) 0800-0810	Company parade
(5) 1000-1020	Morning tea
(6) 1200-1330	Lunch
(7) 1330	Muster parade on fridays only
(8) 1330	CB report to CSM
(9) 1600	Dismissal
(10) 1630	CB kit inspection
(11) 1800-1815	CB drill parade
(12) 1900-2200	CB to report hourly to QRF Comd

- b. Stand-down Days. As promulgated in training programmes and/or Routine Orders.

Note: Weekends are not necessarily to be regarded as stand-down days.

4. Company Duties .

- a. The following orderly duties are to be maintained:

/(1) Duty Officer,

RESTRICTED

This should be covered in cog routine orders, as each cog and has different requirements

RESTRICTED

- 3 -

- (1) Duty Officer,
- (2) Duty Driver,
- (3) Quick Reaction Force, (QRF),
- (4) Security Picquet, and
- (5) Armscote Picquet.

b. The tour of duty for orderly personnel is to be as follows:

- (1) Monday to Friday - 1600 to 0800 hours (except where timings are specified in the orders for duty personnel).
- (2) Weekends and stand-down days - 0800 to 0800 hours the following day.

c. The following annexes list prescribed duties and orders:

- (1) Annex A. Orders - Duty Officer.
- (2) Annex B. Orders - Quick Reaction Force Commander.
- (3) Annex C. Orders - Quick Reaction Force.
 - (a) Appendix 1. Orders - Telephone/Radio Picquet.
 - (b) Appendix 2. States of weapon readiness.
 - (c) Appendix 3. Rules of engagement.
- (4) Annex D. Orders - Security Picquet.
- (5) Annex E. Orders - Armscote Picquet.
- (6) Annex F. Orders - Duty Driver.
- (7) Annex G. Orders - Transport NCO.
- (8) Annex H. Orders for Personnel Confined to Barracks.
 - (a) Appendix 1. Dress.

d. Members of the QRF and Security Picquet are not to consume alcohol during their tour of duty nor for six hours before mounting duty, except in the case of the duty driver for whom the period of abstaining is to be eight hours.

5. Bounds

a. Members are to become acquainted with the current /Cut of Bounds

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 4 -

Out of Bounds as promulgated in Unit Standing Orders or Unit Routine Orders. Changes to Out of Bounds regulations will be advised in Routine Orders.

b. The following areas on Air Base Butterworth are Out of Bounds:

- (1) the Officers' Mess is out of bounds to all members below commissioned rank;
- (2) the Sergeants' Mess is normally out of bounds to all commissioned officers and at all times, to others below the rank of sergeant;
- (3) the NAAFI Canteen and the WVRS Lounge, with the exception of the NAAFI Shop, are out of bounds to officers and NCO above the rank of corporal, except when on duty;
- (4) the civilian canteen is out of bounds to all Service personnel;
- (5) the base married quarters (MQ) south of the direct road from the MQ entrance to the swimming pool, is out of bounds to members not residing in the base MQ except when prior approval has been obtained from the OC/2IC or CSM to visit occupants of a MQ;
- (6) Asian MQ are out of bounds to members, except to those who have obtained approval from the OC/2IC or CSM to visit the occupants of a MQ;
- (7) the airfield strip, taxiing and all parking areas and buildings are out of bounds to all members during stand-down hours, except for members whose duty requires them to be in these areas;
- (8) the flight line and all other aircraft parking areas, including SASS AN are out of bounds to all ranks, unless engaged in duties necessitating their presence there;
- (9) the building and rooms associated with Radio Butterworth are out of bounds to all members, except to the staff of Radio Butterworth and persons authorized by the officer in charge of Radio Butterworth to be on the premises; and
- (10) the OC RAAF Butterworth may authorise exceptions to these provisions relating to the bounds.

c. The following areas of Penang Island and the mainland are out of bounds:

- (1) All kampong areas on the mainland and Penang Island are out of bounds to all members at all times, except for married members residing within these areas.

/(2) On the

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 5 -

- (2) On the Malaysian mainland and in Georgetown between 1900 hours and 0800 hours, all unlit roads, alley ways, courtyards, paths and other areas unlit by public authorities are out of bounds to all members.
- (3) The island of Bidan, Telor and Song Song, located within the Song Song Air Weapons Range, are out of bounds to all members not on duty there, except with the approval of the CO Base Sqn.
- (4) The undermentioned roads in Georgetown and all premises adjoining them are out of bounds to all members at all times:
 - (a) Kuantan Road (off Kramat Road), and
 - (b) Kampong Deli (except for the Soo Chow Hotel which is inbounds provided entrance is from McAlister Lane).
- 5 (5) The undermentioned premises in Georgetown and Penang are out of bounds to all ranks at all times:
 - (a) Wah Seng Hotel, 14 Kinta Lane; and
 - (b) Bangkok Bar, Acheen Street.
6. Consumption of Alcohol.
 - a. Consumption or possession of alcohol in any place on the base, other than those set aside for that purpose, is an offence.
 - b. Alcoholic beverages are not to be consumed in the company barrack lines.
 - c. All ranks are forbidden to consume alcohol when travelling in RAAF or public transport.
7. Duty Free Beer.
 - a. The availability of duty free beer is a substantial concession, which is likely to continue only as long as the privilege is not abused. Duty free beer is not to be consumed anywhere, except in:
 - (1) Service messes,
 - (2) NAAFI establishments,
 - (3) recognised Service Clubs, and
 - (4) the residence of Service personnel.
 - b. No member is permitted to make any approach to the Department of Customs and Excise for the extension of the above concession.

/c. A serious

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 6 -

- c. A serious view will be taken of any abuse of this privilege. Apart from any Service disciplinary action which may be taken, it has to be realised that even one instance or irresponsibility involving unauthorized purchase or consumption of duty free beer could result in the privilege being withdrawn from all service members.
- d. Members are not permitted to purchase unopened duty free beer from NAAFI bar at the base swimming pool. NAAFI staff have been directed that all canned or bottled beer must be opened at the time of purchase.
- e. All personnel are therefore to honour the conditions under which duty free beer is made available. The onus is on clubs, messes, etc to satisfy themselves that purchases are bona fide, but this does not diminish the personal liability of offenders.

8. Drugs and Addictive Substances.

- a. All ranks are forbidden to use, smoke or have possession of LSD, Marihuana, Indian Hemp, Hashish, Ganja or Cannabis or any derivative of any such drugs or substance.
- b. The taking or possession, in any form (except in the quantity and to the strength or content as may be prescribed by a Medical Officer) of any addictive substance, is forbidden.

9. Consumption of Intoxicating Liquor by Drivers. Drivers are not to consume intoxicating liquor:

- a. while on driving duty, or
- b. within eight hours of the time at which they have been ordered to start driving duties.

10. Dress - Work

- a. Normal working dress for daily training is to be hats utility, shirts military green, shorts military green, belts pistol, boots GP with socks rolled down over the top of the boot so that two inches of the socks are visible. Trousers military green may be worn as directed by OC or Pl Comds. Shirts may be removed in the company area. Personnel not involved in training activities requiring the wearing of the above dress may wear polyester summer dress.
- b. Orders of dress for field training are to comply with 8/9 RAR Unit SOP.

/c. Members

RESTRICTED

I suggest
exclude from
Standing order
and cover
in any
suitable order

RESTRICTED

- 7 -

c. Members proceeding on duty out of the base, but not on field training, are to wear polyesters with shorts, stockings, embellishments and Hat KFF. Duty drivers are to wear polyesters summer dress with beret or slouch hat as applicable whilst on duty.

d. Dress for PT will consist of shorts and sandshoes; T shirt or singlets are optional.

11. Dress - Standards of Civilian Dress

a. The following dress standards are to be observed by all AS Rifle company members serving at Air Base Butterworth. Civilian dress worn either while on duty, when ordered, or on stand-down or local leave, is to comply with the following:

(1) The minimum standard of civilian dress permitted, either on the base or on leave, is shirt with sleeves and a tailored collar, tailored shorts and shoes. Shoes are not to be worn without socks, and short socks are not to be worn while wearing shorts. Long socks are to be worn when wearing leather type sandals.

(2) Singlets, vests or T-shirts are not to be worn as an outer garment, except as PT gear. Rubber or leather sandals commonly known as thongs or flip flops, are not to be worn outside the company lines. Sand shoes are not to be worn as an item of civilian dress.

(3) The wearing of items of uniform mixed with civilian clothing is forbidden.

(4) Non-Asian personnel are not to wear any item of Asian national dress.

(5) Members are to wear footwear at all times.

(6) Soldiers proceeding to the gym or swimming pool may wear PT gear. The minimum standard is T-shirts, shorts and sand shoes.

12. Dress - Standards of Dress for Travel Outside RAAF Butterworth.

a. Service passengers are reminded that, unless specifically instructed to the contrary, they are required to wear the following dress when travelling:

(1) In Royal Australian Air Force and Royal New Zealand Air Force transport aircraft uniform with long trousers and long sleeves (duty and indulgence passengers).

/(2) In

RESTRICTED

This conforms
with RAAF
Sandshoes
and should
not vary

RESTRICTED

- 8 -

- (2) In civilian chartered aircraft and scheduled civilian flights, suitable civilian attire, unless otherwise ordered.
- (3) In civilian ships - suitable civilian attire.
- (4) In Malaysian railways - suitable civilian attire or uniform at discretion of OC (duty personnel only).

b. Intending passengers who report incorrectly dressed are not to be permitted to travel unless special circumstances exist. Lack of knowledge of the requirement will not be accepted as a valid reason for non-compliance.

c. Passengers travelling in civilian clothes on Service and civilian aircraft are encouraged to wear long trousers and long sleeves not made from nylon or any other fast fusing materials. These will offer some protection in the unlikely event of fire.

13. Dress While Driving RAAF Vehicles. All personnel are to wear military uniform while driving a RAAF vehicle. The wearing of civilian dress while driving RAAF vehicles is prohibited.

14. Identity Card - AAF A129. All members are to be in possession of their identity cards at all times. Loss of identity cards is to be treated as an offence.

15. Leave.

a. Local leave will be granted at the discretion of the OC. Generally leave will be granted at night when in base, and as detailed in the training programmes and/or Routine Orders.

b. Local leave area is defined as Butterworth and Penang Island. Leave to other areas is not to be taken without the approval of the OC. Members proceeding on local leave must have in their possession their identity cards.

c. The local leave book is to be signed out by each member immediately prior to him proceeding on local leave and is to be signed by the member immediately on his return.

d. Recreation leave is to be restricted to the area of Malaysian Peninsula, Haadyai (Southern Thailand) or Singapore, unless exceptional circumstances exist. Leave to those areas is not to be taken without the prior approval of OC RAAF Air Base Butterworth, or his delegate.

/16. Travel

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 9 -

16. Travel to Thailand. Air and rail travel are the only approved means to be used by Australian Service personnel and their dependants entering or leaving Thailand. Approval must be gained from OC RAAF for any travel to Thailand.

17. Indulgence Travel - Tengah to Butterworth

- a. Indulgence passengers who wish to return to Butterworth by Service aircraft are to hand their approved application for the return travel to the passenger booking clerk at AMS Butterworth. Further documentation in Singapore is unnecessary. AMS Butterworth will advise the Air Movement Singapore booking officer of the names of all authorized indulgees requiring a return passage and the desired date of travel.
- b. Immediately on arrival in Singapore indulgence passengers are to contact the Air Movements Singapore Booking Office, Falkland Road (off Admiralty East Road), Woodland ANZUK Base (old Navel Base). Alternatively they may telephone the passenger clerk (Service Air) on 591141, extension 51561. Passengers are to ensure that they are wait listed for the flight and advise their contact addresses.
- c. During the afternoon before the return flight, all passengers must again contact the passenger clerk at the booking office who will call forward indulgence passengers to fill vacant seats. This call forward must not be taken as a guarantee that a seat will definitely be available.
- d. Passengers who are called forward by the booking officer are to report to the passenger terminal at the Air Movement Tengah by the reporting time advised.
- e. Failure to follow this procedure will jeopardise an indulgence passenger's chance of a return flight.

18. Security

- a. Weapons are not to be left unattended. When not in use they are to be left secured in the armscote.
- b. Ammunition is to be stored in the RAAF magazine. The CSM is responsible for liaison with the RAAF for the receipt and issue of ammunition. Normal ammunition control measures are to be adhered to at all times.
- c. Ready reserve ammunition only is to be stored in the armscote and is to be secured at all times.
- d. Unoccupied buildings and storerooms are to be secured.

/e. The 2IC

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 10 -

- e. The 2IC is responsible for the security of vehicle keys. All vehicles, except the duty vehicle, are to be secured in the company lines overnight.

19. Security of Personal Effects.

- a. Members are to secure easily removed personal effects, such as cash, transistor radios, tape recorders, cameras, etc in their lockers and/or trunks. Padlocks are to be used to secure containers.
- b. When attractive items are purchased, a record of the brand, model number and serial number is to be entered in a Register of Personal Effects Book held by the Pl SGT. Large attractive items may be secured in company Q Store.
- c. In addition, members are to challenge civilians found on Service property.

20. Losses and Thefts of Private Property.

- a. Immediately after the discovery of a loss or theft, details are to be reported to the duty officer. The duty officer will inform Service Police (SP).
- b. Company members are to report the loss or theft to their:
 - (1) Pl Comd,
 - (2) Duty Officer, or
 - (3) Coy 2IC.

21. Destruction of Classified Matter

- a. The only approved methods of destruction of classified matter at Air Base Butterworth are by burning or shredding. Whatever the method of destruction, it is to be carried out by, or under the strict supervision of, an officer or NCO who is security cleared to the appropriate level. He is to:
 - (1) escort the material to the point of destruction,
 - (2) ensure that destruction is complete, and
 - (3) give or witness a Destruction Certificate where necessary (ie for Confidential and above).
- b. Facilities for burning are to be such and supervision must ensure that no unburned or partially burned fragment can be carried away by the draught of the fire. Ashes are to be reduced to powder.

22. Security of RAAF Bicycles. Members who have RAAF bicycles issued on their charge are to ensure that the bicycle is marked in a readily identifiable manner and that the bicycle is effectively secured when not in use.

/23. Security

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 11 -

23. Security and Control of Keys

- a. All keys held by the Rifle Coy are to be categorized as either 'working' or 'duplicate' keys and are to be secured in the appropriate key cabinet in the Duty Room.
- b. The keys to the working cabinet and the duplicate key cabinet are to be held as follows:
 - (1) Working Hours.
 - (a) Original - telephone picquet in Duty Room.
 - (b) Duplicate - Coy 2IC.
 - (2) After Hours.
 - (a) Original - telephone picquet in Duty Room.
 - (b) Duplicate - Duty Officer.
- c. The original and duplicates of the working and emergency key cabinet keys are to be signed for as follows:
 - (1) By the telephone picquet - in the Telephone Picquet Log Book.
 - (2) By the Duty Officer - in the Duty Officer's Log Book.
- d. Working Key Cabinet. Keys contained in the working cabinet are issued by the telephone picquet and signed for by the user on a day to day basis. Key transactions for working keys are to be recorded in the Key Register in the Duty Room. It is the responsibility of the telephone picquet to ensure that keys are signed for in the register and the responsibility of all key users to ensure that they return keys to the Duty Room upon completion of the working day. The QRF sect cmd is to check the working keys against the inventory and note his log book accordingly.
- e. An inventory of working kys is attached at Annex I.
- f. Duplicate Key Cabinet - keys contained in the duplicate key cabinet are not to be removed unless authorized by the Duty Officer or OC. The Duty Officer is to check the duplicate keys against the inventory and note his log book accordingly.
- g. Keys may be removed from the duplicate key cabinet under the following circumstances only:

/(1) operational

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 12 -

- (1) operational emergency,
- (2) outbreak of fire, or
- (3) loss of the duplicate key from the work cabinet.

- h. Removal of a key from the duplicate key cabinet is to be noted in the appropriate log book.
- i. An inventory of duplicate keys is attached at Annex J.

24. Medical

- a. Sick parade is to be held at 0730 hours daily. The medical orderly is to conduct sick parade and maintain a Sick Parade Book. He is responsible for the movement and control of those members requiring to see a doctor at No 4 RAAF Hospital.
- b. Except in cases of emergency or in the absence of the medical orderly, no member is to parade direct to No 4 RAAF Hospital.
- c. The medical orderly is to produce the Sick Parade Book along with a list of members in hospital or on a restricted duties shift to the 2IC at 1000 hours each morning.
- d. Unit malarial precautions and procedures are to be observed. Chloroquine Roll Books are to be maintained.
- e. Hookworm is prevalent in the area. Members are reminded of the requirement to wear footwear at all times.
- f. Venereal diseases are common in Penang and Butterworth. All ranks are reminded of their responsibilities in this regard and every care must be taken not to contract these diseases. Contraceptives are available and should be used.

/g. The medical

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 13 -

- g. The medical orderly is to maintain a register of personnel on restricted movement or 'no local leave'. The register is to be kept in the Duty Room and controlled by the QRF Commander. He is to ensure that members whose names appear in this book do not proceed on local leave.
- h. Dental appointments are to be arranged through the medical orderly.
- i. IHC are to be secured in the orderly room at all times.

25. Messing.

- a. Company cooks work under the control of the RAAF catering officer. They are to be available for use by the company after liaison with the catering officer.
- b. Airmens' Mess meal timings are as follows:

	<u>Meal</u> (a)	<u>Weekdays</u> (b)	<u>Weekends/Public Holidays</u> (c)
(1)	Breakfast	0645-0745	0730-0830
(2)	Lunch	1150-1245	1200-1300
(3)	Dinner	1700-1800	1700-1800

- c. The Airmens' Mess has full facilities including crockery and cutlery.

26. Transport.

- a. The duty vehicles are to be available at all times. They are to be controlled by 2IC and CSM during working hours and by the Duty Officer in non working hours. No vehicle is to leave the base without the approval of the OC, 2IC or Duty Officer.
- b. Vehicles other than the duty vehicle are to be parked in the company area during working hours and secured in the company lines after working hours.

27. Passengers in RAAF Vehicles.

- a. Only one person and the driver are to occupy the front seat of any military vehicle, except in the case of vehicles in which the gear changing lever is fitted to the steering column when two passengers in addition to the driver may be carried.
- b. Members are not to stand in the back of a RAAF vehicle while the vehicle is in motion.

/c. Vehicle

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 14 -

- c. Vehicle tail boards are not to be dropped or allowed to swing and are to be secured before moving off.

28. Speeding.

- a. All drivers are to comply with speed regulations as signposted throughout Air Base Butterworth.
- b. The senior ranking officer/NCO travelling in any company vehicle is responsible for ensuring that all traffic regulations are adhered to by company drivers.

29. Unauthorized Use of Vehicles.

- a. A vehicle is not to be moved from the unit lines except in an emergency, ie fire, flood, etc unless by authority of a work ticket issued by the unit controlling the vehicle.
- b. A driver is not to allow anyone else to drive his allotted vehicle except:
 - (1) in an emergency,
 - (2) when a relief driver has been appointed, and
 - (3) when ordered to do so by the officer or NCO controlling transport in his unit.

30. Unattended Vehicles. A driver operating singly and unaccompanied is not to leave his vehicle unattended except for the purpose of delivering or picking up goods he has been detailed to transport, or for purpose of having a meal during the normal meal times, or to visit the toilet. Where the vehicle is so equipped, doors must be locked, all keys removed and every precaution taken to safeguard the vehicle and its contents before it is left. The work ticket is not to be left in an unaccompanied vehicle.

31. Use of Seat Belts in RAAF Transport. Drivers and passengers in RAAF Vehicles are to fasten their seat belts whenever they are provided.

32. Control of Aerodrome Vehicular Traffic.

- a. Drivers of vehicular traffic on the aerodrome are to use the utmost caution and are to give way to aircraft at all times. Unless otherwise specified, normal rules of the road apply. In the immediate vicinity of aircraft the speed limit is 5 mph.
- b. Drivers of vehicles desiring to proceed on to the airfield beyond the tarmac are to obtain permission from the Duty Air Traffic Control Officer before proceeding. Where a vehicle is required to
/move onto

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 15 -

move onto the grass to give clearance to a taxiing aircraft, the driver is to do so directly and stop. The vehicle is to move directly back on to the paved surface and continue immediately the aircraft is clear.

- c. Crossing the runway is restricted to essential vehicular traffic. Such crossings are to occur only at the traffic lights in front of the control tower. Drivers of vehicles proceeding on to the tarmac or aerodrome are to comply with the following rules:

(1) By Day.

- (a) Wait until given one of the following light signals from the control tower:

- i. Steady Green. Clear to proceed.
- ii. Flashing Green. Increase your speed in the same direction.
- iii. Steady Red. Stop and watch tower.
- iv. Flashing Red. Move clear of movement area.
- v. Flashing White. Report to control tower.

- (2) By Night. Under normal conditions the runway is not to be crossed at night. However, if special circumstances necessitate a crossing at night the driver is to obtain permission to do so from the Duty Air Traffic Controller.

33. Restricted Traffic Flow - South Gate

- a. Traffic through the south gate is restricted during peak periods on a one way system as follows:

- (1) In. Between 0745 and 0810 hours Monday to Friday, inclusive.
- (2) Out. Between 1600 and 1625 hours Monday to Friday, inclusive.

- b. The above restrictions do not apply to pedestrians or bicycles.

34. Vehicle Hire. Hire of drive yourself vehicles is not permitted without permission of the OC.

35. Customs and Postal Regulations.

/a. Customs

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 16 -

- a. Customs investigators have detected several instances of parcels being sent or conveyed to Australia, through RAAF services, with incorrect customs declarations. In some instances the parcels have been found to contain dangerous drugs. In others the full content have not been disclosed or incorrect values have been assigned to the articles.
- b. The sender or conveyer has in each case made a false customs declaration rendering him liable to prosecution. In some cases the sender or conveyer has received the parcel from a so-called friend pre-packed, sealed and addressed and has been unaware of the actual contents.
- c. Because of those breaches of the Customs and Postal Regulations parcels posted by Service personnel and their dependants and the personal effects of Service personnel arriving in Australia are now subject to thorough investigation by RAAF, postal and customs investigators.
- d. All ranks are warned that breaches of Customs or Postal Regulations will result in the confiscation of the property and prosecution of the offending parties. Alternatively the receiver of an offending parcel may be subject to customs charges for receiving mail order goods and not gifts.

36. Base Post Office - Hours of Business/Postal Rates.

- a. The hours of business for the Base Post Office are 0800 to 1515 hours Monday to Friday. Registered mail may be collected up to 1600 hours daily.
- b. Letters to Australia require 50¢ Malay for the first ounce and must be marked 'Forces Air Mail' in the top left hand corner. Full regimental particulars and address must be shown on the reverse side of the envelope.

37. Official Telephones - Direct Exchange Lines.

- a. All official telephone holders are to note that direct exchange line telephones have access to STD (self dialed trunk calls) to Singapore and all major exchanges in West Malaysia. In view of this, users of RAAF official telephones are to exercise more vigilance over the use of their telephones by unauthorized personnel.
- b. As metered calls which constitute local as well as STD calls are only recorded as units in the telephone meter, the Malaysian Telikoms Department is unable to furnish detailed particulars regarding metered calls.

/38. Private

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 17 -

38. Private Overseas and Trunk Line Telephone Calls
- a. Members on detachment at Butterworth are advised that an overseas and trunk line telephone call service is available through the PABX at Butterworth.
 - b. Bookings can be made as follows:
 - (1) personnel with the use of their given code may book the call through extension 700 and the call taken at their extension, and
 - (2) personnel without code numbers must personally book the call at the PABX telephone exchange and the call taken on an extension set aside for the service in the PABX.
 - c. The facility also caters for outgoing overseas reverse charge calls, however should the person required not be available, or the charges not accepted, a fee of \$2 will be made.
 - d. Upon completion of the call, the caller will be advised of the total cost, which is required to be paid at the cashiers office on the following work day. Failure to pay the charges on the following day could result in the complete withdrawal of this service.
 - e. Further information can be obtained from the PABX supervisor on extension 514 or the Coy 2IC.

Movement of Ammo outside of the Base

39. Small arms ammunition may be moved to small arms ranges within 50 km of Butterworth in military vehicles without any special precautions.

40. Contrary to Australian regulations, there are to be no signs displayed (eg explosive signs) indicating the contents of ammunition vehicles. Wherever possible, HE ammunition is to be transported by air. If this is not possible, Malaysian Army/Police escorts are to be arranged through the GLO section. The exception to this is for movement of HE ammunition from Senai airport to Pulada.

Customs Requirements on RTA.

41. Before returning to Australia all members are to thoroughly clean personal equipment, empty water bottles and remove any food/rations from equipment. Particular attention is to be paid to the cleaning of boots and the removal of mud from the sole.

/Q Checks.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 18 -

Q Checks

42. Coy periodic Q checks are listed at Annex K .

- Annexes:
- A. Duties - Duty Officer.
 - B. Duties - Quick Reaction Force Commander.
 - C. Duties - Quick Reaction Force.
 - D. Duties - Security Picquet.
 - E. Duties - Armscote Picquet.
 - F. Duties - Duty Driver.
 - G. Duties - Transport NCO.
 - H. Orders for Personnel Confined to Barracks.
 - I. Inventory of Working Keys.
 - J. Inventory of Duplicate Keys.
 - K. Coy periodic Q Checks.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX A TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 17 DEC 78.

ORDERS - DUTY OFFICER

1. The company Duty Officer is to be rostered from all senior NCO and above, excluding the OC and Education Officer. Duty Officers are to be rostered in Routine Orders Part 1. Duties are not to be changed without prior approval of the OC.
2. The company Duty Officer is to be briefed by the OC, or in his absence, the 2IC at 1600 hrs daily. Weekend company Duty Officers will be briefed at 1600 hrs on Friday.
3. The Duty Officer's tour of duty is to be:
 - a. Working Days. From 1600 hrs on the day of mounting until 0800 hrs the following day, except that he is to inspect the midday meal.
 - b. Weekends and Stand-down Days. For 24 hrs commencing at 0800 hrs.
4. Dress - Polyesters with cap/slouch hat and Sam Browne/Black Belt and red sash as appropriate. A cane is to be carried.
5. The Duty Officer is the Coy Comd's direct representative.
6. On mounting duty the Duty Officer is to:
 - a. draw from the 2IC or receive from the previous Duty Officer the following:
 - (1) Duty Officer's Log Book,
 - (2) Duty Officer's Signal Register,
 - (3) Company Standing Orders,
 - (4) Plan of Air Base Butterworth with KP shown,
 - (5) List of KP, and
 - (6) Key to the Duplicate Key Cabinet.
 - b. report to OC or 2IC at 1600 hrs for briefing
 - c. ensure that the Coy Commander understands his duties and responsibilities.
 - d. ensure that the Duty Driver fully understands his duties
 - /e. ensure

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

A-2

ANNEX A

- e. ensure the QRF COMD fully briefs all other duty personnel on their duties, powers of arrest and rules of engagement.
- f. check the armoury and the ready use ammunition and pyrotechnics.
- g. check the servicability of all duty vehicles and all stand by equipment.
- h. advise RAAF Police Duty Room (extension 555) of his name and how he may be contacted.
- i. check the duplicate keys against the inventory and enter the log book accordingly.

7. During his tour the Duty Officer is to:

- a. maintain the Duty Officer's Log Book.
- b. remain on the air base unless otherwise ordered.
- c. sleep in the Operations Room at CHQ.
- d. control and authorise the use of duty vehicles.
- e. supervise all other company duty personnel.
- f. inspect dress and quality of meals at the Airman's Mess.
- g. Visit all other ranks bars in the base including the swimming pool at least once during off duty hours during the week, and, on weekends, once in the afternoon and once in the evening.
- h. Remain sober.
- i. turn out the QRF once before and after midnight. On one of these occasions the Duty Officer is to deploy the QRF to a particular KP and, on the other he is to practise the quick turnout. He is to enter the time of call out in the Duty Officer's Log Book.
- j. supervise the control of CB. Work tasks are to be detailed by the CSM. Orders for the CB personnel are at Annex H.
- k. Visit any company personnel in detention or under close arrest and note details in the Duty Officer's Log Book.

/1. In the

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

A-3

ANNEX A

- l. in the event of a disciplinary incident involving any company personnel, liaise with and, if requested, assist RAAF Police.
 - m. be aware of any personnel on medical restrictions and visit any hospital patients daily at 1930 hrs, ensuring that they have taken their Chloroquine.
 - n. On receipt of any classified material graded CONFIDENTIAL or above, or on receipt of a priority message/signal, notify the OC 6F next senior officer.
 - o. ensure that he knows the whereabouts of the OC at all times.
 - p. on Sundays, inspect the ready use ammunition and pyrotechnics in detail, ensuring that they are clean and accounted for; ensure that all magazines are stripped, reassembled and refilled with rounds, and conduct a weapons check. He is to report the details in the Duty Officer's Log Book
 - q. ensure that the QRF COMD knows his whereabouts at all times.
 - r. observe the burying of waste paper by QRF and enter details in the log book.
8. The method of deploying the QRF to a KP is:
- a. visit the SP Guard at the main gate and obtain approval to deploy at the particular KP chosen at the time selected;
 - b. arrange for the SP on duty to telephone the Operations Room at the time selected and order the QRF to deploy on the chosen KP;
 - c. be at the chosen KP at the time SP telephones the Operations Room, or observe turn out and follow QRF to the KP.
 - d. note the time the QRF arrives and observe the method of deployment and selected positions; and
 - e. return the QRF to the duty room and make notes in the log book.
9. The method of practising a quick turnout is by verbal order to the QRF.
10. In the event of an alert or call out the Duty Officer is to:
- a. stand-to the QRF.

/b. ensure

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

A-4

ANNEX A

- b. ensure the security piquet section is prepared to react as a reserve and mans the duty room.
 - c. proceed to the Duty Control Room (main guard room at the main gate) or to the GDOC Ops Room if he is so redirected by a GDOC representative, and
 - d. inform the OC or, in his absence, the most senior officer and advise details of any recall plan.
11. If the alert or call out is validated and the base is on alert he is to:
- a. arrange the paging of all company members on the base Tancy system;
 - b. despatch transport immediately for round up of personnel on the base, ie swimming pool, yacht club, etc;
 - c. establish numbers in Penang and Butterworth from the Leave Warning Out Book; and
 - d. implement any instructions received for recall of personnel.
12. The Duty Officer is to report to the OC or 2IC upon dismounting duty.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX B TO
AS RIFLE COMPANY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 17 DEC 78

ORDERS - QUICK REACTION FORCE(QRF) COMMANDER

1. Tour of Duty. Your tour of duty is for 24 hours starting 0800 hrs daily. You are to assemble the QRF section in the QRF room at 1630 hrs on working days and at 0800 hrs on weekends, and dismount at 0730 weekdays and at 0800 hrs on weekends.

2. Dress. Dress is dress of the day and an additional belt and basic pouch.

3. Procedures on Mounting Duty. On mounting duty you are to:

- a. draw, check and distribute ready reserve ammunition and pyrotechnics from the company duty room;
- b. check inventory for QRF and Duty Rooms and sign inventory check list. All discrepancies to be reported to CQMS on dismounting. Record action in incident log;
- c. check the working keys against the inventory and enter your log book accordingly;
- d. parade and inspect the QRF outside the QRF Room at the following timings:
 - (1) Weekdays - 1630 hours.
 - (2) Weekends - 0800 hours.
- e. brief in detail all members of the QRF on:
 - (1) their orders (particularly stress to be made on orders for opening fire),
 - (2) procedures for turnout, and
 - (3) location of KP's; and
- f. check all ready reserve equipment, including vehicles and sign for it in the Incident Log Book.

4. Duties. During your tour of duty you are to:

- a. Control and deploy the QRF as required in accordance with their orders and additional instructions given by the Duty Officer.
- b. Be responsible for security of all coy HQ buildings and vehicles. All company offices are to be cleaned and locked after duty hours. You are to

/unlock

RESTRICTED

Probably
best left
to Coy comd
for any routine
order.

RESTRICTED

- B2 -

unlock all company offices by 0730 hours on working days. All paper in waste bins is to be burnt.

- c. Ensure that the Duty Room is manned continuously by the QRF telephone/radio picquet during your 24 hours on duty; when you are called out/reacted you are to ensure that the security picquet (reserve) takes over the manning of the Duty Room.
- d. Ensure that you know the whereabouts of the Duty Officer at all times and refer to him any problems outside your jurisdiction.
- e. Maintain the Company Leave Warning Out Book outside the Duty Room and ensure that soldiers are correctly dressed before proceeding on leave. This book is to be shown to the CSM at 0730 hours each work day.
- f. Maintain the Incident Log Book which is to be shown to the CSM at 0730 hours each work day. The following is to be recorded:
 - (1) names of the personnel not signed in on completion of leave and standard of dress;
 - (2) details of the two hour radio checks, including timings and any lack of response; and
 - (3) any other incidents.
- g. Make two hourly radio checks with the main RAAF Guard Room. A net diagram is maintained in the Duty Room.
- h. Conduct CB parades as required. Orders for CB are at Annex H.
- i. Raise the company flag at 0730 hours and lower at 1700 hours daily.
- j. A perimeter patrol is to be conducted daily commencing at first light. The patrol is to be conducted by the QRF mounted in the QRF truck and is to follow the perimeter road checking from the Coy lines and concluding at the cemetery. A foot patrol is to be conducted along the golf course fence where access by vehicle is restricted. The task of this patrol is to identify if the perimeter fence has been interfered with either by the wire being cut or removed or if any object has been placed against or over the wire to gain access to the base. The patrol is to be conducted in random directions daily and the entry recorded in the QRF Comd's Log Book.

/k. You are

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-- B3--

- k. You are not to drive the QRF vehicle; you are to appoint a driver from your section. If there is no driver in your section you are to arrange for a driver to be appointed from your platoon.

5. Duties - Weekends/Stand-down. On weekends and stand-down days you are to co-ordinate the coy area security patrol using the QRF members during the period 0800 - 1800 hrs daily. The security patrol duties are to be conducted by the security section from 1800 - 0800 hrs.

6. Ammunition. You are held responsible for the ammunition and pyrotechnics drawn by you, on signature, as the ready reserve. This ammunition is to be issued to members of the QRF and returned to the Duty Room when you dismount the following morning.

7. Meals. Meals for all duty personnel are to be consumed in the Coy HQ building/armscote. The duty driver and one member of the QRF are to collect all meals from the Airmens' Mess.

8. Change of Duties. Duties are not to be changed without the CSM's prior approval.

9. Alcohol. You are not to consume alcohol during your tour of duty or during the six hours before mounting duty.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX C TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 17 DEC 78

ORDERS - QUICK REACTION FORCE

1. Tour of Duty. The tour of duty is for 24 hours from 0800 hrs daily. The QRF is to be operational from the QRF room during the following times:

- a. Working days - 1630 hrs to 0730 hrs the following day,
- b. Weekends and stand - down days - 0800 hrs to 0800 hrs the following day, and
- c. On working days the QRF is to conduct normal platoon training within Air Base Butterworth during working hrs and is to be capable of reacting during this period if required.

2. Dress.

- a. Where there is no specific state of alert:
 - (1) for mounting - dress of the day with additional belt and basic pouch.
 - (2) after mounting - clean fatigue; and
 - (3) for turnout - as for mounting.
- b. When a state of alert has been specified, the additional belt and basic pouch throughout the turnout period.

3. Sleeping Arrangements. Personnel of the Quick Reaction Force (QRF) are to sleep in the QRF room.

4. Duty Room. The QRF is not to leave the QRF Room except when ordered to do so by, or with the approval of the QRF Cmdr or the Duty Officer or whilst they are conducting weekend security patrols.

5. Composition. The QRF is to consist of:

- a. QRF Cmdr.
- b. minimum of six OR's, including section radio operator and QRF driver, and
- c. 24 hour Radio/Telephone picquet.

/ 6. Weapons.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- C2 -

6. Weapons. The section weapons are to be as follows:
- a. three pistols,
 - b. one GPMG M60, and
 - c. remainder SLP and M16.
7. Security Picquet. See Annex A
8. Radio/Telephone Picquet. Duties as detailed in Appendix 1.
9. Drills.
- a. Turnout. Designed to practise the QRF in turnout at maximum speed. The turnout ends when the duty vehicle containing the section reaches the halt sign at the perimeter of the company lines,
 - b. Deployment to a KP. Designed to familiarise the QRF with location of KP and the best route to them. The SP Guard Room will order the QRF to proceed to a particular KP where the Duty Officer will meet them. This turnout is to be done with full regard to speed limits, road safety and personal safety. On arrival the QRF will adopt a tactical disposition around the KP which will be inspected by the QRF Comd.
10. Weapons and Ammunition.
- a. Weapons will be drawn from the armoury before mounting. Immediately after mounting they will be placed in the QRF Room, where the QRF Comd becomes responsible for their security.
 - b. Loaded magazines and link ammunition are to be issued by the QRF Comd at 1630 hrs on weekdays and 0800 hrs on weekends and public holidays, when the QRF assumes duty in the QRF Room.
 - c. During period of daily training within Air Base Butterworth the QRF is to be equipped and available for reaction. If training outside the coy area, the QRF is to move in the QRF vehicle with a radio, and with the QRF ammunition secured in the ammunition boxes in the truck. During training periods no live QRF ammunition is to be carried on the men. If reacted the QRF weapons are to be cleared and the members subsequently issued with the QRF ammunition before deployment to the KP.

/ d. The state

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- C3 -

- d. The state of weapon readiness for the QRF are contained in Appendix 2. Rules of Engagement are in Appendix 3.
- e. The quantity of ammunition to be held in the QRF boxes is:
 - (1) 420 x 7.62 mm ball and 400 x 5.56mm ball;
 - (2) 800 x 7.62 mm link (1 in 4 tr);
 - (3) 50 x 9 mm ball; and
 - (6) 6 flares.

11. Alcohol. Personnel of the QRF section are not permitted to consume alcohol during their tour of duty, nor for six hours before mounting duty.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 1 TO
ANNEX C

ORDERS - TELEPHONE/RADIO PICQUET

1. The telephone/radio picquet is rostered by the QRF Comd in the Duty Room; on call out, the security picquet is responsible for manning the Duty Room.
2. Dress is as for the remainder of the QRF.
3. You are to record all transmissions and calls in the Log Book.
4. You are not to leave your post unless relieved.
5. On receipt of a telephone message from the SP Guard Room to deploy to a KP, you are to:
 - a. hang up the telephone,
 - b. immediately ring back the SP Guard Room (ext 555) to confirm the deployment and KP,
 - c. on confirmation from the SP Guard Room advise the QRF section to deploy,
 - d. react with the QRF once relieved by the Security Picquet Comd. On weekends or during the periods when the QRF assumes the responsibility of the security picquet from 0800 - 1800 hrs you are to remain at your telephone/radio post, and
 - e. the security picquet Comd is to assume the telephone picquet responsibility during the QRF reaction.
6. You are responsible for ordering meals for the following personnel:
 - a. QRF section (incl yourself).
 - b. Arms cote Picquet.
 - c. Duty Driver.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 2 TO
ANNEX C

STATES OF WEAPON READINESS - QRF

1. Weapons are to remain UNLOADED during training reactions.
2. If reacted by the SP's on other than training tasks, you are to react with weapons UNLOADED.
3. Weapons are not to be LOADED unless ordered by the QRF Commander and then only if the requirement exists once the QRF reaches the KP, ie 'A REAL' emergency.
4. Weapons are only to go to the ACTION condition if danger is imminent.
5. Weapons are to be UNLOADED immediately it has been identified that there is no longer a threat.
6. Remember, 'Commonsense' is the biggest factor, use discretion.
7. A thorough ammunition check is to be made of each magazine by the QRF Commander before dismounting to ensure all rounds are accounted for. This task IS NOT to be delegated. A record of this check is to be entered in the QRF Log Book.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

ENGAGEMENT BY FIRE

APPENDIX 3 TO
ANNEX C

General

1. All troops are to be made aware, through briefing and discussions, of the difficulties of and necessity for, identifying friend from foe. Most Malaysians who have access to the Air Base, seldom carry identity cards and probably have only a vague awareness of authorized and unauthorized areas.
2. It is imperative that all ranks know and understand the rules of engagement and methods of ensuring own troops safety.
3. The most important implication of engagement by fire is 'IF IN DOUBT DO NOT SHOOT'.

Rules of Engagement

4. Application. The rules are to be applied within the Air Base regardless of curfew, periods of increased security, air defence exercises and time of day or night. All ranks operating within the Air Base are to be aware of friendly national organizations which operate within the Air Base.
5. Orders for Opening Fire. You may open fire at a person or persons only in the following circumstances:
 - a. If you are ordered to guard any building, vehicle, aircraft, tent being used as a dwelling or as a place of storage, or you are ordered to guard the occupants of, or any property contained in each such building, vehicle, aircraft or tent you may open fire at any person who is in the act of destroying or damaging by fire or explosives the building, vehicle, aircraft or tent, or the property contained therein PROVIDED THAT THERE IS NO OTHER MEANS OF PREVENTING THE PERSON FROM CARRYING OUT THE ACT OF DESTRUCTION OR DAMAGE.
 - b. If you or any other person is illegally attacked in such a way as to give you reason to fear that death or grave bodily injury will result, you may open fire on the person carrying out the attack PROVIDED THAT THERE IS NO OTHER MEANS OF PREVENTING THE PERSON FROM CARRYING OUT THE ATTACK.
6. Before opening fire you are to warn the person whom you intend to shoot of your intention to open fire unless he ceases his illegal act. You should use the challenge 'HALT OR I FIRE - BERHENTI ATAU SAYA TEMBAK' repeated three times.

/ 7. At all times

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

C3-2

7. At all times, before opening fire you must remember:
- a. If in doubt do not shoot,
 - b. You must not fire unless this is the least force necessary to enable you to carry out the orders you have been given.
 - c. Shoot to wound and not to kill.
 - d. Use the minimum number of rounds necessary.
 - e. Your right to shoot ceases as soon as the necessity for protection has passed, ie, if your first round wounds the person so that he can no longer continue the act which caused you to open fire, you are not to shoot him again.
8. You are to take careful note of the fact that your right to shoot ceases at the Air Base boundary fence. You are not to shoot at a person on the other side of the fence.

Sentries on Protected Places

9. If you are posted as a sentry on a Protected Place, the provisions of paragraph 3 apply. However, if any person enters the Protected Place and whilst within the boundaries of the Protected Place fails to halt when challenged with the words 'HALT OR I FIRE - BERHENTI ATAU SAYA TEMBAK' repeated three times you may fire at him provided you are unable to stop him or to arrest him by any other means.
10. Similarly, should a person whom you have arrested within a Protected Place attempt to escape, you may shoot them subject to:
- a. your having challenged them correctly in accordance with the procedure given in paragraph 5; and
 - b. there being no other means of affecting their rearrest.
11. You are to take careful note of the fact that your right to shoot ceases if the person you challenge leaves the Protected Place, whether escaping from arrest or not. You must not shoot at such a person or any other at any time when they are outside the boundaries of the Protected Place, except within the provision of paragraphs 5 - 7.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 4 TO
ANNEX C

QRF POLICY AND
MANNING OF GDOC/DUTY CONTROL ROOM

Info Required on Call Out

1. The QRF Commander is to attempt to obtain the following information before reacting to a call:
 - a. The nature of the incident.
 - b. The type of reaction required of the QRF.
 - c. An RV and identity of any person at the KP, including that person's role.

If any of the above information is not available, the QRF Commander should react the QRF, however, he should exercise extreme care before committing his force at the KP. It would be better to arrive at the KP, cordon it and wait, rather than to rush in without adequate briefing.

2. The Duty Officer or commander of the duty platoon as applicable, is to be given the information in para 1 by the telephone picquet if it is available.

Duty Officer/Duty Platoon Commander

3. During normal working hours, the platoon commander of the duty platoon is to react to call out of the QRF by reporting to the duty control room. He is to ensure that he is available for call out at all times during the day and that the telephone picquet is aware of the method by which he can be contacted. He is not to leave the Air Base without the OC's approval.

QRF Reaction

4. The QRF is to be armed as follows:
 - a. Section Comd: M16 and pistol.
 - b. Radio op: M16 and pistol.
 - c. 2 x rifleman: Pick helm, pistol and M16/SLR.
 - d. Remainder: SLR/M16/GPMG as appropriate.
5. The above weapons are to be taken on all reactions. The QRF Commander is to decide on the type of weapons required after arrival at the KP. Examples of weapons required and tactics employed are as follows:

- a. Building Search.

/(1) 4 pers

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

CA - 2

(1) 4 pers for the cordon - GPMG/SLR/M16.

(2) 3 pers for the search:

(a) Searchers with pistol in holster and pick helm.

(b) Section cmd/2IC with pistol drawn and on load, and

(c) Radio op behind sect cmd/2IC with pistol drawn.

b. External KP. All personnel are to carry normal sect wpns (ie GPMG, SLR and M16) as well as the four pistols.

6. Pistol holders are to draw one 9 round magazine each. All members drawing pistols are to have been trained in pistol drills and safety precautions and are to have fired an introductory practice.

RESTRICTED

ANNEX D TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 1 DEC 78

ORDERS - SECURITY PICQUET

1. The security picquet is to comprise a minimum of one NCO and six other ranks, plus an armscote picquet.
2. The security picquet is to mount at 1630 hrs and dismount at 0630 hrs on week days, and on weekends and stand down days is to mount at 1800 hrs and dismount at 0800 hrs. The picquet is to report to the Duty Officer for briefing at 1630 hrs on week days and at 1800 hrs on weekends and stand down days.
3. Two soldiers are to be posted on picquet at all times during the hours specified. Details of the picquet duties are as follows:
 - a. The picquet is responsible for the security of the company offices and lines.
 - b. Their tour of duty is to be two hours with staggered shifts.
 - c. Dress to be dress of the day and a pick handle is to be carried.
 - d. The Picquet Commander is to brief the picquet on the following:
 - (1) shift timings,
 - (2) picquet patrol area, and
 - (3) action if QRF is turned out or deployed to a KP.
 - e. The picquet is to continually patrol the company area in a random pattern and is not to enter a building without clearance from the Picquet Commander, unless urgent circumstances dictate that he does so.
 - f. The picquet is not to loiter near or behind buildings to smoke and is to remain alert throughout its patrol.
4. The security picquet comd is responsible for providing one soldier as Armscote picquet for a 24 hour period commencing 0800 hours daily.
5. On weekends the coy area patrol is to be conducted from 1800 hours to 0630 hrs. On weekends, and during stand down periods, the security picquet is to conduct security patrols during the period 1800 - 0800 hrs. The QRF is to conduct security patrols during the period 0800 - 1800 hrs on weekends and public holidays. On the day of mounting, they are to be on standby from 0800 hrs until they mount duty at 1800 hrs and during that period they are to adhere to the following:
 - /a. remain

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- D2-

- a. remain in the base area at all times,
- b. do not consume alcohol during the 24 hour duty period nor 6 hours before mounting duty, and
- c. the picquet may visit any of the clubs and/or recreational facilities on the base provided that they comply with para 5(b) above.

6. If the QRF section is called out, the security picquet is to assemble in the QRF room in patrol order, ready for deployment as a reserve. Ammunition will only be issued on order by the duty officer. The Picquet Commander is to ensure that each man is thoroughly aware of his orders, particularly those for opening fire.

7. The picquet is responsible for the cleaning of the company recreation hut and is to have the hut and its surrounds clean by 0630 hrs daily.

8. The Picquet Commander is to work in conjunction with the QRF Comd in regard to manning the telephone, supervising the leave and any other tasks allotted by the Duty Officer.

9. The picquet comd is to ensure that the juke box in the Rec Hut is turned off at 2200 hrs each day.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX E TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 1 DEC 78

ORDERS - ARMSCOTE PICQUET

1. The armscote picquet is to be rostered from the Duty Platoon.
2. Your tour of duty is for a period of 24 hrs from 0800 hrs.
3. You are not to leave the armscote unless relieved.
4. You are responsible to ensure that no one enters the armscote except the following:
 - a. OC, 2IC, CSM, Pl Comds;
 - b. CQMS or Storeman;
 - c. Armourer;
 - d. Duty Officer;
 - e. relief; and
 - f. QRF Comd when a state of alert has been given.
5. You are to lock yourself in. At no stage should the door be unlocked unless authorized personnel are going in or out of the armscote as detailed in paragraph 4 above.
6. No weapons are to be issued unless CQMS or Storeman are present except in the case of the security section on call out of the QRF. If weapons are issued to the security section, individual signatures are to be obtained.
7. The bed is to be made and all bedding is to be changed daily. The floor is to be mopped each morning and all eating utensils are to be washed after each meal.
8. All spare weapons as designated by the CQMS are to be cleaned on Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday of each week.
9. Check and sign Inventory daily.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX F TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 12 DEC 78

ORDERS - DUTY DRIVERS

Duty Driver

1. The duty driver's tour of duty is to be for a period of 24 hrs commencing at 0800 hrs daily.
2. Dress is polyester summer.
3. You are not to undertake a driving task or leave the area without the authority of the COY COMD, 2IC, CSM or Tpt NCO during working hours, or the company Duty Officer during non working hours.
4. You are to sleep in the transport duty room.
5. You are not to change duties without the CSM's prior approval.
6. Duties: You are to:
 - a. refuel the duty vehicle (if necessary) before 1530 hrs,
 - b. report to the Duty Officer at 1630 hrs, and
 - c. conduct tasks as directed by the authorized personnel.

QRF Driver

7. Report to the transport duty NCO before 1600 hrs and collect and sign for the duty vehicle keys.
8. Before dismounting, carry out last parade vehicle service and ensure vehicle is clean.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX G TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 17 DEC 78

ORDERS - TRANSPORT NCO

1. These orders are to be read in conjunction with respective Unit Standing Orders for drivers.
2. Tpt NCO Responsibilities. Your duties include the following:
 - a. maintain a transport detail board,
 - b. maintain a duty driver roster,
 - c. ensure that first and last parades are carried out on all vehicles,
 - d. inform 2IC daily on vehicle states,
 - e. ensure all drivers are aware of Standing Orders for drivers, and
 - f. ensure that vehicle documentation is correctly completed.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX H TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 1 DEC 78

ORDERS TO PERSONNEL CONFINED TO BARRACKS

1. Personnel awarded CB shall commence their punishment on the day of the award.
2. Personnel awarded CB may be employed on normal duties.
3. CB personnel are not to leave the company area except for programmed training and meals;
4. The following privileges are denied:
 - a. use of the recreational rooms,
 - b. any living quarters other than those allocated to CB personnel,
 - c. any canteen or similar establishment,
 - d. film shows or entertainment of any type,
 - e. stand-down and rest days, and
 - f. social activities.
5. CB personnel are not to partake of, or have in their possession, any drugs or alcoholic stimulant during their period of award.
6. Parades are to be held by the QRF Comd daily at the following times and places:
 - a. 0600 hrs. First parade - parade outside Duty Room (shaven and dressed in marching order).
 - b. 0715 to 0730 hrs. CB drill parade (marching order), drill supervised by the Duty Officer.
 - c. 1300 hrs. Report to the CSM.
 - d. 1600 hrs. Report to QRF Comd in marching order (kit inspection).
 - e. 1800 to 1815 hrs. CB drill parade (marching order).
 - f. 1900 to 2200 hrs. CB personnel are to report to QRF Comd at Duty Room every hour on the hour.

/7. CB personnel

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- H2 -

7. CB personnel are to shave before the first CB parade of the day.
8. The dress for CB personnel is outlined in Appendix 1.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

APPENDIX 1
TO ANNEX H

DRESS FOR CB PERSONNEL

1. The dress is to be greens short, web belt, bush hat and GP boots.
2. The following items are required in the basic webbing:
 - a. Clasp knife;
 - b. Pistol belt;
 - c. Water bottles & carriers (full);
 - d. Cups canteen steel;
 - e. Combat pack small;
 - f. Suspenders;
 - g. Basic pouches;
 - h. Toggle rope;
 - i. Pouch fad;
 - j. Magazine and fad;
 - k. Shaving gear;
 - l. Boot gear;
 - m. Sand shoes; and
 - n. Shell dressing.
3. The following items are required in the large pack;
 - a. Blanket bed outer;
 - b. Blanket bed inner;
 - c. Shelter individual;
 - d. Mattress cover;
 - e. Mosquito net;
 - f. Set jungle greens;
 - g. Pan set messing;
 - h. KFS set;
 - i. Sewing kit;
 - j. Water bag collapsible (full);
 - k. Mil bank filter; and
 - l. Smock tropical light weight.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX I TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 17 DEC 78

INVENTORY - WORKING KEYS

<u>Serial</u> (a)	<u>Particulars</u> (b)	<u>No in Set</u> (c)
1	OC Office	1
2	2IC Office	1
3	CSM Office	1
4	Orderly Room	1
5	Pay Office	1
6	CAP	2
7	Produce Store	1
8	Band/Lof Office	1
9	QRF Room	2
10	Sig Store	1
11	Passage Way	1
12	Recreation Hut	1
13	Lecture Room	1
14	Band Hut	2
15	Ration Store	1
16	Company Q Store	4
17	Company 1st Line Ammo	3
18	QRF Ammo	2
19	Armscote	
20	Transport Hut	2
21	Map Board	1
22	Building 87B	10
23	Building 87C	3
24	Building 87D	8
25	Building 87E	1
26	Building 87K	6
27	Building 87L	3
28	Building 87U	6
29	Keys to Key Cabinet	2 (2)

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX J TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 14 DEC 78

INVENTORY - DUPLICATE KEY CABINET

<u>Serial</u>	<u>Particulars</u>	<u>No in Set</u>
1	Company HQ	13
2	Building 87A	5
3	Building 87B	10
4	Building 87C	3
5	Building 87D	7
6	Building 87E	1
7	Building 87K	6
8	Building 87L	4
9	Building 98U	5
10	Company Q Store	3
11	Armscote	3
12	Transport Hut	2
13	QRF Ammo	

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

COY PERIODIC Q CHECKS

ANNEX K TO
AS RIFLE COY
UNIT STANDING ORDERS
DATED 1 DEC 78

<u>Serial</u>	<u>Check</u>	<u>Day</u>	<u>By Whom</u>
1.	Weekly SA ammo check.	Sun	DO
2.	Weekly 25% spot-check of Coy Q Store.	Fri	DO
3.	Con stores check.	Pay Day	
4.	Weekly inventory check.	Fri	
5.	Weekly barracks damage check.	Fri	
6.	Fortnightly non-tech insp.	Pay Day	Also upon return of stores.
7.	CES check.		CQMS
8.	Fortnightly RQMS store check: stores and rations.		
9.	Monthly ammo spot-check.		
10.	Monthly AIU inventory check.	Last work day	RQMS/CQMS
11.	Monthly coy clothing check.		RQMS

Notes:

1. RQMS is to be consulted before entering results of Ammo checks in the CSM's register.
2. Con stores check results are to reach the RQMS the following day.
3. ~~Non-tech inspections~~ are to be additional when equip
~~is returned from fd exercises.~~

RESTRICTED

**C COY 2/4 RAR TOUR OF AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH
14 FEB.-23 MAY '79 by MAJOR R. CHANDLER**

Air Base Butterworth is a Royal Malaysian Air Force Base situated on the Malaysian mainland, six miles northeast of Penang Island. In accordance with the terms of the Five power Defence arrangements entered into by the Australian and Malaysian Governments, an Australian Army Rifle Company is deployed on a 3 monthly rotational basis from Australia to Air Base Butterworth to provide an opportunity for training and to develop further cooperation between the Malaysian Armed Forces and the Australian Defence Force. The rotational plan accords with Australian National Policy of deploying troops overseas for training exercises.

C Coy 2/4 RAR conducted a tour of duty at Air Base Butterworth between 14 Feb and 23 May '79.

The Company group consisted of 132 members, comprised of 5 Officers and 78 other Ranks from C Coy with the remainder from Support Coy, Logistics Company and other units within the 3 Task Force Area.

Movement to Butterworth from Townsville was completed in two stages. The Company group was moved to Sydney on 14 Feb '79 by TAA 727 aircraft and then from Sydney to Butterworth by a Qantas 747, arriving Butterworth at 2000 hours. The return movement from Butterworth to Townsville was completed on a Federal Government 8707, leaving Penang on the evening 23 May '79 and arriving Townsville 0530 hours 24 May '79.

In addition to providing the security requirements required by OC RAAF Butterworth the Company conducted a training programme in accordance with the training directive issued by CO 2/4 RAR. The nature of training was influenced by the limitations of the training areas and facilities which existed. Despite these limitations a constructive programme was co-ordinated.

Training at the Air Base was limited to revision on individual skills, classroom instruction on Company tactics, conduct of a signals course for each platoon, use of a 25 metre firing range and maintenance of a high standard of physical fitness. An inter platoon military skills competition was held towards the end of tour which included competitions in drill, a nine mile force march and shoot, an obstacle course, a two mile run, rifle shooting and a military quiz. A clear victory was gained by 7 platoon in the overall competition!

A machine gun course was conducted with the GPMG on tripod, over a period of seven days at the Gurun field firing range, which is approximately 40 miles north of Butterworth. All members of the course qualified. Ranges used for rifle shooting were located at Penang Island, Sungei Petani and Kulim.

The Malaysian Army Combat Training Centre (known as PULADA) is located in the state of Johore, near Johore Bahru and is approximately 500 miles south of Butterworth. Each Company to tour Butterworth is allotted five days of platoon training at PULADA for each of its platoons. This training is arranged by the Australian Defence Adviser in Kuala Lumpur with the Malaysian authorities. C Company rotated its three platoons through PULADA during the period 531 Mar '79 and conducted training on the various field firing ranges and a navigation exercise in a close training area.

Langkawi is an island 60 miles north west of Butterworth and provides the

only facility in which a Company can conduct a field exercise whilst on tour of duty. The administrative planning and implementation of the plans for the conduct of an exercise proved to be an interesting, frustrating and in some instances, a comical task.

Each platoon was rotated through a patrolling and navigation exercise which was given an appropriate nickname of "PIRATES PILLAGE" as a result of many incidents of piracy near the island. The platoons were exercised over a period of five days which required a control and administrative organization to remain on the island between 28 Apr '79 and 18 May '79. Despite the many setbacks which were encountered, the exercise proved to be a success and will provide a topic of conversation with many of the soldiers for quite some time.

The Company participated in many sports during the tour of which Rugby League was the most popular. Company spirit and morale was built around the Rugby League competition. It provided entertainment on a Saturday afternoon and an incentive to many to keep in top physical condition. C Company commenced the League competition as the under dogs in an association of six teams. At the end of the final round the Company side had played ten matches of which they had won eight, drawn one and lost one. They became the minor premiers, lost the first semi final, fought back to win on their second chance and defeated the RAAF Panthers 10-8 in the grand final. 2,000 spectators watched the grand final, which provided an atmosphere far exceeding any service match played in Australia. Victory by the team will be remembered as a great achievement as it is the first time an Army team has won the Rugby League competition at Butterworth since its inception in 1974. Special mention must be made of players such as Gary Cooper who tied for best and fairest player in the league, Toby Tim who scored the most tries in the league, Rob Crispin who was awarded a prize for best back in the League and to Mick Sullivan who Captained and Coached the team to victory.

C Company provided a four man pistol shooting team in a Pistol Shooting Competition held on Penang Island. Teams competed from the RAAF, Singapore, Malaysia and Thailand. The Company team won the falling plate competition and set a new time record in knocking down the plates. Members of the team were Lt Don Thompson, Cpl John Grasby, Pte Joe Nemeth and Pte Wayne McConachy.

The Company played the RAAF in two Australian Rules matches and were victors on both occasions.

All soldiers had the opportunity of spending at least five days in Bangkok and Singapore and as much time as they wished in Penang during their time off. The soldiers who availed themselves of this opportunity could only

wish they had more finance and more leave time. Without exception, the members who spend some time in Bangkok returned to Butterworth refreshed, relaxed and eager to return.

Each location allowed the soldiers to familiarise themselves with local culture, appreciate different racial customs and feel a deeper appreciation for the standard of living which exists in Australia.

The 3 ½ months spent on tour in Butterworth could only be described as well worth while. It was an ideal opportunity for the Company to train without the interruptions which often occur in a training programme in Australia, and to build Company spirit and morale to a level which gave a feeling of achievement to everyone who was a member of the Company Group.

Researcher's Comment. Therefore the rotation of rifle companies plus attachments though RAAF Base Butterworth appears to have been a sound training period with much sport interspersed with holidays in Bangkok and Singapore. Penang Island itself being a popular tourist destination. There was nothing approaching operational activities against a live enemy at any stage during the C Coy 2/4 RAR sojourn at Butterworth.

RESTRICTED

AUSTRALIAN ARMY

722-44-23

33

Telephone 331666 Ext 785

B COY 1 RAR
 Australian Rifle Company
 Air Base Butterworth
 C/- GPO PENANG
 WEST MALAYSIA

In reply please quote R723-1-1

10 February 1982

See Distribution List

END OF TOUR REPORT BY B COY 1 RAR
9 DEC 81 - 17 FEB 82

501 (OPS)
 502 (OPS)

- References: A. HQ FF Comd Staff Instr 2/79 dated 6 Jul 79
 B. AS Rifle Coy Standing Orders

INTRODUCTIONGeneral

1. A company group based on B Coy 1 RAR assumed duty as the AS Rifle Company BUTTERWORTH on 9 Dec 81, and will be relieved on 17 Feb 82 by D Coy 2/4 RAR. This company comprised rifle platoons each from B Sqn 3/4 Cav Regt, 4th Regt and B Coy 1 RAR with specialist attachments and tradesmen from 1 RAR or external units grouped in a fourth support platoon. The company was commanded by HQ B Coy 1 RAR.

AIM

2. This report summarizes the main operational, training, personnel and logistic aspects of the tour. It should also serve to assist future planning for and improvements to the commitment here at BUTTERWORTH.

OPERATIONSBriefing and Reconnaissance

3. The reconnaissance was conducted as planned. However, it is considered that six days travelling in a C130 aircraft with nine days of waiting in Sydney to catch existing RAAF couriers as occurred is not cost-effective and also a waste of time. Consideration should be given in future to the granting of approval to TOWNSVILLE based recon parties to move directly by air to Darwin to connect with the BUTTERWORTH courier there. This could be cheaper, and would save nearly two weeks of wasted travel and waiting time.

para 3. Briefing now cancelled. No need to come to Sydney prior to recon. FY 82/83 allocation for TRS is \$1,000. This also includes civil air travel in Malaya.
 By using these funds + all road soc off this problem should not occur in 82/83.

RESTRICTED/4. Briefing.

RESTRICTED

5.7
90 p

- 2 -

4. Briefing. The previous company commander's comments on the relatively low value of the FF Comd briefing are supported. Staff are not faulted here, however, all information available on this briefing is included in Reference A which is studied months in advance, and is easily supplemented if necessary by a telephone call. Similarly, the contents of the intelligence brief (which consisted of the reading of a document) are available from Brigade Intelligence Staff where battalions are based. At present, there appears to be no need for a visit to FF Comd for briefings.

5. The need to visit FF Comd to be briefed by staff is not justified at present. Far more local knowledge information is obtained from previous OC's and 65 GL Sect on the recon. It is suggested that this formal briefing be waived.

6. A copy of every end of tour report since 1 Mar 78 is held in BUTTERWORTH and should be read by the new OC during his recon. They are invaluable in helping the OC to formulate his own attitudes and plans.

Composition of Recon Group

7. The inclusion of a Training Officer at the expense of the CQMS is desirable. There is a real need for the Training Officer to visit on the recon as he is integrally involved in most aspects of training, including PULADA. At present, the only person who has seen the training areas on the recon is the OC, and on arrival in country he is over-occupied (and often absent from BUTTERWORTH) with leading advance parties about. The replacement of the CQMS by the Training Officer on the recon would preclude that, and provide him with a wide variety of "on - the - spot" information he needs. The CQMS easily achieves his objectives by going on the advance party.

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

8. The requirements of Reference A were met. No real incidents occurred, however twice daily and twice nightly the QRF was reacted on drill call-outs. No operational tasks were issued by OC RAAF Base BUTTERWORTH.

9. Security levels were increased over the Christmas/New Year period, the Chinese New Year and Thaipusam (Indian Religious Period) as a routine precaution.

10. The same system of continuously maintaining three full QRF sections was adopted. However, extensive training programs were continued and the problems of boredom and weariness were not experienced due to correct training management by the platoon commanders during the time their platoon was assigned QRF responsibilities.

11. Substantial liaison was effected with the RMAF Commando Force (Handau) which is also stationed at BUTTERWORTH with similar duties to minimize the possibility of patrol clashes.

/A document

RESTRICTED

A document was prepared and submitted to FF Comd listing key phrases in Bahasa Malay, English and phonetic Australian, to be included in future preparatory programs. No incidents occurred, but the very real probability exists for a clash, as Handau troops now man the armed sentry posts on the perimeter, some of which are uncomfortably close to Key Points (KP). As they are without communications, usually with weapons in the action or instant condition and practise different rules of engagement is not hard to imagine the possibility of a clash between one of these posts and an Australian QRF drill reaction to nearby KP. Not a problem

12. GDOC and other necessary agencies here are aware of this problem and currently close liaison has been sufficient to prevent any clashes. The same situation cannot be guaranteed in a period of threat.

QRF Equipment

13. Searchlights. The searchlight problem is resolved. New moveable sealed beam searchlights are now operational on the QRF truck. The serviceability of the truck is the next problem.

14. SUIT. SUIT sights should be brought over as part of routine security equipment. They provide a good degree of night shooting capability. Companies should also bring their normal holdings of AN/PVS 4 night sights when they are issued. The greatest threat here is assessed as being at night and except for the artificial airfield lighting, pyrotechnics and the SUIT sights there are no aids to night engagements.

By may take sniper
15. Snipers. The inclusion of a sniper team, (preferably two) is recommended. The effectiveness of sniper teams with their capacity for discriminatory and highly selective long range shooting in the event of hostilities on the base cannot be overemphasised. There are a number of vantage points in the base from which sniping teams could very effectively operate to cover the majority of the airbase if reacted to particular sectors in support of a QRF. Consideration should be given by future companies to the inclusion of snipers in this contingent. In addition to the enhanced security obtained, the experience of sniping in a built up area afforded by such duties would be invaluable to future operations.

16. Tobias. This Intruder Detection equipment, as previously reported is ineffective and should be withdrawn for reasons already stated. It does not assist in the detection of intruders in what is a high noise and movement environment.

17. Riot Control Gear. The provision of NBC equipment here is useful for NBC training, but of no practical value in operations. No gas is available, and if it was, competency in its use by Australian troops trying to quell a riot or control a crowd are certainly questionable.

/Alternatively,

Alternatively, there is a need for the issue and training with batons, shields and riot helmets, supplemented by the weapons, warning banners and ancillary on - issue equipment such as loud hailer, wire medical items and vehicles already held. At present only rifles, bayonets and combat helmets are available for riot control, and the potential for unnecessarily high casualties remains.

Base Orientation

18. A week's orientation program was conducted on arrival, and was most valuable. More emphasis and time needs to be spent on detailed touring and inspection of the key points and facilities, vulnerable areas, armed guard towers, routes about the base and friendly force locations. There is a further need for companies on change over to be together for 24 hours. The value of allowing peers to pass on details of local training facilities, techniques etc is inestimable and is not best covered by any amount of briefings. Consideration should be given to altering the changeover to occur not overnight but over 24 hours.

Documentation

19. Standing Orders. Standing Orders were revised and a total re-issue was made. Contrary to Reference A, of the three directive documents required to be handed over between companies, none were. Only Reference A itself is held by this company. There is a need to confirm that these three documents are still valid, publish this in the new (DRAFT) instruction to replace Reference A and re-issue them to OC Rifle Company BUTTERWORTH.

20. DP1 Status. Few difficulties were encountered in preparing this group for overseas service due to the Operational Deployment Force requirements of being prepared for such contingencies. Except for non-ODF elements in the contingent, administrative preparation was relatively smooth, and this vindicates the ODF system of preparedness.

Weapons

21. All weapons and operational equipment are either functional, or undergoing routine repair and maintenance. See detailed comments in Logistics.

Communications

22. The same observations were made about HF communications over long distances. Competent operators, functional equipment and computer printed ionospheric prediction frequency charts notwithstanding, radio communications were largely ineffective between BUTTERWORTH and PULADA.

23. Telephone remains the simplest and most effective system over these distances.

/TRAINING

RESTRICTED

- 5 -

TRAINING

General

24. The absence of a combined exercise with the Malaysian forces allowed the company to concentrate on training orientated towards the conduct of anti-guerilla operations in a tropical environment. The non - Infantry component in particular, finding this to be an unfamiliar task, benefited accordingly, while the Infantry component confirmed and extended their skills.

25. Pre-deployment Training. A total of six weeks were spent by the composite group in preparing to deploy to BUTTERWORTH. Non - Infantry contingents also underwent necessary additional training at their own units to become capable of conducting Infantry operations and of handling Infantry weapons. Troops underwent the prescribed training in Reference A on site at RAAF Base TOWNSVILLE, and this was assessed as being extremely effective. Where possible, companies should try to conduct such training on an airbase.

26. Training Scope. The following training was conducted by platoons:
- a. Infantry Minor Tactics at KULIM - two days.
 - b. Jungle Warfare at PULADA - one week.
 - c. Field firing of all company weapons by day and night at PULADA - one week.
 - d. First Aid Course - three days.
 - e. Unarmed Combat and/or Bayonet Fighting - daily.
 - f. Communications Course - two days.
 - g. Watermanship - two days.
 - h. Survival - two days.
 - i. Range Practices.
 - j. Physical Training.
 - k. Helicopter Operations.
 - l. Fighting in built up areas.
 - m. Security Operations (Reference A).

/27. Physical Training

RESTRICTED

27. Physical Training. The obstacle course on base was renovated and put into use. A bayonet assault course was built in the company lines and physical training aids also constructed and used.
28. Ranges. As usual, the Baghdad classification range was largely unavailable, and alternatives were only used with extreme caution and with the achievement of limited objectives. Almost all training ammunition was used.
29. Education. Subject Three for Sergeant (AACE 2) and some coaching towards AACE 1 was conducted by the Education Officer LT G.M. Gough. A perfect pass rate was achieved, and this bears comment. The innovative and effective technique of self paced instruction introduced in recent years was used. Soldiers elected to study particular subjects and then worked on them when they wished in their own time. Constant access to counselling and tutoring was available, and at the conclusion of the course of work, the soldier presented himself for examination. This allowed formal structured training to progress unhindered, and the motivation factor to help oneself was high. This technique is highly recommended, and the success of this portion of training is due to a dedicated and professional approach to his task by LT Gough. His report is at Annex A.
30. Tours. Recreation tours to BANGKOK (one week) and SINGAPORE (four days) were conducted by 116 members in all, with approval of OC RAAF Base. These were very successful and popular, and were completed without incident.
31. Sport. Little competition was available over the period due to the reduced activity on base. Every possible meet was contested, and a large amount of inter-platoon sport was played, while individuals began preparing themselves for unit competitions back in Australia. The following sports were contested against RAAF or RMAF teams:
- a. Australian Rules.
 - b. Touch Rugby.
 - c. Softball.
 - d. Basketball.
 - e. Soccer.
 - f. Shooting.
 - g. Cross Country Race (Around the Island).
 - h. Volleyball.

/32. Maps.

33. Training Areas. A new training area has been located by OC 65 GL Sect, tentatively nicknamed BURMA area close by, and under the control of 6 MIB. This has been reconnoitred by OC 65 GL Sect, and Majors Linwood and Greville. D Coy 2/4 RAR will report on the usefulness and value of this area as they will be the first Australian troops to use it.

35. Pamphlets. Administrative and training pamphlets supposed to be held here are either superseded, missing amendments or missing altogether. Current advice is that each company should bring its own set. However, companies do not usually get some of the bigger and important pamphlets such as Defence Instructions in Australia, nor do they become aware of amendments to pamphlets (sometimes important) issued during their tour. The solution is to include this unit on the distribution list for automatic issues of pamphlets and amendments. At the moment, a fresh issue of all necessary pamphlets is desirable as very few of any sort are held here. Indent action is being initiated here for those missing.

- a. Orion Surveillance missions.
- b. Canberra flights.
- c. Water and land winching with SAR flight.
- d. Visits to RAAF Squadrons.
- e. Limited training with the Handau.

[illegible]

RESTRICTED

- 8 -

38. Protection. The opportunities for training both on and off the base are almost unlimited as facilities and equipment are available, or if planned for in advance, can be obtained. However, an important factor to note in view of the increasing CT incidents in the country is the desirability of taking adequate protective measures when training off base. In accordance with Reference A, Annex D, it was decided to issue ball ammunition to selected personnel during most outside training. Approval was obtained from OC RAAF Base to do so.

39. Air Gun Range. Two high quality air guns were brought from Australia and utilized on an in-door range constructed in the class room. This proved very effective and provided both an entertainment medium and a day and night shooting training aid. Extensive use was made of this both by individuals, and on an organized basis. Future similar activities are recommended. With simple preparation, even a primitive form of Cine Range or 35mm slide target projected on a screen can be (and was) fired at, with very cost-effective and militarily relevant training results.

PERSONNEL

Manning

40. Once the pre-deployment training was complete, no problems arose from the multi-corps nature of the composite group. Some observations were relevant:

- a. 4 Platoon (B Sqn 3/4 Cav Regt) experienced difficulty in getting used to working together. In particular, NCO's, probably ~~because they were used to exercising constant direct supervision~~ over many soldiers at once took a long time to develop the ability to do so adequately.
- b. The inclusion of several engineers with their trade skills was extremely useful. Most minor repairs and many construction tasks were quickly and capably completed by them.
- c. The minimum necessary specialists at Reference A are needed. In addition, concurrent training activities and the poor condition of all vehicles (except the new Toyota Hi-Ace) require three vehicle mechanics on the job full time just to keep the transport going.
- d. An experienced Training Officer is needed to help conduct PULADA training and those range practices needing an officer to conduct them. A normal company officer complement is not sufficient.
- e. A strong co-operative and unified company spirit developed and was sustained, and it is doubtless that non-Infantry members have benefited enormously from operating as Infantry.

/Visits

RESTRICTED

Visits

41. CO 1RAR, LTCOL B.J. Caligari visited the company over the Christmas - New Year period.

Welfare

42. Few welfare problems developed, largely due to good unit support from 1 RAR on the few occasions there were problems and to thorough pre-embarkation administration. No one was repatriated on welfare or compassionate grounds.

Medical

43. A summary is attached at Annex B. Two significant injuries during training were suffered. Both soldiers were evacuated to Australia on medical advice. The following factors were noted:

- a. Medical support from 4 RAAF Hospital was excellent.
- b. A real "Dustoff" was successfully conducted for [REDACTED] from KULIM. This was timely and efficient, and handled well by the platoon commander 2LT A.J. Macneil and the SAR Flight.
- c. The acclimatization of TOWNSVILLE troops to what is virtually the same climate was evident. Conversely, troops not from Townsville (two Military Police) and those from units without an energetic PT program took longer to acclimatize.
- d. It was necessary to temporarily hospitalize a soldier in RNZAF Hospital, SINGAPORE from PULADA.

Leave

44. Local leave to BUTTERWORTH and PENANG was permitted. As stated, the vast majority of the company visited BANKOK and SINGAPORE on organized platoon tours. The value of collecting tour money before leaving Australia became evident in-country where soldiers were more able to manage their finances knowing that what they had in the hand they could spend. The details of tours available are obtained in OC reconnaissance. Following the return to Australia by the company, two soldiers are approved to take leave in THAILAND, and two in JAPAN. All four will RTA via BUTTERWORTH by OPSAT (RAAF). Private travel money is lodged with the incumbent company should it be needed in the event of the unavailability of OPSAT travel.

Discipline

45. Rank Level. A summary of offences is at Annex C and SIB matters at Annex D. Overall, discipline has been very good. It should be noted that apart from the minor offences six of the seven more serious offences were committed by the same four soldiers from 4 Fd Regt, three of whom were ultimately sent home on completion of sentence.

/46. Rank Level.

46. Rank Level. Also the significance is that of these same offences, all occurred when the accused were under the influence of alcohol. No offences of any real consequence occurred when soldiers were sober, and except for one ID Card loss, no NCO or officer was guilty of an offense. Proper leadership and man-management by the junior commanders undoubtedly led to this.

47. Detention. Soldiers spent a total of 91 days in detention. Of minor concern is the variation between the RAAF and Army regulations for soldiers undergoing detention. This matter was addressed and satisfactory written rules which best matches the Army rules with RAAF facilities were arrived at.

48. MP Support. SGT Wellington continued to provide extremely efficient and practical assistance to the company. Both Military Policemen from the company group are not being fully employed on Army - related work. One is tasked exclusively on RAAF domestic police duties. This matter has been taken up through OC 65 GL Sect and it is expected that this will result in the correct application of their support, as stated at Reference A. RAAF police combined well with Army authorities, and amicable relationships exists, with both soldiers and airmen sometimes being kept out of potential trouble in town other than being arrested for it after it occurs.

Mail

49. One incidence of mail being tampered with occurred. It is recommended that all Australian bound mail be sent with RAAF aircrew to be posted in Australia. The Malaysian mail system appears to be very inefficient, and delays of five weeks are common. Mail to BUTTERWORTH averages five days.

50. Public Relations. Radio BUTTERWORTH (RRB) consented to compilation of a tape of messages and requests to be played by 4TO in Townsville on Australia Day. This occurred, and the concept is encouraged because of its morale value. A feature for ARMY is being prepared.

51. Wet Canteen. The wet canteen continued to function efficiently and doubtless was responsible for assisting to maintain morale and minimize the need for other ranks to go to town to drink. It was conducted along the lines of a canteen and various entertainment mediums were successfully maintained and used. It is believed this facility minimizes the incidence of drunkenness and attenuating problems in town.

Venereal Disease

52. An active program of counselling, pre-embarkation briefings and practical application of various techniques resulted in a low rate of VD. The channelling of energies rather than their attempted suppression was conducted. The free availability of contraceptives blood tests and a very practical attitude by RAAF hospital and pathology staff combined to successfully control the VD rate. Of interest is the fact that 90 personnel saw fit to undergo a blood test. Of these 13 had contracted Gonorrhoea, 10 NSU. No cases of Syphilis were identified.

/53. All have

RESTRICTED

- 11 -

53. All have been treated successfully, and all ranks underwent a routine blood test before departing for Australia. All were clear.

Drugs

54. A practical anti - drug campaign including briefings, drug dogs and random spot checks resulted in no drug incidents at all.

Repatriatio to Australia

55. Six soldiers were repatriated to Australia, three on disciplinary grounds (see extensive separate correspondence on the incident of 20 Dec 81), one on urgent request from his unit for reposting, and two on RAAF medical advice for limb injuries suffered during training.

LOGISTICS

Rations and Quarters

56. As a result of vigorous and continued requests, long awaited improvements to the quarters have begun. A repair and painting program is now in effect, with about fifteen percent of the company lines completed. All electrical fittings work, the SAL are fully functioning and the very small laundry is almost complete. The QRF room also has been insect proofed. Company carpenters repaired most of the furniture.

57. While these improvements are greatly welcomed the fact remains that accomodation is still substandard by Australian service standards. RAAF Base BUTTERWORTH authorities recognize this and provided assistance to upgrade facilities. Rations are of a satisfactory standard.

58. The opinions stated in previous reports are supported. Australian soldiers on duty in the rifle company in BUTTERWORTH do not get the standard of quarters (even with the new laundry which will be inadequate for 120 live in soldiers when it is in operation) they are entitled to and pay for. FF Comd is strongly urged to seek the waiver of the payment of the quarters elements of R&Q by junior ranks whilst they are on service here. The present full charge of R&Q is unfair.

59. Hygiene. Although locally engaged civilians conduct hygiene duties, they require constant supervision. Unless this is done, the standard of the ablutions etc deteriorates rapidly to an unhealthy level.

60. Transport. A new Toyota Hi-Ace is delivered, and one landcruiser of the two are now in adequate condition. All of the trucks are held kept running only by extensive RAEME/RAAF artificer effort. The continued reliance upon these decrepit and unreliable vehicles is unacceptable. The majority of truck usage is not on base running, but on taskings about the country in support of training. As it is, one truck was abandoned at TENGAH from PULADA, necessitating air support to recover stores from the location.

/There

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 12 -

There continues to be an urgent need for reliable trucks which have a troop and stores carrying capacity.

Ammunition

61. Present scales of ammunition for training and holdings for operations are satisfactory, except for the following:

- a. 5.56mm ball needs to be at least doubled to 30,000 for training. One half of all infantry weapons are now M16, and they are also automatic. The increase to more than SLR ammunition holdings is needed to permit training to be conducted at correct levels. At present, M16 operators have insufficient ammunition.
- b. The 40mm Illumination round which is in service is not even in the ammunition scaling. This round is excellent and is needed here. A scaling of 400 rds for training and 400 rds for operations is recommended.
- c. When the 40mm HEDP round is issued, it should also be included.
- d. 84mm HEAT, needs to be greatly upgraded. While there may be no assessed armour threat, the amount allocated may as well not be there. At least one round of 84mm PRAC and 84mm HEAT is required for each man. Sub-calibre shooting is excellent but it does not replace the total experience and realism of firing the real thing.

Equipment

62. Training Aid 21mm. Previous poor maintenance has resulted in some of the launcher barrels deteriorating to a questionable standard. The EIS team will have to examine these for safety. Further, a supply of expended 66mm launcher tubes drilled for sub-calibre fitting is now required and have been indented for as the present launchers have experienced their maximum 35 firings of 21mm Rockets (refer to weapon pamphlet).

63. Outboard Motors. Despite RAAF workshop overhauling, two of the three outboard motors are still unserviceable. As these items are obsolescent, and parts are largely unprocureable, it is recommended they be replaced altogether. Rous to 1033
to 21 Sep.

64. Sports Equipment. RAAF holdings of sports equipment are surprisingly poor, both in quality and quantity. It is recommended that FF Comd authorize the issue of a full scale of such equipment to the company here, as sport plays a major role and justifies such action. Indents are being placed.

65. Expense. Companies are advised to include certain basic scalings of expense items such as flannelette with their stores. During the OC's recon, current shortages should be determined. The supply system, both from Australia and through the RAAF is unacceptable in producing some items due to other priorities, time of the year and availability of certain stocks at supply depots.

/66.

GPMC M60.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 13 -

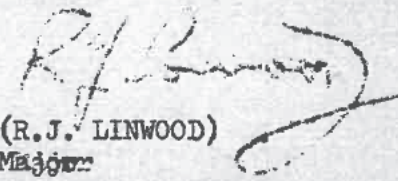
66. GPMG M60. One 1 RAR M60 was damaged during live firing when a partly chambered round fired, jamming the gun. This has been cleared and the gun will be restored to serviceability in Australia on return. Appropriate reports have been submitted. There are no holdings of replacement M60 belts here at the moment. Indents for replacement items under the Repair Parts Scale are being raised to meet the requirement.
67. Comms Equipment. The serviceability of most of the comms equipment is adequate. The EIS inspection and subsequent RAEME attention should remedy any faults. No significant breakdowns are registered.
68. Stocktake. The handover/takeover stocktake has been completed with no discrepancies.
69. Ammunition Proofing. This was conducted in December. No significant problems were identified, however, it is a concern that the SRAAW, 66mm L1A2, F1 is still unavailable.
70. Reproduction. There is still a definite need for reproduction facilities in the company, and a detailed bid was placed in for appropriate machinery. Sharing RAAF facilities is unsuitable due to time lags, RAAF priorities, lost documents and the volume of Army production.
71. Movement To and From Australia. Movement has been satisfactory to and from Australia for both stores and troops.
72. Charity. The company continued to provide monetary and volunteer help support to the orphanage.

CONCLUSION

73. Support. Particularly pleasing was the professional attitude, co-operation and support evident from most organizations, such as the SAR Flight, GDOC, Handau, and in particular 65 GL Section with whom particularly good rapport was maintained, resulting in the resolution of almost every problem that arose.

The concept of a composite company, while not unique, was an interesting one on the basis that its three rifle platoons came from three different arms units. Forging these into a coherent and competent Infantry rifle company was achieved with a minimum of fuss, and in fact, the overall performance has been pleasing.

With the exception of three soldiers, the entire company have gained valuable experience in a semi-operational Asian environment. This experience can only be to the benefit of the personnel who served here.


(R.J. LINWOOD)
Major
Officer Commanding

/Annexes:

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- Annexes:
- A. Education Report
 - B. Medical Report
 - C. Offences Summary
 - D. Reports of SIB Enquiries

Distribution:

FF Comd (3)

OC RAAF Butterworth (2)

For Information:

● DIV (2)

3 Bde

B Sqn 3/4 Csq Regt

4 Fd Regt

1 RAR (2)

18 Fd Sqn (Lt)

65 GL Sect

AS Defence Attache KUALA LUMPUR

File

4 Fd Regt

RESTRICTED

EDUCATION REPORT

Introduction

1. During the tour Subject 3 for Sergeant (AAGE 2) was offered in four subjects for those requiring it. As such, there was no compulsion to undertake studies, but all soldiers were counselled by both Platoon Staff and the Education Officer that it was in their own best interests to do so.

Method

2. The technique used for each subject was designed around Programmed Self Instruction (PSI). However given the limited preparation time (3 weeks prior to embarkation), full justice to the method was impossible. As it was, at least one third of the material was prepared in country.

3. The idea of basing the instruction on this technique was to enable the soldier:

- a. to more flexibly be able to undertake his priority defence role;
- b. to co-ordinate education studies around the wide range of military training available in Malaysia;
- c. to work at his own pace in his own time;
- d. to work as a group within his own platoon, using the assistance of already qualified members, e.g. Platoon Staff;
- e. to be specially coached in individual problem areas by the Education Officer;
- f. to present for assessment within a time range.

4. Most candidates found this method convenient and interesting, but coaching as a group was necessary in Arithmetic and Social Studies. Platoon Commanders also found that while some disruption occurred, the fact that this took place during Quick Reaction Force (QRF) duties, interruption was minimised.

Results

5. Results from the program are as follows:

a. Platoon Statistics:

(1) Spt/CHQ

- | | | |
|-----|------------------|----|
| (a) | Needed qual: | 12 |
| (b) | Attempted qual: | 6 |
| (c) | Fully qualified: | 2 |
| (d) | Part qualified: | 4 |

- (2) 4 PL
 - (a) Needed qual: 15
 - (b) Attempted qual: 12
 - (c) Fully qualified: 12
 - (d) Part qualified: -
- (3) 5 PL
 - (a) Needed qual: 21
 - (b) Attempted qual: 9
 - (c) Fully qualified: 9
 - (d) Part qualified: -
- (4) 6 PL
 - (a) Needed qual: 14
 - (b) Attempted qual: 9
 - (c) Fully qualified: 7
 - (d) Part qualified: 2

b. Company Statistics:

- (1) Members needing qual: 62
- (2) Members attempted qual: 36
- (3) Members fully qualified: 30
- (4) Members part qualified: 6
- (5) Members counselled on submitting past qualifications: 18
- (6) Total Subjects attempted: 76
- (7) Total Subjects passed: 76
- (8) Total Subjects failed: Nil

Reporting

6. As well as a Schedule of Results being submitted to CARO, an Education Report was compiled on each soldier requiring Subject 3. Two copies of this report were forwarded to each Regimental HQ and a copy retained at the Aust Rifle Coy Butterworth.

/Recommendation

Recommendation

7. Each future instructor should:
- a. fully prepare and upgrade the PSI material prior to departure;
 - b. brief the whole company on requirements of study while on tour, including all Platoon Staff in particular;
 - c. check every soldier's AAB 83 and verify currency of assessment by CARO;
 - d. interview each intending candidate for assessment of interest; and
 - e. hand out study material either before departure, or shortly after arrival so that time deadlines for submission of material is met.

Conclusion

8. Education during this period has been successful because of the flexibility the soldier has been allowed to both undertake studies as well as carry out his basic task. If this schema of instruction is sufficiently built upon and streamlined it will allow the soldier both here and in other locations to successfully upgrade his qualifications.

MEDICAL INJURIES AND SICKNESS
9 DEC 81 - 17 FEB 82

Illnesses

1. During the first three weeks at Butterworth sicknesses such as colds, rashes, diarrhoea and vomiting were experienced.

"TRACT" a. Colds. There were many types, most classified as URTI (Upper Respiratory Tracked Infections). These lasted for a period until a degree of resistance was built up to the different types of organisms which are found here.

b. Rashes and Tinea. These were mainly found around the face and crotch areas. Most of these rashes did not respond to normal treatment. Sufferers were sent to the MO where they were given antibiotics.

c. Vomiting and Diarrhoea. These were most evident after people tried different types of cooking in PENANG.

2. Venereal Disease. The one problem faced by the Coy was VD. Ninety people consulted with Dr Dan for consultation and treatment. The reason that this number was so large was due to the soldiers being made aware of the problems of VD and subsequently choosing to have precautionary tests for peace of mind. 13 cases of Gonorrhoea and 10 NSU were recorded. The areas where these were caught were Singapore, Penang and Bangkok. No one contracted Syphilis as of 15 Feb 82.

3. Scabies (Crabs). All people who caught Scabies boiled all clothing and were confined to a toilet area for their use only. After being cleared those areas are then sprayed by RAAF Hygiene Staff and cleared.

4. Jungle Training. The main problems were cuts, abrasions and contusions due to the area troops were working in. There were very few colds and only two cases of diarrhoea. Two people were sent down to RNZAF Hospital SINGAPORE. One was admitted to RNZAF Hospital - diagnosis unconfirmed. The second was given treatment for Bronchitis, which required Antibiotics.

5. Main Injuries. [REDACTED] fractured his right Tibia and Fibula in two places and dislocated his right elbow. [REDACTED] dislocated his right ankle. Both were evacuated to Australia.

6. A list of different types of injuries and illnesses that 4 RAAF Hospital treated appears below:

a.	S.T.D. (Sexually Transmitted Diseases)	23
b.	Rashes.	19
c.	Injuries to Limbs.	16
d.	Muscle Strains.	4
e.	Eye Problems.	4

f.	Epididymo Orchitis. (Inflamed Testicles)	2
g.	Warts Removed.	6
h.	U.R.T.I.	42
i.	Infected Bites.	2
j.	Diarrhoea and Vomiting	17
k.	Abrasions, Lacerations and Contusions.	12
l.	Back Problems.	2
m.	Penile Lesions,	7
n.	Scabies.	4
o.	Ear Problems.	5
p.	Haemorrhoids.	2
q.	Dental Problems.	5

7. Twelve soldiers were admitted to hospital for a total of fifty six days,
None were serious.

ANNEX C TO
AS RIFLE COY R723-1-1
DATED 16 FEB 82

OFFENCES SUMMARY

ADGT NO/NAME	OFFENCE	AWARD
	WONS CONDUCT TO THE PREJUDICE (DRINKING IN SGT'S MESS)	3 Days CB \$20 FINE
	WONS CONDUCT TO THE PREJUDICE (DRINKING IN SGT'S MESS)	3 Days CB \$20 FINE
	WONS STRIKING HIS SUPERIOR OFFICER WONS DISOBEYING A LAWFUL COMMAND	28 Days Detention \$40 FINE
	WONS STRIKING HIS SUPERIOR OFFICER	14 Days Detention \$40 FINE
	WONS STRIKING HIS SUPERIOR OFFICER WONS DISOBEYING A LAWFUL COMMAND	28 Days Detention \$40 FINE
	WONS STRIKING HIS SUPERIOR OFFICER WONS DISOBEYING A LAWFUL COMMAND	21 Days Detention
	WONS LOSING BY NEGLIGENCE (ID CARD)	ADMONITION
	WONS LOSING BY NEGLIGENCE (ID CARD)	ADMONITION \$10 FINE
	WONS WILLFULLY INJURING PRIVATE PROPERTY (CRASHED JUKE-BOX)	4. 5 Days CB \$10 FINE
	WONS NEGLECTING TO OBEY UNIT NO (OUT OF BOUNDS AREA)	ADMONITION
	WONS LOSING BY NEGLIGENCE (ID CARD)	ADMONITION

REPORT OF SPECIAL INVESTIGATION BRANCH ENQUIRIES
INVOLVING MEMBERS OF B COY 1 RAR

SERIAL	SIB CASE NO	PARTICULARS OF OFFENCES/ENQUIRY
(a)	(b)	(c)
1.	SIB/BUT/32/81	<p><u>THEFT</u></p> <p>11 Dec 81 - [REDACTED] B Coy 1 RAR, reported that between 0100 and 0630 hrs on 11 Dec 81 his wrist Tissot value A\$150, his wallet value \$20 which contained an undetermined sum of money, was removed from his person whilst he slept in the ferry building BUTTERWORTH.</p> <p><u>RESULT OF INVESTIGATION</u></p> <p>A local civilian was convicted of the offence and sentenced to one year jail. Prompt action by a local storekeeper in reporting the offender to a beat policeman resulted in apprehension of the offender and return of the belongings. A letter of commendation was sent to the storekeeper.</p>
2.	SIB/BUT/33/81	<p><u>ALLEGED ASSAULT</u></p> <p>On 21 Dec 81 CSM B Coy 1 RAR reported that about 2100 hrs the previous evening in the BC Bar, two NCO's of B Company had been punched and kicked in the body and head by a group of Australian soldiers.</p> <p><u>RESULT OF INVESTIGATION</u></p> <p>Four soldiers of B Coy 1 RAR were interviewed in relation to the incident and three were charged with;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Striking a Superior Officer, andb. Disobeying a Lawful Command. <p>The fourth soldier was charged with;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Striking a Superior Officer.
3.	SIB/BUT/34/81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>On 19 Dec 81, [REDACTED] B Coy 1 RAR, reported that during the time of 1200-1235 19 Dec 81, his T shirt which contained his wallet, Army ID Card, Civilian Drivers Licence plus M\$50.00 in bank notes was removed from a table at the Swimming Pool, Air Base BUTTERWORTH.</p> <p><u>RESULT OF INVESTIGATION</u></p> <p>No offender detected in this enquiry.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">/4. SIB/BUT/1/82</p>

(a)

(b)

(c)

4.

SIB/BUT/1/82

ALLEGED LOSS/THEFT

[REDACTED], B Coy 1 RAR reported that between 1630 and 1645 hrs 12 Jan 82 he handed his camera valued at S\$545.40 to a friend for safe keeping. The friend later left the camera in a taxi.

RESULT OF INVESTIGATION

Enquiries are continuing to locate the taxi driver.

5.

SIB/BUT/2/82

ALLEGED MALICIOUS DAMAGE

On 20 Jan 82 the Trg Offr, B Coy 1 RAR reported that between 0030 hrs and 0630 hrs on 29 Jan 82 the juke-box located in the Unit Recreation Building had been externally damaged. The Juke-box is the property of a local business man.

RESULT OF INVESTIGATION

A soldier of B Coy 1 RAR was interviewed in connection with this incident and was subsequently charged with Wilfully Injuring Private Property. The soldier also voluntarily paid for the damage to the owner.

6.

SIB/BUT/3/82

ALLEGED THEFT

On 21 Jan 82 the A/CSM B Coy 1 RAR reported that between 0730 and 0740 hrs that morning, a Citizen Quartz wrist watch valued at S\$100.00 the property of [REDACTED], B Coy 1 RAR was removed from the SAL Block of the Rifle Coy Lines, Air Base Butterworth.

RESULT OF INVESTIGATION

A search was carried out of SAL Block and surrounds, and a Malaysian Civilian employee of the Air Base BUTTERWORTH Golf Club has been interviewed by Malaysian Police. No information relating to the immediate recovery of the missing wrist watch has been forthcoming.

AUSTRALIAN ARMY

52

Telephone: 331666 ext 785

Australian Rifle Company
RMAF Airbase Butterworth
West Malaysia
c/- AFPO
Central Mail Exchange
Sydney NSW 2890
AUSTRALIA

In Reply Quote: R722/1/4

See Distribution List

9 Jun 80

END OF TOUR REPORT
SPT COY 1 RAR
23 FEB - 12 JUN 80

- Reference: A. HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79 dated 6 Jul 79.
B. AS RIFLE COY STANDING ORDERS
C. A COY 6 RAR TOUR OF DUTY REPORT dated 21 Feb 80.

INTRODUCTION

General

1. The Spt Coy 1 RAR Contingent assumed duty as the AS Rifle Coy BUTTERWORTH on 24 Feb 80, having relieved A Coy 6 RAR.
2. C Coy 3 RAR will relieve Spt Coy 1 RAR and become responsible for security duties at RMAF Airbase BUTTERWORTH wef 120430GH JUN 80.

Aim

3. The aim of this report is to cover the operational, training, personnel and logistic aspects of the tour.
4. Certain recommendations will be made to assist in the planning and preparation of future company tours. For ease of reading, this report will be written in a similar sequence to that of reference A.

OPERATIONAL ASPECTS

Tasks

5. The tasks of the contingent conformed to paragraph 5 a and b to reference A. A combined exercise with the Malaysian Army was not undertaken.

Manning

Manning

6. The contingent deployed to BUTTERWORTH with a full compliment of 132 all ranks. Based on Establishment 4001-xx-2, the manning of the contingent conformed essentially to paragraph 7 of reference A, with the following exceptions:

- a. Physical Training Instructor. A PTI was not available from within 3TF and therefore one was not taken. As a heavy emphasis is placed on sport and physical training at BUTTERWORTH, it is strongly suggested that a PTI be included in all future tours;
- b. Three RAB Tradesmen including at least one carpenter. These members were not taken due to the contingent Infantry Assault Pioneer Platoon.
- c. Clerk Admin ECN 074-1. An additional clerk was taken and is considered to be beneficial. It gave the opportunity for the orderly room corporal to be involved in company exercises and tours. The additional administration required at BUTTERWORTH is probably beyond that expected of one orderly room clerk. Further it is stressed that one clerk must be a competent typist;
- d. RAEME Vehicle Mechanic. A RAEME vehicle mechanic was taken, and without his support the operational availability of vehicles would have been greatly effected. The contingent deployed parties by road to PULADA and LANGKAWI Island, and minor breakdowns and repairs were readily handled. It is considered that a RAEME vehicle mechanic is necessary for all future tours;
- e. Education Officer. An Education Officer from the TOWNSVILLE Education Section was taken. All members of the contingent were given the opportunity to attend AACE 2 courses, if required. In addition he conducted AACE 1 and SGCE coaching as well as officer promotion coaching;
- f. BAHASA MALAYSIAN Linguist. A BAHASA MALAYSIAN linguist was taken from 1 RAR, and he proved to be invaluable. Whilst the majority of Malaysian Army and Air Force Officers are fluent in English, this is not always the case when dealing with other ranks, and semi-government agencies. It is strongly suggested that consideration be given to including a BAHASA MALAYSIAN linguist on all future tours, or for the permanent posting of a linguist to the AS Rifle Coy.

Desirable, if one is readily available...

FOHD 4 Para 1

Possible

7. All other attachments as suggested in reference A were taken.

REPLACEMENTS

8. Two members of the contingent were returned to TOWNSVILLE during the tour, due to welfare reasons. Only one member, an orderly room corporal, was replaced.

/DEPLOYMENT

DEPLOYMENT

9. PLANNING

- a. No formal mounting instruction was available from HQ 1 DIV. Reference A was considered to be **sufficient** to deploy the company.
- b. The contingent deployed to BUTTERWORTH six days earlier than originally planned due to the requirement for RAAF aircraft to be available for the extraction of the Rhodesian force.
- c. During the tour, the rotation date of the contingent was altered, due to the RAAF aircraft requirement to support the visit to AUSTRALIA of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II. The additional two weeks spent in country meant that certain personnel scheduled to attend courses and exercises were required to be returned to TOWNSVILLE early.

*Staff instruction to be amended to warn against planning commitments close to arrival and 7 d. tour
FOLIO 4 para 2*

MOVEMENT

- a. The contingent advance party deployed to BUTTERWORTH by RAAF C-130 courier on 12 Feb 80. The main body was flown by RAAF B707 departing TOWNSVILLE on 23 Feb 80.
- b. The services and support provided by MCO TOWNSVILLE and the RAAF Air Movements GARBUTT and BUTTERWORTH was excellent. All movement was handled in a professional and trouble free manner.
- c. Maximum use was made of two B type BMSS containers made available for the movement of company stores with the advance parties. They provided a secure and effective means of moving stores. It is recommended that further use be made of these containers on future tours.

COFS

See also paras 37, 55 and 58. With a letter to Hucc?

11. RECONNAISSANCE. The OC and CQMS of Spt Coy conducted their BUTTERWORTH reconnaissance between 1 - 16 Jan 80. This was necessary due again, to available RAAF courier movements.

12. Although reference A states that about seven days should be allowed for, good use was made of the additional time to conduct a more thorough reconnaissance of PULAU and LANGKAWI Island.

13. ADVANCE PARTY. The contingent advance party arrived in BUTTERWORTH nine working days prior to the arrival of the main body. This allowed for a timely and efficient handover between relieving companies.

14. The advance party included:

- a. Coy 2IC;
- b. CQMS;
- c. Tpt supervisor;
- d. Cpl Medic;
- e. Two MP Cpls;

- f. The Pl Sgt of the first duty platoon;
- g. ammunition storeman; and
- h. orderly room clerk.

15. Where contingent includes a Training Officer, it is recommended that he be included in the advance party. This would enable more thorough preparation and co-ordination of:

- a. base familiarisation for the contingent;
- b. initial security training; and
- c. the PULADA exercise, which in most cases due to aircraft availability occurs within the first two weeks of arrival in country.

16. The two MP Cpls conducted a thorough route/road reconnaissance between BUTTERWORTH and PULADA/SINGAPORE and KUALA KEDAH/KUALA PERLIS. This was considered necessary due to the difficulties experienced in travelling long distances on Malaysian roads and the necessity for the co-ordination and planing of convoy requirements. It is recommended that this reconnaissance be continued during further tours.

TRAINING

17. SECURITY TRAINING

- a. Pre-deployment security training was conducted in accordance with reference A. In addition, a basic BAHASA MALAYSIAN language course was successfully run.
- b. On arrival at BUTTERWORTH further security training was conducted and involved the following:
 - (1) base familiarisation and reaction to Key Points by day and night;
 - (2) Search light and generator operation;
 - (3) QRF responsibilities;
 - (4) security picquet responsibilities; and
 - (5) identification of friendly forces and identification cards

18. QUICK REACTION FORCE (QRF). In accordance with reference B, a QRF of section strength was mounted on a 24 hour rotation basis. Twice nightly this force was reacted to "imaginary" incidents at Key Points, as co-ordinated by the contingent Duty Officer and the RAUF Service Police.

19. Additionally a security picquet of section strength was mounted during hours of darkness. They also provided a back-up QRF section, when the QRF was reacted.

/20. During

20. During the contingent tour, there were no "real" incidents. The only periods of increased base security were during:

- a. 17-20 Mar 80. 1/80 LADS major air defence exercise; and
- b. 24-27 May 80. protection to the back up aircraft (B707 and P3 Orion) for the visit to Australia by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II.

21. CONTINGENT EXERCISES. The contingent underwent the following exercises whilst at BUTTERWORTH;

- a. Exercise SIVLER CITY TWO and THREE. This exercise was conducted at the Malaysian Army Combat Training Centre PULADA between 21 Mar and the 7 Apr 80. It provided an excellent opportunity for the contingent to undergo range practices and field firing not normally available in AUSTRALIA. A period of standdown was taken in SINGAPORE following the exercise.
- b. Exercise DUTY FIRST One, Two and Three. This rotational platoon level exercise was conducted at LANGKAWI ISLAND during the period 21 Apr and 9 May 80. Based on IMT, it gave the company the opportunity to continue with the battalion training programme. Due to the non-availability of other training areas, LANGKAWI ISLAND is the only area suitable for Infantry exercises.
- c. Exercise "ISLAND REVIVOR". This was conducted at BIDAN ISLAND during the period 16 May to 9 Jun 80. Due to the limited facilities provided on the island, training was restricted to a basic first aid course and revision on the battalion "Jungle Training Precise".

22. Copies of all exercise instructions are held on file at BUTTERWORTH.

23. COURSES. The contingent conducted the following courses:

- a. RACE II a report by the Education Officer is given at Annex A;
- b. SFMG and MAM conducted by the weapons platoon prior to exercise SIVLER CITY TWO. Field firing of the platoon in the SFMG role was carried out at PULADA;
- c. HFCW (Morse Code) the signals platoon ran a successful course on morse code. Instruction was given by two instructors from 103 Signal Sqn brought with the contingent. The majority of the platoon reached a send/receive competency of 8 WPM with 20% of the platoon reaching 12 WPM;
- d. RAPPELLING and ABSAIL Recon, Mortar and Aslt Pnr platoons were trained in rappelling from helicopters. Wpns platoon underwent training in absail techniques. Excellent support was received from the Search and Rescue (SAR) flight. As an interest as well as as Infantry skill technique, it is recommended that future companies consider conducting this type of training.
- e. BASIC FIRST AID This course was conducted by the contingent medic corporal during exercise Island Revivor.

Subject to availability of
qualified instructors.

yo.

Para 3

24. A TAWT was conducted by Mortar platoon involving problems of a mortar support nature experienced during all phases of war. Aimed at junior NCO level it provided to be a most successful exercise. In addition a CPX was held with the aim of establishing combined mortar and SFMG co-ordination within a battalion FSC. The observations made will be passed to the Infantry Centre for comment.

25. TRAINING AREAS AND RANGES. The following training areas and ranges were used by the contingent:

- a. MALAYSIAN ARMY COMBAT TRAINING CENTRE PULADA. The range facilities provided at PULADA allowed the contingent to fire the following practices:
 - (1) Royal Ulster Rifle (RUR) and Applied Marksmanship practices on Ulu Tiram Classification ranges 1 and 2;
 - (2) 84mm MAW practice and SFMG on the "WOMBAT" moving target range. In addition M18A1 Claymores were fired on this range;
 - (3) 84mm MAW HEAT, 66 mm LAW HEAT and 40mm grenade on the Kebab HEAT range;
 - (4) M26 grenade on the WOMBAT assault grenade range;
 - (5) 5.56mm M16 Snap and Sneaker practices on the Red and Blue jungle lanes; and
 - (6) Demolition and destruction of blinds practices on demolition range. A special release of demolition explosives was allocated by HQ FF Cond for these practices.
- b. SG PETANI (BAGHDAD) RANGE. Controlled by 6MIB the contingent used the Classification range on a regular basis for grouping and zeroing practices prior to the PULADA exercise;
- c. SG DUA RANGE. Located on Penang Island and again controlled by 6MIB, this 300 metre classification range was used extensively for SA practices including a section competition falling plate practices; and
- d. BUTTERWORTH 23 metre RANGE. used for SMG F1, and 9mm SLP practices only.

26. Other ranges do exist at KULIM and GURUN but were not used by the contingent. Further information on these ranges is contained in paragraph 12 to reference C.

27. A close training area suitable for IMT and platoon level exercises does not exist in the BUTTERWORTH area. Attempts have been previously made to overcome this problem with little result.

28. ASSISTANCE TO THE RAAF. The Aslt Pnr platoon provided assistance to RAAF BUTTERWORTH by:

- a. Improving an existing helicopter LZ on the allocated training area at LANGKAWI ISLAND. This LZ was previously a vertical one-way LZ and has now the capability of accepting single UH - 1H helicopters from either the north or south;
- b. Locating underground radar and electrical cables adjacent to the main aircraft runway at BUTTERWORTH. Mine detectors were used for this task. The Aslt Pnr platoon with C Coy 3 RAR contingent has been requested to assist in a similar task; and
- c. The dismantling of aerial masts within the transmitter tower area at BUTTERWORTH.

29. RAAF AIR SUPPORT

- a. ROTARY WING. The two UH - 1H helicopters operated by SAR flight were extensively used. These aircraft supported exercises Duty First one, two and three and Island Reviver. SAR flight do hold a rope attachment device (RAD) for rappelling training.
- b. FIXED WING. RAAF C-130 aircraft inserted and extracted the contingent into SENAI Airport JOHORE BHARU for exercise Silver City Two and Three. The contingent were the last Australian army personnel to use RAAF C-47s, which were used for the insertion onto LANGKAWI ISLAND. The C-47s have recently been replaced by two Caribous, and currently there are no available hours allocated to army support. Attempts to secure hours is at present underway between HQ FF Comd and OP COM.

COMMUNICATIONS

30. Radio Frequencies. Radio frequencies are allocated by the Base Radio Officer. Some problems were experienced in obtaining suitable HF frequencies. As a HF Safety Link is maintained for all exercises outside of BUTTERWORTH (e.g. PULADA and LANGKAWI, BIDAN ISLAND) it is imperative that a broad selection of frequencies be obtained.

31. Signal Traffic. The Airbase Communications centre provided excellent support. Receipt of the RAN Fleet News kept the contingent informed on up to date World and Australian news.

32. Visits. Visits to the AS Rifle Coy were made by:

- a. CO 1 GL GP - LTCOL B. W. ELLIOT;
- b. CO 1 RAR - LTCOL P. W. BEALE;
- c. C of S HQ FF COMD - BRIG N. R. CHARLESWORTH; and
- d. SO1 OPS HQ 1 DIV - LTCOL D. PAUL.

501 (Comms)
to follow up

File 4
Rural

33. When possible, a courtesy visit should be made by the OC Rifle Coy to the ADA Australian High Commission KUALA LUMPUR.

34. Public Relations. The contingent submitted various articles and photographs to the Defence Public Relations Officer BUTTERWORTH. No evidence was received, that any of these submissions were released in AUSTRALIA particularly with the Army Newspaper.

35. It is suggested that future contingents submit their public relations requirements direct to DPK Canberra. This does bypass the local system, but appears to be the only solution when no support is received.

36. A taped radio request programme was made in conjunction with RAAF Radio Butterworth. It was released in TOWNSVILLE by radio station 4TO.

37. COMMAND AND CONTROL. The OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH AIR CDRE REYNOLDS was active in providing all requested support. The relationship between Army and Air Force is very good, and the RAAF often went out of their way to provide services to the contingent.

PERSONNEL ASPECTS

38. Medical and Dental. 4 RAAF Hospital provided full medical and dental support. A medical summary of the tour is contained in Annex B. The contingent underwent a full Malarial eradication course and series of blood tests prior to their return to TOWNSVILLE. As some cases of hookworm were reported, an eradication course is to be conducted following rotation. It is suggested that this occur with future companies.

39. Drug Abuse. No evidence of drug abuse became apparent during the tour.

40. Incident Reports. Two minor motor vehicle accidents occurred during the tour. Both were fully investigated and reports have been forwarded to HQ FF Comd. A Summary of police incidents is shown at Annex C.

41. Leave. The contingent took advantage of two organised tours, one to BANGKOK and the other to SINGAPORE. Both tours were actively supported and it is recommended that future companies take advantage of the opportunity to travel within the Peninsular Malaysia, Bangkok and Singapore.

42. DISCIPLINE. A summary of offences is given at Annex D.

43. FINANCE. There were few problems with the finance arrangements at BUTTERWORTH. Some disparity did occur towards the end of the tour with regard to Short Term Duty Overseas Allowance. It would appear that the current rate paid to Army members has not been adjusted for some considerable time.

44. Advice from the RAAF Accounting Section reveals that there is a difference between rates paid to RAAF and Army personnel. Should this be confirmed it is suggested that the discrepancy be adjusted and made retrospective.

POSTAL

POSTAL

45. Personal Mail. During the tour, an investigation was conducted into the mail system between AUSTRALIA and BUTTERWORTH. The result of the investigation were forwarded to HQ FF Comd. The new mailing address is:

Number Rank Name
Company Unit
Airbase Butterworth
West Malaysia
C/- AFPO
Central Mail Exchange
SYDNEY 2890
AUSTRALIA.

46. SERVICE MAIL. Service mail is currently addressed via the Butterworth Box RAAF RICHMOND NSW. Delays upwards of 3 weeks have been experienced and it is suggested enquiries be instituted to establish the cause of delays.

WELFARE

47. Despite a thorough welfare briefing and check prior to deployment, minor welfare problems were encountered particularly in the area of Hire Purchase repayments. Soldiers should be well vetted in this regard and briefed on the difficulties experienced in forwarding monies from MALAYSIA to AUSTRALIA.

48. During the tour, one soldier was married by Muslim ceremony to a Malaysian woman. This fact did not become evident until after the marriage had taken place. There is a laid down procedure to be adopted prior to any marriage and it is well documented on Rifle Coy files. Soldiers should be briefed fully on this matter to ensure that they do not breach any immigration requirement, and thereby nullify any chance of the intended wives return to Australia.

49. CHARITABLE WORK. Soldiers donated the coinage from their short term duty overseas allowance to charity. This money was passed on to the Australian Red Cross representative at BUTTERWORTH.

• LOGISTIC ASPECTS

50. Handover/Takeover. A 100% handover/takeover of the following was completed prior to 11 Jun 80.

- a. All army stores on charge to AS Rifle Coy;
- b. RAAF RIU assets on charge to AS Rifle Coy;
- c. all operational and coy reserve ammunition held by AS Rifle Coy;
- d. all orderly room files; and
- e. all maps and air photos held by AS Rifle Coy.

/51. Overall

51. Overall, only 3 minor discrepancies occurred and these were adjusted by the outgoing OC Rifle Coy.

Added Admin B

Stores and Equipment

52. Following the post tour reports of D Coy 5/7 RAR, and A Coy 6 RAR and the visit to BUTTERWORTH by S02 Admin Co-ord HQ FF Comd several outstanding questions were posed by HQ FF Comd (HQ FF Comd 722/K11/18 of 25 Mar 80 refers). Answers were submitted by the AS Rifle Coy in our R54/1/1 of 30 Apr 80, and to upgrade this document, the following information is tended:

a. Vehicles.

- (1) Currently there are 6 x 3 ton CL trucks and 1 x ½ ton Toyota 4 x 4 utility on line. All trucks have undergone a major overhaul service and upgrading, with life extensions issued to JUL 81. One Toyota utility is to be replaced this month;
- (2) RAAF Motor Transport and 478 Sqn vehicle workshops have been of great assistance throughout the tour; and
- (3) One 3 ton trailer suitable for towing by the Toyota utilities has been procured to improve the load carrying capacities of these vehicles.

b. Sub-Calibre adaptor 84mm. The unit currently holds two of these items.

c. 40 H.P. Outboard Motors.

- (1) The three replacement motors arrived last month. All motors are serviceable and available for use by the next company;
- (2) It is strongly suggested that only qualified operators be allowed to use these motors in future;
- (3) Due to their non serviceability no motors were used by this contingent.

d. Barracks.

- (1) Accommodation has been upgraded with the issue of replacement furniture and a programme for internal external painting. The provision of adequate mosquito proofing still remains a problem;
- (2) A submission for the air-conditioning of all offices and store areas has been made and recommended by the RAAF. This should then bring Army Office accommodation up to standard as occupied by the RAAF;

*agreed - much to be added to S02 Admin B.
done*

/(3) A portable

- (3) A portable workshop building has been procured for use by the RAEME vehicle mechanic and fitter armoured. Request for the installation of security screens, workbenches and shelving has been submitted. This will then allow additional storage space for weapons in the coy armoury;
- (4) No answer has been received from Base Sqn on the submission for provision of laundry facilities. AS Rifle Coy M54/1/1 of 17 Apr 80 (copy to HQ FF Comd) refers. Verbal reports indicate that outline costing for construction and equipping of a laundry may be in excess of M\$30,000.00. This would require DEF AIR approval and in the current tenure of RAFF at BUTTERWORTH it may not be approved
- (5) The C of S HQ FF Comd and SO1 OPS HQ 1 DIV were briefed on this problem. It was concluded that the best answer may be to seek an additional allowance to cover the cost of laundry. Currently soldiers are spending an average of M\$35.00 per month on laundry. Officers and Sgts are charged a base rate of M\$10.00 per month for laundry services provided by the messes;
- (6) It is recommended that HQ FF Comd pursue the laundry problem, and if the payment of an allowance is considered then this payment be retrospective;

follow up
para 6

para 6

- c. Burner unit M59 stove. A pump reciprocating hand C/W tank boiler testing has been received.

53. RAFF Logistic Responsibilities: It is requested that an approach be made by HQ FF Comd for RAFF Butterworth to provide local labour for the cleaning of the HQ building area and offices. Reference A, paragraph 111 does state that the Rifle Coy is responsible for this, however with the emphasis on training and exercises away from Butterworth, there is often insufficient manpower to effectively cover this task. Local labour is used by the RAFF for the cleaning of their area and offices.

54. Ammunition. The scale of ammunition available to the coy for training is sufficient to meet the needs of a normal 3 month tour. Following the recent revision of entitlements, two areas are believed to be inadequate. These are:

- a. Cart 84mm H&AT. Currently there are only 10 rounds H&AT available for training. It is suggested that this be upgraded to 30 rounds for the following reasons:

- (1) the H&AT moving target range at PULADA has no known equal in Australia, and therefore experience gained in the use of this range is of great training value; and
- (2) with the raising again of spt sections within Coys, the carriage of the 84mm MAW is a rifle company's responsibility. 10 rounds spread throughout spt section is considered to be insufficient to retain competency with the weapon.

SO1 (Tn) to
follow up.

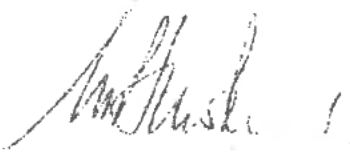
Para 8.

/b. Mine

- b. Mine A/Pers M18A1 W/Accessories. The recent revision of entitlements reduces the Rifle Coy training allocation from eight per tour to NIL. A quantity of 15 however, is still held as an operational reserve. As this ammunition has a proof life, it would obviously be more prudent to test this ammunition by use during training, rather than by the twice annual SATO 2 SUP GP visit. In addition the training areas at PULADA offer an excellent chance to fire the claymore in circumstances not available in Australia. It is therefore suggested that the allocation of eight claymores for training be re-instituted.

Conclusion

55. The tour of duty by the Spt Coy 1 RAR contingent has been challenging and rewarding. It has given all ranks the opportunity to work closely with the RAAF, RMAF and Malaysian army, in circumstances which certainly cannot be duplicated in Australia.
56. Further, the tour offered all members the chance to travel within Peninsular Malaysia, Singapore and Bangkok, thereby increasing everybody's awareness of the customs and lifestyles of our ASEAN neighbours. From this point of view the tour was extremely successful.
57. The training value received from the exercises conducted at BUTTERWORTH, PULADA and LANGKAWI ISLAND have been of great value, especially for a Support Company. The exchange of ideas, roles and training with the Malaysian Army has broadened our military knowledge and will be of benefit in any future defence co-operation.
58. Without the support of the RAAF and 65 GL Sect Butterworth the tour would not have been a success. Our thanks must go to these agencies for the excellent co-operation and assistance that was given.


(M. P. FAWCNER)
MAJOR
OFFICER COMMANDING

- Annexes:
- A. Education Officer's Report.
 - B. Medical Summary.
 - C. Police Incident Summary.
 - D. Summary of Offences.

Distribution

HQ FF COMD (3) (through OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH)
OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH (2)

For Information

Hq 1 DIV (2)

/HQ 3TF

HQ 3 TF

1 RAR

ADA MUST HIGH COMMISSION KUALA LUMPUR

65 GL SMCT

Float

File

Spare (5)

EDUCATION REPORT
BUTTERWORTH FEB - JUN 80

Introduction

1. Education courses were run at Butterworth for the Australian Army Certificate of Education, Class 2. As well coaching was given at SGCE level in the subjects Mathematics and English

Method of Instruction

2. Instruction was given to students at The RAAF Education Centre. Lecture room one (air conditioned) was made available and access was provided to audio-visual aids as well as to a well stocked library.
3. The ideal time for student study was found to be during QRF duty, as at this time, a large part of their day would be spent unoccupied in the QRF room. The emphasis throughout the courses was on students private study, with continuous access to the instructor when difficulties arose. Students were encouraged to work together in groups of two or three in all subjects.

Examinations

4. The students were examined using pre-prepared examination papers which are available in the Training/Education Office at CHQ. Due to the short, (one week per student), student instructor contact time, particular care was taken to keep subject matter strictly within the syllabus and ensuring that all examination questions were within the scope of the courses.
5. Assessment of grades was, in all subjects, based on a standardised score and the pass mark was set at one standard deviation below the mean.

Administration of Results

6. Results will be administered from the Education Section in Townsville and Student assessment performers will be forwarded independantly to members Units. Official notification of results will at a later date, be forwarded from CARO at which time, results can be entered into member's AAB 83's.

Difficulties Experienced

7. Due to the nature of the continuous Specialist Training required by the members of a Support Company, not all eligible soldiers were available for the education courses. It is suggested that this be taken into account when these soldiers return to their Units and that they be released for full or part-time education courses at the earliest opportunity.
8. Member's education records as listed in their AAB 83's was found, in some cases, to be incomplete and occasionally completely lacking.
/Where this occurred

Where this occurred, members were advised to provide copies of their education records so that action could be initiated to have these records assessed by DAE.

Conclusion

9. The running of AACE 2 Education Courses at Butterworth was found to be of great benefit to member's career development. Although difficulties did arise mainly due to time - conflicts with Platoon Training, it is envisioned that these difficulties would not be as pronounced with members of a Rifle Company, where there is not such a great demand on specialist training.

ANNEX B TO
AS RIFLE COY R722/1/4
DATED 7 JUN 80

SPT COY 1 RAR
SUMMARY OF INJURIES AND ILLNESSES
WHILST ON TOUR AT AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH MALAYSIA 1980

Flu - 16 cases.

Upper Respiratory Tract Infection - 4 case, 3 hospitalized.

Lower Respiratory Tract Infection - 1 case, hospitalized.

Viraemia - 4 cases, all hospitalized.

Bronchitis - 2 cases, both hospitalized.

Gastro Enteritis - 17 cases, all hospitalized.

Diarrhoea - 14 cases, 2 hospitalized.

Eye Trouble - 10 cases.

Conjunctivitis - 2 cases, 1 hospitalized.

Contusions - 1 case, hospitalized.

Ear trouble - 5 cases.

Knee injuries - 6 cases, 4 hospitalized.

VD - 10 cases, all responded to treatment.

Crutch rash - 32 cases.

Tinea - 19 cases.

Boils - 4 cases.

Piles - 2 cases.

Prickley heat - 21 cases, 2 hospitalized.

Tonsillitis - 4 cases, 2 hospitalized.

Fractures - 1 case,

Alcoholic poisoning - 1 case, hospitalized.

Dehydration - 2 cases, both hospitalized.

Hookworm - 3 cases.

Football injuries - 11 cases, 4 hospitalized.

Sprains - 10 cases, 3 hospitalized.

Head injuries - 3 cases, all hospitalized.

Dental - 10 cases.

Cysts - 5 cases.

Warts - 9 cases.

Physio - 23 cases.

Dislocations - 2 cases.

Minor Illness/Injuries - 61 cases.

Total Number Hospitalized - 59.

POLICE REPORTS

1. During the period 11 Feb to 26 May 80, two reports were submitted by But Det 5 MP Coy (SIS), following complaints by SPT COY 1 RAR Personnel:

- a. Alleged Assault SIS/BUT/4/80, and
- b. Alleged Theft SIS/BUT/5/80 refer.

(1) No further action is envisaged on either of these reports.

2. A number of minor thefts were reported from the Rifle Coy OR's Lines during the period 6-7 Mar 80, on both nights local nationals had been chased from the accommodation area. Inquiries failed to provide any information which would lead to the identification of these Asians.

3. Between 2200 hrs 2 Mar and 0630 hrs 3 Mar 80 two thefts were reported in the SGT's Mess accommodation buildings:

- a. [REDACTED] Spt Coy, 1 RAR, reported his black wallet M450-00, ID Card MAF129 and personal papers were missing from his room.
- b. [REDACTED] Spt Coy, 1 RAR, reported his brown wallet M450-00, ID Card MAF129 and personal papers were also missing from his room.

(1) Lost/stole property list 6/80 refers.

4. Between 12 Mar and 4 Apr 80, three thefts were reported at the Officer's Mess, Air Base Butterworth, by SPT COY, 1 RAR, officers:

- a. [REDACTED] reported that between 1900 hrs 12 Mar and 0200-00 had been removed from the security box situated in room 17 Block 10, Officer's Mess.
- b. [REDACTED], reported that between 1800 hrs 13 Mar and 1800 hrs 14 Mar 80, M4100-00 had been removed from his security box situated in room 11, Block 10, Officer's Mess.
- c. [REDACTED] reported that between 0720 hrs and 1200 hrs [REDACTED] had been removed from his secure room, room 13 Block 10, Officer's Mess.

(1) RARFPBUT/705/1/1004/P1 refers.

5. Between 21 and 24 Mar 80, two reports were received from OR's that footwear had been removed from the OR's accommodation blocks:

- a. [REDACTED], reported that between 2200 hrs 21 Mar and 0500 hrs 22 Mar 80, a pair of running shoes valued at M482-00 and a pair of rubber thongs valued at M433-00 had been removed from beneath his bed in his accommodation block.

/(1) Lost/Stolen

(1) Lost/Stolen Property List 9/80 refers.

- b. [REDACTED] reported that between 2359 hrs 21 Mar and 1100 hrs 24 Mar 80 four pairs of sporting shoes totally valued at £\$99-00 had been removed from beneath his bed in his accommodation block.

(1) Lost/Stolen Property List 10/80 refers.

6. On 21 May 80, [REDACTED], reported that between 0700 hrs and 0710 hrs 19 May 80, a blue 'Sunbeam' steam and dry iron, had been removed from the SGT's Mess accommodation block. The iron is a RAAF issue 'A' class item. Lost/Stolen Property List 18/80 refers.

7. No reports were submitted by But Det 5 MP Coy (SIS) in reference to the thefts mentioned in para 4 and 5 due to the absence of the investigator on exercise. Enquiries were carried out by RAAF CIB.

OFFENCES SUMMARY
 SPT COY 1 RAR BUTTERWORTH FEB - JUN 80

1. The following offences occurred during Spt Coy 1 RAR tour of Butterworth Feb - Jun 80:

Number	Rank	Name	Offence	Remarks
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Losing by Neglect his Regimental Necessaries	lost ID Card 3 Days CB Fine \$5-00
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Using Insubordinate Language. Disobeying a Lawful Command	Severe Rep Fine \$20-00
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Disobeying a Lawful Command. Using Insubordinate Language	72hrs Detention 7 Days CB \$40-00 Fine
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Using Insubordinate Language	Reprimand
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Conduct To The Prejudice	96hrs Detention
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Neglecting To Obey Unit Standing Orders	Severe Reprimand \$40-00 Fine
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Neglect To The Prejudice	Dirty Wpn 7 Days CB \$20-00 Fine
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Failing to Appear Place of Parade	14 Days CB \$40-00 Fine
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Using Insubordinate Language	72hrs Detention
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Neglecting To Obey Unit Standing Orders	5 Days CB \$20-00 Fine
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	Neglecting To Obey Unit Standing Orders. Disobeying a Lawful Command. Using Insubordinate Language	14 Days Detention \$40-00 Fine

FIELD FORCE COMD

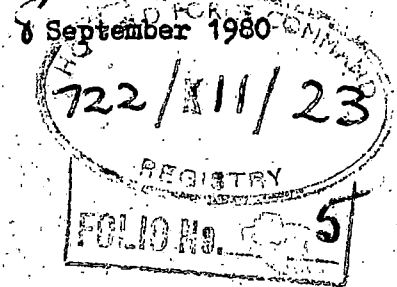
Telephone: 331666 ext 785

HQ FF COMD
Australian Rifle Company
RMAF
Air Base
BUTTERWORTH WEST MALAYSIA

In reply quote: R798.1.1

See Distribution List

END OF TOUR REPORT
C COY 3RAR
11 JUN - 10 SEP 80



- References:
- A. HQ FF COMD STAFF INSTR 2/79 dated 6 JUL 79.
 - B. AS RIFLE COY STANDING ORDERS.

INTRODUCTION

General

1. C Coy 3RAR assumed duty as AS Rifle Coy Butterworth on 12 Jun 80 having relieved SPT Coy 1 RAR. C Coy 8/9 RAR will relieve C Coy 3RAR on 10 Sep 80.

Aim

2. The aim of this report is to comment on the operational, training, personnel, and logistic aspects of the tour of duty at Air Base Butterworth.

OPERATIONAL

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

3. The QRF and Security Sections were maintained as per instructions. They were not reacted to any "real" incidents during the tour.

Security Training

4. In accordance with Reference A security training was conducted for the company prior to departure. This training provided a good grounding for the initial training and familiarization period at Butterworth.
5. Security training at Butterworth was conducted by a SNCO who arrived with the company advance party. This allowed time for him to observe and participate in QRF and security duties, plus the preparation of an instructional programme to be given to the company on its arrival. His inclusion in the advance party is recommended in lieu of the QRF sect cmd.

Manning

6. The COY adopted a four pl org based on three rifle pls, and the aslt pnr pl. Coy HQ pers were allocated to pls for use on QRF duties. A duty officer was maintained with the officers and SNCO being rostered for this duty. This organization worked well, providing flexibility, and avoiding the tedium of repetitive duties for each pl.

/TRAINING

(1)

TRAINING

Field Exercises

7. The following exercises were conducted:

- a. Ex "JUNGLE SHOT". Ex Jungle Shot involved two half company groups undergoing an eight day range and field firing exercise. The exercises were conducted at the Malaysian Army Combat Infantry School (PULADA) during the period 21JUN to 15JUL80. Each group conducted practices with pl small arms, anti-armd wpns, grenades, claymores, and a field firing pl atk and amb.
- b. PULADA offers excellent range facilities and the support provided by the staff assisted in making the exercise most successful. It is recommended that future coys advise 65GLSect of their range requirements as early as possible, as PULADA is a high demand trg area and ranges are frequently booked out months in advance.
- c. Ex "JUNGLE PATROL" This was conducted on the island of LANGKAWI in West Malaysia from 17JUL-18AUG80. Each Pl deployed for seven days in the exercise area with the aim of conducting pl trg in a CRW setting.
- d. The Coy sought and was given approval to exercise in a new area of the island. The new area is more suited to pl trg as it provides a variety of terrain and vegetation. The previous area consisted of a very steep ridgeline which severely restricted the scope of trg that could be conducted.
- e. The ast pnr pl deployed with the first rifle pl, with the aim of preparing LZs for use by the Control group and for the resupply of the pls. Two LZs have now been prepared, however, further improvement is required and it is recommended future coys continue this task.

note in briefing package

Training Areas/Ranges

8. Both PULADA and LANGKAWI ISLAND were of excellent training value and special mention is made of the support given by local officials. No problems were experienced with the booking of local ranges, but on two occasions Malaysians were using the range on our arrival. In both cases they soon departed.

Courses

9. The following courses were conducted during the tour:
- a. Small Arms Coaching Course;
 - b. Introduction to FI Radio; and
 - c. Basic First Aid Course.

Education

10. All coy pers not qualified at AACE 2 level were given the opportunity to undertake an AACE2 Education Course. This was conducted by LT J. Avery, Edon /Sect

File: OPS 9-7-80

Sect Enoggera, 1TRGCP, and the results achieved were very good. It was run on a subject per week basis with each subject being taught twice to allow soldier participation on exercises. Whilst the results were very good it is recommended that each subject should only be taught to the weekly QRF pl thus minimizing disruption to other pl trg.

11. Relevant figures were:

	<u>Passed</u>	<u>Failed</u>
a. AACE2 English	18	2
b. AACE2 Arithmetic	25	3
c. AACE2 Social Studies	35	
d. AACE2 Science	24	

Twenty members became fully qualified as a result of the course, and a number of others who passed subjects are still awaiting D Edcn recognition of previous qualifications.

SECTION SKILL AT ARMS COMPETITIONS

12. The company annual inter section competition was held during the period 25AUG-3SEP80 using local and base facilities. It was a most successful activity adding enthusiasm and purpose to the latter stages of the tour.

CHESHIRE HOME SUPPORT

13. The company continued with the support given to the home by previous groups. The support was in the form of bringing the crippled children to the base so that they could use the swimming pool and watch sporting activities. At the end of the tour a cash donation was made to sponsor a trip to Singapore at Christmas for one of the children.

SPORT AND PT

14. Considerable emphasis was placed on sport and PT, with time allocated to PT each morning and sport played each afternoon. Annual battle efficiency tests were completed during the tour. The company participated in the following Base competitions:

- a. Rugby Union. A total of five games were played in the Australian Forces North Combined Rugby Association competition with Army winning two of its games.
- b. Australian Rules. In a best of three competition Army defeated RAAF three games to nil.
- c. Round Penang Island Relay. Army entered a team in the relay to compete against three RAAF teams, and a NZ forces team from Singapore. Army recorded the third fastest time for the 74KM course, and finished fourth on handicap.

/d. Basketball

- d. Basketball and Volleyball. Army teams were entered in each of these sports, providing strong competition for the opposing teams. At the time of RTA both teams were in the top five in their respective competitions.
- e. Social Volleyball and Soccer matches were played against local Malaysian units. Little was accomplished as regards improving the standard of sports, but considerable headway was made concerning the social behaviour of the two countries.

PERSONNEL

Medical and Dental

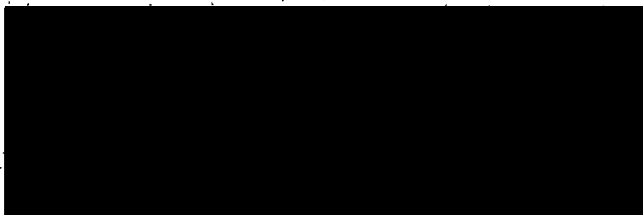
15. 4RAAF Hospital provided full medical and dental support for the company. Apart from the normal rate of sick and injured no major problems were experienced. [REDACTED] the medic attached to the Coy from 11 Fd Amb was returned to Australia for Medical/Disciplinary grounds. His absence created some difficulties concerning manning for range practices and Ex 7 - Le Patrol, however support from 4 RAAF Hospital was made available. A medical summary for the tour is contained in Annex A.

Drugs

16. No evidence of drug abuse became apparent during the tour.

Personnel

17. The Coy had few personnel problems during the tour, however six members were returned to Australia early:



18. [REDACTED] was replaced during the tour by [REDACTED] Royal Regiment of Fusiliere who is attached to the unit for Longlook.

Short Leave

19. The COY took advantage of granted Short Leave and arranged tours to Singapore and Bangkok. Both tours were strongly supported, and future companies are recommended to undertake similar tours.

Discipline

20. A summary of offences is shown at Annex B, and Police incidences at Annex C.

/Visits

Visits

31. Visits to the Coy during the tour were made by:

- a. CAPT G. Connell, SO3 OPS FF COMD,
- b. CAPT S. Elplick, ATO 21Sup Bn,
- c. Chap J. Butler, Chaplain 4MD

LOGISTICS

Rations and Quarters

22. The standard of accommodation was slightly improved during the tour by the replacement of unserviceable lockers and security trunks. In addition the exterior of two barrack blocks was repainted. Despite repeated attempts to solve the lack of laundry facilities, no action was taken during the tour of duty. Soldier still have no facility where they can launder their clothing, and are forced to pay to have their laundry done under a local laundry contract. When it is considered that living in soldiers have to pay \$3.75 a day R & Q charges it is no wonder that many complain about the laundry facilities provided for the soldiers at Butterworth.

23. It is recommended that strong action be taken by HQ FF COMD to solve this nagging inadequacy. *see folio 4 para 6*

Transport

24. Acceptable serviceability and support were received from the RAAF in relation to the Rifle Coy vehicles. As most vehicles are old a good vehicle mechanic is essential to maintain sufficient vehicles for coy use. *SO1 drafted amendment 2/4 advised by*

25. A recommendation was made to OC 65GL Sect to amend the vehicle allocation to the Rifle Coy. At present the Coy has two Toyota Landcruisers, and it is recommended that one of these be replaced by a Toyota Hi-Ace or Kombi wagon. This vehicle would then be used for on base running, a task presently allocated to a Landcruiser.

Stocktake

26. The handover/takeover stocktakes at the commencement and conclusion of the tour were conducted without problem.

CONCLUSION

27. The tour of duty for the coy has been most rewarding. Team spirit has remained high, and all have learnt as a result of the training and recreational opportunities the tour has afforded.

28. All attachments, less [REDACTED] have worked well and their specialist skills were fully utilized.

/29. Support

29. Support provided during the tour by RAAF, 65 GL Sect, and Malaysian Officials has been excellent. Without this many activities could not have taken place, and their support has greatly contributed to the success of the tour.


(J.B. LANGLER)
MAJOR
OFFICER COMMANDING

Annexes: A. Medical Summary
B. Summary of Offences
C. Police Incident Summary

Distribution:

HQ FF COMD (3)
OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH

For Information:

1DIV (2)
1 TF (2)
3RAR
AS Defence Attache Kuala Lumpur
65 GL Sect
File
Float
Spare (5)

ANNEX A TO
AS RIFLE COY R798.1.1
DATED 8SEP80

C COY 3RAR
SUMMARY OF INJURIES AND ILLNESSES

Fractures 1
Sprains 49
Rashes and Skin Infections 66
Gastric trouble 35
Ear Infection 9
Nose Infection 1
Throat Infection 17
URT1 22
Dental 10
VD 10
Eye Infection 3

38 members were admitted to hospital during the tour for a total of 96 days hospitalization.

ANNEX B TO
AS RIFLE COY R798.1.1
DATED 5 SEP80

OFFENCES SUMMARY
C COY 3RAR BUTTERWORTH JUN-SEP80

1. The following offences occurred during C COY 3RAR tour of Butterworth 11JUN-3SEP80:

NUMBER	RANK	NAME	OFFENCE	REMARKS
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
			Conduct to the Prejudice.	7 days C.B.
			Conduct to the Prejudice	7 days C.B.
			When a soldier acting as Sentinel Sleeping on his Post.	\$40 Fine 14 days C.B.
			When a soldier acting as Sentinel Sleeping on his Post.	\$40 Fine 14 days C.B.
			Being a soldier acting as a Sentinel leaving his Post before he was Regularly Relieved.	\$20 Fine 7 days C.B.
			Using Insubordinate Language to his Superior Officer	168 hours detention \$40 Fine
			AWOL	\$40 Fine Severe Reprimand
			AWOL	5 days C.B.
			AWOL	\$10 Fine 7 days C.B.
			Failing To Appear, Act To The Prejudice	\$40 Fine 7 Days CB
			Stealing	Reduced to The Rank Of Private.

SUMMARY OF POLICE REPORTS

RAAFPOL OCC NO	DATE/TIME REPORTED	NATURE OF INCIDENT	REMARKS
425/80	21JUN80 1315 hrs	<u>LOSS OF WALLET</u> [REDACTED] reported loss of his wallet which contained M\$2.00 and personal papers. Loss was believed to have occurred between 2200 hrs 20JUN & 1000 hrs 21JUN80 between BC Bar and SGT's Mess.	Wallet with money and contents had been found by another Army member who returned it to complaint about 1500 hrs 21JUN80.
431/80	24JUN80 0340 hrs	<u>ALLEGED THEFT FROM SGT's MESS ACCOMMODATION</u> [REDACTED] reported that between 0335 hrs and 0338 hrs 24JUN80 his wallet containing M\$45.00, personal papers and ID Card, a wrist watch and a silver Ronson cigarette lighter were stolen from his room at the SGT's Mess while he was in the toilet. Total value of property stolen A\$168.26.	SIS Report SIS/BUT/6/80 refers. Wallet minus cash was returned later that morning to chair outside room.
432/80	24JUN80 0800 hrs	<u>ALLEGED THEFT OFF'S MESS ACCOMMODATION</u> [REDACTED] reported the theft of M\$650.00, A\$10.00 and \$20.00 Baht from his wallet in his insecure room, also stolen was his service issue wrist watch valued at \$115.00. Total value of theft \$A289.00. Theft occurred between 0200 hrs and 0640 hrs 24JUN80.	SIS/BUT/7/80 refers.
433/80	24JUN80 1445 hrs	<u>ALLEGED THEFT OFF'S MESS ACCOMMODATION</u> [REDACTED] reported that about 1230 hrs that day he had discovered that \$A250.00 cash had been taken from his wallet. He believed that the theft had occurred between 0200 hrs and 0545 hrs on 24JUN80 while his wallet was insecure in his room where he slept.	SIS/BUT/7/80 refers.
485/80	23JUL80 1110 hrs	<u>ALLEGED THEFT OF CASH FROM RIFLE COY'S OR LINE'S</u> [REDACTED] reported that between about 1030 hrs and 1045 hrs on 23JUL80, M\$50.00 was removed from his insecure wallet which had left under his pillow in his room.	SIS/BUT/8/80 refers. M\$55.00 remained in the complainant's wallet after the theft.
486/80	26JUL80 1715 hrs	<u>ALLEGED THEFT CASH</u> [REDACTED]	

[REDACTED] complained that between 1050 hrs and 1645 hrs 26JUL80 M\$920.00 was removed from his secured locker in his room at the Rifle Coy's OR Lines.

SIS/BUT/9/80 refers.

488/80 27JUL80
0900 hrs

ALLEGED THEFT CASH

[REDACTED] complained that M\$200.00 was taken from his locked locker in his room in the Rifle Coy's OR Lines between about 1300 hrs 25JUL and 0800 hrs 27JUL80. During this period he had left the keys to his locker in an insecure bedside cabinet drawer.

SIS/BUT/9/80 refers.

495/80 30JUL80
1420 hrs

TRAFFIC ACCIDENT

[REDACTED] AIRDEF HQBUT reported that he had been driving a RAAF Ford sedan Reg No 225246 west towards the south gate entrance to the Aust Rifle Coy lines when a RAAF HGS Truck Reg No 223481 driven by [REDACTED] had reversed into the front of his vehicle. There were no injuries.

RAAF Tpt Sect Accident Investigators attended and submitted report, report no BSBUT/2106/1/135.

496/80 31JUL80
0424 hrs

CONDUCT OF ARMY MEMBER

The Duty Officer Penang Port Commission telephone RAAF Police Duty Room and reported that an Australian male was asleep at the Butterworth Ferry Terminal. At 0432 hrs the patrol attended and found [REDACTED] asleep on the passenger walkway. He was awoken and conveyed to the Rifle Coy Duty Room by the patrol.

NFA.

523/80 14AUG80
1210 hrs

MINOR TRAFFIC ACCIDENT

An anonymous caller advised the RAAF Police guard room that an accident involving a Serviceman had occurred on the Butterworth/Alor Star Road, 30 yards north of Jalan Intan. RAAFPOL attended and spoke to [REDACTED]

NFA RAAFPOL

[REDACTED] who stated that he had been riding his push bike north along the Butterworth/Alor Star Road when he was struck on the right hand handle bar by a motorcycle Reg No PR5019, ridden by an unknown Asian, who had been taken to Butterworth hospital by a passing motorist. [REDACTED]

/sustained

sustained minor abrasions to both legs, arms and hand. The motor cyclist's injuries are not known. There were minor damages to his bike. Nil damage to the push bike. Malaysian police from Butterworth attended, [REDACTED] investigating.

4110/80 19AUG80
0852 hrs

LOSS/THEFT OF WALLET AND ID CARD

[REDACTED] reported that about 2010 hrs on 18AUG80 he had lost his wallet which contained M\$100.00, personal papers including Army ID Card. The loss had occurred between the Super Dept Store and RAAF Hostel on Penang Island.

RAAF Police Lost/Stolen Property Book entry 132/80 completed. Member advised to report to 65GLSect for issue of Temporary ID Card.

Nil 19AUG80
1540 hrs

LOSS/THEFT OF WALLET AND ID CARD

[REDACTED] reported that about 2100 hrs on 11AUG80 while at the 'Jockey Club' in Bangkok Thailand he had lost his wallet which contained \$900 Baht, personal papers including Victorian Drivers Licence and Army ID Card. He suspected that the wallet may have been taken from his pocket by a bargirl.

RAAFPOL Lost/Stolen Property Book entry 132/80 completed. Member advised to report to 65GLSect for issue of Temp ID Card.

552/80 30AUG80
1755 hrs

CONDUCT ARMY MEMBER PTE TAYLOR

Duty Supervisor RAAF Centre, [REDACTED] CLKA BSBUT, informed RAAFPOL Penang, that an intoxicated Army member was found asleep in the service road of the centre. He had been moved to a bench in the foyer. The Army member was located in company with the supervisor and [REDACTED] RAAFPOL. The member was identified as [REDACTED] 3 Coy RAR. He was told by [REDACTED] that he would be conveyed to the Penang Ferry Terminal and from there he was to return to his lines, the PTE refused and was then ordered by the SGT to return to his lines. The patrol then conveyed the PTE to the terminal and arranged a pick-up for him at the Butterworth Terminal. The pick-up was arranged and confirmed for 1840 hrs. BUTPAT attended the terminal at 1833 hrs and remained at the arranged pick-up point until 1855 hrs. The soldier was not sighted by BUTPAT. The Company CSM informed.

Incident report submitted.

/555/80

555/80 31AUG80
0318 hrs

DRUNKEN SOLDIER ASLEEP IN BAR

[REDACTED] RAAFPOL BSBUT No further action.
reported a drunken soldier asleep in
the Chung King Hotel. PNGPAT attended
and found [REDACTED] C Coy
3RAR asleep at a table in the bar.
When attempting to wake the member
he became violent and had to be
restrained. The member was removed
from the bar and taken to the Penang
Ferry Terminal where he was later
escorted to BSBUT by [REDACTED]
[REDACTED] RACMP SIS and handed over
to the duty Army Officer.

556/80 31AUG80

DRUNKEN SOLDIER ASLEEP AT FERRY TERMINAL

[REDACTED] RACMP SIS attended No further action.
the DSC office and reported that he had
found [REDACTED] C Coy 3RAR
asleep at the Penang Ferry Terminal.
The member was escorted back to the
Army lines and set to bed.

565/80 3SEP80
0800 hrs

THEFT OF MONEY

At 0800 hrs on 3SEP80, [REDACTED] SIS/BUT/10/80
[REDACTED] of C Coy 3RAR reported that
M\$60.00 he had given to an NCO from his
unit to post to his wife on 25JUN80
had not been received by her. Enquiries
resulted in [REDACTED] of
C Coy 3RAR admitting the offence.

Telephone: 331666 Ext 785

In Reply Quote: R798/1/1

*Copies sent
to Admin Bst and
HQ Float.
ly
(1003)*

Australian Rifle Company
Airbase Butterworth
BUTTERWORTH
WEST MALAYSIA
c/- AFPO
Central Mail Exchange
SYDNEY NSW 2890
AUSTRALIA

722/11/23
16

See Distribution List

2 Dec 80

END OF TOUR REPORT
C COY 8/9 RAR
9 SEP - 3 DEC 80

- References:
- A. HQ FF Comd Staff Instruction 2/79 dated 06 Jul 79.
 - B. AS Rifle Coy Standing Orders.

INTRODUCTION

General

- 1. C Coy 8/9 RAR assumed duty as the AS Rifle Coy Butterworth on 10 Sep. 80, having relieved C Coy 3 RAR.
- 2. B Coy 2/4 RAR will relieve C Coy 8/9 RAR on 03 Dec 80.

AIM

- 3. The aim of this report is to comment on the operational, training, personnel and logistic aspects of the tour.

OPERATIONAL

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

- 4. The QRF and standby sections were maintained as per instructions. There were no 'real' incidents.

Security Training

- 5. Security training was conducted at Enoggera prior to deployment.
- 6. On arrival additional security training was undertaken with particular emphasis on base familiarization and the employment of the QRF. The Coy Trg Offr was responsible for this training and he was included on the advance for this purpose.

QRF Equipment

- 7. In addition to the normal weapons carried by the QRF we found it worthwhile for two members to carry pistols. These were used during search operations in lieu of a rifle.
- 8. The spotlight on the QRF truck remains inoperative.

Manning

- 9. The Coy was organised as a conventional rifle coy of three pls and a headquarters.

/10. 8/9 RAR

10. 8/9 RAR provided the basis of the Coy with units of 6TF and 1 Trg Gp providing 26 members. Contingent breakup is as follows:

a.	8/9 RAR	-	106
b.	1 Fd Regt	-	11
c.	2 FER	-	5
d.	HQ 6TF	-	2
e.	139 Sig Sqn	-	2
f.	5 Tpt Sqn	-	3
g.	RACMP	-	2
h.	1 Trg Gp	-	1
	TOTAL	-	<u>132</u>

11. Within the Coy the required specialists vide Ref A were included.

12. The provision of a permanent Ammunition Storeman has been proposed. I believe that the establishment of this position would greatly assist the RQMS in maintaining an accurate and orderly account. 11 on 8/9
above

Erection of Decco Masts

13. A submission has been forwarded for the detachment of RA Sigs riggers to assemble two DECCO Masts to replace the existing masts.

TRAINING

Field Exercises

14. The following exercises were conducted:

- a. Exercise "Striking Cobra". This exercise was conducted at the Malaysian Army Combat Training Centre PULADA from 16 Sep to 19 Oct 80. The coy deployed in three pl groups supported by a CHQ sponsored control group.
- b. This exercise provided an excellent opportunity to improve the shooting skills of the coy and also fire HE weapons which have ammunition shortages in AS. The assistance provided by the staff of the Centre was excellent.
- c. The normal method of deployment is by air using C130 ac. On two occasions these aircraft dropped the pl group at SENAI airport using the opstop technique. On the third occasion the airfield was closed and the group had to transit through SINGAPORE. This created some problems with customs and delayed arrival at PULADA. It is understood there has been some moves within HQ Op Comd to delete the SENAI Op stop. It is strongly recommended that such an action be resisted. It causes unnecessary delays and potential problems with armed bodies of troops transiting through SINGAPORE and re-entering MALAYSIA. //

/d. The need

- d. The need for early bookings of the PULADA facilities is emphasised. The expansion of the Malaysian Army is increasing the demand for PULADA's facilities.
- e. Ex "Rampant Reptile" This CRW exercise was held on Langkawi Island between 22 Oct and 14 Nov 80. Pls deployed for 8 days and conducted a 3 day training period and a three day exercise. A day was required for insertion and extraction.
- f. The Coy used that area used by C Coy 3 RAR and its use by future coys is recommended.
- g. Assistance from local officials was excellent.

Training Areas/Ranges

15. During the Sub 1 for CPL Course permission was gained for the use of part of the Sunasi Ular Rubber Estate, KULIM, for the navigation and tactics components. Future coys requiring a local training area for a limited period can obtain details from 65 GL Section.

16. The "normal" problems with range bookings occurred. Bookings were either cancelled or Malaysian Army units poached the ranges.

Courses

17. The Coy conducted the following courses:
- a. 2/80 Subject 1 for Corporal.
 - b. Pl operator.
 - c. GPMG M60.

Education

18. All personnel were given the opportunity to complete AACE 2 level education if necessary. The course was conducted by LT L. Croft, Enoggera Educ Sect, 1 Trg Gp. It is recommended to all future coys that they take the opportunity to conduct education courses, even at the expense of some local pl trg. Each subject was taught twice.

19. Statistical information is:
- a. AACE 2 English 14 passes, 2 failed,
 - b. AACE 2 Arithmetic 19 passes, 10 failed,
 - c. AACE 2 Science 18 passes, nil failed, and
 - d. AACE 2 Social Studies 26 passes, 1 failed.

PERSONNEL

Medical and Dental

20. A medical summary is attached at Annex A.

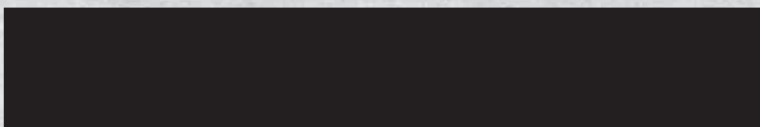
Drugs

21. There were no drug incidents.

/Personnel

Personnel

22. The following members were RTA early:



Leave

23. Short leave was granted to allow members to partake of organised tours of SINGAPORE and BANGKOK. Both tours were well subscribed and enjoyed by all participants.

Discipline

24. A summary of offences and RAAF Police and SIS Incident Reports are at Annex B and C respectively.

Visits

25. The Coy was visited by:
- a. ERIG G.J. Fitzgerald, Comd 6TF,
 - b. LTCOL J.R. Brett, CO 8/9 RAR, and
 - c. LTCOL D.M.Y. Smith SO1 Pers HQ FF Comd.

26. It is recommended that consideration be given to the inclusion of a visit by a padre for part of each coy tour. This would have a good effect on moral particularly if the visit were to occur during the latter portion of the tour when he would be able to bring messages etc from families. *1/1/11*

Indulgence Passage

27. The wives of 5 members took the opportunity to use the recently introduced OPSAT provisions. These dependents were moved to Butterworth on RAAF 707. Due to the heavy bookings for the return journey they were forced to return home by civil air. *1/1/11*

28. In all cases they were able to obtain accommodation at the RAAF Hostel, Penang. This is available on a daily basis but members on OPSAT have a nil priority. Cost will be approximately \$M10.00 per day, exclusive of meals. *1/1/11*

'Army' Newspapers

29. The Coy had cause to request that copies of 'Army' be forwarded. Amenities replied that it was the parent unit's responsibility to supply such papers. This appears to be a labourious and inefficient system. It is embarrassing when RAAF send down copies of the paper.

30. It is recommended that the Rifle Coy be placed on the direct distribution list. *1/1/11*

Postal

31. Some instances of opened mail occurred. An investigation by RAAF has not determined where the opening occurred.

/Logistics

LOGISTICS

Rations and Quarters

32. The standard of the quarters remains only fair. A painting programme has commenced.
33. The laundry project would appear to be in limbo with there being no developments to date due to the projected costs.
34. I personally doubt that the laundry is necessary. ✓✓✓

Transport

35. The standard of vehicles on deployment was poor. It has taken considerable effort to get them back into an acceptable condition. A vehicle mechanic is essential and it would be of assistance if he were included in the advance party. 1/1 Coy Prob
36. The two landcruisers have been replaced. The application to replace one of these vehicles with a Toyota Hi Ace or Kombi van still has not been resolved. This action is strongly supported. 1/1 in progress at Admin

Incident Report

37. During Exercise 'Rampant Reptile' an assault boat was swamped and a radio set AN/PRC 77 and Antenna RC 292 lost overboard. An incident report has been forwarded and an investigation conducted.

Outboard Motors

38. Three outboards have to be RTA for repairs as spare are not available in country.

Equipment Inspection Service (EIS)

39. An application has been forwarded for the provision of an EIS inspection of the coy's communications equipment. The request also includes the provisions of equipment technical documentation and spares to RAAF Butterworth for those equipments not held by RAAF. This action is strongly recommended. 1/1 in progress

Request to Vary Entitlement (RVE)

40. An RVE has been submitted recommending that the following be included on the equipment table of the Rifle Coy Butterworth.

- a. Generator Set gasoline 500W - 24V DC - qty 1., and
- b. Regulator Set MX - F1 - Qty 1.

Subunit reference is RVE 0001 dated 29 Oct 80.

SPORT

41. The Coy took a active part in sporting competitions conducted at the Airbase. Teams contested:

- a. Rugby Union Played 7 games, the only defeat being in the Grand Final.
- b. Volleyball and Basketball. Both teams finished out of the four.

/Coys should

Coys should learn 'international rules' before deployment. ✓

- c. Australian Rules * The competition was won by C Coy 2 - 1.
- d. Round Island Relay The competition was run on 30 Nov 80. It was won by RAAF.
- e. Social Sport Social games were conducted with RMAF and Malaysian Navy units.

COMMUNITY SERVICE

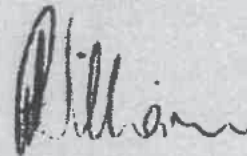
42. The Coy continued the practice commenced by other coys of providing some support to the Cheshire Home. Coy members also assisted the Penang Rotary Club concrete pathways at the St. Joseph's orphanage.

CONCLUSION

43. The Coy has enjoyed the deployment and it has proved an experience for all members.

44. The support provided by the RAAF, 65 GL Section and Malaysian Officials has been excellent. The Coy could not have been better looked after.

45. It is strongly recommended that the deployment continue on its present basis of a Rifle Coy drawn from the RAR.



(G.D. WILLIAMS)
Major
Officer Commanding

- Annexes:
- A. Medical Summary.
 - B. Summary of Offences.
 - C. Police Incident Summary.

Distribution

HQ FF Comd (3)
OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH

For Information

1 Div (2)
6TF
8/9 RAR
AS Defence Attache Kuala Lumpur
65 GL Sect
File
Float
Spare (5)

SUMMARY OF INJURIES AND
ILLNESSES TREATED BY M.O.

Fractures	-	7
Strains and sprains	-	18
Rashes and other skin infections	-	28
Gastric trouble	-	13
Ear infections	-	7
Eye infections	-	1
Flu	-	31
Dental	-	16
V.D.	Treated	- 41
	Confirmed	- 15
Other minor medical cases	-	24
Operations	-	4
Admissions to 4 RAAF Hosp	-	19

SUMMARY OF INJURIES AND
ILLNESSES TREATED BY CAP STAFF

Rashes and other skin infections	31
Gastric Trouble	7
Dressings of cuts and wounds	32
Flu	31
Strains and sprains	13
Other minor medical cases	17

MONTHLY TOTALS OF PERSONNEL
AT SICK PARADE EACH DAY

September	146
October	109
November	110
December	11

ANNEX B TO
R 798/1/1
DATED 3 DEC 80

SUMMARY OF OFFENCES

Ser	No	Rank	Name	Offence	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)
				DISOBEYING A LAWFUL COMMAND INSUBORDINATE LANGUAGE	5 days detention 14 days CB \$40.00 fine
				NEGLECT TO OBEY UNIT STANDING ORDERS	2 days CB
				NEGLECT TO OBEY UNIT STANDING ORDERS	4 days CB
				STRIKING SUPERIOR OFFICER INSUBORDINATE LANGUAGE	21 days detention
				THREATENING SUPERIOR OFFICER DISOBEYING LAWFUL COMMAND	18 days detention
				ACT TO THE PREJUDICE NEGLECT TO OBEY STANDING ORDERS	7 days Detention 14 days CB \$40 fine
				ACT TO THE PREJUDICE	14 days CB \$40.00 fine
				ACT TO THE PREJUDICE	14 days CB \$40.00 fine
				ABSENT FROM PLACE OF PARADE	2 days CB
				STRIKING A SUPERIOR OFFICER	7 days detention 14 days CB
				NEGLECT TO OBEY STANDING ORDERS CONDUCT TO THE PREJUDICE	Fined \$40.00 Severe Repreman
				BEING AN NCO STRIKES A SOLDIER BEING AN NCO STRIKES A SOLDIER BEING AN NCO ILLTREATS A SOLDIER	Reduced to PTE
				DISOBEYING A LAWFUL COMMAND	Severe repremand \$40.00 fine
				NEGLECT TO PREJUDICE	14 days CB \$40.00 fine

RAAFPOL Occ No	Date/Time Reported	Nature of Incident	Remarks
4532/80	14 Sep 80 2115 hrs	<u>DISTURBANCE BUTTERWORTH CAFE INVOLVING 2 ARMY MEMBERS</u> RAAFPOL informed of disturbance by unidentified Asian. Patrol attended. All in order. No complaint made by proprietor.	
4533/80	14 Sep 80 2158 hrs	<u>DISTURBANCE AT PERIMETER FENCE</u> Report received of two males attempting to climb perimeter fence by the golf course into the Asian kampong. Patrol attended.	[REDACTED] placed under close arrest. Detention register entry No 17 refers.
4540/80	15 Sep 80 1110 hrs	<u>DETENTION OF SOLDIER</u> [REDACTED] placed in cells, 5 days, 14 day CB, A\$40 for insubordination, disobeying a lawful command.	Detention register entry No 17 refers.
4721/80	25 Sep 80 0444 hrs	<u>REPORT OF THEFT</u> [REDACTED] reported the theft of a black leather wallet containing M\$250, Army ID card and personal papers. Wallet stolen from his person whilst he was sleeping on ferry.	
4884/80	4 Oct 80 2208 hrs	<u>REPORT OF ATTACK ON SOLDIER AT SWIMMING POOL</u> Complainant, [REDACTED] said he had been attacked by two Australian males at on base MQ swimming pool. Investigation by [REDACTED]	SIS/BUT/13/80 refers.
5113/80	20 Oct 80 0810 hrs	<u>DETENTION OF SOLDIER</u> [REDACTED] placed under close arrest by [REDACTED]	Detention register entry No 20 refers.
5146/80	22 Oct 80 2108 hrs	<u>INSECURE BUILDING</u> Insecurity discovered by QRF patrol when activating KP6	Building secured NFPA.

RAAFPOL Occ No	Date/Time Reported	Nature of Incident	Remarks
5192/80	26 Oct 80 0006 hrs	<u>DISTURBANCE AT BASE GYM DISCO</u> Complaint received of behaviour of four Army personnel at Disco. Members later identified as: [REDACTED]	
<u>SUMMARY OF SIS REPORTS</u>			
SIS/BUT/ 11/80	22 Sep 8 0930 hrs	<u>THEFT OF MEDICAL SUPPLIES FROM COY RAP</u> [REDACTED] reported that about 1700 hrs on 17 Sep 80, he had observed [REDACTED] leave the camp area with a quantity of Military medical supplies.	
SIS/BUT/ 12/80	1 Oct 80 1120 hrs	<u>THEFT OF CASH FROM RIFLE COY OR LINES</u> [REDACTED] reported that between 1430 hrs and 1432 hrs on 30 Sep 80, M\$60.00 cash had been removed from his wallet which was on his bed in his insecure room.	
SIS/BUT/ 13/80		<u>SEE RAAFPOL OCCNO 4884</u>	
SIS/BUT/ 14/80	17 Oct 80 0605 hrs	<u>THEFT OF WALLET AND CASH FROM SGTS' MESS</u> <u>ACCOMMODATION</u> [REDACTED] reported that between 0600 hrs - 0605 hrs on 17 Oct 80 his wallet, valued at M\$5.00, containing M\$65.00 cash, had been removed from his insecure room in the SGT's Mess accommodation block.	
SIS/BUT/ 15/80	17 Nov 80 0815 hrs	<u>THEFT OF MILITARY AND CIVILIAN ITEMS -PROPERTY</u> <u>OF [REDACTED]</u> [REDACTED] reported that between 0900 hrs and 0945 hrs on 13 Nov 80 he had left his eschelon bag on the luggage rack above his seat on the Bangkok to Butterworth train while he was absent from the carriage. On his return he found that his carriage had been uncoupled while the train was stopped at 'aadjai, Thailand. The bag and its contents, totally valued at A200.90 could not be located in the carriage by Thailand Railway officials.	

15 Nov 80
1217 hrs

DETENTION OF SOLDIER

[REDACTED] placed in cells
for 168 hrs. Released 1730 hrs 21 Nov 80.

Detention Register
No 23.

701/80 20 Nov 80
0105 hrs

REQUEST FOR ASSISTANCE

[REDACTED] requested assistance
of RAAF Police Penang to assist with
medical treatment of [REDACTED]
[REDACTED], who was suffering from a head
injury. Enquiries showed that [REDACTED]
[REDACTED] together with [REDACTED]
[REDACTED] were drinking in the 'New Lum Tong'
Hotel Penang when [REDACTED] fell and
struck his head. All three members were
intoxicated. [REDACTED] conveyed to
PHC and treated for minor forehead cut.
All three then driven to ferry for return
to Butterworth.

Members interviewed
and due to intoxicated
state and general behaviour
in the Hotel cannot recall
the incident.
Hotel visited. NFA.

20 Nov 80
1015 hrs

DETENTION OF SOLDIER

[REDACTED] placed in cells for
7 days detention. Released 0001 hrs
27 Nov 80.

Detention Register
No 24.

703/80 20 Nov 80
0430 hrs

ASSAULT [REDACTED]

[REDACTED] reported that
[REDACTED] had been admitted
to 4 RAAF HOSP suffering from bruising
and cuts to the face and neck alleged to
have been received when attacked by an
unknown Asian male outside of the ablution
block Aust Rifle Coy at 0350 hrs 20 Nov 80.

SIS/BUT/17/80 referes.

717/80 24 Nov 80
0825 hrs

THEFT OF CASH

[REDACTED] reported the theft
of \$70.00 Aust from his shirt pocket, of
\$70 Aust from his shirt pocket, located
in his unit lines. He had left the money
in his shirt pocket at 1800 hrs before
retiring and at 0700 hr he discovered it
missing. Investigation [REDACTED].

SIS/BUT/18/80 refers.

27 Nov 80

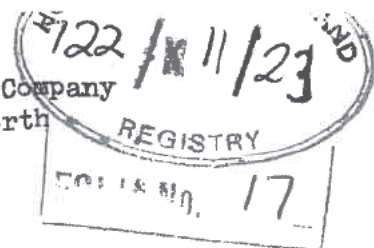
DETENTION OF SOLDIER

[REDACTED] placed in cells.

Detention Register
No 25.

Telephone: 347666 Ext 785

Australian Rifle Company
Air Base Butterworth
BUTTERWORTH
WEST MALAYSIA



R798/1/1

2 March 1981

See Distribution List

NB: Copy to ADMIN BR

HA FOAT
Kope A
11/3/81

END OF TOUR REPORT
B COMPANY 2/4 RAR
3 DEC 80 - 4 MAR 81

- References:
- A. HQ FF Comd Staff Instruction 279 dated 6 Jul 79
 - B. AS Rifle Coy Butterworth Standing Orders

INTRODUCTION

General

1. B Coy 2/4 RAR assumed duty as the Australian Rifle Company Butterworth on 3 Dec 80 and will be relieved by A Coy 1 RAR on 4 Mar 81.
2. This report contains comments on the operational, training, personnel and logistic aspects and is submitted as directed by Reference A.

OPERATIONAL ASPECTS

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

3. A QRF and stand-by QRF were maintained as required by the references. No real incidents occurred during the tour. A satisfactory standard of preparedness was maintained throughout the tour and practice reactions to Key Points (KP) were consistently quick and effective.
4. QRF Training. Training in security duties associated with the QRF was undertaken in Australia and completed at Butterworth under arrangements made by 65 GL Sect. The QRF provided by B Coy 2/4 RAR was operational on deployment and fully effective by 10 Dec 80.
5. Force Provision. QRF and back-up QRF were generally provided from rifle platoons of B Coy 2/4 RAR. On two occasions they were provided from Support Platoon and on five occasions from students attending a course for promotion to CPL. The QRF to mount duty at 0800 hrs on 3 MAR 81 will be provided from Malaysian SP resources.

/6.

QRF Equipment.

6. QRF Equipment. The searchlight was made available mid-way through the tour and proved to be effective. The age of the searchlight, the generator, and cable accessories prohibits consistently reliable performance. No changes were made to the weapon allocation as carried by previous companies. Pistols were carried as they proved the most effective weapon for detailed search. Due to the unavailability of suitable batteries the "Big Jim" lanterns ceased to be operable. 'Dolphin' lanterns were purchased from local sources as compatible batteries are obtainable from RAAF supply.

Coy Organisation.

7. The Coy consisted of a HQ, three rifle platoons and a support platoon. Personnel were drawn from within this organisation to provide the following:

- a. PULADA control group, 16 Dec 80 to 20 Jan 81.
- b. Subject 1 for CPL Course (Staff and Students), 12 Jan 81 to 15 Feb 81; and
- c. LANGKAWI ISLAND control group, 21 Jan 81 to 15 Feb 81.

8. The contingent contained all the specialists as required by Reference A. The contingent exceeded the limit of 132 from deployment until 15 Jan 81 due to the addition of two instructors to conduct platoon training in rapelling.

was approved by this HQ

9. [REDACTED] RACMP, the SIS investigator in the B Coy 2/4 RAR contingent, was replaced by [REDACTED] RACMP on permanent secondment from 5 MP Coy (SIS). SGT Wellington will be administered by 65 GL Sect. Effective date of handover will be 4 Mar 81.

Erection of Radio Mast/Antenna

10. A rigging crew from 127 Signals Squadron erected a METTERS mast within the company area during the tour. An AEA-630 series antenna (HF) and RC-292 antenna (VHF) were positioned on the mast. Communications on both frequency bands were tested within the air base and to Langkawi Island during Feb 81.

11. The crew arrived on 3 Feb 81 and departed on 18 Feb 81. Work was not commenced until 10 Feb 81 due to delays in forwarding stores and equipment from Australia.

Some remained at Richmond due to lack of priority markings on boxes

Communications.

12. Using the antenna and aerial array now replaced by the METTERS mast and attached antennas the company was unable to maintain HF communications with detachments at PULADA and LANGKAWI ISLAND. Although the most significant reason was the poor condition of aerials at BUTTERWORTH communications were also hampered by a large amount of interference caused by civilian transmission on frequencies allotted.

Security.

13. Batteries for AN/ PRC 77 Radio (VHF).

Due to inefficient use of transport resources within Australia insufficient batteries for AN/PRC 77 radio sets were forwarded to BUTTERWORTH prior to 1 Feb 81. Stocks (including RAAF stocks) were exhausted with only 3 batteries left before urgent action by 65 GL Sect ensured delivery. Without the relieving delivery the QRF and security personnel would have been without VHF comms and base security severely compromised. *new ok.*

TRAINING

Company Training.

14. Company training was conducted in accordance with the requirements of CO 2/4 RAR. Training at BUTTERWORTH also included the following:

- a. Rapelling - conducted within the air base using the control tower and helicopters from the SAR flight.
- b. Watermanship - conducted within the air base and at MERDEKA BEACH

15. Platoon training in infantry skills was conducted to a limited degree within the air base. The contingent was considerably restricted in tactical training due to the lack of a close training area or suitable rural terrain within daily access. *a runway sore but cannot be helped*

16. 18 soldiers of B Coy 2/4 RAR took part in a signals training programme designed to prepare soldiers to undertake the duties of platoon and company operators.

Education Training

17. AACE 2 education training and examinations were conducted using a series of weekly training packages. Training packages conducted and their results are listed in the table at Annex A.

18. Considerable difficulty was encountered in establishing the recognised qualifications of many soldiers. No record of assesment for soldiers leaving 1 RTB for the eighteen months prior to deployment could be obtained, even though the Education Officer with the contingent checked with the Directorate of Army Education prior to leaving CANBERRA. Over 50 of the contingent were effected by this lack of assesment. *note to 5/1*

19. The education training was of considerable value to the members of the contingent and it is recommended that Education Officers continue to be included in Rifle Company Contingents. ✓

Subject 1 for CPL Course

20. A Subject 1 for CPL Course was successfully conducted during the tour. Some modification to the course package was necessary due to lack of some facilities and training areas. Thirty students commenced the course and the results are summarised below:

- a. Marched off the course - 2
- b. Failed the course - 2
- c. Provisional failures - 8
- d. Passed the course - 18.

Training Outside Butterworth

21. Malaysian Army Infantry Combat School- PULADA. All members of B Company 2/4 RAR and most attached personnel attended platoon level range activities at PULADA. Support from the Malaysian Army Staff was willingly given. Particular emphasis was placed on live-firing tactical exercises at section and platoon level.

22. Infantry Minor Tactics - LANGKAWI ISLAND. Platoons of B Company 2/4 RAR, and supporting personnel, deployed to LANGKAWI ISLAND for platoon training and a platoon exercise. Activities were designed to improve individual skills in fieldcraft and consolidate lessons learnt in platoon tactics. Movement to and from the Island was by a combination of civilian ferry and RAAF Aircraft and was conducted with little difficulty.

23. Both PULADA and LANGKAWI ISLAND provide suitable venues for platoon level training. The platoon training at these locations proved to be the highlights of the tour and provided a valuable opportunity for platoon and section commanders to develop team-work and platoon procedures.

PERSONNEL

Medical and Dental

24. A medical summary is attached at Annex B.

Drugs

25. On a few occasions information was received indicating possible use of narcotics. This information was followed up by contingent staff and SIS Investigators but no evidence was uncovered.

Early Return to Australia

26. [REDACTED], 2/4 RAR, and [REDACTED], B Squadron 3 Cavalry Regiment, returned to Australia on 15 Jan 1981 after completion of rappelling training. [REDACTED], 2/4 RAR returned to Australia on 15 Jan 1981 to attend a subject 1 for WO Course.

27. [REDACTED], returned to Australia on 27 Dec 1980 for compassionate reasons.

28. None of the above members of the contingent was replaced. ✓

Leave

29. Short leave was granted to allow the contingent to visit BANGKOK and SINGAPORE. Local leave was available in BUTTERWORTH and PENANG. ✓

Visits

30. The contingent was visited by LTCOL D.J.F. Rowe, CO 2/4 RAR, from 9 Feb 1981 to 18 Feb 1981.

Discipline

31. A summary of RAAF Police and SIS Incident reports are at Annex C. Offences dealt with by OC B Company 2/4 RAR are listed below:

a. [REDACTED] - 5 Dec 80. Conduct to the prejudice of good order and military discipline.

AWARD: \$10 Fine and 3 days CB.

b. [REDACTED] - 12 Feb 81. Absent without leave.

AWARD: \$10 Fine and 3 days CB.

c. [REDACTED] - Neglect to the prejudice of good order and military discipline.

AWARD: Reprimand.

Postal, Pay and Canteen Services

32. Postal, Pay and Canteen Services at Butterworth were all satisfactory and no difficulties were encountered. ✓

LOGISTICS

Rations and Quarters

33. Accommodation for *officers* and SNCO's is satisfactory. Accommodation for NCO's and soldiers remains adequate but unsatisfactory. A painting programme of accommodation and work space will be completed in Mar 81. *self help the best answer*

34. The laundry system and 'boot boys' functioned well with only minor problems. Charges remain low by Australian standards and are adequately catered for by allowances received. *||*

35. A continuing problem of poor quality packed lunches required constant supervision. ✓

Equipment Inspection Service(EIS)

36. An EIS team inspected the ~~comm~~ equipment in Feb 81 and follow up action has been initiated. Sufficient serviceable equipment is held to carry out the role of the Rifle Company. ✓

not EIS. but maintenance

/Transport

Transport

37. An acceptable level of serviceability has been maintained for the vehicles on loan from the RAAF. The current vehicles are old but with careful maintenance can adequately cater for the needs of the Rifle Company with RAAF supplementation for identified peaks.

38. Vehicle accident. A minor accident occurred on 6 Dec 80 between a truck from the Rifle Company and one from the Royal Malaysian Navy. Damage was assessed at \$60 Malaysian and a limited investigation has been completed. No disciplinary action was taken.

SPORT

39. Due to the lack of organised competition during the tour little formal sport was played. The opening games of the rugby league, basketball and volleyball seasons have been played with mixed success.

40. The contingent retained the Australian Rules Trophy.


COMMUNITY SERVICE

41. The contingent has continued the assistance to ST JOSEPH'S ORPHANAGE commenced by C Company 8/9 RAR. A significant amount was achieved in concert with an informal RAAF welfare group.

CONCLUSION

42. The tour has been conducted with a minimum of fuss and without any major incident. A great deal of benefit has been gained by exposure to the Asian environment and widening the experience of all members of the contingent.

43. General arrangements to support the Rifle Company within BUTTERWORTH and MALAYSIA remain effective. Support from Australia, especially transport of operational stores, requires further refinement and is the subject of separate correspondence.


(W. J. EDWARDS)
Major
Officer Commanding

- Annexes: A. Summary of Education Training.
B. Medical Summary.
C. Police Incident Summary.

Distribution

HQ FF Comd (3)

OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH

For Information

1 DIV (2)

3 TF

2/4 RAR (2)

AS Defence Attache KUALA LUMPUR

65 GL Sect

File

Float

Spare (10)

SUMMARY OF EDUCATION TRAINING

DEC 80 - MAR 81

1. The results of education training conducted by the Australian Rifle Company at Butterworth during the period 3 DEC 80 to 4 MAR 81 are shown at the table below.

2. Due to the uncertainty of assessment of civilian qualification no indication of the number of soldiers fully qualified for AACE 2 can be given.

SUMMARY OF EDUCATION TRAINING DEC 80 - MAR 81

COURSE/ SERIAL NUMBER	SUBJECT(S)	STUDENT NUMBERS	PASSES	FAILURES	TOTAL
1	SOCIAL STUDIES	20	14	6	20
2	ARITHMETIC	15	11	4	15
3	GENERAL SCIENCE	9	8	1	9
4	SOCIAL STUDIES	19	14	5	19
5	ENGLISH	12	10	2	12
6	GENERAL SCIENCE	5	3	2	5
7	SOCIAL STUDIES	8	6	2	8
8	ENGLISH	8	6	2	8
9	ARITHMETIC	5	4	1	5
10	SOCIAL STUDIES	8	6	2	8
11	GENERAL SCIENCE	5	3	2	5
	TOTALS	114	85	29	114

MEDICAL SUMMARY

3 DEC 80 - @ MAR 81

CASE REPORTING SUMMARY

1. Numbers reporting sick are summarized as follows:
 - a. Seen by MO 4 RAAF Hosp - 12'
 - b. Seen by Special Treatments Clinic - 97
 - c. Seen by Med Asst - 346
 - d. Seen by Dental Flight - 12
 - e. Total Sick Parade attendance - 577
2. Statistics of hospitalization are as follows:
 - a. Hospital admissions/discharges - 18
 - b. Total mon/days spent in hospital - 77
3. Analysis of Diagnoses. Diagnoses of ~~complaints~~
is shown in the table below:

B COY 2/4 RAR
SICK PARADE STATE FOR
BUTTERWORTH TOUR 3 DEC 80 2 MAR 81 INCLUSIVE

TOTAL NO SEEN BY M.O	122
TOTAL NO SEEN BY THE SPECIAL TREATMENTS CLINIC	97
TOTAL NO SEEN BY MED ASST/ORD	346
TOTAL NO SEEN BY DENTAL FLIGHT	12
 TOTAL SICK PARADE ATTENDANCE	 577

TOTAL NO HOSPITAL ADMISSIONS	18
COMBINED TOTAL OF DAYS SPENT IN HOSPITAL	77
TOTAL NO HOSPITAL DISCHARGES	18

BREAKDOWN OF COMPLAINTS

ABDOMINAL PAIN	6
ACNE	6
ALLERGIC REACTIONS (INSECT BITES)	3
ANXIETY	2
BALANITIS	2
BOILS	25
BRONCHITIS	3
BURNS (INC BLISTERS)	13
COLDS (URTI)	63
COLD SORES	7
CONJUNCTIVITIS	8
CONSTIPATION	2
CRAB LICE	8
DENTAL	12
DIARRHOEA	25
EAR	8
EYE	11
FRACTURES - WRIST	1
HEADACHE	9
HEAT EXHAUSTION	1
HEPATITIS	1
INFECTED CUTS, ABRASIONS, BITES	37
INFECTIOUS MONONECLEOSIS	1
LACERATIONS REQUIRING SUTURES	3
MINOR OPS	7
MOUTH ULCERS	2
MUSCULAR INJURIES	77
PRICKLY HEAT	11
RASHES	30

REMOVAL OF SUTURES	4
RING TINEA	4
SORE THROAT	14
TINEA	38
TINEA VERISOLAR	4
U.R.T.I.	9
V.D. - SYPHILIS	NIL
- GONORRHOEA	13
- NSU	4
- ROUTINE CHECK AND REVIEW CASES	80
VIRAEMIA (many undiagnosed included amongst colds)	8
X RAY	12
MISCELLANEOUS	8

CR Kearns

(C.R. KEARNS)

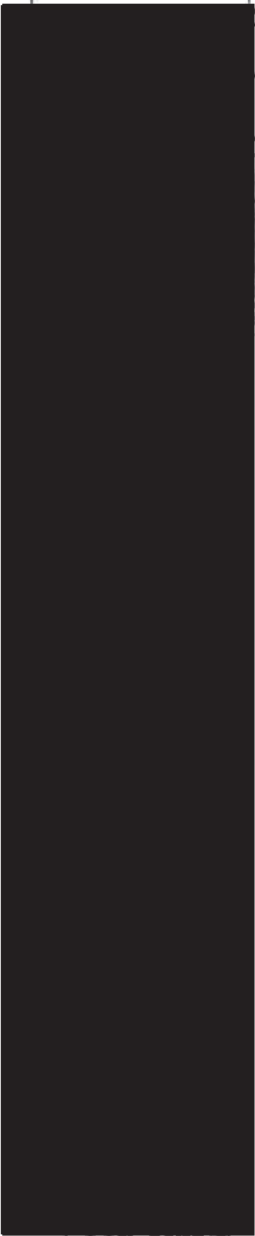
CPL

CAP B COY 2/4 BAR

2 MAR 81

2 DEC 80 4 MAR 81

B COY 2/4 RAR HOSPITAL ADMISSIONS, BUTTERWORTH

RANK NAME	DATE IN	DIAGNOSIS	DATE OUT	TOTAL DAYS IN HOSP	RESTRICTIONS
	1 DEC 80	REACTION TO MALOPRIM	5 DEC 80	2	1 DAY CON LEAVE
	12 DEC 80	HEAT STRESS/DEHYDRATION	12 DEC 80	1	NIL
	15 DEC 80	HEPATITIS	4 JAN 81	20	LIGHT DUTIES
	15 DEC 80	VASCULAR SPASM	19 DEC 80	4	1/7 SL REVIEW ODO 6/7
	16 DEC 80	VIRAEMIA	18 DEC 80	2	1/7 SL
	17 DEC 80	BACK STRAIN	20 DEC 80	3	NIL
	26 DEC 80	BRONCHITIS GASTROENTERITIS	31 DEC 80	5	NIL
	3 JAN 81	VIRAEMIA	5 JAN 81	3	NIL
	3 JAN 81	VIRAEMIA	6 JAN 81	4	NIL
	9 JAN 81	VIRAEMIA	12 JAN 81	3	NIL
	13 JAN 81	CONJUNCTIVITIS	21 JAN 81	8	TO WEAR SUNGLASSES WHEN NECESSARY
	2 FEB 81	MUSCLE STRAIN	4 FEB 81	2	NIL
	2 FEB 81	POST OP BLEEDING	5 FEB 81	3	1/52 LIGHT DUTIES
	11 FEB 81	FACIAL SWELLING (INSECT BITE ALLERGY)	13 FEB 81	2	NIL
	23 FEB 81	INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS	28 FEB 81	5	NIL
	23 FEB 81	VIRAEMIA	27 FEB 81	4	NIL
	25 FEB 81	HEPATITIS	28 FEB 81	3	NIL
	24 FEB 81	VIRAEMIA (MALARIA?)	27 FEB 81	3	NIL

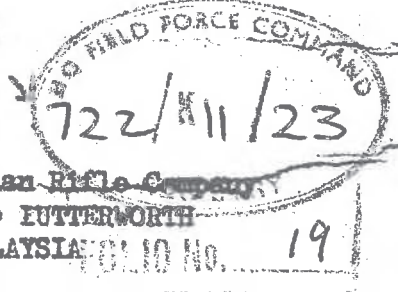
POLICE INCIDENT SUMMARY
3 DEC 80 - 4 MAR 81

SERIAL	DATE/TIME	INCIDENT/OCCURENCE	REMARKS
1.	1600 04 DEC 80	<u>DRUGS OFFERED.</u> A soldier (not identified) was offered drugs and drug accessories by a trishaw rider in PENANG.	Field security section of RAAF Police advised.
2.	1130 06 DEC 80	<u>TRAFFIC ACCIDENT.</u> A P AF vehicle, International 4t truck No 223186 driven by [REDACTED] collided with a Malaysian Navy truck within Air Base Butterworth. [REDACTED] received minor injuries.	An accident report was raised and a limited investigation completed. No disciplinary action taken.
3.	2210 09 DEC 80	<u>ALTERCATION WITH TRISHAW RIDER.</u> [REDACTED] requested RAAF Police assistance in disagreement with a trishaw rider in CHULIA ST in PENANG. This dispute was caused by the trishaw rider demanding a higher price than that agreed. After attempting to strike [REDACTED] with a meat cleaver the trishaw rider left.	No charges were laid. [REDACTED] were escorted to the ferry by RAAF Police.

SERIAL	DATE/TIME	OCCURENCE/INCIDENT	REMARKS
4.	1440 10 DEC 80	<u>SALE OF ALLEGEDLY STOLEN GOODS.</u> [REDACTED] brought from a Malaysian Army NCO a pair of camouflage greens later alleged to be stolen	SIS In-vestigation SIS/BUT/20/80 The greens were confiscated for use as evidence.
5.	1030 15 DEC 80	<u>ALLEGED THEFT.</u> [REDACTED] reported that his wallet was stolen from his pocket on PENANG.	SIS Inves-tigation SIS/BUT/21/80
6.	0940 03 JAN 81	<u>ALLEGED THEFT.</u> [REDACTED] reported that M\$150.00 had been removed from his wallet in his room between 1900 hrs 02 JAN 81 and 0830 hrs 03 JAN 81	SIS Inve-stigation SIS/BUT/1/81 No evidence of theft disclosed.
7.	0245 22 JAN 81	<u>ALLEGED ASSAULT WITH WEAPON.</u> [REDACTED] complained that a Malaysian sentry had pointed a loaded pistol at his head when [REDACTED] had returned from leave at 0025 hrs 22 JAN 81. [REDACTED] was considered to be in an intoxicated state and, on subse-quent questioning, could not identify the sentry concerned. Subsequent investigation revealed no evidence of a pistol and that [REDACTED] had not been in possession of his AAF - 129, Identity Card.	Discipli-nary action taken against [REDACTED]
8.	0005 31 JAN 81	<u>ALLEGED ASSAULT.</u> [REDACTED] complained of an assault by an unidentified European, believed to be an Australian soldier. Subsequent investigation revealed that an altercation had occurred between [REDACTED] and a group of soldiers from B Coy 2/4 RAR on the PENANG ferry.	No offence identified. The complaint was withdrawn by [REDACTED]
9.	1530 23 FEB 81	<u>ALLEGED THEFT.</u> [REDACTED] reported the loss of M\$200 from his wallet in his room between 1300 hrs 23 FEB 81 and 1600 hrs 23 FEB 81.	No evidence of theft discovered.

RESTRICTED

FF OPS



R798/1/1

29 May 81

See Distribution List

END OF TOUR REPORT
A COY 1 RAR
3 MAR - 2 JUN 81

NB: Copy to Admin
Br & HQ FLOAT on
15/6/81.
Dops St
15/6/81

References: A. HQ FF Comd Staff Instruction 279 dated 6 Jul 79.

B. AS Rifle Company BUTTERWORTH Standing Orders.

INTRODUCTION

General

1. A Coy 1 RAR assumed duty as the Australian Rifle Company BUTTERWORTH on 3 Mar 81 and will be relieved by B Coy 5/7 RAR on 3 Jun 81.
2. This report contains comments on the operational, training, personnel and logistic aspects of the tour and is submitted as directed in Reference A.

OPERATIONAL ASPECTS

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

3. A QRF and standby QRF were maintained as required by the references. No real incidents occurred during the tour. After the initial settling in period of five days a satisfactory standard of preparedness was achieved and this was maintained for the duration of the tour. Practice QRF responses to Key Point incursions were conducted daily with effective results.

Additional Security Responsibilities

4. In addition to normal QRF stand by duties the Rifle Company is now responsible for maintaining an hourly check on P3 Orion aircraft which are parked away from the normal flight lines. This task is shared with the RAAF SP dog patrol.

/Air Defence

RESTRICTED

Air Defence Exercise (ADEX)

5. During the period 21 - 24 Apr 81 the company participated in an ADEX designed to test both air and ground elements against enemy infiltration and attack. This necessitated increasing the QRF from section to platoon strength with similar sized back up. While most exercise incidents involved the air elements the QRF, when reacted, carried out their tasks with speed and efficiency.

QRF Training

6. Training in security duties, particular to Army responsibilities at Air Base BUTTERWORTH, was conducted in Australia prior to deployment. Maximum use was made of RAAF GARBUTT facilities for training and this proved extremely valuable.

7. However, there are certain aspects particular to Air Base BUTTERWORTH that are difficult to gain information of and duplicate for training purposes. Although the reconnaissance helped overcome this, a slide sequence of BUTTERWORTH security duties has been produced which will assist future companies to conduct appropriate pre deployment training.

QRF Equipment

8. The QRF searchlight has been unserviceable for the last two months because of supply problems with a repair part for the 2.5 KVA generator power source. Some form of illumination, more powerful than vehicle headlights, is essential for QRF night operations and a civilian type sealed beam spotlight has been purchased as an interim measure.

Communications

9. Long range communications between PULADA and BUTTERWORTH were inconsistent. A fault in the newly erected METTERS mast was detected early in the tour and once this was rectified communication with PULADA was possible on a schedule basis with the best time being 1200 hours. However, on occasions atmospherics and civilian transmissions on allotted frequencies resulted in a loss of communications for periods of up to 2 - 3 days.

10. Telephone remains the most reliable means of communication with troops undergoing training at PULADA.

TRAINING

PULADA Training

11. Under the direction of a control group, each rifle platoon underwent a ten day period of basic jungle warfare (JW) training in the PULADA dry firing range area. This was followed by a five day period of field firing with special emphasis given to battle practices using all organic weapons.

/12. PULADA

12. The PULADA training complex is an excellent venue for JW training and is considered more accessible and better suited to basic training than LANGKAWI ISLAND.

Combined Exercise

13. A combined exercise was conducted with 7RMR during the period 16 - 21 Mar 81 and has been covered previously in a separate report.

BUTTERWORTH Training

14. Although restricted by suitable local field training areas, training at BUTTERWORTH and WELLESLEY PROVINCE included:

- a. a navigation course with instruction carried out at BUTTERWORTH and practical training conducted at SUNGAI ULAR rubber plantation near KULIM;
- b. live firing practices using the on base 25 metre range and 6MIB classification range at SUNGAI PATANI;
- c. an unarmed combat course; and
- d. UH1H air familiarization training.

15. Platoon training was conducted throughout the period with special emphasis on JW tactics and weapon handling.

Education Training

16. AACE 2 education training and examinations were conducted and a report is attached at Annex A.

PERSONNEL

Medical and Dental

17. A medical summary is attached at Annex B.

Leave

18. In platoon groups members were granted leave in BANGKOK and SINGAPORE. Local leave in BUTTERWORTH and PENANG was available in off duty hours.

Visits

19. The contingent was visited by LTCOL R. L. Guest, SO1 (OPS/SAF) and MAJ R. D. R. Tracey SO2 (LOG OPS) of FF COMD from 19 - 28 May 81.

/Drugs.

RESTRICTED

- 4 -

Drugs

20. Acting on information received from various sources [REDACTED] (RACMP SIS Investigator) investigated a number of reports of possible use of narcotics. His investigations resulted in disciplinary action being taken against one soldier for possession of marijuana.

Early Return to AUSTRALIA

21. [REDACTED] was returned to AUSTRALIA on 3 May 81 for compassionate reasons.

Discipline

22. Summaries of SIS Incident Reports and offences dealt with by OC A Coy 1 RAR are attached at Annex C and D respectively.

Postal

23. There were a number of reports from members' dependants that Australian bound mail had been tampered with en route. In particular letters had been slit along the seams and resealed with adhesive tape. This matter has been reported and an investigation is being conducted.

Wet Canteen

24. Approval has been granted by OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH for the Rifle Coy to establish and maintain a wet canteen within the Coy lines. Rules for operating the canteen have been submitted and are presently being considered by HQ RAAF BUTTERWORTH.

LOGISTICS

Rations and Quarters

25. The repainting programme of the company accommodation and administrative buildings has been completed and the standard is now satisfactory. Notwithstanding that, the absence of laundry facilities and restricted living space do not justify the payment of full R and Q charges.

Transport

26. The serviceability of vehicles used for long trips and those stationed at PULADA for the duration of training has been unsatisfactory. On two occasions breakdowns occurred when replacement parts could not be furnished by RAAF sources and a lengthy search had to be conducted to find parts from other sources.

/The NZ Army

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 5 -

The NZ Army workshops in SINGAPORE were particularly helpful in providing parts and assistance for breakdowns at PULADA.

27. RAAF BUTTERWORTH advise that all trucks and a land cruiser are now deemed passed "life of type" and replacement appears imminent. Accordingly a request has been made that during the interim period later model vehicles be provided for tasks outside the recovery range of RAAF BUTTERWORTH repair facilities, eg for combined exercises and PULADA field training.

Weapons

28. Weapons on permanent charge of Rifle Coy BUTTERWORTH are in good condition.

SPORT

29. During Mar 81, when the contingent was concentrated in BUTTERWORTH, members were conspicuously successful in all sports played. However, the heavy training period at PULADA and leave visits to BANGKOK necessitated withdrawal from most RAAF competitions. This was disappointing but unavoidable under the circumstances.

30. The contingent retained the Australian Football Trophy.

COMMUNITY SERVICE

31. The contingent has continued to support St JOSEPH'S ORPHANAGE with general handi-work and a gift of non perishable food purchased by donations from members.

SUPPORT

32. Support provided by 65 GL Sect, the staff of the Malaysian Army Infantry School at PULADA and 1 RNZIR was excellent and significantly contributed towards the success of the tour.

CONCLUSION

33. All contingent members have gained valuable experience from serving in an Asian environment. Training in the jungles of Malaysia was professionally rewarding; both the combined exercise and PULADA training provided unique opportunities.

J D Petrie
(J. D. PETRIE)
Major
Officer Commanding

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 6 -

- Annexes: A. Education Training Summary
B. Medical Summary
C. Police Incident Summary
D. Offences Summary

Distribution

HQ FF COMD (3)
OC RAAF BUTTERWORTH

For Information

1 Div (2)
3TF
1 RAR (2)
AS Defence Attache KUALA LUMPUR
65 GL Sect
File
Float
Spare (10)

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX A TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY
R798/1/1
DATED 29 MAY 81

EDUCATION REPORT
BUTTERWORTH MARCH - JUNE 81

Introduction

1. Education courses were run at BUTTERWORTH for the Australian Army Certificate of Education, Class 2.

Numbers Involved

2. A total of 39 members were examined for one or more subjects. Details are as follows:

Subject	No Examined	No passed
Social Studies	37	28
English	27	26
Science	22	20
Arithmetic	24	13

3. A total of 18 soldiers gained the full AACE 2 qualification, with a further 18 being partly qualified.

Administration of Results

4. Results will be administered from the Education Wing of 2 Training Group. Official Notification of results will be at a later date when results will be forwarded from CARO for entry into member's AAB 83's.

Difficulties Experienced

5. Owing to other commitments not all members were able to attempt all subjects required.

6. Members education records, as listed in their AAB 83's were found, in many cases, to be incomplete and often completely lacking. A list of those members involved has been prepared so that action can be initiated to have these records assessed by DAE.

/Conclusion.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-A2 -

Conclusion

7. Although difficulties arose, largely due to time constraints, the running of AACE 2 Education Courses at BUTTERWORTH was found to be worthwhile and of great benefit to the career development of the members involved.

RESTRICTED

ANNEX B TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY
R798/1/1
DATED 29 MAY 81

MEDICAL SUMMARY

1. Sick parade attendances are summarized as follows:

a. Seen by MO 4 RAAF	-	53
b. Seen by special treatment clinic	-	74
c. Seen by CAP	-	294
d. Seen by Dental Flight	-	4

2. Seven members were hospitalized during the tour with their total collective hospitalization time being 19 days.

3. The following is a detailed breakdown of complaints:

a. Abdominal Pain	-	3
b. Ache	-	5
c. Allergic Reaction (Insect Bites)	-	9
d. Balanitis Boils	-	4
e. Bronchitis	-	16
f. Burns (Inc Blisters)	-	22
g. Cyst	-	4
h. Colds	-	27
i. Cold Sores	-	4
j. Constipation	-	6
k. Dental	-	4
l. Diarrhoea	-	13
m. Ear	-	7
n. Eye	-	1
o. Headaches	-	5
p. Heat Exhaustion	-	3
q. Infected Cuts Abrasions & Bites	-	17

/-B-2 -

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 0-2 -

r. Infectious Mononeucleosis	-	1
s. Lacerations Requiring Sutures	-	3
t. Minor Ops	-	3
u. Mouth Ulcers	-	2
v. Muscular Injuries	-	34
w. Prickley Heat	-	12
x. Rashes	-	41
y. Removal of Sutures	-	4
z. Ring Tinea	-	11
aa. Sore Throat	-	25
bb. Tinea	-	18
cc. Gonorrhoea	-	25
dd. NSU	-	8
ee. X-Ray	-	22
ff. Wart	-	3
gg. Sprains	-	6
hh. Scabies	-	1
ii. Herpies	-	1
jj. Dislocations	-	1

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX C TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY
R798/1/1
DATED 29 MAY 81

REPORT OF SPECIAL INVESTIGATION SERVICE ENQUIRIES INVOLVING
MEMBERS OF A COY 1 RAR

Serial	SIS Case No	Particulars of Offence/Enquiry
(a)	(b)	(c)
1.	SIS/BUT/3/81	<u>ALLEGED THEFT</u> 21 Mar 81 - [REDACTED], A Coy 1 RAR, reported that between 0800 hrs 20 Mar 81 and 0645 hrs 21 Mar 81, military equipment on issue to him and personal property, totally valued at \$A54.75, had been removed from an insecure truck at the Batu Arang exercise area, Exercise Keluat Hitam Satu, Malaysia. No offender detected this enquiry but believed to be Malaysian soldier.
2.	SIS/BUT/4/81	<u>ALLEGED THEFT</u> 17 Apr 81 - [REDACTED], A Coy 1 RAR, reported that between 1000 hrs and 1215 hrs on 9 Apr 81, his wallet containing his army identity card, M\$60.00 in banknotes, and army papers, was removed from his uniform trousers pocket whilst he slept in the Rifle Coy ORs' accommodation lines, Butterworth, Malaysia. Suspect believed to be civilian employee at ORs' accommodation lines. Suspect questioned and will be subject of surveillance in future.
3.	SIS/BUT/5/81	<u>ALLEGED THEFT</u> 23 Apr 81 - [REDACTED], A Coy 1 RAR, reported that between 0845 hrs and 1000 hrs on 22 Apr 81, his clear plastic wallet valued at \$A1.00 and which contained his army identity card, his QLD driving licence and personal papers, was removed from his trousers pocket whilst he was shopping in Singapore. RNZMP, RAAFP, and Lion City Hotel contacted re this enquiry. Property unrecovered to date.

/- 2-C -

RESTRICTED


(a)	(b)	(c)
4.	SIS/BUT/6/81	<p><u>ALLEGED LOSS/THEFT</u></p> <p>25 Apr 81 - The Duty Officer A Coy 1 RAR reported that between 1625 hrs and 1915 hrs on 25 Apr 81, M\$400.00 in banknotes, the property of [REDACTED] of A Coy 1 RAR, was removed from his wallet in this rear pocket of his civilian trousers.</p>
5.	SIS/BUT/7/81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>7 May 81 - [REDACTED] of 3 Pl A Coy 1 RAR reported that between 2000 hrs 6 May 81 and 0600 hrs 7 May 81, his wallet valued at \$A16.00 containing M\$102.00, his army identity card, his private vehicle key and personal papers, was removed from his civilian trousers pocket whilst he was in the New Lum Tong Hotel, Georgetown.</p> <p>Subsequent enquiries have indicated that wallet and money was lost in Georgetown and later found by an unnamed trishaw driver who kept money for own purposes. Location of other property unknown. Enquiries re this matter continuing in conjunction with civilian police.</p>
6.	SIS/BUT/8/81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>[REDACTED], A Coy, 1 RAR reported that between 1400 hrs and 1410 hrs on 1 May 81, his wallet valued at M\$6.00, which contained 3,000 baht, his army identity card, and a quantity of personal papers, was removed from his civilian trousers pocket whilst visiting a temple in Bangkok, Thailand.</p> <p>Property unrecovered, offender undetected.</p>
7.	SIS/BUT/9/81	<p><u>ALLEGED POSSESSION OF ILLEGAL DRUG</u></p> <p>14 May 81 - OC A Coy 1 RAR reported that on mentioned date about 1115 hrs, a package believed to contain an illegal drug had been found in a wooden locker in the accommodation lines of A Coy 1 RAR.</p> <p>Enquiries are continuing into this matter.</p>

(a)	(b)	(c)
8.	Alleged Assault involving soldier of A Coy 1 RAR.	<p>On 16 May 81, about 0200 hrs [REDACTED] a waitress employed at the Butterworth Cafe, Bagan Ajan, reported that she had been assaulted in her place of employ by a soldier of A Coy who had punched her in the eye during an altercation between them.</p> <p>The soldier was interviewed and admitted striking [REDACTED] but claimed to have done so only after the complainant first struck him with a glass. Further interviews conducted with witnesses were unable to confirm or refute claims made by both parties. Due therefore to an insufficiency of evidence, no official SIS report was submitted and no charge was made against the soldier concerned. [REDACTED] declined to report his matter to the civilian police.</p>
9.	SIS/BUT/10/81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>19 May 81 - [REDACTED], A Coy 1 RAR reported that between 0950 hrs and 1130 hrs 13 May 81, his brown vinyl carrying bag valued at \$NZ10.00 and which contained golfing articles valued totally at the equivalent of \$A92.00, was removed from beneath his seat on a RAAF C130 aircraft. The alleged theft occurred when he alighted from the aircraft at Tengah SAF Air Base, Singapore, having boarded the aircraft at Johore Bahru for a flight to Butterworth.</p> <p>Enquiries disclosed that a bag fitting the description of [REDACTED] bag was handed in to RAAFP at Tengah Air Base, after being found on a bus. Arrangements made to have bag forwarded to Air Base Butterworth for possible identification by [REDACTED]</p>
10.	SIS/BUT/11/81	<p><u>ATTEMPTED SUPPLY OF NARCOTIC DRUG</u></p> <p>18 May 81 - [REDACTED] of A Coy 1 RAR reported that on 16 May 81 he had been approached in Chulia Street, Georgetown, by a male Malaysian civilian who offered to sell him drugs. Liaison was effected with the Penang Police and Narcotics Division, as a result of which a quantity of drugs were seized and a Malaysian male of Chinese race was taken into custody at 1815 hrs on 20 May 81.</p> <p>Suspect was charged with two counts of Possession of a Dangerous Drug and was remanded to appear before Penang Magistrates Court at a date yet to be decided.</p>

RESTRICTED

ANNEX D TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY
R798/1/1
DATED 29 MAY 81


OFFENCE SUMMARY

Name	Offence	Award
	WOWS. Conduct to the Prejudice.	7 Days CB
	WOWS. AWOL.	\$20 Fine 7 Days CB
	WOWS. Neglecting to obey unit Standing Orders.	Severe Reprimand
	WOWS. Neglecting to obey unit Standing Orders.	5 Days CB
	WOWS. Disobeying a lawful Command.	168 Hours Detention
	WOWS. Disobeying a lawful Command.	168 Hours Detention
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Sleeping on his Post.	14 Days Detention
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Sleeping on his post.	14 Days Detention
	WOWS. Neglecting to obey Unit Standing Orders.	7 Days CB
	WOWS. Insubordinate Language.	\$40 Fine 14 Days CB
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Leaving his post.	14 Days CB
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Leaving his Post.	\$40 Fine 14 Days CB
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Sleeping on his post.	\$40 Fine Severe Reprimand
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Sleeping on his post; and WOWS. Insubordinate Language.	14 Days Detention and 7 Days CB
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Sleeping on his Post.	168 Hours Detention and 14 Days CB

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- D2 -

Name	Offence	Award
	WOWS. Conduct to the Prejudice (Drugs)	21 Day Detention
	WOWS. Acting as a sentinel Sleeping on his Post.	\$40 Fine Severe Reprimand

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

HQ FF Comd.
bps) 2 copies

In Reply Quote: R798/1/1

+ 1 to Admin
+ 1 to HQ Float
11/8/81
24/9/81
Australian Rifle Company
Air Base Butterworth
WEST MALAYSIA
(F20)
24 Sep 81

Telephone: 785

See Distribution List

END OF TOUR REPORT

B COY 5/7 RAR

2 JUN - 9 SEP 81

- References:
- A. HQ FF Comd Staff Instruction 2/79 dated 6 Jul 79
 - B. AS Rifle Company BUTTERWORTH Standing Orders
 - C. AS Rifle Company B841/1/2 dated Aug 81
 - D. 5/7 RAR Training Directive 1981

INTRODUCTION

General

1. B Coy, 5/7 RAR (and attachments) assumed duty as the Australian Rifle Coy, Butterworth on the 3 Jun 81 and will be relieved by B Coy, 6 RAR, on the 9 Sep 81.
2. This report contains comments on the operational, training, personnel and logistics aspects and is submitted in accordance with Reference A.

OPERATIONAL ASPECTS

HQ FF Comd Briefing

3. The briefing received from HQ FF Comd prior to the departure of the OC for the reconnaissance proved to be inadequate as it provided no operational information other than those subjects reported on by previous Company Commanders and the contents of Reference A, both of which were available to the OC prior to the briefing.
4. Although 65 GL Section provides updated information, a depth of background knowledge on the conditions and peculiarities of both Butterworth and the Australian Rifle Coy's employment should be provided. The following are two examples of such information:
 - a. RAAF withdrawal from Butterworth; and
 - b. the Family Protection Plan.
5. It is suggested that the brief be given by a previous OC or alternatively, the officers at the level of briefing visit Butterworth on a Staff visit to gain first hand knowledge and an insight into the role and responsibilities of the Australian Rifle Coy.

/Quick Reaction Force(QRF)

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 2 -

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

6. The requirement to provide a QRF and standby QRF were maintained at all times in accordance with References A and B. The QRF system was practised daily (both at night and by day) and a satisfactory standard was maintained throughout the tour. The responses to key points, cordons and patrolling within the wire was consistently quick and tactically effective. No real incidents occurred during the tour.
7. In addition to its normal duties the QRF periodically checked the arrestor barriers at either end of the airstrip and patrolled the perimeter fence to check the wire.
8. During the last four weeks of the tour QRF and the standby QRF were incorporated into a RAAF safety procedure for aircraft landing with unretractable target cable. The procedure allows for the arrestor barrier to be removed from the north end of the strip prior to the aircraft landing.
9. It was agreed to provide the manpower support as QRF and standby QRF provided (both during and after work hours) sufficient manpower in the quickest time to allow for the barrier to be removed before the aircraft lands. Although the requirement to remove the barrier has never been implemented, the QRF has practiced the safety procedures with both groups arriving at the assembly area well within the allowable time frames.

QRF Training

10. QRF training was conducted in Australia prior to embarkation in accordance with Reference A, and was subsequently modified after the reconnaissance to include those aspects peculiar to Air Base Butterworth. ✓
11. Training was continued at Butterworth to include platoon size reactions both day and night culminating in a company reaction on the night of 27 Aug 81. The company reaction highlighted several operational problems in command and control and these aspects have been discussed with OC, 65 GL Section and the Ground Defence Officer.

QRF Equipment

12. The lighting problem associated with the QRF vehicle at night has not yet been resolved as the sealed beam spotlights purchased were directional fixed lights which would have been of little value in an operational setting. Currently the RAAF are investigating the purchase and mounting of two movable sealed beam spotlights.
13. With the inclusion of the barrier safety procedure and the necessity for the QRF to react over the main north/south highway; a request has been submitted to the RAAF to have a flashing light fitted to the QRF vehicle designating it as an emergency vehicle.
14. With the constant number of power failures that occur at the Air Base, the RAAF are currently investigating a system of emergency lighting to enable the QRF to remain completely operational. Currently, if a power failure occurs, 'Big Jim' torches are used and this has proven unsatisfactory.

Communication

15. Difficulty was encountered in maintaining long range communications

RESTRICTED

/between Pulada and

RESTRICTED

- 3 -

between Pulada and Butterworth. This problem was overcome with the assistance of the RAAF technical personnel who after thoroughly testing the METTERS mast and equipment, advised that the frequency range employed would not operate below 7 KHZ due to the atmospheric conditions. Once the frequency range was changed to the 7 - 11 KHZ range, communications were established and maintained.

16. An F1 radio link between 5/7 RAR (Holsworthy) and Butterworth/Pulada was attempted using:

- a. current equipment (METTERS mast) and the 5/7 RAR link within the Battalion area; and
- b. horizontal antennae with 5/7 RAR link at MT Victoria.

However, all attempts to establish communications failed.

TRAINING

Company Training Butterworth

17. Company training was conducted in accordance with Reference A and Reference D, and included the following:

- a. Subject 2 for CPL (continued at Pulada);
- b. live firing practice using the KULIM Police Range and the 6MIB classification range at SUNGAI Patani;
- c. communications training conducted by attached signal CPL in both 77 and F1 sets;
- d. UH1H air familiarization training; and
- e. Basic First Aid Course conducted by the attached medical assistant.

18. Throughout the tour, platoon training was conducted in jungle warfare with the emphasis being placed on individual skills and weapon handling. The company was restricted in its ability to conduct realistic training within Butterworth due to the lack of a suitable close training area.

Pulada

19. Each rifle platoon (with attachments) underwent ten days training at Pulada under the control and direction of a Control Group. The training consisted of four days of jungle warfare at section and platoon levels, followed by five days of live firing on the ranges using organic company weapons with emphasis on battle practices.

20. Pulada provides an excellent venue for Infantry orientated activities/practices. The ranges (up to 120mm) are all well designed and maintained and training areas for tactics, range from light to extremely thick secondary jungle. With the support available from Pulada and the accessibility of the area, it is much more suited to training than LANGKAWI ISLAND.

Langkawi Island

21. The company deployed support platoon (primarily Assault Troop, 2 Cav Regt) to Langkawi during the period 22 - 25 Aug 81 to conduct jungle warfare training.

RESTRICTED

/training

RESTRICTED

- 4 -

training. Although all members had completed Pulada training, the platoon was integrated into one of the three rifle platoons, they had no opportunity to conduct training as a separate sub-unit. The training concentrated on section and platoon level activities and included use of the assault craft for insertion and extraction of patrols.

22. The deployment of the platoon to Langkawi Island was far more complex and time consuming than the deployment of the company to Johore Baharu due to the necessity for local liaison with shipping firms and island administrators.

Combined Exercise

23. B Coy, 5/7 RAR, came under command of 17 RMR for the combined exercise KIJANG KANGAROO during the period 21 Jun - 1 Jul 81 and is covered in a separate report (Reference C). The exercise from a professional point of view proved to be the highlight of the tour.

Education Training

24. AACE 2 Education training and examinations were conducted in weekly packages for the platoon on duty and proved to be very successful as it qualified members of the company as well as providing an interlude to the monotony of QRF duties. The results of the courses are attached at Annex A.

25. The Education Officer, LT Schuhkraft, also became involved with other unit activities such as the Langkawi exercise and acting 2IC, thus proving to be a valuable asset to the company.

PERSONNEL

Medical & Dental

26. A medical summary is attached at Annex B.

Leave

27. Local leave was available in both BUTTERWORTH and PENANG during off duty hours whilst leave was granted in BANGKOK and SINGAPORE under group tour arrangements. The ability to visit both of these cities and the stay at Butterworth cannot be overlooked as insignificant as it has broadened the education and understanding of 90% of the company who up until this trip had never left Australia.

Visits

28. The company was visited by:

- a. LTCOL B. Hennessey, ADA, Malaysia on the 25 Aug 81 during Exercise Kijang Kangaroo;
- b. LTCOL I.W. Marsh, CDSUP, HQ 1 DIV during the period 20 - 27 Jul 81;
- c. LTCOL P.N. Arnison, CO 5/7 RAR, during the period 20 - 27 Jul 81
- d. MAJ P. Michelson, 2IC, 5/7 RAR, during the period 16 - 29 Jun 81.

Drugs

29. The company conducted a drug awareness campaign prior to embarkation which was conducted by the company which was

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 5 -

which was consolidated by the RAAF and SIS during the familiarization phase of the tour. However, Narcotic drugs and Marijuana are freely available on Penang for prices that are extremely low in comparison with Australia.

30. During the early part of the tour, information indicating the possible use of marijuana was received from SIS sources, and was investigated [REDACTED] (RACMP SIS Investigator). The investigation failed to uncover any evidence except for one self admission to previous uses in Australia by [REDACTED], who was subsequently warned for discharge. As a result of the information, random searches and the use of drug dogs were implemented during the tour.

Drug Abuse

31. The company had one case of drug abuse, by [REDACTED]

An SIS report has been forwarded outlining the case in more detail.

Early Return to Australia

32. The following people were returned to Australia during the tour:

Discipline

33. Summaries of SIS Incident Reports and offences dealt with by OC B Co-5/7 RAR are attached at Annexes C & D.

RACMP

34. Currently, there is one RACMP SIS Investigator, [REDACTED] on permanent posting to Air Base Butterworth. With the implementation of the posting it was suggested that the Rifle Coy need only one RACMP Corporal to be attached to the tour.

35. In reality, the two RACMP Corporals are still required for each tour. [REDACTED] as an SIS Investigator maintains constant contact with personnel on the island in both the drug and vice scene and now provides an excellent service in advising/investigating and preventative measures to both the RAAF and the Army.

36. To extract [REDACTED] from this area to conduct routine investigations such as alleged theft, vehicle accidents and to provide ammunition escorts for range practices and convoy/ammunition movement would negate his current role and severely damage his effectiveness. It is strongly recommended that future companys' bring two RACMP Corporals to Butterworth to allow [REDACTED] the freedom to maintain his current activities.

PAY

37. The Pay System worked efficiently and no difficulties were encountered.

RESTRICTED

/Postal

*mentioned at the briefing!
this is not why he was sent there initially but to provide continuity up to Coy comd*

RESTRICTED

- 6 -

Postal

38. As with the previous company, reports were received from members' dependants stating that Australian bound mail had been tampered with. On checking with Customs and Australia Post, it was advised that if mail is opened or damaged it was repaired using adhesive tape bearing either Customs or Australia Post markings. In the reported cases clear adhesive was used. The incidents were reported to the Senior Intelligence Officer RAAF Butterworth and no further complaints have been received. ✓

Wet Canteen

39. Approval has been received to operate a wet canteen using rules of procedure submitted by the previous company. The canteen has been operating since 24 Jul 81 and no difficulties have been encountered in its operation. ✓

LOGISTICS

Rations & Quarters

40. The level of accommodation for the OR's is unacceptable when considering the amount of R & Q paid by the soldiers in comparison to their living conditions in Australia. Being aware that the matter has been discussed at greatlength by both the RAAF and the Army; no further comment will be made. 1

Transport

41. The transport situation is now resolving itself with a replacement programme being implemented to replace the current life expired trucks. The programme will initially replace four 3 Ton CL vehicles on a one for one basis followed by replacement of two 3 Ton CL four wheel drive vehicles in the near future. Although the replacement vehicles are not new they will have an average of four years life left.

42. The Landcruisers will not be replaced but a major service and over-haul programme has been implemented.

Vehicle Accidents

43. There were two accidents involving company vehicles during the tour. The accidents have been investigated and the investigations forwarded to HQ RAAF, BUTTERWORTH for further action. The accidents were as follows:

- a. 11 Jul 81 - Vehicle 3 Ton CL No 223785 involved with a private vehicle (Taxi). [REDACTED] found guilty of negligent driving by Malaysian Court and fined M\$130.00. Damage to vehicle was minor.
- b. 14 Jul 81 - Vehicle Landcruiser No 227162 involved with a private vehicle. Driver [REDACTED] not at fault and damage was minor.

Driving Conditions

44. It takes an experienced driver to successfully cope with the transition from Australian to Malaysian driving conditions. The Malaysian population have an unusual approach to driving which in most cases is a flagrant disregard for rules of the road and courtesy.

/45. The conditions

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 7 -

45. The conditions are further endangered by the general condition of the roads with narrow streets, soft edges, unmarked repairs and damaged signs.

Fire

46. A fire incident occurred on board RAAF vehicle No 223484 (3 Ton CL) when the vehicle was returning with the Rear Party from Pulada. The cause of the fire is believed to be exploding 77 set batteries (due to the intense heat) and the incident has been investigated. The fire caused A\$200.00 damage and the RAAF has undertaken to repair all the damage except to one pair of GP boots (on board the truck).

Weapons

47. Weapons on permanent charge to the AS Rifle Coy have been inspected and are in good condition.

SPORT

48. On arrival at Butterworth little formal sport was being played but subsequently, a rugby union team was entered in the union competition with two losses (due to training commitments) and four wins, placing the AS Rifle Coy second on the ladder. B Coy, 6 RAR, will take over the competition on arrival.

49. In addition, the company won:

- a. 10 a side rugby competition; and
- b. Rugby League best of three (Army vs RAAF)(in two games).
- c. Soccer Invitation games (Army vs RAAF)

50. Due to training commitments no other formal Army teams were entered in other sports but individuals were allowed to play with RAAF teams on an as available basis. The RAAF teams welcomed this support and individuals played in teams ranging from Squash to Volleyball.

51. The RAAF challenged an Army team to an 'Around Penang Relay' and soundly beat the Army team.

COMMUNITY SERVICE

52. The company continued the support to ST Josephs and also CHESHIRE HOME for handicapped children. The support to Cheshire was in the form of providing the children with outings such as picnics and swimming trips. The support to ST Josephs was in the form of non perishable food for the children from donations made by members of the company.

SUPPORT

53. The support provided to the company by the staff at Pulada, 17 RMR, RNZIR and by 65 GL Sect was excellent and significantly contributed towards the success of the tour.

/CONCLUSION

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 8 -

CONCLUSION

54. The tour was successful and rewarding.

(R.J. CRAZE)
Major
Officer Commanding

Annexes: A. Education AACE 2
B. Medical Summary
C. Summary SIS Investigations
D. Summary of Offences

Distribution

HQ FF Comd (3)

OC RAAF Butterworth

For Information:

1 Div (2)

1 TF

5/7 RAR

AS Defence Attache KUALA LUMPUR

65 GL Sect (2)

File

Spare (5)

RESTRICTED

EDUCATION REPORT
BUTTERWORTH JUN - SEP 81

Introduction

1. Education courses were run at BUTTERWORTH for the Australian Army Certificate of Education, Class 2.

Numbers Involved

2. A total of 35 members were examined for one or more subjects. Details are as follows:

Subject	No Examined	No Passed
Social Studies	30	28
English	22	21
Science	24	24
Arithmetic	18	18

3. A total of 21 soldiers gained the full AACE 2 qualification, with a further 14 being partly qualified.

Administration of Results

4. Results will be administered from the Education Wing of 2 Training Group. Official Notification of results will be at a later date when results will be forwarded from CARO for entry into member's AAB 83's.

Difficulties Experienced

5. Owing to other commitments not all members were able to attempt all subjects required.

6. Members education records, as listed in their AAB 83's were found, in many cases, to be incomplete and often completely lacking. A list of those members involved has been prepared so that action can be initiated to have these records assessed by DAE.

Conclusion

7. Although difficulties arose, largely due to time constraints, the running of AACE 2 Education Courses at BUTTERWORTH was found to be worthwhile and of great benefit to the career development of the members involved.

ANNEX B TO
 AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COMPANY 5700/11
 DATED 14 SEP 81

OFFENCES DEALT WITH BY OC B COY 5/7 RAR
AT BUTTERWORTH

Serial (a)	Rank (b)	Name (c)	Date (d)	Charge (e)	Award (f)
			17 Aug 81	WOWS AWOL	\$20 7 Days CB
			2 Jul 81	WOWS Neglect (UD)	\$20 14 Days CB
			2 Jul 81	WOWS Acting as sentinal asleep on post	Severe Reprimand
			8 Jun 81	WOWS Loss ID Card	Severe Reprimand
			31 Aug 81	WOWS Failing to appear at place of parade	\$40
			28 Aug 81	WOWS Failing to appear at place of parade	\$40 5 Days CB
			28 Aug 81	WOWS Failing to appear at place of parade	\$40 5 Days CB
			31 Aug 81	WOWS Failing to appear at place of parade	\$40
			31 Aug 81	WOWS Failing to appear at place of parade	\$40
			28 Aug 81	Smoking Marijuana	\$40 14 Days Detention
			20 Jul 81	WOWS Failing to appear at place of parade	\$20 4 Days CB

REPORT OF SPECIAL INVESTIGATION BRANCH ENQUIRIES
INVOLVING MEMBERS OF B COY 5/7 RAR

Serial (a)	SIB Case No. (b)	Particulars of Offence/Enquiry (c)
1.	SIB/BUT/12/81 3 Jun 81	<u>ALLEGED LOSS/THEFT</u> [REDACTED], B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that between 2230 and 2300 hrs 2 Jun 81, his wallet valued at \$16.00 and which contained \$480.00 in banknotes and personal papers, was either removed from the waistband of his shorts at a barbecue in the Rifle Coy lines, Air Base Butterworth, or was misplaced by himself. No offender detected this enquiry. Considered likely that property was dropped by complainant and subsequently 'found' by outgoing member of previous rifle company.
2.	SIB/BUT/13/81 18 Jun 81	<u>DRUG ABUSE</u> The CSM, B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that about 1600 hrs on 18 Jun 81, a hypodermic syringe, a metal spoon and a plastic phial containing a substance later found to be heroin, had been found in a wooden wardrobe in the accommodation lines of B Coy 5/7 RAR. Enquiries conducted in conjunction with HQ 2 MP FL (SIB) established offender this enquiry to be: [REDACTED] B Coy 5/7 RAR Air Base Butterworth
3.	SIB/BUT/14/81 24 Jun 81	<u>MALICIOUS DAMAGE</u> [REDACTED], customs officer of Butterworth Customs Office, reported that about 0215 hrs on 24 Jun 81 on the Alor Star road near Air Base Butterworth, a male Caucasian believed to be an Australian soldier, had thrown an object at his private motor vehicle, causing the front windscreen to shatter. It was later established that cost of windscreen replacement was M\$860.00 Offender: [REDACTED] B Coy 5/7 RAR Air Base Butterworth
4.	SIB/BUT/15/81 3 Jul 81	<u>ALLEGED THEFT</u> [REDACTED], B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that between 0200 and 0620 hrs on 3 Jul 81, \$M 78.00 in banknotes was removed from his wallet which he had left in his shorts pocket in his unsecured barrack room on the floor, in the OR's accommodation lines, Australian Rifle Company, Air Base Butterworth. No offender detected this enquiry.
		/5. SIB/BUT/16/81

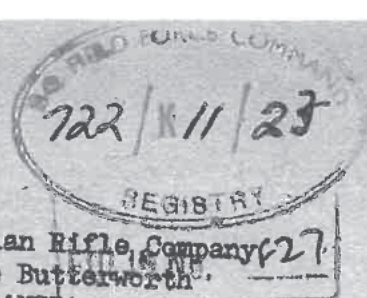
(a)	(b)	(c)
5.	SIB/BUT/16/81 7 Jul 81	<p><u>ALLEGED ASSAULT WITH DEADLY WEAPON</u></p> <p>██████████ of B Coy 5/7 RAR reported that about 0130 hrs on 7 Jul 81, whilst outside the Shangri-La Pub, Bagan Ajam, Butterworth, he had been punched in the face and threatened with a knife by an unknown Malaysian male believed to be of Chinese race.</p> <p>This enquiry conducted in conjunction with Malaysian Police CIB, Butterworth. No offender detected.</p>
6.	SIB/BUT/17/81 9 Jul 81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>██████████, B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that between 0330 and 0600 hrs on 9 Jul 81, whilst sleeping in the ferry terminus, Penang, his wallet was removed from his trousers pocket which had been cut open with a sharp instrument. \$M630.00 in banknotes was then allegedly removed from the wallet which was then replaced in the pocket.</p> <p>This enquiry conducted in conjunction with Malaysian Police CIB, Butterworth. No offender detected.</p>
7.	SIB/BUT/18/81 12 Jul 81	<p><u>DRUG ABUSE</u></p> <p>On 12 Jul 81 about 1630 hrs, the Senior Police Officer, reported that during an interview with a member of B Coy 5/7 RAR, the member had admitted to travelling from Butterworth to Penang with the intention of purchasing marijuana. The member also admitted to smoking the drug on about nine previous occasions in Australia.</p> <p>Offender: ██████████</p> <p>B Coy 5/7 RAR Air Base Butterworth</p>
8.	SIB/BUT/19/81 10 Aug 81	<p><u>ALLEGED ASSAULT & ROBBERY</u></p> <p>On 10 Aug 81 the complainants, ██████████ and ██████████, B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that on 4 Aug 81 whilst on leave in Singapore, they were punched in the face and body by a group of Asian males. A pair of boots valued at \$M25.00 and \$M30.00 in banknotes were taken from ██████████ during the attack. Both members were later treated at Woodlands NZ Hospital, Singapore.</p> <p>No offenders detected this enquiry.</p>
9.	SIB/BUT/20/81 11 Aug 81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>On 11 Aug 81, ██████████ of B Coy 5/7 RAR reported that during the period 1030 to 1130 hrs 8 Aug 81 his Hanimex 110F instamatic-type camera, valued at \$M100.00 was removed from the top of his bed in his unsecured barrack room in the ORs' accommodation lines, Rifle Coy, Air Base Butterworth.</p> <p>No offender detected this enquiry.</p>
10.	SIB/BUT/21/81 11 Aug 81	<p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>On 11 Aug 81, ██████████ of B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that between 0845 and 1545 hrs on 10 Aug 81, ██████████</p> <p style="text-align: right;">/\$M100.000</p>

(a)	(b)	(c)
11.	SIB/BUT/22/81 19 Aug 81	<p>\$M100.00 in banknotes had been removed from his secured wardrobe in the ORs accommodation lines, Rifle Coy, Air Base Butterworth.</p> <p>No offender detected this enquiry.</p> <p><u>ALLEGED THEFT</u></p> <p>On 19 Aug 81, [REDACTED] of B Coy 5/7 RAR, reported that between 1600 hrs 5 Aug 81 and 1400 hrs on 19 Aug 81 a quantity of jewellery valued totally at 3,600 Thai baht, had been removed from his secured wardrobe. About 0700 hrs on 20 Aug 81 the jewellery items were recovered from the SAL block of the Rifle Coy lines by a piquet member who stated that he had found them behind a toilet cistern.</p> <p>No offender detected this enquiry.</p>

MEDICAL SUMMARY

1. Sick parade summary is as follows:
 - a. Seen by MO 4 RAAF Hosp - 191
 - b. Seen by CAP - 241
 - c. Seen by Dental Flight - 17
2. Twenty-two members were hospitalized during the tour for the following reasons:
 - a. Sport associated injuries - 5
 - b. Minor Surgical - 1
 - c. Major Surgical - 1
 - d. Medical - 15
3. A breakdown of medical complaints is as follows:
 - a. Fractures (nose) - 1
 - b. Sprains - 51
 - c. Rashes - 109
 - d. Gastric related conditions- 28
 - e. Ear infections - 7
 - f. Eye infections - 1
 - g. Throat infection - 1
 - h. URTI - 18
 - i. NSU - 13
 - j. Gonorrhœa - 11
 - k. Miscellaneous - 274
4. The largest medical problems encountered were skin rashes and skin infections which were due to the change in climate on arrival and during field exercises.
5. Venereal disease is still very prevalent on Penang and Bangkok but the educational programme (lectures, films and informal discussion) have made all members of the company aware of the diseases, causes and prevention; thus resulting in a low VD rate.

0PS
RESTRICTED



In Reply Quote: R723-1-1

Telephone: 331666 Ext 785

Australian Rifle Company 727
Air Base Butterworth
WEST MALAYSIA

8 Dec 81

See Distribution List

END OF TOUR REPORT
B COMPANY 6 RAR
9 SEP TO 9 DEC 81

- References:
- A. HQ FF Comd Staff Instr 2/79 dated 6 Jul 79
 - B. AS Rifle Company Standing Orders
 - C. AS Rifle Company 4-1-1 dated 20 Oct 81
 - D. 4/81 ADEX Report dated 7 Oct 81 (Notal)

INTRODUCTION

General

1. B Coy 6 RAR, and attachments, assumed duty, as the AS Rifle Company Butterworth, on 9 Sep 81. A composite company from 1 RAR and other 3 BDE Units will relieve B Coy on 9 Dec 81.

Scope of Report

2. This report is intended to summarize the important aspects of the tour and to assist future planning and execution. The report covers operational, training, sporting, personnel, community service and logistic aspects.

OPERATIONS

Reconnaissance:

3. The reconnaissance, prior to deployment, is conducted by the OC and CQMS. However the main task of the recon is to organize the company's training. Hence the Trg Offr should accompany the OC on the reconnaissance for the following reasons:

a. the Trg Offr should be used to conduct trg at Pulada. This can best be done if he attends the recon, and

b. of the 10 recon days it takes the CQ only two to get the information he needs. He can organize himself and get the relevant information by being included in the advance party.

key land responsibility.
K, reduce recon party
to only.

RESTRICTED

/HQ FF

RESTRICTED

-2-

HQ FF Comd Briefing

4. The comments made by OC B Coy 5/7 RAR concerning the FF Comd briefing are valid. Future briefings should be given by a previous Company Commander or by OC 55 GL Section during the OC recon.

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

this is done.

5. The QRF was maintained at all times in accordance with Reference B. The system was practiced daily, by day and night, and a satisfactory standard was maintained.

6. Three QRF sections, each of one CPL and six PTE were maintained. Each section had the following tasks:

- a. QRF 1 : 24 hour standby,
- b. QRF 2 : Reserve QRF, replace QRF 1 on callout, and
- c. QRF 3 : Moving security piquet in the coy lines from 1500 hours to 0800 hours daily.

7. QRF 3, the security piquet, is essential as it minimizes theft from the coy lines.

8. QRF 1 and QRF 2 can become boring for those soldiers involved. They are confined to the QRF room or the lines for the duration of their duty. This can be particularly wearisome over a long period of QRF duties. To overcome the problem it is recommended that QRF 1 and QRF 2 participate in normal platoon trg, within the Air Base, during their period of duty. Some trg suggestions are:

- a. signal and first aid courses etc,
- b. building and vehicle search trg,
- c. house to house fighting within the lines,
- d. bomb search, and
- e. sports, particularly using the pool.

Real Incidents

9. No real incidents occurred during the tour. The company provided a security piquet on the wreckage of a crashed Mirage from 29 Oct to 5 Nov 81. The tasks included:

- a. a three man piquet on the recovery boat above the wreckage site from 1600 hours to 0800 hours daily,

/b.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-3-

- b. a two man piquet to provide security for recovered wreckage on the beach, and
- c. a section to search the beach area for wreckage on 31 Oct 81.

QRF Training

10. Security training was conducted in Australia prior to deployment. The training was continued in Butterworth in the following ways:
- a. each platoon spent one day during the familiarization week being briefed on the QRF,
 - b. each platoon conducted a two day security exercise in the second week of the tour, and
 - c. the coy participated on the 4/81 ADEX.
11. Security training in Australia should culminate with a three day exercise at a RAAF base. It was found that the best trg for the QRF was to do the job. An exercise at a RAAF base before deploying to Butterworth would better equip the coy for the tasks once in Butterworth.

12. The Ground Defence Squadron should be used more to assist with QRF and security trg. They are generally more familiar with the security requirement and have developed some useful techniques/doctrine on the subject.

QRF Equipment

13. The QRF vehicle searchlight is to be replaced in the near future. The RAAF will mount two moveable sealed beam spotlights powered by the vehicle battery.

14. The company should be issued 10 SUIT sights for the QRF. This would greatly enhance the night searching capability.

Ammunition Security

15. Reference C is an investigation into the loss of two rounds of 7.62mm ammunition. As a result of this investigation the following amendment to Standing Orders for the QRF Commander, Annex B paragraph 3a, was made:

- a. Check, account for and sign for the ready reserve ammunition from the coy Duty Room. Each round is to be counted individually.

/As

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-4-

16. As a result of this investigation it is further recommended that:

- a. the GRF ammunition be fired and replaced monthly,
- b. only 18 rounds be placed in magazines, and
- c. magazines be replaced monthly.

Communications

17. HF communications between Butterworth and the platoon trg at Pulada were generally poor. Attempts to rectify the problem achieved little results.

18. A HF link between Butterworth and Enoggera was attempted. However all attempts to establish communications failed.

TRAINING

General

19. The following training was conducted during the tour by each platoon:

- a. familiarization trg - 4 days,
- b. minor tactics trg at Kulim - 3 days,
- c. survival trg - 1 day,
- d. first aid course - 3 days,
- e. communications course - 4 days,
- f. watermanship trg - 4 days,
- g. 25m range practices - 3 days,
- h. trg at the Malaysian Combat Trg School (PULADA),
- i. security trg - 2 days,
- j. education course for AACE 2, and
- k. Air Defence Exercise (ADEX) - 4 days.

20. Trg was aimed at improving individual skills and developing section and platoon expertise.

/Familiarization

RESTRICTED

Familiarization Trg

21. Familiarization trg, organized by 65 GL Section, was conducted during the first week. The training included security trg, Air Base orientation and a tour of Penang. The company provided two escorts, with previous experience in Butterworth, to conduct the Penang tour. Future companies will need to do the same.

Kulim IMF Trg

22. The three days trg at Kulim Rubber Estate was used to prepare platoons for PL MA. Generally the trg was valuable and the platoons became aware of the problems associated with the new environment. The area is private property and strict adherence to rules for its use must be enforced.

23. The following points may assist future planning:

- a. although trg in a rubber plantation is valuable, the jungle bordering the plantation should also be used,
- b. trg should concentrate on individual trg eg, fire and movement, observation and target identification, and
- c. the programme should be conducted by the platoon commanders.

Survival Trg

24. Because of other commitments the Ground Defence Squadron was only able to conduct a one day survival course for each platoon. This consisted of teaching soldiers how to live off the land in the jungle.

25. More use should be made of the Squadron to teach this subject. A four to five day course would be appropriate if it can be fitted in. Information concerning survival trg is available during the OC recon. However even one day's trg was valuable and well worth the effort.

First Aid Course

26. This course was conducted during a period when each platoon was on QRF. The course was well planned and conducted. It was of value to most soldiers, although a fair percentage had done a first aid course before.

27. The problem with running the course during a QRF period is that some soldiers are not available because of QRF duties. The course should have been run for two days for each section, rather than by platoons.

/Communications

65 GL & Coy
land to
organize
during recon

RESTRICTED

-6-

Communications Course

28. The course concentrated on communications in the jungle and the various expedient methods used. As such it was new for most soldiers and a worthwhile experience.

29. Again this course would be more effective if it were conducted by sections over a shorter period.

Watermanship Training

30. Watermanship trg was conducted over a four day period for each platoon at Merdeka Beach. This trg proved to be most enjoyable and useful as most soldiers found the subject new. The following points should be considered:

- a. watermanship trg should be conducted at the end of the tour because it is different and enjoyable,
- b. the outboard motors proved unreliable. As soon as possible on arrival the motors should be checked and serviced by qualified mechanics,
- c. because there are only two assault boats about half the platoon are not occupied at any one time. There is a need for concurrent trg, and
- d. qualified pioneers are needed for the trg.

Range Practices

31. The 25m Range, on the Base, was not used during the first six weeks of the tour because it was under repair. When it did become available for use it was subsequently heavily booked. All platoons spent at least three days on the range firing SA practices and 84mm sub-calibre device. The range is particularly useful for conducting competition shoots such as :

- a. 84mm sub-calibre shoot,
- b. combat pistol shoot, and
- c. strip-assemble-shoot practices.

32. Although PULADA provides excellent range facilities, consideration should be given to using all available ranges in the Butterworth vicinity. By using, for example Sungai Petani (Baghdad Classification Range), the classification range at PULADA need not be used, hence an extra day at more interesting trg becomes available. Use of other ranges also will provide interest for the company as well as improving their shooting for the more demanding ranges at PULADA.

/Training

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-7-

Training AT PULADA

33. PULADA provided an excellent opportunity for the platoons to train in close country and to improve their weapon skills. It is the most valuable trg done while in Malaysia and proved to be beneficial to all who participated. The co-operation of the Malaysian Army Staff was excellent and contributed markedly to the success of our trg.

34. The three day exercise was valuable and enjoyed by all. The company used Area 29 which is mostly secondary jungle. The possibility of using another area with more primary jungle should be looked into.

35. The range practices at PULADA provided excellent trg. The company had ample ammunition, realistic field ranges and the opportunity to fire weapons not usually fired by rifle companies in Australia.

36. All platoon commanders agreed, that the only thing wrong with trg at PULADA was that it was too short. If the time spent at PULADA cannot be increased then it is recommended that the available time be used as follows:

- a. day one to day seven inclusive - deploy to PULADA, jungle trg exercise,
- b. day eight - Sneaker Range, Snap Range, Bunker Aslt (Wombat Range), and night ambush,
- c. day nine - Tracker Dog Demonstration, Section and Platoon Attack, and
- d. day ten - HEAT range including night firing with MAW illum and LAW firing.

37. Classification shoots can be done at Sungai Petani (see para 32). The ETR (SMR range), and Grenade Range should be deleted as they can be done in Australia. Maximum time should be spent using those facilities not available in Australia.

38. The CSM and Trg Offr should conduct the first platoon through training at PULADA. The remaining two platoons can then be conducted through by the Trg Offr with the assistance of platoon staff. This is the best use of the Trg Offr, and can best happen this way if he attends the recon.

Security Training

39. Each platoon conducted a two day security exercise after the familiarization week and before the Air Defence Exercise (ADEX). This period was most useful in consolidating what had been learnt in the previous week and in preparing for the ADEX.

/AACE 2

RESTRICTED

Copy letter to responsible to Trg Coy. who is this trg offr level.

RESTRICTED

-8-

AACE Education Course

40. A report on the education course is at Annex A. Generally the course achieved excellent results and maintained training interest throughout the tour.

Air Defence Exercise (ADEX)

41. The RAAF/RMAF conducted the 4/81 ADEX from 21 Sep to 24 Sep 81. The company was involved in the exercise in providing ground defence for the Air Base.

42. From the company's point of view the exercise was disappointing. Reference D is the company's report presented at the conclusion of the exercise. A copy of this report will be made available to the in-coming company commander.

Tracking Course - 1 RNZIR

43. The company was able to send one CPL and one SGT to the 1 RNZIR Tracking Course conducted in Johore. The SGT was used as an instructor on the course and the CPL was a student. Both enjoyed the course and found it most valuable. Future contact with 1 RNZIR will be of benefit to the company.

SPORT

Physical Training

44. The company conducted regular company and platoon PT under the supervision of the attached PTI. A company PT programme is essential in the first few weeks to ensure proper acclimatization.

Company Sports Days

45. During the tour, three days were allocated for inter platoon sports. This proved to be a successful idea as it provided a bit of fun and brought the company together after being dispersed either at PULADA or on tour.

46. These days should be continued and as a minimum conducted in the second week of the tour and after PULADA trg is complete.

Competition Sport

47. The company was not as successful in competition sport with the RAAF as its ability should have allowed. The major problem was sports finals conflicting with trg requirements. This meant that only one platoon was available to play most sports finals. This applied particularly to Rugby and Basketball.

/During

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-9-

48. During the OC recon for future companies the OC should contact the various sports representatives to arrange a sports programme that will not conflict entirely with trg commitments.

Rugby Union

49. The company came fourth in the Rugby Union competition. The problem outlined in paragraph 47 being our downfall. In the Australian Forces North Team (Combined Services Team) the company provided seven members, five of whom played for the team for all games against Malaysia, Singapore etc. An obvious indication that we were beaten by the "dates" in the local competition. PTE Heyman was voted man of the series.

Australian Rules

50. The company lost the Australian Rules Best-of-Three Trophy. The company allowed the RAAF to change dates to ensure a better competition by allowing the best RAAF Team possible to participate. Rugby Officials please note.

Basketball

51. The company team made the finals in the Basketball competition. However were defeated in the first semi-final by the team who eventually became premiers. Again it is the problem of having only one platoon to provide all the company teams.

Around-Penang-Relay

52. The relay provided an exciting day for those who participated. The lead changed on several occasions, however the RAAF showed their better form beating the company by eleven minutes. Evidently this is the closest an Army team has come in a long time.

Soft Ball

53. The company played only one game of social soft ball, beating the RAAF team by one point.

Golf

54. A five man team participated in the inter unit Golf competition over three days. The more experienced RAAF unit teams easily outclassed the company players.

Conclusion

55. The various sports competitions were enjoyed by all. They provided interest and helped maintain the company's physical fitness. The social aspects were also important as they gave the soldiers the opportunity to meet RAAF personnel.

/The

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-10-

56. The following points should be considered in relation to sport:

- a. a programme needs to be decided during the OC recon to minimize clashes of dates with other trg commitments,
- b. time needs to be allocated from other trg to properly prepare and train for all the various sports,
- c. sports representatives need to be identified before departing Australia, and
- d. sports ability/preference needs to be identified for each company member before departing Australia.

PERSONNEL

Documentation

Unit problem

57. Passports. The majority of time taken on pre-embarkation administration involved processing passport applications. ✓ Few members had a passport (about 25 percent) and the other 75 percent were not received until two days prior to the main body departing. Applications should be lodged as soon as possible to avoid this hold-up.

58. AAB 83/AAF A406. POR for members' were raised in Enoggera for any outstanding matters. Few POR have been received but it is anticipated these will be available when the company returns. Leave applications were compiled prior to departure. This greatly reduced the administration of leave while in Butterworth. Five soldiers have been approved to take leave direct from Butterworth. Documentary evidence of purchase of a return ticket has been sighted.

Medical and Dental

59. A medical summary is attached at Annex B.

Leave

60. During the tour soldiers had the opportunity to take stand-down in Singapore for three days after training at PULADA. Tours were organized to Bangkok (eight days) and Haadyai (three days). Most soldiers took the opportunity to travel and the tours were enjoyed by all. The tours not only gave soldiers a break from trg but also gave them the opportunity to visit places not normally available to them. The tours were well organized and conducted by Mr Peter Lim, a local travel agent.

61. Local leave was taken mainly in Penang and Butterworth. Although, as time went on, few ventured past the BC Bar or Super Pub.

/Visits

RESTRICTED

Visits

62. The company was visited by:
- ✓ a. LTCOL A. I. Mattay, CO 6 RAR, from 21 Sep to 1 Oct 81, and
 - ✓ b. Air Commodore Reid, Principal Air Chaplain, 10 Nov 81.

Drugs

63. There were no incidents of drug abuse during the tour.
- ✓ 64. The company conducted a drug awareness programme before departure. The programme included:
- a. lectures by Military Police, Queensland Police and the Federal Police, and
 - b. a demonstration by the Customs Department of their drug detecting dogs.
65. However drugs of all types are freely and cheaply available in Penang. A few soldiers were offered drugs mainly by trishaw drivers who they later reported to the civil or military police.
66. The following information may be of use to future companies:
- a. the RAAF SP and MP detachment operate an effective informer system concerning drugs,
 - b. most trishaw drivers offering drugs are both dealers and police informers. They win both ways, and
 - c. the penalties for possession are harsh and are almost always enforced.

Early Return To Australia

67. The following personnel were returned to Australia:



68. as company pay rep.

Discipline

69. Summaries of SIS reports are attached at Annex C. A summary of offences dealt with by OC B Coy 6 RAR is at Annex D. It is of

/interest

RESTRICTED

-12-

interest to note that five out of the eight offences occurred in the last month of the tour. Towards the end of the tour, when the majority of tours and trg are finished, morale will drop. Consequently, the training programme for the last month must be busy and interesting to prevent a decline in morale and hence discipline.

RACMP Support

70. There is one RACMP SGT, [REDACTED], posted to the RAAF Police and Security Flight. The company had two CPL attached to it for the tour. Both CPL worked with [REDACTED] from the RAAF SP Office during the tour.

71. [REDACTED] has been particularly helpful in all aspects of the company's activities. From escort duties, to drug lectures, to SIS investigations he has given excellent support.

72. It is suggested for future companies that the two RACMP CPL be closely vetted. This is not a reflection on the two attached to the present company but is an observation to assist future companies. An inexperienced CPL in Butterworth will not be able to provide the support that the company requires.

73. The company requires CPL experienced in SIS work and soldiering generally. They need to be mature and able to relate to the younger more inexperienced soldiers in the company. ✓

Postal

74. No complaints were received concerning mail being tampered with as has occurred with other companies.

75. Generally the mail system from Australia has been satisfactory, taking about four to five days to reach Butterworth. Mail from Butterworth to Australia is another problem. It can take anything from one week to three weeks to reach its destination. The solution is to collect company mail and deliver it to the Post Office in Butterworth, rather than go through the Base Post Office.

Wet Canteen

76. The company operated the wet canteen in the company lines on taking over. The bar was operated by an elected committee and an appointed supervising officer. No difficulties were experienced in the running of the bar, and no discipline problems arose from it. The wet canteen is a valuable recreational asset and should be continued.

Pay and Allowances

77. There have been no problems concerning pay and allowances.

/Manning

RESTRICTED

This suggestion is not always practical. How does a CPL gain experience if he is not given tasks like this?

Manning For Attachments

78. Reference A details the manning for the Rifle Company. The following personnel in Reference A are essential:

- a. two medical orderlies,
- b. one ammunition storeman,
- c. one fitter armourer,
- d. one PTI,
- e. trg offr,
- f. education offr, and
- g. five drivers (T109) and one CPL TPT Supervisor. ✓

79. The following are recommended changes:

- ✓ a. there is only need for one RAE tradesman who must be a carpenter,
- ✓ b. both MP are essential, however, both must be experienced in investigations,
- ✓ c. three veh mech are needed, one at PULADA and the remaining two at Butterworth. This is because of the difficulties in keeping veh on the road,
- ✓ d. three qualified signallers are needed to maintain comms between PULADA and Butterworth,
- ✓ e. three cooks are needed to support the company at Butterworth as well as at PULADA. The rank structure should be one CPL and two PTE, and
- f. because there is a pay each week, the normal fortnightly pay and the allowances on the off pay week, consideration should be given to two pay rep.

Rations and Quarters

80. The quality and quantity of meals in all messes is good.

81. It is not intended to elaborate on the old favourites of sub standard accomadation and R and Q charges in this report.

82. Maintanance of the buildings in the company area is still a problem. However a M\$7,000.00 work programme has been proposed and approval for it is being sought.

/The

RESTRICTED

-14-

83. The company carried out minor repair and maintainance tasks including:

- a. repainting the bar,
- b. painting the QRF room, and
- c. refurbishing the Bar-B-Q area.

84. These tasks should continue as it employs the QRF 2 Section and gives the soldiers a bit more pride in their own accomadation.

Transport

85. Presently the company has two landcruisers and six trucks. One landcruiser is beyond repair and is due to be replaced by a Hi-Ace vehicle soon. Most vehicles are not in good condition. It has been due to constant mechanical attention that they continue on task.

86. There were no vehicle accidents during the tour apart from a few mirrors being damaged. This is a good effort by all drivers considering the state of the vehicles, driving conditions and the total mileage done ie 34,800 km.

Weapons

87. All weapons at Butterworth have been inspected and are in good condition.

88. The only problem encountered so far is the EO incident reported previously.

COMMUNITY SERVICE

89. The company continued to support Saint Josephs Orphanage. No work was done for the Cheshire Home.

90. The support included:

- a. a donation of approx M\$160.00 for the purchase of shoes,
- b. a donation of approx M\$40.00 for the purchase of food,
- c. a clothing donation,
- d. minor repairs to the orphanage kitchen, and
- e. an outing for the children conducted by 5 PL.

/The

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-15-

91. The company collected money for the orphanage by donating the small change when being paid the Short Term Duty Overseas Allowance.

SUPPORT

92. The support provided by the staff at PULADA and 65 GL Section significantly contributed towards the success of the tour.

CONCLUSION

93. The tour has provided a unique opportunity for all ranks to do something different to routine trg. All have benefited from a successful and rewarding tour.



(R. S. T. ELMS)
Major
Officer Commanding

- Annexes: A. Education Course Report
B. Medical Summary
C. Police Incident Summary
D. Offences

Distribution

HQ FF Comd (3)

QC RAAF Butterworth

For Information

1 DIV (2)

6 BDE

6 RAR

65 GL Section (2)

File

Spare

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX A TO
RIFLE COY
DATED 2 DEC 81

EDUCATION COURSE REPORT

General

1. During the tour, an opportunity was given to all soldiers in the company to complete AACE 2 examinations. Subjects offered were English, Arithmetic, Social Studies and Science. Four courses were conducted for Arithmetic and three for each of the other subjects.

Summary of Results

2. A total of 41 soldiers sat for a total of 99 examinations. 35 soldiers were fully qualified for AACE 2 and 6 partly qualified. Details are as follows:

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Pass</u>	<u>Failed</u>
English	24	2
Arithmetic	33	3
Social Studies	14	Nil
Science	23	Nil
<u>Totals</u>	94	5

Administration

3. The education instruction was prepared prior to departure, and issued on arrival at Butterworth. All company members who had not been credited with AACE 2 were interviewed and given the opportunity to participate. Only a small number declined the offer. All writing material and text books were provided for the students, and the majority of classes were conducted, in the air-conditioned classroom, at the RAAF Education Centre.

Difficulties Experienced

4. The series of courses ran smoothly thanks to the co-operation of participants and the staff of the RAAF Education Centre. There were no major difficulties experienced. Towards the end of the tour a few soldiers withdrew from the course because of other commitments. This was a disappointing aspect, however the courses were voluntary.

Conduct

5. The course was conducted in subject packages for each platoon during the QRF duties. Consequently soldiers were not always available for other training or duties. This "loss" should be accepted as the education course provides a unique opportunity for soldiers to advance themselves.

/Results

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

A2

Results

6. A schedule of results will be forwarded from the Education Section, Enoggera, to DAE Canberra on return of the company. Official results will be forwarded in due course for inclusion in the soldiers' record.

Conclusion

7. The results achieved were excellent, and a good proportion of the company is now qualified at AACE 2 level. Conducting education courses at Butterworth is worthwhile and is of great benefit to the career development of the soldiers concerned.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX B TO
RIFLE COY
DATED 8 DEC 81

MEDICAL SUMMARY

1. Sick Parade summary is as follows:
 - a. Seen by MO 4 RAAF Hospital - 208,
 - b. Seen by CAP - 195, and
 - c. Seen by Dental Flight - Six.
2. Twenty members were hospitalized during the tour for the following reasons:
 - a. Sporting injuries - three,
 - b. Minor Surgery - three, and
 - c. Medical - 14.
3. A breakdown of medical complaints is as follows:
 - a. Fractures - five
 - b. Sprains - 12
 - c. Rashes - 52
 - d. Gastric - 29
 - e. Ear Infection - 10
 - f. Eye Infection - eight
 - g. Throat Infection - 12
 - h. URTI - nine
 - i. NSU - 10
 - j. Syphilis - one
 - k. Gonorrhea - nine
 - l. Miscellaneous - 243.

/The

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

B2

4. The main medical problem was skin rashes and infections. All personnel need to be aware that greater attention has to be paid to personal hygiene in a tropical environment. The 14 medical hospitalizations were caused mainly by heat stroke and heat exhaustion. This again stresses the need for company PT, in the initial weeks, to acclimatize company members .

5. Venereal diseases are prevalent in Penang and Bangkok. Soldiers should be aware of this fact and the methods available to reduce the risk. The following points may be useful:

- a. No punishment should be attached to contracting VD. Rather soldiers should be encouraged to report the disease and have it treated. Reference B paragraph 24g should therefore be amended.
- b. Contraceptives should be freely available from the orderly room, platoon office, QRF room and the company bar.

6. The company conducted a blood test 10 days before departure. All tests proved negative. All VD cases were treated and were cured before returning to Australia. Those personnel who contracted VD will be notified to 1 MIL HOSP on return for any follow up action if necessary.

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX C TO
RIFLE COY
DATED 8 DEC 81

POLICE INCIDENT SUMMARY

Serial	Date/Time	Incident/Occurrence	Remarks
1.	0020 18 Sep 81	<u>Alleged Robbery</u> [REDACTED] reported he had been assaulted by a group of persons on the roadside near Air Base Butterworth, and his wristwatch was removed. [REDACTED] received multiple cuts and abrasions to his upper body.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/24/81 Watch was later recovered at the Casualty Ward.
2.	1600 20 Sep 81	<u>Alleged Theft</u> [REDACTED] reported his wallet, containing M\$50.00, was removed from his sandals whilst he was swimming at the base pool.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/24/81
3.	0100 6 Oct 81	<u>Alleged Incident</u> A Malaysian civilian, [REDACTED] reported to RAAF Police that two Army members had placed rocks on the roadway in the path of his vehicle and a rock was thrown in his direction. Two soldiers; [REDACTED] and [REDACTED] were questioned but denied all knowledge of the incident.	Attempts were made to locate [REDACTED] for further interviews by the Military Police, but were unsuccessful. No disciplinary action taken.
4.	1800 11 Oct 81	<u>Alleged Loss/Theft</u> [REDACTED] reported his wallet containing M\$130.00, was removed from his pocket whilst at the Belview Hotel Penang.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/26/81

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

02

Serial	Date/Time	Incident/Occurrence	Remarks
5.	1525 12 Oct 81	<u>Loss/Theft Personal Effects</u> <u>RAAF CHARTER</u> [REDACTED] had an overnight bag taken by a stewardess on RAAF flight BC439, and secured at rear of aircraft. The bag was not unloaded at Butterworth and was taken back to Australia. The bag was located and returned to [REDACTED] but some items were missing.	RAAF Police Report 29/81
6.	0800 27 Oct 81	<u>Alleged Theft</u> [REDACTED] reported his travelling bag snatched by two asian males on a motorcycle in Chinia St. Penang. The bag contained personal possessions to the value of M\$282.00.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/27/81
7.	1500 3 Nov 81	<u>Alleged Theft</u> [REDACTED] reported his wallet containing his identity card and locker key was stolen from his sand-shoes at the base swimming pool.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/28/81
8.	0900 16 Nov 81	<u>Alleged Theft</u> Money to the value of M\$2,100.00 and a ring valued at M\$316.00 were stolen from a platoon security tin. The tin was taken to Pulada and the money was last seen just prior to the road party leaving Pulada for Butterworth. The loss was not noticed for a week as members who secured their money were in Singapore on leave.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/29/81

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

03


Serial	Date/Time	Incident/Occurrence	Remarks
9.	1600 22 Nov 81	<u>Alleged Theft</u> [REDACTED] reported his wallet, containing M\$31.00, was removed from his travel- ling bag at the base swimming pool.	SIS Investigation SIS/BUT/30/81

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

ANNEX D TO
RIFLE COY
DATED 8 DEC 81

OFFENCES

Serial	Date	Name	Offence	Punishment
1.	12 Sep 81		Absent Without Leave	7 Days CB
2.	24 Sep 81		Neglect To The Prejudice (UD)	7 Days CB \$20.00 Fine
3.	14 Oct 81		Conduct To The Prejudice	Severe Reprimand \$40.00 Fine
4.	16 Nov 81		Using Insubordinate Language To His Superior Officer	7 Days CB
5.	16 Nov 81		Neglect To The Prejudice	5 Days CB
6.	21 Nov 81		Absent Without Leave	14 Days CB
7.	23 Nov 81		Absent Without Leave	10 Days CB
8.	23 Nov 81		Absent Without Leave	10 Days CB

RESTRICTED

Hq FF Comd

~~CONFIDENTIAL~~
RESTRICTED

Copy 2 of 19

(48)

In Reply Please Quote: R723-1-1

Australian Rifle Company
Air Base Butterworth
WEST MALAYSIA

Telephone: Ext 785

13 May 82

See Distribution List

END OF TOUR REPORT
D COMPANY 2/4 RAR
16 FEB TO 19 MAY 82

- References:
- A. HQ FF COMD Staff Instruction 2/79 dated 6 Jul 79
 - B. AS Rifle Company Standing Orders
 - C. AS Rifle Company Combined Exercise Report Exercise Haringaroo III, dated 29 Apr 82
 - D. Australian Rifle Company R478-1-1 dated 22 Apr 82
 - E. Australian Rifle Company R722-2-1
17 Mar 82

INTRODUCTION

General

1. D Coy 2/4 RAR assumed duty as the Australian Rifle Company BUTTERWORTH on 16 Feb 82 and will be relieved by B Coy 8/9 RAR on 20 May 82.
2. This report contains comments on operational training, personnel and logistic aspects of the tour and is submitted as directed in Reference A.

OPERATIONS

Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

3. Throughout the tour a platoon was constantly detailed as the QRF Platoon and they maintained a QRF Section, a standby QRF section and a reserve section. No real incidents occurred during the tour. Practice QRF responses were conducted to Key Points twice daily with effective results.
4. It is considered essential that platoon training continues to be conducted whilst platoons are on QRF otherwise soldiers become bored and valuable training time is wasted.

Air Defence Exercise (ADEX)

5. During the period 22 - 25 Feb 82, the company participated in an ADEX to test both air and ground elements against enemy infiltration and attack. This exercise involved the whole company on a 24 hours a day basis and required numerous section and platoon tasks and one company level task.

6. The OC's report to CO Base Squadron on the exercise and the subsequent report raised by the senior ground defence officer are attached as Annex A and B.

RESTRICTED

/QRF Training

RESTRICTED

ORF Training

7. Training in security duties pertaining to the Army responsibilities in Butterworth was conducted prior to deployment from Australia. This was valuable however a lot of guess work was involved in planning and conducting this training.
8. The first platoon commander to conduct duties with the company was tasked to write a paper on these activities and this paper is attached at Annex C.

Communications.

9. Long range communications proved to be a constant problem during the tour. An attempt was made to maintain a HF radio link for one exercise and this was inconsistent.
10. An EIS inspection was conducted on all radio equipment after this exercise and two of the three HF radios were grounded and returned to Australia. Replacements for these radios were not received for six weeks precluding their use on the combined exercise or for a rear link from Pulada.

TRAINING

PULADA Training

11. The company conducted a twelve day field firing practice at Pulada as half company groups. No jungle warfare was conducted as the company had already been involved in three exercises in close country during the preceeding two months.
12. It is considered more satisfactory to conduct this training in platoon groups, however due to other committments this was not possible for this company.
13. A detailed report on the Pulada training is attached as Annex D.

Combined Exercise

14. A combined exercise was conducted with 19 RMR during the period 21 - 31 Mar 82 and has been covered previously in a seperate report (Reference C).

BUTTERWORTH Training

15. Training was conducted in Butterworth and surrounding areas and included:
 - a. live firing practices using the on base 25 metre range, the 6MIB classification range at SUNGAI PATANI and the SUNGAI DUA classification range on Penang Island,
 - b. UH1H air familiarization training,
 - c. a rapelling course,
 - d. jungle warfare training at the Hobart Camp training area,
 - e. an introduction to survival training,
 - f. basic watermanship training,

RESTRICTED

8. first aid

RESTRICTED

- 3 -

- g. first aid training,
- h. communications training, and
- i. wiring and field defence firing.

16. All training at Butterworth was conducted on an 'as available' basis and all platoons took part in the major activities (serials a, c, d, e, and h), however other activities were conducted as platoon tasks.

Courses

17. Three courses were conducted whilst at Butterworth, these were:
- a. a basic rapelling course (mentioned above),
 - b. a subject one for corporal course, and
 - c. an AACE II education course.
18. Reports of these courses are attached as Annexes E, F and G.

PERSONNEL

Documentation

19. No major problems were encountered with the documentation for movement to Butterworth however some passports were not received until the week prior to departure.

Manning for Attachments

20. Some problems were encountered in filling the company attachments and these continued to cause problems once we reached Malaysia. The most critical of these were:

- a. unavailability of an ammunition storeman, and
- b. lack of T109 drivers.

21. Ammunition Storeman. It is absolutely essential that a trained ammunition storeman be part of the contingent. A soldier just attached to work with the battalion ammunition storeman for a short period prior to embarkation does not achieve the required experience to handle the ammunition account at Butterworth.

22. T109 Drivers. A minimum of six T109 drivers are required to maintain an effective transport section. Also only T109 drivers should be permitted to drive off base as driving conditions in Malaysia are very different to those in Australia and only an experienced driver can handle those with any degree of safety.

Leave

23. Most soldiers were given the opportunity to take one period of leave in Singapore and Bangkok, 116 went to Bangkok and 103 went to Singapore. Soldiers were also granted local leave in Butterworth and Penang.

/Visits
RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

Visits

24. The contingent was visited by WO1 T. Curtis, RSM 2/4 RAR from 29 Mar - 6 Apr 82.

Drugs

25. There were no incidents of drug abuse during the tour. However drugs are freely available in Penang and soldiers were constantly reminded not to get involved.

26. A drug awareness programme was conducted prior to leaving. Australia and this was reinforced with a drug dog demonstration upon arrival. Also constant checks were done on the lines to reinforce again the policy.

Early Return to Australia

27. [REDACTED] was returned to Australia on 17 Apr 82 for compassionate reasons.

Discipline

28. Summaries of SIS Incident Reports and offences dealt with by OC D Coy 2/4 RAR are attached as Annexes H and I respectively.

Postal

29. The major problems with the postal system was the time taken for mail to be delivered to Australia. Mail was sent to Australia using both the Malaysian postal system and by returning C130 aircraft and this mail took between two and six weeks to be delivered.

30. Although this problem was explained to dependants at some length I believe that some system should be arrived at to ensure that mail returned to Australia through the RAAF system be cleared through customs in a more efficient and expedient manner.

Medical and Dental

31. A medical summary is attached as Annex J.

ADMINISTRATION

Pay

32. Generally the pay system worked efficiently, however there were two major areas that did cause some problems, these were:

- a. Allotments In most cases allotments that were made within adequate time before departure from Australia did not come through on the requested date, or when they did come through they were wrong. Many of these allotments had been made as early as Nov/Dec 81. This caused considerable difficulty for those soldiers who were depending on these allotments to provide for dependants and the payment of accounts whilst they were absent.

_____/b.____ Arrival of SVA's

RESTRICTED

- b. Arrival of SVA's. In the first month of the tour the arrival of SVA's was haphazard and made extremely difficult for the company pay rep to complete his job to a satisfactory standard.

33. Cooperation and assistance given by the RAAF cash office was good in all aspects particularly with regard to the payment of platoons at times to fit the training commitments.

Orderly Room

34. Stores. On arrival in country the orderly room was not in good condition for the following reasons:

- a. The typewriter was unserviceable and was long overdue for a normal service,
- b. the paper supplied was not the correct quality for use in a typewriter,
- c. there was a critical shortage of army forms,
- d. there was no copy of AOSI 23/80 (the current leave instruction), and
- e. there were no files pertaining to the rifle company generally in Butterworth.

Community Service

35. The community service organization was used two occasions to provide assistance with money aspects that were causing concern, on both occasions they were efficient and effective in helping to solve the problems.

Noticas

36. The company sent four Noticas Signals during the tour. The noticas system worked well and advice that NOK had been advised was received by the company within 48 hours in all cases.

Administration Assistance

37. The assistance and cooperation given by the RAAF was good and no serious problems were encountered during the tour.

LOGISTICS

Rations and Quarters

38. The company lines are presently being painted and are in fairly good condition. The only problem has been with personal wardrobes and the carpenter in the contingent is being constantly kept busy with repair to these items.

39. Rations were of a high standard throughout the tour.

RESTRICTED/Pho 51

RESTRICTED

Dhobi

40. The dhobi system operated through the CQMS to a civilian contractor has been cancelled following the provision of a company laundry. A system is still available through the company shop as soldiers require it.

Weapons

41. At present there is no adaptor Sub Cal 84mm for training and the Training Aid 21mm requires replacement.

42. Of the three sub calibre devices for the 84mm two are unserviceable and all the 21mm sub cal devices require replacement. Also there are now nil stocks of 66mm launchers.

43. The weapons held by the RQMS are sufficient for back up to company weapons and all are serviceable. Repair parts for weapons are sufficient.

Stores General

44. Consideration should be given to the inclusion of the following in the Rifle Company Account:

- a. an increase in the number of padlocks so that each soldier can be issued with one on arrival in country. A soldier may need as many as three at a time whilst here and it would be beneficial to be able to issue the soldier with one of these,
- b. Burner Units of Range Outfits require replacing, and
- c. A projector 16mm should be on charge for training and recreational films.

45. The RAAF were usually helpful with loan stores and the issue of expense items.

46. Outboard Motors. The three outboard motors are now all serviceable and should remain so if maintained properly after use. They are, however, quite old but the only problem was that they had not been maintained after use. It is recommended that the mechanic travelling with the contingent be trained in the maintenance of outboard motors.

Ammunition

47. Due to the non issue of some types of ammunition and the reduction in issue of other types, the company was unable to take full advantage of the weapon and range facilities available, particularly at PULADA. The ammunition referred to is:

- a. Cart 5.56 ball - 10 000 (entitled 15 000),
- b. Gren Frag M26A1 - 325 (430),
- c. Gren Hand Smoke (all colours) - 12 (30),
- d. Cart 40mm HE M406 - 208 (288),

/(v) Cart 40mm

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- e. Cart 40mm HE Prac M407 - 208 (288),
- f. Cart 84mm HEAT - 7 (10), and
- g. Mine A/Pers M18A1 - 6 (8).

48. The shortfall of Cart 5.56mm ball was a result of an overusage by previous companies. This resulted in the requirement to restructure the planned field firing and range shooting activities at Pulada to the extent that all range practices were fired with 7.62mm ammunition. 5.56mm ammunition was only used for field firing practices. To accomodate this, all range practices for the five weeks prior to PULADA had to be cancelled.

49. Other shortfalls were due to items not being available.

Transport

50. The transport operation was severely restricted by only having four of the six 2½ ton HGS vehicles available for tasking. Although the RAAF transport system provided as much assistance as possible all problems could not be overcome.

51. The two 2¹/₂ ton HGS vehicles that were not available for tasking have been in trade repair since 26 Feb 82. The four vehicles that were operated are all overdue for replacement and are below taskworthy standard. The serviceability and availability of vehicles was severely restricted owing to lack of maintenance prior to 16 Feb 82. Where possible we employed our own mechanic for repairs and servicing and without considerable effort by LCPL Espin and the assistance of the RAAF Transport servicing section, no vehicles would have remained taskworthy for any length of time.

52. All vehicles are approaching the end of their financial allocation for repair and as a result, unroadworthy vehicles are forced to be used. This situation is unacceptable and must be rectified because it detracts from the ability of the rifle company to perform its tasks and in some cases endangers lives.

SPORT

General

53. The company participated in five major sporting activities during its tour of duty in Malaysia. Performance in all was hampered by the availability of personnel owing to training, exercises and stand down commitments:

- a. Rugby League. The company entered a team in the Rugby League competition. The team performed admirably by making the final four in spite of four forfeitures owing to insufficient numbers being available in camp to field a side. Statistics were - Won four - Lost two - Forfeit four. The Rugby team was defeated in the semi finals.
- b. Australian Rules. Three games were played against a combined RAAF team with the RAAF winning the first two games by the comfortable margin of 25 points, however our team came back in the last game and won, giving the series to RAAF, two games to one.
- c. Hockey. The rifle company organized a round robin competition between RMAF, Handau Malaysian Navy and a combined Army Airborne Team, however after the organization was completed, the Malaysian team withdrew at the last moment which meant the competition could not be played.

/c. Continued

RESTRICTED

c. Continued.

This withdrawal meant the rifle company was left with a debt of \$240M for penants which was agreed would be purchased and presented to all participating players. It is recommended that caution be exercised when organizing anything that involves the Malaysian Forces in Butterworth.

d. Basketball. The rifle company entered a team in the night basketball competition. This team reached the semi final and played well throughout.

e. Round Island Relay. The company competed in a round Penang relay which was to be between Army, RAAF and NZ Forces teams. However the NZ Forces team withdrew and the RAAF won the event by 6 mins.

Conclusion

54. The company performance was creditable when the number of soldiers available at any one time is considered. The participation in sporting activities is enjoyed by all and the spirited encounters with the RAAF are always a highlight of any fixture.

SUPPORT TO LOCAL CHARITY

55. The company also provided judges for the St Johns Ambulance Brigade stretcher bearers competition.

56. The company continued to support to St Josephs Orphanage by donating \$295.87M to that cause.

SUPPORT

57. Support provided by 65 GL Section, the Malaysian Combat Arms School at Pulada and 1RNZIR was excellent and contributed towards the success of the tour.

CONCLUSION

58. All members of the company have gained significant experience from this tour and this experience should assist them in their future careers. The training, facilities and environment have been invaluable for the company.


(R.H. GREVILLE)

Major

Officer Commanding

Annexes: A. OC's Summary of ADEX

B. Report on Ground Defence and Emergency Services Exercise During ADEX 1/82

/Annexes Cont

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- Annexes:
- C. Guidelines for Building Searches
 - D. Pulada Training
 - E. Basic Rapelling Course
 - F. Subject 1 for Corporal Course
 - G. AACCE II Education Course
 - H. Report on SIB Enquiries
 - I. Offence Summary
 - J. Medical Summary

Distribution List

HQ FF Comd (3)

OC RAAF Butterworth

For Information:

1 Div (2)

3 Bde

2/4 RAR

AS Def Attache KUALA LUMPUR

65 GL Sect

File

Float

Spare (10)

RESTRICTED



AUSTRALIAN ARMY

Telephone

ANNEX A TO
Australian Rifle Company R723-1-1
Air Base Butterworth

28 February, 1982

In reply please quote

SUMMARY OF GROUND DEFENCE FROM
RIFLE COMPANY POSITION -
AIR DEFENCE EXERCISE FEBRUARY 1982

INTRODUCTION

1. The Air Defence Exercise conducted from 22 Feb 82 till 25 Feb 82 was the first exercise of this nature conducted by D Coy 2/4 RAR. However it is worth mentioning that it is not the first exercise in a built up area conducted by the coy and with the trend towards conventional warfare, a number of rifle companies will have had experience in this type of environment.

THE COMPANY ORGANIZATION

2. The coy organization was based upon a three platoon structure as all attached personnel were used to support the exercise control and man essential coy commitments out of exercise. That is:

- (a) provide an enemy group,
- (b) continue to run a subject course for promotion to corporal, and
- (c) continue to administer the company, for future activities not the least of which being preparation for a major exercise with 19 RMR.

3. For the exercise the coy was organized into the following groups:

- a. Command Group. This was the Company Commander, the company second in command and the company sergeant major. The task of this group was to man a GDOC duty officer and man a standby command group commander, at the company, in case a group of larger than platoon strength was called out.
- b. Guards. The company was required to provide three guards by day and six by night, for the GDOC and control tower. These guards were drawn from MP and cook attachments and from the rifle platoons themselves.
- c. Platoon Groups. The platoons rotated every six hours through the following cycle:
 - (1) Priority Platoon. Their task was to provide an out of exercise 'live QRF'. They also maintained an exercise QRF 1 and an exercise QRF 2 section. They also provided the company duty officer.

- (2) Standby Platoon. Their task was to be on 5 minutes notice to move to any task that required a platoon sized force (eg cordons, bomb threats, any enemy force of more than 2 - 3).
- (3) Reserve Platoon. Provide sections to replace any QRF section called out. They were also required to become the standby platoon if that force was reacted, plus any other task allocated by the company GDOC duty officer.

4. To maintain all these tasks for an extended period would require very careful management of our resources. ie ensure that soldiers received the required amount of rest and were not tasked unnecessarily.

Role of the Rifle Company

5. The role of the rifle company as detailed to me in my pre-embarkation briefing is to man a quick reaction force to deal with intrusion or any other on base emergency situations.

6. The size of the base precludes the rifle company undertaking defence tasks as this would diminish resources and reduce tactical flexibility to an unacceptable level. Basically the company must wait for something to happen and then react to it.

7. This method of operation relies on every man on the air base being well briefed and alert to what is happening around them. It is the duty of every soldier and airman and indeed locally employed civilians to constantly check the identity of any person he sees that he does not know. It is also their duty to report any suspicious circumstance to the Ground Defence Headquarters. Without this co-operation, it would require at least a complete infantry battalion to provide any security at all.

Major Problems Encountered

8. Communications. Ground defence communications were a major exercise problem in the following areas.

a. Size of the Ground Defence Net. The number of sub stations that it was possible to have on the ground defence net made it unworkable and in many cases dangerous. With the size of the base and the communication problems related to building, power lines etc in many cases more than one organization could be in contact and without realizing it, continue to cut in on each other.

(1) Solution. Any organization that has its own sub stations must maintain its own net and only the control station speaks to GDOC. To avoid clashes, this required any manouvre elements to have a control station in the GDOC to ensure they understand the complete picture.

b. Language Problems. Without trained interpreters with all organizations, there will continue to be a language problem. As this is not a feasible solution, the only alternative is to operate different nets, as mentioned above, with control stations in the GDOC and a linguist there at all times. There is no point in having the Handau and the rifle company on the same net as they will never be able to talk to each other, particularly if they were involved in a clash.

/c. Lack

- c. Lack of Trained Operators. This was a fault with all call signs, the rifle company had problems because we were not used to having radios down to section level, the RAAF had problems due to the small amount of time they can afford to allocate to radio procedure training and the Handau had problems because they were not used to having radios - period.

Solutions

- (1) The quick and easy solution to all of this is to operate on different nets. This may sound rather repetitive, however it requires very well trained operators to operate on a larger net, with smaller nets the problems are not as great. Also in relation to radio security, the enemy would have to have sophisticated EW equipment to monitor all nets whereas at present due to the number of security breaches he could find out anything from only one net.
- (2) It is essential however, that as an absolute minimum the operators of the control station at GDOC are well trained competent operators.

- d. Handau Radios. I am well aware that this is a political problem, however it is seen as essential that the Handau have radios for an exercise, it must therefore follow that it is essential that they have radios on a real operation. If the Malaysian Government will not provide them with radios and we cannot do it full time, we should not do it for exercises.

- e. Important Communications Equipment was Unserviceable. The direct line from the GDOC to the QRF room was unworkable for most of the exercise.

9. Exercise Unrealism. I am sure that it is not my place to comment on the air war, however I am not sure how well briefed the controllers of the air war were on the ground threat. The main point here is that if the enemy are close enough to be getting in every night and causing disruptions every day, I do not believe that you can afford to park aeroplanes anywhere in the open. Every enemy section carries an RPG 7 (shoulder fired rocket propelled grenade launcher), which has the capability to destroy any aircraft parked in the open, including the SAR helicopter, without even coming into the base.

10. The deployment of infantry sections as standing patrols near aeroplanes to prevent snipers shooting them was not only ludicrous but a waste of valuable resources. A sniper is trained to hit a man sized target at 800 - 900 metres, he could hit a plane from over a kilometre away and an infantry section would not see him nor have they the capacity to do anything about it if they did.

11. Tactical Appreciations. On the exercise, the rifle company deployed its three most senior and experienced people in the GDOC, as it was considered that they would be used to give tactical advice in all situations. Time and again, this tactical advice was completely disregarded, and the tactical principles of any situation do not change on an air base to any other open, built up area.

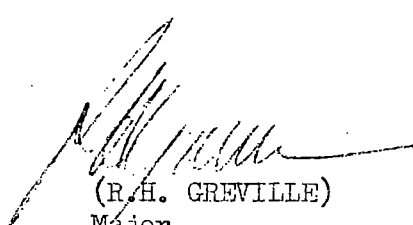
12. Use of the Duty Co-ordinator. The duty co-ordinator should be used as just that, a co-ordinator of air force and other resources. He is not trained nor in a position to direct the battle, nor is he in a position to make decisions on the deployment of the rifle company without the complete agreement from the rifle company representative at the GDOC. The personnel used for this job varied in their approach and a very clear duty statement must be drawn up for them.

13. Use of the BCP Flight. The BCP Flight are a very important organization in the defence of the air base. As already mentioned, the rifle company cannot hope to defend the air field and it therefore relies heavily on these people for assistance. However they should be used for the purpose of guarding key installations and providing early warning for the QRF. All these people have other jobs and therefore cannot hope to develop the proficiency to manoeuvre tactically under fire. Their best chance of survival is to remain in a static position and return fire until assistance arrives. Under no circumstances should they be considered interchangeable with a rifle platoon.

14. AO Concept. I suggest that if it is essential that the Base Sqn BCP flight 'must' be used for QRF tasks then they have their own AO. This AO should be in the area from the Central Tower to the Transport Compound, to the main fence.

Conclusion

15. The exercise proved to be a valuable training medium for the company. Some problems were experienced due to the fact that we had not been in country for one full week when it began, however, the lessons have been assimilated and the exercise has ensured that QRF duties are fully understood by every man very early in the tour.


(R.H. GREVILLE)
Major
Officer Commanding

SUBJECT 1 (CPL) COURSE
22 FEB 82 - 24 MAR 82

General

1. During its tour of duty at Air Base Butterworth, D Coy 2/4 RAR conducted a Subject 1 (CPL) Course. The course was conducted during the period 22 Feb 82 - 24 Mar 82.

Size of Course

2. The number of students was restricted to 12. It was considered that a course panel of any more than this number would have some effect on the effective operation of the company in carrying out its primary role.

Course Results

3. The overall results of the course were of a high standard. This was attributed to the compact size of the course, which resulted in a good student/instructor relationship. Final results of the course were:

- a. Qualified - 11, and
- b. Failed to complete the course due to illness - 1.

Course Package/Stores

4. The course package was delivered by LWC (Det) Enoggera to the company in sufficient time to enable all reproduction and preparation of training aids to be completed prior to departing Australia.

5. The procurement of Army Law Manuals proved to be very difficult, and only as a result of a series of hasteners by QM 2/4 RAR were the Law Manuals forthcoming.

6. Procurement of a leadership film proved to be difficult as the Command film library would not release the film to enable it to be bought to Malaysia and then returned as soon as the course had screened the film (4 Mar 82).

Conclusion

7. The course was most successful and it is believed that the course size contributed to this fact. Though there were minor stores problems, which have been highlighted earlier in this report, it is quite feasible to conduct small Subject 1 (Cpl) Courses at Air Base Butterworth.

K R D

(K.L. SMITH)
WO2
CSM

EDUCATION REPORT

General

1. 24 students were enrolled for 61 ANCE II Subjects after perusal of personal documents and soldiers interviews.
2. Statistics: Statistics for the course are:
 - a. Subjects enrolled - 61,
 - b. Subjects attempted - 29, and
 - c. Subjects passed (including probables) - 21.
3. A number of students did not begin the course, others withdrew before attempting examinations.

Problems

4. The course was not considered to be successful because of the low subject completion rate. This was caused by:
 - a. A number of soldiers completing engagements in 1982/83 and not contemplating re-engagement and therefore not wishing to work at promotion subjects;
 - b. Low hours per student contact because of large company commitments in the training programme;
 - c. The course being taught when soldiers were on QRF which created problems with tiredness; and
 - d. Most students not on QRF completed little if any course material nor did they attend classes scheduled for the QRF Platoon.
5. The other major problem encountered was that of personal records. Although personal documents showed that civilian qualifications had been submitted for many soldiers whilst they were at Kapooka, no record of the result was present. Further checking indicates that RO Part 2 were usually raised and sent to the originating unit, Kapooka, but not passed on to the soldiers current posting at the time of RO issue. Unnecessary paperwork therefore has to be raised.

Recommendations

6. The education course is best run with discrete blocks of time when students are removed from all other activities.
7. Individual learning programmes can be used within these blocks or each block can be used for one subject if the instructor intends to teach a class as one unit.
8. Time blocks need duplication so that a training programme has flexibility.

9. A few students completed work in their own time at AACE 2, AACE 1 and SGCE level either for their own benefit/use or as pre course study for later occasions. This should be encouraged and fostered.

10. The education course is worthwhile and should be continued particularly if it is run as a seperate activity.

for ~~KEL~~ ~~WOL~~
(S. POLKINGHORNE)
LT
Educ Offr

Telephone: Ext; 786

RESTRICTED

ANNEX C TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COY R 723-1-1
DATED MAY 82
Australian Rifle Company
Air Base Butterworth
BUTTERWORTH
MALAYSIA

R722/2/1

Feb 82

See Distribution

GUIDELINES FOR BUILDING SEARCHES

General

1. The following guidelines have been devised to assist personnel in effectively carrying out a search of a Key Point (KP) whilst operating at Air Base Butterworth. It has been evolved from the need for QRF sections to deploy rapidly under good control to any area of the Air Base and to carry out a search of that area.

2. These guidelines have been developed from observing QRF sections reacting and their subsequent actions once they commence the search of a KP. The results both good and bad have been combined to form a basis for these guidelines.

Principles

3. The following principles are essential for QRF deployment:

- a. Speed - Rapid deployment is essential to enable QRF personnel to apprehend or eliminate intruders without these people escaping. In order to achieve success, KPs must be sealed off and searched as quickly as possible.
- b. Control - Good control is essential for a successful operation. Section Commanders must thoroughly brief their section on the task at hand. If the task calls for two QRF sections, then strict co-ordination and control must be enforced by an over-all commander (the Duty Officer). The Duty Officer must move with the group and exercise his control from the ground when more than one section is operating.
- c. Communications - Immediate communications must be established to any area on the Air Base so that essential support can be provided if required. The section must be equipped with at least one radio.
- d. Decisive Action - The fact that there are many RAAF and civilian personnel working in the KPs it is difficult to determine friend or foe. To avoid confusion, and the opportunity for an intruder to escape, ALL personnel within a reacted area must be considered unfriendly until identification proves them otherwise. QRF members must be firm in their actions when dealing with these personnel and must not be intimidated.

/e. Protection

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 2 -

- a. Protection - At all times QRF personnel must move under the protection of either:
 - (1) the cover which buildings, walls and other obstacles provide; or
 - (2) the cover of other members of their section. Commanders at all levels should clearly indicate search groups and covering parties.
- f. Flexibility - Section Commanders must remain flexible in their planning and conduct of a search to cater for unforeseen circumstances.

Sequence of the Search

4. Not all situations will be similar but the following is a sequence that can be applied to a reaction which involves personnel searching:

- a. The QRF section arrives at the reaction point. The Commander deploys his force to any area of cover where he can assess the situation before arriving at a course of action. He promulgates his plan and briefs his section.
- b. His first task is to conduct a usual reconnaissance to attempt to determine the point of entry of the intruder.
- c. He should consider the use of cut off groups around the KP. This should be done as soon as possible after arrival at the KP. As his availability of resources is limited
- d. After briefing, the Section Commander deploys his men into the area. Movement should be well spaced in groups of three. Once in position, they must cover the deployment of other troops in the section. Once his men are in position, the Section Commander commences the search of the KP.
- e. It is essential that a quick search of the KP is done initially to clear it from immediate danger, this may cause the intruder to panic and expose himself. Once that quick search has been completed a more detailed search commences.
- f. Members conducting the search must have intimate support from men who are in a position to cover their movement from either the rear, flank or above. The covering force must watch for any movement that may constitute a threat to searching troops.
- g. The search must be thorough and systematic. Groups should be allocated certain areas to clear and search, and be responsible for the security of that area. Groups should not conflict in their search area otherwise confusion will arise and areas will be left unsearched.
- h. Practical experience has shown that SLPs are difficult for the searchers to carry whilst searching. It is therefore ideal for sections to be provided with the means to enable searchers to carry out their tasks more easily.

RESTRICTED

/1. Once the area

RESTRICTED

- i. Once the area has been cleared, the section moves back out to their vehicle to resume their QRF task.

Action with Civilian/RAAF Personnel

5. If civilian or RAAF personnel are encountered in a KP, they must be considered unfriendly until proven otherwise. If a section moves into a KP and there are people, they must be immediately stopped, covered and the Section Commander informed. The people are to be quickly escorted out of the KP to an area where they can produce identification or be searched and detained. Once they are outside the building, the search may resume.

Action on Contact

6. Once an intruder has been encountered either by ID check or by flushing him from concealment, he is to be immediately searched and the security police informed. However, if the intruder is armed and offers resistance, then the situation changes.

7. There can be NO laid down rules regarding this situation. It is best left to the Section Commanders discretion, based on the rules of engagement. If a member is about to be fired upon then the only solution is to fire back. It must be remembered however, that the member who fires a shot, or the person responsible for that shot being fired, is accountable for his actions.

Conclusion

8. In order to achieve success in this type of operation, it is essential that QRF teams be practised in:

- a. their deployment drills to an area; and
- b. the subsequent search of that area.

9. There are many and varied approaches to the problem of clearing a KP, however, the sequence laid down in this guideline, allows the QRF sections to practise a certain deployment drill. It also gives them the flexibility which is essential when encountering a rapidly changing situation. The principals and sequence laid down in this guideline should be remembered and adhered to whenever possible by QRF Commanders to assist them in dealing with a situation that may well occur during their tour of duty at Rutterworth.

(J.J. JENSEN)

2LT

OC 12 PL

Distribution

OC
2IC
CSM
10PL
11PL
12PL
File
Spare

(10)

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-D2-

ANNEX D

13. Weapon Servicibility. The majority of 7.62mm weapons required some armourer works during the period of trg indicating that age/servicibility is becoming a problem.

The 84mm Sub Cal (6.5mm) device went U/S after firing only thirty rounds. For this type of sub cal practice to be efficiently conducted a minimum of three devices are required for continuity. This is due to the time it takes to load and arm the weapon.

Conclusion

14. All pers who participated in the trg either in a supervisory role or under trg achieved a high level of enjoyment and education from the experience.

Recommendations

15. It is recommended that the following actions be undertaken to refine administration for training at PULADA:

- a. An additional vehicle be allocated for admin/spare tasking,
- b. the provision of fresh rations from PULADA resources be investigated.
- c. a telephone be installed at Burma camp PULADA for use by AS/NZ forces,
- d. additional 84mm Sub Calibre devices (6.5mm) be acquired.


(M.D. GALLACHER)
CAPT

8 RESTRICTED

~~RESTRICTED~~
~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

ANNEX E TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COY R723-1-1
DATED 13 MAY 82

BASIC RAPPELLING COURSE
26 FEB - 2 MAR 82

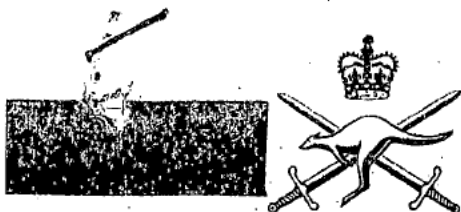
General

1. D Coy 2/4 RAR conducted a five day course to qualify members of the company as basic airborne rappellers. The course was conducted during the period 26 Feb - 2 Mar 82 at Air Base Butterworth, Malaysia.
2. The course was conducted in four phases. Phase one, two and three consisted of platoon sized groups undergoing a one day course consisting of half a days instruction and ground training and the remainder of the day spent doing descents from a UH1H helicopter with and without equipment. Phase four required all personnel who had completed the initial training, to rapel from maximum height with full equipment into a drop zone surrounded by close vegetation. All personnel were required to complete this descent twice.
3. A total of 87 members of the company commenced the training of which 83 qualified as basic airborne rappellers and four personnel failed to complete the course due to being unsafe.

Conclusion

4. The course was highly successful and created much interest amongst all participants. Due to the withdrawal of the Australian helicopter elements from Air Base Butterworth this activity can no longer be conducted by future rifle companies.

~~RESTRICTED~~
~~CONFIDENTIAL~~



AUSTRALIAN ARMY

Telephone
347666
Ext: 508

In reply please quote

OC D Coy 2/4 RAR

For Information:
65 GL Sect

Butterworth Detachment 5 MP Coy (SIB)
Police & Security Flight
RAAF
Air Base Butterworth
MALAYSIA

6 May 82

REPORT OF SPECIAL INVESTIGATION BRANCH ENQUIRIES
INVOLVING MEMBERS OF D COY 2/4 RAR

SIB Case file no.

Military Police Report
of Arrest/Offence
AAF-A51 dated 22 Feb 82

SIB/BUT/5/82

Particulars of Offence/Enquiry

OUT OF BOUNDS MEMBER

During a Military Police mobile patrol of the Georgetown area on 19 Feb 82, [REDACTED] of D Coy 2/4 RAR, was found to be in the New Lum Tong Hotel, an establishment posted as 'Out of Bounds' to Australian Armed Forces personnel.

About 1000 hrs on 26 Feb 82, [REDACTED] was paraded before the OC D Coy 2/4 RAR to answer a charge arising from this report. He was found guilty and awarded an admonition.

SUSPECTED IMPROPER POSSESSION

On 1 Apr 82, [REDACTED] of D Coy 2/4 RAR, reported that in July 1981 he left his .22 cal sporting rifle, valued at \$A60.00, with a friend for safekeeping. This friend has since been discharged from the ARA. In Jan 82, this rifle was allegedly seen in the possession of a serving soldier, formerly of D Coy 2/4 RAR, who is now serving in Perth. The Complainant has had no contact with this serving soldier. A Furtherence of Enquiry has been carried out in this case by Perth Det 5 MP Coy (SIB) and a suspect was interviewed. This person admitted possession of the rifle but alleged that he was unaware of the owner of the weapon. He added that he had come into possession of the rifle mistakenly and had made attempts to locate its owner. No offence has been established in this case. Arrangements have been made to return the rifle to [REDACTED]

RAAF Police Summary
Report 180/82

INCIDENT INVOLVING ARMY MEMBERS AND CHINESE MALE
About 0150 hrs on 6 Apr 82, an unidentified Asian male notified RAAF Police, Penang, that a fight was in progress at the Sin Teong Lum Hotel involving Army members. The RAAF Police mobile patrol attended and established that no Army members were at that time present in the hotel. The patrol proceeded to the Bangkok Hotel where they spoke to a group of seven D Coy 2/4 RAR members. Spokesman for this group was [REDACTED]

[REDACTED] stated that whilst in the Sin Teong Lum Hotel earlier that evening he had intervened in a disturbance between a Chinese male and a European woman (civilian). The Chinese male had allegedly struck the woman with a motorcycle crash helmet. It is understood that the Chinese male may have made an indecent proposition to the European woman. All Army members asserted that at no time had they assaulted the Chinese male. No further action was taken re this report.

SIB/BUT/6/82

ALLEGED ASSAULT

[REDACTED] Police & Security Flight, Air Base Butterworth, reported that about 0130 hrs on 22 Apr 82, whilst drinking in the Superpub restaurant, Butterworth, he was punched twice in the face by a male person believed to be an Australian soldier.

The manager and staff of the Superpub were interviewed by this detachment. All stated that they witnessed no disturbance in the establishment and had seen no soldiers in the bar area. In the absence of any witnesses to the incident, apart from the Complainant, and the absence of a more comprehensive description of the alleged assailant, no further action has been taken to date.


THIS CONCLUDES ENQUIRIES TO DATE

[REDACTED]

CONFIDENTIAL
RESTRICTED

ANNEX I TO
AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COVER 723-1-1
DATED 15 MAY 82

OFFENCE SUMMARY

Name	Offence	Award
(a)	(b)	(c)
	WOWS Losing by Neglect his Regimental Necessaries.	Fined \$10.00
	WOWS Neglecting to Obey Formation Standing Orders	Admonition
	WOWS Conduct to the Prejudice of Good Order and Military Discipline	120 hours Detention
	WOWS Conduct to the Prejudice of Good Order and Military Discipline	120 hours Detention
	WOWS Losing by Neglect his Regimental Necesserties	7 days CB Fined \$10.00
	WOWS Stealing Property Belonging to a Person Subject to Military Law	14 Days CB

RESTRICTED

~~RESTRICTED~~

ANNEX J TO

AUSTRALIAN RIFLE COY R723-1-1

DATED 18 MAY 82

MEDICAL SUMMARY

1. Sick parade summary is as follows:
 - a. Seen by MO 4 RAAF Hosp - 259
 - b. Seen by CAP - 177
 - c. Seen by Dental Flight - 14
2. Sixteen members were hospitalized during the tour for the following reasons:
 - a. Sport associated injuries - 1
 - b. Minor Surgical - 2
 - c. Major Surgical - 2
 - d. Medical - 11
3. A breakdown of medical complaints is as follows:
 - a. Fractures - 4
 - b. Sprains - 53
 - c. Rashes - 54
 - d. Gastric related conditions - 33
 - e. Ear Infections - 15
 - f. Eye Infections - 2
 - g. Throat Infections - 48
 - h. URTI - 14
 - i. NSU - 9
 - j. Gonorrhea - 11
 - k. Miscellaneous - 140
4. Venereal disease is still very prevalent on Penang and Bangkok but the educational programme (lectures, films and informal discussion) have made all members of the company aware of the diseases, causes and prevention; thus resulting in a low VD rate.

~~RESTRICTED~~
~~CONFIDENTIAL~~



UNCLASSIFIED

PDR: MA17-003644
Ref: CDF/OUT/2017/952

MINISTERIAL ADVICE

Australian Government

Department of Defence

Minister for Defence – For action

Minister for Defence Personnel – For information

Copies to: Secretary, VCDF, CN, CA, CAF, CJOPS, DEPSEC DP, DEPSEC SP&I, HJE, FASPPC, FASMECC

REVIEW OF THE DEFINITIONS OF NATURE OF SERVICE CLASSIFICATIONS FOR AUSTRALIAN DEFENCE FORCE OPERATIONS

Critical Date: N/A

Reason: Routine

Recommendations:

1. That you note that after Chiefs of Service Committee (COSC) consideration I have agreed to update NOS definitions in order to ensure that the extant definitions for nature of service (NOS) classifications for Australian Defence Force (ADF) operations are relevant for future ADF operations. **Noted / Please discuss**
2. That you agree the proposed definitions for the NOS classification categories to be applied to all future ADF operational service. **Agreed / Not agreed**
3. That you note that there is no requirement to amend extant repatriation legislation as a result of the updated definitions. **Noted / Please discuss**
4. That you sign the attached letter to the Prime Minister advising him of your agreement to the updated NOS definitions. **Signed / Not signed**

Minister for Defence.....  Date 27/02/2017

Key Points:

1. A nature of service (NOS) classification, based upon the exposure of ADF personnel to the risk of harm from hostile forces, must be determined for all ADF operations to enable ADF personnel to access appropriate conditions of service, including veterans' benefits. In accordance with the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986* (VEA) and the *Military Rehabilitation and Compensation Act 2004* (MRCA), the Minister for Defence is responsible for determining warlike and non-warlike NOS for ADF operations.
2. In 1993, Cabinet agreed to a framework which delivered a simple, coordinated procedure to establish conditions of service benefits for ADF members who served on ADF operations. The definitions agreed to in the 1993 Framework are included at Attachment A. Prior to the framework being adopted, benefits were determined in an ad hoc manner. Subsequently, on 13 May 1997 the VEA was amended to incorporate the terms *warlike* and *non-warlike*, and this was carried over into the MRCA.
3. The 1993 framework (warlike, non-warlike and peacetime) remains practical for classifying ADF operations, and has other government agency support. However, the guidance to Defence on how to assess NOS for ADF operations has been reviewed to ensure relevancy for future ADF operations.

4. On 14 June 2017, COSC considered proposed new NOS definitions (Attachment B). It is important to note that the new definitions do not alter the intent or direction provided by the 1993 definitions. They do, however, more clearly distinguish between the NOS classifications and will promote a better understanding that NOS decisions are based on the exposure to the risk of harm to ADF personnel from hostile forces, consistent with the historic basis for the provision of repatriation benefits.
5. As a consequence of this consultation, I have agreed that the revised definitions incorporate *criminal elements* as a component of *hostile forces* to reflect current and future threats to ADF personnel on operational service. *Psychological harm* is now explicitly included in the definition of *harm* to emphasise that the risk of harm from enemy forces extends beyond physical risks. The risk of psychological harm is considered during the NOS assessment process.
6. I am confident the proposed new definitions will support the integrity of the NOS framework and ensure the consistent, equitable and transparent NOS classification of future ADF operational service.
7. Subject to your approval of the new definitions, I have also agreed that the new definitions should only be applied to all future new ADF operations.
8. Legal advice has confirmed that there is no requirement for Cabinet endorsement of the proposed new definitions. However, in the interests of transparency, it is recommended that you consult with the Prime Minister on the updated definitions which will guide future NOS assessments. A draft letter to the Prime Minister is at Attachment C.

.....
MD Binskin, AC
Air Chief Marshal
Chief of the Defence Force

Contact officer: [REDACTED]
Contact officer phone: [REDACTED]

23 November 2017

Sensitivity:

No.

Financial Impacts:

There are no financial impacts.

Summary of Attachments:

- A – 1993 nature of service definitions
- B – Proposed new definitions for the nature of service definitions
- C – Draft letter to the Prime Minister

Background:

Nil.

Related Briefs:

Nil.

Consultation:

No.



**Senator the Hon David Feeney
Parliamentary Secretary for Defence**

The Hon Bruce Billson MP
Member for Dunkley
Parliament House
CANBERRA ACT 2600

Dear Mr Billson

Thank you for your letter of 31 October 2011 to the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel, the Hon Warren Snowdon MP, concerning a copy of a letter from the Royal Australian Regiment Corporation of 25 August 2011 regarding service of the members of the Rifle Company Butterworth (RCB). As this matter falls within my portfolio responsibilities, your letter has been passed to me for response.

As this matter has become somewhat complicated, I feel I should begin with a summary of the current circumstances and the relevant documentation so that you will be fully informed of the matter.

As a result of a number of representations, in 2007 the Department of Defence conducted a review of Australian Defence Force (ADF) service at Butterworth from 1970 to 1989. The review concluded that the service could not be classified as warlike service. However, there were grounds for reclassification from peacetime service to hazardous service under section 120(7) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986*. Subsequently, Defence recommended to you, as Minister Assisting the Minister for Defence, that the service of RCB should be reclassified as hazardous service.

At that time, it was considered that hazardous service under section 120(7) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act* could only be applied after 7 December 1972 and so, based on Defence advice, on 18 September 2007 you signed Instruments of Determination of Hazardous Service from 6 December 1972 to 31 December 1989 and Non-warlike Service from 15 November 1970 to 6 December 1972. Subsequently, on 4 October 2007 you wrote to Mr Robert Cross, Chairman of the RCB Review Group, advising him of your decision.

Following further correspondence from Mr Cross in 2009, Defence discovered that the original Instruments of Determination had inadvertently omitted the Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF) Airfield Defence Guards, Police and Security Guards, although it was clear that their service was similar to that of RCB. Of more significance, it was determined that the Instruments had not been formally registered on the Federal Register of Legislative Instruments. Consequently, all service at Butterworth from 1966 (post-Confrontation) remained classified as peacetime service.

Since that time, the Australian Government has been seeking to resolve the legal status of the Instruments and the process by which the matter might finally be resolved. In order to achieve a definitive outcome, in mid-2011 Defence conducted a first-principles review of all ADF service at Butterworth from 1970, when responsibility for security at the base was transferred to the RAAF. This review examined official Government and Defence Force correspondence available within Defence and from the Australian War Memorial and National Archives of Australia, as well as the various submissions that had been made by claimants over the years.

The 2011 Defence review found that official documents generally indicated that the roles of the RCB were to provide a ground force presence in Malaysia, conduct training and, if required, assist in the ground defence of Butterworth. The review assessed that the previous 2007 review relied on selective information, and that little objective research was undertaken in relation to the claims which had been made. Although the advice provided to you was the best available at the time, it has subsequently been shown to be inadequate and misleading.

The evidence now available does not support the claim that RCB was an operational deployment and that its primary role was to protect Australian assets at Butterworth. In practice, RCB was mostly involved in infantry training activities, and the ready reaction and ground defence tasks were only secondary. Notably, in the 19 years from 1970 to 1989, RCB was not required in an emergency ground defence capacity.

Based on the evidence now available, it is considered that the level of risk associated with ADF service at Butterworth from 1966 (post-Confrontation) is not sufficient to meet the intent of hazardous service under section 120(7) of the Veterans' Entitlements Act and that this service should remain classified as peacetime service.

I note that the 1993 Committee of Inquiry into Defence and Defence Related Awards chaired by General Peter Gration, and the 2003 Review of Veterans' Entitlements (Clarke Review) came to a similar conclusion.

As you would appreciate, any decision to overturn a decision made by a previous Minister is not made lightly. However, in the circumstances, where the advice provided to you in 2007 was incomplete, I have determined after full consideration of the facts that the Instruments now not be registered and that the service of all ADF personnel who served at RAAF Butterworth from the cessation of Confrontation on 11 August 1966 to the present time should remain classified as peacetime service.

Notwithstanding this decision on the nature of service classification of peacetime service for all ADF service at Butterworth from 1966, eligibility for the award of the Australian Service Medal 1945-75 or the Australian Service Medal will not be affected.

I have enclosed the full details of the situation for your information, including the advice that was provided to you and upon which you would have based your decision. I will be writing to the relevant parties in the near future.

I trust that this information fully informs you on this matter.

Yours sincerely

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "David Feeney". The signature is fluid and cursive, with a large initial "D" and a long, sweeping underline.

DAVID FEENEY

Encl



Minister for Defence Personnel
Minister for Defence – For information
Assistant Minister for Defence – For information

PDR: MS19-000484

Through: VCDF

Copies to: Secretary, CDF, Associate Secretary, CA, HMSC, FASMECC.

SUPPLEMENTARY ADVICE TO MC18-003435 - RIFLE COMPANY BUTTERWORTH (RCB) - FOLLOW ON FROM MINDP/VCDF MEETING HELD ON 5 MARCH 2016

Urgency N/A

Recommendations

That you:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. note a review of the correspondence confirms a consistent position and advice provided to the Rifle Company Butterworth (RCB) Review Group, and other claimants since 2007, by both former Labor and Coalition Governments. | 1. Noted / Please discuss |
| 2. note the position of the current Government has also been RCB service during the period 1970 – 1989 is appropriately classified as peacetime service. | 2. Noted / Please discuss |
| 3. sign the attached draft letter to [REDACTED] | 3. Signed / Not signed |

Signature:

Darren Chester

...../...../2019

Information: ~~DO NOT REMOVE THIS WILL BE ACTIONED BY THE PARLIAMENTARY TEAM~~

Minister for Defence Industry – Linda Reynolds

...../...../.....

Contact Officer:

Key Points:

- On 22 February 2019, you noted the outcome of the 2019 Defence review regarding the 2007 hazardous and non-warlike determinations for RCB service 1970 – 1989. The review concluded Defence had provided no evidence to support the recommended reclassification to hazardous or non-warlike service and there are no records to explain why the 2007 instruments signed by then Minister Assisting the Minister for Defence the Hon Bruce Billson MP were not registered.
- You sought further discussion about the 2012 decision by the Parliamentary Secretary for Defence (PARLSEC) Senator Feeney that the peacetime classification of RCB service during the period 1970 – 1989 is supported by the evidence and is consistent with all reviews of ADF service at RAAF Base Butterworth.
- At your meeting with the Vice Chief of the Defence Force (VCDF) on 5 March 2019 you requested a copy of correspondence on this matter sent by you and former Senator the Hon

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

David Feeney, when you were each PARLSEC. These documents are at Attachments A to H. A copy of a letter from Senator the Hon [REDACTED] is also considered relevant and is at Attachment I. A summary of these letters is at Attachment J.

- After your meeting with VCDF, your Departmental Liaison Officer forwarded an email of a request by your Defence Adviser, [REDACTED] requesting the brief and letter be incorporated into the response being prepared under MC18-003435. Due to the complexity of the correspondence received from [REDACTED] this separate supplementary submission has been prepared to address the outcomes of the 5 March 2019 meeting.
- The response letter to [REDACTED] provided under MC18-003534 has been amended to present a consolidated position from current and previous ministers that RCB service is neither hazardous or warlike and, in the absence of compelling new evidence, the Department and the Government do not intend to re-examine the matter. The letter also notes that this decision in no way detracts from the service provided by RCB members.
- A draft letter to [REDACTED] is attached for your signature at Attachment K. This letter replaces the draft response letter provided under MC18-003435.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

22 March 2019

Background:

- MC-18-003435 was raised in response to further correspondence received from the RCB Review Group following your meeting with RCB representatives on 27 November 2018.
- The correspondence was from [REDACTED] and is addressed in the attached response letter.

Sensitivity: YES

- The RCB Review Group is likely to continue to pursue the matter until the service is recognised as warlike service. They have made clear that anything less is unacceptable.

Financial Impacts: Nil

Regulatory Implications: Nil.

Consultation: NO.

Attachments:

Attachment A: Letter from former PARLSEC Senator [REDACTED] to [REDACTED] dated 19 May 2012.

Attachment B: Letter from former PARLSEC Senator [REDACTED] to former Senator the Hon [REDACTED] dated 6 February 2013.

Attachment C: Letter from former PARLSEC the Hon Darren Chester MP to [REDACTED] dated 4 December 2013.

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

Attachment D: Letter from former PARLSEC the Hon Darren Chester MP to [REDACTED] dated 4 December 2013.

Attachment E: Letter from former PARLSEC the Hon Darren Chester MP to [REDACTED] dated 4 December 2013.

Attachment F: Letter from former PARLSEC the Hon Darren Chester MP to [REDACTED] dated 4 December 2013.

Attachment G: Letter from former PARLSEC the Hon Darren Chester MP to [REDACTED] dated 12 December 2013.

Attachment H: Letter from former PARLSEC the Hon Darren Chester MP to [REDACTED] dated 16 July 2014.

Attachment I: Letter from former Senator the Hon Michael Ronaldson to [REDACTED] dated 2 August 2013.

Attachment J: Summary of correspondence sent by Hon Darren Chester MP and from Senator the Hon David Feeney when each was PARLSEC for Defence.

Attachment K: Draft letter to [REDACTED]

UNCLASSIFIED

46

DEFENCE NEWS RELEASE

FRIDAY, MARCH 16, 1984

NO. 44/84

RAAF TO REMAIN AT BUTTERWORTH

The Royal Australian Air Force is to maintain a presence at the Butterworth Air Base in Malaysia.

This was announced today by the Minister for Defence, Mr Gordon Scholes, who said the Government had now completed its review of the RAAF presence at Butterworth.

In deciding that the RAAF would remain in Malaysia for the foreseeable future, Mr Scholes said the Government had been conscious that with Malaysia, Singapore, New Zealand and the United Kingdom, Australia had built up a defence arrangement which continued to make an important contribution to regional strategic security.

Mr Scholes also said the Government had given close examination to how it could best meet the twin objectives of making a continuing contribution to regional security and enhancing Australia's own defence capability through an efficient introduction of the F/A-18 into the RAAF.

"The Government is proposing that the future pattern of Australia's involvement in Malaysia and Singapore should be along the following lines," Mr Scholes said.

"First, up to mid-1988 when the Mirage is to be withdrawn from service, there will be a continuous presence of a reducing number of Mirage aircraft at Butterworth, supplemented by deployments of additional Mirage and F-111 aircraft from Australia for major Integrated Air Defence System (IADS) exercises."

- . "Second, after mid-1988 there will be a continuing Australian fighter contribution to IADS using F/A-18s, through a series of rotational deployments totalling at least 16 weeks per year, augmented by F-111 aircraft for some exercises."
- . "Third, we will retain significant ground support installations at Butterworth beyond 1988 for RAAF operations."
- . "Finally, we will continue to deploy the Orion P3 maritime reconnaissance aircraft and the Army company to Butterworth, and will continue our program of naval visits to Malaysia and Singapore."

Mr Scholes added that he expected to visit Malaysia and Singapore in the near future for further discussions on these and other defence matters with his Ministerial counterparts.

**

**

**

**

Further Inquiries:

Ministerial:

(062) 72 6020

Departmental:

(062) 65 2999 (S/Board)

76

DEFENCE NEWS RELEASE

TUESDAY 24 APRIL 1984

NO. 72/84

DEFENCE MINISTER HOLDS DISCUSSIONS
WITH MALAYSIAN PRIME MINISTER

Australian would maintain its fighter presence in Malaysia for the foreseeable future, the Australian Defence Minister, Mr Gordon Scholes, said this afternoon in Kuala Lumpur.

He said this would be done by rotating Australia's new F/A 18 fighters through Butterworth for a minimum of 16 weeks a year from mid-1988. The existing Mirage squadron at Butterworth would be phased out between 1986 and 1988.

Mr Scholes was speaking following talks with Malaysia's Prime Minister, Dr Mahathir, on the future of Australia's 25-year fighter presence in Malaysia.

"The Prime Minister and I recognised changes were occurring in our Defence relationship because of the impressive growth of Malaysia's Defence capability and the forthcoming introduction to the RAAF of the highly advanced F/A 18 fighters " Mr Scholes said.

Mr Scholes said Dr Mahathir was satisfied with the Royal Australian Air Force presence at Butterworth and the arrangements beyond 1988.

"The capacity and range of the F/A 18s will make it unnecessary to maintain a squadron at Butterworth on a full time basis".



The Minister said F111 strike aircraft and supplementary fighters would continue to be deployed to Butterworth from Australia for combined air exercises.

He said Australia also would maintain its regular deployments of P3 Orion long-range maritime reconnaissance aircraft from Butterworth.

"We regard maritime surveillance as an increasingly important activity in Australia's Defence relationship with Malaysia and a significant contribution to the region's Defence preparedness".

Mr Scholes said the Australian Army Company at Butterworth would remain and continue exercises with Malaysian Defence Forces.

Australia also would remain an active participant in the integrated Air Defence System (IADS), through which Malaysia and Singapore coordinated their Air Defence capabilities and conducted regular Air Defence exercises.

"Australia regards IADS as a most important element in the Defence relationship between Australia, Malaysia and Singapore".

The Minister said Australia also had a long and continuing Defence cooperation programme with Malaysia.

This had grown progressively to a current annual expenditure level of more than DLRS Aust 5 million.

Its main focus was technical training of Malaysian Armed Forces personnel.

Mr Scholes said it had been agreed that broad discussions on Defence matters between Malaysia and Australia would be held on a regular basis.

He said he was pleased that the close Defence relationship between Malaysia and Australia was becoming broader in its scope.

Further Enquiries:

(062) 733955



DEPARTMENT OF DEFENCE



THE DEFENCE OF AUSTRALIA



1987

Department of Defence

THE DEFENCE OF AUSTRALIA 1987

Presented to Parliament by the Minister for Defence
the Honourable Kim C. Beazley, M.P.

March 1987

Australian Government Publishing Service
Canberra 1987

CONTENTS

Preface	vii
Chapter one—Australia's defence policy	1
1.5 Self-reliance	1
1.13 Alliances and regional commitments	3
1.13 Australia and the United States	3
1.27 Australia and New Zealand	5
1.34 Australia and the region	6
1.43 Australia's defence capacity and influence	8
Chapter two—Australia's strategic environment and defence interests	10
2.3 Australia and the global balance	10
2.14 Australia and the region	12
2.20 South-East Asia	13
2.41 South-West Pacific	16
2.53 Papua New Guinea	19
2.56 Antarctica	19
2.58 The national strategic setting	19
2.63 Australia's physical environment	20
2.69 National defence interests	22
Chapter three—Priorities for force development	23
3.3 Possible forms of military pressure against Australia	23
3.5 Low level conflict	24
3.9 Escalated low level conflict	24
3.15 More substantial conflict	25
3.26 Threats to Australian trade	27
3.33 Warning and defence preparation	29
3.44 Australia's defence strategy	31
3.51 Requirements for force development	32
Chapter four—The Australian Defence Force and its development	34
4.2 Intelligence and Surveillance	34
4.2 Intelligence	34
4.6 Broad area surveillance	34
4.13 Air surveillance	36
4.17 Maritime surveillance	36
4.20 Anti-submarine surveillance and anti-submarine warfare	38
4.25 Ground surveillance and reconnaissance	38
4.27 Electronic warfare	39
4.30 Mapping, charting, and infrastructure knowledge	40
4.35 Nuclear, biological, and chemical warfare (NBCD)	40
4.37 Strike and interdiction	41
4.38 Strike aircraft	41
4.41 Submarines	41
4.45 Maritime Warfare	43
4.46 Surface combatant force	43

4.50 Submarine force	44
4.52 Maritime air operations	45
4.55 Mine countermeasures force	45
4.59 Amphibious forces	46
4.60 Afloat support	46
4.63 Naval infrastructure	47
4.68 Air Warfare	49
4.69 Air defence and the tactical fighter force	49
4.75 Land based surface-to-air missiles	50
4.78 Strategic transport	51
4.79 Northern airfield infrastructure	51
4.82 Land Warfare	53
4.85 1 Division	53
4.91 Protection of vital assets	55
4.92 Regional Force Surveillance Units	55
4.93 Northern basing	56
4.97 Offensive air support	57
4.98 Battlefield helicopters	57
4.100 Army aviation	57
4.101 M113 light armoured fighting vehicles	59
4.102 Mechanisation	59
4.103 Tanks	59
4.104 Artillery	59
4.106 Rationalisation of the Reserve structure	59
4.108 Tactical air transport	60
4.109 Command, control and communications	60
4.116 Summary—The ADF and its development	62
Command, control and communications	62
Navy	62
Army	63
Air Force	64
Chapter five—Supporting the Defence Force—infrastructure, logistics, science and technology	65
5.2 Infrastructure and logistics	65
5.3 Infrastructure planning	65
5.9 Defence infrastructure and the community	67
5.13 Logistics	67
5.19 External logistic support	68
5.22 Science and technology	69
5.24 Technology and the Defence Force	69
5.32 The Defence Science and Technology Organisation	70
5.36 The technology base	71
5.38 DSTO program	71
5.42 Technology transfer to industry	73
5.44 International collaboration	73
5.46 Government review of DSTO	73
5.50 Self-reliance and support of the ADF	74
Chapter six—Defence and Australian industry	75
6.2 Industry and defence	75
6.8 Industry involvement and levels of conflict	76

6.9 Low level conflict	76
6.11 Higher level conflict	76
6.15 Reviews	77
6.16 Priorities for local sourcing	77
6.23 Defence assistance to industry	78
6.26 Defence purchasing	79
6.34 Australian industry involvement	80
6.39 Exports	81
6.42 International collaboration	81
6.45 Defence industry structure policies	82
6.46 Competition for defence contracts	82
6.48 Ownership of machinery and facilities	82
6.50 Australian ownership control and influence	82
6.52 Government factories and dockyards	83
6.58 Industry and some major procurements	84
6.60 Indigenous design and development projects	84
6.67 Local development and production programs	86
6.76 Local production of overseas designs	87
6.85 Defence work in Australian industry	89
Chapter seven—Defence personnel	90
7.3 The regular component of the ADF	91
7.5 Women in the ADF	91
7.8 Reserve Forces	92
7.10 Civilians in defence	93
7.12 Pressures on the defence personnel resource	93
7.14 A personnel resource strategy	94
7.17 Retention	94
7.21 Conditions of service	96
7.21 Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal	96
7.24 Defence Force Advocate	96
7.25 Superannuation and Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits	97
7.27 Defence housing	97
7.29 Supporting service families	97
Chapter eight—Resources and programming	99
8.4 Wider economic consideration in defence funding	99
8.8 Defence spending overseas	102
8.12 The Five Year Defence Program	102
8.15 Recent trends in Defence expenditure	103
8.19 The years ahead	105
8.20 Capital equipment	105
8.22 Capital facilities	105
8.24 Personnel	105
8.27 Operating costs	109
Chapter nine—Conclusions	110

Preface

The Australian people expect that Australia shall be able to defend itself. The Australian Government accepts its duty to provide Australia with defence forces able to meet that expectation. This Paper sets the course for a decade of development towards self-reliance in the defence and security of Australia.

For Australia, defence self-reliance must be set firmly within the framework of our alliances and regional associations. The support they give us makes self-reliance achievable. They, in turn, will draw added support from a self-reliant Australia, which will be better able to discharge its responsibilities in the vast strategic region to which we belong.

Beyond our strategic region—itself an area covering one-quarter of the Earth's surface—defence self-reliance is based firmly upon Australia's place as a respected and self-respecting member of the Western community.

Self-reliance as a goal is based on a realistic assessment of our strengths, as well as on a rigorous appraisal of our weaknesses and deficiencies. It draws on the skilful mobilisation of Australia's resources—physical, financial and human.

The Australian Government's policy of self-reliance in defence requires both a coherent defence strategy and an enhanced defence capacity. This Paper defines the strategy and details the program to increase our capacity.

This program is the largest defence capital investment in Australia's peacetime history. Over 33 per cent of the defence budget is now devoted to long term investment—a major increase since the early 1980s. This share will continue to be high throughout the decade.

The first aim of defence self-reliance is to give Australia the military capability to prevent an aggressor attacking us successfully in our sea and air approaches, gaining a foothold on any part of our territory, or extracting concessions from Australia through the use or threat of military force.

This wider concept of self-reliance rejects the narrow concept of 'continental' defence. The strategy on which self-reliance is based establishes an extensive zone of direct military interest.

Self-reliance means defence in depth. It gives priority to meeting any credible level of threat in Australia's area of direct military interest. It means that any potential adversaries know that they will be faced with a comprehensive array of military capabilities, both defensive and offensive.

To be self-reliant the Australian Defence Force must be able to mount operations to defeat hostile forces in our area of direct military interest. To do that we must have forces able to track and target an adversary and able to mount sea and air operations throughout the area. It means having a

comprehensive range of defensive capabilities, including air defence, mine countermeasures and the protection of coastal trade. We must have mobile land forces able to meet and defeat armed incursions at remote locations.

Clearly, any hostile force must attempt to advance in ships or aircraft. Accordingly, the program gives priority to the air and sea defences in our area of direct military interest. Australia is now establishing a multilayered detection system which will transform our defence strategy.

We have developed in Australia the world's most advanced long range radar, the Jindalee Over-the-Horizon Radar. A system of up to three new stations is being planned to allow around the clock surveillance of Australia's vast northern approaches.

Early detection of threats allows an early response. Australia's long range strike capabilities are being developed to respond—quickly and lethally—to early warnings far from Australia's shores. These include both air and naval forces.

Australia's surface and submarine naval forces are undergoing the most dramatic expansion in peacetime history.

The Navy's fleet of major surface combat ships will be expanded from twelve to sixteen or seventeen by developing and building a new class of warship with the range and armament to operate throughout our area of direct military interest and beyond. Eight of these ships will be built over the next ten years, to serve with the destroyers and frigates now with the fleet or being built. Australia will also acquire six new submarines, with the most advanced underwater combat systems in the world.

The Royal Australian Navy will be established as a two ocean Navy. For the first time in peacetime a major portion of the Navy's surface and submarine fleet will be based in Western Australia.

In the air our long range strike forces will comprise squadrons of F-111 long range bombers and F/A-18 multirole aircraft, and our P3C Orions. In all, over one hundred of these aircraft will be armed with the Harpoon anti-ship missile, and our multirole F/A-18 aircraft will carry the Sidewinder and Sparrow air-to-air missile and a range of other smart weapons.

The effectiveness of the F/A-18s for long range missions is being greatly enhanced by the Government's decision to provide aerial refuelling. We are also completing a comprehensive network of air bases in the north to support these operations.

One squadron of F/A-18s will be based permanently at a major airbase being built at Tindal, inland from Darwin. A bare airbase exists at Learmonth, Western Australia, another is being built at Derby in north-west Western Australia, and a third is planned on the Cape York Peninsula.

Australia's long range forces are also capable of striking land targets such as enemy bases and force concentrations. The F-111s are a central element of our landstrike forces, and the Government is examining a major upgrade of these aircraft to improve their capabilities. Submarines, F/A-18s and surface ships also have the potential to mount long range strikes.

Our formidable long range detection and strike capabilities would make it difficult to land major forces on Australia's shores. But should any hostile forces land on Australian territory they would be met by a highly mobile army.

The Army's Operational Deployment Force, based at Townsville, can deploy rapidly across northern Australia to meet any land incursion. Its mobility and capability will be greatly enhanced by large numbers of state-of-the-art Blackhawk helicopters.

Even more importantly, the Government has decided—for the first time in peacetime—to strengthen our northern defences by basing major elements of the Australian Army permanently in northern Australia. A fast-moving cavalry regiment of 340 men and associated vehicles is being based in the Darwin area, and eventually the Army presence may grow to a full brigade.

The Army is studying innovative solutions to the military challenges which these units will face in our north, including new-generation armoured fighting vehicles suited to Australia's huge distances and harsh conditions.

The Army will be deployed to meet any landing in the north, wherever it should occur. Other forces will secure key military, economic and civilian areas with Reserves playing a major role.

Development of the Defence Force to include all these capabilities is planned for the next ten to twenty years. It will significantly enhance our ability to meet any threat capable of being mounted with little warning in our region.

In this way, Australia's combined air, land and sea forces can secure our continent against any possible aggressor. Equally, those forces will have the capacity to support regional security too. They will be well-suited to supporting Australia's regional role. Long range ships, submarines and aircraft, and highly mobile ground forces, will enable us to play our proper role in the region, and, if necessary, beyond it.

Thus self-reliance achieves the four fundamental objectives of Australia's national and international defence policy.

It maintains and develops our capacity for the independent defence of Australia and its interests. It promotes strategic stability and security in our region. It strengthens our ability to meet the mutual obligations we share with our chief allies, the United States and New Zealand. It enhances our ability, as a member of the Western association of nations, to contribute to strategic stability at the global level.

Self-reliance is a task involving the whole nation. Australia's greatest resource is the skill of its people.

Recognising the vital role played by the men and women in Australia's Defence Force, increasing attention is being given to improving personnel management practices, recruitment and training policies, living and working conditions, and to sustaining conditions of service and superannuation benefits in keeping with community standards.

As part of the new relationship with industry, information on defence

requirements will be provided to industry at an early stage. Wherever possible Australian firms will be prime contractors on major projects and Australian industry involvement will be a major factor in selecting new equipment.

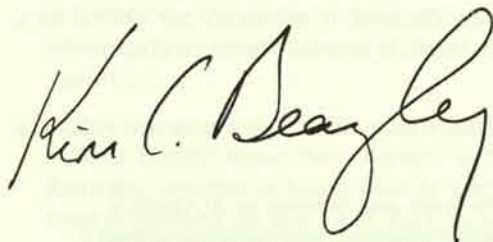
Australian industry will be called upon to involve itself more intensively in the support, maintenance and development of Australia's Defence Force. Benefits to industry in peace will be returned as increased capability in time of hostility.

One major beneficiary will be the shipbuilding industry. Over the next ten years, Australian companies will be offered leading roles in the largest naval shipbuilding program in Australia's peacetime history, valued at over \$7 billion. Beyond the shipbuilding industry, all Australians will benefit from the balance of payment gains of building our own ships rather than importing them.

It must be emphasised that self-reliance does not mean self-sufficiency. Australia's access to the highest level of technology remains one of the most important benefits of our alliance with the United States. Nevertheless, this Paper sets out a comprehensive program to enable Australian industry to make a direct contribution to our defence self-reliance.

Self-reliance was foreshadowed in the last policy information paper on defence published ten years ago. The 1976 White Paper, however, failed to give substance or direction to the concept. This Policy Information Paper does so. It sets clear goals for the Australian Government, its defence advisers and planners and for the Australian Defence Force itself.

This Paper provides the comprehensive overall approach to Australian security that will be the basis for responsible defence planning in future years. It sets out, step by step, how this self-reliance will be achieved. The concept of self-reliance can now become a reality.



KIM C. BEAZLEY

March 1987

Chapter one

Australia's defence policy

1.1 This Government's policy of defence self-reliance gives priority to the ability to defend ourselves with our own resources. Australia must have the military capability to prevent an enemy from attacking us successfully in our sea and air approaches, gaining a foothold on our territory, or extracting political concessions from us through the use of military force. These are uniquely Australian interests and Australia must have the independent military capability to defend them.

1.2 This policy of defence self-reliance is pursued within a framework of alliances and agreements. The most significant of these is with the United States. We share a defence relationship with New Zealand which is of basic importance. We have other important arrangements with Papua New Guinea and with the United Kingdom, New Zealand, Malaysia and Singapore in the Five Power Defence Arrangements. Whilst not the subject of any specific security undertakings, important defence activities take place with other nations in the South-West Pacific and South-East Asia.

1.3 These arrangements, particularly those with the United States, enhance self-reliance by improving our technological capabilities, by providing training opportunities for our armed services, and by giving Australia access to vital military and political intelligence. The security provisions of our alliance agreements also oblige a potential enemy to contemplate the prospect of an allied effort against it should it choose to attack Australia. These arrangements emphasise Australia's membership of the Western strategic community, and they enhance regional stability. The interests of Australia's allies and regional associates are advanced by Australia's ability to provide for its own defence.

1.4 That aspect of Government defence policy which establishes a relationship between defence self-reliance, alliance obligations and regional commitments is set out in this chapter.

Self-reliance

1.5 Australians have a right to expect that their nation is able to defend itself. That is at the core of nationhood, and has long been an Australian aspiration. The exercise of authority over our continent and off-shore territories, our territorial sea and resource zones, and airspace, and the ability to protect our maritime and air approaches, is fundamental to our sovereignty and security.

1.6 In Australia's case this is a daunting task, considering the vastness and harshness of our territory, the length of our coastline, the size of our fishing and resource zones, the distance from the mainland of our off-shore territories,

the great expanses of water that surround us, and the disproportionately small size of our population.

1.7 The Government's defence policy is to develop self-reliant solutions to our unique strategic circumstances. These are set out in this Paper. They are the product of rigorous and disciplined analysis of the force structure requirements needed to defend ourselves from direct threats to our sovereignty and vital national interests.

1.8 Self-reliance is not a new theme in Australian defence planning. It has been a central tenet of our defence posture since the end of our Vietnam commitment. And it was identified as a primary requirement in the last policy information paper on defence, the 1976 White Paper, where it was stated that:

In our contemporary circumstances we no longer base our policy on the expectation that Australia's Navy or Army or Air Force will be sent abroad to fight as part of some other nation's force, supported by it. We do not rule out an Australian contribution to operations elsewhere if the requirement arose and we felt that our presence would be effective, and if our forces could be spared from their national tasks. But we believe that any operations are much more likely to be in our own neighbourhood than in some distant or forward theatre, and that our Armed Services would be conducting joint operations together as the Australian Defence Force.

1.9 These judgements remain valid. But despite agreement on these basic issues over the last decade, a clear definition of Australia's real defence needs in an era of self-reliance did not emerge. Therefore this Government commissioned the *Review of Australia's defence capabilities* in 1985. The review established the comprehensive approach needed to implement the principle of defence self-reliance. It drew together all the separate considerations of self-reliance over the last decade or more and proposed an achievable and cost-effective approach to force structure planning. Its main recommendations for developing a self-reliant force structure form the basis of this Policy Information Paper and the Government's defence policy.

1.10 In developing a defence force capable of maintaining a self-reliant defence posture, priority is given to those capabilities which are needed for the defence of Australia and its direct interests. This requires a force-in-being to defeat any challenge to our sovereignty and specific capabilities designed to respond effectively to attacks within our area of direct military interest.¹

1.11 This area stretches over 7 000 kilometres from the Cocos Islands to New Zealand and the islands of the South-West Pacific, and over 5 000 kilometres from the archipelago and island chain in the north to the Southern Ocean. It constitutes about 10 per cent of the earth's surface.

The area of direct military interest is of fundamental importance in defining and developing a self-reliant defence force. It does not, however, mark the limits of our strategic interests nor of our military capabilities.

Our broader strategic interests extend beyond the area of direct military interest to include South-East Asia, Indochina, the eastern Indian Ocean and the South-West Pacific. Australia's security could be directly affected by

¹ The area of direct military interest includes Australia, its territories and proximate ocean areas, Indonesia, Papua New Guinea, New Zealand and other nearby countries of the South-West Pacific.

developments in these areas, and our broader defence policy must be responsive to such developments.

1.12 The physical characteristics of our area of direct military interest demand a defence force with range, endurance, and mobility, and independent logistic support. The Government gives priority to this area in contingency planning for the Australian Defence Force (ADF). The activities of the ADF will continue to focus on this area to develop its familiarity with potential areas for military operations.

Alliances and regional commitments

Australia and the United States

1.13 Australia is part of the Western community of nations. Australia therefore supports the ability of the United States to retain an effective strategic balance with the Soviet Union. A redistribution of power in favour of the Soviet Union in the central balance, or an extension of Soviet influence in our region at the expense of the United States, would be a matter of fundamental concern to Australia, and would be contrary to our national interests.

1.14 Australia's alliances with the United States and other nations impose upon us the obligation to provide for our own defence. This obligation is spelled out in Article II of the ANZUS Treaty, and American expectations in this regard have been stressed by US administrations since the late 1960s.

1.15 This Government considers that basic self-reliance is the minimum that any self-respecting country should contribute to an alliance. Australia can scarcely pretend to contribute to the defence of broader Western interests if it cannot defend itself.

1.16 In the remote contingency of global conflict Australia would have regard in the first instance to the situation in our immediate region. Our responsibilities would include those associated with the Radford—Collins Agreement for the protection and control of shipping (see Chapter 3). Subject to priority requirements in our own area the Australian Government would then consider contributions further afield.

1.17 Options will always be available to Australian governments for assistance to allies, even though such assistance of itself will not be a force structure determinant. The type of Australian force structure required to protect our interests in our area of military interest entails substantial capabilities for operations further afield. For example, our guided missile frigates (FFGs) equipped with Seahawk helicopters are capable of effective participation in a US carrier battle group well distant from Australia's shores.

1.18 Defence co-operation will continue to be sustained with the United States in peacetime. There is already an extensive system of regular high level consultations on defence and security issues, including the annual Australia/US

Ministerial Talks, the Australian/US Military Representatives Meeting comprising the defence force chiefs of each country, and the Defence/Defense talks between senior officials, and annual political/military discussions and arms control talks. The web of regular formal meetings is buttressed by direct consultations between the Australian Minister for Defence and the US Secretary of Defense, and by a very wide range of working level discussions, as well as military-to-military links and combined exercises. Consultations between the two countries facilitate extensive co-operative activities including military training and exercises, intelligence exchanges, defence science and technology, communications and logistics co-operation.

1.19 The practical benefits Australia and the United States gain from our alliance during peacetime need to be clearly understood. This Government's review of the ANZUS Treaty in 1983 confirmed the substantial day-to-day benefits of the alliance, as well as identifying its deterrent value. For example, port visits by US warships provide opportunities for ADF combined exercises with advanced technology vessels while at the same time providing rest and recreation facilities for US naval deployments in our region. Similarly, arrangements permitting USAF B-52 and KC-135 aircraft to operate over northern Australia enable the RAAF to exercise and train with these aircraft.

1.20 The United States gains information important to its global maritime intelligence system from Australian surveillance and intelligence gathering activities in an area extending from the eastern Indian Ocean to the South-West Pacific. At the same time Australia has access to the extensive US intelligence resources. This information is not confined to global superpower competition; it also complements Australia's information on political and military developments in our own region.

1.21 Australia also receives preferred status in military equipment purchasing, access to US training courses and doctrine and operational procedures, and opportunities for honing skills in combined exercises. Our agreements with the United States also provide for the supply of munitions and equipment in an emergency, alleviating the need for large-scale stockpiling by the ADF. To this end and to facilitate mutual assistance in war or emergency, our forces will continue to develop their interoperability with those of the United States.

1.22 Privileged access to the highest level of US defence technology helps us develop our own technical capabilities for control of the approaches to our continent. The value of this co-operation is demonstrated by Australia's development of over-the-horizon radar. Australia's scientists have built on access to US technology to produce a radar system which, for the first time in our history, holds out the prospect of broad area surveillance of our approaches.

1.23 This Government is developing a more mature working relationship with the United States in technology transfer. One example is Project Nulka, an agreement concerning a defensive system for warships.

1.24 The defence relationship with the United States gives confidence that in the event of a fundamental threat to Australia's security, US military support

would be forthcoming. Short of this major, and less likely situation, we could face a range of other threats that we should expect to handle independently. It is not this Government's policy to rely on combat assistance from the United States in all circumstances. Our alliance with the United States does not free us from the responsibility to make appropriate provision for our own security.

1.25 While it is prudent for our planning to assume that the threshold for direct United States combat aid to Australia could be quite high in some circumstances, it would be unwise for an adversary to base its planning on the same assumption. Allowing for the possibility that the threshold for direct combat assistance could be relatively high does not, in any case, preclude the possibility of other forms of assistance. US intelligence and logistic support would markedly enhance our operational effectiveness, while political and economic pressures could weaken an opponent's resolve.

1.26 Australia's alliance with the United States is and should remain a genuinely equal partnership. Benefits accrue to both of us from our enhancement of the general Western security position. Australia benefits from the deterrent effect of the alliance and our enhanced self-reliant military capability. The United States benefits from the value of the joint facilities to the central balance, the intelligence exchange, and Australia's support for American military activities in our area. The development of our independent military capabilities and our defence activities in the region are also beneficial to US security concerns.

Australia and New Zealand

1.27 Australia and New Zealand share a defence relationship which is of basic importance to the security of both countries, because of our common history and traditions, our proximity, and our shared strategic concerns.

1.28 New Zealand has an important role in the South-West Pacific, where it has strong political, economic and military ties—in some cases more substantial than our own. Defence co-operation with New Zealand covers a very wide range, including assistance to the island states, maritime surveillance, combined exercises and training programs, exchanges of technical and operational information, and co-operation in intelligence, defence science and logistics.

1.29 It is important that Australian and New Zealand forces maintain and develop their ability to operate together. We will continue to promote defence co-operation and operational compatibility with New Zealand, reflecting the considerable potential for strengthening our defence relationship.

1.30 The extent to which this potential can be realised will depend, among other things, on the compatibility of the equipment and capabilities of the two forces. Priority must therefore be given to co-ordinating our policies on these matters.

1.31 The dispute between New Zealand and the United States over visits by ships and aircraft has seriously damaged the defence relationship between our two allies. Australia is not a party to the dispute. It accepts, however, that

access within reasonable environmental constraints for ships and aircraft is a normal part of an alliance relationship. Australia regrets that New Zealand policy detracts from that relationship.

1.32 This Government's policy has been directed to preserving our important bilateral defence relationships with both the United States and New Zealand, and ensuring as much as possible that the underlying framework of the trilateral relationship under ANZUS is maintained so that full co-operation can be resumed should current New Zealand policies on warship visits change.

1.33 These goals have been achieved. The ANZUS Treaty remains in place, and the mutual obligations under it between Australia and the United States and between Australia and New Zealand are preserved. This includes the security commitments embodied in the treaty.

Australia and the region

1.34 This Government believes that an Australian defence force able to deal effectively with the most credible challenges to the nation's sovereignty is the best contribution we can make to the continued stability of our region. Meeting our requirements for the defence of Australia will provide the Government with practical options for use of elements of the Defence Force in tasks beyond our area of direct military interest in support of regional friends and allies. It is therefore not necessary that such contingencies should themselves constitute force structure determinants.

1.35 This Government has sought to strengthen the commonality of strategic interests between Australia and the countries of South-East Asia and the South-West Pacific. We share a common concern with these countries to strengthen regional stability and to limit the potential for external powers to introduce tension or conflict. This Government is concerned to sustain a favourable regional strategic environment for Australia. In the years ahead, our capacity for security co-operation in the South-West Pacific and South-East Asia will expand because the numbers of major naval vessels in our fleet will increase, our Air Force will have an in-flight refuelling capability, our Army will be more mobile and deployable, and the Defence Force generally will have a better surveillance and patrol capacity.

1.36 Australia is a major power in the South-West Pacific. We have the capability now to deploy significant forces there. The current substantial capacity of Australian forces to contribute to security in the South-West Pacific will be further enhanced by the Government's decision to increase our air and naval deployments to the region and to provide practical assistance in such fields as maritime surveillance and patrol and hydrography. In the event of a regional conflict, the forces we are developing for our own defence would have direct utility in the South-West Pacific.

1.37 Our regional responsibilities have been formalised in the Five Power Defence Arrangements (FPDA) in South-East Asia and in our Defence Arrangements with Papua New Guinea.

1.38 Under the FPDA, Australia, New Zealand and the United Kingdom co-operate to support the security of Singapore and Malaysia. A squadron of RAAF Mirage fighters stationed at Butterworth in Malaysia is our primary contribution to the Integrated Air Defence System which operates under the FPDA. This contribution will be maintained after the F/A-18s replace the Mirages by rotational deployments of F/A-18s to Butterworth and Singapore, supplemented by F-111s.



One of Australia's new front line aircraft the F/A-18 pictured over Malaysia during a goodwill tour to Indonesia, Singapore and Malaysia to demonstrate its capabilities.

1.39 Australia will also continue to deploy an Army rifle company to Malaysia under the FPDA, and to operate Orion long range maritime patrol aircraft from Butterworth to maintain surveillance over the South China Sea and north-east Indian Ocean. Consistent with developing policies of Malaysia and Singapore, our South-East Asian FPDA partners, the Government believes that there is a scope for increased emphasis on logistic arrangements in regional military co-operation. Regional countries are increasingly providing for their own combat capabilities.

1.40 Our close defence relationship with Papua New Guinea is formalised by an agreement which commits us to consultation and co-operation on the full range of defence issues. Our historical ties give Australia a strong interest in the security of Papua New Guinea, and this is reinforced by Papua New Guinea's

geographic location which makes its security a major factor in our own strategic outlook.

1.41 Beyond these formal obligations, Australia recognises its responsibility to contribute to regional security through bilateral defence relationships with all the countries in our region. These relationships are described in detail in Chapter 2.

1.42 All of our defence relationships, formal and informal, impose responsibilities on Australia. Our self-reliant defence posture encompasses the capability to meet these responsibilities for regional security.

Australia's defence capacity and influence

1.43 We have dealt with the need for Australia's defence capabilities to give priority to our own national security tasks. A requirement has also been identified for Australia's defence policy to take account both of developments in the South-West Pacific and South-East Asia—our region of primary strategic interest—and to be capable of reacting positively to calls for military support further afield from our allies and friends, should we judge that our interests require it. The Government believes that Australia can deal with both, but to do so we must be alert to priorities, for the range of potential circumstances which bear on our security is very wide.

1.44 There are limits to our defence capacity and influence. As a nation of only 16 million people, Australia's ability to influence the state of world security is limited. We are remote from traditional allies and from situations important to them. These factors, on balance, favour our security. But they also impose considerable constraints on our ability to influence distant events through our defence activity. Even if Australia were prepared to spend much more on defence, we could not aspire to match the military power or influence of major powers.

1.45 There must be a realistic attitude to our defence capacity and influence. Our international political concerns and interests will always be more far reaching than our defence capabilities. There are no current or prospective situations beyond our own region where Australia's direct strategic interests require a significant defence role or local circumstances offer scope for one. Proposals for Australian defence involvement beyond our region of primary strategic concern will be considered on their merits.

1.46 Clearly the possibility of deployments beyond our region should not determine the structure and capabilities of the ADF. Should the Government wish to respond to developments in areas other than our own, the capabilities being developed for our national defence will, subject to national requirements at the time, give a range of practical options.

1.47 Australia can also usefully contribute to peacekeeping operations. They

allow Australia to contribute to wider Western interests on a scale appropriate to our circumstances. Development of the Defence Force for national security provides the Government with the capability for such contributions. It is not necessary to develop forces especially for peacekeeping. Like contributions to allied efforts, such contributions can be mounted from the force-in-being.

1.48 It is, however, in our own region where we have the most realistic prospect of substantial defence influence and involvement. Australia is the largest military power in the South-West Pacific. And in South-East Asia Australia's power projection capabilities, especially for strike and interdiction, are considerable by regional standards. It is these considerations that have an important bearing on the Government's decisions about the day-to-day activities and operations of the Defence Force. They relate to Australia's military posture in its own region and to its political standing there.

Chapter two

Australia's strategic environment and defence interests

2.1 The Government's approach to defence is to seek to reinforce the positive aspects of Australia's strategic environment and to provide an appropriate measure of insurance against future uncertainty. The fundamental elements of that approach are based on:

- maintaining and developing capabilities for the independent defence of Australia and its interests;
- promoting strategic stability and security in our region; and
- as a member of the Western strategic community working for a reduction in the level of tension between the superpowers and limiting the spread of influences in our region inimical to Western interests.

2.2 Australia's defence policy has regard to an area of primary strategic interest, covering South-East Asia, the eastern Indian Ocean, and the South-West Pacific. Our defence policy in this area is supported by high level visits and consultations on strategic matters, military exercises and naval visits, maintenance of effective defence co-operation programs, and by showing our competence and capability in the operation of modern military equipment.

Australia and the global balance

2.3 The Government reaffirms Australia's natural association with the Western community of nations and our attendant defence interests and obligations.

2.4 Australia's security, like that of all nations, ultimately depends on preserving stability in the superpower relationship and avoiding war between them, above all nuclear war. The continuing expansion and refinement of nuclear arsenals poses a challenge to the maintenance of stable deterrence. Thus, the Government attaches importance to the achievement in both the nuclear and conventional fields of verifiable arms control agreements that provide for more stable deterrence at the lowest possible level of armaments, particularly nuclear armaments. Australia is actively engaged in international efforts to enhance global and regional security through such agreements. We recognise that progress in achieving agreements is slow. In the interim the Government considers it important to maintain a stable strategic balance to support mutual deterrence and as a basis for substantive arms control and disarmament negotiations.

2.5 The joint Australia/United States defence facilities each have an

important role in helping to maintain stability in the strategic relationship between the superpowers and in helping to deter war. While Australia might appear remote from the areas of the globe where any nuclear war would be fought, it would inevitably be profoundly affected by such a conflict. The North West Cape Naval Communication Station supports our interest in the avoidance of nuclear conflict by contributing to United States confidence, and Soviet awareness, that in the event of the United States being attacked, it would still be able to communicate with its ships and submarines in the Indian Ocean and Western Pacific, and make use of their retaliatory capabilities.

2.6 United States strategy is to deter war. Australia supports the concept of deterrence. The United States considers that deterrence of the Soviet Union depends, in part, upon the credibility of the US capability for nuclear retaliation in the event of major Soviet attack upon the United States or its allies. The United States maintains a range of nuclear forces for this purpose. But ultimately deterrence rests on the possession by the United States of strategic nuclear forces which would be secure from destruction in any Soviet first strike and in these circumstances be able to inflict massive retaliatory damage. Relative to other elements of US strategic nuclear forces, the US ballistic missile submarines are the most survivable and for this reason among others will remain second strike retaliatory weapons. In view of the strategic importance of the security of the US submarine force and the advantages of very low frequency (VLF) communications for security, such vessels will continue to rely on the US VLF network of which North West Cape is a part.

2.7 There is now greater duplication in the US VLF communications network, and in other systems used to communicate with submarines such as the TACAMO airborne VLF relay system, than when the station at North West Cape was established. As a consequence of this redundancy no one component of the US VLF network is vital, but North West Cape remains an important element in the US military communications network, and so continues to support deterrence of war.

2.8 North West Cape is also available to relay VLF or HF (high frequency) communications to United States and Australian surface ships and submarines whenever they are operating in its area of reliable coverage. The support available from North West Cape to conventional forces in our region further supports deterrence of war by assisting the United States to counter Soviet conventional capabilities. Enhancement of US conventional capabilities, by increasing the range of US conventional options, can reduce the risks of escalation to the nuclear level should conflict occur. It thus represents a disincentive to the initiation of conventional or nuclear war by the Soviet Union against Australia, the United States, or other US allies.

2.9 The facilities at Pine Gap and Nurrungar enhance stability by contributing to verification of arms limitation measures of the United States and the Soviet Union and to timely United States and Australian knowledge of developments that have military significance—including early warning of ballistic missile attack on the United States or its allies. New communications links are being established with the headquarters of the ADF in Canberra to give the Government and its advisers access to data from the facilities immediately.

2.10 The most important part of the US early warning system with which we are involved is known as the Defence Support Program. This program would provide the United States with its earliest warning of intercontinental ballistic missile attack. The additional warning time assists in minimising the risk of nuclear conflict arising through accident or miscalculation, and so supports stability in the superpower strategic relationship. It complements the warning provided by ground radars, and contributes to the reliability of the US early warning function. The Soviet Union also operates a system comparable to the Defence Support Program.

2.11 The benefits and costs for Australia in co-operating with the United States in the joint defence facilities have been carefully evaluated by the Government. The operations of the joint facilities do not involve derogation from our sovereignty. They serve Australian and US interests. They are jointly managed and operated by the Australian and United States Governments and their operation is governed by a set of principles designed to protect Australian sovereignty and interests. All their functions and activities require, and have, the full knowledge and concurrence of the Australian Government. Australian personnel are fully involved in all aspects of the operations of Pine Gap and Nurrungar, and they have access to all of the product. The presence in Australia of these facilities carries with it a risk that, in the event of superpower conflict, the facilities might be attacked by the Soviet Union. However, the risk that such conflict might occur, either deliberately or as a result of some accident, is very low and the functions carried out by the joint defence facilities help to ensure that this remains the case. Were Australia to cease our co-operation in the joint defence facilities there would only be adverse consequences for international security and higher risk of global war. This would neither serve Australia's interests nor those of the international community generally.

2.12 The ability of the Defence Force to provide security for Australia in a nuclear war would be very limited and cannot be a determinant of our planning. However, we should maintain an ability to follow developments in and provide basic training for defensive and protective measures against nuclear attack.

2.13 Nuclear conflict between the superpowers is a remote possibility but if such a conflict were nevertheless to occur, the joint defence facilities could come under attack. Accordingly, there is a need for the appropriate government bodies at various levels to undertake basic civil defence planning for the protection of the population in the areas concerned.

Australia and the region

2.14 As already mentioned Australia's region of primary strategic interest lies in South-East Asia, the South-West Pacific and the East Indian Ocean. Political, economic and military developments in this area are of fundamental concern to Australia.

2.15 Successive Australian governments have underscored the region's importance to us. Whilst Australia's interests in the area are primarily advanced

by diplomatic and economic activity a security component in Australia's relationship is appropriate. This conforms to local expectations, advances Australia's other interests and enhances the mutual interest of Australia and the countries in the region in regional strategic stability.

2.16 Australia's military co-operation with South-East Asia is modest. Local defence capabilities have increased over recent decades as regional countries meet the objective of ensuring that threats to their own security can be met from their own resources. In the South-West Pacific our defence influence is much more substantial.

2.17 In general, Australia's strategic environment is favourable. The development of regional armed forces is oriented toward capabilities appropriate to national defence and internal security. The Government acknowledges nevertheless that, as with the capabilities being introduced for our national defence, contemporary weapons systems are likely to provide modest force projection capabilities particularly in maritime and air assets. Such developments in the region must always be a matter for careful consideration by the Government.

2.18 Without affecting the relatively favourable nature of the region's strategic environment, there have been a number of political and economic developments with the potential to affect regional stability and security. Of particular concern is the possibility for interference by external powers in regional affairs.

2.19 Whilst the remainder of this chapter focuses on Australia's area of primary strategic interest and area of direct military interest it should not be thought that the Government is indifferent to military developments elsewhere in the Indian Ocean and Pacific areas. The situation of major trading partners such as Japan, an understanding of all the interests pursued by the United States in the Pacific, and our own developing relations with China are all matters of substantial interest to the Government. The ADF participates in exercise activities and goodwill visits in this broader area. It is, however, well beyond our capacity to extend to this area the defence co-operation programs that are maintained in our region of primary strategic interest. Support for the positions of allies and friends in this region must be predominantly diplomatic.

South-East Asia

2.20 Major changes in regional relationships or internal instability in individual countries in South-East Asia could introduce or expand uncertainties in Australia's strategic prospects, even though developments may not be directly threatening to us. Tensions between nations in South-East Asia could provide opportunities for increased involvement in the region by unfriendly or contending powers.

2.21 There is a need for continuous review and evaluation of strategic developments affecting the region. It is in respect of the potential impact of developments in the region upon Australia's area of direct military interest, that

is, the area in which developments can most directly affect our security, that Australia's defence interests are primarily engaged.

2.22 The development of our role in support of regional security is sustained by the history of our co-operation with the nations of South-East Asia since the Second World War. Over that period our strategic perspectives in relation to the region have undergone a marked change. In the 1950s and 1960s, Australia's defence policy was influenced by strong anxiety about the ability of the newly independent countries of South-East Asia to withstand domestic insurgencies and external pressures. Our assessments now depict a regional situation with underlying strengths, albeit with many uncertainties.

2.23 The formation and consolidation of the Association of South-East Asian Nations (ASEAN)¹ has not only benefited those nations but has also been of strategic benefit to Australia. It has reinforced the ability of each member to withstand external pressure and has fostered the development of a broad political and strategic consensus which supports Australia's long-term security prospects.

Prospects for change

2.24 Uncertainties in South-East Asia relate principally to:

- economic and political problems in the Philippines;
- the unresolved question of the political future of Cambodia and the pressures that arise out of the military and political situation there on Thailand and on relations between Vietnam and ASEAN members;
- the establishment of the Soviet military presence at Cam Ranh Bay.

2.25 The Philippines continues to face serious economic and political problems. Much remains to be done before the Philippines can be confident of stability and prosperity.

2.26 Two issues in the Philippines are directly relevant to Australia's strategic outlook. The first is the insurgency of the New People's Army, which not only threatens the long-term prospects for moderate reforming governments, but also raises the possibility that unwelcome external powers could become involved.

2.27 Secondly, the Philippines makes a significant contribution to regional security by hosting the major US military presence at the Subic Bay and Clarke Field bases which support the US presence throughout our region.

2.28 The situation in Cambodia remains unresolved. Whilst the Vietnamese military presence persists and armed resistance continues in Cambodia the potential for military clashes between Thailand and Vietnam remains. An additional significant element of the conflict is the close interest of China and the Soviet Union. Although a major extension of the conflict is unlikely, its continuation is of concern to the Australian Government, not least because of the potential for more extensive involvement by external powers as the conflict persists.

¹ The ASEAN members are Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, the Philippines, and Brunei. ASEAN is based on political, economic and social links and is not a defence pact. However its success as a cohesive grouping has added substantially to the strategic stability of our region.

2.29 The continued Soviet naval and air force presence at Cam Ranh Bay in Vietnam, and the development of new support facilities there, is a significant concern for Australian defence policy. Cam Ranh Bay is now the largest Soviet military base outside the Warsaw Pact.

2.30 In peacetime, access to ports and airfields in Vietnam is a useful military asset for the Soviet Union. From Vietnam, the Soviet Union undertakes regular intelligence and maritime surveillance missions against US naval units operating in or passing through the South China Sea, it operates against Chinese military forces in the area, and it can deploy its own forces more flexibly to the Indian Ocean.

2.31 The Soviet military presence is not, however, in all respects a political asset to the Soviet Union. There is a central contradiction in Soviet strategy in the Pacific. On the one hand the Soviet Union aspires to pursue legitimate economic interests in the area and to seek friendly relations. On the other hand it is difficult for nations in the region to accept the sincerity of such gestures of co-operation whilst the Soviets engage in a substantial build-up of their Far East Fleet and use their relationship with Vietnam to expand their military presence in the region through Cam Rahn Bay.

2.32 The Soviet Union does not enjoy naval or air dominance in the region and in the event of global conflict its military assets in Vietnam would be very vulnerable. Nevertheless, the continuous presence of Soviet warships and military aircraft, based in Vietnam, is an adverse element in regional security perspectives.

Australia's defence activities

2.33 This Government's approach to the support of security in South-East Asia concentrates on practical co-operation with the countries of ASEAN in activities of common defence interest. This approach is consistent with the significant steps each ASEAN country is making to strengthen its own ability to resist external strategic pressures.

2.34 Australia has encouraged the development of a pattern of consultations with regional countries on security prospects and policies; reciprocal visits by defence representatives and military units; combined exercises; specialist consultancy arrangements to examine common problem areas; training; and joint projects concerned with the development and support of specific defence capabilities.

2.35 Developments in the archipelagic states, and especially Indonesia, are of great strategic significance to us. Australia sees a stable Indonesia as an important factor in its own security. Not only does Indonesia cover the majority of the northern archipelagic chain, which is the most likely route through which any major assault could be launched against Australia, it also lies across important air and sea routes to Europe and the North Pacific.

2.36 Indonesia forms a protective barrier to Australia's northern approaches. It possesses the largest military capability among the ASEAN nations, but this capability has been designed primarily to ensure internal security and to protect its very large and geographically diverse island chain.

2.37 Australia seeks to maintain a sound and constructive defence relationship with Indonesia. The Australian Government considers that such a relationship should recognise fundamental features of our respective political and social systems.

2.38 A practical approach is also being followed in our defence activities with the other countries of ASEAN. Combined land exercises in Australia with Malaysia and Thailand are well established. Scientific and industrial co-operation with Malaysia and Thailand has opened up promising areas for further development, including commercial opportunities for Australian defence industry. Similarly, technical co-operation, for example in the area of aircraft maintenance with Thailand, is providing mutual strategic and economic benefits. Singaporean forces train in Australia and exchanges are maintained in a number of specialist areas. Normal defence contacts with the Philippines have been resumed since the accession to power of President Aquino. Since Brunei achieved independence bilateral defence contacts have expanded, and include training in Australia, joint maritime exercises, and the sale of Australian manufactured defence equipment. The Government will continue to provide, where appropriate, financial resources to facilitate these co-operative activities and seeks to develop our defence relationships with the countries of ASEAN along these general lines.

2.39 Australia's longstanding defence interests in South-East Asia are also reflected in our participation in the Integrated Air Defence System (IADS) and other co-operative activities under the FPDA with Malaysia, Singapore, New Zealand and the United Kingdom. The Government has previously announced that the RAAF presence at Butterworth Air Base in Malaysia is to be maintained after the withdrawal of our Mirage fighters from service by rotational deployments of the new F/A-18 Hornet tactical fighter to Malaysia and Singapore, supplemented on some occasions by F-111 aircraft. The pattern of deployments will enable continued RAAF participation in the series of air defence exercises conducted each year under the auspices of IADS. Through those exercises, Australia will continue to make a significant contribution to the enhancement of Malaysia's and Singapore's air defence capability. The Government has also announced its commitment to continue to deploy an Australian Army rifle company in Malaysia under the auspices of the FPDA.

2.40 Surveillance patrols by RAAF aircraft over the South China Sea and the north-east Indian Ocean will also continue. These patrols are conducted from Butterworth by a continuous detachment of P3C Orions. They enable Australia to monitor naval movements in an area of increased strategic interest for us since the establishment of the Soviet presence at Cam Ranh Bay. The information from these flights represents a valuable contribution to Australia's intelligence data base. They also represent an effective and practical contribution to shared regional strategic interests.

South-West Pacific

2.41 Although remote from areas of major contention, the South-West Pacific is important for Australian defence planning because of its geographic

proximity to Australia. Important lines of communication with Australia's major trading partner, Japan, and with our major ally, the United States, run through the region. The countries in the region lie across important trade routes and approaches to Australia's east coast, where most of our major population centres are located. An unfriendly maritime power in the area could inhibit our freedom of movement through these approaches and could place in doubt the security of Australia's supply of military equipment and other strategic materiel from the United States.

2.42 During the 1970s, Australia's strategic focus in the South-West Pacific widened as a number of the island states attained independence and as the region received increased attention from external powers.

2.43 The small size of the national economies and the limited defence forces in the South-West Pacific fundamentally affect the ability of these countries to protect their interests. In view of significant regional concerns over sovereignty protection and economic vulnerability, bilateral Australian defence co-operation has been mainly directed toward those areas. Emphasis is being given to activities that benefit the island nations in the development and protection of maritime and other resources. Assistance is also continuing to provide technical and infrastructure support. Defence activities in the South-West Pacific thus support and complement Australia's development assistance.

2.44 The entry into force of the Treaty of Rarotonga instituting the South Pacific Nuclear Free Zone is a gain for Australian and regional security. The Treaty also protects Western strategic interests in the region.

Prospects for change

2.45 A number of recent developments affecting the South-West Pacific have increased the region's potential to pose strategic problems for Australia. While not directly threatening, they raise questions about the changing political and strategic patterns of the region.

2.46 Amongst these developments is the establishment of links between some regional states and external powers with strategic interests potentially inimical to Australia's. The Soviet Union has had a fisheries agreement with Kiribati and now has an agreement with Vanuatu. Further access by the Soviet Union, especially the establishment of a presence ashore, would be an unwelcome development because of its potential to enhance Soviet influence in the region. Soviet involvement in the region is at a low level at this stage. However, its existence imposes an obligation on Australia and its allies to properly develop and co-ordinate their security policies.

2.47 There has been continuing tension between the United States and the South-West Pacific countries over the negotiation of fees for access by US commercial fishing fleets. An agreement has now been reached and the island states will receive substantial payments from the United States. More serious damage to Western interests in the South-West Pacific has been inflicted by the continuing French nuclear testing program and tension over the future of New Caledonia.

2.48 These developments damage Western standing in the South-West Pacific and contribute to an increasingly complex political and strategic situation. The fragile and narrowly based economies of the South West Pacific countries will continue to present opportunities for exploitation by external powers.

Australia's defence activities

2.49 As with the ASEAN countries, in the South-West Pacific Australia has sought to emphasise co-operative activities centred on practical matters of common concern.

2.50 In accordance with the concern of island governments to protect national sovereignty and exercise control over their maritime resources, a considerable proportion of our current defence activities in the South-West Pacific is directed towards the development of national maritime surveillance and enforcement capabilities. A result of these activities will be the development of a set of inter-related surveillance systems that will contribute to the development of regional co-operation and provide information on ship movements in the Pacific.

2.51 To support this, a program of P-3C Orion long range maritime patrol (LRMP) deployments was instituted in 1983. The same year Australia announced the Pacific Patrol Boat project, which will now provide a total of twelve 31.5 metre boats and training and advisory assistance to six South-West Pacific states.² These activities have been complemented by naval visits and bilateral activities aimed at establishing and improving communications facilities and hydrographic skills, as well as the accurate delineation of 200 mile maritime zones.

2.52 In order to build upon and reinforce the defence co-operative activities already in progress in the South-West Pacific and to meet the challenge posed by recent strategic developments, the Government has decided on a number of important initiatives, including:

- increasing the number of RAAF LRMP deployments to the region (arrangements will be made for co-ordination with deployments undertaken by New Zealand);
- increasing RAN ship visits to the South-West Pacific (a policy decision has been taken to emphasise the South-West Pacific at the expense of some of our more distant deployments);
- continued assistance in the fields of hydrography and survey and mapping;
- further assistance to help South-West Pacific countries consolidate their maritime surveillance centres; and
- the provision of training and advisory assistance to assist in fisheries surveillance and enforcement.

² Countries participating in the project are Papua New Guinea (four boats), Fiji (four boats), Solomon Islands, Vanuatu, Western Samoa, Cook Islands (one boat each). Tuvalu is presently considering participation in the project.

Papua New Guinea

2.53 Apart from traditional ties, Papua New Guinea is by virtue of its geographic location an important factor in Australia's security. Because of the potential strategic implications, Australia would be understandably concerned should a hostile power gain lodgement or control in Papua New Guinea.

2.54 The relationship of Papua New Guinea with its neighbours will always be a matter of interest to Australia. Although there have been minor incidents along the border with Indonesia, mainly as a result of the activities of the Free Papua Movement, both Papua New Guinea and Indonesia have demonstrated a co-operative approach to management of their common border. The Government welcomes the signing of the Treaty of Mutual Respect, Friendship, and Co-operation between Papua New Guinea and Indonesia in October 1986.

2.55 Australia has a continuing close relationship with Papua New Guinea in defence matters. Defence relations include Australian support in the development of the Papua New Guinea Defence Force and, at the working level, continuing close contacts between our two Defence organisations. This support increasingly comprises provision of specialist advice and exchanges of views on areas of defence policy and capabilities. The relationship also provides for formal consultation on matters affecting common security interests should either Government consider this necessary.

Antarctica

2.56 The Government strongly supports the provisions of the Antarctic Treaty, which prohibit military use of the territory. The national interest of Australia lies in ensuring that Antarctica remains demilitarised and free from political and strategic competition. So long as Antarctica remains demilitarized, no threat to the security of Australia itself is in prospect from or through that region. There is no requirement for defence activities to support our territorial or economic interests in Antarctica or for defence involvement beyond the present limited logistic support for Australia's national effort there.

2.57 The Government's policy is to pursue political, as distinct from military, solutions to any disputes. Growing international interest in the exploitation of continental and off-shore resources in Antarctica is stimulating pressures for challenges to the Treaty. With the other Treaty consultative parties, we are working on means to preserve the Treaty.

The national strategic setting

2.58 The fundamental conclusion arising from the preceding sections is that Australia's bilateral relations with its major allies and with neighbouring countries are basically sound, notwithstanding the political fluctuations which inevitably occur from time to time. No neighbouring country harbours aggressive designs on Australia, and no country has embarked on the development of the

extensive capabilities to project maritime power which would be necessary to sustain intensive military operations against us.

2.59 This is not to argue that we have no need for defence, or for alliance. On the contrary, strategic developments in the superpower relationship have the potential to undermine our security. Moreover, uncertainties inherent in relationships in our region could pose serious problems for Australia's defence were political relationships to deteriorate.

2.60 Australia's defence interest is not confined to the presence or absence of military threat itself. We are concerned with developments that could either support Australia's security or have the potential to lead to a military threat. Prudent defence policy must insure against uncertainties and the risk that they might resolve unfavourably to our interests.

2.61 Defence planning has to contemplate the possibility that developments in our region could lead to direct military pressure or attack upon Australia. Such a development could generate requirements for defence effort fully committing the level of resources currently or prospectively allocated. In keeping with these judgements, provision for self-reliant national defence commands priority in this Government's defence planning. It guides the structure of the Defence Force and development of supporting infrastructure (see Chapter 4).

2.62 Our military capabilities and competence must command respect. This basic competence and preparedness in matters of our national defence are the necessary foundation for our defence influence further afield.

Australia's physical environment

2.63 Australia's national strategic setting is shaped in a unique and enduring way by basic facts of geography and location, population size and distribution, and our national economic resources and infrastructure. Australia is distant from the main centres of superpower rivalry and the major areas of instability in the world. The great majority of our population and industrial centres are in the south-east and south of the continent, naturally protected by vast ocean surrounds and the inhospitable tracts of our own country to the north and north-west. While our manpower base is small, we have a relatively large and sophisticated economic, scientific, technological and industrial expansion base. By regional standards, this gives us a substantial capacity to repair, support and develop our own defence equipment. Our research base and industrial infrastructure, however, cannot develop and manufacture at an economic cost the full range of high technology equipment which characterise contemporary defence forces (see Chapters 5 and 6).

2.64 More fundamentally, our geographic location and the lack of land borders, combine to provide us with natural defences against conventional attack. To minimise the problems involved in conducting combat operations at great distance from main support areas, it is most likely that any adversary would first seek to secure bases in the archipelago to our north. Even so, the mainland of our nearest neighbour, Papua New Guinea, is 160 kilometres from

the Australian mainland, and Indonesia is some 250 kilometres away at its nearest point. The Asian mainland is almost 3 000 kilometres away.

2.65 These basic facts of our geographic location indicate that conventional military attack against Australia would most likely be directed against the northern part of the mainland, its maritime approaches or off-shore territories. The corollary is that those basic facts of geography highlight the fundamental importance for Australia of maritime forces³ capable of preventing an enemy from substantial success or control in those areas.

2.66 The military capabilities required for a large-scale conventional attack on Australia, in particular the naval and air power to project and sustain substantial operations against Australian forces, are beyond those currently possessed by any regional power. Given the long lead times and large costs involved in establishing the kind of major military capabilities which would be required, this is likely to remain so for many years. And if a regional country were to develop the motivation and capability, the features of our northern environment would complicate large scale conventional military operations. Shallow waters and large tidal variations make navigation difficult and generally hinder maritime operations. Any land forces that were to elude Australian opposition and overcome the maritime obstacles would find themselves in a harsh and inhospitable continent.

2.67 The paucity of population and of transport and other infrastructure in northern Australia, and the nature of the land, would tend to focus military operations of substance on a few areas, for example, airfields, off-shore resource projects, shipping in coastal waters, port facilities, and communication and transport links. Australia would be dependent on many of these facilities for logistic support of forces deployed along the northern coast, and an attacker would want to take them if he were to sustain a lodgement or make progress.

2.68 While all of these factors limit the potential for major military operations against Australia, many of the same factors introduce potential vulnerabilities which could be exploited by alternative, and less costly, military operations. The use of limited military force to harass, for example, remote settlements and other targets around northern Australia, our off-shore territories, or shipping in proximate areas, would pose significant problems for us. The physical characteristics of northern Australia and its distance from the major support bases in the south and south-east would also complicate our operations. In those circumstances, our vast coastline, the rugged terrain, the distances between population centres or settlements, the remoteness of our island territories, the location of our northern resource zones, and the requirement to protect focal areas and the approaches to our major ports, could be exploited to our disadvantage.

³ The term 'maritime forces' means naval and air forces.

National defence interests

2.69 Arising out of the foregoing discussion, Australia's principal national defence interests can be summarised as:

- the defence of Australian territory and society from threat of military attack;
- the protection of Australian interests in the surrounding maritime areas, our island territories, and our proximate ocean areas and focal points;
- the avoidance of global conflict;
- the maintenance of a strong defence relationship with the United States;
- the maintenance of a strong defence relationship with New Zealand;
- the furtherance of a favourable strategic situation in South-East Asia and the South-West Pacific;
- the promotion of a sense of strategic community between Australia and its neighbours in our area of primary strategic interest;
- the maintenance of the provisions of the Antarctic Treaty, which ensure that continent remains demilitarised.

Chapter three Priorities for force development

3.1 The defence interests outlined in the preceding chapters of this Policy Information Paper place considerable demands on Australia's resources. To use those resources most effectively, priorities for force development have to be determined and applied rigorously.

3.2 While it is not possible to predict the future, it is possible to indicate the principal contingencies that must shape Australia's defence planning. This Government believes that Australia must be able to provide its own defence in circumstances, presently quite unlikely but still credible as a future possibility, of a threat posed to Australia by a nation operating within our own region. Such developments would place great demands on our defence capacity. Our force structure planning will ensure that we have, and can be seen to have, the capacity to respond effectively to them.

Possible forms of military pressure against Australia

3.3 While a principal objective of our defence policy is to reinforce the positive aspects of our strategic setting, prudent defence policy must also insure against the uncertainties we have noted in our strategic circumstances and the risk that they could result in direct military pressure or attack on Australia. In considering possible forms of military pressure against Australia, account has to be taken of the enduring features of our national strategic setting described in Chapter 2 and the consequent military capabilities an opponent would require to mount and sustain hostilities. We must also compare the military capability required for this task with the existing and projected military capabilities of regional countries. And we have to consider the political and military rationale attaching to different forms of military pressure against Australia.

3.4 Chapter 2 described how basic facts of our geographic location, the lack of any shared land borders, and the difficulties of our northern environment, combine to provide Australia with substantial natural defences against major, conventional military attack. Equally, it noted that many of the same factors introduce potential vulnerabilities for Australia which could be exploited by an adversary using alternative, and less costly military options. Even the use of limited military force against Australia would pose significant problems for us and would have the potential—given the vast expanse of our territory and maritime approaches—to require a defence effort heavily committing our defence resources.

Low level conflict

3.5 Successive reviews of the strategic basis of Australian defence policy have noted the advantages an opponent might see in a campaign of sustained low level military pressure against Australia. The use of military force to harass remote settlements and other targets in northern Australia, our off-shore territories and resource assets, and shipping in proximate areas¹ could be decided upon as an attempt to demonstrate Australia's vulnerability and thereby force political concessions over some disputed issue. In these circumstances, the attacker could hold the operational initiative. Attacks could be widely dispersed and unpredictable. Relatively modest military pressure could oblige Australia to respond with quite disproportionate effort.

3.6 The adversary could, if he wished, sustain low level activity virtually indefinitely. For Australia, there would be the cost of undertaking a wide variety of operations and of maintaining forces at a high state of readiness. Our operations would require highly effective intelligence and surveillance capabilities and forces with significant range, endurance and mobility.

3.7 Within the capacity of its forces, the adversary would seek to hold the initiative in relation to escalation. Australia's need to counter this and to provide against localised escalation would add significantly to the scale of our military effort. In such circumstances there would be arguments for retaliation against the attacker. A potential aggressor would recognise this and may seek to constrain Australia's options through careful control of the scale and intensity of the military harassment and possibly through the use of covert, and therefore ostensibly disavowable, operations. While broader political considerations might caution against a policy of retaliation, its prospective advantages, both as a means of deterring attack, or if that fails deterring escalation, reinforce the need for capabilities providing the option for a retaliatory response.

3.8 The capability required to mount and sustain low level military pressure against our nation already exists in the region of primary strategic interest to Australia. This is not to identify any country as a potential threat. It is merely to address the factors which shape assessments of the possible time-scale over which threats could emerge. The existence of capability necessarily implies that threats could emerge over a shorter time-scale.

Escalated low level conflict

3.9 Within Australia's region of primary strategic interest the capability also exists to mount more conventional but still limited military operations against Australia. These could take the form of increased levels of air and sea harassment, extending to air attacks on northern settlements and off-shore installations and territories, attacks on shipping in proximate areas, mining of northern ports, and more frequent and more intensive raids by land forces.

3.10 Essentially this level of conflict would be characterised by the attacker supplementing or substituting unconventional tactics and forces with military

¹ The issue of threat to Australian trade is discussed in more detail in a separate section later in this chapter.

units prepared to confront our forces direct. This would carry risks for the attacker. His calculations would need to take account of our force structure and the probability of his forces suffering heavy attrition through clashes with the ADF and the expectation that escalation would allow Australia greater freedom in the use of its strike assets. He would also need to assess the risks of international repercussions and, most significantly, the reaction of Australia's ANZUS allies.

3.11 The limits of escalated low level conflict would be set at any one time by the military capabilities that could practically be brought to bear against Australia's interests. In determining the forms of military activity that could be credible, account needs to be taken not simply of the existing and prospective capabilities of other countries, but also the extent to which they could realistically be applied. Without the development of a significant operational support capability, which would require the commitment of resources over several years, an attacker's ability to conduct escalated operations over a wide area or for an extended period would be limited.

3.12 To have significance for our planning, potentially opposing capabilities must be assessed in terms of their ability to project military force against Australia in the face of our offensive and defensive capabilities, and in terms of the rationale that would underlie possible forms of military action, including their potential to trigger the direct involvement of our ANZUS allies in the conflict.

Summary judgements

3.13 The possible time-scale attaching to the development of low level and escalated low level conflicts dictate that the ADF should be capable of countering them essentially from the force-in-being. The ADF should therefore be able to conduct such operations as maritime surveillance, interdiction and protection tasks, including mine countermeasures. There may be a need for offensive strike, especially against maritime targets. As noted previously, although constraints would apply to strike against land targets in the adversary's own territory, the ability to conduct such operations would allow an important option.

3.14 Ground and other forces (such as air defence) would be needed to protect the bases from which our forces were operating, to conduct offensive action against such enemy forces that had crossed the sea and air gap, and to protect the military and civilian infrastructure and the population. Operations would usually be joint, and their conduct may require naval, air and land forces to deploy at short notice for sustained operations at a considerable distance from their main bases. ADF operations can be expected to be conducted concurrently over widely dispersed geographic areas.

More substantial conflict

3.15 No regional country now has the capability—nor the motivation—to sustain high level intensive military operations against Australia. Military attempts to take control of the maritime approaches to Australia and secure lines of approach for major ground forces would require substantial military

expansion with external support or assistance. Such an expansion would involve long lead times and be clearly evident to us. Meanwhile, the adversary would have to assume that Australia would expand its military capability to maintain a relative advantage.

3.16 The invasion and subjugation of Australia would involve exceptional difficulties. Huge distances, determined military opposition, and a harsh environment would have to be overcome in successfully transporting and protecting an invasion force. And unless an adversary gained control of our major population and industrial centres in the south-east, enemy forces lodged on the mainland would face eventual defeat as we mobilised our national effort, with allied support, to cut off their lines of communication and support.

3.17 Short of invasion of the continent, the forces that any adversary would need to attempt and sustain a major assault on Australia would also be substantial. The skills and equipment required for an opposed amphibious landing are specialised and extensive. Very few nations have this capability and there is no evidence that regional countries are developing or intend to develop their force structure in this way. The assets required to transport and resupply a lodgement force, and to protect it against our determined attack, would be large. They would be at risk to pre-emptive attack as they assembled prior to transit, and vulnerable during transit and when coming ashore.

3.18 The development of military capabilities to the stage where such operations could be seriously contemplated would imply dramatic change, not now in prospect, to a belligerent and provocative external policy on the part of a neighbouring country. Alternatively it would require major strategic lodgement in the northern archipelago by an external power, also now a remote prospect given the increased strategic resilience of our ASEAN neighbours. The interests of nations other than Australia would be threatened by the arrival in the region of such a power.

3.19 The maintenance of the vitality of our alliance relationship with the United States is obviously important as an insurance against higher levels of conflict. It provides us with confidence that assistance would be forthcoming in the event of substantial military attack on Australia or its direct interests. Moreover, United States action would be most unlikely to await the emergence of a major threat. The dramatic strategic changes that would precede such a threat would inevitably impinge on important interests the United States has in the region. Major strategic lodgement in the archipelago by an external power would affect such interests and would provide strong impetus for the United States to institute countermeasures.

3.20 These considerations provide considerable reassurance against the possibility of major attack. Nevertheless, because of the severe consequences if such threats emerged over a longer time-scale, Australian defence policy and force structure planning cannot ignore them.

3.21 The maintenance of a range of capabilities in the ADF applicable to higher levels of conflict, sufficient to provide a basis for timely expansion, has been endorsed by successive Governments as an appropriate measure of

insurance against the uncertainties in our long term security prospects. Such considerations have led Governments to acquire and develop highly capable maritime and other forces.

3.22 With our present force structure and its development already approved by this Government, we have considerable military capabilities by regional standards. During the period that an adversary would need to develop the motivation, forces and skills needed for a major assault, we would be able to develop our surveillance, maritime and other forces still further. In this, we would be assisted by the relative advantage that is latent in our military and industrial base and our alliance relationship with the United States.

Summary judgements

3.23 In summary, the need to recognise that at some time in the future there could be a serious deterioration in our strategic circumstances means the ADF should contain a level of skills from which expansion to meet the developing threat could occur. As with lower levels of conflict, a priority concern would be to deny the adversary effective use of the sea and air gap. There would be a greater need for strike and other offensive measures against the adversary's military bases and infrastructure, and there would be an increased need for such protective capabilities as mine countermeasures, anti-submarine warfare, and air defence, especially around the bases from which our maritime operations were being conducted.

3.24 Specific implications for ground force development follow from the constraints the sea and air gap imposes on the range and type of ground forces that an opponent could land and sustain against Australia. This has implications for the priority to be given in our force development planning to preparing for large scale conventional ground force operations. The primary function of our ground forces in more substantial levels of conflict would be to defeat those enemy forces that had been able to land on Australian territory. Our ground forces would be required to conduct offensive action against the enemy's forces, to contribute to the defence of maritime and other military bases, and to protect the civil population and infrastructure.

3.25 Against the prospect that the adversary had been able to land and sustain more substantial forces, we need expansion base elements for conventional ground force conflict, but not at a high level of preparedness. The Government considers it is appropriate to make greater use of the Reserves in the expansion base for these tasks, in association as necessary with Regular personnel.

Threats to Australian trade

3.26 Ranging across the levels of conflict addressed in Australian defence planning is the issue of threat to Australian trade by attempted interdiction of shipping on our trade routes and in proximate ocean areas.

3.27 Australia's overseas trade routes are diverse and their comprehensive interdiction would be credible only in the unlikely circumstances of protracted

global conflict. Under those conditions threats to international shipping would affect many countries. Countries which have important interests in the free flow of trade would seek to protect international shipping. Australia would then contribute to wider efforts to protect international trade, operating in our own area in accordance with the procedures of the Radford-Collins Agreement.

3.28 Australia enjoys a high degree of economic self-sufficiency. We are a net exporter of energy and self-sufficient in food. The economy has basic features which have enabled previous short-term or sporadic interruptions to trade—through industrial action—to be accommodated, though with inconvenience and economic cost. While our long term prosperity certainly requires a healthy level of commodity exports (exports now account for some 12 per cent of GDP—down from 20 per cent of GDP in the early 1950s), Australia could survive significant disruption of overseas trade in the event of global war, though at a cost to our standard of living. Most of the essential needs of the civil community could be met without external supply if appropriate measures of conservation and rationing were introduced. Those essential items that are imported (including defence equipment and spare parts, industrial machinery, transport equipment, lubricants and rubber) could be stockpiled or alternative sources arranged—even if at higher cost—if there is any change in our current judgement about the remote prospect of global conflict.

3.29 Disruption to Australia's trade could occur in a range of other circumstances, and in particular in those contingencies assessed as credible in the shorter term. Important Australian trade passes through choke points in the archipelago to our north and these passages could be denied to us even during lower levels of conflict. In those circumstances, there would be options for re-routing shipping clear of the archipelago. Economic costs would be involved which, without Government subsidy, could adversely affect the competitiveness of our exports that normally pass through the archipelago. Again, the cost to Australia would reflect itself in reduced living standards and economic impact on some regions of the country, rather than a threat to national survival.

3.30 Effective interdiction of our trade in open ocean areas would require wide area surveillance capabilities such as satellites or over-the-horizon radar with real-time communications links to attacking forces. No regional country now has such capabilities and their development is not in prospect. Surveillance and intelligence information of this kind is unlikely to be made available to a regional adversary.

3.31 Interference with or interdiction of shipping in coastal waters and in our focal areas and ports might be seen as a more practical option for an adversary. The movement of cargo by coastal shipping contributes substantially to the national economy. Its disruption would have a serious effect on such industries as oil and petroleum, mineral ores, fertilizer and chemicals, coal, and iron and steel. Some parts of Australia and some of our remote northern settlements are heavily dependent on supply by coastal shipping. Protecting shipping in our coastal waters is an important priority for our maritime forces.

3.32 Our force structure priorities are guided by these more credible situations requiring the protection of shipping in coastal waters and in our focal

areas and ports. We require significant forces to defend against this contingency, which would be very demanding for our maritime forces because of the distances involved and the dispersion of our focal areas. Such forces could contribute to protecting shipping in the unlikely event of global conflict.

Warning and defence preparation

3.33 Our force development planning reflects an acceptance that higher levels of threat could emerge only after a longer period of time. Our force capability priorities are structured to take account of existing and projected capabilities in regional forces and the possibility that low levels of military threat could emerge over shorter timescales.

3.34 An important objective of defence planning is to provide maximum time for defence preparations. As some of the responses that could be required involve long lead times, the Government requires a constant monitoring of international circumstances, and particularly of foreign military capabilities, to ensure that Australia makes the appropriate military preparations in good time.

3.35 Defence policy depends heavily on a high level of performance of intelligence monitoring and assessment of international events to detect changes in adequate time. Our intelligence organisations have the responsibility for monitoring developments which could produce pressures or threats against Australia's interests and to which a defence response may be needed. Competent intelligence capabilities are an accepted and recognised component of the structure of modern government.

3.36 The concept of warning, and its application to Australian defence planning, has been given careful attention by successive Governments. The concept had its origins in the Strategic Basis documents of the early 1970s, which noted that it would take many years for any regional country to develop the substantial military capabilities required to sustain major operations against Australia. In 1976, the Defence Committee, in its document *Australia's Strategic Analysis and Defence Policy Objectives*, expanded on this point, noting that:

the emergence of a threat would be a late stage in a series of developments and Governments would need to act well in advance of it. Defence planning and preparations over the preceding years should therefore be responsive to any strategic change perceived as having potential for harming Australia's interests

3.37 This definition was reflected in the 1976 White Paper, which observed that defence preparations could not be delayed until a definite threat finally emerged. Preparatory planning and practical measures taken in advance and based on a capable and versatile defence force would substantially reduce the time necessary to organise an effective defence response. The concept of warning does not imply a defence force which is static until a threat has materialised, but one responsive to any significant strategic change with the potential to weaken Australia's security.

3.38 The development of the concept of warning has been part of the process by which Australia has distinguished its unique strategic circumstances from those of its traditional friends and allies in the northern hemisphere. Our allies face direct and identifiable military threats from nearby forces to which they may have to respond in timescales measured in days and weeks. Australia faces no presently identifiable major military threat, except for the remote possibility of global war. All conceivable such threats from a regional power would be preceded by a build-up of forces. The two superpowers alone possess the military capabilities that could threaten Australia with invasion. The United States is a close ally of Australia and it is impossible to see, in that context, what purpose would be served by a major military threat to Australia from the Soviet Union short of global war.

3.39 Any decision to embark upon hostilities as a deliberate act of state policy is a major one for any government to make. There would need to be some matter of sufficient weight in dispute. Tensions would need to develop to the point where one side decides to use force. Australia does not have that kind of dispute with any nation. Much would need to change, therefore, in our international position for the possibility of such conflict to arise. These changes would be evident to us and to our friends.

3.40 There would also be indicators of major physical preparation. Within our region no nation has the ships, aircraft and transportable forces that would be necessary to launch and sustain an effective assault upon Australia. These are among the most expensive and sophisticated forms of defence technology for any country to acquire. Their acquisition and introduction into full operational service could not be concealed and the development of the operational expertise to use this technology effectively in an assault on Australia would take many years.

3.41 Our considerations are also influenced by the preparation necessary for military expansion. Comparison of the expansion times for other countries and Australia to become effective in the use of important military capabilities includes a careful weighing of combat training skills, the ability to operate and maintain advanced equipment, the size and scope of the economic, industrial, and scientific and technical base, and the prospects for assured external support.

3.42 Different considerations apply when low level threats are contemplated. As already pointed out these threats could range from harassment of our maritime zone and offshore rigs or mining of ports at the lower level, through to substantial raids of short term duration on important northern targets or our offshore islands. For such activity, which could heavily consume Australian defence resources, the range of indications is much smaller. The capabilities required are much less and already exist in a number of countries.

3.43 The political problems which might lead to low level threats are more diverse in nature than those which might invite more substantial attack. Less time would be needed for an adversary to prepare and Australia would also have less time to mount a military response. Thus the Government has directed that priority be given in defence planning to ensuring adequate and appropriate capabilities exist within the Defence Force to deal with such pressures.

Australia's defence strategy

3.44 Australia's defence strategy is based on the concept of defence in depth. This strategy and our force structure planning give priority to meeting credible levels of threat in Australia's area of direct military interest. An adversary would be faced with a comprehensive array of military capabilities, having both defensive and offensive components. Australia is not an aggressive or expansionist nation, but an adversary must be left in no doubt about our ability to counter the escalation of his military operations against us, including by use of our strike and interdiction capabilities.

3.45 Defence in depth gives priority to the ability of the ADF to mount operations capable of defeating enemy forces in our area of direct military interest. This means that we must have forces capable of tracking and targeting the adversary, mounting maritime and air operations in the sea and air gap to our north, capable of offensive strike and interdiction missions, having a comprehensive range of defensive capabilities—including air defence, mine countermeasures, and protection of coastal trade—and embodying mobile land forces able to defeat hostile incursions at remote locations.

3.46 The fundamental importance of the sea and air gap to our security gives high priority to maritime (naval and air) forces capable of preventing an adversary from substantial operations in that area. There could be a need to be able to conduct operations against the bases that an adversary was using for his attacks on us, and against his infrastructure. As our maritime forces would not be able to prevent an adversary from at least limited use of the sea and air gap, a primary task for us would be the protection of the bases from which our maritime forces operated. Ground forces would also be needed to take offensive action against the forces the adversary had landed, and, with other force elements, to protect other areas of the military and civil infrastructure and population.

3.47 For successful operations in all levels of conflict our forces need to have effective capabilities with good range, endurance and mobility and be trained to operate in a harsh environment. The communications needed for command and control, and the logistics organisation needed for resupply, have to be designed to operate effectively over great distances. In the event of conflict, logistics would be particularly demanding and there would be a need to make best use of our civil assets.

3.48 In developing forces with the required characteristics, the prudent application of advanced technology plays an important role. In many cases the ability to apply advanced technology effectively provides the only real solution to many aspects of defending our vast continent and our interests in surrounding maritime areas. This reinforces the need for continuing national and defence expertise in selected areas of science and technology (see Chapter 5). Nevertheless, high technology equipment is very costly. Assessments of the value of constructing weapon platforms in Australia must involve a careful evaluation of the strategic requirement for maintaining or developing local capabilities. The important requirements are to be capable of sustaining and

supporting operations in our area of direct military interest, to develop those capabilities that can be efficiently produced from our own resources, and to adapt and maintain equipment in the Australian operational environment.

3.49 In relation to the question of operational readiness, the forces we would require to deal effectively with the types of military threats that could arise in the shorter term need to be maintained at a high state of readiness. This does not mean that all such units should be at uniformly high readiness but we need to be confident that they could become effective, deploy, and sustain operations in an appropriate timescale.

3.50 Readiness will be enhanced by increased training and basing in those areas of the continent most likely to be involved in credible situations. Training in northern areas fosters familiarity with likely areas of operation and thus allows an immediate advantage over an adversary. It allows us to determine more accurately the substantial demands on defence and other infrastructure of this harsh operating environment—for example, the requirements for surveillance, command, control and communications, mobile strike forces and the necessary logistic capacity in remote areas.

Requirements for force development

3.51 The broad requirements which result from the application of the priorities discussed in this chapter can be summarised as:

- intelligence collection, assessment and regular review processes to detect changes in strategic circumstances;
- planning processes which regularly test the consequences for our force structure of the types of military pressure that could arise over shorter time-scales; and
- a defence force able to:
 - undertake current and foreseeable peacetime operational tasks;
 - deal effectively with the kinds of military pressure that could arise over shorter time-scales; and
 - provide a suitable basis for timely expansion to meet higher levels of threat if our strategic circumstances deteriorate over the longer term

3.52 Within this planning framework, priority capability areas include:

- surveillance and patrol operations in our maritime resources zone and proximate ocean areas;
- maritime forces (including mine countermeasure forces) able to protect shipping in coastal waters and in our focal areas and ports;
- ground reconnaissance and surveillance forces;
- mobile ground forces able to defeat hostile incursions at remote localities and protect military and infrastructure assets that support the projection of our maritime power
- air defence within our maritime areas and northern approaches;
- maritime and land interdiction and strike capabilities, particularly the ability to

undertake maritime strike operations in the approaches to north and north-west Australia;

- a capability to sustain operations in areas of Australia and its territories remote from our industrial and logistic support centres; and
- command, control and communications systems commensurate with these tasks

3.53 These basic requirements determine our force structure. The characteristics of range, endurance and mobility that we plan for the ADF provide the Government with practical options for sustaining our defence activities further afield should the need arise.

Chapter four

The Australian Defence Force and its development

4.1 The preceding chapters have drawn conclusions from our strategic circumstances about priorities for the capabilities we need in the Australian Defence Force (ADF). This chapter describes the capabilities of the ADF and outlines the directions in which Government will develop the ADF in the light of these priorities.

Intelligence and surveillance

Intelligence

4.2 A high level of capability in strategic intelligence is fundamental. This allows us to review developments in the defence capabilities and political positions of other countries and to monitor them for changes that could affect our security. Our intelligence priorities focus on those potential changes that affect us directly. We must also, however, be able to assess developments beyond our region of primary strategic interest.

4.3 By continuing to develop our own capabilities and by supporting existing arrangements for intelligence sharing with allied countries, the Government will ensure that our needs for strategic intelligence of high quality will continue to be met.

4.4 The Government plans to enhance our independent intelligence capabilities by establishing a large satellite communications station in Western Australia. This will contribute to Australia's security in our area of strategic interest. The station will be totally Australian owned and will be manned and operated by the Defence Signals Directorate.

4.5 With the operational emphasis of the ADF being focused on lower levels of conflict, our priorities for operational intelligence should be similarly directed. The Government will ensure that, through our own capabilities and co-operation with allies, we shall continue to meet our needs for operational intelligence.

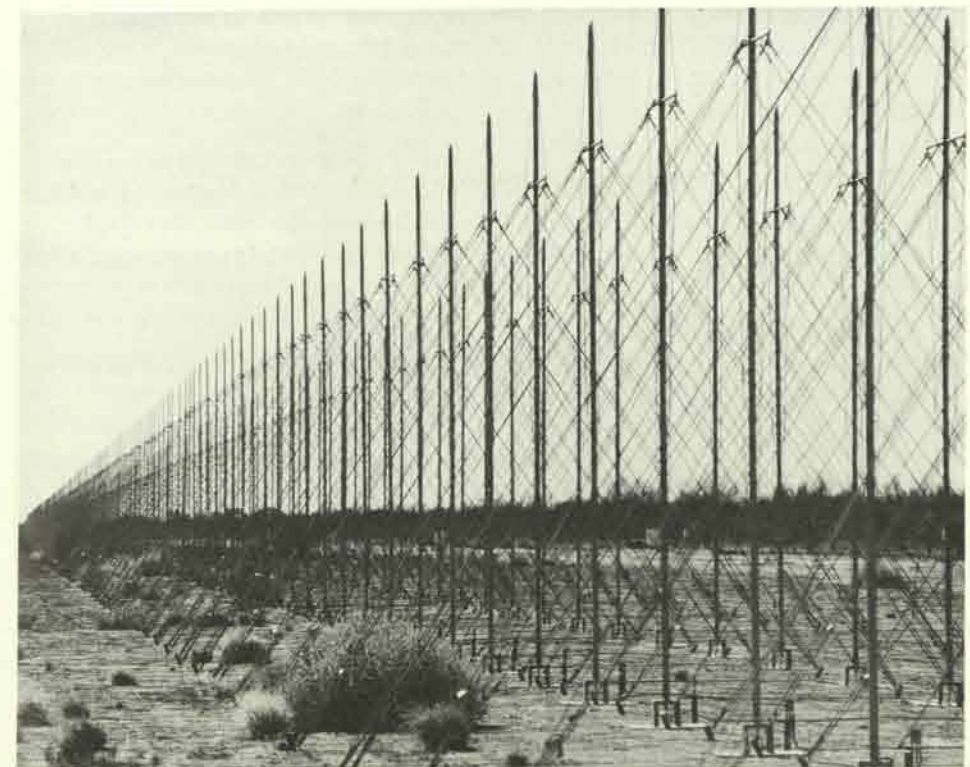
Broad area surveillance

4.6 The ADF requires a manifest capability to conduct surveillance of our vast sea and air approaches. The capability must provide the means to detect, identify and, if necessary, respond to sea and air activity in our sovereign air and sea space.

4.7 This national requirement for broad area surveillance poses formidable problems. Ground based or ship based microwave radars lack coverage beyond about 250 nautical miles for high flying aircraft; for detection of low flying aircraft and surface ships, the range is much more limited. Although airborne early warning and control (AEW&C) aircraft can provide greater coverage, a solution based on the sole use of AEW&C aircraft would be prohibitively expensive.

4.8 Recent technological developments in over-the-horizon radar (OTHR) have led to practicable broad area surveillance at an affordable cost. For Australia, OTHR with its ability to sweep large volumes of air and sea space from a single location offers the only affordable solution. With an OTHR network, we expect to be able to monitor the great expanses of our sea and air approaches and provide long range detection and tracking of aircraft and surface ships. Without an OTHR network, we would remain essentially unaware of movements of interest in our vast maritime approaches.

4.9 The Government has given high priority to the design and development of this network, based on the Australian designed Jindalee experimental radar. The OTHR network will be a basic element of a national system for air defence and airspace control.



The aerial array of the Jindalee over-the-horizon radar. A Jindalee network of up to three radars will be a basic element of a national air defence and control system.

4.10 Up to three new radars have been identified as required and studies are underway on their precise locations. Current planning is for one or two to be sited in north-eastern Australia and one sited in the west or south-west. The system will be developed to improve tracking of surface ship movements.

4.11 The ability of OTHR to control air intercepts will continue to be investigated; however, the precision required for such a task is probably only consistently achievable in the foreseeable future by use of microwave radars, either in the intercepting aircraft or ship or in an AEW&C aircraft.

4.12 The Government has decided to upgrade the existing Jindalee radar at Alice Springs to provide a test bed for scientific, engineering and operational development. This will allow the testing of important new features including specialised transmitters, greater computing capacity and further development of the computer software. The upgrade will also enable Service operators to gain valuable operational experience on OTHR in preparation for the new network.

Air surveillance

4.13 The Government will develop a national system of air defence and airspace control which will integrate the information available from a variety of sources (eg, OTHR, civil and military microwave radars, intelligence sources), collate and analyse that information, and present the results to commanders. Other major elements of the system include the Tactical Fighter Force, an infrastructure of air bases, command and control, and the supporting communications system.

4.14 The RAAF operates three ground based microwave air defence radars, and the acquisition of further radars is under consideration. These can provide greater definition and control in the vicinity of airfields and other important areas. All RAN major combatants have early warning radars for monitoring and controlling their respective environments, which includes the control of aircraft. These radars can also assist in the protection of important coastal installations.

4.15 The combination of an OTHR network and AEW&C aircraft offers considerable potential for airspace surveillance. AEW&C aircraft have the flexibility and speed to respond quickly to targets detected by OTHR. The microwave radar of the AEW&C aircraft has the precision to monitor with great accuracy the movements of a target and, if required, direct an interception.

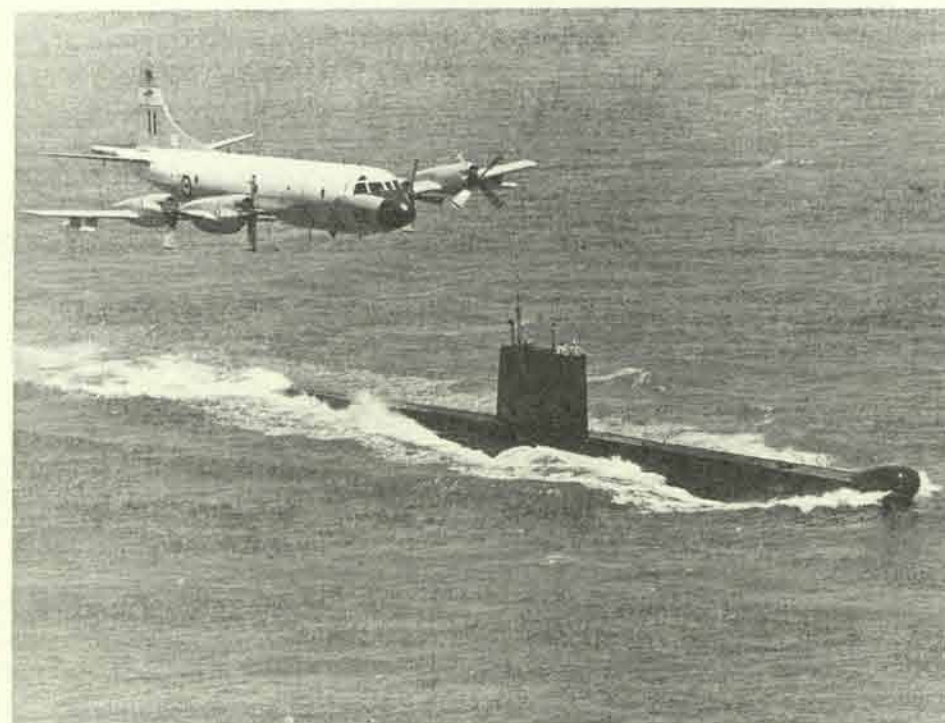
4.16 The Government has requested and the Department of Defence is now evaluating proposals from industry for AEW&C systems. The Government accepts in principle the need for such systems and will include provision in the Five Year Defence Program. The Department is also conducting a major study into air defence surveillance elements.

Maritime surveillance

4.17 The planned OTHR network will form the basis for our system of maritime surveillance. However, even if a ship has been detected by OTHR, it may still need to be intercepted and identified by ship or aircraft. In the vast expanses to our north, this is a formidable task.

4.18 Until the capability of OTHR for the detection of surface ships is better developed, maritime surveillance will continue to be undertaken by long range maritime patrol aircraft, and surface ships. Embarked helicopters significantly increase the surveillance capability of surface ships. The guided missile frigates (FFGs) of our current fleet have this capability, as will future major surface combatants.

4.19 The ADF's fleet of 20 P-3C Orion long range maritime patrol (LRMP) aircraft is expected to remain in service for at least the next 20 years. This aircraft has long range and endurance and can operate from the major airfields across the north, including those on Cocos and Christmas islands. This number of aircraft is adequate for our present and foreseen needs. The Government will improve the capabilities of these aircraft through the acquisition of modern electronic support measures which facilitate the detection and classification of electronic emissions. An update to the radar is also being considered.



Two elements of Australia's maritime surveillance capability. P3C Orion long range maritime patrol aircraft and Oberon class submarine.

Anti-submarine surveillance and anti-submarine-warfare

4.20 The threat to Australia from submarines is low. Nevertheless, because the necessary skills are difficult to acquire and the lead times for adapting and developing anti-submarine warfare (ASW) technology for the Australian environment are long, we need to maintain our expertise in anti-submarine warfare.

4.21 Our first priority for surveillance against submarines is the protection of our major focal areas and their approaches. Although shipping using our southern ports and waters gains some protection from submarine attack by virtue of the distances that an attacker would need to cover to operate in those areas, no such protection is afforded to shipping using northern ports and waters.

4.22 Anti-submarine surveillance and ASW are conducted by units of the Fleet and the LRMP force. The guided missile destroyers (DDG) and destroyer escorts (DE) of the RAN are equipped for ASW with the Ikara ASW missile and anti-submarine torpedoes. The submarines and the FFGs are also equipped with the latter.

4.23 The anti-submarine surveillance capabilities of the Fleet will be considerably enhanced as a result of the Government's decision to purchase Seahawk helicopters for the FFGs. The Sea King helicopters already in service can provide a further land based ASW capability in our major focal areas. In anti-submarine operations, the P-3C aircraft has the ability to lay and monitor sonobuoys, including the Australian designed and produced Barra sonobuoy, to attack submarines with torpedoes, and to lay mines.

4.24 Another important development in anti-submarine surveillance is the surface-towed acoustic array. This new technology, coupled with advanced computer processing, offers prospects of long range detection of modern submarines in some nationally important sea areas, including those of our south. Our investigations of the potential of this new approach will proceed, as a matter of priority, to at least the trials and evaluation stage. Similarly, acoustic arrays towed by submarines will contribute to anti-submarine warfare.

Ground surveillance and reconnaissance

4.25 There is a need for ground force surveillance of our northern areas against the prospect of an adversary's raiding forces crossing the sea and air gap and conducting operations on the Australian continent. To meet this requirement, three Regional Force Surveillance Units manned largely by the Army Reserve have been established to cover the Pilbara, the Kimberleys and Northern Territory, and Northern Queensland.

4.26 To complement the surveillance role of Regional Force Surveillance Units the Special Air Service Regiment can undertake ground reconnaissance to locate and identify any raiding forces operating on Australian territory. In addition, 2nd Cavalry Regiment, which is to be relocated to Darwin, has a

considerable capacity for mobile reconnaissance over a wide area. Specialised equipment will be acquired to expand further our capabilities for surveillance and mobility.



Soldiers of the Special Air Service Regiment during a training exercise near Northam, WA. The Regiment can complement the Regional Force Surveillance units in its surveillance role.

Electronic warfare

4.27 The incorporation of modern technology into defence equipment has led to a greater and more complex use of the electromagnetic spectrum by sensors and weapons. This has increased the importance of being able to exploit an adversary's use of electromagnetic radiation and to restrain his exploitation of ours.

4.28 Our priorities in electronic warfare (EW) reflect the operational needs of lower level contingencies. This gives emphasis to electronic support measures as an aid to surveillance and identification, and to communications EW to support ADF operations. We need to know the transmission characteristics of the friendly, neutral and hostile forces that would be most relevant in such contingencies. The establishing and development of the Defence EW Data Base will be important in this regard.

4.29 In other areas of EW, our priorities concentrate on the need for scientific and technological understanding of EW and its developments rather than on acquiring a high level of operational capability.

Mapping, charting and infrastructure knowledge

4.30 The availability of comprehensive and up to date military maps and charts, together with a detailed knowledge of the environment and its infrastructure, is fundamental to the effective conduct of military operations. The size of Australian sovereign territory and our area of direct military interest makes this an imposing task. Priority in this work is being given to operationally important geographic areas.

4.31 Productivity increases arising from new technology will speed up the production of military maps and related data required by the ADF for military operations. Nevertheless, the mapping of the priority areas of the north will still take many years. Further advances may be possible in the context of Government's consideration of the rationalisation of Commonwealth mapping. Aerial photography for mapping purposes will continue to be conducted using leased aircraft.

4.32 Detailed knowledge of Australia's marine environment is fundamental not only to Australia's commercial interests and purposes but also to the safe and effective conduct of maritime operations, especially for navigation, mine and counter-mine warfare, and submarine and anti-submarine operations. The task is formidable and there are few specialised ships available. Measures are being taken to redress this.

4.33 Two heavy landing craft have been allocated as interim survey ships to assist in the national charting effort undertaken by HMA Ships MORESBY and FLINDERS. The Government is acquiring four survey motor launches. In addition, an Australian designed laser airborne depth sounder is under development. This promises accurate surveying of coastal waters at a faster rate than conventional means. Other options under consideration include the acquisition of more survey ships.

4.34 Oceanographic research is conducted by HMAS COOK. Another vessel will be acquired particularly to assist in the development of towed acoustic arrays.

Nuclear, Biological and Chemical Defence (NBCD)

4.35 No neighbouring country now has nuclear weapons, and their development or acquisition is not in prospect. Similarly, no neighbouring country maintains chemical or biological weapons although, by their very nature, the time-scale for the development of chemical or biological weapons would be much shorter.

4.36 The ADF undertakes some basic training in NBC defensive and protective measures, but such training does not command a high priority. A scientific competence in NBCD matters is maintained to advise on policy and to give direction to ADF training.

Strike and interdiction

4.37 Earlier chapters have noted that although political constraints could limit the use of our strike capabilities in lower levels of conflict, they represent a useful option that a Government would wish to have available. They are also part of the expansion base we need for higher levels of conflict. Two force elements have a primary strike and interdiction function—the F-111 strike and reconnaissance force and the submarine force. Other elements such as the Tactical Fighter Force, LRMP aircraft, surface ships and special action forces can also contribute to this capability.

Strike aircraft

4.38 Our 23 F-111 aircraft represent a unique force in regional terms. They are long range aircraft with the ability to strike sea and land targets with substantial immunity. Four F-111s are fitted to conduct all-weather, long range reconnaissance. Since their acquisition, the F-111s have been updated progressively and their effectiveness enhanced. They have been fitted to fire Harpoon for maritime strike. The Pave Tack precision weapon delivery system, which significantly enhances target identification and weapon delivery, is being fitted. It increases the accuracy with which conventional bombs can be delivered, it can designate targets for the delivery of the laser guided bombs which have been acquired for the F-111, and it could be used with other precision weapons that might be acquired.

4.39 The effectiveness of the F-111 will decline unless some of its avionics and support systems, which are becoming increasingly difficult to maintain, are updated. The introduction of the F/A-18 Hornet raises the possibility that Hornets could be used to replace F-111s lost from the strike force through attrition. A submarine launched missile is another strike option for the longer term.

4.40 The lead times for taking up these options are substantial. Meanwhile, separate options are being developed to refurbish the F-111 fleet at minimum cost to maintain the aircraft in service and to reduce significantly its operating costs.

Submarines

4.41 Our six Oberon class submarines were commissioned into service from the late 1960s. With their updated sensors and weapons they represent the most formidable sub-surface strike force in the region. Their weapons include the Mk48 torpedo, effective against both ships and submarines, and the anti-ship Harpoon missile.



The long range F111 aircraft have a highly effective maritime strike capability. Four are being fitted for all-weather, long range reconnaissance.

4.42 The characteristics of the Oberons (and their replacements) include long range and endurance and the ability to operate independently and effectively in areas where an adversary might have air superiority.

4.43 The Oberon submarines are expected to be paid off during the 1990s as they become more difficult to maintain and suffer operational degradation. The Government is introducing a new class of submarine which will be constructed in Australia. We will acquire six new submarines which, with their modern equipment, high performance and greater availability, will enhance the capability of our submarine force.

4.44 To ensure that the Commonwealth gets value for money in this costly project and to reduce risk, the Government has funded competitive tenders between two different submarine designers and two different designers of submarine combat systems. These tenders have been submitted and are being evaluated. The Government will announce its decision in 1987.

Maritime warfare

4.45 By its very nature, the defence of Australia and its territories emphasises maritime warfare capabilities. The ADF must be able to conduct maritime operations to prevent an adversary from substantial use or exploitation of our maritime approaches. The maritime force structure reflects the requirements for both coastal operations—particularly for mine countermeasures and to counter harassment and infiltration—and ocean operations, which require a higher level of offensive and defensive capabilities.

Surface combatant force

4.46 The present surface combatant force consists of 12 destroyers (three DDGs, four FFGs, five DEs) and 20 patrol boats (15 Fremantle Class and five Attack Class). Two further FFGs are being built at Williamstown Naval Dockyard, and will enter service in the early 1990s, when two of the older DEs pay off. The Government will expand the Navy to a force operating 16 to 17 major surface combatants.



HMAS DARWIN, one of the RAN's fleet of 12 destroyers. Two further guided missile frigates are being built to enter service early next decade.

4.47 Present planning for the development of the surface combatant force envisages three broad levels of capability. At the first level are high capability surface combatants able to contribute to a wide range of operations in both low level and more substantial contingencies. They have sensors and weapons able to provide a wide range of capabilities and a high degree of survivability, and are capable of integrating with allied forces if required. At present, the DDGs and FFGs comprise the first level. The DDGs are being progressively modernised at Garden Island Dockyard, with the last to be completed by 1990. They are expected to remain in service for at least ten years after modernisation. The FFGs are expected to be in service for 30 years.

4.48 The second level comprises ships of lesser capability, suitable for dealing with lesser forms of military pressure which could arise in Australia's resource zones and proximate waters or in Australia's area of direct military interest. A new class of vessel—a light patrol frigate—has been proposed for this level of capability. Eight ships will be constructed in Australia. They will be designed so that their sensors and weapons can be enhanced to enable them to contribute to operations in more substantial contingencies and to complement the first level of capability in operations in the direct defence of Australia. They will need endurance, sea-keeping and combat capabilities commensurate with these tasks, and will be able to embark Seahawk helicopters. A significant influence on their selection will be the need to achieve the required numbers within reasonable cost. The ship will be of a type that will allow the Government to select from a number of Australian yards for construction.

4.49 At the third level are the patrol boats, which are suitable for coastal operations. Their capabilities are primarily defensive. They can undertake national peacetime tasks including fisheries patrol and law enforcement and are also capable of contributing to coastal, port and harbour defence if the occasion demands. The present Fremantle boats will remain in service well into the 1990s. The number of third level vessels required in the longer term will depend on the numbers, capabilities, and cost of the ships acquired for the second level.

Submarine force

4.50 As well as being able to conduct strike operations against surface ships and other submarines, the submarine force can conduct reconnaissance and patrol, and operate in conjunction with the Army's special action forces.

4.51 The Government has recognised that the effectiveness of the submarine force would be enhanced by basing some of the submarines in the west closer to priority operating areas. HMAS Stirling is being developed as a major submarine facility. Oberon class submarines will be home-ported there, as will some of the new submarines. The Government has authorised the construction of a substantial submarine training facility in Stirling and has more facilities under consideration.

Maritime air operations

4.52 Land based aircraft capable of maritime operations are P-3C Orions for surveillance, strike and ASW, and F-111s and F/A-18 Hornets for strike, interdiction and maritime air defence. Ships' systems, such as radars, air defence missiles and guns also contribute to air defence.

4.53 The P-3C LRMP aircraft provide maritime surveillance against surface ships and are able to conduct anti-surface warfare operations using the Harpoon anti-ship missile. The P-3C can also lay mines. F-111C and Hornet aircraft armed with Harpoon missiles perform a valuable role in anti-surface warfare operations. This capability—indeed maritime operations generally—would be enhanced if AEW&C aircraft are acquired.

4.54 The Government decided in 1985 to acquire Seahawk helicopters to operate from our six FFGs. The Seahawks will provide surveillance and weapon targeting, and will conduct ASW operations. The eight light patrol frigates will be able to operate these helicopters. Our Sea King helicopters can undertake coastal and focal area ASW operations from land bases. Navy's helicopter needs for HMA Ships SUCCESS, STALWART and TOBRUK after the Wessex utility helicopters reach their end of life are presently under study.

Mine countermeasures force

4.55 The Government gives a high priority to the development of a capable mine countermeasures force. The present force consists of a single minehunting ship. This is inadequate. A mine countermeasures force will be developed that will ensure that our major ports can be kept open.

4.56 A new class of glass reinforced plastic inshore minehunter (MHI) catamaran has been developed in Australia for hunting mines in inshore waters. The first of two prototype MHIs has been delivered and the second is expected in mid-1987. Subject to successful evaluation and further review of our priority needs, it is planned to acquire at least four additional MHIs.

4.57 Because the waters in which we could need to counter mines vary in their characteristics, we need minesweepers to complement the minehunters. The RAN is developing an innovative Australian concept for acoustic and magnetic sweeps, and will acquire craft-of-opportunity, such as fishing boats and tugs, for the rapid expansion of our mine countermeasures force. This concept involves the use of members of the Naval Reserve whose knowledge of local waters would be of great advantage in mine warfare.

4.58 The mine countermeasures force also needs the capability to counter mines specifically targeted against mine countermeasure vessels themselves. A mine warfare systems centre will be developed in Sydney to support the mine warfare force. This support will include the collation of extensive environmental data on the mining characteristics of our ports.



HMAS RUSHCUTTER, a 31 metre glass reinforced plastic catamaran designed to hunt mines in harbours estuaries, channels and other shallow waters which abound along Australia's coastline.

Amphibious forces

4.59 The Fleet currently includes seven amphibious ships—a heavy landing ship (LSH) and six heavy landing craft. In peacetime and in low level contingencies they provide the sea transport capability of the ADF. An advantage of these ships is their ability to discharge cargo and personnel across a beach or through non-operational ports by beaching and, in the case of the LSH, HMAS TOBRUK, by using helicopters or small vessels.

Afloat support

4.60 Underway replenishment has advantages particularly where naval units are required to undertake sustained operations at long ranges from bases and logistic support. There are similar advantages with afloat maintenance support where ships are operating in areas away from major Naval bases.

4.61 HMAS SUCCESS provides underway replenishment. This vessel was commissioned in 1986 and will join the Fleet as a fully operational unit in 1987. Afloat maintenance support is provided by HMAS STALWART which is due to reach its end of life in the later 1990s.



HMAS TOBRUK, a heavy landing ship of the amphibious force which provides sea transport capability for the Australian Defence Force.

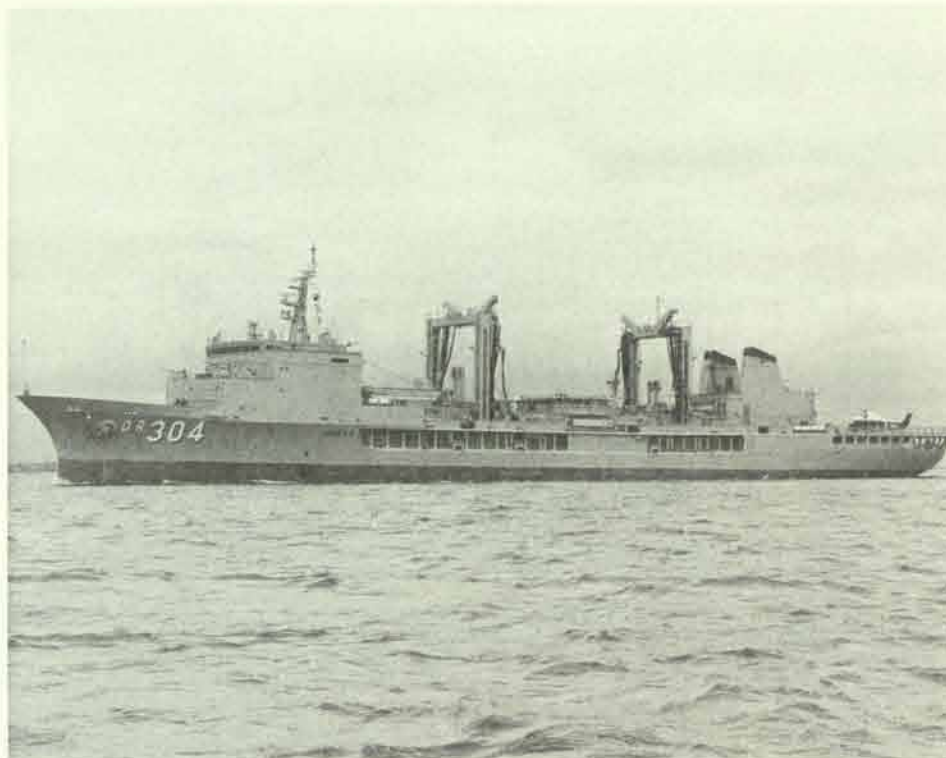
4.62 With major Fleet units homeported on the west coast and to cater for possible expansion, there are advantages in acquiring a second underway replenishment ship. Various options are being examined including the acquisition and conversion of a merchant tanker or the acquisition of a low cost naval vessel.

Naval infrastructure

4.63 The need for the Navy to operate from both the east and the west coasts has been recognised for many years. However, for historic, strategic and economic reasons the RAN has operated primarily from the east coast.

4.64 The homeporting of major fleet units at HMAS Stirling recognises the need for the Navy to be able to operate effectively from both coasts for the direct defence of Australia. Two DEs, two Fremantle class patrol boats, one Attack class patrol boat (operated by the Naval Reserve) and a survey ship are based at Stirling. They will be joined shortly by an Oberon class submarine.

4.65 To inform judgements on options for the future disposition of naval units and the location of infrastructure, the Department of Defence has conducted the Fleet Base Relocation Study. This study reported on all significant



HMAS SUCCESS, the Fleet's underway replenishment ship permits naval units to undertake long range and sustained operations without reliance on shore-based logistic support.

issues and options associated with the relocation of Fleet elements from Sydney to Jervis Bay (NSW) and prospects for increasing ship basing at HMAS Stirling. Issues considered included strategic, operational and cost factors as well as implications for the community. The study noted the advantages of Jervis Bay over other locations on the east coast for a new Fleet base. The Government is committed to examining fully the environmental considerations of what is clearly the most suitable alternative location for the major fleet base in the east, before reaching any decision.

4.66 The Fleet Base Relocation Study reported that the development of HMAS Stirling for up to half the fleet would be a sensible planning objective to be achieved progressively. It is now the Government's intention to move half the fleet to HMAS Stirling. This will enable the Navy more readily to develop expertise in areas in which it would need to operate in contingencies that could arise in shorter timescales. Ships operating in the strategically important areas of the north and north-west and supported from HMAS Stirling will gain a substantial increase in their effective operating time. In this further development at Stirling, there will be an emphasis on avoiding duplication of specialised support facilities already available on the east coast.

4.67 Rationalisation of shore training and support establishments to enable more efficient use of resources is being examined. Relocation of substantial functions to Jervis Bay and HMAS Stirling is probable.

Air warfare

4.68 By the very nature of the medium in which it takes place, air warfare is part of all forms of warfare—maritime, land and air. Consequently, some aspects of air warfare have been covered earlier in this chapter in the sections describing air and maritime surveillance, strike and interdiction, maritime air support, anti-submarine surveillance and anti-submarine warfare. Air support of the land battle is covered later in this chapter. This section covers air defence and the Tactical Fighter Force, ground based surface to air missiles, strategic transport, and northern airfield infrastructure.

Air defence and the Tactical Fighter Force (TFF)

4.69 Airspace surveillance, including the need for a national system for air defence and airspace control, has been discussed earlier. The developments planned for OTHR, the Tactical Fighter Force (TFF), defence communications and defence command systems should result in such a system for northern Australia by the late 1990s. It is a primary requirement for effective air defence.

4.70 Doctrine and operating procedures which effectively integrate all air defence elements, including naval elements, will be developed for the defence of vital assets. This will become increasingly important if the potentials of OTHR and AEW&C aircraft are to be fully realised.

4.71 Within the TFF, the replacement of the Mirage fighter aircraft by the F/A-18 Hornet is proceeding smoothly and, with the associated upgrading of the TFF's air-to-air missiles, represents a major upgrading of capability. Two squadrons and the operational conversion unit will be based at Williamtown (NSW) and the third squadron will be based at the major airfield being developed at Tindal (NT). The last of the 75 Hornet aircraft that have been ordered is planned to be delivered by the Government Aircraft Factories in 1991.

4.72 The Government's decision to modify the four Boeing 707 aircraft of the RAAF will allow the Hornet aircraft to increase its effective range and payload. This number of aircraft is sufficient to provide a training capability, a limited operational capability and a base for expansion. It facilitates the development and acquisition of the complex skills needed for effective refuelling operations.

4.73 The Hornet has capabilities for strike and interdiction as well as air defence. Its existing capabilities include precision weapons such as the Harpoon anti-ship missile and laser guided bombs.

4.74 Modern munitions have greater accuracy and effectiveness and can lead to enhanced survivability of the delivering aircraft. They are costly, however, and the priority for their acquisition needs to be based on a clear understanding of their use in different levels of contingency. Also important are lead times for acquisition, the development of necessary doctrine and skills, and ascertaining performance in our areas of interest. These considerations lead to a policy of acquiring limited stocks of selected types of munition to gain a basic level of familiarity in weapon performance and procedures and to maintain a contingency reserve.

Land based surface-to-air missiles

4.75 The Rapier low level air defence weapon system and the RBS-70 very low level air defence weapon system, which will replace Redeye in 1987, provide close-in protection to airfields, important installations and vulnerable points.



The Rapier (pictured) and the RBS-70, two air defence weapon systems which provide close-in protection to airfields and other important facilities.

4.76 The current capability is one battery of each system. This is a minimum but adequate structure to establish command and control procedures appropriate to more substantial conflict, and to meet the needs of low level conflict.

4.77 Land based area surface-to-air missile systems command a low priority in present strategic circumstances. In more substantial conflict they could be required for the protection of vital areas and points. However, they can be readily integrated into the nation's air defence system if a change in circumstances leads to their acquisition.

Strategic transport

4.78 The strategic transport needs of the ADF are met by the Boeing 707 and C-130E aircraft of the RAAF. These can be augmented by aircraft of the civil air fleet. That augmentation is of special significance in the event of conflict as it offers a major reserve capacity.

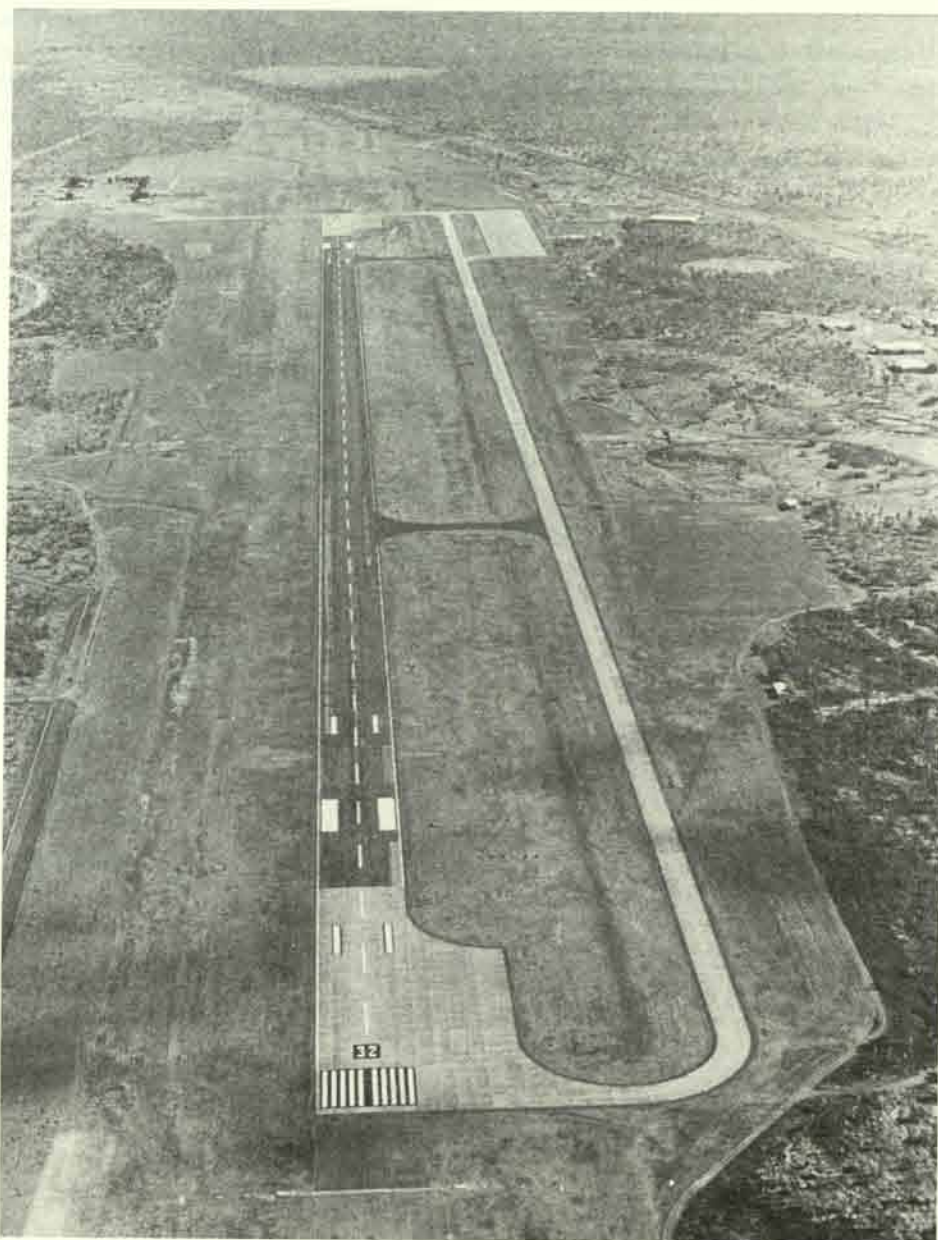


The Boeing 707 aircraft, above, together with C130E aircraft meets the strategic transport needs of the Australian Defence Force. It is planned to modify the 707 aircraft for in-flight refuelling.

Northern airfield infrastructure

4.79 A chain of northern air bases is needed for the RAAF to react effectively to possible contingencies and to support ADF operations across the vast expanses of the north. There are already major manned bases at Darwin

and Townsville, and unmanned bases at Learmonth and Tindal. Stage one of the construction of Derby airfield is due for completion in 1987, and the current development of Tindal will allow the basing of a Hornet squadron there from late 1988.



Tindal airstrip. Construction of RAAF Tindal is proceeding to permit the basing of an F/A-18 squadron there in 1988.

4.80 The Government will build an airfield on Cape York Peninsula. A number of issues, however, have yet to be resolved. For example, site options must be developed, environmental impact studies must be completed, land acquisition resolved, and extensive engineering and design effort conducted after the selection of an appropriate site. The aim is to have the airfield operational as early as possible in the 1990s.

4.81 Civil airfields in the north are also available for military use. They include Port Hedland, Broome, Kununurra, Gove, Mt Isa, Weipa and Cairns. Some can sustain regular military movements while others are suitable only for emergency use of limited duration.

Land Warfare

4.82 The Government's policy is that, in response to the wide range of credible northern contingencies, the Army's structure must include highly mobile forces capable of rapid deployment anywhere within Australia and its territories. The ground force must be able to conduct protracted and dispersed operations in harsh terrain where the existing infrastructure and resources are sparse, and be logistically supportable within Australia's resources. An expansion base is required at a lower priority to maintain the essential skills and capabilities needed for more substantial conflict, together with sufficient units on which to base timely expansion. Elements for lesser contingencies also form a large part of the expansion base. The command, training and logistic framework to support the development, operation and maintenance of the total force is also required.

4.83 These requirements indicate changes of emphasis rather than a significant departure from existing organisation. We need a force structure that includes a light air portable force, capable of rapid deployment; forces capable of following up an initial deployment; and the availability of greater combat power to reinforce deployed formations if necessary. In addition, elements capable of deploying to defend vital defence installations and national infrastructure, and a logistic organisation capable of supporting the deployment and subsequent operations of these forces, need to be given priority.

4.84 This force structure requires no major changes from the current Army organisation based on the 1st Division (essentially Regular), two Reserve divisions (2nd and 3rd), and Training and Logistic Commands. However, some changes are needed to meet requirements for readiness, sustainability, and strategic and tactical mobility.

1 Division

4.85 1 Division will become more readily deployable, with a priority task being to provide the tactical headquarters, formations and units required for credible contingencies. All elements will be required to achieve specific degrees of operational readiness. As a secondary priority, 1 Division will continue to develop and maintain doctrine and skills for the broad range of conventional operations required in more substantial conflict.

4.86 1 Division will remain structured as an infantry division, with 3 Brigade, 6 Brigade, and 7 Brigade (a Reserve formation) providing the formations likely to be deployed to meet shorter term contingencies. 1 Brigade and 11 Field Force Group (a Reserve formation) will also remain with 1 Division, but in different readiness categories from the other formations. This grouping will give flexibility within the division to assign units according to the particular requirements of a contingency.

3 Brigade (Townsville)

4.87 3 Brigade, comprising two infantry battalions, will continue to provide the bulk of the Operational Deployment Force (ODF) and short degrees of readiness will continue to apply. The ODF will remain a lightly equipped air portable force. In addition, to broaden the scope of its employability, Regular units including an armoured personnel carrier squadron and the parachute battalion (from 1 Brigade) have been earmarked to augment the ODF should they be required. Other units that might be required are currently under review, and could include ground mobility, surveillance, reconnaissance, communications and logistics elements. Such units would also be placed on appropriate degrees of notice.

6 and 7 Brigades (Brisbane)

4.88 These brigades are manned and equipped at a level that is adequate for training but not for operations. Consideration is being given to placing the regular elements of 6 Brigade on 90 days notice to move and the Reserve elements of 6 and 7 Brigades on six months notice from callout. Both brigades will be 'rounded out' from other Reserve elements in the event of operational deployment.

1 Brigade (Sydney)

4.89 1 Brigade currently provides the structure for the development of a parachute capability (3 RAR), the mechanised capability (5/7 RAR), and the armoured capability (1 Armoured Regiment in association with 5/7 RAR). A battalion group parachute capability is being developed to secure a point-of-entry for the ODF or alternatively to augment the ODF should a third battalion be required. The parachute group will be placed on similar readiness to other ODF elements. The other battalion of the brigade, together with the armoured regiment, provides the expansion base for mechanised and armoured capabilities.

Logistic support

4.90 To support 1 Division if deployed, a Logistic Support Force will be formed. The force will provide essential third line logistic support. It will be built on the current structure of the existing but smaller Logistic Support Group that is part of the ODF, with additional elements being provided by the Reserve.

Protection of vital assets

4.91 In the event of military conflict, military bases and the civilian infrastructure and population in the north must be protected. Plans will be developed to use both Regular and Reserve forces for this vital task. Planning will proceed on the basis of a possible initial need to use Regular units deployed at short notice, followed by their relief by designated Reserve elements to release the Regular units for mobile offensive operations.

Regional Force Surveillance Units

4.92 The development of three Regional Force Surveillance Units covering the north of the continent is well advanced. These units are North West Mobile Force (Norforce, headquartered in Darwin), Far North Queensland Regiment, and the Pilbara Regiment. Further expansion of these units is constrained by the limited availability of manpower in these regions.



Versatility in operations is needed for Regional Force Reconnaissance Units. Pictured are members of Norforce patrolling the Walker River, NT.

Northern basing

4.93 Focusing attention on the needs of credible northern contingencies raises the issue of basing Regular Army units in the north. The 2nd Cavalry Regiment, a reconnaissance unit currently based at Holsworthy, will be relocated to Darwin.

4.94 2nd Cavalry Regiment will provide a considerable capability for mobile reconnaissance over a wide area, and a modest capacity to deal with incursions. The unit is capable of independent operations in low level contingencies and, with its mobility and communications, can react to sightings by Regional Force Surveillance Units.



Armoured Personnel Carriers provide the capability for highly mobile reconnaissance, a task to be undertaken by the 2nd Cavalry Regiment.

4.95 Northern basing will allow the unit to gain valuable experience in northern operations which, in turn, will inform decisions on the acquisition of future light armoured vehicles. On present planning, the unit's existing tracked M113 vehicles will be replaced with wheeled armoured vehicles carrying weapons and surveillance equipment suitable for credible northern contingencies. A selected range of vehicles will be evaluated under northern conditions.

4.96 The Government has directed that detailed studies commence on the possible relocation of a brigade to the north. Together with support elements and accompanying families, such a deployment would involve some 6 000 to 7 000 personnel. Detailed analysis of the implications of relocating a brigade is required, including careful consideration of possible alternatives. The Government's decision will be influenced by experience with the move of the 2nd Cavalry Regiment.

Offensive air support

4.97 Offensive air support in land warfare can be provided by both the TFF and F-111s. This support can be given in the form of interdiction of the battlefield or close air support for our troops. Close air support is important in all levels of conflict; however, in operations against small units of dispersed forces, restricted and limited battlefield interdiction and close air support could also be conducted by less capable aircraft such as advanced fixed wing trainer aircraft or armed utility helicopters.

Battlefield helicopters

4.98 Helicopters integral to the land force contribute importantly to its combat power, providing reconnaissance, tactical mobility, fire support and logistic support within the area of operations. As battlefield helicopters are an important element of the Army's combat team, the Government has decided to transfer full command and ownership of battlefield helicopters from the Air Force to the Army. This will enhance the ADF's capability at all levels of conflict and, in particular, will improve its ability to bring its combat power swiftly to bear on enemy forces in the dispersed operations which would be typical of the more credible contingencies we face.

4.99 The Government has already decided to acquire 14 Blackhawk helicopters to supplement the 30 UH-1H helicopters already in service. A further 22 Blackhawks will be acquired to complete a company group lift. More Blackhawks will be acquired for a second company group lift and further helicopters for a third company group lift will be considered in examining force development priorities.

Army aviation

4.100 The Army's surveillance, reconnaissance and communications aircraft (44 Kiowa light observation helicopters, and 14 Porter and 11 Nomad fixed wing aircraft) are expected to remain in service until the 1990s. Experience from training in the north will be important to inform judgements on the capabilities needed in the replacements for these aircraft.



The Army's battlefield mobility will be enhanced by the introduction of the Blackhawk helicopter (top) to supplement the capability provided by the in-service Iroquois (lower).



M113 light armoured fighting vehicles

4.101 Light armoured fighting vehicles are essential for mobility, protection and firepower in credible northern contingencies. The Government has decided that the present fleet of 773 M113s, of which 700 are currently on issue, can be reduced to 600 or fewer under current circumstances. Some of the fleet will be upgraded, others placed in storage.

Mechanisation

4.102 With greater priority being given to dispersed low level operations, the present level of mechanisation of 1 Brigade will be restricted to battalion group level. This will provide a suitable level of mechanisation to meet expansion base needs and to contribute to credible contingencies. There will be increased emphasis on training in northern Australia.

Tanks

4.103 1 Armoured Regiment is to become an integrated Regular and Reserve unit, with initially one of its three Regular tank squadrons being converted to Army Reserve. In the light of experience, the composition of the Regiment will be further reviewed.

Artillery

4.104 Acquisition of 59 new field guns (105mm) for the Regular Army will continue, including 36 guns for the Regular component of the Field Force. This Government has approved 46 new guns for the Army Reserve. Acquisition of further new guns for the Reserves will be considered in the light of the current review of the structure of the Army Reserve.

4.105 The Regular 8th/12th Medium Regiment consists of two medium batteries and one field battery, with one of the medium batteries also equipped with field guns. The Reserve 10th Medium Regiment provides general support medium artillery. The balance between Regular and Reserve medium batteries will be reviewed.

Rationalisation of the Reserve structure

4.106 Our requirements for land warfare cannot be achieved without extensive Reserve participation. Accordingly, the Army Reserve structure is being reviewed and changes will be implemented progressively. Since World War Two the Reserve has provided the expansion base for the Army. It will now, in addition, be required to contribute to operations which might arise in the shorter term as part of the total Army, at a level commensurate with achievable degrees of training and readiness. The Government will soon legislate for restricted call-out of Reservists, thus ensuring their availability in credible contingencies.

4.107 New areas of Reserve activity will include integration with Regular forces, particularly in 1 Division and the Logistic Support Force, augmentation of high priority elements of the Regular force, defence of vital assets across the north, and participation in some higher level capabilities in the expansion base such as tanks. These challenging tasks will provide a new focus for the Army Reserve. With some restructuring and changes to roles it will be achieved within a ceiling of 26 000.

Tactical air transport

4.108 Tactical air transport in support of land forces is provided by the C130H Hercules, Caribou, Chinook medium helicopters, and utility helicopters. The Caribou short range transport aircraft will reach the end of its planned life of type in the 1990s. In considering its replacement we will take regard of the potential of our northern airfields (military and civil) to support movements by different aircraft types and the potential benefits of aircraft commonality—such as an expanded fleet of C-130 Hercules. Our studies on how best to meet the ADF's needs for tactical air transport will also consider the future of the Chinook helicopters, newer technologies such as the tilt-rotor and X-wing concepts, and the need for air transport support in dispersed northern operations.

Command, control and communications

4.109 Since the re-designation in 1984 by this Government of the Chief of the Defence Force Staff as the Chief of the Defence Force (CDF), and the creation of Headquarters, Australian Defence Force (HQ ADF), the CDF now commands the ADF with direct staff support being provided by HQ ADF. In conjunction with the Service Offices, HQ ADF undertakes operational military planning for the CDF.

4.110 Under these arrangements, the single Service Chiefs of Staff retain command responsibilities. They remain responsible to the Minister, under the CDF, for commanding their individual Services. In addition, they are responsible for advising the CDF on all matters relating to their Service, including operations, and in raising, training, supplying and maintaining combat ready forces. Under command arrangements approved by the Government in 1986, they are also responsible for providing combat ready force elements to joint force commanders.

4.111 In 1986, Maritime, Land Force and Air commanders were appointed. Supporting operational headquarters are being developed. The joint force commanders report directly to CDF and have responsibility for the conduct of designated joint ADF operations and exercises.



Russell Offices, Canberra the location of Headquarters, Australian Defence Force and part of the Central Office of the Department of Defence.

4.112 These new command arrangements enhance the ADF's operational ability—they facilitate the development of staff procedures and the conduct of joint exercises; and they are expandable if strategic circumstances deteriorate. In a transition to operations, HQ ADF would expand to support the CDF in furnishing military advice to Government and in operational planning.

4.113 The Government has given a high priority to the development of an automated system to support the new command arrangements. This system will be capable of displaying, recalling and transmitting a wide variety of data. The progressive introduction of the Defence Secure Communications Network will overcome the limitations of the present communications system.

4.114 With increased ADF activity and basing in northern Australia, the Government believes there could be value in developing joint administrative and command arrangements in northern Australia. This will be further examined after the new joint operational command system is established and working effectively.

4.115 Further changes will also be made to the organisation of HQ ADF. In 1986, the Government created the appointment of Vice Chief of the Defence Force (VCDF), whose initial task has been to study how force development planning can be co-ordinated better between HQ ADF and the single Service offices. The results of the VCDF's study are being examined. Some initiatives, including a greater centralisation of force development planning under the CDF, have already been taken.

Summary—The ADF and its development

4.116 As a result of this Government's decisions, the ADF in the late 1990s will be a highly capable force better matched to our strategic needs. Through its training and exercising it will be skilled in operating in our unique geographic environment. The Defence Force will have modern weapons, greater mobility and endurance, and better logistic support. A chain of forward bases and facilities in the north and west of the continent will be complete. Our surveillance capabilities, especially for air defence, will be greatly improved. And we will have an effective system for the command and control of the ADF in joint operations.

4.117 Some of the more important developments in the ADF's capabilities achieved and planned for the years ahead are summarised below:

Command, control and communications

- The ADF's command arrangements have been improved by the redesignation of the Chief of the Defence Force Staff as the Chief of the Defence Force, the formation of Headquarters ADF, and the creation of a Vice Chief of the Defence Force at equal rank to the Chiefs of each Service.
- A joint operational command system has been created through the appointment of Maritime, Land Force and Air commanders who report directly to CDF.
- Computer based information systems are being developed to support the decision making of operational and higher level commanders.
- New communication systems to support operations and administration will be introduced, making use of modern technological developments including satellites. The use of cryptographic security will be considerably extended.

Navy

- The number of major surface combatants will increase from the present 12 to 16 or 17 with the introduction of the light patrol frigate. This warship will be built in Australia. It will have the sensors and weapons, the endurance, and the sea-keeping capabilities required for the ADF's operating environment.

- The six new submarines to be brought into service in the 1990s will enhance substantially the capability of our submarine force with their greater availability, higher performance and more modern equipment.
- The high priority given by the Government to the development of mine countermeasures (MCM) will result in an MCM force of at least six inshore minehunter catamarans, minesweepers (probably using innovative Australian technology), and a mine warfare centre. Naval reserves will be expanded to undertake minesweeping operations in key geographical areas.
- A second underway replenishment ship will be acquired, as will hydrographic survey vessels and a trials and research ship. Capabilities for charting will be improved.
- The Government has recognised the need for our Navy to operate effectively from both coasts. HMAS Stirling will be developed as a main naval base for half the Fleet—both surface and submarine forces.
- The anti-submarine capabilities of the Fleet will be considerably enhanced by the purchase of Seahawk helicopters and the development of an Australian surface-towed acoustic array.

Army

- More emphasis will be given to highly mobile forces capable of rapid deployment.
- 1 Division (an infantry division) will be more readily deployable. The ODF will be augmented when necessary by a parachute battalion group, an armoured personnel carrier squadron and other capabilities. The other brigades of the Division will be rounded out and made more ready for operations. A Logistic Support Force will be formed to support 1 Division.
- Responsibility for command and operation of battlefield helicopters is being transferred to Army.
- Blackhawk helicopters will be acquired to provide a company group lift. More Blackhawks will be acquired for a second company group lift. A further purchase for a third company group lift will be considered.
- Studies on the relocation of a brigade to the north have begun. Initially, a reconnaissance unit (the 2nd Cavalry Regiment) will be based in Darwin.
- The Army Reserves will have a greater role, including specific duties to protect vital defence installations and infrastructure, especially in the north. They will also participate to a greater extent in expansion base activities.
- Legislation will be introduced to enable restricted call-out of Reservists.
- New and more capable small arms will enter service throughout the ADF.
- New field artillery with increased range and mobility will be introduced to both the Regular and Reserve components of the Army.
- The entire fleet of general service off-road vehicles is being replaced by new 1,2,4 and 8 tonne vehicles manufactured in Australia.
- Modern surveillance devices and electronic warfare systems will be introduced for land warfare.

- The capability of the M113 light armoured fighting vehicle fleet will be improved. Some M113s will be upgraded, others will be placed in storage. Faster, more mobile wheeled light armoured fighting vehicles, carrying weapons and surveillance equipment suitable for northern contingencies, will be introduced into service.
- 1 Armoured Regiment will become an integrated Regular and Reserve unit.
- An expansion base including mechanised and armoured capabilities, will be retained to allow timely expansion if our strategic circumstances deteriorate. 1 Brigade will develop mechanisation at the battalion group level.

Air Force

- A national system of air defence and airspace control will be developed.
- A combination of an OTHR network and AEW&C aircraft will form the basis of the national system. Up to three OTHR radars will be built. The number of AEW&C aircraft is to be determined; provision has been made in the Five Year Defence Program.
- The capabilities of the P-3C Orion long range maritime patrol aircraft will be improved through the acquisition of modern sensors.
- The introduction of the F/A-18 Hornet into service represents a major upgrading of our air defence, maritime strike, and ground support capability.
- The F-111 strike aircraft will be refurbished, at minimum cost, to reduce significantly operating costs and to maintain them in service. The need for F/A-18 Hornet aircraft to supplement the F-111 fleet as it reduces through attrition, will be considered.
- The four Boeing 707 aircraft will be modified for in-flight refuelling to allow the Hornet to increase its effective range and payload.
- The construction of Tindal and Derby airfields will be completed and an airfield built on Cape York Peninsula.
- A Hornet squadron will be based at Tindal from late 1988.
- Pilot training will be improved by the introduction into service of the PC-9 turboprop aircraft, assembled in Australia.

4.118 With these improvements the Government will ensure that the nation has a Defence Force structured, equipped, supported and trained to assure our security into the 21st century.

Chapter five Supporting the Defence Force— infrastructure, logistics, science and technology

5.1 This chapter outlines the Government's policies for defence infrastructure and logistic support, and our need for indigenous scientific and technological achievements in meeting the challenges inherent in Australia's defence.

Infrastructure and logistics

5.2 The vast area of Australia, its territories, and its maritime approaches, and our relatively small population, strongly influence our requirements for infrastructure and logistic support. For strategic reasons, some operational bases should be located in forward areas in the north and west of the continent. But the separation of our main support bases in the south of Australia from likely operational areas in the north, the likely dispersal of forces across a number of areas, and the limited northern industrial and transport infrastructure, would place heavy demands in a contingency on military transport, supply and maintenance. Civil assets would help relieve the support burden, but the ADF must be prepared to operate from austere forward locations under circumstances where local support would not always be available.

Infrastructure planning

5.3 We need an extensive infrastructure of bases, airfields, communications stations, training and other facilities to support the ADF and its operations. The Government's policies for the development of this infrastructure reflect the increasing emphasis on operations in the north and north-west of Australia, but also acknowledge the concentration of population and industry in the south and south-east. Defence infrastructure development also has regard to wider concerns, including the ability of civil infrastructure to meet defence needs, and the impact of defence activities on the community.

5.4 There is already a defence infrastructure of bases, airfields and other facilities in Australia's north and north-west. These include: patrol boat bases at Cairns and Darwin, the major development at Tindal airfield where an F/A-18 squadron will be based from late 1988, the new bare-base airfield at Derby, due for completion in 1987 and suitable for all types of RAAF aircraft, the airbase at Darwin, and the bare-base airfield at Learmonth.

5.5 The Government has a range of initiatives for the further support of northern operations:

- An airfield will be built on Cape York Peninsula to complete a band of airfields across northern Australia. The Government will proceed shortly to identify a site and commence construction.
- Naval facilities will be progressively developed in the north-west to enhance patrol operations in that region.
- There will be further development of the naval base at HMAS Stirling to allow more surface vessels and submarines to be based there. One submarine will be based at HMAS Stirling from 1987 and others, including some of the new submarines, in later years.
- The 2nd Cavalry Regiment will move from Holsworthy to Darwin



HMAS Stirling is to be further developed to accommodate the additional vessels to be based there following the decision to relocate half of the RAN fleet from Sydney to Cockburn Sound.

5.6 Mining and other civil developments have provided civil infrastructure in the north on which Defence can draw. Civil airfields available for military use include those at Port Hedland, Broome, Kununurra, Mt Isa, Gove, Weipa and Cairns, though not all are suited to the full range of possible defence use. Port facilities at Dampier and Port Hedland, heavy engineering repair and maintenance facilities at mining towns such as Mt Newman, and local communications facilities are other examples of civil assets with defence utility. Nevertheless, specialised maintenance services, and military demands beyond the civil capacity in remote areas, would largely need to be provided from Service resources.

5.7 Future defence infrastructure planning will emphasise longer term options for developing, rationalising and in some cases relocating defence facilities throughout Australia, and the greater use of civil infrastructure.

5.8 While Defence needs to be aware of major civil infrastructure developments from their earliest stages, there is no need for Defence to subsidise such developments, unless defence requirements would add significantly to their cost and if they were not justified on normal civil criteria. Generally neither will be the case.

Defence infrastructure and the community

5.9 Defence is by far the largest Commonwealth owner or user of land in Australia, and most Defence establishments are in or near the more populated areas of the continent. The Government will review its use of Defence properties. It will release those not required for efficient operations and as necessary acquire new facilities including training areas.

5.10 Concern for wider social issues is important in Defence infrastructure planning. Local problems sometimes arise when areas currently used by Defence, or sought for future use, are also wanted for civil purposes. The economies of many local communities depend on employment provided by Defence establishments and the local expenditure they generate.

5.11 Urban growth and increasing constraints on the Army's artillery training in the Sydney area will require the establishment of new training areas. Similar urban pressure has led to Government plans for the movement of the Navy's major armament depot from Newington. The transfer of the armament depot to Jervis Bay will free some 250 hectares for development close to Parramatta and remove the need for lengthy transits of high explosives through urban areas. Development of the Newington site is being discussed by the Commonwealth and NSW Governments.

5.12 Strong arguments exist for moving the main Fleet Base from Sydney (see Chapter 4). Studies indicate that Jervis Bay is the best alternative location. The Government has directed that an environmental impact study be completed as a matter of priority. This study will also embrace the projected move of the Newington Armament Depot.

Logistics

5.13 Defence manages inventories worth several billion dollars, and employs more than 30 000 military and civilian personnel in support functions. There are over 1.4 million line items stocked in defence warehouses and stores, and about 17 million transactions annually in supply computer systems alone.

5.14 This large logistic system is required to support combat operations. There may be less costly ways of providing peacetime support—with smaller inventories, more centralised services, and minimal redundancies. However, such measures, important in commercial enterprises, are not always appropriate for an effective response to military threats.

5.15 In logistics development as in force development, priority will continue to be given to our needs in the types of military conflict that could arise in the shorter term. Within this context, a central policy need is to identify the logistic capabilities important in such contingencies, to determine which capabilities would be readily available to the ADF through national economic development, and to decide which require special fostering in civil infrastructure or which should be integral to the ADF.

5.16 The Government will extend the use of common logistics support, eliminating unnecessary duplication between elements of the ADF and also between Defence and the civil community. For example, quality assurance activities in the munitions factories will be managed by Army on behalf of the other Services; there will be common support services for the Seahawk and Blackhawk helicopters; Army will be responsible for long distance road freight for all three Services, drawing also on other Government and private operators; and a substantially common computer-based supply system will be developed and introduced for Navy, Army and Air Force.

5.17 Australia's civil transport assets will complement ADF resources in defence emergencies. Ground force operations would draw on the civil air transport fleet, with heavier items and replenishment stores being moved by road, rail, pipeline or sea. While sea transport is more efficient for bulk cargoes, improvements to the road system will reduce reliance on coastal shipping for many military stores.

5.18 The ADF must have the ability to draw on appropriate resources in the civil community should the need arise. The task of co-ordinating civil transport resources for defence needs involves complex legislative, administrative and operational aspects. This Government has completed a study on the co-ordination of civil maritime resources, the first major interdepartmental transport planning for credible contingencies for many years. Further planning for co-ordination of defence needs with civil assets will continue, including a response by Defence to the Government's recent direction to the Inter-State Commission to examine the efficiency of interstate transport arrangements.

External logistic support

5.19 The threshold for direct combat assistance from the United States in some circumstances could be quite high, but logistic support from overseas is a different matter. In low level conflict we could expect that overseas resupply would continue. Military action to deny resupply to Australia is well beyond the existing or potential capacity of regional countries.

5.20 The continued vitality of our defence relationship with the United States is an important element in these judgements. The United States is the major source for much of our advanced defence technology and equipment, and in some cases it is the only source. The alliance relationship, supported specifically by a Memorandum of Understanding on Logistic Support, renegotiated by this Government in 1985, makes a substantial contribution to our defence support capabilities.

5.21 The need for weapon systems appropriate to our particular requirements has led to Australia's acquisition of defence equipment from a range of overseas suppliers. Our selection is influenced by whether suppliers are able and willing to provide assurances of timely and appropriate support in all circumstances, and the willingness of the supplier to provide technical detail required for maintenance and possible modification. Difficulties have been experienced with some suppliers being unwilling to provide detail of the computer software that much modern equipment relies on for operation. This is unacceptable and the matter is being pursued. We have obtained Government undertakings from several European countries to ensure their continuing support for defence materiel and intellectual property sourced in those countries. Negotiations are proceeding with others.

Science and technology

5.22 The effectiveness of the ADF depends to a significant extent on the maintenance of a high level of technology. Australia should favour advanced technology where it confers an operational advantage, reduces manpower or life-cycle cost, avoids early obsolescence or the need for additional equipment, simplifies operation and support, or where it is otherwise particularly suited to Australia's strategic circumstances.

5.23 Australia's large area and small population often call for the selection of advanced technology to meet defence needs. This does not always imply the most advanced 'state-of-the-art' equipment. The cost-effective use of technology requires specialist scientific expertise to discriminate between alternative technological options, to modify equipment and in some circumstances to develop indigenous equipment.

Technology and the Defence Force

5.24 This Government's policy of self-reliance in defence calls particularly for the enhancement of our own capabilities for technological support, modification and development. We cannot rely completely on imported technology and offshore technological support. Australia's strategic circumstances pose challenges that sometimes call for unique and therefore local solutions.

5.25 While we procure major defence systems off the shelf from foreign suppliers, there are also some important Australian defence requirements not readily met by systems available overseas. In these cases there is a need for

indigenous Australian development. This applies in particular to intelligence, surveillance and sensor equipment, together with associated command and control systems, which need to be tailored to Australia's specific environment. Such capabilities have priority when local technological development is under consideration.

5.26 Australia will continue to rely, nevertheless, on substantial overseas supply of equipment. This calls for a well-informed understanding of how to specify operational and technical requirements, how to evaluate proposals, and how to be alert for possible technical problems as equipment ages. Specialist technical advice and support are essential in the equipment selection process and in its modification or adaptation following the emergence of problems or shortcomings.

5.27 We need to be able to determine the performance in our own environment of equipment of both overseas and local origin and to modify and adapt overseas equipment as necessary to improve its performance in our likely theatres of military operations. For this we need a detailed knowledge of our physical environment (climate and meteorology, terrain characteristics, optical, infra-red and radio propagation, oceanography and ionospheric phenomena) so that we can understand its influence on the conduct and effectiveness of operations and the performance of equipment and systems.

5.28 Our defence planning recognises that in some circumstances our forces could face an adversary using materiel of Western origin. This would demand the development of specific capabilities for our own equipment.

5.29 These technological needs arising from Australia's geo-strategic circumstances emphasise the importance of defence science and technology in effective Australian defence. A highly proficient defence science and technology capability is essential for proper defence decision making and policy formulation, to provide specialist technical support to the ADF so that the leverage of its advanced technology may best be exploited, and to advise and support industry.

5.30 Defence scientists need to be aware of developments in defence policy, strategic assessments, and operational and tactical concepts. This requires close, continual contacts between defence scientists, the Department and the ADF.

The Defence Science and Technology Organisation

5.31 While parts of the wider Australian scientific community and defence industry make useful contributions to defence science and technology, the required capability does not, in general, currently exist outside the Department of Defence. The different objectives of non-defence research and development organisations limit them to a contributory role, while defence industry has a more substantial part to play in the later stages of development and production.

5.32 The Defence organisation's science and technology capability is concentrated in the Defence Science and Technology Organisation (DSTO). DSTO contributes to the development and implementation of Australian defence

policy by the direct application of science and technology. DSTO provides assistance to the ADF, the Department of Defence, other defence agencies and, as necessary for defence purposes, Australian industry.

5.33 DSTO employs scientists, engineers and technologists in five major laboratories, with divisions sited in South Australia, Victoria and New South Wales and smaller branches in Queensland and Tasmania. It has a total staff of 4300 and an annual budget of \$180m.

5.34 DSTO contributes scientific advice for defence decision making and policy formulation. It provides a specialist technical service to the ADF, helping it to make the best use of science and technology in choosing, using, maintaining and extending the life of its equipment. DSTO maintains a base of skills and knowledge in defence science and technology and develops selected equipment concepts to meet Australian requirements.

5.35 DSTO's research and development effort will continue to concentrate on problems unique to the Australian strategic and natural environment, and on other areas where research and development information is not available to us or where we need to ensure our access to appropriate overseas military technology.

The technology base

5.36 The provision of expert and up to date scientific advice depends on the maintenance of an adequate technology base. So too does the ability to solve the various technical problems which arise in defence equipment. The defence technology base encompasses a wide range of technologies which are important to defence interests, but which may have little or no priority for non-defence research organisations. While DSTO draws to the maximum extent possible on research and development in the wider Australian community, it is necessary to maintain a substantial in-house research and development program to secure the medium to long term technological interests of Australian defence.

5.37 The technology base can never be static. It needs to be continually maintained and enhanced by a program of strategically oriented scientific research, development and other activities, anticipating future trends in defence science and technology. This establishes the knowledge and understanding essential for a timely response to defence technological needs. The maintenance of an up to date technology base in many areas of defence related research has enabled DSTO to initiate the wide range of projects listed in the DSTO program below.

DSTO program

5.38 DSTO's current and future program includes many activities specifically designed to increase Australia's self-reliance in defence. Examples of DSTO's capacity for indigenous development of military equipment for the ADF include: —over-the-horizon radar—following a decade of research and trials by DSTO in Project Jindalee, this Government has accorded high priority to the design and development of an Australian OTHR network. This recognises its great

potential for effective wide area surveillance. Jindalee is a good example of how forward looking research on the technology base can lead to the development of important Australian defence capabilities;

- towed acoustic arrays—DSTO's development of a unique slim-line hydrophone array will enable our new submarines and ships to be fitted with a long, reelable array, adding significantly to our capability for surface and sub-surface surveillance of our maritime approaches;
- anti-ship missile defence—DSTO's research on novel concepts for ship defence has enabled Australia to enter into a unique co-operation with the United States in all stages of design and development in Project Nulka;
- hydrography—the laser airborne depth sounder conceived and developed in DSTO will greatly increase the productivity of the RAN's charting of Australian continental waters
- military survey—the graphic superimposition ocular developed by DSTO increases the Army's efficiency in producing maps from stereophotographs; and
- camouflage—research in DSTO has led to its development of camouflage schemes for a variety of Army applications (including newly developed combat clothing) which are especially effective in the Australian environment

5.39 Examples of DSTO's scientific and technical advice and support for the acquisition of new equipment for the ADF include:

- the mine countermeasures force (both minesweeping and minehunting);
- the new submarine;
- the new surface combatant ship;
- the strike and reconnaissance force—the future of the F-111 aircraft, its equipment and systems;
- national air defence and airspace control; and
- electronic warfare, including its tactical command and control

5.40 DSTO solves a very wide range of technical problems arising in the use of defence equipment. Without this service, the effectiveness and self-reliance of the ADF would be greatly reduced. Examples include:

- investigation of material damage and failure in defence equipment, e.g. cracking in ships' hulls, failures in aircraft and ship turbine engines, cracking in guns;
- development of protective schemes against fatigue and corrosion;
- development of crack repair schemes for aircraft and other equipment;
- investigation of performance of a wide range of sensors and warning systems such as thermal imagers, radars (e.g. in the F/A-18 aircraft) and visual systems;
- investigation and development of electronic warfare systems;
- quantitative analysis of ADF exercises;
- investigations in radio (including satellite) communication;
- battlefield communication frequency management techniques; and

—investigation of ballistic and terminal performance of ammunition and weapon systems

5.41 The indigenous Australian expertise developed by DSTO in its program will continue to add greatly to our national defence capacity.

Technology transfer to industry

5.42 DSTO has an impressive record of technology transfer to industry in Australia. Generally, much of this achievement has been through contracts let to industry for technical support and the later stages of equipment development. Technology transfer has been most efficient and effective when scientists and engineers from DSTO and industry work side by side.

5.43 This Government is resolved to improve on this good record. The Government is taking steps to expand the role of defence industry in research and in the early stages of defence system development. This will result in a marked enhancement of relevant industry capabilities. Another initiative to be explored is the formation of companies to promote technology transfer from DSTO to Australian industry.

International collaboration

5.44 Technology transfer with our allies enables us to maintain a current technology base and to support the acquisition and operation of equipment of high technological content.

5.45 Technology transfer is achieved through bilateral agreements and programs such as The Technical Co-operation Program between Australia, United Kingdom, Canada, New Zealand and the United States. DSTO has collaborated effectively internationally for many years. This has been facilitated by DSTO's unique contributions derived from work done to meet Australian needs and at a quality comparable with world standards.

Government review of DSTO

5.46 This Government recognises the need for special working arrangements within a research organisation such as DSTO. Following earlier Government reviews of DSTO, several reforms have been put in train, including the promotion of research scientists to reward distinguished research performance. In line with the public service reforms being implemented by the Government, management of the DSTO has been modified to provide greater flexibility, increased devolution of authority and improved accountability.

5.47 This Government has noted that short term priorities have caused research for the technology base to fall below a desirable level and seeks improvement in the balance between DSTO's longer term and short term support for Defence.

5.48 The review of public investment in research and development in Australia, released by the Australian Science and Technology Council (ASTEC) in November 1986, stated that DSTO was an efficient, well directed and well managed organisation, and that with increased autonomy and flexibility, it could make an even greater contribution to national goals.

5.49 This Government emphasises the importance of a sound indigenous capacity in science and technology for Australian defence capability. The Government's defence policy will ensure that Australian scientific expertise effectively supports defence decision making, allows the ADF to make best use of advanced technology, and supports industry planning and development.

Self-reliance and support of the ADF

5.50 Defence self-reliance demands a defence force capable of independent operations. Fundamental to this capability are appropriately sited bases, effective logistic arrangements, and the scientific and industrial ability to select, adapt, repair, maintain and develop defence equipment. The Government will continue to give priority to these essential elements of defence support, recognising that defence self-reliance demands increased indigenous capabilities in areas where we previously depended on our allies.

5.51 This Government's policies emphasise that defence infrastructure, logistic and industry support, and defence science and technology are now fundamental for the self-reliant defence of Australia.

5.52 Government policy recognises the need for maximum efficiency, elimination of unnecessary duplication, and judicious use of supporting services available in the national infrastructure, to complement the specialist logistic services and capabilities maintained in the Defence organisation. It recognises the advantages available to Australian defence through the wise exploitation of advanced technology and the need to foster an effective, highly skilled defence science and technology capability directed towards uniquely Australian requirements.

5.53 This Government's policy for the industrial, logistic, and scientific support of the ADF will ensure its ability to conduct independent military operations over the vast expanse of our area of direct military interest.

Chapter six Defence and Australian industry

6.1 This chapter explains the role of industry in meeting the Government's requirement for defence self-reliance. It outlines policies for Australian industry to support self-reliance and lists some major defence projects currently underway or planned for the future that heavily involve local expertise.

Industry and defence

6.2 Since taking office, this Government has implemented a wide range of policy changes to make Australian industry more internationally competitive and export oriented. The new policies are designed to enable industry to adapt to changing market conditions and to take advantage of opportunities presented by technological developments. To meet these objectives, industry needs to be able to design world class products, manufacture and market them competitively, and be less reliant on Government assistance. Changes have included economic policies, such as deregulation of the exchange rate and of the financial sector; general industry policies, for example those applying to research and development, technology development and exports; and industry specific policies for many areas important for defence, such as aerospace, telecommunications, electronics, machine tools, steel, heavy engineering, shipbuilding and ship repair.

6.3 Efficient and successful industry can use the strengths derived from commercial activities to participate more competitively in the relatively small scale production required by the ADF in times of peace. It would also require less of the nation's resources when undertaking larger scale defence production in times of war.

6.4 While a substantial commercial workload can provide a base from which to bid for defence orders, the inverse is rarely true. The peacetime requirements of the ADF are usually too small and, particularly for the acquisition of new equipment, too infrequent and too limited in duration, to provide a viable long term base workload for individual firms or industry sectors.

6.5 Participation in defence projects can, however, bring to industry important technology, introduce new equipment and skills, and develop expertise in aspects of project management and quality control. This can lead to ongoing work in repair, maintenance and adaptation, as well as to participation in other defence projects, and to work on related civil production or for export. The Offsets obligations generated by overseas suppliers can be exploited by Australian industry to supplement Australian defence orders, providing a longer production run, a more viable production base, and access to new technology and markets.

6.6 Defence forces require substantial support from industry for essential equipment, goods and services. Frontline equipment (eg. aircraft, submarines and ships) embodies the leading edge of world technology. Rations, clothing, ammunition and fuel are often technologically ahead of their civil counterparts and employ advanced production processes. Services such as repair, maintenance, transport and communications draw upon civil industrial capabilities and advanced civil technology.

6.7 Australian industry has the potential to participate in a wide range of defence activities in times of peace and would provide an essential underpinning of ADF operations in times of tension or hostilities.

Industry involvement and levels of conflict

6.8 The capacity to maintain, repair, modify and adapt defence equipment to the Australian environment, independently of overseas sources, is of fundamental importance for our combat effectiveness in all levels of conflict. This requires Australian involvement in design, development and production to acquire the necessary detailed knowledge, skills and facilities. Through such work local industry can make an important contribution to the sustained operational effectiveness of our forces in combat.

Low level conflict

6.9 In low level conflict equipment would be used more intensively than in peacetime, especially for surveillance and response tasks. Harsh operating conditions would be demanding of maintenance capacity and spare parts. Requirements for other consumable items, such as ammunition, would be relatively modest. Nevertheless, there would be a need to build up stocks and to ensure adequate supplies of items little used in peacetime.

6.10 Reflecting this priority, over 90 per cent of defence repair and maintenance work is done in Australia and some 70 per cent of replacement equipment and spares are supplied locally. We are largely self-sufficient in military consumables, such as food and the more common ammunition types, and could provide defence needs for petroleum fuels and lubricants other than a few special items required in small quantities. We are self-sufficient in, or have substantial reserves of, industrially important minerals and strategically important chemicals. The capabilities of the manufacturing sector to meet priority defence needs are also adequate, apart from some specialist areas.

Higher level conflict

6.11 Higher level conflict would involve maintenance, repair and adaptation of a wider range of equipment and higher usage of consumables, such as ammunition. The Defence Force would need to be expanded by the acquisition

of selected additional weapons platforms and major systems. Equipment losses would need replacement. The particular requirements would depend on the nature of the conflict.

6.12 Production facilities appropriate only for a major expansion of the ADF take a low priority because of the speculative nature of the requirement, the high cost, and the lack of a peacetime workload to maintain skills so expensively acquired. Moreover, the time required for a substantial threat to develop would allow development of some additional capabilities, as well as redirection of civil industrial capacity for defence work. Substantial industrial sectors in Australia could, if the need arose, undertake defence work, including the heavy and light engineering, motor vehicle, telecommunications, and manufacturing industries.

6.13 Under past policies only some 30 per cent of expenditure on new capital equipment has been incurred locally. Most of the Australian content, has been directed towards capabilities for subsequent through-life support and has often involved substantial subsidies. This reflected the nature of equipment then being procured and the poor competitiveness of Australian industry at the time.

6.14 It is the policy of this Government to encourage the widest possible cost-effective involvement of Australian industry in defence work. Such involvement in peacetime can establish the involvement and familiarity with defence requirements essential to timely escalation in contingencies.

Reviews

6.15 The need for special industrial capabilities and the capacity of key sectors of Australian industry to support defence is kept under review by the Government's principal defence industrial advisers through the Defence Industry Committee.

Priorities for local sourcing

6.16 It would benefit our self-reliance and our industry if all of our defence requirements could be developed and supplied locally. Such a course is simply not feasible for a country of Australia's size, nor indeed for any country other than, perhaps, the two superpowers. Despite such difference in size (US expenditure on defence research and development, for example, is several times the total Australian defence budget) Australian research agencies and industry have a commendable record of developing world class products. It is in "niche" areas, rather than in competing across the board, that Australian industry can expect most opportunities to arise.

6.17 The ADF requires equipment embodying sufficiently advanced technological capabilities to be credible. A careful balancing of indigenous and overseas sources, complemented, where appropriate, by stockpiling is necessary to meet this requirement. In defence equipment development, the Government's

policy is to concentrate scarce indigenous resources in areas where we have special operational requirements and to draw on developments in other countries where they are clearly ahead.

6.18 In practice, there are many suppliers in Australia who can meet the requirements of the ADF for goods and services and who can compete successfully with overseas suppliers on performance, quality, timeliness and price grounds. The Government's policies are intended to increase the number and scope of such suppliers.

6.19 Recognising, however, that Australian industry cannot be expected to be competitive across the full range of defence requirements, the Government in June 1984 agreed that defence policy for industry is an integral part of defence policy and set priorities for the use of defence resources for the development of local industrial capability. The priority requirements are:

- the repair, overhaul and adaptation of military equipment fundamental to Australia's defence in circumstances to which the Government has given priority, and the provision of munitions, spares and other consumable stores for which we could least rely on overseas supply (including stockpiling and other actions for greater assurance of supply); and
- the range of technology and supply and support capabilities (including design, development and manufacture) that meet the longer term needs of the ADF in accord with Government policy and Defence guidance as to an acceptable balance of strategic benefits and costs

6.20 These priorities, and the assessments underlying them, determine the acceptability of cost, time and performance penalties in achieving higher local content in procurements. Such judgements are necessarily made on a case-by-case basis.

6.21 In many cases, other countries are the only practicable source for additional defence items. Australia is dependent on overseas sources for many special materials, components, production equipment and know-how. For example, there is no Australian manufacturer of ball bearings, aircraft grade aluminium or very high performance integrated circuits. In the peacetime economy, manufacturing such items has so far not been viable. Judicious stockpiling is required to reduce the risk of an inadequate response, or even denial of Australian requests for supply.

6.22 Even in times of serious tension or hostilities, when cost and performance penalties for local production would be more acceptable, it will still not be practicable to aim at self-sufficiency, particularly in major weapon platforms and systems. Lead times for establishing local production will also limit the level of self-reliance attainable.

Defence assistance to industry

6.23 Defence and defence-related industrial activities in Australia are eligible for the same Government assistance as industry generally.

6.24 There are, however, differences between the defence and civil markets. There is only one substantial domestic customer, the ADF, providing a small and intermittent peacetime market. There are constraints, resulting mainly from security considerations, on the transfer of international and domestic technology. There are strategic, security and foreign policy constraints on sales of Australian defence and defence-related products to other countries. Potential customers foster national self-reliance and other barriers to their markets, similar, often, to those we apply in our own procurements.

6.25 These differences, and the strategic importance of selected industrial capabilities, provide the only justification for assistance to defence and defence-related industrial activities in Australia additional to that provided for civil industrial activities.

Defence purchasing

6.26 Defence projects can foster the development of managerial and other expertise in Australian industry which can then facilitate growth in related civil or export markets. Policies and procedures have been developed to encourage local firms to bid for Defence contracts and to improve their chances of success. Australian organisations are encouraged to take on the responsibilities of prime contractors to maximise the benefits they can receive.

6.27 Forward equipment plans covering the next five years have been issued for projects in the range \$1-10 m. These will be updated annually. There will be similar releases of plans for acquisitions worth more than \$10m and for repair and maintenance work. Published procurement plans are supplemented by seminars and briefings by Defence officials and direct contact between firms and the staff of the procurement projects. Australian firms must realise however that the plans, particularly for later years, may vary as a result of changes in technology, strategic and operational requirements or budgetary circumstances.

6.28 Briefings will also be provided on the forward program of the Defence Science and Technology Organisation to encourage industry to enter projects at an earlier stage and to seek to exploit, for commercial as well as defence-related uses, the research work being done for the Services and that undertaken to maintain the technology base.

6.29 When seeking Defence business, Australian organisations can register to be advised automatically of Invitations to Register Interest, Requests for Proposals and Requests for Tenders.

6.30 When tender responses are considered, local firms benefit from the Government's Purchasing Preference Policy, which provides a notional discount to the tendered price equivalent to 20 per cent of the value of the local content. This is in addition to notional application of relevant tariffs, bounties, and other forms of general industry assistance.

6.31 Where there are sufficient strategic benefits to justify the additional cost, the Minister for Defence may provide a price advantage in excess of the 20 per cent preference. This measure is used rarely because of the high cost

involved and the low probability that items needing this form of assistance will later become competitive in local or export markets.

6.32 Where there are special Australian requirements for equipment, development contracts are let. These involve higher risks in terms of performance, time and cost than purchasing products already in production and proven in operational use. Hence they are restricted to items not available in acceptable commercial variants or from overseas inventories. The number of such contracts, often for adaptation of equipment for local requirements, is quite high.

6.33 Firms that take advantage of early advice of Defence projects and prospective work will be better placed to develop competitive new products on a commercial risk basis where there are proven overseas products. Such developments are eligible for assistance under general Commonwealth policies, eg the taxation provision for 150 per cent write-off of expenditure on research and development in Australia, and would not usually receive additional assistance from Defence.

Australian industry involvement

6.34 When defence equipment is purchased overseas, or where there is substantial imported content in a local product, high strategic priority is given to independent local repair, maintenance and adaptation capabilities. To assist Australian industry to acquire the necessary technology, equipment and expertise, Defence procurements have a requirement for Australian Industry Involvement.

6.35 Australian Industry Involvement comprises, firstly, 'Defence Designated and Assisted Work' (DDAW), under which elements of the item being procured are required to be manufactured, assembled, tested or set-to-work in Australia. DDAW often incurs cost and delivery time penalties. Such penalties must be justified for each item in terms of their contribution to independent supply and support compared with alternatives such as spare parts stockpiling.

6.36 The second element of Australian Industry Involvement is Defence Offsets. This Government revised the Offsets policy in January 1986. Under the new policy, technology transfer and work to the value of 30 per cent of the imported content of a project valued at \$2.5m or more must be placed with Australian industry. The Offset activities are to lead to internationally competitive industry in Australia and in the Defence area, to the support of self-reliance.

6.37 Defence Offsets often relate to capabilities established in local industry under DDAW. This ensures that a longer product run is provided and the expertise acquired at a cost premium is retained for a longer period. It can reduce the costs attributed to each item associated with setting up capabilities and becoming proficient in their operation.

6.38 Projects initiated in the past, such as the F/A-18 Hornet aircraft, had relatively low local content with correspondingly high requirements for Defence offsets. New projects, such as the submarines, light patrol frigates and OTHR

will have high levels of local content. It will be important for Australian industry to use the linkages established in achieving higher local content to build longer term relationships with overseas principals. These will be essential if opportunities for competitive sub-contracting and exports, previously provided under the Defence Offsets program, are to continue.

Exports

6.39 The export of defence and defence-related products can foster skills and capacity in Australian industry and reduce the costs of indigenous supply and support for the ADF. Successful competition in overseas defence markets benefits our overall trade interests as well as the firms involved.

6.40 In October 1986 this Government announced a package of measures designed to assist Australian firms to gain overseas acceptance of their defence and defence-related products, penetrate markets and provide follow-on support. Important elements of the package include product trialling by the Army, Navy, or Air Force, support in management of acquisitions and spares, and the use of Defence Offsets commitments to assist initial exports and collaborative ventures culminating in exports.

6.41 Successive Australian Governments have, of course, controlled the export of defence materiel. Defence exports must take into account Australian strategic and security interests and the operational concerns of the ADF. As an aligned nation and a responsible member of the international community, Australia opposes private traffic in arms, abides by its international commitments to limit the arms trade and circumscribes the export of defence materiel to countries engaged, or likely to be engaged, in hostilities. Australian controls on defence exports will be administered with a view to achieving a balance of Australian defence, international and commercial interests.

International collaboration

6.42 As military equipment has become more capable and complex, it has also become much more expensive. As a result, international collaboration is now becoming increasingly common as a means of sharing risks, spreading costs, increasing market size, and exploiting specialization and economies of scale. The European nations have been particularly active in collaborative defence equipment development programs and the United States has recently enacted legislation to facilitate participation by its agencies and firms.

6.43 Opposition is growing to the traditional Offsets mechanism used by Australia. Governments are seeking to further restrict foreign access to their defence purchases on security and self-reliance grounds. Hence collaborative projects are likely to become increasingly important for Australia.

6.44 The Government has used the Offsets program and the leverage afforded by major Defence procurements to provide opportunities for Australian industry to collaborate in future developments with major overseas defence equipment manufacturers. Recognising the inherent difficulties in matching

operational requirements, timing and financing, of defence procurements with other countries, we have commenced negotiations of government-to-government agreements to facilitate this process.

Defence industry structure policies

6.45 The Government's policy for industry seeks to provide an environment where industry itself, in consultation with unions and Government, can move towards more efficient and internationally competitive activities. In the defence industry area, belated recognition of fundamental economic, industry and defence factors has caused some severe structural problems. These must be rectified to enable defence industry to conform with the Government's general industry policies.

Competition for defence contracts

6.46 Previous policies have tended to establish important defence capabilities in industry and then allocate them work exclusively. This has established sole sources, which have subsequently lapsed into the poor performance and high costs that often characterise monopolies.

6.47 It is this Government's intention that, unless there are compelling reasons to the contrary, defence work will be allocated on a competitive basis using fixed price (as opposed to cost-plus) contracts, with payments against milestones (rather than elapsed time) and with other incentives for improved performance where appropriate. Wherever possible, opportunities are to be provided for Australian organisations to bid as prime contractors.

Ownership of machinery and facilities

6.48 Consistent with our emphasis on normal commercial practice in our dealings with industry, and to facilitate the commercial exploitation of capabilities built up for defence work, the Government has begun selling much of the Commonwealth-owned machinery and plant now located in industry.

6.49 In future, wherever practicable, industry will own the machinery, plant, licences and other items required to undertake defence work in Australia. The Commonwealth's interest in the ongoing provision of the capability in Australia will be protected by contractual clauses that have such items revert to it, perhaps with some payment, on failure of the company to meet contracted performance or maintain agreed strategic capabilities.

Australian ownership, control and influence

6.50 Australia protects sensitive international defence technology not only by physical security but also by requiring local branches of multi-national firms to isolate themselves from parents of other than approved nationalities. Such policies and procedures are common to our main allies, including the United States, and can be a precondition to Australian access to some overseas technology.

6.51 Australia is now developing a number of sensitive indigenous technologies, of which OTHR and the Nulka anti-ship missile defence system are examples. These require similar protection to that previously afforded overseas technology. Measures are being developed to restrict access to Australian nationals and to enterprises that can demonstrate a very high level of Australian control of their local operations.

Government factories and dockyards

6.52 The Government has recognised that, despite significant past expenditure, the capabilities and capacities of its defence factories and dockyards are ill-matched to our strategic needs. Since the incorporation of the Defence Production Establishments into the Department of Defence in 1984, reform has proceeded on three levels—revision of the relationship between customer elements of the Department and the supplying establishments, restructuring of factories, and reassessment of the work they undertake.

6.53 The Office of Defence Production, is now responsible for the efficient and effective operation of the Government's defence factories and dockyards. As far as possible, those establishments are treated by the 'customer' elements of the Department as simply another source of goods and services. Their maintenance of important, dedicated and exclusive defence capabilities can, however, lead to closer relationships with Defence customers than usually occur with commercial organisations. In place of the contracts that Defence places with commercial firms, work is now sought from Office of Defence Production establishments under Production Management Agreements (PMAs). As far as possible, PMAs are the equivalent of commercial contracts. They include damages for failure to perform to 'contract', in the form of authority to withdraw work rather than as monetary damages. Progressively, the Government expects that the establishments will enter collaborative arrangements with local and overseas industry and will compete against local commercial enterprises for defence and other work.

6.54 In December 1985 the closure of the Albion Explosives Factory in Victoria was announced with the transfer of important capabilities for manufacture of military high explosives and propellants to the Mulwala Explosives Factory in NSW. Sale of the Pooraka Aircraft Engineering Workshops in South Australia was announced concurrently. In July 1986, the Government announced its decision to convert the Government Aircraft Factories (GAF) in Victoria to a Government owned company, Aerospace Technologies of Australia. Membership of the board of the new company was announced in December 1986 and its "takeover" of GAF is planned for 1 July 1987.

6.55 All of the Government factories and dockyards will use commercial costing and pricing procedures from 1 July 1987. Williamstown Dockyard adopted these arrangements when it undertook construction of the Australian frigates.

6.56 In recognition of changing technology and workload, and of the very substantial subsidies of their operations, substantial workforce reductions have been made at individual establishments and at the central office of the Office of Defence Production.

6.57 The highly specialised and excess capacity of some factories is costly and detracts from their ability to compete effectively in wider markets. Wherever possible, such capacity is being minimised or avoided by techniques that reduce the lead time for its establishment to within likely warning times for its use. It will be retained only where it can be shown that difficulties could be expected with overseas supply (eg where sources are limited and likely to be unsympathetic, or where transport to Australia would be difficult), stockpiling is difficult or prohibitively expensive (eg where shelf life is short), and where local commercial production capacity could not be redirected.

Industry and some major procurements

6.58 The procedures for acquisition of major capital equipment have been streamlined and the responsibility of project managers strengthened by the creation, in July 1984, of the Capital Procurement Organisation (CPO) within the Department of Defence. The CPO has placed greater priority on project management training and procedures, and has sought more responsible involvement of Australian industry in defence work in accordance with the Government's defence policies for industry.

6.59 Major defence acquisitions vary widely in the nature of the equipment, the likely sources, the potential for local activities in design, development, production and Australian Industry Involvement, and, hence, the strategy for acquisition. While no two projects are the same, there are some common policies and principles that can be applied. Some examples follow illustrating the application of this Government's policies to procurements with substantial potential for local industry involvement.

Indigenous design and development projects

6.60 The impetus for local design and development projects can come from local research and development undertaken to meet special local requirements (eg OTHR and sonar systems) or as a consequence of research undertaken to maintain the technology base (eg Project Nulka and minehunter systems). The main difficulty in such projects is to manage the cost, schedule and technical risks to produce an acceptable final product. An important consideration is to set up projects in ways that encourage industry to exploit the results in wider markets.

Over-the-horizon radar

6.61 Following a decade of research and trials by the DSTO, the principles of OTHR using reflections from the ionosphere have been largely established, the basic hardware and software elements have been demonstrated in an experimental system, and the Government has authorised the first stage in the establishment of an operational system.

6.62 The Australian OTHR system is adapted to the ionospheric, geographic and strategic circumstances of Australia. Other countries have sought different technical solutions. There is high security attached to the details of such systems, particularly their performance and susceptibility to countermeasures. As a result, there is likely to be scope for exchange of research and technical information with close allies, but, at least at this stage, little scope for exports of complete systems. Australian industry will benefit by acquiring expertise in a number of high technology aspects of the system, applicable in other defence projects, and may be able to develop commercial products based on some elements.

6.63 Australian electronic, software and other companies have been involved in the development of the experimental system and will have an increasing role as the system develops. The importance and sensitivity of the OTHR project will restrict access to Australian nationals and to organisations complying with the Australian Ownership Control and Influence provisions. Within these restrictions, it is the Government's intention that the project be structured to maximise competition in industry involvement.

Anti-ship missile defence system

6.64 Innovative techniques for the protection of ships from some of the more recent anti-ship weapons have been developed by DSTO in co-operation with Australian industry, including the Government's defence factories. Unlike OTHR, Australian needs for such a system are neither unique nor substantial and would command most priority in higher levels of conflict considered more remote in time and less likely. Such a system could, however, be expected to be of considerable interest in other theatres. This raises the prospect of substantial exports.

6.65 There are high costs and risks in taking the experimental results obtained by DSTO through full-scale engineering to an operational system which can be shared by collaboration. A joint project can also bring access to technology and markets which would otherwise be restricted. Such a joint project, known as Nulka, has been established with the US Navy. It will draw on the technology developed in both countries, and their industrial bases.

6.66 Nulka is our first major collaborative equipment project with the United States. It will be managed in both countries through competitive fixed price contracts for defined tasks. This contrasts with previous Australian development projects, such as the Basic Pilot Training Aircraft, which have been run and 'cost-plus' basis with work directed to designated establishments. The approach used in Nulka will place much more responsibility for performance on Australian

industry. That performance will, of course, be an important influence on both future production work on Nulka and prospects for further collaborative projects with the United States.

Local development and production programs

6.67 In some cases, equipment with the fundamental capabilities required by the ADF may be available overseas, but it must be developed, adapted or integrated into a system tailored to our specific requirements. Many defence systems require only minimal local adaptation (eg in their communications fit to major platforms), while others are more extensive (eg submarines, new surface combatants). Such projects require close technical and managerial control to ensure that performance, time and cost goals are met. Local capabilities are required for independent through-life support and subsequent mid-life modernisation and adaptation. Involvement of Australian enterprises in detailed design can ease production difficulties and facilitate incorporation of local components.

Submarines

6.68 It was recognised from the outset that Australian industry had little of the specialised knowledge and experience needed to design and build submarines to replace the present fleet of Oberon class vessels. Industry had, however, many of the basic industrial capabilities and the existing submarine designs needed substantial modification to meet Australian operational requirements. The vessels require a large and complex infrastructure for their through-life support, independently of the overseas source, which would be assisted by local construction.

6.69 This Government decided that the vessels would be built in Australia. It judged that the cost premium for local construction could be justified in terms of the self-reliance gained in the local capabilities established for subsequent set-to-work, repair, maintenance, modification, refit and, probably, mid-life modernisation.

6.70 The Government also agreed that Australian industry should be encouraged to take a major role in the project, including sharing the risks, and consortia were formed between local organisations and the overseas tenderers for the platform and combat systems to undertake Project Definition Studies and to bid for production. A substantial portion of the work will be sub-contracted by the prime contractors to Australian enterprises, which will have to comply with strict quality standards within delivery schedules and to cost.

6.71 This model for Australian industry participation in a major defence development and production project offers the prospect of substantial industrial and defence self-reliance benefits. It is demanding on the resources of industry and Defence project management.

New surface combatant (light patrol frigate)

6.72 This project aims to acquire eight ships at a cost of some \$3.5 billion. The Government intends to select an established overseas design for construction in one or more Australian shipyards under 'local prime', 'fixed price' contracting arrangements. Some modifications to the design will be necessary to meet Australian requirements and to facilitate construction in Australia.

6.73 Construction of civil and naval surface vessels has a long history in Australia. Recent defence projects include patrol craft at Cairns and Fremantle, large support vessels at Newcastle and Sydney, and frigates at Williamstown, Victoria. The ability to perform the projects to cost and on time has been varied.

6.74 The procurement strategy aims to keep overseas designers and qualified Australian shipyards in competition until production contracts are signed. It allows for early and substantial involvement of Australian shipyards, early introduction of the vessels into service, and a high level of local content. The latter is important for independent through-life support and will confer a capability, should the need ever arise, for a high degree of self-reliance in construction of additional vessels to expand the Fleet. Risk is low in the design, but Australian shipbuilders will be expected to carry the construction risk in arrangements with the overseas designer. Planning provision is being made for possible joint procurement involving the industries of other countries.

6.75 The project is seen as important for the local shipbuilding industry, which, in common with the industry world wide, has substantial excess capacity, which is being further exacerbated by changing technology reducing ship docking and repair work.

Local production of overseas designs

6.76 In some cases, the requirements of the ADF can be met most cheaply and expeditiously by existing overseas products where there is no economic or technical prospect of a local competitor. Local industry involvement in such projects is through Designated Work and Offsets. This can involve a substantial element of local production and may include opportunities for follow-on work and exports. Examples include battlefield helicopters, rifles and missiles.

Battlefield helicopters

6.77 Extremes of temperature, areas of higher elevation, and rugged operating conditions in northern Australia place severe demands on a battlefield helicopter. The ADF requires a helicopter with a radius of action including tactical flying of over 160 km, and able to carry an infantry section of ten troops with sufficient personal equipment to enable sustained independent operations. Exercises have shown the existing fleet of Bell Iroquois UH1H aircraft to be deficient in these conditions. The French Aerospatiale Super Puma M and the US Sikorsky Blackhawk were found to be acceptable aircraft after competitive evaluation.

6.78 Following the formal tendering process, the two companies were invited to negotiate contracts with the Commonwealth. Considerable emphasis was placed on warranties of performance, particularly in the conditions likely to be found in northern Australia, price, and the involvement of Australian industry in the project.

6.79 This competitive procedure resulted in selection of the Blackhawk and yielded better warranties than had been achieved previously in helicopter purchases, a significant price reduction, and Australian Industry Involvement of over 40 per cent of the contract value, including items of considerable strategic and industrial importance. There is also provision for Australian collaboration in future design and development projects.

6.80 While not universally applicable as a purchasing strategy, the approach used in this case demonstrated clearly the benefits of competition being held open as long as possible.



The new individual weapon for the Australian Defence Force is the Steyr rifle. 70,000 will be manufactured at the Small Arms Factory, Lithgow, NSW.

Rifles

6.81 In 1982 the Government approved the replacement of the Belgian designed FN L1A1 individual weapons with new, smaller calibre, lighter weight, automatic weapons. In October 1985, after exhaustive competitive trials, the Austrian Steyr AUG 1 was selected.

6.82 Initial production of some 70 000 rifles for the ADF is to be undertaken at the Small Arms Factory at Lithgow, NSW, which is the sole local mass producer of small arms with a long history of weapons production.

6.83 To avoid the need to establish substantial facilities duplicating those available in civil industry, and to exercise the relationships with private firms that would be necessary should strategic circumstances require greatly increased production rates, a large proportion of the weapon components are being sub-contracted. The new technology of the AUG 1 has facilitated this approach. Costs and subsidies will be reduced and the problems of workforce rundown at the conclusion of the production program minimised. This is a break with the past practice where the factory produced the entire weapon.

6.84 Other features of this project have been the full cost 'contractual' agreement between the factory and the Army, the scope the industry strategy provides for other countries seeking to purchase weapons from Australia to provide work for their own industries, and the export agreement with the principals, Steyr of Austria. New Zealand has agreed to purchase the rifle from the Small Arms Factory under these arrangements.

Defence work in Australian industry

6.85 In 1985-86, the Australian Defence Budget was some \$7 000 million of which some \$2 800 million was spent on activities directly relevant to industry (new capital equipment, replacement equipment and spares, repair and maintenance, and direct subsidies to industry, including the Government's factories and dockyards). Of the latter, some \$1 300 million was spent in Australia. Over one quarter of the Defence outlay was spent on new capital equipment, which reflects the high technology nature of modern warfare and the need to acquire and maintain important operational capabilities. Australian industry also benefits from the Defence Offset obligations generated by defence purchases, which provide technology transfer and workload to the value of over \$200 million per year. Exports of defence products, unrelated to offsets, are estimated at some \$40 million per year.

6.86 While such funds seem substantial in the Australian context, they will be adequate only if utmost economy is pursued in meeting ADF requirements. Inefficiency, unnecessary subsidies, cost and schedule over-runs and other poor policies and management practices will cause important projects to be deferred or deleted from the program, including projects that would have been of importance to industry.

6.87 The Government is providing opportunities for industry to increase substantially its share of the Defence new capital equipment program and to improve its export prospects. The efficiency and competitiveness of industry will largely determine the extent to which the opportunities are exploited and result in more defence work being undertaken in Australia with enhanced self-reliance for this country.

Chapter seven

Defence personnel

7.1 Our people—the men and women of our fighting forces and our defence civilian staff—are our most valuable asset and a vital resource in the security of Australia. In total some 137 000 men and women apply their professional knowledge, skills and commitment to maintain and improve our defence capabilities. There are some 70 000 Regular and 27 000 Reserve members of the Australian Defence Force (ADF) and 40 000 civilians within the Defence organisation (Figure 1 shows the allocation of Defence personnel).

DEFENCE PERSONNEL – PLANNED STRENGTHS 1986–87

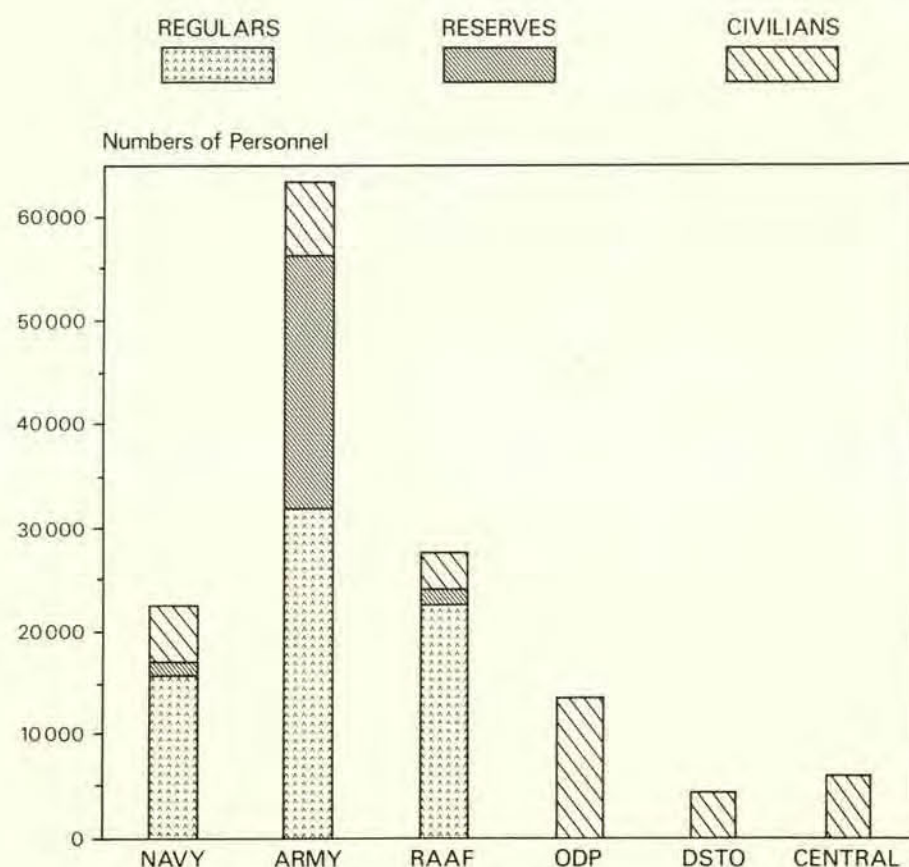


Figure 1

7.2 The Defence organisation needs to attract, train, and retain skilled men and women for combat and support roles, including the operation and maintenance of increasingly complex equipment and support facilities. In addition, initiatives detailed earlier in this Paper designed to enhance our defence self-reliance will increase the Defence organisation's demand for highly qualified professional, technical and tradespeople already the subject of strong competition in the market place. Competition for manpower will increase in future years as the changing age distribution of Australia's population reduces the number of people available for recruitment into the ADF. To be successful in attracting sufficient people of the right calibre, the Government must offer rewarding and challenging careers, and competitive pay, allowances, and conditions of service.

The regular component of the ADF

7.3 The planned strength of the ADF for 30 June 1987 is: Navy 15 732, Army 32 000 and Air Force 22 797; a total strength of 70 529 (see Figure 2). The reduction from a peak in 1981–82 reflects the Government's decisions on the aircraft carrier and naval fixed-wing aviation, and a reduction of 677 in the authorised terminal strength of the Army in the 1985–86 Budget.

7.4 A broad range of employment opportunities is offered, with periods of service available from as little as two years to careers of 20 years or more. A wide variety of skills is developed and practised in the ADF, providing demanding and rewarding employment. Some 7 000–8 000 personnel annually leave the Regular component of the ADF on retirement or to pursue their careers in the civilian workforce. This group is encouraged to join the Reserve force.

Women in the ADF

7.5 The Australian Government's strong commitment to eliminating discrimination against women was evidenced by its ratification of the UN Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women in 1983 and passage of the Sex Discrimination Act in 1984. A major focus of the Sex Discrimination Act is the elimination of discrimination in employment. In this context the Government agreed to exemptions for combat and combat-related duties in the ADF on the understanding that as many positions as possible would be open to women consistent with maintaining combat preparedness.

7.6 Prior to the implementation of the Sex Discrimination Act and new Defence Force employment policies in 1984, the proportion of women in the Defence Force was 6.5 per cent. Although there was no common policy among the Services on employment areas for women, they were generally allocated to the traditional areas of female employment.

AUSTRALIAN DEFENCE FORCE PERSONNEL — 1965-87

REGULAR(or Full Time Duty)

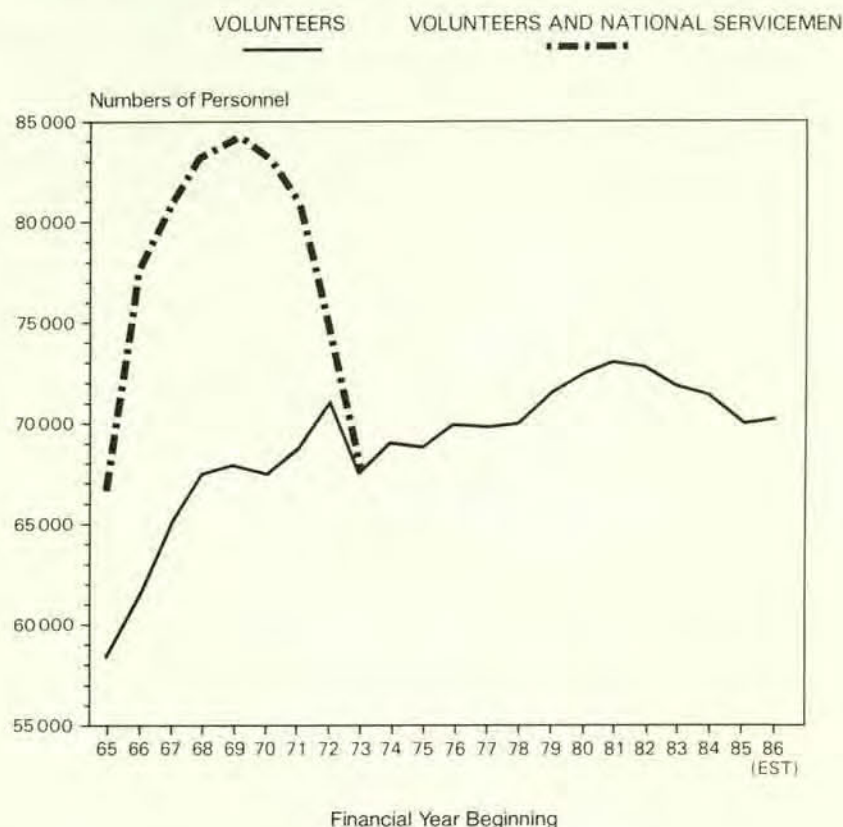


Figure 2

7.7 Since the introduction of the Sex Discrimination Act and Government reviews of ADF employment policies, the number of women in the ADF has increased steadily under the present Government, with some 5 760 (or 8.4 per cent) serving as at 31 December 1986—a 30 percent increase over the 1984 figure. About 21 750 (35 per cent) of the positions in the Regular component of the ADF are now open to women in competition with men. A further review is underway to expand employment opportunities available to women in the ADF. The Government will continue to make available as many positions as possible on merit.

Reserve Forces

7.8 The Government will continue to give priority to our increasingly effective Reserve Forces. Additional tasks for the Reserves have already been announced. These include major roles in northern defence, logistic support, surveillance, protection of key installations, and maintenance of expansion base

skills in armour, artillery, air transport, and mine countermeasures. Legislation will also be introduced to allow Australia's Reserve Forces to be called out for service in situations short of a full scale war or defence emergency. The legislation will allow Reserves to play the fullest possible role in the defence of Australia by enabling them to be used in the sort of low level threat which could emerge with relatively little warning.

7.9 The defence program provides for an Army Reserve of 26 000 and for modest increases in the smaller Reserve components of the Navy and Air Force to bring the total Reserve strength to over 30 000.

Civilians in defence

7.10 Civilians not only provide administration and support for the Navy, Army, and Air Force, but are also employed in policy and management areas and in such non-military bodies as the Defence Science and Technology Organisation (DSTO).

7.11 Of the 40 000 civilians in the Defence organisation, 39 per cent are employed at ADF bases, workshops and depots, 34 per cent support the ADF in Defence factories and dockyards, 11 per cent work for DSTO, 14 per cent provide administrative support and management services, and 2 per cent provide policy support to the Department.

Pressures on the defence personnel resource

7.12 The Government will continue to allocate the largest share of the Defence budget to defence personnel. However, the need to acquire new equipment and facilities to ensure an efficient, self-reliant defence force means that overall expenditure on personnel will continue to be restrained. The number of Service personnel has actually declined in recent years (see paragraph 7.3). Tight control of civilian numbers has continued, resulting in reductions in total numbers. The recent restructuring and rationalising of the Government's defence factories and dockyards have also produced considerable manpower savings.

7.13 This constraint on the numbers of Defence personnel is consistent with the Government's policy of limiting the size of the Commonwealth's employment force. Nevertheless, some measure of personnel relief is necessary to maintain adequate combat capabilities, and to support and operate the new equipment required for a modern and effective fighting force.

A personnel resource strategy

7.14 Australia's reliance on a volunteer ADF means that its operational strength will fluctuate. To manage the complex ADF personnel resource better, this Government will introduce a more flexible personnel resource policy based on identifying two separate components within the ADF—an operational force of trained personnel and a training force comprising personnel undergoing pre-employment training. This important initiative permits the strength of the training force to be varied with rises and falls in separation rates¹ while maintaining the trained force at the strength necessary to meet the objectives set for it by Government. Given that higher than normal separation rates might continue in the short term, some supplementation of the training component through increased manpower ceilings will be necessary to maintain the trained force at its present level and capability.

7.15 A program of management reviews will enable the Government to make more efficient use of Defence manpower, providing trained personnel for the acquisition and operation of new equipment and facilities, and for the maintenance of essential combat skills. The rationalisation of Defence factories and dockyards will continue. Better management and more efficient work practices will be introduced under the Defence Management Improvement Plan to reduce current demands on ADF and civilian personnel. Tasks now performed by Service personnel that could be performed at less cost by civilians will be identified; the review of Defence warehousing by the Efficiency Scrutiny Unit is a first step. A greater proportion of defence work will be contracted out to private industry.

7.16 These measures, along with the return of a fighter squadron and support staff from Butterworth, will help reduce some of the pressure on defence personnel from the new capital investment programs. This should also allow Defence to achieve a minimum saving of 3 per cent in civilian staff over the next three years (a reduction of at least 1176) thus meeting the Government's efficiency dividend target.

Retention

7.17 The Government is concerned at the present rate of separation from the ADF and positive action is planned to reduce the numbers leaving. While a reasonable turnover of personnel in the ADF is necessary to exercise the training infrastructure and maintain a young fit force, the present level is higher than desired. There are a number of reasons for this. One is the below average separation rates of the recent past. Figure 3 shows that the average annual separation rate over the last ten years was about 11.1 per cent; the lowest rate was 9.4 per cent in 1983–84, the highest 12.3 per cent in 1985–86. Varying age and length of service distributions in the ADF, resulting in part from its growth in the 1960s, are also factors. The state of the national economy, conditions of ADF service, and family aspirations, also influence separations. And the lack of skilled manpower being produced by the wider community for civil purposes adds to the demand for personnel trained by the Defence Force

¹ Figure 3 shows separation rates over recent years. This matter is addressed further later in this chapter.

ADF SEPARATION RATES

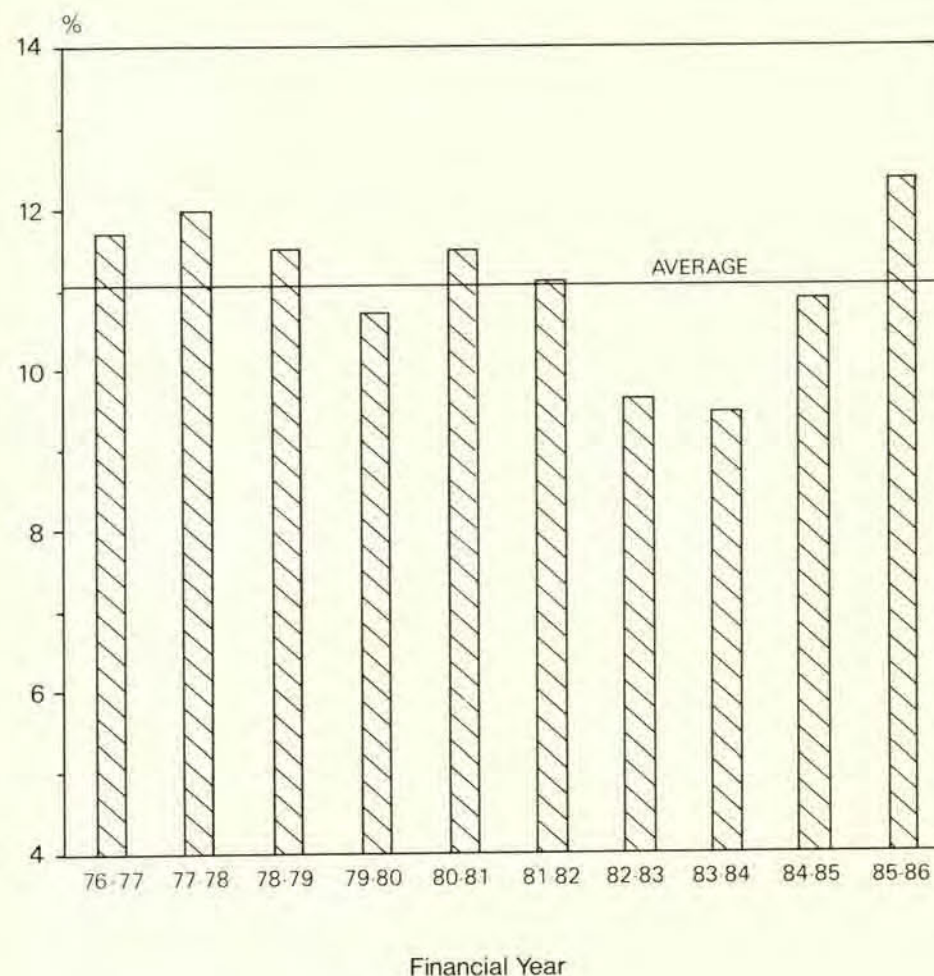


Figure 3

7.18 One particular factor that the Government is addressing relates to the impact of changing socio-economic patterns, including the increase in two income families. Dependence on the spouse's income and the spouse's own desire for employment may influence the decision of some serving members to leave the Services to avoid the adverse impact that frequent postings may have on their families.

7.19 Recognising that mobility of ADF personnel is necessary to maintain an effective operational force, the Government is working towards implementing the recommendations of the Hamilton Report to minimise the adverse aspects of essential changes of location. Standards of Defence housing are being improved

through increased expenditure and better management and a new Defence Housing Authority is being established. These initiatives are explained in more detail later in this chapter.

7.20 Additional initiatives being considered to reduce the present rate of separation include improvements in conditions of service, financial incentives for selected categories, and changes to periods of engagement.

Conditions of service

Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal

7.21 The Government has changed the system of salary fixation for the ADF by establishing the Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal (DFRT). The DFRT is a totally independent and expert body with power in its own right to determine Defence Force pay and allowances. The Defence Force's 'employer'—the Government—is now no longer the final wage fixing authority. This initiative gives Service personnel access to a pay fixing system broadly comparable to that available to the general community.

7.22 The establishment of a special tribunal for the Defence Force both recognises the special aspects of military service and acknowledges the convergence that has occurred between military and civilian employment. These arrangements better integrate the Defence Force into the industrial framework applying to the community at large. Underlying this reform is the Government's fundamental recognition of the right of servicemen and women to equitable pay and allowances and to an independent and impartial wage fixing system. In September 1985 a 5.9 per cent increase in Service pay was granted by the DFRT under the anomalies provisions of the wage fixing principles. This award was subsequently back-dated to 30 May 1985.

7.23 The establishment of the DFRT and the Defence Force's participation in the centralised wage fixing system have also provided regular National Wage increases. These increases reflect movements in prices in return for restraint in seeking increases for other reasons. The commitments involved in National Wage decisions have been accepted in both the Defence Force and the wider community.

Defence Force Advocate

7.24 As an integral part of the revised arrangements for determining Defence Force pay, the Government created the position of Defence Force Advocate, a publicly funded office, to ensure that the Defence Force is not disadvantaged by not having an industrial organisation to represent it in proceedings before the DFRT.

Superannuation and Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits

7.25 The Government has supported improvements in superannuation, industry by industry or occupation by occupation. These are to be offset against national productivity and based on a 3 per cent wage equivalent. The Australian Conciliation and Arbitration Commission has accepted this broad proposal but has left it to individual parties to negotiate the terms of such agreements, subject to certain guidelines. Noting that the public sector is already well served in the area of superannuation, the Government has indicated that it will not be at the forefront in concluding productivity arrangements in respect of its own employees.

7.26 In the light of the overall trend, supported by the Government, to improve and extend occupational superannuation in the community, the Government has no intention of reducing the basic Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits entitlements as some speculation has suggested. It will also ensure that improvements in superannuation in the wider community flow appropriately to the Defence Force.

Defence housing

7.27 This Government will continue to rectify the poor living conditions many Defence Force families have had to face through neglect and underfunding in previous years. The 1986–87 Budget provided a real increase of 17 per cent for Defence housing and some \$750 million will be spent on new housing over the next ten years.

7.28 A new Defence Housing Authority will commence operations on 1 July 1987 providing the flexibility and efficiency of management needed to ensure better accommodation. The Authority is already operating in interim form pending the passage of legislation. The management board comprises a mix of Service personnel and civilians selected for their knowledge of real estate and management expertise. In addition, the Government will continue to improve living conditions for single personnel. These new arrangements are a major step forward in the management of living conditions for the Defence Force.

Supporting service families

7.29 A major initiative taken by this Government was the commissioning of a survey by Mrs Sue Hamilton from the Office of the Status of Women on the problems faced by ADF families. Her report pointed out deficiencies and problems in the support available to Service families and made recommendations as to how these might be redressed.

7.30 In response to the report, a National Consultative Group of Service Spouses was established in 1986 and a Defence Families Information and Liaison Service will commence operations in 1987. The implementation of the report's conditions of service recommendations (including a review of the length of postings, disturbance allowances and removal for separated spouses) is under consideration by the Government.

Chapter eight

Resources and programming

8.1 Governments have a fundamental responsibility to allocate resources for the security of the nation. But national resources are finite and subject to many competing demands. Thus governments must also set out Defence policies and objectives, define priorities for their attainment, and ensure that the allocation of resources is consistent with these priorities.

8.2 Our demands for defence resources must not be so high during times of peace as to distort and thus weaken our economy. Our defence development must be based on a rigorous consideration of what is essential for our security and how to achieve this in the most effective and efficient way.

8.3 While all defence activity is constrained by annual financial allocations appropriated by Government for defence, money is not the sole constraint. Our defence plans must also take into account such other factors as the scientific and industrial resources of the nation, the personnel available, and their range and level of skills.

Wider economic considerations in defence funding

8.4 The provision of resources for the defence of Australia cannot be determined in isolation from other national priorities and our economic circumstances.

8.5 The proportion of the nation's resources that are directed towards defence is commonly measured by relating defence outlay to gross domestic product (GDP). Figure 1 (see overleaf) shows that defence outlay peaked at well over 4 per cent of GDP during the Vietnam War. Since the end of our involvement in Vietnam, defence outlay has been around 2.6 to 2.9 per cent of GDP. Naturally, as GDP may fluctuate from year to year there can be no rule that defence spending should, in every year, bear a precise mathematical relationship to GDP. But, broadly speaking, a share of GDP similar to that devoted to defence in recent years will need to be retained if future governments are to achieve the levels of defence capability identified in this Paper.

8.6 In the Government's annual Budget, Defence competes directly with other pressing national priorities such as health, education and social security. Figure 2 shows that Defence outlays have, on average, risen from a low of about 8.4 per cent in the mid-1970s, following the end of Australia's

DEFENCE OUTLAY AS PERCENTAGE OF GDP

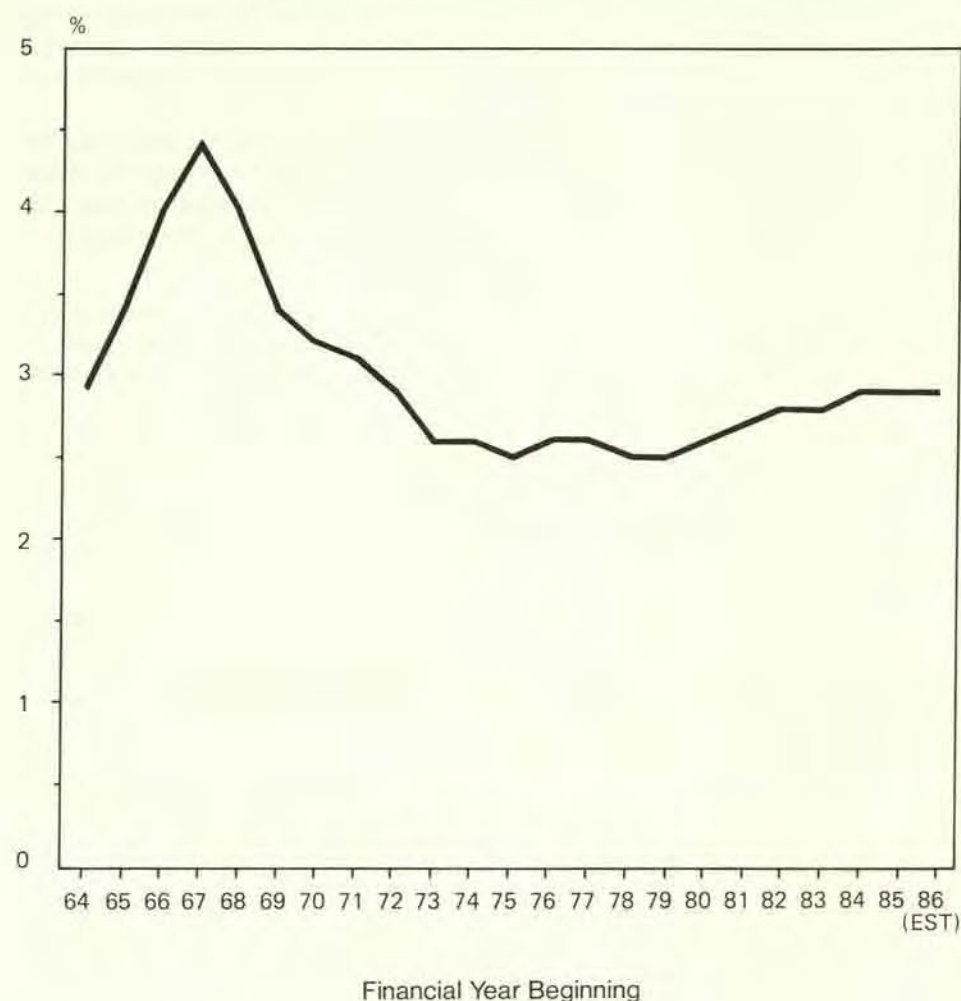


Figure 1

commitment in Vietnam, to around 9.5 per cent at the start of the 1980s and 9.9 per cent in the Budget of 1986-87. The rise in the past ten years or so has occurred despite the greatly increased pressure on governments to increase spending on social security.

8.7 Given competing national demands, any sustained increase in the overall share of resources going to defence, measured in terms of GDP, could be justified only in the event of marked deterioration in our strategic circumstances.

DEFENCE OUTLAY AS PERCENTAGE OF COMMONWEALTH BUDGET OUTLAYS

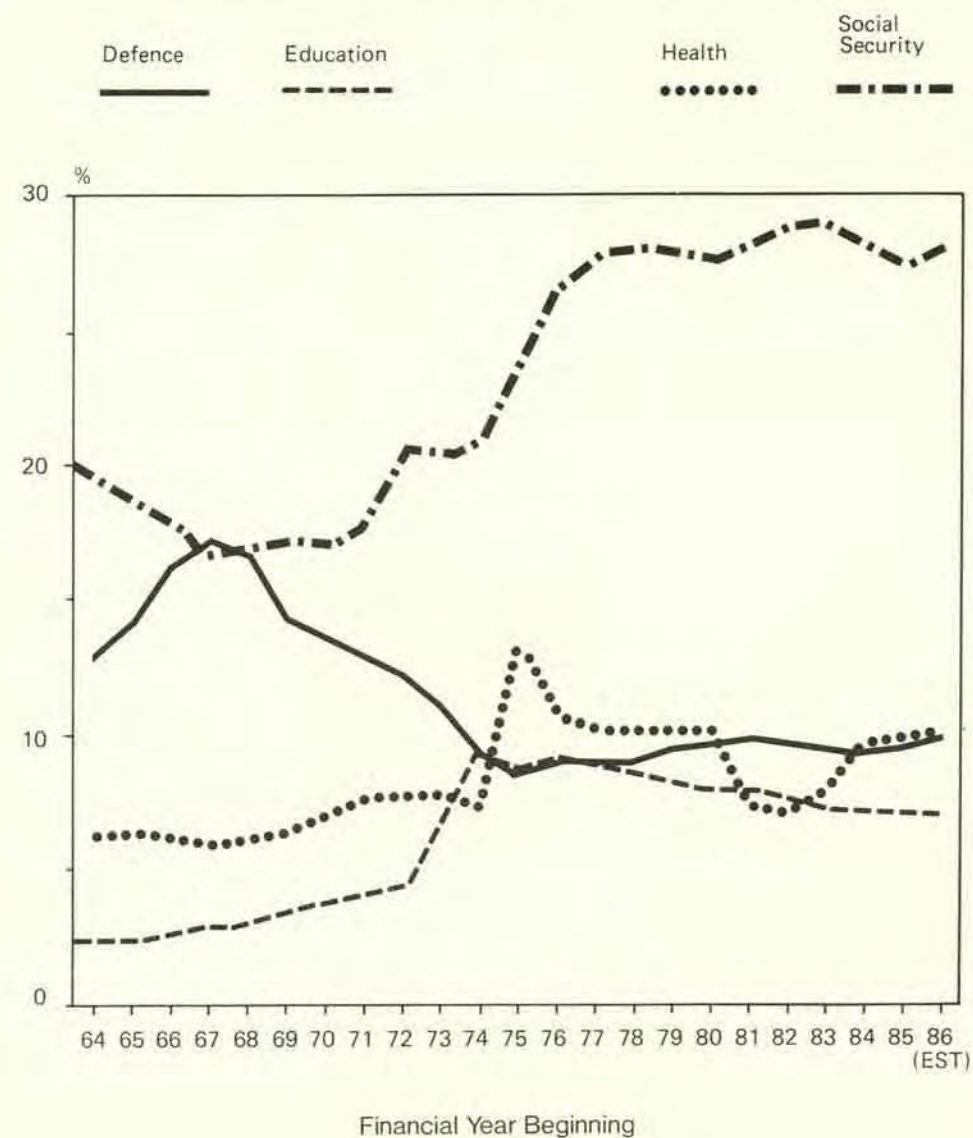


Figure 2

Defence spending overseas

8.8 One particular element of defence outlays has come under notice in relation to wider economic considerations: a significant proportion of the defence budget (around 25 per cent) is spent overseas and, looked at in isolation, adds to pressures on Australia's external account. But this should not be exaggerated. Direct defence spending overseas in 1985-86 equalled about 5 per cent of imports.

8.9 As outlined in earlier chapters, it is essential that Australia maintain a technological edge in the region; this is practicable only through significant purchases from overseas. Were Australia to direct more funds into domestic procurement than could be justified under our Defence Policy for Industry, our defence capabilities would be reduced and the resulting inefficient use of resources would affect the national economy adversely.

8.10 Economic as well as national security reasons point to the need for a continued significant reliance on overseas procurement. The Budget Statements for 1986-87, tabled by the Treasurer, included the following pertinent comments in analysing the external accounts problem:

While the size and urgency of the imbalance might be seen as justifying almost any means to increase exports and reduce imports, efficiency criteria cannot be overlooked. If resources are directed into import replacement or export activities which need to be highly protected or subsidised, living standards in the economy as a whole would necessarily be lower than if the same adjustment to the balance of payments were achieved by the expansion of export and import-competing industries that are internationally competitive

8.11 Nevertheless, the Defence Policy for Industry announced by this Government in 1984 and the initiatives outlined in this Paper (see Chapter 6), should see a reduction in overseas expenditure on capital equipment in the years ahead. The F/A-18 Hornet currently dominates our acquisition program and the bulk of the expenditure is in the United States. These aircraft are now being delivered. Hence overseas expenditure on this project will start to reduce significantly from 1987-88 and will be virtually completed by the early 1990s. In the Hornet's place there will be OTHR, new submarines, and the new light patrol frigates, which will all have a substantially higher local expenditure.

The Five Year Defence Program

8.12 The rolling Five Year Defence Program (FYDP) provides the framework within which policies and priorities, their timescales for implementation, and the anticipated resources that Governments provide as a basis for forward planning, are reconciled and brought into balance. Such an approach is necessary because of the long timescales involved in defence planning. It takes many years to train for military operations and to learn to operate modern complex equipment. Equipment acquisition times can spread out over many years, for example, expenditure on the construction of the new submarines will extend over at least ten years. Forward commitments on personnel and equipment generally allow only limited flexibility for change in any particular Defence Budget.

8.13 The FYDP is necessarily dynamic, being subject to continuing assessments and change resulting from continued analysis of our defence needs, technological and strategic developments, and management improvements. It takes account of Government decisions on the annual Defence Budget (with the program's consequent rolling forward by one year) and also indicates for Government the longer term implications of those decisions.

8.14 The FYDP must take account of changes in the level of Government's financial guidance to Defence, and differences between this guidance and actual Budget allocations. This Government recognises that considerable waste and inefficiency in defence planning is inevitable when unrealistic guidance is given as a planning basis for defence spending. The Government is committed to more realistic financial guidance for defence planning, although some adjustments will still need to be made when settling annual Budgets.

Recent trends in Defence expenditure

8.15 Figure 3 shows the broad shifts that have occurred over the last decade on the balance of expenditure between the major components of the FYDP: capital equipment, capital facilities, personnel costs and operating costs.

8.16 By the mid-1970s, investment in new equipment and facilities had fallen to little more than 10 per cent of defence expenditure. It became evident then that given the high cost and long lead times involved in acquiring new equipment and facilities, defence capabilities would decline in the decades ahead unless this trend was reversed. It has therefore been the policy of this Government to increase the proportion of defence expenditure on investment. Over the past four years this has risen from less than 22 per cent to over 33 per cent planned for 1986-87. In the same period, expenditure on capital equipment has risen from 17 per cent to over 28 per cent of total defence spending.

8.17 Associated with increased expenditure on investment has been restraint on operating costs and personnel. Some reductions in this regard were the result of specific force structure decisions by this Government with regard to naval air power and the Fleet Air Arm. There have also been economies and efficiencies in production establishments and civilian support.

8.18 In 1986-87 about 28 per cent of estimated expenditure will be on capital equipment, 5 per cent on capital facilities, 40 per cent on personnel and 27 per cent on operating costs.

ACTUAL DEFENCE EXPENDITURE BY MAJOR CATEGORY AS A PERCENTAGE

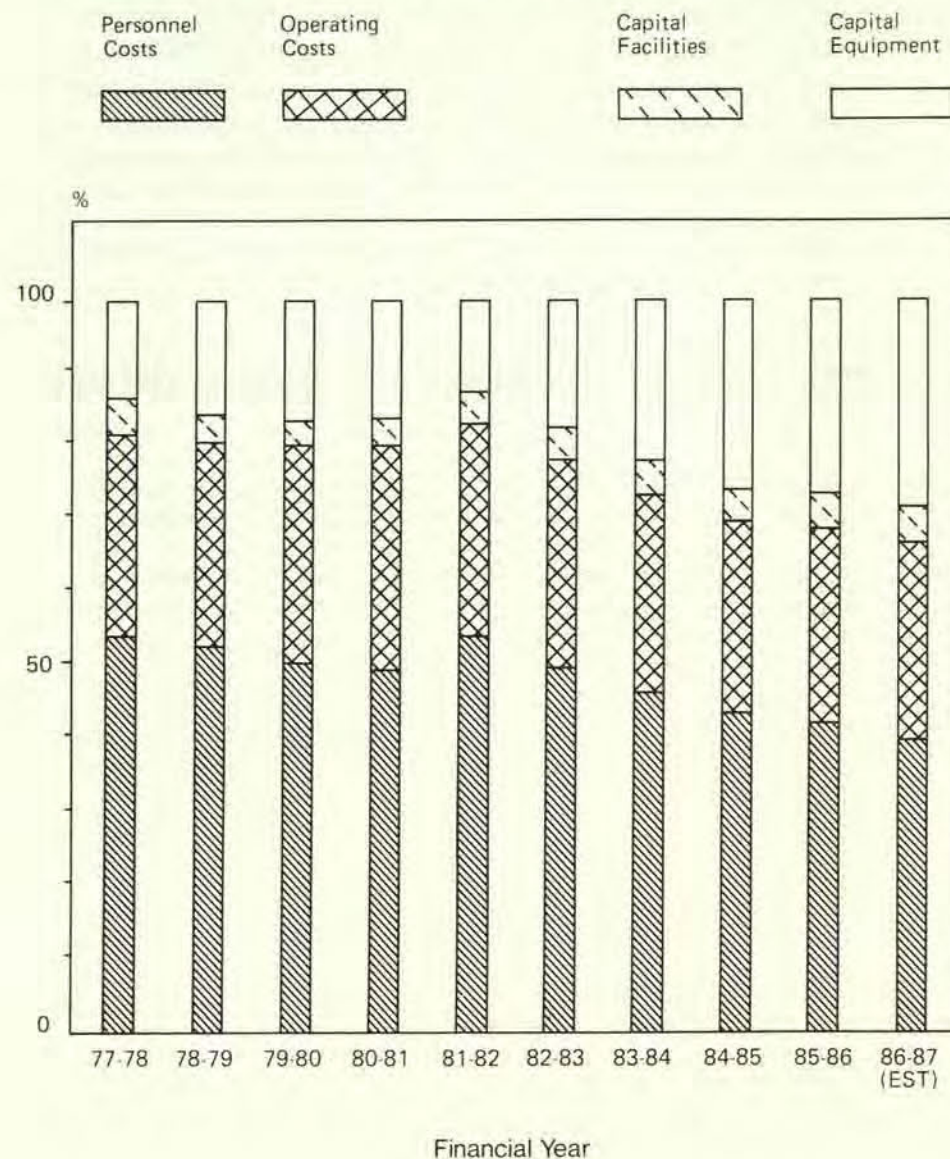


Figure 3

The years ahead

8.19 The continuing re-equipment program, and the need to continue to pay attention to facilities and infrastructure, indicate a requirement to direct the same broad share of defence expenditure to investment in the immediate years ahead. This will require continuing constraints on personnel levels and only limited expansion of current training and exercise activities. Figure 4 shows the planned percentage allocation of defence expenditure for the period 1986-87 to 1991-92, reflecting these broad principles.

Capital equipment

8.20 Commitments on major equipment projects already approved by Government account for 40 per cent of the funds programmed for major capital equipment over the next five years. Expenditure on approved projects such as the Hornet, and the FFG-7 class frigates will wind down, while new major commitments will be entered into, for example, new submarines, mine countermeasure vessels, more helicopters, and OTHR.

8.21 Figures 5 and 6 show the expected wind-down in expenditure in percentage terms on projects already committed and the planned increase on new proposals yet to be approved by Government. Expenditure is shown in broad capabilities, e.g. maritime warfare and airspace surveillance. Figure 7 shows the aggregate of all major capital equipment, both approved and not yet approved.

Capital facilities

8.22 Expenditure on capital facilities is planned to increase significantly in the years ahead with this Government's emphasis on strategic initiatives and improved living accommodation for Service personnel. New strategic initiatives will include the continued development of defence facilities to support operations across the north, such as airfields and the northern basing of the 2nd Cavalry Regiment, further development of HMAS Stirling in the west and a possible new fleet base at Jervis Bay. Expenditure on these initiatives will extend well beyond the five years of the current defence program.

8.23 An important area of Government expenditure will involve the substantial improvement of living accommodation for Defence Force members and their families (see Chapter 7). Other facilities initiatives will include the rationalisation and modernisation of defence training and production establishments and office accommodation.

Personnel

8.24 Personnel constraints will demand a more efficient use of Regular and Reserve forces and civilians. As outlined in Chapter 7, the Government is introducing new policies for the management of the personnel resource. The strength of the ADF's trained force will be directly related to objectives set for

PROJECTED DEFENCE EXPENDITURE BY MAJOR CATEGORY AS A PERCENTAGE

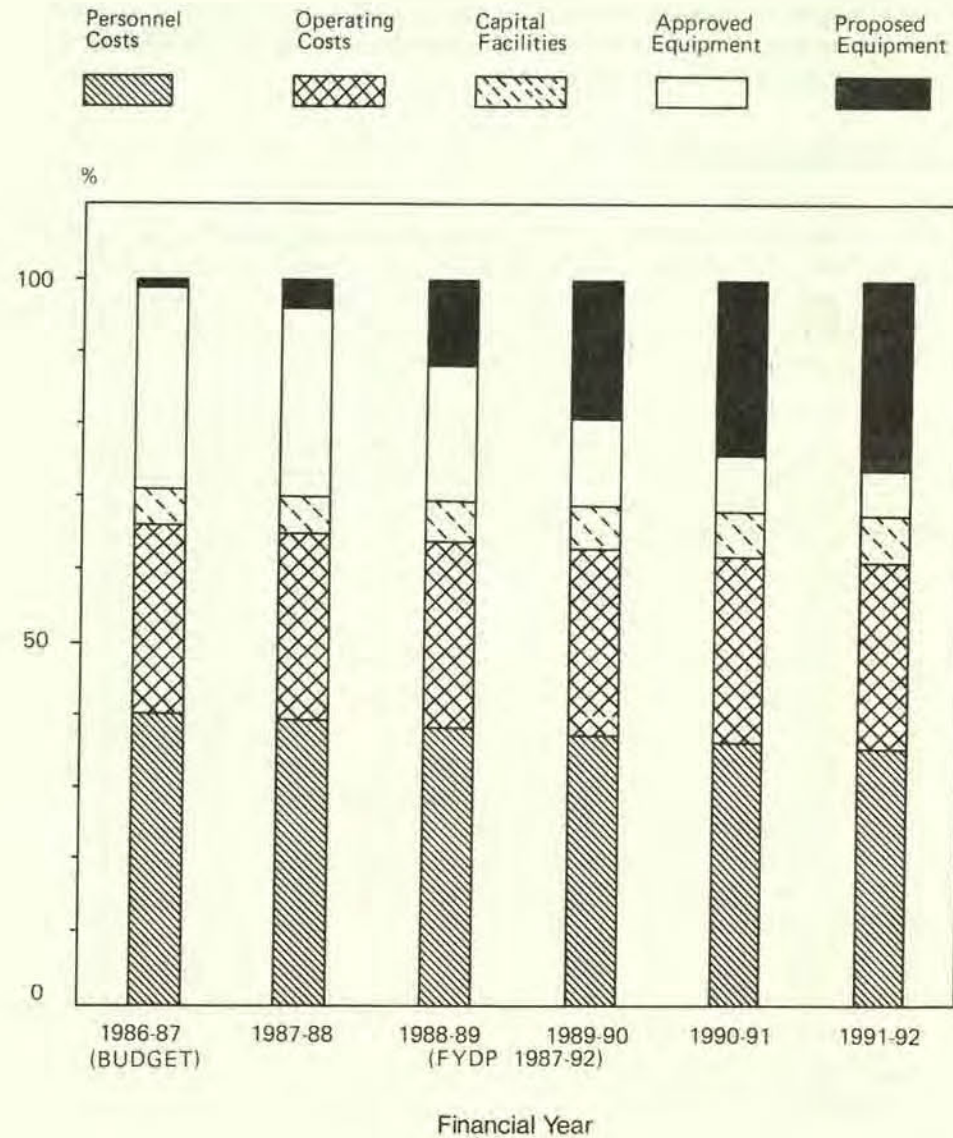


Figure 4

APPROVED MAJOR EQUIPMENT Expenditure by Major Components

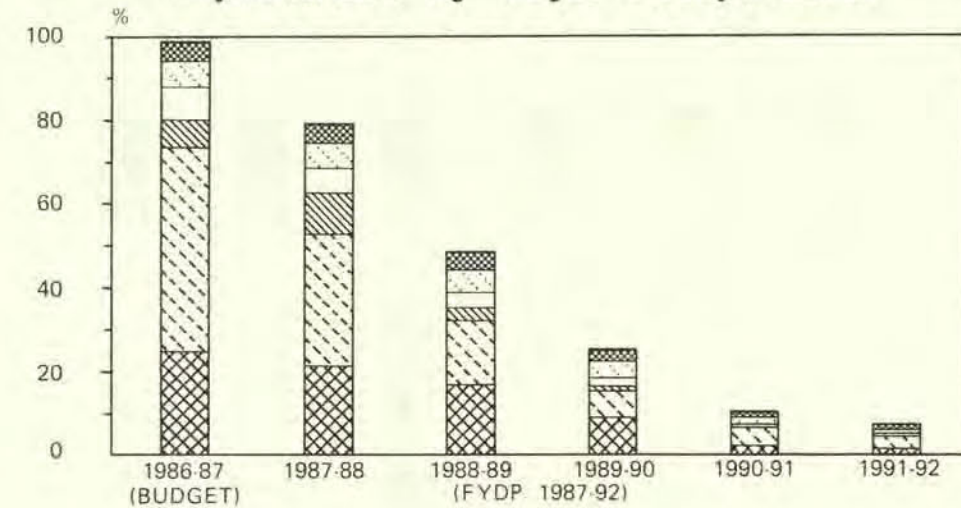


Figure 5

PROPOSED MAJOR EQUIPMENT Expenditure by Major Components

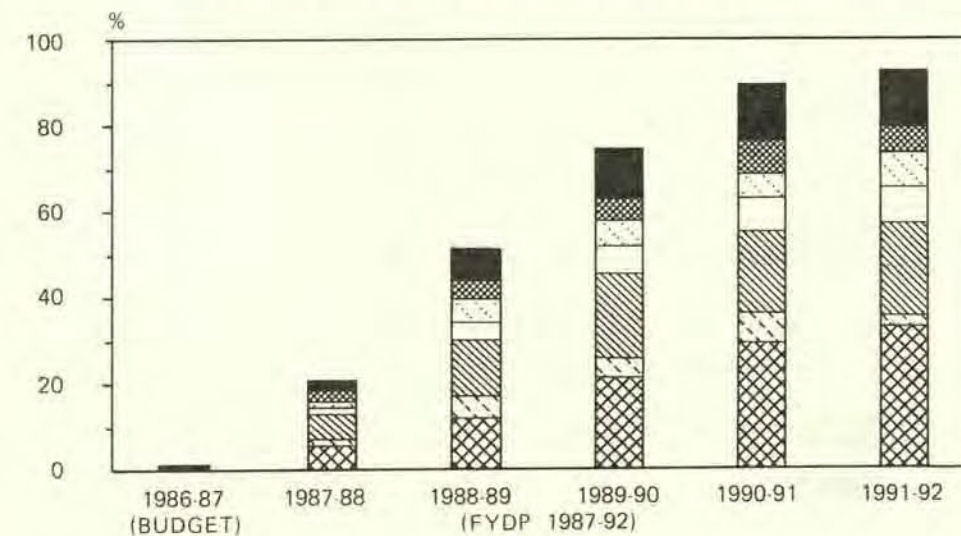


Figure 6

TOTAL MAJOR EQUIPMENT Expenditure by Major Components

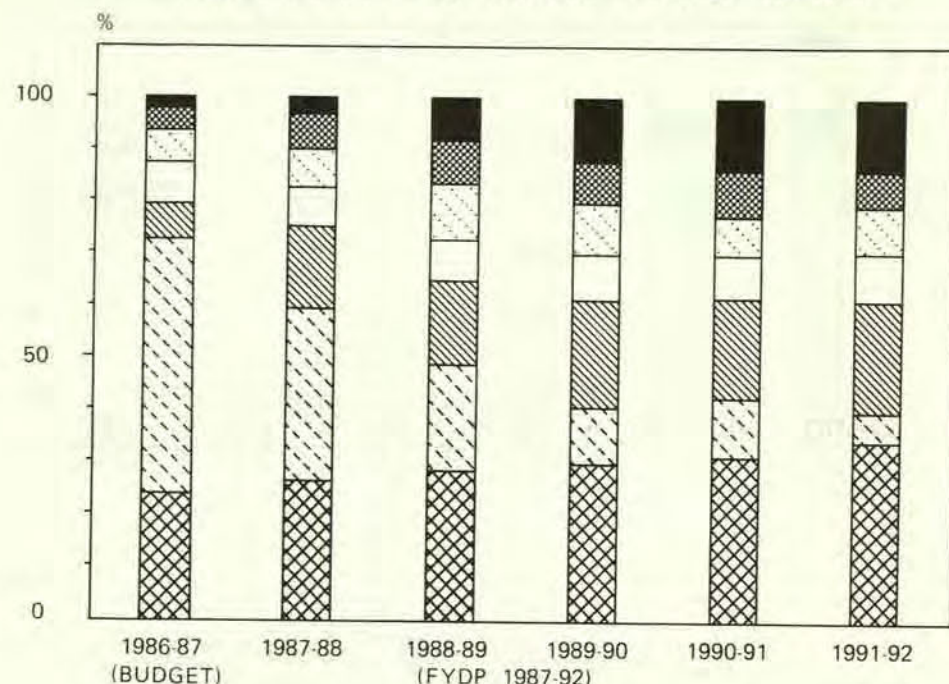


Figure 7

LEGEND FOR FIGURES 5, 6 AND 7

- MARITIME WARFARE - Includes Submarines, New Surface Combatants and MCM Vessels
- TACTICAL AND STRIKE AIRCRAFT - Includes F/A-18 aircraft and F-111 improvements
- MOBILITY AND TACTICAL SURVEILLANCE - Includes Blackhawk Helicopters, Light and Medium Trucks and AFVs
- WEAPONS AND AMMUNITION - Includes Missiles for Ships and Aircraft, and Artillery Weapons and Ammunition
- SUPPORT SYSTEMS - Includes Computer systems for supply and manpower and major training systems
- COMMAND, CONTROL AND COMMUNICATIONS
- AIRSPACE SURVEILLANCE - Includes OTHR, AEW&C Systems and Tactical Air Defence Radars

it by the Government, while the strength of the training component will be related to separation rates. A program of management reviews will identify areas in which ADF personnel can be replaced at less cost by the use of civilians and private industry. Better management and more effective work practices will be introduced.

8.25 Civilian numbers will be reduced with the restructuring and rationalisation of the Government's defence factories and dockyards, and with the return of the fighter squadron from Butterworth, Malaysia. Other reductions will follow from the Government's program to increase efficiency in the public sector.

8.26 With the increased roles planned for the Reserves, the defence program has provision for the Army Reserve to increase to a strength of 26 000, and for modest increases in the Reserve components of the Navy and Air Force, to bring the total strength to over 30 000.

Operating costs

8.27 Operating costs cover broad areas of defence spending, for example training and exercises, recruitment, repair and maintenance of equipment and facilities, DSTO, the Government factories, and central and regional administration. The Government's defence planning will continue to provide for modest annual real increases in operating costs, recognising that it generally costs more to operate modern and more capable equipment than it did to operate older designs of equipment.

8.28 The level of some defence activities will also increase as resources are directed to training and exercise programs necessary for a better understanding of operations in our north. But training programs must be selective, recognising that not all elements of our defence force need to be at high states of readiness.

8.29 There will also be continued provision for the acquisition of increased stocks to support higher rates of effort in the lower level contingencies that could arise in the shorter term. Again, this does not apply to all elements of the Defence Force but to such elements as the P3C Orion maritime surveillance aircraft that would need to increase their rates of effort early in a time of tension.

8.30 Economies will continue to be pursued, particularly in relation to the operation of the Government's factories, running costs at bases and administration generally. These economies will also have regard to the Government's recently announced reforms aimed at improving public sector efficiency.

Chapter nine

Conclusions

9.1 This Paper has set out the Government's policy for the defence of Australia. It has explained our alliance and regional associations; the capabilities required for an effective Australian defence force, including proper logistic, technical, and industrial support; our need for skilled and properly trained personnel; and the appropriate level of resources to be allocated for our defence effort.

9.2 This Government believes that Australia must be able to provide its own defence in circumstances of military threat posed to Australia from within or through our own region. Although such contingencies are now considered remote, we have explained that they would place great demands on our defence capacity. Our practical defence development over the coming years must ensure that we have, and can be seen to have, the capacity to respond effectively to them.

9.3 The Government has surveyed Australia's strategic circumstances and the interests and policies that relate to our defence and has found a substantial measure of continuity with the recent past. The generally favourable prospects for security in Australia's own geo-political environment have been noted, although there are some situations that require close monitoring for their longer term implications. Our national effort in the defence field, the alliance relationships we have with the United States and New Zealand, and the enhancement of our defence relationships with friendly countries in the region all help to sustain our favourable strategic situation.

9.4 This Paper has stressed that the priority need for the Defence Force is to fulfil the national task of defending the nation. It has also dealt with the need for Australia's defence effort to take account of developments in our region of primary strategic interest, and to be capable of reacting positively to calls for military support elsewhere, should we judge that our interests require it. The Government considers that Australia can deal with both, but to do so we must be alert to priorities.

9.5 The Government considers that its planned defence development will meet Australia's needs. It builds on the programs approved by successive governments for over ten years to develop a more self-reliant defence force. More advantage will be taken of present favourable circumstances to develop and consolidate the ADF, its infrastructure, bases and logistics, and, most importantly, the personnel policies that provide the well-trained and motivated men and women on whom operations in a defence emergency and defence expansion would critically depend.

9.6 The Defence Force development detailed in Chapter 4 will provide the basis for our security into the next century. This Government has given considerable attention to identifying deficiencies and gaps in areas of our force structure which would be important for the defence of Australia. These deficiencies include the lack of a credible mine countermeasures force, the requirement to provide our Army with greater battlefield mobility for operations in the north of the continent, the need to develop an integrated air defence capability, and the need to develop further the command and control arrangements for the ADF.

9.7 The characteristics of range, endurance and mobility that we plan for the Defence Force provide practical options for sustaining our defence activities further afield. In particular, they enable Australia to play a significant role in its own region and, by so doing, to contribute to the security of that region and the protection of Western interests.

9.8 This Paper has stressed the importance for self-reliance of properly sited defence infrastructure and effective logistic support. And it has emphasised the necessity of indigenous scientific and industrial capabilities.

9.9 The Government is developing policies for the rationalisation and greater efficiency of its defence factories and dockyards. Australian industry can make a greater contribution to the defence effort. Programs such as the new submarine and the light patrol frigate will provide the most exciting opportunities for local industry involvement since World War Two. The Government will also emphasise greater transfer of technology and expertise to the industrial base so that it can more readily support the Defence Force.

9.10 Australia's defence personnel are the most valuable resource in our nation's security. The Government will introduce a more flexible personnel resource policy to enable the Defence Force to be more readily maintained at the necessary operational level. The need to give priority to our equipment requirements, and the development of defence bases in the north, will involve overall constraints on manpower levels. However the Government will continue to allocate the largest share of the defence budget to defence personnel. A program of management reviews will result in more efficient use of this vital resource, providing trained defence personnel for the acquisition and operation of new equipment and facilities and for the maintenance of essential combat skills.

9.11 This Government recognises the right of servicemen and women to equitable pay and allowances. It has established an independent and impartial wage fixing system for the Defence Force. It will ensure that improvements in superannuation in the wider community flow appropriately to the Services.

9.12 The Government will provide \$750 million over the next ten years for new housing for the Defence Force, a substantial increase over previous years. As part of a major improvement in the management of living conditions for the Services, a new Defence Housing Authority has been created. The problems faced by Service families are being addressed with the progressive implementation of the Hamilton Report. These initiatives by the Government will help counter the current above average separation rate from the Defence Force.

9.13 A priority task for the Government is greater use of our increasingly effective Reserve personnel. A range of additional tasks are being introduced for the Reserves of significant importance for our immediate defence needs. Combined with legislative changes proposed by this Government, these new roles will make our Reserves a much more effective element in a self-reliant Australian defence force.

9.14 We have also explained the major resource considerations shaping our defence posture. A disciplined relationship between strategy, force structure, and financial constraints must be maintained. In our current and prospective strategic and economic circumstances these resources need to be spent wisely.

9.15 There is a need for realism in expectations of the resources that governments will be able to allocate to Defence. If we are to achieve the levels of defence capability and the priorities reflected in this Paper, there is a need, over the life of the program, for an allocation of resources generally within the order of 2.6 per cent to 3.0 per cent of GDP. Annual allocation to Defence will of course continue to be subject to the normal reviews of our economic circumstances and other policy imperatives, as well as changes in our strategic outlook.

9.16 Our basic competence and preparedness in matters of national defence are the necessary foundation for our own security and for our defence activities and influence further afield. The Government believes that the planned development of the Defence Force is attuned to Australia's national security needs. It accomplishes the priority task of defending the nation, ensures that we would be a most difficult country against which to use force, and allows for a realistic contribution to regional security and alliance activities.



SCALE 1:60 000 000
AZIMUTHAL EQUIDISTANT PROJECTION



Department of Defence

DEFENCE REPORT 1987-88

Australian Government Publishing Service
Canberra

© Commonwealth of Australia 1988

ISSN 0587-5811

ISBN 0 644 08364 6 (set)

ISBN 0 644 07891 X

This work is copyright. Apart from any use as permitted under the *Copyright Act 1968*, no part may be reproduced by any process without written permission from the Director Publishing and Marketing, AGPS. Inquiries should be directed to the Manager, AGPS Press, Australian Government Publishing Service, GPO Box 84, Canberra, ACT 2601.



The Honourable Kim C. Beazley MP
Minister For Defence

14 September 1988

My dear Minister

We present a report on the performance of the Defence organisation for the year ended 30 June 1988. The Report is also intended to cover the obligation under sub-section 25(6) of the Public Service Act and section 8 of the Freedom of Information Act.

This is the first year in which the Defence Report has been prepared in program budgeting format. We consider that the new format provides a clearer understanding of the day to day functioning of the Defence organisation, which is focused primarily on the command, administration and support of the Australian Defence Force.

We draw to attention that the structure of this Report may not show as clearly the foundations of the Government's defence policy. For example, the Defence Force in this year's Report

is described in Chapter 1. The Defence Force and its capability is, however, the end product of Government defence policy and decisions. The processes that support policy formulation and strategic guidance, and the implementation of defence policy and decisions flowing from it, are described in this Report in Chapters 2-4.

We have chosen to limit the description in this year's Report of the framework of strategic assessments and judgements from which defence policy and, in turn, capability priorities are derived. Parliament and the Australian community have available the 1987 Defence Policy Information Paper and your report to Parliament on 22 March this year on progress in implementing the Paper.

It is, however, important to record at this point that although there have been developments in our region in 1987-88 that require close monitoring, there have not been changes to the strategic underpinning of defence policy. The Government's defence policy and activities have for some years now included a recognition that developments in the South West Pacific would lead to a substantially more complex strategic environment for Australia than that of the 1970s. Similar points could be made about other developments in our region of primary strategic interest that have received publicity during the past year.

1987-88 is the first full financial year since the release of the Defence Policy Information Paper. The Paper's significance for the Defence organisation is that it provides a cohesive and clear description of the strategy for the defence of Australia and the priorities for establishing or enhancing defence capabilities to achieve it. Good progress has been made in implementing all the significant steps necessary to meet the

Government's strategic requirements.

The over-the-horizon radar project is on schedule. The Jindalee experimental system near Alice Springs is being upgraded to serve as a research and operational test bed for the planned operational network.

Deliveries of F/A-18 aircraft to No 2 Operational Conversion Unit and two fighter squadrons at RAAF Williamtown continued during the year, although at a rate less than planned. The delivery shortfall peaked early in the year but has been reduced to three. Forty six of a total program of seventy five aircraft have been delivered.

Significant progress was made in establishing the chain of northern airfields. Tindal is 90% complete and the new base at Derby (RAAF Curtin) was completed. Site selection and environmental studies were undertaken for an airfield on Cape York Peninsula.

In implementing the Government's intention to establish a two ocean navy, HMAS Stirling, Western Australia is being upgraded and a submarine has joined major fleet units already home ported there. On the east coast, relocation studies continued on the possibility of establishing Jervis Bay as a Fleet base. An extensive examination of sites has been conducted as a basis for Environmental Impact Statement Studies.

Modification of HMAS Sydney and HMAS Adelaide to enable them to deploy the Navy's Seahawk helicopters began during the year. The request for tender for the ship production contract for the Australia-New Zealand joint venture (the ANZAC Ship) was issued and, in South Australia work commenced on the design and establishment of a construction facility for the Navy's six new

submarines. Both these projects provide unprecedented opportunities for Australian industry.

A joint force headquarters, Headquarters Northern Command, subordinate to Land Command was established at Darwin to cater for the defence of northern Australia. Activity continued on the design of facilities and acquisition of land for the transfer to Darwin of 2nd Cavalry Regiment from Holsworthy.

The first of thirty seven Australian-assembled Black Hawk battlefield helicopters was delivered in May 1988. Facilities in Townsville to accommodate the aircraft and provide for their maintenance support are being constructed. Australian industry's role in supplying, repairing and maintaining defence equipment has grown during the last year. Australian industry involvement in defence procurement has been facilitated by the Government's successful economic policies and underpinned by restructuring of key industry sectors like shipbuilding, ship repair, aerospace and munitions. It has been reinforced by greater emphasis on Australian prime contractors taking responsibility for all aspects of large projects.

Important though such progress is for our long term development it has been overshadowed in our view in 1987-88 by the fundamental changes in approach and attitude within the total Defence organisation. The Government's policy of making the Public Service more efficient in delivering services has acted as a catalyst in Defence for changes that have removed or decreased a number of inhibitors to more effective defence without substantially increased costs to the taxpayer. The changes are providing opportunities for the diversion of significant resources to high priority areas of defence capability.

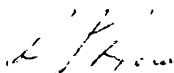
Among the most visible changes to occur in the Defence organisation as a result of the restructuring of the past year has been the significant reduction of civilian personnel. During the course of 1987-88 a reduction of 3225 in our average staffing level was achieved. The sale of Williamstown Dockyard and the formation of a Government owned company to replace the Government Aircraft Factories accounted for 2409. The remainder of the reduction arose from changes in the Departmental structure which have led to greater efficiencies and the achievement of 3% of the 3.75% reduction in civilian staffing required by the Government as an efficiency dividend to be achieved by June 1990.

ADF personnel issues have also been a high priority for the Defence organisation and the nature and extent of separations has been given particular attention. The current overall rate of separations has not affected the ADF's ability to meet its obligations although at present there are shortages in specific job categories, e.g. RAAF pilots. The ADF is reflecting general workplace changes in the Australian community viz a need to respond to overall economic circumstances, the effect of market forces on the greater demand for skilled manpower and societal factors such as greater job mobility and greater participation of married females in the workforce. A range of measures and initiatives is being taken to minimise the effect of recent separation levels including the Pilot Bonus Retention scheme.

We would emphasise that it is not solely the goal of achieving more with the same or less that we are concerned with, significant though that is. The processes of achieving that end, through rationalising, exploiting commercial opportunities, streamlining organisations and decision paths,

reordering priorities, devolving responsibility, vigorously applying priorities and pruning or eliminating wasteful or low priority activities are changing in fundamental ways, we believe, both the Defence organisation and the approaches to managing defence within it. The result within the Defence Department and the Australian Defence Force will be organisational structures, systems and capabilities suited for the defence policy of the 21st Century which is the aim of the 1987 Defence Policy Information Paper.

Yours sincerely,

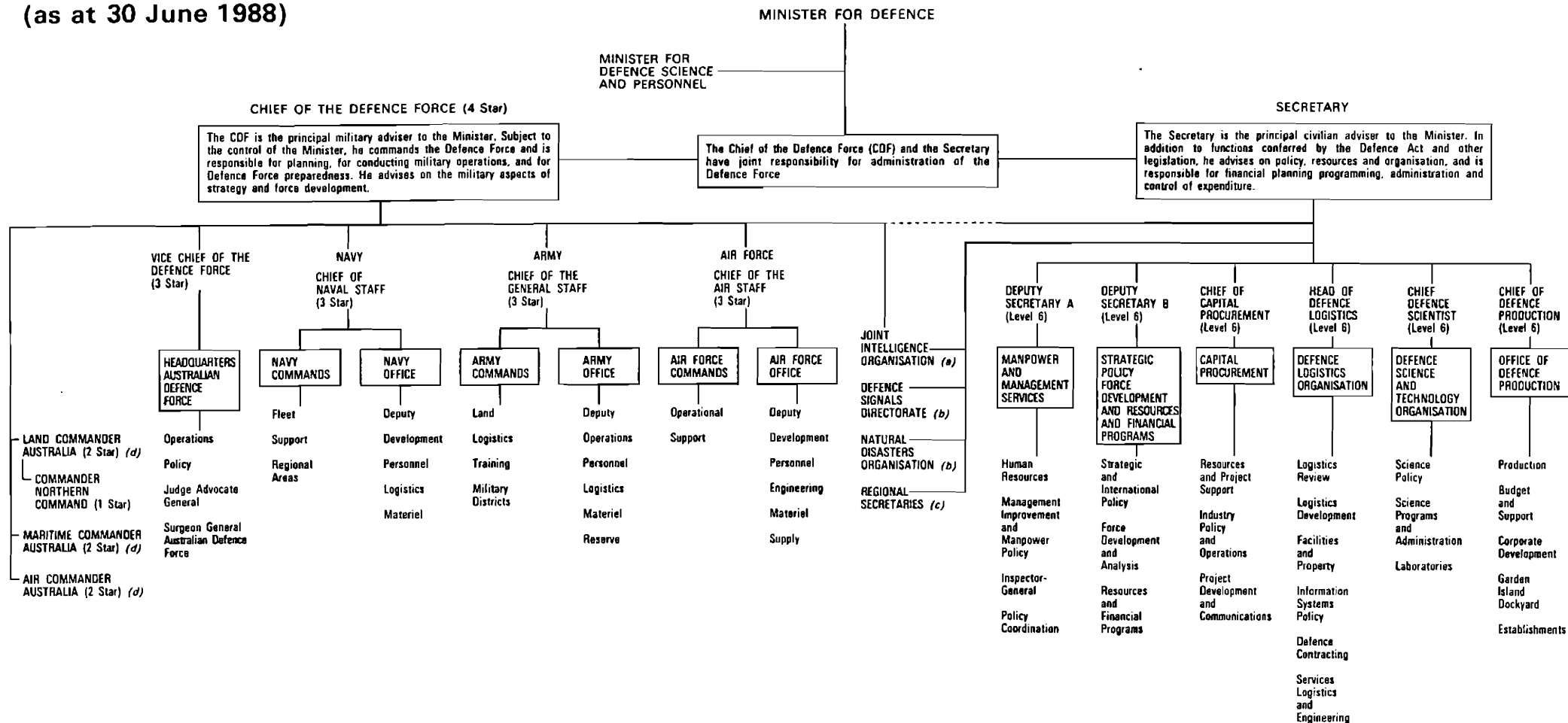


A.J. AYERS
Secretary
Department of Defence



P.C. GRATION
General
Chief of the Defence Force

DEFENCE HIGHER ORGANISATION (as at 30 June 1988)



- Notes: (a) Responsible to both the Secretary and the Chief of the Defence Force.
(b) Under the supervision of Deputy Secretary B.
(c) Also responsible for providing Service Commanders with assistance they specify.
(d) The Operational Commander of the relevant single Service command is normally appointed to these positions.

CONTENTS

Chapter 1—Australian Defence Force	1
Objective	1
ADF Command	1
Navy	6
Army	9
Air Force	13
Chapter 2—Defence development	19
Objective	19
Capital equipment procurement	20
The Australian industrial base	31
Capital facilities procurement	34
Chapter 3—Defence specialist support	39
Objective	39
Defence science and technology	39
Defence production	48
Defence cooperation	51
Defence housing	53
Natural disasters and civil defence	53
Chapter 4—Defence corporate services	57
Objective	57
Strategic planning	57
Logistics	66
Personnel management improvement and financial services	69
Appendixes	
1. Order of battle	79
2. Financial statistics	90
3. Personnel statistics	103
4. Civilian training and staff development	113
5. Parliamentary and party committees and Auditor-General's reports	115
6. Public information sources and addresses	131
7. Acts administered by the Minister	142
8. Non-statutory bodies	143
9. Freedom of Information Section 8 Statement (separate volume)	
Index	149

Chapter 1— The Australian Defence Force

Objective

The objective of the Australian Defence Force (ADF) is to plan, develop and maintain forces for contingencies within Australia's area of direct military interest, to defend Australia and its interests at sea, on land, and in the air, or combinations of these. The ADF is to be structured to be able to undertake current and foreseeable peacetime operational tasks as directed by Government; deal effectively with the levels of credible contingencies that could arise over shorter timescales; and provide a suitable basis for timely expansion to meet higher levels of threat if Australia's strategic circumstances deteriorated over the longer term.

Meeting the requirement for the defence of Australia provides the Government with practical options for the use of elements of the ADF in tasks beyond Australia's area of direct military interest in support of regional friends and of allies.

Sub programs for the ADF in 1987-88 were:

	<i>Staff Years</i>	<i>Outlays (\$m)</i>
• ADF Command	1 543	69.568
• Navy	20 340.6	1 024.802
• Army	40 862.7	1 591.623
• Air Force	25 429.7	1 330.201
Total	88 176.0	4 016.194

ADF Command

The Chief of the Defence Force (CDF) commands the ADF and is the principal military adviser to the Government.

HQADF has been expanded and strengthened over recent years to reflect the importance of integrated planning for ADF operations, and for effective joint operations in credible contingencies. HQADF provides policy, planning and administrative support to CDF, as well as command support systems to assist his command of operations. Staff action focuses on the direction and coordination of ADF force development planning; the development of operational concepts; ADF administrative policy, including health, conditions of service and legal matters; operational, contingency and logistics direction and planning; and communications-electronics planning.

Command, control and communications

During 1987 existing command arrangements were examined by an ADF Command Study. This resulted in the redefinition of the responsibility for the conduct of all operations through Maritime, Land and Air Commanders Australia, or through any other operational commanders designated by CDF, direct to CDF. The Study identified the need for a Commander Joint Forces Australia in more substantial conflict, to be responsible to CDF for the planning, conduct and coordination of operations by the

operational level commanders. This concept will be exercised during Exercise KANGAROO 89, which will be the largest exercise since the Second World War.

The Study identified a requirement for a subordinate formation to Land Command, to plan for and conduct the defence of northern Australia and other defence tasks within its assigned area of responsibility, other than those tasks which are the specific responsibility of the Maritime and Air Commanders. Ministerial approval for the formation of Northern Command was given in March 1988. The Command becomes operational on 1 July 1988 and will be exercised during Exercise KANGAROO 89.

A command support system for HQADF was further developed during the year. The system will facilitate the collection, collation, analysis and dissemination of information to allow the CDF to command the ADF more effectively. The system will complement the existing command structure. The present phase involves refining the system through in-house studies with a view to examining its feasibility and implementation options.

A Memorandum of Understanding on command and control systems interoperability with the United States was signed in September 1987. This has resulted in the formation of the Australian/United States Command and Control Systems Interoperability Management Board. The Board has the charter of establishing and maintaining a cooperative program to ensure the interoperability of command and control systems and facilities in use or to be used by the armed forces of the two countries during combined activities.

In April 1988 the Board determined that the two countries would maximise opportunities offered by combined exercises at all levels to further develop the required levels of interoperability. Exercise RIMPAC 88, conducted in June and July 1988, was the first such opportunity.

A number of communications projects and activities have been undertaken to provide a secure, survivable multi-purpose communications system including the installation of the first phase of the Defence Integrated Secure Communications Network and construction of the fixed elements of the Defence Satellite Communications System Command.

Other developments were the completion of the first phase of a secure communications network to support counter terrorist operations and the commencement of a study to further rationalise the strategic high frequency communications network.

Force planning and operational concepts

A Force Development Planning Branch has been established within HQADF to support the Vice Chief of the Defence Force (VCDF) in his responsibilities for planning for the defence of Australia.

Late last year, the Defence Operational Concepts and Capabilities Committee (DOCCC), under the chairmanship of VCDF, was established to provide improved scrutiny of Service capability proposals at an earlier stage in the force development process. The early work of the DOCCC has been concerned with the development of operational concept papers designed to provide guidance for the force development planning staffs of the three Services. The Committee has also considered specific force development proposals.

Logistics

Corporate plan for logistic support of the ADF

Following the recent establishment of Joint Logistics Branch in HQADF and the re-organisation of the Defence Logistics Organisation, it was recognised that there should be an overall corporate strategic plan for defence logistics. Work commenced early in 1988 to define what form such a plan could take. The requirement is to improve logistic coordination at all levels and to determine long term logistic objectives. When developed the Corporate Plan will provide the ADF and the Department with a broad objective strategy on which to base detailed supply and support planning at all levels.

Development of an ADF stockholding policy

Although each Service has a stockholding policy, their relevance to our current strategic circumstances has not been tested, and there is no overall Departmental policy in other than broad principles. The CDF and the Secretary have initiated a study to develop and propose an overall stockholding policy for the ADF. The study is to apply Government endorsed strategic guidance and objectives from the Defence Policy Information Paper when addressing the purpose and application of a stockholding policy. In that process the study will draw on relevant concepts of operation. The purpose of the study is to assist judgements on priorities for levels of investment in particular areas.

Development of joint administrative planning procedures

Joint administrative planning procedures to provide effective logistic support and to enhance operational efficiency continued to be developed during the year reflecting, in particular, recent changes to ADF command and control arrangements. The procedures will be tested during Exercise KANGAROO 89.

Exercises

Exercises are the primary means by which the training and readiness levels of the ADF are developed, maintained and assessed.

The Defence Policy Information Paper requires ADF capability to focus primarily on operations applicable to lower level conflicts in northern Australia and its surrounding oceans and airspace.

A number of single Service, joint and combined exercises were conducted in northern Australia, concentrating on low level conflict. They have provided the opportunity for ADF personnel to become familiar with the region and have enabled doctrine and procedures in associated areas of warfare to be tested. Exercise KANGAROO 89 will further develop and test capabilities in the north.

Combined exercises promote opportunities for the ADF to learn about other nations' state of the art equipment and about allied military doctrine. They are valuable in developing cooperation between the ADF and other armed forces, including those of regional nations, through training activities of mutual benefit.

The combined exercise program for 1987-88 included exercises with the United States, New Zealand, Papua New Guinea, United Kingdom, Canada, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia and Brunei.

Conditions of service

Revised administrative arrangements

New administrative arrangements were introduced which transferred from the Department of Defence to the Department of Industrial Relations the responsibility for presenting the Commonwealth case on pay and related matters to the Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal. The authority to determine ADF conditions of service generally transferred from the Minister for Defence to the Minister for Industrial Relations at the same time.

The transfer of authority required a reorganisation of arrangements within Defence. By joint agreement between the Secretary and the CDF, a Pay and Conditions Branch was established within HQADF. This Branch operates in a way that recognises the responsibilities shared by the Secretary and the CDF to develop and pursue conditions of service policy proposals for the ADF to the Department of Industrial Relations and, where applicable, to the Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal.

Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal activities

In July 1987 the Tribunal awarded an increase of 22% in Service Allowance and subsequently increased Field Allowance (from \$4.01 to \$12 per day), determined a Submarine Escape Training Facility Allowance for trainees (\$7.50 per day) and instructors (\$1200 per annum) and restructured and increased the rates of Seagoing and Hard Lying Allowances (by a maximum of 101% and 117% respectively). A special Flying Allowance (of \$2000pa or \$3500pa depending on flying category) was also awarded by the Tribunal in February 1988 pending a subsequent full review of that allowance. In January 1988 the Tribunal awarded a Second Tier increase of 4% in ADF salaries and Service Allowance in accordance with the National Wage Case principles after efficiency measures were agreed with the Commonwealth and endorsed by the Tribunal.

The Tribunal determined that the February 1988 National Wage Case decision for a \$6 per week increase should apply to the ADF.

Pilot retention bonus

The Government introduced the Pilot Retention Bonus in May 1988 in response to higher than average resignation rates among ADF pilots. Sixty-six per cent of the initial offers of a \$70 000 taxable bonus in return for a six year service commitment were taken up. This response will allow the ADF to plan with greater certainty and training rates can be adjusted to counter more predictable future wastage rates.

Manpower and personnel resources

Personnel resource strategy

In keeping with the requirements of the Defence Policy Information Paper, a Personnel Resource Strategy was introduced during the year. The strategy has as its objective the effective use of the manpower resource and this requires the consideration of Regular Forces, Reserve Forces, civilians and contractors as an overall resource.

An important element of the Strategy was the creation of a Trained Force and a Training Force in the ADF. The objective was to have a Trained Force which could effectively meet the operational tasks required by the Government. The Training Force is conceived as a flexibly-sized element of the ADF whose main objective is to provide comprehensive pre-employment training to newly recruited cadets and trainees. When trained these personnel are made available to the Trained Force to maintain its strength. The strategy insulates the Trained Force from the influences of variable separation rates in ADF personnel. Other features include:

- the employment of civilian personnel to undertake some tasks presently carried out by ADF personnel. This allows redeployment of Service personnel to higher priority positions, thereby increasing the overall capacity of the ADF;
- contracting a greater proportion of defence work to private industry; and
- the rationalisation of common service functions under single Service management.

Current manpower figures

The target Authorised Average Strength of the ADF for 1987-88 was 70 207, with a Trained Force of 63 101 and a Training Force of 7 106. The achieved average strengths for the ADF as at 30 June 1988 were within 0.1% of target.

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>Total</i>
Trained Force	13 842	28 883	20 476	63 201
Training Force	1 805	3 088	2 078	6 971
<i>Total</i>	<i>15 647</i>	<i>31 971</i>	<i>22 554</i>	<i>70 172</i>

Current status of Reserve Forces

As at 30 June 88, there were 37 982 Reserves, consisting of 27 937 with training obligations and 10 045 without training obligations.

The strategy of an overall approach to manpower arrangements has potential application in the transfer of effort from the Regular Defence Force to Reserve personnel. New areas of capability that have been identified as suitable for assistance from the Reserves now that legislation has been passed for restricted call out include:

- Navy
 - mine countermeasures to protect ports, focal areas and shipping routes in coastal waters.
- Army
 - integration of Regular and Reserve forces at unit and formation level especially:
 - regional surveillance of the north and north west;
 - protection of key areas including Darwin and Tindal and the Learmonth, Curtin and Cape York airfields; and
 - integration of Reserves into 1st Armoured Regiment and the medium artillery components of the expansion base.
- Air Force
 - further integration into base formations as well as operational units.

Separation rates

The last decade has been a period of fluctuating rates of separation for the ADF.

The Defence Sub-Committee of the Joint Parliamentary Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade commenced an inquiry into ADF separations. The Committee is examining the extent of separations, the implications on ADF capability of these separations and the steps that are being taken to improve retention. The Department provided two submissions to the Committee. The first contained a comprehensive statistical presentation which related the history of separations over the last 10 years. An accompanying analysis indicated that recent increases in separations have been primarily influenced by:

- the creation of more career opportunities for women in the ADF. Women have a higher separation rate than men. As the proportion of women in the ADF has increased this has had some effect on increasing the overall number leaving;
- the development of an indigenous defence industry resulting in more opportunities being created for the private employment of skilled Defence personnel;
- members of the ADF reacting to changing national economic conditions and perceiving that now is the time to make the transition to civilian life;
- general societal factors such as greater job mobility, greater concern by Service parents for educational stability for their children, and more two income families (causing members to be more likely to leave the Service if a geographic change in military job location is detrimental to the perceived best interest of the member's family);
- historical reasons such as a general build-up in the size of the ADF in the 1960s which is reflected in increased separations in the 1980s;
- the incentive provided by pension entitlements designed to produce a young, fit ADF, and to permit members to pursue a further career;
- increased recruiting which, given the higher separation rate for trainees and cadets when compared with the Trained Force, results in a higher overall separation rate for the ADF; and
- the slightly higher total separation rate in the ADF being mirrored in other employment sectors in the economy.

A second submission considered the effects of the present level of separations on the capability of the ADF to fulfil its role in an effective manner as well as the measures taken to reduce these separations. The submission highlighted the many initiatives being undertaken to achieve better organisational efficiencies, personnel management

improvements, reduced posting turbulence, better support for members' families, improvements in Service pay and planned significant improvements in Service housing. The submission concluded that the current increase in separations is generally manageable, although there are specific employment categories where the increases have been significant.

Defence families support

The Australian Defence Families Information and Liaison Staff continued with its program of recruiting and training staff to provide community development and education support for major concentrations of Service families around Australia.

Mrs Helen Mayer was appointed as a Ministerial Consultant to look at means of alleviating the problems that flow from the transient nature of Service family life. In particular, Mrs Mayer is addressing schooling problems for the children of Service families. Different educational standards and requirements such as entry age in each of the States have been highlighted.

The National Consultative Group of Service Spouses met twice this year to provide the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel and the CDF with advice on behalf of Service spouses.

Implementation of the Hamilton Report *Supporting Service Families* continued throughout the year. Significant initiatives were:

- the provision for four reunion visits annually at public expense for members separated from their families on long-term postings;
- reimbursement of the cost of child care when only one parent can be present during a removal; and
- assistance in meeting the cost of extra tuition for children where this is necessary to offset educational detriment suffered because of an involuntary change in school.

Service health

The major policy achievement was the formulation of an ADF policy for the detection, prevention and administrative management of Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) infection. The policy was developed specifically to meet the requirements of the ADF and is aimed at minimising the impact of HIV infection (AIDS) on the ADF by a program of education, counselling and blood testing.

The policy was formulated with advice and agreement by the AIDS Task Force, NACAIDS and the Department of Community Services and Health.

Other health initiatives undertaken include the preparation of Joint Service health doctrine and the rationalisation of health policy and administrative procedures common to the three Services.

Navy

Objective

The objective of the RAN is to raise, train and maintain seaborne forces structured to be able to:

- deal with credible maritime contingencies in Australia's area of direct military interest, generally as part of a joint force; and,
- provide a base for longer term expansion should this be required.

Implicit in this objective is the requirement for naval forces to:

- sustain a capacity for independent operations within Australia's area of direct strategic interest, but distant from main bases and logistic support areas, and particularly in northern waters. The RAN is to be capable of:
 - contributing to maritime operations to prevent an adversary from substantial use or exploitation of our maritime approaches;
 - coastal operations, particularly mine countermeasures and to counter harassment and infiltration;

-
- ocean operations requiring higher levels of offensive and defensive capability; and
 - deployment in the region in support of Australia's interests;
 - undertake national peacetime tasks as directed by the Government including hydrography, oceanography, marine science, coastal surveillance and assistance to the civil community in the form of search and rescue and disaster relief operations;
- maintain an effective capability to contribute to the ANZUS Treaty, support international peace keeping, and, having regard to national priorities, practice interoperability with the USN, RNZN and other allied forces; and
- maintain the Reserve Force as a basis for expansion.

Achievement of objectives

The Defence Policy Information Paper acknowledged that: *By its very nature, the defence of Australia emphasises maritime warfare capabilities.* This is most clearly reflected in the planned development of the RAN surface combatant force and in the continuing progress in mine countermeasures capabilities.

Surface combatant force

The future structure of a numerically larger surface combatant force is based upon development of three tiers of capability. The main thrust of this approach is to develop a sizeable core of general purpose, ocean-going warships which may operate singly or in company with other units of the force. This core will be supplemented by more specialised, smaller warships optimised for tasks in coastal and inshore waters and by higher capability warships designed to meet more substantial threats.

In the last decade, the transition to a surface force more suited to Australia's strategic circumstances and defence needs began with the introduction of the FFG-7 class frigates. These ships have longer endurance, greatly improved surveillance capability, and better self defence and strike capabilities. The FFGs, and the guided missile destroyers (DDGs) contribute to an expansion base of capabilities and skills applicable to more substantial conflict. They can deter escalation and provide reinforcement and sea-going command facilities. These ships will continue to meet the first tier requirement for some years to come.

The DDGs are undergoing a further upgrade of their combat data systems at Garden Island Dockyard. The first ship to complete this program—HMAS *Brisbane*—is now back at sea. The FFGs are being modified to accept the new Seahawk helicopters now being acquired. HMAS *Darwin* is already fitted for Seahawk operations, as will be the two additional FFGs now being built at Williamstown.

In addition to these higher capability ships the RAN requires an effective general purpose warship with capabilities suitable for dealing with lesser forms of military pressure that could arise in Australia's resource zones and proximate waters or in Australia's area of direct military interest. They would provide a capability for enhancement if necessary to meet more substantial contingencies. The ANZAC Ship project will provide eight second tier units to satisfy this need, increasing the ocean going force to 16 or 17 capable combat units by the turn of the century.

The third tier of warships is intended for operations in coastal waters within the continental shelf, including Australian Fishing Zone surveillance and response tasks currently being performed by the Fremantle Class Patrol Boats. Investigations are being initiated into our future needs for patrol boats.

Two ocean navy

A number of significant developments have taken place at HMAS Stirling, Western Australia, to implement the Government's intention to establish a two ocean navy. HMAS Stirling is to be further developed in two stages over the next ten to twelve years. During the year one submarine was homeported, adding to the two patrol boats, a survey ship and two DEs currently supported there.

Fleet relocation studies continued on the possibility of relocating some of the Fleet and the major Naval ammunition storage depot to Jervis Bay. In keeping with the Government's commitments on environmental concerns, an extensive examination of site options in Jervis Bay has been conducted as a basis for Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) studies which are about to commence. These studies will be the largest and most comprehensive of their kind undertaken in Australia. The important and sensitive marine ecology studies will be conducted by the CSIRO and the NSW Fisheries Research Institute.

Gulf mine countermeasures unit

In December 1987 the Minister announced that Australia would provide a mine clearance diving team to assist the international efforts to keep open the sea lanes in the Persian Gulf. A team of 17 clearance divers commenced training in Australia in December. Eight of these went to the UK in January for specialised training in the types of ordnance found in the Gulf. The team is on stand-by in HMAS Stirling ready to deploy. The Navy has a mine warfare specialist officer with the UK force in the Gulf to monitor events.

Personnel matters

Trained force

As a result of tighter management controls, a reduction of 10.5% has been achieved in the category of 'non-productive' personnel. This category, which comprises 13% of the Trained Force, includes such personnel as those on advanced training or on medical leave. A further reduction in this category can be expected with the phasing in of a full computer database management system in mid 1989.

Restructuring

Traditional Naval categories are being restructured and reskilling programs are being developed to satisfy technological advances. The manpower plan for the new submarines was introduced this year to retrain and crossstrain current submariners to increase the overall ability and skill of sailors while reducing manning levels. A similar although more refined program will be used for the ANZAC Ship project.

Posting policy

The Navy has introduced a posting policy aimed at creating greater posting stability by providing members with more than one posting in the same locality. More emphasis is given to reducing the effects of such factors as promotions, courses and transfers of branch on postings. Strict numerical positions on the promotion list are being replaced by promotion categories. These provide a degree of flexibility in promoting personnel to fill particular vacancies. This allows personal preferences to be better matched against Service requirements.

Reserves

A manpower growth plan has been developed which allows for a 10% per annum growth in the Naval Reserve and includes an allowance for the development of the minesweeping capability.

Naval logistics

To improve the technical, maintenance and materiel support provided to the Fleet it has been decided to combine the engineering and supply functions by creating a Logistics Division in Navy Office by 1989.

In addition, to provide a clear separation of implementation from policy formulation, 390 positions involved in support of the fleet will be devolved to Naval Support Command.

A review of Naval Support Command, concurrent with the creation of a Logistics Division will, amongst other things, examine the organisational structure required to accept devolved functions and positions.

Army

Objective

To raise, train and maintain ground forces structured to:

- deal with credible land contingencies in the defence of Australia, its territories and interests, generally as part of a joint force, using both Regular and Reserve forces; and
- provide a basis for longer term expansion.

Force structure

The Army's structure must include highly mobile forces capable of rapid deployment within Australia and its territories and able to conduct protracted and dispersed operations in harsh terrain where the existing infrastructure and resources are sparse.

The Army is to provide:

- ground surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities;
- a light air portable force, including a parachute element, capable of rapid deployment within Australia and its territories;
- tactical battlefield air support and mobility including helicopters;
- a force in support of the civil authorities capable of resolving high risk terrorist incidents;
- forces capable of following up initial deployments;
- forces of greater combat power to reinforce deployed formations as necessary;
- forces capable of deploying to defend vital defence installations and national infrastructure; and
- a logistics organisation capable of supporting the deployment and operations of these forces.

Achievement of objectives

Force development initiatives

Ground surveillance and reconnaissance was improved by enhancement of the capability of the 2nd Cavalry Regiment and the continued development of Regional Force Surveillance Units, of the Army's battalion parachute capability, progress in transfer of battlefield helicopter support to the Army and delivery of the first Black Hawk helicopter in May 1988. Significant changes to the structure of the Army Reserve arising from the Army Reserve Review Committee Report are also being implemented so that the Army Reserve can develop capabilities to meet its roles in credible low level contingencies. 3rd Division and 11th and 13th Brigades have been allocated the role of protecting vital assets. A Logistic Support Force which is being raised to support Land Command operations will be manned primarily from the Army Reserve.

Basing units in the north of Australia

Planning proceeded to relocate the 2nd Cavalry Regiment from Holsworthy to Darwin by the end of 1992. The Regiment will conduct independent, widely dispersed operations in response to, and in cooperation with, Regional Force Surveillance Units and other specialised reconnaissance and surveillance units. A base location and a training area have been identified and the acquisition processes commenced. The longer term relocation of a brigade to the north is presently under study.

Training

In training to meet credible land contingencies as part of a joint force the Army has conducted unit and formation level exercises in Australia using both Regular and Reserve forces. The exercises have been aimed at developing skills and techniques in units and at assessing the standards and capabilities required by the Army to meet the objectives of mobility and deployability for protracted operations in areas of harsh terrain and limited infrastructure. The activities have ranged from routine Regional Force Surveillance Unit patrols to deployment exercises for the Operational Deployment Force (ODF), and a major deployment to the Cooktown area by 1st Division where 3RAR conducted a battalion group parachute insertion.

Assistance to the civil community

Counter-terrorism

The counter-terrorist capability of the ADF was maintained during the year. Several exercises involving the ADF, Federal and State police forces and other government agencies were conducted. Plans were developed for the protection of vital offshore installations and new counter-terrorism training facilities are under construction at Swanbourne in Western Australia.

Ordnance detection and disposal activities

The Army continued to assist Federal and State police forces by providing explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) teams to render safe improvised explosive devices (IED), and explosive detection dog teams to search for explosives. Army EOD teams attended approximately 1100 tasks and travelled some 158 000 kms. Twelve tasks related to IED disposal were conducted.

The Army has instigated programs in Queensland and New South Wales to identify land contaminated by unexploded ordnance (UXO). Historical records are being researched and ex-servicemen interviewed. The results from these pilot projects should allow informed consideration of the issue of decontamination of affected land.

Survey operations

Major field operations were conducted in the Cape York, Victoria River Downs and Pilbara areas. An operation to obtain survey control for mapping was conducted in the Moomba area of South Australia using high technology equipment, including TI 4100 Global Positioning System receivers, and the Inertial Position System FILS-3, recently introduced into service. In 1987-88 the Army published some 380 maps and charts through the Survey and Land Information Group. This map production method is a by-product of the digital data base presently being created.

Personnel management

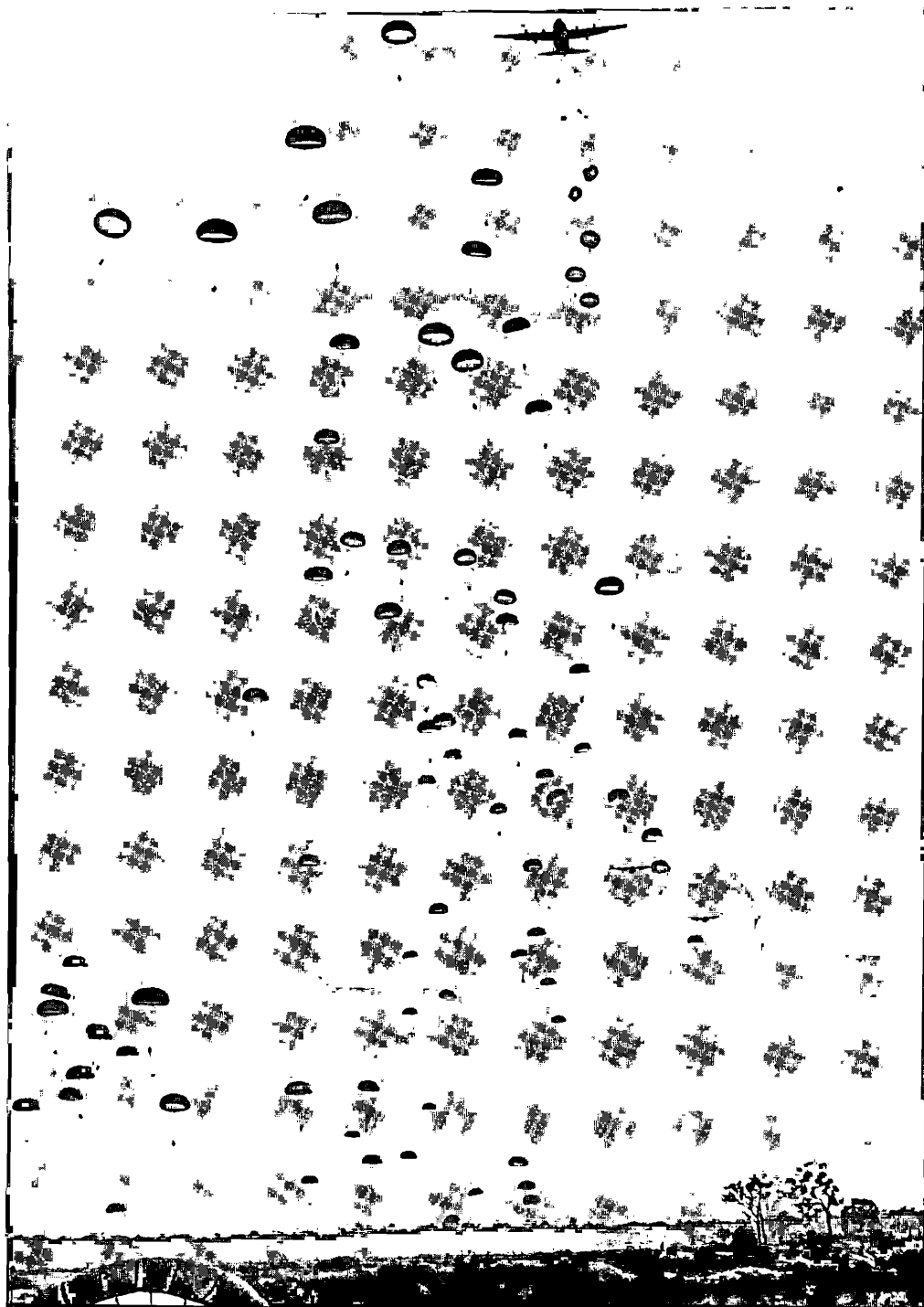
Open ended enlistment

Development of an open ended enlistment scheme was completed during the year. As a result of amendments to the Defence Act, from 1 July 1988 the Army will no longer offer fixed engagements for soldiers; instead soldiers will enlist until retirement age.

Discharge will be granted provided the soldier gives six months notice, has provided a minimum of four years service and has met any return of service obligations. The changes will modernise soldier career management and benefit both the soldier and the Army.

Career management

Considerable refinement of the Army personnel posting system has been undertaken. The coordinated use of Army Statements of Objectives, FYDP priorities, the Army



A total of 450 airborne soldiers from 1 Brigade jumped into history near Caen north of Cooktown on Cape York Peninsula during Exercise Far Canopy. Far Canopy, which was the biggest peacetime airborne operation since World War Two was part of the international exercise, Diamond Dollar. More than 7 000 Australian and American soldiers participated in Diamond Dollar during October in far north Queensland.

Manpower Plan and contingency plans enable priorities, acceptable levels of manning and manning lead times to be evaluated. Some positions in low priority units have been left vacant to avoid unnecessary posting turbulence, and Army Reserve members on full time service have been used to fill some Regular positions. The posting system aims at issuing posting orders at least six months in advance of an intended posting and greater consultation is to occur between the career manager, the units involved and the member concerned.

Improvements in computer support systems allow more time to be devoted to issues affecting a member's family needs and personal aspirations. Greater emphasis is being placed on extending the tenure of postings and, where possible, leaving a member in the one geographical location for successive postings.

Health

A Health promotion program has been implemented to ensure that the high standard of physical fitness, required to maximise operational efficiency, is maintained by members of the Army. The benefits of this to the Army will be increased physical fitness of soldiers and a reduction in the loss of man hours through illness and injury.

The Army has introduced a lifestyle training program to ensure that young men and women are aware of the detrimental effects of alcohol and drug use and to reinforce the 'No Drugs' policy.

Family support

The Army is continuing to develop its family support organisation. Selection and training of staff for the Army Community Services Organisation has been reviewed and improved. A series of publications, leaflets and films is being introduced to provide families with a wide range of information on social and welfare matters. Twenty part-time Family Liaison Officers have been employed to assist families to assimilate into communities, particularly when posted to new locations.

Logistics initiatives

Logistic support force

A Logistic Support Force (LSF) is being raised to provide logistic support to 1st Division when deployed. Manning of the headquarters is almost complete, and the raising and manning of units will continue into 1989. The LSF relies on Reservists for approximately 60% of its manpower, and consequently development is directly related to the ongoing restructuring of the Army Reserve. It is planned that the LSF will deploy to Exercise KANGAROO 89. A requirement of the LSF is to maintain a smaller element, the Logistic Support Group, ready to deploy in support of the ODF.

Integrated distribution system

The Army is developing an integrated distribution system (IDS) which will be able to operate within civilian transportation, distribution and freight handling systems. IDS will provide compatible sub-systems of containers, packaging, material handling equipment, vehicles and automatic data processing control. Containers are the keystone of the system and prototype containers for military applications are now being built to the International Standards Organization standard. These containers, designed and built in Australia, will be the basic unit against which the required capability will be developed. The system will permit more responsive, effective and efficient use of military and civil infrastructure.

Movement control

A Cargo Visibility System is being developed to provide logistic managers with visibility of freight shipments moving within the Support Area and areas of operations. The

system consists of a transponder/bartag attached to a container, a reader device and a data logger which will interface with a computer to update freight shipment databases giving logistic managers real time information on where critical supplies are located within the distribution system.

An Automated Movements and Transport Operating System will automate the movements and transport functions of passenger and cargo movements, removal management, finance management and transport management information within the Support Area. A consultancy study has been completed and a computing support proposal is under development.

Air Force

Objective

The objectives of the Air Force are to raise, train and maintain air forces structured to:

- deal with credible contingencies in the defence of Australia, its territories and approaches, generally as part of a joint force, and including support of maritime and land operations; and
- provide a basis for longer term expansion.

Force structure

The Air Force structure reflects the need for air forces capable of conducting air operations and supporting maritime and land operations. The Air Force is to provide:

- national airspace surveillance and control together with broad area surveillance and a capability for air intercepts;
- combat aircraft for air defence and offensive air support;
- combat aircraft for reconnaissance and strikes against maritime and land targets;
- a long range maritime patrol force for sea surveillance, maritime targetting and strike, anti-submarine warfare, aerial mine laying and search and rescue;
- an air transport force for long range transport and air-to-air refuelling;
- a tactical air transport force to support land operations;
- transport aircraft for special transport operations such as VIP tasks;
- a search and rescue capability for RAAF and foreign military aircraft operating in the Australian area;
- a command and control organisation; and
- a logistics organisation for supporting the operation and deployment of these forces.

Achievements

Of the various force structure changes arising from the Defence Policy Information Paper, the Air Force is primarily addressing the upgrading of the strike and reconnaissance force, the enhancement of the tactical fighter force and the ongoing development of a chain of northern airfields.

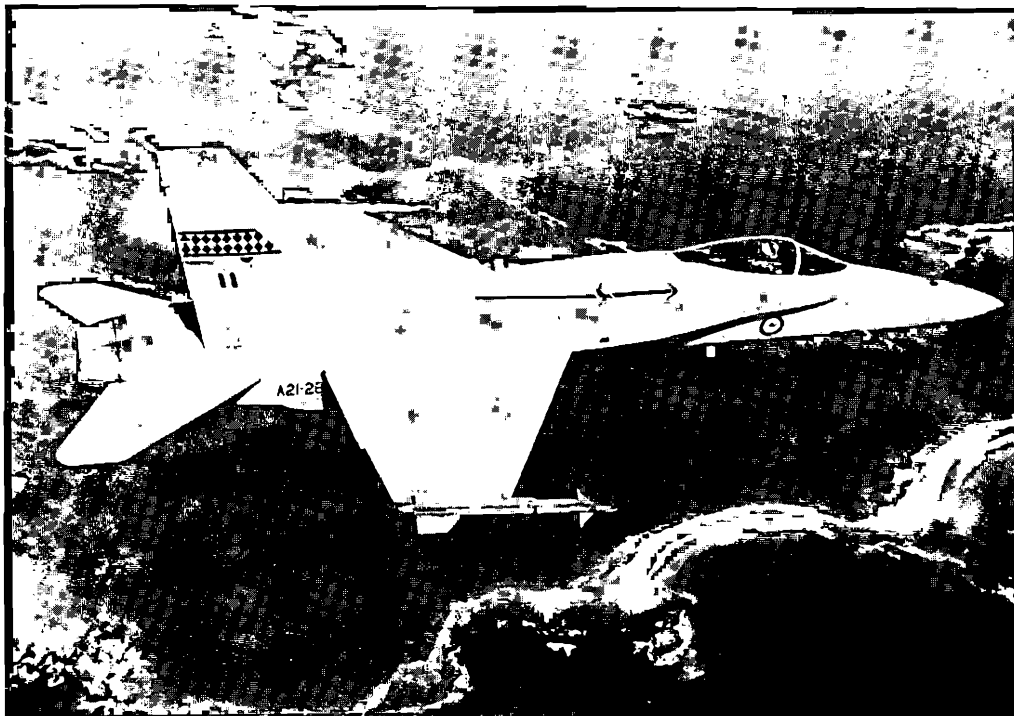
Strike and reconnaissance force

The primary capability for strike and reconnaissance resides in the RAAF's 22 F111C aircraft based at RAAF Amberley. These aircraft represent a unique capability in regional terms. The Government's intentions include refurbishment to maintain the aircraft in service and to reduce significantly their operating costs. Studies have been conducted during 1987-88 to assess the scope and cost of options for the upgrade of the aircraft's avionics systems and avionics test equipment.

This year precision guided munitions were incorporated into the Air Force inventory, complementary flight and separation trials conducted for HARM and GBU-15 weapons, and the Pave Tack precision weapon delivery system modifications virtually completed.

Capability proposals and studies for the updates were advanced for:

- the incorporation of new Automatic Test Equipment; and
- an avionics upgrade to provide replacement digital systems.



75 Squadron is being equipped with F/A-18 aircraft and will be relocated to Tindal late in 1988. Pictured is A21-26 on its maiden flight as a 75 Squadron aircraft.

Tactical fighter force

During the year No 2 Operational Conversion Unit and two fighter squadrons at RAAF Williamtown were equipped with F/A-18 Hornet aircraft. Delivery of the aircraft to 75 Squadron progressed steadily and the Squadron will be redeployed from RAAF Darwin to RAAF Tindal in September bringing to an end over 20 years of Mirage flying in the RAAF. The contract for the probe and drogue air-to-air refuelling modifications to four Boeing 707 transport aircraft was agreed in June 1988. The provision of an air-to-air refuelling capability will significantly upgrade the effectiveness of the tactical fighter force. Proposals for the acquisition of an airborne early warning and control (AEW&C) capability to complement the over-the-horizon and ground based radar surveillance of our vast northern sea and air approaches are being developed. Current planning is for up to four AEW&C aircraft to enter service by the mid 1990s. This additional capability will expand and improve the effectiveness of the TFF in the detection and identification of aircraft targets.

Northern airfields

The ADF's ability to conduct air operations across Australia's northern approaches was enhanced with the continuing development of the Derby and Tindal projects. Stage 1 of Derby South was completed in December 1987 and officially opened as RAAF Curtin by the Prime Minister on 11 June 1988. RAAF Tindal progressed on schedule and will

enable 75 Squadron to redeploy from RAAF Darwin in September 1988. The final airfield in a chain suitable for the wide range of Air Force operations between RAAF Learmonth and RAAF Townsville is planned for Cape York Peninsula. Consultants have been engaged to conduct site surveys, identify sources of construction materials and locate ground water. Their report, which will facilitate the selection of a suitable airfield site, was received in June 1988.

Butterworth, Malaysia

The nature of the RAAF presence at Butterworth changed with the withdrawal and disbandment of 79 Squadron (Mirage aircraft) in May 1988. Rotational deployments of strike and fighter aircraft which are planned for a minimum of at least 16 weeks each year to Butterworth and Singapore for a series of air defence exercises will begin later in 1988.

Assistance to the civil community

P3C Orion aircraft flew regular patrols of the Australian Fishing Zone in support of the civil coastal surveillance program and also assisted South West Pacific island nations with the surveillance of their Exclusive Economic Zones. About 700 hours and 500 hours respectively were allocated to these two maritime tasks. The Orions also provided limited and diminishing assistance to the Australian Customs Service in their surveillance of vessels carrying illegal cargo in Australia's coastal waters.

During 1987-88 RAAF aircraft responded to 52 significant requests for disaster relief and emergency assistance. Cyclone relief of Vanuatu in January 1988 followed by flood relief along the Queensland/NSW border were prominent examples of disaster relief whereas emergency assistance was provided for a wide range of tasks including,

- medical evacuations from Norfolk Island, Darwin and Port Moresby; and
- search and rescue missions for two people lost in the Brindabella Ranges west of Canberra, for the crew of a yacht sinking off Moreton Island, in the Cocos Islands area for an overdue dinghy, for a tanker captain lost overboard in the Indian Ocean and for a South African Airways Boeing 747 which was lost off Mauritius.

The Air Force also participated in a range of non-emergency activities such as air shows and flypasts. Considerable resources were devoted to the Australian Bicentenary Celebrations, Expo 88, the Vietnam Veterans' Welcome Home Parade and the opening of the New Parliament House.

Personnel management

Officer career management and development

A review of the RAAF Officer Personnel Management System was carried out in 1987. The review introduced a new Personnel Evaluation Report, Career Development Review Boards, and a more open environment for advice to the officer corps on their career opportunities and development. Further studies are being conducted to improve the career prospects and job satisfaction of the officer corps including:

- a general list concept at senior officer level;
- improved career streaming and specialisation for officer categories; and
- employment of officers out of their specialised categories.

Airmen/airwomen permanent engagement scheme

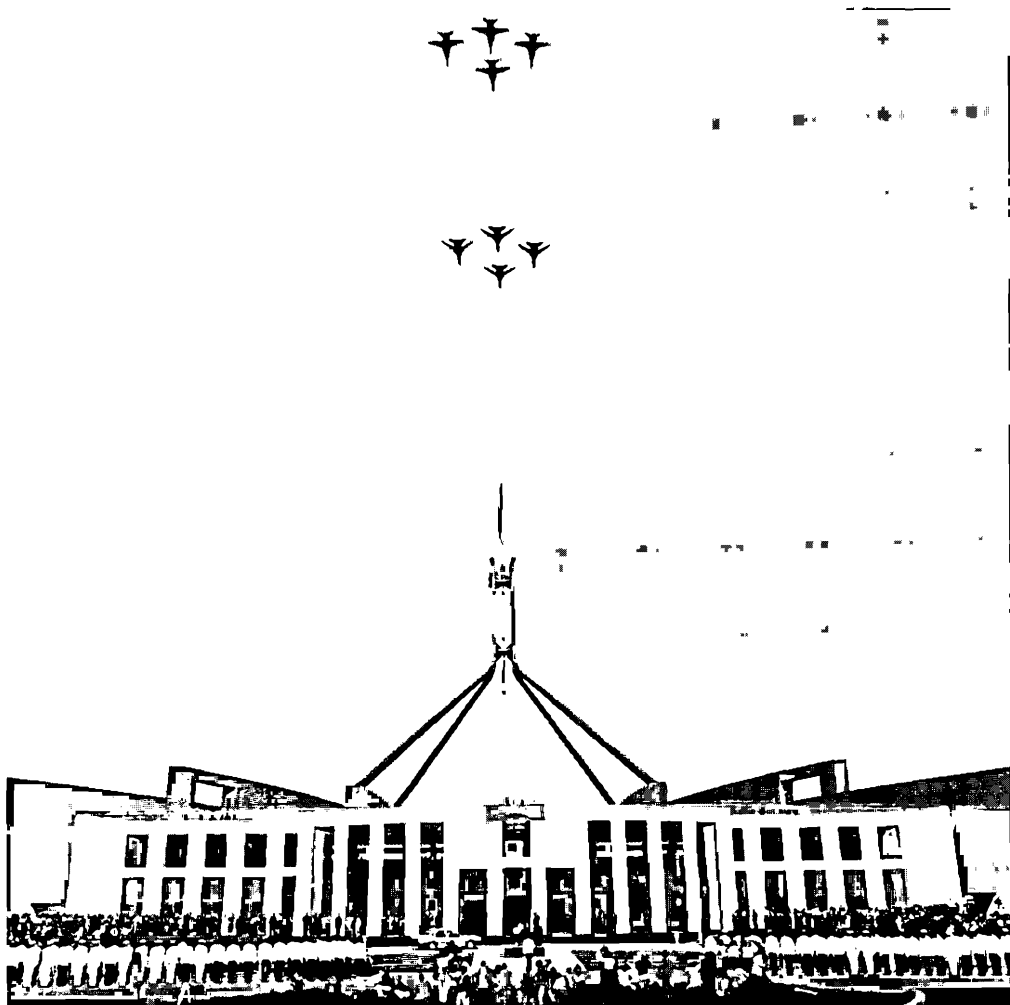
The scheme offers suitable, qualified airmen and airwomen the opportunity to re-engage until their nominal age for retirement at the 12 years of service point. This scheme is seen to positively assist retention by providing employment security whilst permitting resignations at any time as long as the normal three months warning is given.

Wastage rates

Air Force personnel wastage rates continued to receive attention during the year. Of particular concern in officer figures was the continued increase in wastage of pilots. A total of 123 pilots separated during 1987-88, an increase of 67 over the ten year average of 56.

Various management initiatives are being undertaken to redress the loss. They include the introduction of:

- a pilot retention bonus;
- an extension to pilot training return of service obligation from six to eight years;
- the introduction of a specialist air crew option designed to offer selected pilots the opportunity to remain flying for extended periods after completing their return of service obligation; and
- a planned increase in retirement from fifty to fifty-five years for aircrew Wing Commanders.



Throughout the year the ADF was heavily committed to ceremonial and other activities associated with the Bi-centenary and the visit of their Royal Highnesses. On the occasion of the opening of the new Parliament House the ADF provided a guard of honour, an Army band and a flypast.



Officer Cadet Deborah Hicks and Flight Lieutenant Robyn Williams, both of NSW, graduated from No. 144 Pilots' course at RAAF Pearce to become the first two women pilots in the 67 year history of the RAAF.



Chapter 2— Defence development

Objective

The objective of Defence development is to coordinate, develop and implement the Government's policy of long term investment in defence equipment and infrastructure in accordance with the priorities set out in the Defence Policy Information Paper and elsewhere. Development of self reliant defence capabilities requires Australian industry involvement in the supply, repair and maintenance of defence equipment and the use of civil infrastructure where appropriate.

Elements in force development

Priorities for development of the ADF are ultimately based on assessments of our strategic environment. Australia's environment, unlike that of many other nations, allows us to distinguish clearly for force development purposes between different levels of threat and the different timescales over which they might develop.

In the Defence Policy Information Paper the Government described a strategy of defence in depth to protect Australia in the event of credible threats within our area of direct military interest. Defence in depth recognises the dominant importance of our northern maritime and air approaches for military planning, both as an obstacle for any hostile force to overcome and as a major influence on the shape of our defence force.

Defence in depth requires good intelligence about our region, an ability to intercept hostile forces in our northern approaches and a mobile force able to react to any incursion that does reach Australia. The ADF must have good range, endurance and mobility and be trained to operate over huge distances and in a harsh environment.

Investment in the force development program has averaged around 30% of overall defence expenditure in recent years. Sustained investment at broadly this level is required to meet the Government's policy of developing capabilities and infrastructure appropriate to increased self-reliance in the defence of Australia and its interests.

Priority military capabilities for defence in depth identified by the Defence Policy Information Paper include:

- surveillance and patrol operations in our maritime resources zone and proximate ocean areas;
- maritime forces (including mine countermeasure forces) able to protect shipping in coastal waters and in our focal areas and ports;
- ground reconnaissance and surveillance forces;
- mobile ground forces able to defeat hostile incursions at remote localities and protect military and infrastructure assets that support the projection of our maritime power;
- air defence within our maritime areas and northern approaches;
- maritime and land interdiction and strike capabilities, particularly the ability to undertake maritime strike operations in the approaches to north and north west Australia;
- a capability to sustain operations in areas of Australia and its territories remote from our industrial and logistic support centres; and
- command, control and communications systems commensurate with these tasks.

The components of the force development program are major capital equipment and capital facilities. The major capital equipment component involves an equipment acquisition program which emphasises equipment important to capabilities required for independent operations in credible contingencies. Australian industry involvement in the procurement of major capital equipment is the primary vehicle for developing indigenous capabilities for supply, repair and maintenance of defence equipment in accordance with defence policies.

Important military capabilities underway or planned include new submarines, mine countermeasures, an increase in the number of major naval surface warships from 12 to 16 or 17, a continuation of over-the-horizon radar and airborne early warning and control systems to form the basis of a national system of air defence and airspace control, improved command, control and communications, and enhancement of ground forces mobility.

In 1987-88 expenditure on major capital equipment to meet these requirements was \$1465m of which \$842m was spent in Australia. The proportion of capital investment spent in Australia is expected to increase substantially in the next few years with the completion of the F/A-18 project and the commencement of a number of large indigenous projects, including the ANZAC Ship, over-the-horizon radar, submarines, several defence communications projects, inshore minehunting catamarans, sonar projects and hydrographic vessels.

The capital facilities component is directed towards providing the extensive infrastructure of bases, airfields, communications stations, training and other facilities needed to support the ADF and its operations. The Government's policies for the development of this infrastructure reflect the increasing emphasis on operations in the north and north west of Australia, but acknowledge the concentration of population and industry in the south and south east. Defence infrastructure development also has regard to wider concerns, including the ability of civil infrastructure to meet defence needs, and the impact of defence activities on the community.

Future infrastructure planning will emphasise longer term options for developing, rationalising and, in some cases, relocating defence facilities throughout Australia and the greater use of civil infrastructure.

Some of the larger projects in the year under review were:

- RAAF Tindal in preparation for F/A-18 operations from 1989;
- RAAF Curtin, a bare base at Derby, was opened; and
- construction of facilities at Lavarack Barracks Townsville to accommodate and support the new Black Hawk helicopters.

In the year under review the following investment was achieved:

	<i>Staff Years</i>	<i>Outlays (\$m)</i>
Major capital equipment	450.1	1479.390
Capital facilities	157.0	367.920
Total	607.1	1847.310

Capital equipment procurement

Objectives

Within the Department of Defence the capital equipment procurement process is managed by the Capital Procurement Organisation.

The CPO functions are:

- to efficiently and effectively procure approved capital equipment for timely introduction into the ADF; and
- to develop an efficient industrial base in Australia capable of self-reliant supply and support of the ADF in contingencies, through peacetime procurements and industry development policies, including development funding, designated work, offsets, exports and technology transfer.

Immediate CPO objectives are to:

- improve individual and team project management skills through training and staff deployment programs;
- structure procurements to better harness and develop industrial capabilities through competition and contractual incentives, and to better assure project success in terms of time, cost and quality;
- more closely relate industry policies to strategic guidance and regional circumstances;
- coordinate financial program management more closely with project progression; and
- better manage new technologies and capabilities through the delicate development phase, ie. effective transition from research and development to the acquisition phases as operational systems.

To further these objectives the central elements of the CPO were reorganised during 1987-88.

Project management

A number of initiatives have been taken to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of management of capital equipment projects.

A major internal training program providing students with training in fields ranging from contract negotiating skills to logistics management is continuing. Over 200 personnel, representing some 20% of CPO staff, were trained through these courses in 1987-88.

A Master of Business in Capital Project Management has been established at the Darling Downs Institute of Advanced Education to provide advanced tertiary training for project managers. Both Service and civilian officers are currently attending the inaugural 1988 course. CPO members are also attending similar courses at other institutions.

The new CPO organisation has provided for the establishment of a project staff pool which will allow the flexible placement of engineer, technical and administrative staff. This will facilitate wider experience and career planning for individuals as well as formation of project teams with the necessary balance of expertise.

To ensure an effective transition from the research and development to the acquisition phase, the Department has established a new structure to manage projects through the engineering development stages. The over-the-horizon radar project Jindalee and the ship defence system Nulka are being managed in this way.

Project overview

In 1987-88 the Defence Budget provided for 10 new projects worth \$122m. The total value of the 110 major capital equipment projects (ie. project cost in excess of \$10m) currently under procurement is about \$18 billion. Other capital equipment projects of lesser cost to a value of \$282m are also under procurement.

Progress on current approved projects

Intelligence and surveillance

Over-the-horizon radar

Broad area surveillance of our northern air and sea approaches is to be provided by a network of up to three over-the-horizon radars (OTHR) expected to be capable of detecting and tracking aircraft and ships out to about 3000km. Planning is based on the

first radar to be located in Queensland. Of the other two radars, one is planned to be in Western Australia, and the other in central Australia.

An experimental system was designed and built near Alice Springs during the 1970s.

This site is presently being ungraded so that it may continue to serve as a research, engineering and operational test bed for the operational network now being planned.

Facilities construction, acquisition of computers and major software rewriting have been the major activities in 1987-88. Registrations of interest for the first radar were invited by Defence and industry briefings were held on 7 June 1988. The operational network will enter service in the mid 1990s after a phased development. It will be capable of operating 24 hours a day providing extensive coverage around the north of the continent.

Laser airborne depth sounder

This is an automated system using laser and other modern technologies which, when completed, will significantly increase hydrographic output.

Australian industry was invited in November 1987 to tender for the design completion, production, trialling (including extensive flying trials) and in-service support of the system's equipment. Four tenders were received in May 1988 and are being evaluated.

Navigation and survey

The accuracy of Army Survey mapping and position fixing has been enhanced with the introduction into service of a highly accurate inertial positioning system from Ferranti PLC in Scotland, the supply of nine satellite positioning systems from Texas Instruments in the US and electronic distance measuring equipment from other overseas sources.

Surveillance and night vision equipment

A wide range of equipments are being supplied to improve the surveillance capability and ability of the Army to operate at night and in poor visibility. Deliveries will be between July and December 1988. Australian industry played a key role in this high technology field with Fairey Australasia Pty Ltd manufacturing most of the night-sights and all of the drivers' night periscopes. Stabilised binoculars, being supplied by Telak, Sydney are due in late 1988. The supply of remote seismic systems from Racal UK will also be completed in 1988.

Electronic warfare support measures

An electronic warfare support measures sub-system consisting of three HF/VHF stations and other automated direction finding stations was delivered in late 1987.

Acceptance testing is being conducted. It is anticipated that the sub-system will be introduced into service by December 1988.

Airfield surveillance radars

The first of two airfield surveillance radars has been delivered to RAAF Tindal and will be in service when operations commence at the base in late 1988. The second radar is being installed at RAAF Sale and will be operational by December 1988.

Ansett Technologies has been associated with Selenia of Italy in the project. Andrew Antennas, as part of the defence offsets package, is manufacturing five antennae heads for Selenia.

Fast time acoustic analysis system

Thorn EMI has been awarded a contract to develop a fast time acoustic analysis system for the RAAF's Maritime Patrol Group. Data obtained during anti-submarine warfare missions is recorded on on-board magnetic tape units. The system will allow the play back of this recorded data at speeds up to eight times real time and permit speedier analysis of acoustic data, so improving earlier identification of submarines. Elements of the system can be deployed to provide data analysis in support of operations when maritime aircraft are operating away from Edinburgh.

Strike and interdiction

New submarines

A contract was signed with the Australian Submarine Corporation (ASC) for the design and construction of six submarines and associated supplies and services. Shareholders in ASC are: Kockums Pacific Pty Ltd (30%), Wormald Pty Ltd (25%), Australian Industry Development Corporation (25%) and CBI Constructors Pty Ltd (20%). The contract requires delivery of the submarines from January 1995 through to October 1999. The total project cost estimate approved by the Government is \$3 892m at June 1986 prices and exchange rates of which \$2 839m represents the price of our contract with ASC.

The submarines will be assembled in a new construction facility being designed and established by ASC at Port Adelaide. The facility, which will be owned by ASC, will cost some \$120m.

Sub-contracts placed by ASC and, in turn, by their sub-contractors are to be consistent with their contractual obligations to place work in Australia. Several important sub-contracts already placed include:

- Combat System (Rockwell Ship Systems Australia).
- Weapons Discharge Equipment (Strachan and Henshaw UK, Ordnance Factories Bendigo and Maribyrnong and British Aerospace Australia).
- Main Propulsion System (Jeumont Schneider France, Westinghouse Electric Australasia and Nilsen Electric SA).
- Power Conversion Equipment (EuroAtlas West Germany and Fairey Australasia).
- Combat System Software (Computer Sciences of Australia).
- Diesel Engines (Hedemora Sweden and Garden Island Dockyard).
- Sonar System (Thomson Sintra, CSA, Plessey Australia and British Aerospace Australia).
- Integrated Ship Control, Management and Monitoring System (SAAB Sweden and Wormald Technology).

F/A-18 aircraft

As at 30 June 1988, 46 F/A-18 aircraft, out of a total of 75, had been delivered. Although early deliveries were at a rate slightly less than planned, the delivery shortfall has now been reduced to three.

F/A-18 operational flight trainer

The two F/A-18 operational flight trainers have been installed at RAAF Tindal. Following testing by the contractor (Honeywell) and the RAAF, the trainer will be in service when Tindal becomes operational in late 1988. The trainers will provide realistic training for the Tactical Fighter Force and will greatly enhance all RAAF fighter flying training.

Maritime warfare

ANZAC Ship

The project is a joint venture with New Zealand to procure 12 new surface combatants (eight for Australia, four for New Zealand), with the first delivery scheduled for the early to mid 1990s.

The request for tender for the ship production contract was issued on 10 May 1988

with a return date of 29 December 1988. The evaluation and selection criteria for the responses to the request for tender emphasise the Government-imposed 'ceiling cost' on the project together with strict requirements for substantial Australian and New Zealand industry involvement and maximum transfer of ship design data and production technology.

Following evaluation of tenders, the production contract is currently scheduled to be signed in mid 1989.

The cost of the eight RAN ships is of the order of \$3.5 billion (at 1986 prices).

Seahawk helicopters

Deliveries of Seahawks to the RAN should begin late 1988. To fulfil its primary role of anti submarine warfare the Seahawk will employ the latest developments in combat systems technology and will also be configured for surface surveillance and targeting tasks.

Sixteen Seahawks have been ordered. The first of 10 US-built helicopters flew in December 1987.

A contract for a Flight Simulator/Weapons System Trainer was signed with the Singer Company in June 1987 and is expected to be operational at Naval Air Station Nowra in mid 1990.

Australian frigates

Construction of two frigates (FFGs) by the Australian Marine Engineering Corporation is proceeding at the Williamstown Dockyard, Victoria.

The company was awarded a fixed price contract to complete the construction of the ships following its purchase of the former Williamstown Naval Dockyard from the Commonwealth in February 1988.

Manufacture of the hull and superstructure units of FFG 05 is complete and the units are in the process of being assembled on the building slip. Manufacture of the hull units for FFG 06 has commenced. Industrial problems at Williamstown delayed construction between March and May 1988. These have been overcome and will not significantly affect delivery of the ships which is planned for 1991 and 1993 respectively.

DDG modernisation

The modernisation program of RAN destroyers (DDGs) HMAS *Brisbane*, *Perth* and *Hobart* commenced in September 1985 at Garden Island Dockyard. The program includes major updates of the ships' weapons, naval combat data system, sensors and communications fit. Additionally, all DDGs will be fitted with a chaff decoy system and will be fitted for a Harpoon missile capability. The weapon system update brings the majority of the ship's combat system to 1980s production technology and thus will significantly increase our capacity to support the equipment. In addition, the modernisation will accomplish some increase in capability through the installation of a modern electronic warfare system.

On 4 December 1987, HMAS *Brisbane* was delivered by the dockyard and received preliminary acceptance by the Ship Acceptance Board. The modernisation of HMAS *Perth*, which began on 2 March 1987 is progressing. Phase 4A of the project for the procurement and installation of the chaff decoy system was approved in June 1988.

This will be fitted to HMAS *Hobart* during modernisation and to HMAS *Perth* and *Brisbane* on the next suitable occasion following their modernisation.

FFG helicopter modification

All six FFGs are undergoing modifications to enable them to deploy the Seahawk helicopters. These include the lengthening of the flight deck, providing increased longitudinal strength to the hull and increasing flight and hangar deck strength. The modification of HMAS *Sydney* and *Adelaide* began on 10 August 1987 and 18 April 1988 respectively.

Minesweepers

The minesweeping project aims to provide a minesweeping core force by 1991-92. The mine countermeasures equipments being developed are innovative Australian designs for deployment from craft-of-opportunity such as fishing vessels. This concept avoids the requirement to construct very expensive purpose built minesweeping vessels. In August 1987, the Minister approved the acquisition of an interim minesweeping capability which includes the acquisition of three craft-of-opportunity and associated minesweeping equipment, to be used for the development of minesweeping tactics and doctrine. The auxiliary minesweeper *Brolga*, to be used for the testing and development of minesweeping equipment, was purchased in January 1988 from the Department of Transport. The craft-of-opportunity concept involves the maximum possible participation by Australian industry in order to provide the infrastructure for expansion.

Inshore minehunters

The second prototype vessel of the inshore minehunter Bay Class, HMAS *Shoalwater*, was commissioned into the RAN on 10 October 1987. With HMAS *Rushcutter* it is currently undergoing Navy acceptance trials which will continue until mid 1989. As part of these trials HMAS *Shoalwater* was the first Australian ship to undergo shock trials in Australian waters. These were conducted off Townsville in November 1987.

The methodology and conduct of this trial was developed by the Naval Design Branch, the Materials Research Laboratory and the RAN. Shock trials involve the detonation of a number of minelike charges around the vessel to prove the vessel can withstand the force of underwater explosions. The vessel performed above expectations during the trials.

The production order for four vessels awaits assessment of test and evaluation results. Some delay to the overall program has been caused by modifications to optimise equipment for Australian water conditions.

Overseas countries have shown a high interest in the vessel. Successful trials and acceptance of the vessels into the RAN could boost exports by the Australian shipbuilding industry.

Sonobuoy developments

Evaluation of the Barra sonobuoy by the US Navy under the Foreign Weapons Evaluation process is nearing completion. The final report is to be issued in September 1988. The evaluation has identified a potential US Navy requirement for an enhanced Barra sonobuoy, which would enable the buoy to be processed by existing USN airborne acoustic processors. Development of the enhanced Barra is being undertaken by Sonobuoy Australia (a partnership company formed by AWA and Plessey Pacific) under a licence agreement with the Commonwealth. Much of the technology which will be utilised in the enhanced Barra sonobuoy has been developed by the Defence Science and Technology Organisation and Australian industry from feasibility and concept validation studies for development of a new generation sonobuoy, a device designed to be able to meet the threat of the much quieter submarines that will be operating beyond the mid 1990s.

Project Nulka

The full scale engineering development phase of the Nulka ship defence system commenced in January 1988. The project is a collaborative development of the USA and Australia involving elements of both the public and private sectors of industry.

Harpoon training aid

The Harpoon Engagement Training Aid, a computer-based interactive tactical trainer, was received in April 1988 and has been issued to RAAF Edinburgh, Amberley and Williamstown for use in training crews of P-3C, F-111C and F/A-18 aircraft.

Combat systems trainer

The RAN is acquiring a mobile combat systems trainer (CST) from the US to provide training for the operational personnel of DDGs and FFGs. The CST will connect to ships alongside and cause the ship's radar sensors to simulate a realistic combat environment, thereby maintaining operational skills necessary to 'fight the ship' and enable best use to be made of available air and surface resources at sea.

In June 1986 it was decided to acquire the CST through US FMS. Production of the CST was completed in December 1987 and it is undergoing final testing. US Navy acceptance trials were completed by the end of June 1988 with shipment to Australia in July 1988, about three months ahead of schedule. The CST is planned to be handed over in early 1989 following RAN testing and crew training.

Mulloka sonar

Following successful trials between October 1987 and June 1988 the Mulloka sonar will be accepted into service by the end of 1988. Performance of the sonar is to be enhanced by the inclusion of the Sonar Acquisition Display System (SADS) which is being produced by Thorn EMI in South Australia. The first of seven units is due for delivery in October 1988. Trials are to be conducted to determine the further potential of Mulloka/SADS.

The production of Mulloka for the Australian frigates 05 and 06 is ahead of schedule. Thorn EMI delivered both sonar electronics systems in January 1988. Plessey Australia is producing the sonar arrays. The first was delivered in May 1988 and the second will be delivered by the end of 1988.

Mine Warfare Systems Centre

The Centre is to be established at HMAS Waterhen in Sydney. When commissioned, it will serve as the RAN mine warfare headquarters. It will collocate and integrate the command, control, communications and intelligence aspects of mine warfare while also providing for the maintenance and update of mine warfare weapon systems. In addition, the Centre will coordinate all technical and operator training for the permanent and reserve mine warfare forces.

Project definition studies, were approved in August 1987. It is planned that the acquisition phase will commence in 1990 and the Centre become fully operational in late 1994.

Survey motor launches

A contract for the design and production of four survey motor launches for the RAN was awarded in November 1987 to Eglo Engineering (SA) Pty Ltd.

The first steel plate was cut in February 1988, and delivery of the first launch due in November 1988. The remaining launches should be delivered at four-monthly intervals.

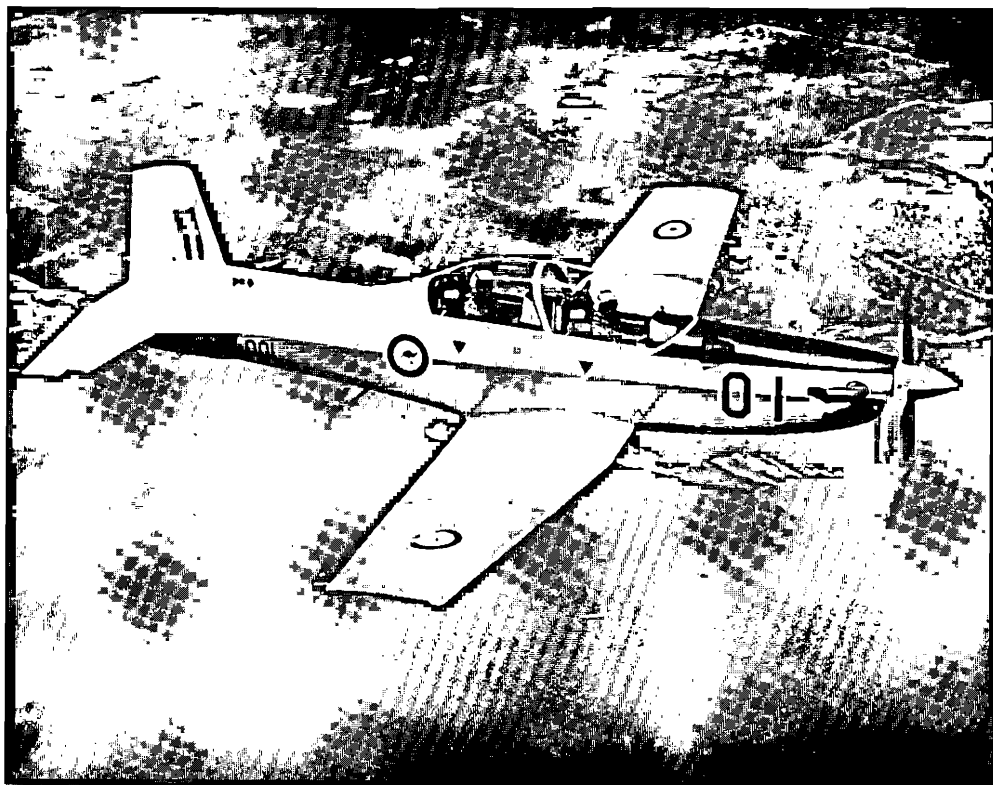
Naval tactical trainer

The Action Information Organisation Tactical Trainer is a training facility situated at HMAS Watson and primarily comprises a full size model of the operations room of the destroyer escort HMAS *Swan*. A contract was let to Honeywell (Australia) Ltd for the installation of a FFG Combat System Model at the facility. The contract involved computer interfaces, signal simulators and facsimiles of shipboard equipments, which when interfaced with FFG computers and display consoles, will simulate realistic combat scenarios for training FFG operations personnel in an authentic environment. The facility was accepted by the RAN in June 1988.

Air warfare

Trainer aircraft

Delivery of 67 PC-9/A trainer aircraft for the RAAF began in late 1987. The last aircraft will enter service in January 1992. Hawker de Havilland is the prime contractor



Royal Australian Air Force PC-9/A Trainer Aircraft.

for the aircraft and is building 65 of the aircraft under licence from Pilatus Aircraft of Switzerland.

A number of Australian companies, including Aerospace Technologies of Australia and Goodyear, are involved in the production. Hawker de Havilland has been contracted to provide flight line maintenance support for the aircraft at RAAF East Sale during its introduction into service.

Boeing 707 aircraft

Two additional B707 aircraft have been acquired from the Boeing Military Airplane Company to augment the RAAF's strategic airlift capability. Both aircraft were previously in commercial service. A third aircraft was also acquired for conversion to spares to support the other two aircraft. The three aircraft arrived at RAAF Richmond in February 1988. One is completing an extensive maintenance recovery schedule at Qantas. The second aircraft's maintenance program is planned to start in September 1988.

Boeing 707 tanker conversion

To extend the radius of action, range and endurance of the F/A-18 aircraft, the original four B707 aircraft will undergo modification to provide an air-to-air refuelling capability. The aircraft will be provided with wing mounted pods to allow the transfer of fuel through a drogue to the probe installed on F/A-18 aircraft. Additional avionics will be provided for the B707 aircraft to allow accurate rendezvous of tanker and receiver aircraft.

A contract has been established for the conversion. To satisfy defence offsets, Hawker de Havilland (Australia) under sub-contract, will undertake the avionics design

modification at a new facility being contracted at Tullamarine, Victoria. The first aircraft is due to enter the modification process in late 1988.

P3C operational flight trainer enhancement

The P3C Operational Flight Trainer at RAAF Edinburgh is having significant improvements made to its flight performance simulation following identification of deficiencies in the trainer's design. The Link Division of Singer has developed a modification to improve the 'flight' characteristics through changes to the motion base actuation and the controlling software. The changes will be completed by September 1988.

Mobile air traffic control system

Thorn EMI is developing a mobile air traffic control system for the RAAF. The system will be air transportable in C130 aircraft.

Land warfare

Black Hawk helicopters

Thirty-nine Black Hawk helicopters are being procured to improve the mobility of Army units. The first 14 aircraft are scheduled to enter service by mid 1989 and delivery of the remainder will be completed by late 1990.

The first aircraft was built in the US. The remainder are being assembled by Hawker de Havilland, Bankstown. The first Australian built aircraft was delivered in May 1988. Over 20 Australian companies are working on the project.

Light vehicles

Twenty-five hundred one tonne and 400 two tonne Land Rover vehicles are being procured from Jaguar Rover Australia (JRA), Moorebank. A high level of Australian content (about 50%) is included in the vehicles which are being assembled in Australia. The decision to source the vehicles through JRA Limited was made after extensive evaluation trials of a number of manufacturer's vehicles throughout Australia.

Full production of one tonne cargo variants commenced in July 1987. JRA Ltd has supplied approximately 500 vehicles to Army and is maintaining a production rate of at least three vehicles per day. Further development/user trials are continuing on specialist military vehicles for surveillance, medical and maintenance units.

Medium trucks

Six hundred four tonne trucks at a cost of \$70m are being manufactured by Mercedes Benz Australia (MBA) to complete the Army requirements. The contract is an extension of the one filled by MBA for the supply of 1295 four tonne vehicles. To date 259 have been received and the remaining 341 vehicles will be delivered by December 1989.

The Australian content in the vehicles is over 40% and there are a number of Australian companies involved in direct offsets in the provision of vehicle parts to Daimler Benz, Germany.

Semi-trailers and prime movers

A contract to replace the Army's fleet of semi-trailers and prime movers was awarded to International Harvester Australia Ltd in May 1987. The contract includes 88 prime movers, 115 semi-trailers and support equipment.

Vehicles will begin entering service late in 1988, with deliveries completed by 1990. More than 70% of the contract price of \$18m is to be spent locally.

Vehicles are to be built at the company's plant at Dandenong, Victoria. The semi-trailers are to be built at the Freuhauf plant in Victoria and Walsh Engineering in Queensland.

New small arms

Replacement of the majority of the ADF small arms with a more capable 5.56mm weapon system is well advanced and initial quantities of weapons will become available in late 1988 for production acceptance and field trials.

Sixty-seven thousand F88 rifles and 3420 light machine guns are being manufactured by Small Arms Factory Lithgow, NSW under licence from Steyr Mannlicher of Austria and Fabrique Nationale Herstal of Belgium respectively. Some 19 local firms in Australia and New Zealand are to be sub-contracted to the Small Arms Factory. The project has a local content of over 90%.

Ammunition for the weapons is being manufactured at the Ammunition Factory Footscray, Victoria.

Project Hamel

The current field artillery of the Army is being replaced with a new 105mm gun. The gun is of British design and was combat proven in the Falklands War.

One hundred and twenty one guns are being built by the ordnance factories at Bendigo and Maribyrnong. Sixteen of these guns are destined for New Zealand.

Fairey Australasia, is producing the optical sighting equipment for the gun under separate contract.

The first production guns were proof fired successfully at Port Wakefield in February 1988. Production is continuing on schedule and the guns will be entering service later in 1988.

Very low level air defence weapon system

The RBS 70 very low level air defence weapon system has now entered service with 111 Air Defence Battery (Light) and the first operational firings have been completed.

RBS 70, a laser guided system largely immune to jamming, replaced the obsolescent infra-red guided Redeye weapon and provides the Army with a much improved air defence capability. RBS 70 is a more complex weapon than Redeye and the procurement of additional training equipments to support the new system is being considered.

Engineering equipment

All-terrain cranes were introduced into service with engineer and terminal units in 1987-88 to provide the heavy material handling capability in construction and logistic tasks. Tenders have been called for the supply of two tonne multi-wheeled rollers for road and airfield construction tasks and for 2.5 tonne all-terrain forklifts for use by terminal units in materials handling, particularly in over-the-beach operations.

Field catering equipment

Thirty-two field kitchens were delivered in early 1988 increasing the total Army asset to 76. A further 32 field kitchens will be delivered in 1988-89.

Combat clothing and personal equipment

Disruptive pattern uniforms have been introduced into service. The first issues were made to units in North Queensland in June 1988 and over the next two years the remainder of the Army will be progressively issued with the uniform. A wet weather jacket manufactured with the same disruptive pattern and a cold weather liner are being issued progressively to units. Improved load carrying equipment for soldiers is planned for introduction early in 1989.

Command, control and communications

Project Raven

Project Raven provides for the development and procurement of a replacement single channel tactical radio system. It will increase the reliability, maintainability and capability of electronic-counter-counter-measures. The Raven prime contractor is Plessey Pacific Defence Systems based in Canberra.

Initial production of the HF radios commenced in May 1987 with the UK based sub-contractor at Ilford, Essex. Transfer of much of the manufacturing technology for the HF radio to the Plessey site at Meadowbank, Sydney has commenced and it is anticipated that the first Australian-built HF radio will be produced towards the end of 1988. The VHF sub-system initial production is also expected to commence in the UK in the latter part of 1988, subject to proving of the design.

Australian production will continue until the mid 1990s. Plessey is required to achieve a high level of Australian industry involvement, and there is export potential for Australian industry.

Project Parakeet

Project Parakeet is a major communications project to provide a replacement for the tactical trunk communications systems for the ADF. It is being managed in a number of phases and involves the development and introduction into service of a mobile, secure, field trunk communications system by providing a family of equipments capable of handling voice, telegraph, data and facsimile traffic.

During the year, under the current Phase 3 of the project, work has continued on the definition of equipment comprising the Parakeet system. This has involved the Phase 3 contractor, Racal Electronics Pty Ltd, with local and overseas sub-contractors in the preparation of detailed equipment specifications and a range of management cost and support plans together with a number of study reports. Further activity on this project will now be dependent on the award of new contracts, after tenders have been sought from Australian industry, for the development of the proposed system. Under the auspices of the Australian industry assistance program AWA has been developing an optical fibre cable system for use with Parakeet.

Defence integrated secure communications network (Discon)

The Discon strategic communications system will provide an Australia wide secure strategic communications network to meet Defence needs. Discon will be a digital system based on regional switching centres in each State and will provide secure voice, facsimile, telegraph and data communications. Switching centres will be interconnected by leased Telecom links, defence-owned terrestrial bearers and satellite broadband transmission links. Installation of equipment has commenced in NSW and the first phase contract covering NSW, Victoria and Queensland will be complete by the end of 1990. A further contract was signed with Plessey Pacific Defence Systems (Aust) in March 1988 for the second phase covering the remainder of Australia, and the network will be complete by 1992.

Defence satellite network (Defaussat)

The Defaussat project is planned to provide the satellite communications links between Discon switching centres using a transponder on the Australian domestic satellite (Aussat) and defence owned earth stations. NEC Australia Pty Ltd, in a joint venture with Clough Tripal Systems, has won the contract for this project. Installation of earth station equipment has commenced. Sites associated with the Discon first phase will be completed by mid 1989 and those associated with the Discon second phase by the end of 1990.

Project Austaccs

The project will provide an automated command support system for the land forces of the ADF. Thorn EMI Electronics, Australia, the prime contractor for phases 1 and 2, delivered the final system requirement documentation at the end of Phase 2 which was completed in February 1988. In addition, a number of small studies were completed under the Extended Industry Participation Program. This has enabled the Army to specify its functional requirements for a system which will be capable of operating in conjunction with Discon, Parakeet and Raven.

This command support system will complement the Maritime Command support system and other systems being proposed for HQ ADF and Air Command.

Maritime Command support system

This is a computer based system designed to provide the Maritime Commander with up-to-date information on the movement of ships and aircraft in the approaches to Australia. The system which is being purchased from the US has the capacity to process and display quickly the mass of information available from surveillance sensors and will be a key element in the command and control of Australia's maritime forces. Installation is expected to be complete by the end of 1989.

Voice security equipment

Vinson wide-band voice security equipment is being obtained for the ADF. Orders were placed in 1987 and introduction of equipment will commence in July 1989 for use in Exercise KANGAROO 89.

The Australian industrial base

Defence requirements

Defence requirements of Australian industry are spelt out in the Defence Policy Information Paper.

The independent capacity to maintain, repair, modify and adapt defence equipment to the Australian environment is of fundamental importance to self-reliant combat effectiveness in all contingencies. Adequate supply of replacement equipment and stores (that is munitions, spares and other consumable items, like fuel) is also fundamental to the ability to maintain operations at all levels of conflict.

Where there is a unique Australian defence requirement, equipment for the ADF may be designed, developed and produced in Australia. Alternatively, Australia can transfer overseas technology to Australian industry and adapt it to meet Australian requirements. In other cases, costs can be reduced and other penalties minimised by manufacturing overseas designs under licence in Australia. Some defence requirements are being met by essentially commercial equipment produced in Australia and modified as necessary to meet particular military requirements.

In major overseas buys like the F/A-18 aircraft and Black Hawk helicopters, where complete local production is impracticable, Australian industry involvement is managed to ensure Australia gains the technology, skills and expertise required to maintain and adapt the imported equipment throughout its operational life.

Industry structure

Several strategies are used to help foster an industrial base in Australia able to meet defence requirements efficiently. The various elements of a major capital equipment project (including design, development, production, delivery, installation, test and acceptance) are being combined into a single package for which suitable Australian firms are invited to register interest as prime contractors and to tender for the total

package. To succeed, this strategy requires large industrial entities with requisite managerial skills, financial resources and technical expertise. It also requires subcontractors with specialist technical skills, quality standards and costing controls to support the primes. The ANZAC Ship project is being managed on this basis and the defence-oriented shipbuilding sector has responded by forming two large competing consortia focused on shipyards in Victoria and NSW.

Local content

The main mechanism currently being used to develop the Australian defence industrial base is local content in major procurements. This has become possible without substantial penalties in cost, time or quality because of major recent changes in the Australian economic, industry and industrial relations environments.

As a result of these changes and emphasis on Australian prime contractors, a much higher local content is now envisaged for major projects. For example, the submarine contract requires 65% local content while the tender for the ANZAC Ship specified 70% Australian and New Zealand content. The Jindalee project requires an Australian prime contractor and provides for substantial involvement by the Australian electronics industry. The higher local content in recent major projects is resulting in a commensurate decline in new offset obligations.

Defence offsets

The Defence offsets program is a mature strategy for developing defence-oriented industry capabilities. The Defence offsets data base contains detailed records of offsets program obligations and achievements, which to 30 June 1988, contained some 6000 records.

Defence offsets obligations secured and achievements recorded against them are summarised as follows:

	\$m
New obligations secured during FY 1987-88	25.2
Achievements recorded during FY 1987-88:	
- Against contracts signed since January 1986 (based on offsets only). . .	39.6
- Against contracts signed prior to January 1986 (based on Australian Industry Participation obligations including the F/A-18).	99.7

Offset Credit Deeds have been introduced so that overseas companies may accrue offsets credits through approved activities for later application to new obligations incurred. They provide a useful mechanism for attracting overseas defence suppliers to the concept of establishing long-term arrangements with Australian defence suppliers in programs such as collaborative design and development and provision of long-term support arrangements. During the year four overseas companies signed Credit Deeds with the Department.

Australian industry assistance

Australian industry assistance funds are used selectively to facilitate industry involvement in either particular Defence capital equipment projects, eg. man-pack radios, replacement small arms and the ANZAC Ship, or to foster development in industry of generic capabilities, eg. for precision optics and specific electronic technologies.

In 1987-88, \$27m was spent on Australian industry assistance aspects of major projects and \$12m on generic capabilities.

International collaboration

International collaboration is becoming increasingly common as a means of sharing risks, spreading costs and achieving both economies of scale and a degree of international standardisation of military equipment. It enables Australian industry to participate in major developments and production programs. To this end the CPO, in the past year,

has pursued the development of a number of Memoranda of Understanding (MOU) on cooperative defence procurement with various countries. In June 1988, such an MOU was signed with the UK. The MOUs will facilitate comparison of military requirements at an early stage to determine potential joint development projects and foster cooperation between the defence industry of Australia and other countries.

Defence exports—policy and administration

The export of defence and defence-related products can foster skills and capacity in Australian industry and reduce the cost of indigenous supply and support. Success in overseas defence markets also benefits our overall trade interests.

During 1987–88 there were 400 defence equipment export applications, of which 85% were approved, 2% declined, 6% under consideration and 7% withdrawn.

In March 1988, to help realise the full potential of Australian defence-oriented industry, the Government revised its defence export policy and streamlined administration of control of the export of warlike goods.

Defence exports—promotion

A team of industry representatives and officials visited the US in October 1987 to explore opportunities for contracts from the US Department of Defense procurement agencies and their major prime contractors. Thirteen Australian companies, from the aerospace, electronics and general engineering industry sectors, were represented.

The Department collaborated with Austrade to provide support to Australian industry exhibitors at the Common Defence Symposium (COMDEF) 87 held in Washington DC in October. COMDEF 87 was a large international exhibition of defence products and services from countries having reciprocal defence procurement MOUs with the US Department of Defense. Australia was represented by 14 companies and the Defence production establishments. Planning for COMDEF 88 in September is underway.

A team of officials and industry representatives participated in the Cairo International Defence Equipment Exhibition held from 9 to 13 November 1987. Thirteen Australian companies were represented at the exhibition, which was organised in conjunction with Austrade.

The CPO has continued to support industry and ADF initiatives to have various systems evaluated for possible procurement by the US under their Foreign Weapons Evaluation Program. The US is currently evaluating a frequency management facility, the Barra sonobuoy and a recompression chamber for divers.

A booklet titled *Doing Australian Defence Business* was issued in August 1987 to help firms either sell to Defence or gain assistance in exporting defence or defence-related products.

Commercialisation of defence technologies

Twenty-five new patent and design applications were lodged in 1987–88, and 16 patents and designs were granted. Commercial licensing of defence origin technology to industry continued during the year with a further 13 agreements signed. Agency agreements to assist in the commercialisation process have been signed with Innovation Centres in South Australia, Victoria and New South Wales, and with Sirotech and Australian Commercial Research and Development Ltd. These are bringing greater flexibility to the arrangements for commercialisation of defence technologies.

Controls on dual use technology

Many products and technologies developed in response to commercial needs have a potential military application. These technologies with dual civil and military applications range from specialised raw materials through plant and processes used in the aerospace and electronics industries to high performance computers and communication systems. Australia participates in arrangements by members of the western strategic community to control exports of strategically sensitive dual use

technology. In 1987-88 the Department issued 155 permits to 16 companies exporting technology worth \$38m to Eastern Europe and China.

Disposal of machinery and plant

Over the past two years the Department has undertaken the review and disposal of a range of its government-owned plant located in industry. Upon completion of the program over 14 000 items will have been disposed and about \$9m obtained from sales and significant savings made in recurring administrative costs. Sales of \$1.8m have been achieved to 30 June 1988.

Capital facilities procurement

Defence facilities are the land, buildings and installations controlled by the Department and the ADF in support of national defence objectives. Defence facilities comprise over 700 properties, excluding houses, and about 1.6m hectares or 85% of all Commonwealth-owned land. Expenditure on their provision, development and maintenance in 1987-88 was \$557m or 7.5% of total Defence expenditure.

Objectives

To develop and implement facilities and property policies, plans and programs for capital works, property acquisition and disposal, repairs and maintenance, leasing and environmental considerations. In particular to:

- ensure facilities for operational, training, accommodation, support and other needs of the ADF are provided and maintained in the most cost-effective and timely manner; and
- provide efficient management of Defence property including the review of existing holdings and development of disposal programs.

Priorities

Current priorities which derive from the Defence Policy Information Paper, are to:

- further develop defence infrastructure to support operations in the north and north west of Australia;
- implement the two ocean Navy policy;
- rationalise existing defence facilities and properties, particular in the south, to achieve economies and greater efficiency; and
- improve living accommodation for single personnel.

Activities and achievements

Support of northern operations

The essential facilities at RAAF Tindal are about 90% complete after expenditure of some \$170m of an estimated project cost of \$231m. Further works are planned to support the F/A-18 squadron and to develop Tindal as the major air base in the north. The new RAAF base at Derby was completed at a cost of some \$64m in December 1987.

Preliminary environmental studies were undertaken by consultants for the planned construction of another base on Cape York Peninsula in the early 1990s.

Construction of facilities at Townsville to accommodate and support the new Black Hawk helicopters for the Army continued during the year. These works are currently estimated to cost \$19.6m and should be complete by the end of 1988.

Preliminary investigations of possible sites for a naval facility along the north west coast were undertaken in June 1988. The report of this investigation includes assessments of Exmouth, Dampier, Port Hedland, Koolan Island and Derby as possible locations for a future patrol boat facility.

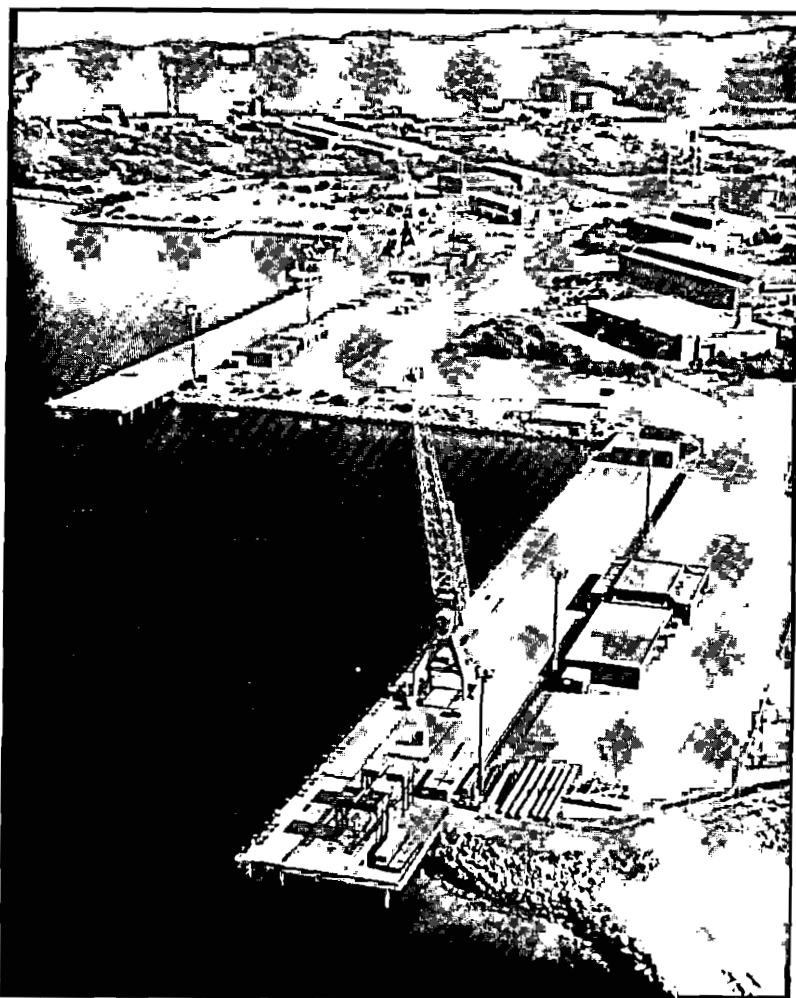
A site was acquired on Thursday Island for the establishment of a joint Army/Navy depot to support increased Defence activities in the Torres Strait region.

Construction commenced on works, estimated to cost \$7m, for the conversion of the experimental over-the-horizon radar facility to an engineering and operational development test bed. Completion is planned for early 1989. Planning of site assessment and selection for the establishment of the first operational OTHR is also advanced.

Facilities are in the early stages of design for the construction of a base area in Darwin for the 2nd Cavalry Regiment to be relocated from Holsworthy NSW by 1992 at an estimated cost of \$79m.

HMAS Stirling

The major expansion of HMAS Stirling to support the basing of half the Fleet in Western Australia by the late 1990s, at a cost of over \$300m, is progressing to plan. Proposals for the additional living-in accommodation, wharf area and emergency and support services are being developed to meet the ship basing program which include homeporting four destroyers and two submarines by early 1991. The submarine escape training facility was completed at a cost of \$17m in April 1988.



HMAS STIRLING wharf area.

Command, control and intelligence

The Minister announced in June 1988 that the Defence Signals Directorate would be relocated from Melbourne to Canberra in the 1990s, and that the move would provide the opportunity for redevelopment and rationalisation of Defence property in Melbourne. Planning for facilities in Canberra has commenced as matter of priority.

Construction has commenced on the Australian Defence Satellite Communications Station near Geraldton, WA. The work is planned for completion by the mid 1990s. Four hundred and fifty hectares of land was acquired by the Commonwealth following extensive evaluation involving technical and environmental studies by Commonwealth and State authorities and specialist consultants.

Construction of the new Maritime Command Centre in Sydney is on schedule at an estimated cost of \$12.5m and is due for completion in late 1989.

Living-in accommodation

Upgrading of living-in accommodation for Service personnel continues to have high priority, with the start in June 1988 of a major project to improve Army accommodation. Army buildings in 16 locations throughout Australia are to be upgraded to provide better living-in accommodation. The works will cost \$57.6m. Some 4600 personnel will benefit from the upgrade which is estimated to take four to five years to complete.

The opportunity was also taken to purchase existing commercial and other establishments to reduce the rising costs of paying living-out allowances and to provide operational and other benefits in having personnel accommodated in a Service environment earlier than would otherwise have been the case.

The Endeavour Hostel Migrant Centre, Coogee was acquired to provide urgently needed accommodation for over 500 Navy and Army personnel in the Sydney area, and renamed Endeavour House. Occupation by sailors is expected to start in August 1988.

Two motels were purchased to provide living-in accommodation for personnel at the expanding naval base in Cairns. The cost of paying living-out allowance was particularly high in Cairns.

The upgrading of all-ranks living-in accommodation at HMAS Cerberus is in the final planning stages. Six 3 storey junior sailors accommodation blocks are to be refurbished from 4 berth cabins into single cabins. Three blocks of senior sailors accommodation will be similarly upgraded and the present officer accommodation will have minor alterations. A new accommodation block is to be built to provide 80 cabins for officers.

Rationalisation and redevelopment

Construction of a new Seamanship School at HMAS Cerberus is underway and due for completion by late 1988 at an estimated cost of \$14.5m. Further development includes rebuilding the Communications School and the training facility at the Recruit School at a cost of over \$15m.

Redevelopment of the School of Military Engineering at Casula, NSW is progressing at an estimated cost of \$30.8m.

Warehousing facilities being constructed for 21 Supply Battalion at Moorebank are part of a long-term plan for the rationalisation and modernisation of Army warehousing operations. Stage 1 of the project, estimated to cost \$18.6m, commenced in April 1988.

As part of the upgrading of Army Reserve facilities, new working accommodation is being provided for Headquarters 2nd Division at Randwick, NSW, at an estimated cost of \$4.85m. Construction commenced in October 1987.

New specialist training facilities for the Special Air Service Regiment are being constructed at Swanbourne, Bindoon and Gin Gin, WA. These facilities are estimated to cost \$26.9m and will be completed by the end of 1989.

Stage 1 of a single logistics complex for 51 Supply Battalion, Guildford, WA, is being constructed to enable greater coordination of logistic support within the State. The

working accommodation and warehouse, estimated to cost \$8.5m, are due for completion in July 1988.

As part of the continuing development of RAAF East Sale, a major redevelopment of the Schools of Photography, Air Navigation and Air Traffic Control, as well as domestic and maintenance support facilities, is being undertaken at an estimated cost of \$24m. The works are 50% complete with an expected finalisation date of late 1989.

Defence facilities review

The final and major report of the *Review of Australia's Defence Facilities* was presented to the Minister for Defence by his Consultant, Mr R. J. Cooksey, on 18 December 1987. The central recommendations were developed around two principal themes. The first concerned the need to ensure that Defence infrastructure is aligned with the direction provided by the Defence Policy Information Paper. This led to a number of recommendations about relocation of Defence functions to new or upgraded facilities in the north and west of Australia for strategic and operational reasons. The second theme focused on rationalisation and collocation of functions, mainly in south east Australia, to achieve greater efficiencies. Mr Cooksey also made recommendations about strengthening the relationship between Defence policy and facilities planning in keeping with the longer term approach required by the Defence Policy Information Paper.

The review provides a basis for more detailed studies relating to property rationalisation, including relocations, and disposal of property which becomes surplus to requirements. Mr Cooksey has been retained to assist in the implementation of a number of recommendations and to conduct further studies.

Master planning

The preparation and ongoing review of master plans is essential in ensuring the orderly development of Defence establishments. Plans take into account the roles and functions, existing infrastructure, environmental and heritage factors. Priority is given to the preparation of zone plans which define areas dedicated for particular activities and functions at those establishments where major developmental works are proposed.

Environmental protection

Progress towards assessment and clearance of major Defence proposals and environmental significance, in compliance with the *Environmental Protection (Impact of Proposals) Act 1974*, was achieved as follows:

- The final environmental impact statement (EIS) on the proposed relocation of explosives manufacture from Albion, Vic, to Mulwala, NSW, was assessed and cleared, fulfilling the requirements of the Act.
- An environmental management plan for RAAF Tindal addressing construction and operational impacts on the physical environment as well as to provide guidance on social issues was completed.
- Work continued on environmental studies in support of the EIS on the proposed relocation to Jervis Bay of the eastern elements of the Fleet from Sydney and of the Naval Armament Depot from Newington.
- As part of the EIS on the proposed construction of a RAAF airfield on Cape York Peninsula, site assessment studies were completed in June 1988.
- An EIS was commenced on the proposed acquisition of a field firing range for 2nd Cavalry Regiment when it is relocated to the Northern Territory.
- Public environment reports on the proposed redevelopment of HMAS Waterhen, Sydney and the further development of HMAS Stirling were commenced.
- The Minister declared 'Public Areas' at Garden Island, WA and Beecroft Peninsula, NSW. These are areas within Defence establishments that are open to the public for recreational purposes and controlled and environmentally managed by appointed rangers empowered under special by-laws.

Improvement to planning and management

Facilities and Property Division has been restructured to provide for better analysis of facilities proposals, more detailed management of the construction program and control of financial aspects, and more effective management of Defence assets.

Increased delegation, decentralised review of scope of works and decentralised sponsorship of Defence Central projects are being implemented.

To assist in achieving the more effective use of Defence properties during the year, the Army Military Districts were each tasked with producing metropolitan regional property development plans specifying their property requirements to the year 2000. These will form the basis for the rationalisation of holdings and the disposal of surplus Army properties. Similar planning exercises are proposed for the other Services.

Property acquisition and disposal

During 1987-88 freehold properties with a total area of 265 000ha and valued at \$55m were acquired. The most significant of these was additional land for the Aeronautical Research Laboratory at Fishermens Bend at \$13.7m.

During the year the Department was given direct responsibility for achieving disposal revenue targets and raised revenue of \$32.4m. In keeping with Government announcements in the context of the 1987 Budget, Defence also commenced preliminary action in connection with the disposal of Cockatoo Island in Sydney Harbour and 90 ha of land at the Naval Armament Depot, Newington.

Chapter 3— Defence specialist support

Objectives

Increasing defence self-reliance requires specialist support in a range of areas. The organisations and elements providing specialist support are the Defence Science and Technology Organisation, the Office of Defence Production, defence cooperation programs with regional countries, the Defence Housing Authority and the Natural Disasters Organisation.

The overall objective of specialist support is to provide and maintain within the Defence organisation specialist skills, services and resources to support Australia's capacity for independent defence, and, in accordance with Government policy, to support national tasks such as planning and coordinating assistance in civil emergencies.

The resources expended on specialist support in the year under review were:

	<i>Staff Years</i>	<i>Outlays (\$m)</i>
Defence science	4101.3	185.454
Defence production	331.3	242.404
Defence cooperation	—	57.538
Defence housing	25.0	217.662
Natural disasters and civil defence	68.3	7.218
Total	4525.9	710.276

Defence science and technology

The objectives of the Defence Science and Technology Organisation (DSTO) are to:

- develop and maintain a base of skill and knowledge in defence science and technology and foster scientific and technological expertise in industry and tertiary institutions, concentrating on areas relevant to the Australian strategic and natural environment;
- provide scientific and technical advice on defence policy matters and advice on the selection and acquisition of new equipment and systems and their suitability for operation in the Australian environment;
- contribute to the solution of scientific and technological problems for the ADF, the Department, other defence agencies and relevant Australian industries, including problems arising from the operational use, maintenance, local production and extension of life of equipment and systems;
- conceive new devices, equipment or systems of potential value to Australian defence and, in accordance with delegated approvals, manage or undertake successive stages of development; and
- assist appropriate non-Defence bodies where the DSTO has skills or facilities not available elsewhere in Australia, contribute to fostering a viable and active defence industry and contribute where appropriate to the development of overall Australian industrial capability.

Function and structure

On 18 November 1987 the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel amended the function of DSTO to enable it to establish links with sectors of industry not involved directly in defence work. The revised function arose from a Report by the Australian Science and Technology Council which considered that DSTO should extend its scope.

The function of DSTO is now:

to contribute to the development and implementation of Australian defence policies through the application of science and technology, and through the provision of assistance to the ADF, the Department of Defence, other defence agencies and, as necessary in the national interest, Australian industry.

DSTO's contribution to Australian defence includes the provision of advice to the Department and support to the ADF and the Department in a wide range of technologies, including communications, materials, engine performance, avionics, propulsion, explosives, optoelectronics, radar and many more. DSTO also develops equipment for the ADF where there is a specialised need which cannot be met by overseas-designed equipment.

DSTO is Australia's second largest research organisation with a staff of some 4200, of whom about 1000 are professional scientists and engineers. The five major DSTO laboratories and several smaller establishments are located in Victoria, South Australia, New South Wales, Tasmania and Queensland. The Chief Defence Scientist is the head of DSTO and is chief adviser on science and technology to the Minister for Defence, the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel, the Secretary and the CDF.

DSTO is being restructured in response to changing economic circumstances and to the Government's defence policies. A major reorganisation of the DSTO laboratories is a key part of the restructuring. DSTO is to:

- establish stronger links with industry including, where appropriate, sectors of industry not involved directly in defence work;
- arrange for more DSTO work to be exploited commercially;
- achieve a higher profile through better publicity;
- improve efficiency by streamlining project management; and
- broaden its technology base by devoting more resources to applied research.

In order to maintain a broad technology base, with particular expertise in selected areas of high defence priority such as intelligence, surveillance, mobility, mine countermeasures, over-the-horizon radar, and command, control and communications, DSTO is to devote more of its resources to research and exploratory development.

Full-scale engineering development work will be passed to industry wherever possible. The reorganisation of the laboratories is aimed at achieving this goal. The main components of the reorganisation are:

- the creation of a new laboratory structure, centred on five mission-oriented research laboratories;
- a change to the DSTO staff profile to increase the number of scientific, engineering and skilled technical staff; and
- the development of arrangements for increasing the level of industry involvement in defence research and development.

A new top structure was introduced on 1 December 1987 and the remaining organisational changes are planned for 1 August 1988. The changes to the staff profile will be implemented over about five years.

The restructured DSTO comprises:

- Aeronautical Research Laboratory (ARL) based in Melbourne (with a component in Salisbury);
- Electronics Research Laboratory (ERL) located in Salisbury (changed significantly from the former ERL);
- Materials Research Laboratory (MRL) located in Melbourne (essentially an internal reorganisation of the former MRL);

-
- Surveillance Research Laboratory (SRL) located in Salisbury (a new laboratory); and
 - Weapons Systems Research Laboratory (WSRL) based in Salisbury (essentially the same as the former WSRL).

The resources of the former Advanced Engineering Laboratory have been redistributed between the other laboratories.

A support and services organisation is based in Salisbury to provide some common support services for the laboratories there.

Existing establishments in Scottsdale (formerly the Armed Forces Food Science Establishment) and Innisfail (formerly the Joint Tropical Trials Research Establishment) continue to be under the organisational control of MRL in Melbourne and have been renamed MRL DSTO Tasmania and MRL DSTO Queensland. The Royal Australian Navy Research Laboratory has been renamed DSTO Sydney and continues to be under the organisational control of WSRL in Salisbury though the group in Sydney involved with mine warfare now comes under the organisational control of MRL in Melbourne. These changes are summarised in the DSTO Corporate Statement released by the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel in March 1988.

A new scheme of merit promotion has been introduced for officers in the Research Scientist grades as a means of assessing and rewarding outstanding performance by Defence research scientists within the constraints of the Public Service Act. The new scheme brings the career development for Defence research scientists more into line with those of their counterparts in CSIRO, ANSTO, the Bureau of Mineral Resources and the Australian Radiation Laboratory. Thirty-seven scientists were promoted in the first round of merit promotions in 1987.

Commercialisation

Action is being taken to improve significantly the commercialisation of DSTO research and development so that Australian industry may benefit from the innovative work being undertaken in the DSTO laboratories.

Agreements have been concluded with several State Innovation Centres and with Sirotech to exploit DSTO inventions. Arrangements have been set up which permit DSTO to participate in joint ventures with Australian industry to develop DSTO technologies. As an example, CMTEK, a company set up by the Adelaide Innovation Centre, is to develop infra-red detectors for defence applications based on the cadmium mercury telluride technology originating at DSTO's Surveillance Research Laboratory.

Major steps have been taken to publicise and promote the activities and achievements of DSTO. The DSTO Industry Seminar was opened by the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel on 24 June 1988. The principal objectives of the seminar, which was attended by a wide cross-section of industry, were to make industry more aware of the range of activities and facilities which have strong potential for commercialisation and to explore methods to ensure that industry continues to be well informed of DSTO activities that are of interest to it.

Achievements and activities

Technology has an important part to play in establishing a self-reliant defence force. In accordance with current Defence needs, as outlined in the Defence Policy Information Paper, the thrust of DSTO's efforts is changing to place greater emphasis on certain high priority defence capabilities, namely:

- strategic and tactical intelligence and surveillance, including over-the-horizon radar and towed acoustic arrays;
- maritime protection, including mine countermeasures;
- ground forces mobility; and
- command, control and communications.

Other priority defence capabilities such as air defence, maritime strike and land interdiction and strike will continue to be supported in the DSTO program.

In meeting its objectives each year DSTO takes on some 200 large tasks requiring more than one professional man-year of effort. Several thousand small tasks are completed.

Some examples from each of the DSTO objectives follow.

Technology base

Reactive armour

At MRL, research has been undertaken to gain a sound understanding of the method of construction and behaviour of reactive armour. Reactive armour, a sandwich of explosive between steel plates, is applied to armoured vehicles in the form of removable tiles. Light weight varieties may be suitable for the protection of armoured personnel carriers, particularly against shaped charge attack.

Gliding 250kg bomb

In conjunction with Aerospace Technologies Australia, WSRL has developed and tested a gliding version of a 250kg bomb, the Generic Test Vehicle (GTV). This GTV was developed to test the capability of modifying inexpensive normally ballistic weapons to achieve mid-course guidance and control. Initial tests have proved to be successful.

Although developed to further the understanding of the principles involved, the glide bomb has potential as an inexpensive vehicle for aircraft delivery of some types of munitions from safer distances.

Aircraft structures

The modern trend in aircraft design is to use lighter and more flexible structures. At high speed this flexibility can cause aeroelastic problems, such as wing flutter, which can substantially limit the performance of an aircraft. ARL, working with the Systems Engineering Research School at the Australian National University, has shown how to use the aircraft's flight control system to suppress the instabilities caused by wing flutter.

Policy advice

DSTO provides science and technology advice for the formulation of high level Defence policy. In the past year major activity occurred in the collection, analysis, storage and retrieval and dissemination of surveillance and intelligence data and in the acquisition of major items of material. Some examples follow.

Over-the- horizon radar

As part of the development of the OTHR network, DSTO provided advice on a Statement of Requirements for OTHR surveillance coverage, provided a report on technical options and gave advice on network site selection and on equipment acquisition strategy.

ANZAC Ship combat systems

DSTO advice to the ANZAC Ship project included assisting with the specification of RAN requirements and the assessment of proposals by the ship builders; advising RAN on the performance of components of the combat systems eg. radars, sonar, weapons and the integration of the combat system; and also estimating ship performance in its various combat roles and how this performance changes as the ship is gradually upgraded to its final capability.

Command, control and communications and intelligence

DSTO has made major contributions to the complex issues involved in determining the scope and objectives for many aspects of command and control support systems for HQADF, Maritime HQ and Land HQ.

Geographic information systems

A large amount of information on terrain, environmental conditions, civil infrastructure,

communications and transport facilities and tactical intelligence is now available to field commanders. The challenge is to collect as much of it as possible in forms suitable for rapid collation and assessment. DSTO research and experience in related disciplines is providing a basis for sound policy decisions on the development of appropriate systems for the ADF.

Problem solving/support to the ADF

Tetryl replacement

The explosive tetryl, which is an essential component in almost all Australian fuses, is no longer being manufactured and a replacement material will be required when existing stocks of tetryl are exhausted. MRL has successfully formulated three explosive compositions which are suitable for fuse leads, boosters and magazines and for demolition charges. Pilot production has been undertaken successfully by the Office of Defence Production and introduction into service should be completed by 1989.

Radar prediction for the RAAF

Predictions of target approach presently rely on the interpretation of contour maps with the minimum of mechanical aids. SRL has devised a method to make the predictions by computer using topographic information from computerised maps. The predictions are obtained more quickly and bear a much closer resemblance to what the pilot will actually see in flight.

Electronic support measures

Advice has been given to the RAAF on the assessment of options and evaluation of contractor proposals for the replacement of the Electronic Support Measures equipment in the P3C aircraft.

Weapon systems avionics

WSRL was initially responsible for developing the functional and performance specifications for the weapon systems avionics in the Seahawk helicopter. WSRL's subsequent contribution to the project has involved monitoring the development of the weapon system by the contractors in the areas of system requirements, software development and system testing. WSRL has also assisted the RAN by developing full ground-based support of the airborne systems, including a high fidelity mission trainer, a flight simulator and comprehensive software development tools to enable maintenance and enhancement of the weapon system. In so doing, WSRL staff have developed experimental equipment for analysis and evaluation of weapon system components.

Radar cross-section measurement

SRL has developed a prototype high range resolution coherent radar for the measurement of regions of high radar reflectivity in ships. Most incident energy from a radar on a target is typically reflected away from a radar, but certain shapes and orientations of the structure of a large target such as a ship result in high energy returns to the radar. Often these areas are difficult to identify by visual means. This radar will be used to investigate ways of reducing ship radar cross-sections.

Wing reinforcement

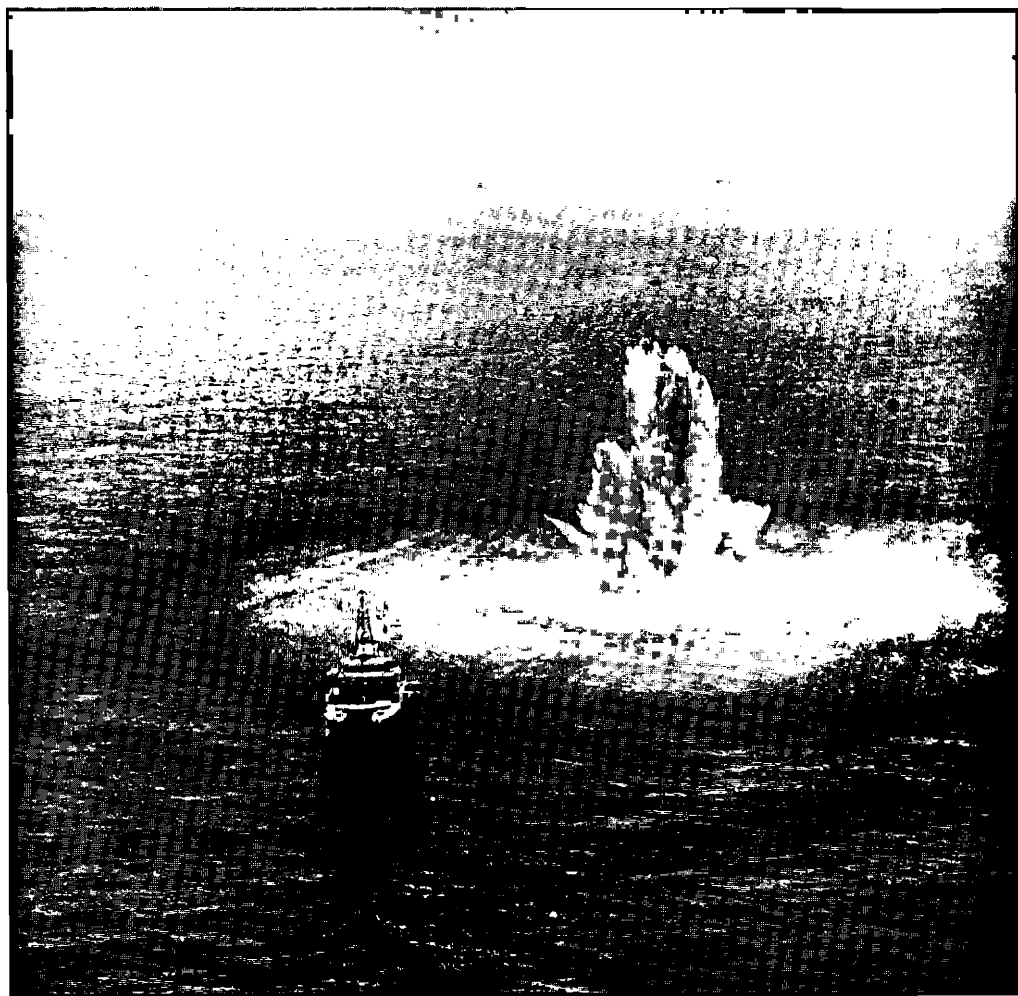
ARL has carried out full scale F-111C aircraft wing tests to determine the structural integrity of the wing pivot fitting which was reinforced with boron fibre. This reinforcement technique is also being tested on an operational aircraft and it is planned to apply it to all RAAF F-111s.

Mine countermeasures

MRL has undertaken research in mine countermeasures to increase the probability of both RAN and commercial vessels surviving magnetic and acoustic mine attacks. MRL has also assisted with development of techniques to convert selected commercial vessels (craft-of-opportunity) into mine sweepers.

WSRL developed the specifications for the functions and performance of the minehunting system for the RAN's prototype catamaran minehunters and is monitoring the contractor's efforts in designing and producing the system. Assistance has been provided in the areas of system performance, design review, software development (including quality assurance) and system testing. As a result of an analysis of RAN experience with the prototype systems, WSRL has defined the requirements for changes to the navigation and command systems to be incorporated in the production vessels.

WSRL has also contributed to determining the requirements for the proposed Mine Warfare System Centre.



Shock testing the catamaran minehunter HMAS Shoalwater off Cordelia Rocks near Townsville to validate the structural integrity of the unique composite material used in construction of its hull.

Infantry assault weapon

WSRL and MRL have provided advice which will assist the Army in defining and selecting the Infantry Assault Weapon. This weapon will be used to defeat fortifications and concrete walls. It will also have an anti-armour capability.

New equipment

Over-the-horizon-radar

As the research and development authority for the over-the-horizon radar project DSTO has been heavily committed to assisting the Department and industry to achieve this capability. In particular, SRL has prepared the technical requirements addressing all aspects of radar hardware and software.

Self-streaming towed array sonar system

WSRL built and sea tested the system in an Oberon class submarine. The system is a further application of DSTO's towed array technology which will lead to the development of the Kariwara towed array streamers for surface ship and submarine applications. It makes use of the Sonar 2007 processing system normally fitted in the Oberons, and significantly improves the operational capability of the submarine.

Project Nulka

Project Nulka, which is estimated to cost \$A130m, is a collaborative project between Australia and the United States for a ship defensive system against anti-ship weapons. It involves concepts and technology developed in DSTO, Australian Defence factories and US Government research and development establishments.

Combat tactical message switch

ERL has produced a compact Combat Tactical Message Switch as a development of the current divisional-level Small Automated Message Switch. It uses state of the art bubble memories enabling high volume message traffic to be sorted, stored and distributed. The system can be vehicle mounted and provides a message switching capability down to battalion level. Fifteen to twenty of these units are expected to be ordered from industry.

Battlefield thermal imager

SRL, in collaboration with industry, has developed a wide angle infra-red surveillance system with automatic target detection and operator cueing. Known as Kuru Muna it is a significant advance over existing narrow angle non-automatic systems, particularly when searching over long periods of time in conditions of low activity.

Low cost uncooled infra-red sensors

A decade of research at DSTO Salisbury into thin film bolometer infra-red detectors is beginning to pay off. Thin film bolometers operate at ambient temperatures. They have the advantage over some of the more sophisticated types of infra-red detectors which require cooling to the temperature of liquid nitrogen. SRL has developed an intrusion detector with the ability to detect human targets at several hundred metres range, considerably in excess of similar devices developed elsewhere. A prototype system for use in military and civil security roles is being developed by Australian industry.

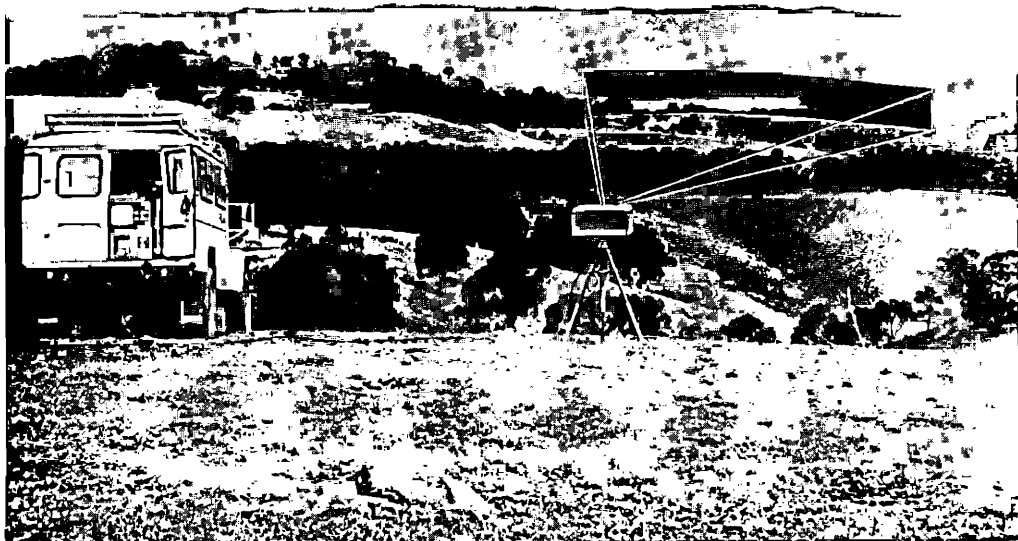
Aircraft navigation system

ARL has developed a navigation system for aircraft, called Tacterm, which determines position by comparing a height profile as measured by the aircraft with height profiles stored on-board in the form of digital maps. The system has been tested successfully and is now being evaluated by the RAAF. The technology is being transferred to Australian industry.

Trials of defence equipment

The Directorate of Trials coordinates and manages trials of Defence equipment for the ADF. Defence trials utilise the specialist resources of each of the DSTO laboratories and of the Services. Recent major Defence trials included a series of explosions at Woomera to validate safety distances and means of protection from blast and fragments.

A series of shock trials off Townsville helped validate the integrity of the hull design



The Kuru Muna surveillance thermal imager developed by scientists at the Surveillance Research Laboratory, Salisbury is being evaluated for Army use. Depicted is the type of coverage available. The equipment has the potential for civil application including search and rescue and customs surveillance.

of the Inshore Minehunter (MHI) catamaran. The Directorate continued investigation into variants of the Army's new Land Rover and other vehicles, tested the pre-production Raven HF and VHF communications sets and the roles in which the ADF can employ the precise navigation capabilities of GPS Navstar.

Range Measurements Branch conducted 20 weeks of trials at Woomera in 1987-88, more than twice the annual average since the joint UK/Australia project finished in 1980.

The work included trials on explosive safety distances for large detonations, weapon clearance trials for aircraft, measurement of the accuracy of new aircraft navigation systems, trials to measure aircraft infra-red signatures and initial trials related to glide bomb technology.

Specialist non-defence assistance

Disarmament

As a result of MRL accreditation to the UN Conference on Disarmament, an MRL scientist was invited through the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade to accompany an international party of diplomats, press and technical advisers on a visit to the Shikhany Chemical Weapons Facility in the USSR in October 1987. This visit provided a unique view of a previously closely guarded Soviet activity.

Rocket launches

Seven scientific sounding rockets were launched from Woomera to investigate X-ray and ultra-violet radiation from Supernova 87A. One launch was for West Germany and six were for the US.

International cooperation

International collaboration in research gives Australia access to valuable information which would otherwise be beyond our resources.

Australia's most important international defence science arrangement is The Technical Cooperation Program (TTCP). The Governments of the USA, the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia and New Zealand are the members of TTCP and their cooperation is concerned primarily with technology-base activities. In October 1987, Australia hosted a meeting of the Committee on Non-Atomic Military Research and Development, the international governing body of TTCP, with representatives from all member countries attending. At that meeting the 1987 TTCP Achievement Awards were made to two teams working separately on infra-red surveillance from high altitude platforms and on a demonstration project for passive mine countermeasures. Australian defence scientists participated in both teams.

The high level of interest shown by the US in international cooperation continued this year. An MOU covering the exchange of scientists and engineers was signed in November 1987 and, in May 1988, for the first time, a meeting of Australian and US senior national representatives was held in Washington, under the auspices of the two year old MOU on Cooperative Research and Development, to review the full extent of US/Australian cooperation.

Cooperation has continued under the auspices of the Anglo-Australian MOU on Research which was recently renewed.

Other activities

The Australian Ordnance Council

The Australian Ordnance Council (AOC) hosted the second Australian Defence Department Explosives Safety Seminar from 30 November to 2 December 1987. Over 130 delegates from Australia and 12 overseas countries attended and discussed matters of mutual concern. Fifteen papers were presented covering a wide range of topics.

The Explosives Storage and Transport Committee of the AOC has provided advice to the ADF on the application of NATO Safety Principles for the storage of ammunition and explosives. Advice on waiver submissions submitted by the Services and ODP has also been provided.

The AOC continues to provide advice on the safety and suitability for ADF use of weapons and those parts of weapons systems and specified stores in which explosives are used.

Defence information services

DSTO provides central professional and technical support to the network of Defence libraries located throughout Australia. Information resources are made available to all Defence units and establishments.

Following open public tender, AWA was awarded a five year contract for the provision of hardware and software designed around requirements for the development of a fully integrated library and information management system known as Disnet.

The Disnet system will be progressively extended to more than 80 Defence network libraries and, when fully implemented, will provide Defence personnel with online access to bibliographic databases. Some Defence network libraries will use Disnet as a gateway to large commercial databases both in Australia and overseas.

Defence Support Centre Woomera

The Commonwealth and South Australian Governments have agreed that the transfer of full control of Woomera Village to the State and Local Governments will not proceed. Instead, the transfer of State-type functions to the State is being explored. This would involve the transfer of the Woomera Area School, the Woomera Hospital and law enforcement facilities.

In this context, a joint management-union review of engineering services at Woomera was commenced in May 1988 with the object of recommending the best means of delivering the services provided and identifying an organisation for those functions best carried out by the Commonwealth and other agencies as appropriate.

Negotiations continued on the proposed transfer of the Port Augusta/Woomera Pipeline from the Commonwealth to the State Government.

The operation of the Woomera Supermarket was transferred from the Army and Air Force Canteen Service to private operation in February 1988.

A contract was awarded to ATCO Industries (Aust) Pty Ltd to supply and install 50 transportable houses. The houses were completed by June 1988. Arrangements were made with Imparja Television Pty Ltd for the reception of its commercial television service at Woomera. Construction of new houses for staff of Australia Post, Telecom and the Bureau of Meteorology was also commenced.

Defence production

Objectives

The Office of Defence Production is the Government's specialised defence industrial base. It is charged with managing, in a businesslike way, a range of specialised industrial capabilities for the support of the ADF. The ODP corporate objectives are:

- to be a more efficient organisation with a range of industrial capabilities consistent with the needs of the ADF;
- to improve productivity by 30–50% in the five year period from July 1985. In the three years to 30 June 1988, an improvement of 28% has been achieved with 12% occurring in 1987–88.

Corporate philosophy

ODP will meet its obligations to Australia's defence capability, the management of its activities and the relationship with its employees within the framework of:

- providing a defence industry base relevant to the existing and developing strategic and economic circumstances;
- managing the Government-operated defence industry establishments in an efficient and effective manner;
- being innovative and responsive to the needs of the ADF;
- minimising the cost of designated industrial support by seeking profitable commercial orders within the ODP core business;
- conducting operations in a manner that recognises the role, rights and obligations of all levels of management and the workforce; and
- providing for all employees a safe, challenging and satisfactory organisation and workplace.

Business directions

ODP is moving from production orientation to customer orientation. An important element in this approach is the need to develop and exploit technology, products and processes in which ODP establishments have a competitive edge in Australia and overseas, and to have a more cost effective product to supply to the ADF. To achieve this new orientation ODP is looking at all aspects of its operations particularly in the areas of delivery, quality, responsiveness, cost and after sales service and support. ODP will also attempt to improve its competitiveness through a broadening of its business base. This will mean dedicating resources to develop new products which are both commercially attractive and unique. In some instances this may involve collaboration with overseas partners and the products developed will service both the ADF and domestic and international markets.

Achievements and activities

During 1987-88, a number of important policy thrusts including major rationalisation and restructuring, have been taken towards achieving the objective. The following initiatives have produced a significant change in the shape of ODP and helped to improve productivity:

- Williamstown Dockyard (WD) has been sold to a private consortium;
- the Government Aircraft Factories (GAF) have been structured as a Government-owned company;
- total manpower reductions of around 4200 have occurred. Reductions in the order of 660 additional to those at WD and GAF have also been achieved predominantly in overhead related areas across the remaining establishments;
- a new establishment, the Production Development Facility Salisbury was set up in SA to concentrate initially on the propulsion unit for Project Nulka;
- financial reforms aimed at identifying the full cost of production and deriving realistic prices for all goods and services continued to be implemented. Munitions factories moved to a basis of setting labour rates on an individual establishment basis; and
- uneconomic capabilities and capacities have been identified, and the premium the ADF is prepared to pay for those it needs to retain has been identified.

ODP establishments have continued to develop new technologies, products and processes, independently or in collaboration, in support of the ADF and to attract other customer business. Some of the major development tasks progressed in 1987-88 include:

- a future family of fuses for mortar and artillery applications;
- 76mm naval ammunition redesign and fuse development;
- Phalanx 20mm ammunition product improvement;
- collaboration with Bofors in upgrading the Bofors 40/60 gun mounting;
- rocket motor technology development in support of Project Nulka;
- approval for establishment of a Product Development Centre in the Maribyrnong area; and
- development of wet weather apparel.

ODP is bidding for major elements of large defence projects where its engineering and manufacturing strengths and experience in working to defence quality and military specifications are important. Significant orders include a subcontract to Garden Island Dockyard to manufacture components and assemble Hedemora diesel engines for the Australian submarine project and the manufacture by Ordnance Factory Bendigo of submarine torpedo tubes under licence from Strachan and Henshaw.

ODP is furthering the use of its unique capabilities in the design and development contract for rocket propulsion units under Project Nulka.

ODP's capabilities will be an important aspect of Australian Industry Involvement packages for the Anzac Ship project.

Significant new orders signed include:

- the new AN3 Proximity Fuse to the RAN;
- propellant sales to overseas customers;
- Hamel 105mm light gun for the Army;
- major refit work on HMAS *Swan* and HMAS *Cook*;
- disruptive pattern uniforms for both the Australian and Papua New Guinea armies;
- development of 81mm ammunition including fuse with the Army;
- weapons discharge system for the new submarines; and
- turbine bases for the General Electric Company (USA).

Reforms in financial and administrative systems

The revised costing and pricing policy for pricing goods and services, based on full cost recovery, was developed during the year and will commence from 1 July 1988. Total operating costs of establishments will be recovered from customer sales revenue and from separate appropriation funding for capital investment, retention of strategic Defence Required Support Capability and the Cost of Government Policies. Specifically, the objectives of the revised policy require:

- full exposure of the cost of production;
- identification of the cost of Defence Required Support Capabilities;
- the ability to develop pricing based on full costs;
- adoption of a more business-like approach to undertaking work for the ADF;
- identifying the costs of specific government policies;
- identifying the high cost of under-utilised assets and ceasing of unnecessary activities; and
- identification of opportunities which can be exploited commercially in Australia and overseas.

ODP establishments continue to introduce fully integrated computerised accounting and manufacturing systems. The implementation of these systems will ensure that the financial administration of the establishments will be greatly improved. The subsequent production of financial and manufacturing management information will provide timely, accurate and meaningful data which will be a valuable source of information on the operation of the establishments. Financial statements in accordance with section 41d of the Audit Act will be produced from the computer systems.

Sale of Williamstown Dockyard

Following open tender competition, which attracted many of Australia's leading engineering companies, the dockyard was sold for \$100m to the Australian Marine Engineering Corporation (AMEC). In conjunction with the sale a contract has been arranged with AMEC for the completion of two FFG7 Class Frigates for the RAN. The Government will retain a degree of control over the basic dockyard assets through a special share arrangement.

The *Williamstown Dockyard Employees Act 1987* was proclaimed in January 1988 to provide for the smooth transfer of personnel from Commonwealth employment to that of the new owner. The Act recognises a continuity of employment at the same establishment between the Commonwealth and provides that those accepting offers of work for AMEC do not receive redundancy payments, but do receive a superannuation payout (if eligible). Those refusing an offer of employment with AMEC do not receive redundancy payments but may be eligible for a smaller superannuation payout.

Aerospace Technologies of Australia

A decision was made in July 1986 that a Government owned company would be established to take over the operations of the Government Aircraft Factories.

The company, Aerospace Technologies of Australia Pty Limited (ASTA), was incorporated under the Companies Act and directors were appointed. ASTA progressively assumed its responsibility for the factories in the second half of 1987. Transfer of assets and liabilities was finalised in early October 1987. Prior to the takeover the company finalised its management and workforce structure and offered positions to some 1400 of the 2000 GAF employees. Public Service Act employees were transferred to the Company under sub-section 81c(1) of the Public Service Act. Supply and Development Act employees were transferred under sub-section 10a(1) of that Act following an amendment made to the Act in June 1987. Employees not offered positions with the company were offered voluntary retirement benefits or were redeployed in the Department.

Establishment of production development facility Salisbury

In October 1987 it was decided to establish an ODP production development facility in conjunction with DSTO facilities at Salisbury, SA. Existing process facilities are being augmented at a cost of \$5.8m to provide a capability to fill and assemble cast composite propellant rocket motors. It is planned to have the facility in operation in September 1988 and construction is proceeding on schedule.

Progress on existing major projects

Hamel 105mm light field gun

Initial deliveries from the ordnance factories Bendigo and Maribyrnong are scheduled for July 1988 which is two months ahead of the Army delivery program.

Small arms replacement project

Manufacture of the F88 Australian Steyr 5.56mm rifle and the Fabrique Nationale 5.56mm light support weapon at the Small Arms Factory Lithgow are on schedule with initial quantities of the rifle due in August 1988.

A significant proportion of the Australian Steyr rifle has already been sub-contracted to Australian and New Zealand industry. Similar participation is anticipated with the light support weapon.

Project Nulka

On 19 January 1988 ODP entered into a contract with AWA for the full scale engineering development of the propulsion unit for Project Nulka. The contract culminated several years of ODP involvement in associated development work.

A project team has been established and detailed design and development is being undertaken at the Explosives Factory Maribyrnong and the Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong. The project requires the development of a solid propellant rocket.

DDG modernisation

The modernisation of HMAS *Brisbane* was successfully completed at Garden Island Dockyard within budget in December 1987. The refit and modernisation of HMAS Perth commenced in March 1987. GID's task is approximately sixty percent completed at a cost of \$36m.

Helicopter modification

The refit of HMAS *Sydney* and its modifications to carry the Seahawk helicopters commenced on 21 September 1987. The initial delivery date has now slipped from September to 30 November 1988.

Relocation of explosives facilities

Following examination of the decision to relocate defence explosives manufacturing facilities from Albion to Mulwala by the Parliamentary Standing Committee on Public Works, the project was approved by Parliament on 3 June 1988.

Work will commence in August 1988 and is scheduled for completion in 1992 at a cost of \$78.4m.

Defence cooperation

Objectives

The primary aim of Defence Cooperation is to facilitate defence activities with countries in the South Pacific and South East Asia so as to promote Australia's security interests in our area of primary strategic interest. Within the broad objectives of the Government's regional defence policy and in conjunction with defence cooperative

arrangements and activities with regional countries, the overall aims of Defence Cooperation activities are to:

- exchange knowledge, information and experience in the defence field;
- provide opportunities for the ADF to gain experience in operating in the regional environment;
- promote contacts between the ADF and defence-related forces of regional countries to enhance their understanding of each other's military environment and organisations, methods of operation and ability to operate together;
- demonstrate the competence of the ADF to manage and operate modern military equipment; and
- develop an acceptance of Australia as a regional centre for, and source of, defence technological and industrial competence.

Papua New Guinea

Defence Cooperation with PNG assists with the development of an effective PNG Defence Force (PNGDF) that is capable of supporting national sovereignty and the task of nation building. Emphasis is placed on developing capabilities for land patrol and maritime surveillance, and the development of defence related infrastructure.

The principal activities with PNG in 1987-88 were:

- the continued provision of loan personnel and advisory and consultancy assistance in a range of areas relevant to the development of the PNGDF;
- the maintenance of formed units in PNG covering engineering and survey activities;
- support for bilateral ground force (WANTOK WARRIOR—June 1988) and maritime exercise (PARADISE 87—July 1987) activities;
- individual and group training both in Australia and PNG (308 trainees in 1987-88 in Australia);
- development of an expanded program of personnel exchanges and visits;
- equipment based project activities the most important being the Pacific Patrol Boat project, under which a second vessel was provided to PNG in November 1987; and
- support for expanding the involvement of the PNGDF in engineering tasks. Work has begun on a major project to upgrade the patrol boat support facilities at Manus Island.

South Pacific

Cooperative defence activities with the South Pacific countries are primarily directed towards developing capabilities for maritime surveillance, the South Pacific Patrol Boat being the major element, and more generally to develop the effectiveness of the defence and security forces of the South Pacific region to support local needs. Apart from maritime surveillance, emphasis is given to command and control, communications planning, equipment maintenance and defence-related infrastructure development. Programs with the South Pacific countries support acceptance of Australian defence activities as a natural component of the Australian presence in the region.

The principal activities in the programs with South Pacific countries in 1987-88 were:

- the continued provision of Defence advisory and consultancy assistance primarily in patrol boat operations and maintenance, communications, equipment maintenance, survey and hydrography;
- equipment based project activities notably the Pacific Patrol Boat project and equipping maritime surveillance centres. A Pacific Patrol Boat was provided to Western Samoa in March 1988 and substantial preparations were made for the handover of a vessel to the Solomon Islands;

-
- regular deployments of Australian Army engineers to develop defence-related infrastructure. During the 1987–88 deployment, a patrol boat wharf and other facilities were constructed in Port Vila, Vanuatu; and
 - individual and group training both in Australia and in countries (a total of 78 personnel in 1987–88).

ASEAN

Activities with the ASEAN countries are designed to promote effective contacts with the defence organisations of those countries and assist in the development of their defence self-reliance.

The principal activities with ASEAN countries in 1987–88 included:

- continuation of the provision, primarily to Malaysia and Thailand, of advisory and consultancy assistance in developing major projects and new capabilities, particularly in the areas of language training, defence science, specialist service skills and technical trade skills;
- support for bilateral exercise activities between Australia and Thailand, centring on Exercise TEMPLE JADE held in August–September 1987;
- individual and group training both in Australia and in-country (798 personnel in Australia in 1987–88); and
- development of a range of personnel exchanges and visits (136 study visitors in 1987–88).

Defence housing

A major change in the management of Defence housing occurred on 1 January 1988 when the Defence Housing Authority (DHA) came into operation. As from that date, the DHA took control of all Defence housing stock.

Under its legislations the DHA is free to decide the most appropriate ways of providing and maintaining a stock of housing for Defence Force families. The Government has undertaken that the DHA in its first decade of operation will have available at least \$750m for capital outlays on housing. In 1987–88, \$119m was made available.

The DHA is chaired by Mr John Graham, Director of Civil Constructions. The Managing Director is Mr William Kirkby-Jones, a former Chief Executive of the Housing Industry Association. Other members comprise part-time members with particular expertise in housing-related matters and representatives of the Services and the Department.

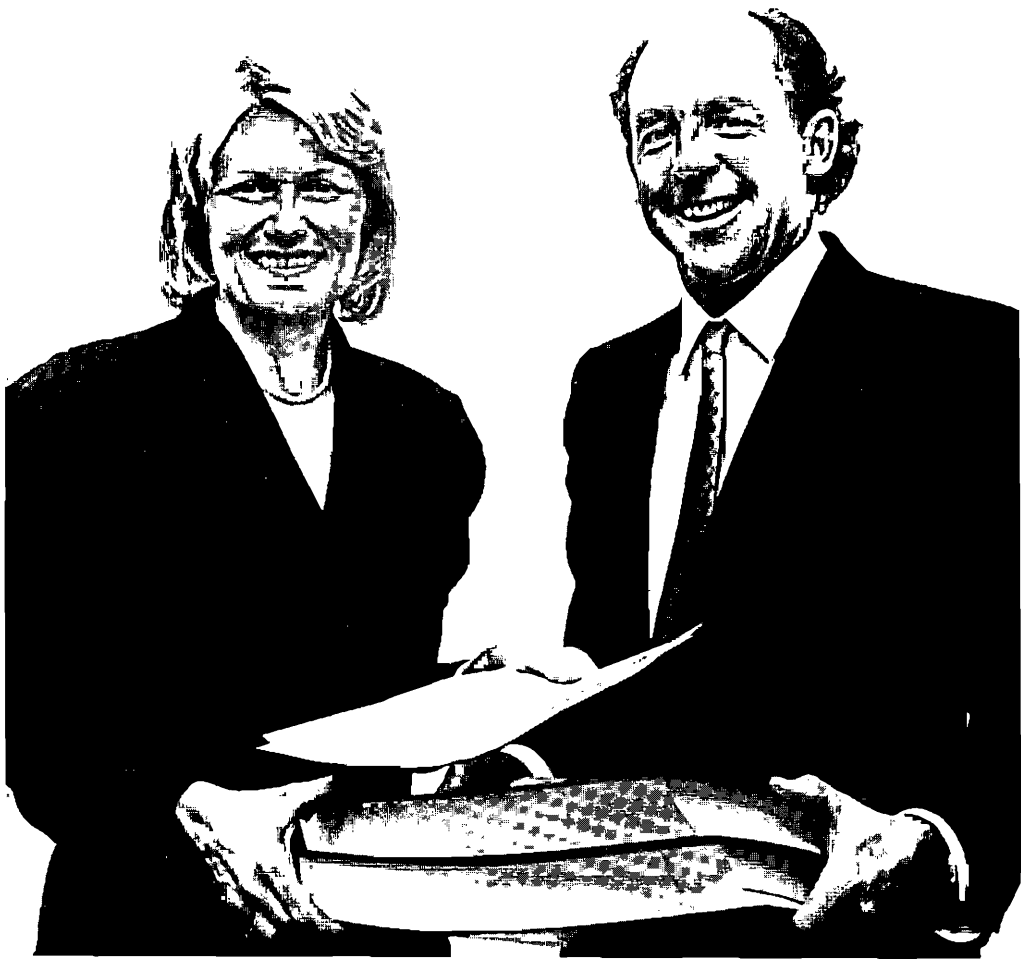
Natural disasters and civil defence

Objectives

The objective of the Natural Disasters Organisation (NDO) is to mitigate the effects of natural and man made disasters and civil defence emergencies by ensuring that planning, preparation, coordination and training are adequate and up to date.

More specifically the NDO:

- coordinates Commonwealth physical assistance when requested to an affected State/Territory in the event of a major disaster and to provide information concerning the disaster to Commonwealth and State authorities;
- develops national counter disaster plans and procedures;
- maintains and develops effective public awareness and information program;



The Defence Housing Authority will be responsible for managing about 23 000 houses worth more than \$1.25 billion. The Minister for Defence Science and Personnel, Mrs Ros Kelly, presents Mr John Graham with a list of Defence houses.

- increases awareness among appropriate State bodies of the demands of civil defence;
- coordinates disaster relief to Papua New Guinea and South West Pacific nations when requested;
- maintains physical and financial support programs for the State/Territory Emergency Services; and
- provides training courses in counter disaster prevention, preparation, response and recovery and civil defence at national level.

Activities and achievements

Operational

Relief was provided for the following disasters:

- cyclone relief (Tropical Cyclone Anne in the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu—January 1988 and Tropical Cyclone Bola in Vanuatu—February–March 1988);
- flood relief support (fodder and food supplies by air) QLD/NSW—April 1988; and
- locust plague relief (Papua New Guinea—March 1988).

Planning

During the year improved plans were issued for:

- Ausdisplan—national disaster plan; and
- Ausaid—overseas disaster response plan.

Substantial progress has been made towards the completion and issue of an improved special plan to cope with nuclear space debris.

Public awareness and information programs

There was an increase in demand for public awareness or general disaster information. New or revised public awareness publications produced during the year include:

Australian Counter Disaster Arrangements (booklet), *Disasters: A Booklet for Schools*, *Alternatives to an Ark* (flood relief booklet), *Severe Storms: Facts and Precautions* (pamphlet), *Nuclear Weapons: Their Effects and your Protection* (booklet). A schools project publication entitled *Disasters—A Role for Defence* was jointly produced with the Directorate of Public Relations and has drawn many requests for further information on disasters. Public use of the disaster information film/video loan service has been consistent and the collection has undergone modest expansion.

A list of films, audio-visual cassettes and free publications available from NDO is at Appendix 6.

Civil Defence

Officers of State and Territory authorities and the Commonwealth have met to consider civil defence plans for communities adjacent to the joint Australia–United States defence facilities. A Fallout Shelter Survey Team has been relocated from Sydney to Canberra to establish a civil defence cell.

Support programs

The Commonwealth continued to assist the States/Territories through the following programs managed by the Organisation:

- reimbursement of salaries for approved full time State/Territory staff at the regional level: \$2.199m;
- accommodation subsidies to assist in the provision of local State Emergency Service unit headquarters: \$0.576m;
- provision of equipment and stores for use in counter disaster operations: \$1.275m;
- production of training manuals and public information material: \$0.072m; and
- travel costs of students attending the Australian Counter Disaster College: \$0.485m.

Training

The Australian Counter Disaster College at Mount Macedon, Victoria continued disaster management and civil defence training. Approximately 1000 students attended courses at the College. Other major activities held at the College during the year included:

- a symposium on Toxic Chemicals Incidents;
- a workshop on Evacuation during Disaster;
- a workshop on Disaster Recovery (Public Health);
- a workshop on Hazard Management and the Environment;
- a disaster recovery workshop for town planners and engineers;
- a workshop on Requirements of Special Needs Groups During a Disaster;
- a seminar on counter disaster skills training; and clinics on disaster research.



Chapter 4— Defence corporate services

Objective

The overall objective of Defence Corporate Services is to foster the implementation of the Government's defence policies through the provision of intelligence, planning, financial, personnel and logistics and other policy and management services to the Defence organisation.

Corporate Services consists of those central divisions and agencies which provide overall policy or other services to the Defence function. They include the coordination and development of strategic planning from intelligence analysis through strategic review to policies and plans. The services also include the provision and support of an overall defence corporate planning framework through the Five Year Defence Program.

The resources expended on corporate services in the year under review were:

	<i>Staff Years</i>	<i>Outlays (\$m)</i>
Logistics	878.8	49.307
Strategic planning	1683.9	80.689
Executive	6.0	0.323
Personnel management and support	3513.7	283.801
<i>Total</i>	6082.4	414.300

Strategic Planning

Objective

Taking account of up to date intelligence assessments, the objective of strategic planning is to develop and formulate strategic guidance and international Defence policy, to apply this to the assessment and review of priorities for defence capabilities and activities and to coordinate and develop Defence programs and budgets.

Strategic and international policy

Objective

The objective of strategic and international policy is to ensure that Australia's defence planning and the development of national defence and supporting capabilities is informed by detailed consideration of Australia's strategic circumstances and security interests. Judgements are made about the types of military pressure that Australia could credibly face, policy advice is given on their implications for planning for the direct defence of Australia and actions are taken to reinforce Australia's long-term security prospects by promoting Australia's strategic interests in our international defence relationships.

Impact of the Defence Policy Information Paper

The Defence Policy Information Paper established self-reliance—that is the ability to defend ourselves with our own resources—as the basis of Australia's defence.

The policy of defence self-reliance is pursued within a framework of alliances and regional defence associations. It is supported by a strategy of defence-in-depth under which our force planning gives priority to credible levels of threat in Australia's area of direct military interest. Defence-in-depth also ensures that the ADF has the flexibility to choose, as far as possible, the time, place and means of engagement to respond to hostile forces. It requires the continuing development of a comprehensive array of well-supported offensive and defensive capabilities and the definition of concepts for their use in different levels of conflict.

Australia's independent military capabilities continue to be enhanced by our defence relationship with our major ally the United States while Australia in turn provides practical support for the United States' ability to maintain an effective strategic balance with the Soviet Union.

Self-reliance requires active defence relations with our regional neighbours. A significant element of Australia's defence posture is that the capabilities it develops for its own defence also provide it with the capability to play its part in maintaining regional security. A significant proportion of Australia's defence resources, especially in the Air Force and Navy, are employed in these activities.

Australia continues to cooperate closely with New Zealand because of our common interests in the region. A primary objective of our cooperative activity has been to maintain the ability of the Australian and New Zealand forces to operate together and to sustain and support each other. This adds significantly to the joint defensive capability of the two nations.

The maintenance of regional security is achieved by fostering an awareness of shared strategic interests. We also encourage a wide range of cooperative defence activities with regional countries which contribute to the development of the external defence capabilities of regional countries. Australia aims to develop balanced and mature bilateral defence relationships based on concepts of equal partnership and reciprocity and ensuring a recognition of Australia as a natural participant in regional defence activities and in regional security discussions. These policy elements reduce the opportunity for access to the region by external powers whose presence may be inimical to Australia's longer term strategic interests.

Achievements and major activity

Planning activity

In response to the Defence Policy Information Paper there has been:

- a better definition of the nature and scope of the principal levels of possible conflict which shape Australia's defence planning;
- the development of our understanding of those strategic factors which could affect the security prospects of Australia or the region;
- the development of operational concepts for the defence of Australia;
- the continuing provision of strategic guidance relating to specific capital investment proposals; and
- the definition of guidelines under which the ADF might render aid to the civil power or assist the civil community.

Alliance cooperation with the United States

The overlapping defence and security interests of Australia and the United States were reflected in a wide range of bilateral activities throughout the year.

The relationship continues to provide benefits in the form of an extensive program of

military training and combined exercises, intelligence exchanges and cooperation in defence science and technology, communications and logistics. During the year there were 22 combined exercises and exchanges between the ADF and US forces, and throughout the year there were about 140 Australian defence personnel in the US on long term training or exchange.

We continue to receive preferential status in access to military technology to assist with the development of our own national technical capabilities.

Procurement activity from the US included the Black Hawk and Seahawk helicopter projects and further deliveries of the Australian assembled F/A-18 aircraft; equipment for the two new frigates under construction at Williamstown Dockyard and modernisation of the DDG destroyers at Garden Island Dockyard. New contracts included combat systems for the six new submarines to be constructed in Australia and various support items. Collaboration continues in a number of areas including in the full scale engineering development phase of the Nulka ship defence system.

In the annual Australia/United States Ministerial Talks, held in Washington on 28-29 June 1988 and attended by the Minister for Defence, the Secretary, the CDF and senior Defence officials, the two governments reaffirmed the importance of continued active defence cooperation within the ANZUS alliance. They noted that the alliance continues to serve the vital interests of both Governments by contributing to regional security and to the maintenance of a global balance essential to world peace.

During his visit to Washington for the Ministerial talks, Mr Beazley met separately with the US Secretary of Defense, Mr Frank Carlucci, and other senior officials to discuss bilateral defence issues and spoke with Congressional leaders having national security and foreign relations responsibilities.

These policy discussions were supplemented by wide ranging bilateral meetings. These meetings included the annual meeting between the CDF and the Commander in Chief US Pacific Command in Washington in June 1988, the October 1987 Defence/Defense Talks on US strategic policy and the February 1988 Logistic Review Talks held in Hawaii to review the operation of the 1982 Memorandum of Understanding on reciprocal Logistic Support.

Australia continues to cooperate in the operation and management of the joint Australia-US defence and defence related facilities. The facilities continue to contribute to efforts to maintain international stability through a global balance of forces and deterrence of war. They also contribute to progress towards effective and verifiable disarmament and arms control measures. The Prime Minister on 9 December 1987 expressed his satisfaction at the role Australia will play in helping to verify Soviet compliance with the terms of the Intermediate range Nuclear Forces Agreement through the operations of the joint defence facilities and at the boost this agreement gave to prospects for further nuclear arms reductions.

While acknowledging that our hosting of the joint facilities does bring attendant risks in the remote event of global nuclear war, the Government cooperates in these facilities because of their contribution to Australian security and their importance in reducing the risk that nuclear war could occur. Consultations continued with relevant state and territory governments on contingency plans addressing the risks of a possible attack on the facilities.

The Department provided advice to a Senate committee inquiry into safety aspects of the visits of nuclear powered or capable warships. In the year under review 31 US Navy ships made 50 port calls in Australia; only one of these ships was nuclear powered. This was the USS *Long Beach* which visited HMAS Stirling and Hobart. As well as the ship visits, there was a continuing program of flights to Australia by unarmed US B52 bombers for training and by other military aircraft for a wide range of cooperative activities. All of these activities, which reflect cooperation relevant to Australia's mainly maritime environment, underline the closeness of military cooperation with the US and provide valuable exercise opportunities for the ADF.

The regular ongoing dialogue between the Australian Department of Defence and the US Defense Department was enhanced by the appointment in 1988 of a senior civilian Defence policy officer to the Australian Defence Staff in Washington.

Regional cooperation

South East Asia

Efforts continued during the year to promote cooperative activities with South East Asian countries, resulting in some significant new developments. In seeking to implement our objectives we recognise that our activity in the region brings benefits to all participants. We take fully into account the increasing sophistication of regional capabilities.

Awareness of Australia's continued support for regional security was improved during visits by the Minister and Secretary to Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore and Brunei in November 1987, and to Malaysia and Singapore in March 1988. Our regional defence policy was elaborated in a speech by the Minister to the Alumni International Singapore, and in a Parliamentary statement of 23 February 1988.

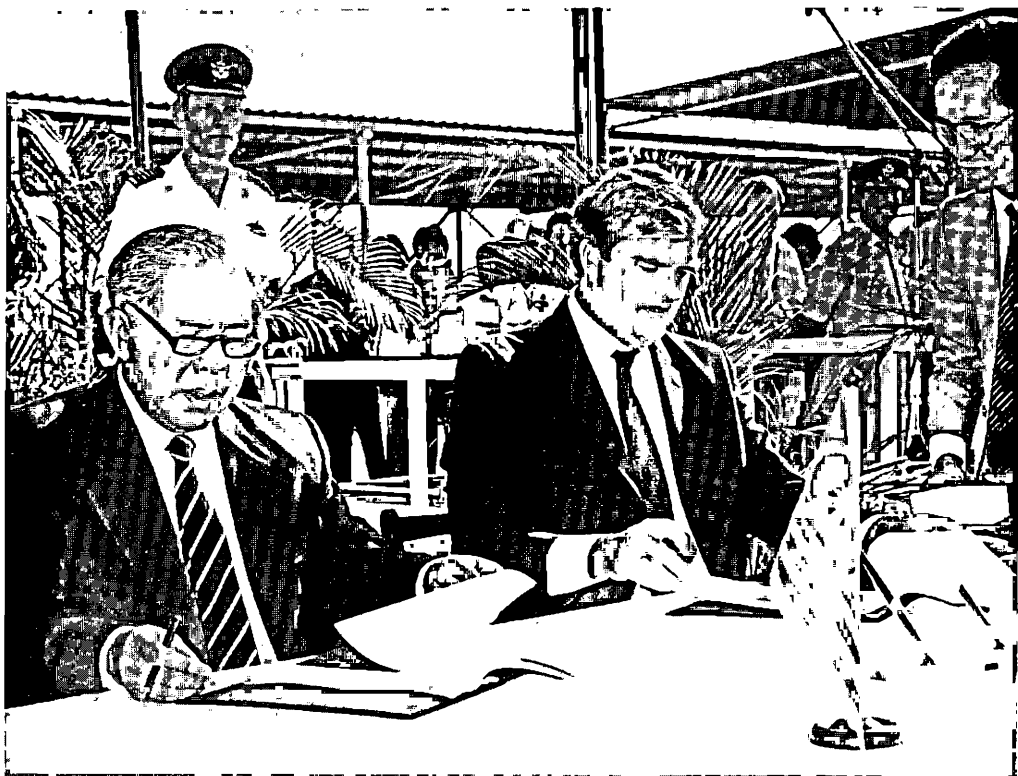
Australia continued to support strongly regional defence cooperation with Malaysia, Singapore, New Zealand and the United Kingdom through the Five Power Defence Arrangements, which remain relevant and valuable in promoting our common interests in regional security.

Important activities and achievements in our defence relations with South East Asia during the year included:

- the conclusion of arrangements for the future ADF presence at Butterworth air base in Malaysia and attendance by the Minister at a ceremony in April 1988 marking the changeover from our Mirage presence there to the commencement of rotational deployments of F/A-18 aircraft from Australia in support of Five Power air defence exercises;
- signature in November 1987 of a Memorandum of Arrangements for RAAF deployments to Singapore for Five Power and bilateral exercises;
- agreement with Malaysia and Singapore for increased RAN deployments to South East Asian waters which will result in a continuous RAN presence using shore support and maintenance facilities in Singapore and Malaysia and including regular exercises with regional navies;
- signature of a Status of Forces Agreement with Singapore to cover the unilateral training activities of the Singapore Armed Forces in Australia, and of a Memorandum of Arrangements covering Republic of Singapore Air Force deployments to RAAF Amberley;
- agreement between defence officials of Indonesia and Australia that the focus of bilateral contacts would move from materiel-based projects towards a more broadly-based and flexible pattern of activities including exercises, training, senior level visits and personnel exchanges; and
- agreement for the commencement of a bilateral land exercise series in Thailand. The first exercise is to be held in March 1989.

Papua New Guinea and the South Pacific

Developments in the South Pacific over the past year have underlined the growing political complexity of the region. The potential for rapid and sometimes radical change within the South Pacific island states was illustrated by the two military coups in Fiji in 1987 and the civil disturbance in Vanuatu in May 1988. These regional developments have required that our cooperative defence activities be adjusted to contemporary circumstances. Our cooperative activities with the countries of the South Pacific are broadly based and benefit regional countries in addition to fulfilling our defence policy objectives.



Defence Ministers Beazley of Australia and Tengku Ritthauddeen of Malaysia at the signing of letters of agreement on the continued presence of the ADF at Butterworth.

In February 1988 in a major statement to Parliament, the Minister noted the importance of our defence relations with Papua New Guinea and the island countries of the South Pacific and emphasised our objective to act as a partner with our regional neighbours. As a tangible demonstration of the importance we attach to our defence relations with regional countries, the Minister visited Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands, Vanuatu, Kiribati and Tuvalu in October 1987. This was the first official visit by an Australian Defence Minister to the Pacific Island countries.

One of the major objectives of the Minister's visit was to explain the direction of Australian defence policy following the publication of the Defence Policy Information Paper. The Minister also discussed strategic developments in the region, and sought regional governments' views on how Australia could best cooperate with them to protect mutual interests. In recognition of Pacific island leaders' concerns to protect their sovereignty and their economic security, the primary focus of our cooperative defence activities with regional countries is on maritime surveillance. Many of these initiatives have already been implemented. During the visit, regional leaders expressed their appreciation of Australia's maritime surveillance assistance and a number of initiatives were raised to improve or increase Australia's activities in this area.

Important achievements and activities in our defence relations with Papua New Guinea and the South Pacific included:

- signature by Prime Ministers in December 1987 of the Joint Declaration of Principles Guiding Bilateral Relations between Papua New Guinea and Australia which provides inter alia for consultation in the event of external armed attack threatening the national sovereignty of either country so that each Government may decide what measures should be taken, jointly or separately, in relation to that attack;

-
- agreement between Australia and Papua New Guinea on Australian assistance in several major infrastructure development projects of defence relevance including the upgrading of the Lombrum Boat Base wharf, Manus Island and the Lancron Slipway, Port Moresby;
 - agreement between defence officials of Australia and Papua New Guinea to establish a program of exchange officer posting to augment and, over time, replace ADF officers serving in the PNGDF or in ADF formed units located in Papua New Guinea;
 - convening of the South Pacific Regional Maritime Surveillance Seminar in Port Vila in March 1988, which allowed South Pacific Forum countries to discuss common requirements and the benefits of cooperation;
 - the opening of the Solomon Islands National Surveillance Centre on 9 March 1988 which was constructed with defence cooperation assistance;
 - under the Pacific Patrol Boat project, which is central to our maritime surveillance assistance to South Pacific countries, the handing over of the third vessel to Papua New Guinea in October 1987 and the fourth to Western Samoa in March 1988; and
 - signature by the Australian Government of a contract with Australian Shipbuilding Industries (WA) for the establishment of support facilities for Pacific Patrol Boats in service in regional countries. The facilities will be located in Port Moresby and Townsville.

Australia maintains a demonstrated ability to respond quickly to requests for assistance from regional governments and on 17 May 1988, a RAAF C-130 aircraft deployed to Vanuatu with replacement stocks of anti-riot equipment after serious rioting in Port Vila resulted in a request for assistance from Prime Minister Lini of Vanuatu. Further planning was undertaken in the event that assistance had been requested to enable proper protection of Australian citizens.

Defence cooperation with Fiji remains suspended and its resumption is dependent on future developments in that country. In recognition of the important interests we share with Fiji, the Government is continuing to keep the relationship under review.

New Zealand

Cooperation with New Zealand involves the whole range of defence activity including a broad pattern of training, exercising, ship visits, exchanges of information, maritime surveillance and logistics cooperation in pursuit of the goal of regional stability. In 1987-88 24 combined exercises and exchanges were held involving all three services and some 430 New Zealand Defence Force personnel attended military training courses in Australia.

The Minister for Defence and the newly appointed New Zealand Minister for Defence, Mr Tizard, met in New Zealand in September 1987 and reviewed progress on the ANZAC Ship project. The two Ministers met in Canberra on 24 March 1988 for the annual formal review of the defence relationship and reviewed progress in implementation of each country's defence white papers. They reaffirmed the commitment of the two Governments to strengthening the close trans-Tasman defence relationship.

This meeting was supported by the annual meeting of the Australia New Zealand Consultative Committee involving the Secretary and the CDF and their New Zealand counterparts.

As a result of these meetings, studies have commenced on possible cooperative activities involving combined flying training for pilots of the ADF and the Royal New Zealand Air Force, and for combined maritime training involving New Zealand A4 aircraft undertaking advanced support flying for the RAN.

Coordination of Australian and New Zealand naval visits and air surveillance flights in the South Pacific continued, and coordinated reporting procedures were adopted for

long range maritime patrol flying to provide relevant information to the South Pacific Forum Fisheries Agencies and Forum island countries in support of the growing regional cooperative security of the South Pacific.

Other achievements

We have continued to be involved actively in a wide variety of regular bilateral activities with Australia's friends and allies, including combined exercises, senior level visits and consultations, joint projects, study visits, training activities, staff college and other personnel exchanges, specialist contacts, ship visits, maritime surveillance cooperation and other direct service-to-service contacts.

We have continued to support strongly the conclusion of a universal, comprehensive convention banning the use, possession or manufacture of chemical weapons believing that the conclusion of such a convention would add substantially to Australia's security.

In May 1988 the Minister for Defence warned publicly of the growing threat posed by chemical weapons and the Prime Minister stated in June 1988 that consideration will be given to a possible Australian initiative to prevent proliferation of chemical weapons in the South East Asian and South Pacific regions.

Intelligence

Joint Intelligence Organization

In accordance with priorities set by the Secretary and the CDF, the Joint Intelligence Organization (JIO) acquires, from all available sources, information relevant to Australia's strategic environment, military security and defence policy formulation.

Based on this foundation, it provides assessments and advice on international events and developments to meet the needs of the Defence organisation, the Office of National Assessments and other agencies of the Australian Government as required.

JIO maintains close working relations with both Australian and allied Government sources of information, but has no clandestine intelligence collection role.

Following the internal re-organisation that was undertaken in 1986-87, refinements to branch structures were made during 1987-88 to ensure precise allocation of effort against the intelligence priorities and to allow more productive use of human resources.

In consultation with policy and planning areas of the Department and the ADF, JIO's formal research and reporting program was focused on meeting their requirement for timely and comprehensive reporting of developments and trends in the Asia/Pacific region. This effort, together with JIO's liaison arrangements with allies, enabled it to effectively support the Department's decision making process during periods of tension in the region (for example those in Fiji and Vanuatu).

Defence Signals Directorate

During the year, the Defence Signals Directorate (DSD) continued to carry out its function of maintaining a capability to collect, produce and disseminate foreign signals intelligence and advise the Government on all matters pertaining to communications security and computer security.

DSD operates in concert with the joint and single Service staffs, the other intelligence and security agencies, and with counterpart agencies overseas.

The establishment of an Australian Defence Satellite Communications Station at Geraldton is proceeding to plan. When completed in the mid-1990s it will make an important contribution to Australia's independent intelligence capabilities and contribute to Australia's security in our area of strategic interest.

The Government decided during the year that consistent with the intention that all intelligence and security agencies be located in Canberra, DSD is to move from Melbourne by the mid 1990s.

Resources and financial planning

Financial result for 1987-88

In 1987-88, Defence function outlay (expenditure less revenue) was \$7422.4m fully achieving the Additional Estimates in real terms after allowing for exchange savings and other adjustments. The main features of the 1987-88 budget result were:

- real growth of -1.1%, giving an average annual real growth since 1983 of +1.7%;
- equivalent to 2.5% of Gross Domestic Product (GDP);
- 9.4% of total Commonwealth Budget outlays;
- \$6613m or 85.3% spent in Australia, of which \$1476.7m or 19.6% was for equipment, stores etc (up from 16.4% in 1986-87);
- 28.6% of spending on investment in equipment and facilities; 43% on personnel (incl. DFRDB) and 28.4% on DCP and other operating costs; and
- in terms of outlays on major functions:
 - 54.1% on current Defence Forces
 - 24.9% on Defence development
 - 6.1% on DFRDB
 - 9.3% on Defence support
 - 5.6% on Corporate Services.

In money terms compared to the 1987-88 Budget provision of \$7404.0m, there were substantial savings due to overall favourable currency movements (\$30.2m); lower than estimated Fringe Benefit Tax costs of \$8.7m; reduced general revenue largely as a result of the sale of Williamstown Dockyard and establishment of Aerospace Technology Australia Pty Limited (\$23.0m) offset by other factory net trust account movements; and price increase and other price variations of \$53.8m.

Appendix 2 provides details, including comparisons with the achievement in 1986-87.

Financial obligations at 30 June 1988

Control of the program of financial obligations is of fundamental importance to Defence. With large scale procurement activity, expenditure in subsequent years against obligations incurred in previous years constitutes a significant proportion of Budget outlays. This limits Defence's flexibility to introduce new projects and programs.

At 30 June 1988, outstanding commitments were \$8567m, as follows:

	\$m
Equipment projects costing \$10m or more	6120
Minor equipment projects	367
Facilities projects	509
Sub-total—Investment	6996
Maintenance stores and equipment repair.	1265
Building repair	48
Administrative expenses and rent	164
Defence production costs.	8
Defence cooperation.	86
Total	8567

With the exception of some major projects such as the new submarines, most of this outstanding commitment will be discharged progressively over the next three to five years.

The Five Year Defence Program

The rolling Five Year Defence Program (FYDP) provides the framework within which Defence policies and priorities, in respect of their timescale for implementation and the resources which Government allocates as a basis for Defence planning, are reconciled and brought in balance.

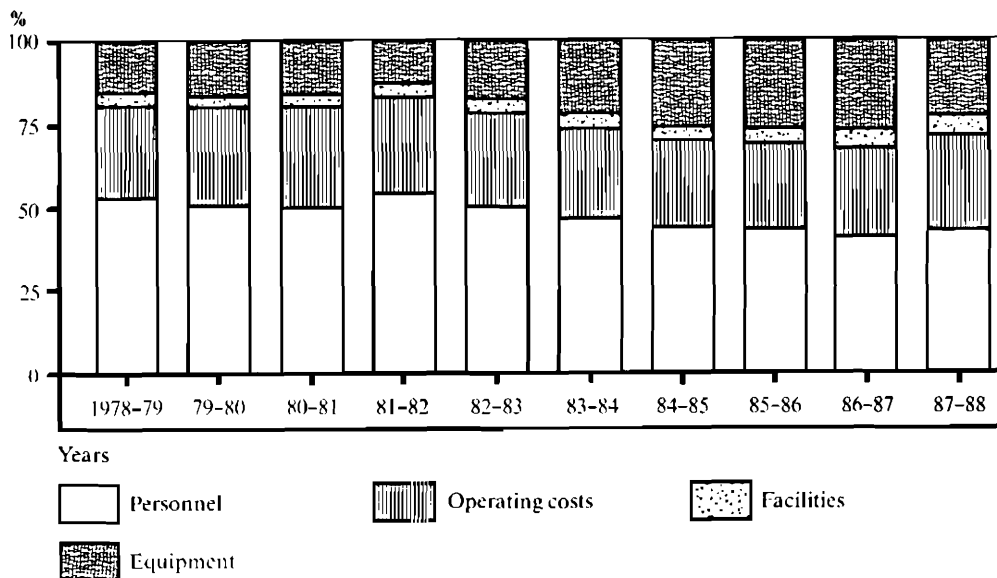
The financial processes involved in formulating five year programs have three major features:

- the provision by Government of guidance on the level of funding which should be assumed for planning purposes, over the FYDP period;
- the development of estimates of the costs (or savings) of program options for major new acquisitions, existing commitments, personnel and continuing operational and administrative activities; and
- the joint participation of Service and Departmental management in the examination of relative priorities (in relation to established policy objectives) for recommendation to the Minister and ultimately to the Government.

The shape and content of the FYDP reflects the development of the Defence function as a whole.

The chart below indicates the underlying trends in the allocation of expenditure in the defence function since 1978-79.

Expenditure on defence function. Major categories as a % of total



Recent Defence spending priorities reflect the emphasis given to investment in a range of new equipment necessary to sustain and upgrade the ADF together with the bases and support facilities to allow it to train and operate effectively. Increased expenditure on investment has required a continuing period of restraint on operating costs and personnel.

Introduction of program budgeting

In line with the Government's budget reforms, Defence will present the 1988-89 and subsequent budgets in a program budget format. Work so far has focused on the program structure and critical financial information systems, with the development of such aspects as program activity measures and performance indicators to continue into 1988-89.

The use of the program budget is an important element in the devolution of authority and changed financial administration arrangements in Defence.

Logistics

Objective

The broad objective of Defence logistics is the cooperative development by the Department and the ADF of policies and procedures needed to provide the logistic and infrastructure support for deployed ADF forces in credible contingencies and for ADF peacetime requirements. Logistic support must have the capability to expand in a timely manner to meet the requirements associated with higher levels of conflict.

Within the broad Defence logistics objective, the Defence Logistics Organisation (DLO):

- plans and coordinates the provision of effective and economic logistic support for the ADF;
- identifies and exploits opportunities for cooperation, rationalisation and economy in the provision of logistics services to the ADF;
- advises on the financial provision needed for logistic support and applies Departmental financial control to the approved program; and
- ensures that logistic through-life support requirements are adequately considered in the development, acquisition and operation of Defence capabilities.

Organisation

The ADF established its logistic support arrangements in the light of the objectives of the Government's Defence policy. In HQADF, Joint Logistics Branch supports the CDF in the discharge of his command responsibilities with respect to logistic planning and support.

The DLO is responsible to the Secretary for advice on policy, resources and organisation of Defence logistics. It works closely with the HQADF, the Service Offices and other elements of the Department on the discharge of its functions.

Logistics review

A review of the Defence logistics function was commenced during the year. A small review team is coordinating continuing review tasks.

As part of that review the DLO was reorganised during 1987-88 with the aim of streamlining the Departmental structure, minimising duplication of effort, increasing responsiveness and achieving savings in manpower and other resources.

The review has the following objectives:

- to improve performance and effectiveness across the range of logistics functions;
- to reduce costs, and promoting cost consciousness and expenditure control;
- to reduce the level of Service staffing involved in logistics functions and freeing manpower for higher priority activities;
- to introduce common approaches where the issues or tasks are common to the Services (with appropriate recognition of features unique to individual Services), and promoting the optimisation of single or joint Service arrangements;
- to rationalise defence property;
- to rationalise systems and approaches to logistics; and
- to put authority closer to the point of action ie, reducing the number of steps and staff involved in the decision-making chain.

Activities and achievements

During 1987-88, in conjunction with Service activity, the Logistics Review Group focused attention on the overall objectives of logistics restructuring, ensuring that where feasible changes across the ADF are pursued. Efficiency measures totalling about \$100m a year have been identified. Savings of a further \$100m are being sought.

As a result of initiatives in the Facilities area, funds saved during 1987-88 were able

to be redirected to other Defence priorities, including acquisition of additional accommodation.

New property disposal arrangements, involving partial revenue retention, will allow the Department to meet planned commitments in facilities funding across the FYDP without real growth.

Major reviews of the acquisition and management of Defence vehicles and fuels have been initiated.

After detailed analysis, arrangements were made for the commencement of trials on 1 July 1988 aimed at streamlining stores procurement. These trials are expected to improve ADF logistic effectiveness and contribute to reductions in inventory holdings.

Logistics development

Logistics Development Division is an amalgamation of the former Supply Division and the Technical Services and Logistic Development Division. Its objective is to develop common supply, technical and movements policy and procedures in order to provide effective and economic logistic support to the ADF and the Department.

Activities and achievements

Major activities and achievements in the past year include:

- negotiation of support and quality assurance agreements with Belgium, Canada, Fiji, Italy, Norway, Sweden, Tonga, the United Kingdom and Vanuatu;
- initiation of disposal programs for Mirage aircraft, Centurion tanks, .303 rifles and Bren machine guns;
- commissioning of an automated Overseas Cargo Delivery System;
- trials of a Logistic Performance Assessment Support System;
- hosting of the major Pacific Area Senior Officers' Logistics Seminar in Queensland in June 1988;
- rationalisation of Defence warehousing including the replacement of Service personnel with civilians where this course is appropriate and economic;
- development of policy to rehabilitate lands effected by unexploded ordnance;
- provision of project, materiel and management support for Defence co-operation programs with Indonesia, Kiribati, Malaysia, Papua New Guinea, Singapore, Solomon Islands, Thailand, Tonga, Vanuatu and Western Samoa;
- rationalisation of Departmental and single Service long distance transport with the introduction of the ADF Linehaul Service; and
- review of aspects of defence calibration, quality assurance, maintenance, technical data package and configuration management policies.

Information systems policy

Objective

To create the environment within which information systems are developed and operated efficiently and effectively on a decentralised basis.

Activities and achievements

- Development of a Defence Information Systems Master Plan.
- Management of the Defence EDP Systems Integrated Network Environment (DESINE) project which will provide the Department with a standard information systems architecture within the next five years.
- Development of a framework for the further devolution of financial control, computer hardware and support acquisition to functional areas.
- Management of the Department's annual intake of graduate Computer Systems Officers (90 graduates in 1988).

Defence contracting

The Defence Contracting Organisation (DCO) is responsible for tender and contract actions above the public threshold, for Defence and Defence-related goods and services in Australia and for major contracts placed from Australia for supplies from overseas commercial organisations.

Objective

The DCO objective is to provide a high quality and timely contracting service in accordance with Commonwealth and Departmental policies while promoting economy in the use of resources.

Activities and achievements

The DCO arranged 2635 contracts in 1987-88 valued at \$1499.2m. Specific achievements against objectives were:

- the development of a new pro-forma tender and contract document for purchase of proprietary items in Australia; the document is legally self contained and will be administratively simpler for both DCO staff and industry;
- the review, in consultation with the Australian Government Solicitor, of the standard tender and contract document for major procurements;
- the simplification and computerisation of price variation and exchange rate provisions used in standard contractual documentation;
- the introduction of a video text based system of advertising tenders with data extraction direct from the DCO computer system;
- the enlargement and enhancement of the DCO's ADP based management and information system;
- the development of a Local Purchasing Officer Training Package for the smaller purchasing areas of the Department; and
- the participation of DCO staff in industry familiarisation visits.

As well a comprehensive review of the DCO was undertaken. Changes proposed, in combination with other changes likely to occur in government purchasing as a result of a review under the auspices of the Financial Management Improvement Program, will place greater responsibility on management to ensure not only that purchasing strategies are fair, appropriate and efficient but that they achieve the desired outcomes in a cost effective manner. The DCO reorganisation is expected to provide an equivalent service with less staff and remove duplication of functions. It will result in economies of scale in the large contracting centres while still maintaining a contracting presence in the smaller regions.

Logistics computing centre

Objectives

- to develop, maintain and operate efficient and effective computing facilities and associated networks in support of ADF logistics systems and to the DLO; and
- to provide specialist services in requirements analysis, specification, acquisition and implementation of information systems for logistics functional area.

Activities and achievements

- A new minicomputer site was established at RAAF Tindal.
- The minicomputer site at Naval Air Station, Nowra was significantly upgraded.
- Plans were progressed for a new minicomputer site at the Navy's Combat Data Systems Centre.
- Computing support was provided for the management of spares for deployment of Army's Black Hawk helicopters.

- The first two phases of the nationwide On-Line Inquiry and On-Line Update were successfully introduced. With more than 200 terminals now operational, some 40 000 inquiries (equating to some 140 000 transactions) are being processed per day.
- Proposals were developed for contingency arrangements for the logistics mainframe and minicomputer sites to prevent loss of data or unplanned interruption of processing.
- Special assistance to the ADF and the Department in support of:
 - the planned reorganisation and expansion of the Naval Supply Centre Zetland;
 - the disposal of Centurion tanks and their support items;
 - the disposal of Mirage aircraft parts; and
 - the further enhancement and extension of the Supply System nodes in Washington and London.

Supply systems redevelopment

Objective

To develop policies for common supply systems, undertake the redevelopment of the Services supply systems, and progress the approved phases of the Supply Systems Redevelopment project (SSRP).

Activities and achievements

- A review of the SSRP, completed in March 1988, reaffirmed that the existing SSRP concept is a viable and cost effective means of providing an integrated common core ADF supply system and stressed the fundamental importance of redevelopment as a contribution to Defence capability.
- An On-Line Inquiry facility incorporating some 200 different transactions was extended to a further 150 sites. The facility is now operational at 212 sites.
- Complementary on-line inquiry and update facilities promise productivity benefits of \$6.7m per annum compared with previous methods of operation.
- An automated disposals system for RAAF commenced operation. The system will result in leaner and more contemporary inventory holdings and save some \$18m over its life.

Personnel management improvement and financial services

Objective

To develop and oversee policies on the personnel, financial, organisational and administrative resources, to manage associated information systems and to provide associated services.

Review and reform

Restructuring

As part of the program of administrative reform the organisational framework of the department has altered significantly over the last 12 months. The program is aimed at increasing the department's efficiency, responsiveness and flexibility. The major organisational elements affected are ODP, DLO, CPO and DSTO. Significant changes have also been made to the Manpower, Management Improvement and Financial Services Group.

The ODP has been reorganised to create a more business-like organisation and the restructuring has resulted in a smaller number of establishments through sale, corporatisation or closure. Within the Central Office of ODP changes have been made

to reflect the rationalisation process occurring at the production establishments and in the process two branches have been abolished.

The DLO was extensively reorganised, and brought together within one division the function of supply and support policy and procedures functions which were formerly undertaken in two divisions. The new structure, with some refinement of staffing and changes to practices in relation to approval processes, is designed to speed up decision making, recognise the links between engineering, maintenance and supply, and further develop working arrangements with HQADF and the Services.

The CPO was totally reorganised in 1988 in order to strengthen resource management for the capital program as a whole. The new structure was also designed to augment business competence and management of major projects, and industry policy development including exports. The reorganisation also provides for a more effective transition of indigenously developed systems through the engineering development stage.

A long term reorganisation, planned to take effect over five years, is being undertaken within the DSTO to create a new laboratory structure centred on five mission-oriented research laboratories. This will allow high quality innovative research and development work required in critical areas to be carried out in the years ahead. A prime objective of this reorganisation is to increase the number of scientific, engineering and skilled technical staff within laboratories, leading to the better integration of scientific and engineering work. By passing full scale engineering development work to industry, the level of industry involvement in defence research and development is to be increased.

Two former financial divisions have been amalgamated into a new Resources and Financial Programs Division for more effective resource programming, budgeting and financial administration including new arrangements for dedicated financial and resource planning support for the Service Offices. At the same time a new organisation has been established under an Inspector-General to provide the Secretary and the CDF with a strengthened capacity to undertake independent assessments of the efficiency and effectiveness of the Defence organisation in relation to the regularity, efficiency, effectiveness and economy in the discharge of Defence activities and expenditure and of management policies, practices and controls within the Defence organisation.

The changes provide incentives for more effective resource usage by changing the financial management environment to give managers greater freedom and flexibility in the administration of their programs, but with commensurate increased responsibility and accountability for their activities.

Following the transfer of the powers to determine pay and conditions of employment of the Defence Force to the Department of Industrial Relations, and the establishment of the Defence Housing Authority, the Industrial Division was abolished. Functions of the division not transferred to other agencies were redistributed to other divisions in the Department.

The implementation of these major changes has resulted in a net reduction of 16 Senior Executive Service positions.

Productivity

Impetus was given to programs designed to achieve productivity. \$900 000 was spent on the Productivity Enhancement Program (Pep-up) during the year with expected productivity benefits of \$5.8m over two years. Under the Defence Suggestion Scheme \$80 000 was awarded during the year; savings of \$1m over the next three years are expected.

A major productivity conference was staged in November 1987. The conference theme was *Definitions and Directions* and included participation by the two Ministers and speakers from the US, the UK and NZ Defence departments. A program of awareness raising seminars based on the conference papers has been developed to ensure a wider understanding of the need for increased productivity and to spread the message more widely in the Defence organisation.

The introduction of new technology to support office administration and improve productivity in Canberra and in the regions has been accelerated.

The development of a strategy for the introduction of a quality circle program initially in the ADF has been progressed over the year. The objectives of quality circles are to provide a more participative working environment and through appropriately trained small groups, solve problems of the work place. Guidelines for the Program have been developed through the Public Service Joint Council and the Defence Consultative Council.

Parliamentary and party committees and Auditor-General's reports

Details of inquiries by parliamentary committees, some of which were resumed inquiries following the convening of the current Parliament, and the range of assistance offered to both parliamentary and party committees are outlined in Appendix 5. Departmental activity arising from reviews by the Auditor-General is also contained in that appendix.

Internal Audit

Internal Audit plays an important part in the Department's accountability to Parliament by the conduct of independent investigations, reviews, and appraisals and by advising Senior Management as to the regularity, efficiency, economy and effectiveness of practices, procedures and internal controls.

The Management Audit Branch conducted about 400 reviews during the year, some addressed across-the-board aspects such as project management, contracting, resource utilisation, financial/management systems and computing while others focused on individual Service units and establishments. The Branch has been transferred to the new Inspector-General.

Organisation reviews

As part of the management improvement process the Department engages in an ongoing program of organisation and establishment reviews to ensure that organisation structures appropriately reflect the functions to be performed. The process is widely decentralised to allow maximum flexibility for the major components of the Defence organisation to respond speedily to change.

Some of the major activity in this area has arisen from the extensive reorganisation of the top structure of Defence Central. The resulting sub structures are being reviewed and realigned to meet new or changed roles and functions.

Efficiency scrutinies

The findings of the two efficiency scrutinies completed in 1986-87 are being implemented. Introduction of direct credit arrangements for net pay to Service personnel to replace the cash-in-hand system is on schedule; the Air Force and the Army were converted during the year and the Navy will be on the new arrangements by the end of 1988. Implementation of the findings of the efficiency scrutiny of wholesale warehousing is progressing as part of a broader exercise involving civilianisation of Service positions.

The results of service-wide efficiency scrutinies covering processing of accounts, travel, libraries, major ADP purchases and computerisation of personnel systems are at various stages of implementation.

In addition, a Government initiated efficiency scrutiny of in-house provision of transport services was undertaken as part of the review of the Defence vehicle fleet scheduled for completion in 1989.

Manpower systems redevelopment project

The Manpower Systems Redevelopment Project (MSRP) brings together a number of separate Service and civilian manpower computing projects (pay, personnel and manpower management systems) with the aim of reducing development costs, introducing commonality and interoperability and improving the effectiveness of management information on manpower.

Most of the projects are redevelopments or replacements of existing systems. MSRP will allow advantage to be taken of necessary replacements to upgrade the Department's manpower management facilities.

MSRP is being implemented in phases. Phase 1 has progressed satisfactorily and will be completed during 1988-89. Under this phase, the direct credit of salaries of Air Force and Army personnel to financial institutions has been implemented. The system will be extended to Navy shore establishments by the end of 1988. Phase 1 will result in the replacement of the interim Navy pay system by an improved system by January 1989 and the reserves pay system will be redeveloped by April 1989. Phase 2 is planned to commence in 1988-89 and will result in automated personnel systems (civilian and Service) being accessible from all Defence establishments.

MSRP will streamline existing processes by utilising on-line data entry and automating manual systems. This is expected to give rise to staff savings of around 350.

Personnel management

Review of civilian personnel development

An extensive review of civilian personnel development was undertaken with the assistance of external consultants and was completed in October 1987. The review covered such issues as:

- the relevance of current training and development policies and programs;
- future directions for training and development of civilians; and
- employee attitudes to the Department as a place to work, as reflected in a survey of all civilian employees.

The review concluded that there was a need for a more planned and systematic approach to personnel development. The use of improved management development programs and a performance planning and review system were recommended to ensure training is closely related to Departmental objectives and individual needs. The Department is now revising its policies and practices in light of the review's findings and a team has been established to implement its recommendations.

Administrative Service Officer structure

A considerable training effort is being directed at the implementation of the new Administrative Service Officer classification structure, which was introduced as a part of the second tier pay negotiations with the clerical unions in 1987. In particular, former clerical and keyboard staff will need to be trained so that they will be able to cope with the mixture of clerical and keyboard work required by the new structure.

In consultation with the unions, new approaches to training for staff in the Administrative Service Officer category are being devised. This will continue to be a high priority for the Department.

Career development program for engineers

A program to identify the development needs of engineers through structured discussions between supervisors and subordinates was introduced during the year. Initial experience with the program suggests that it is able to identify development needs more precisely. The program also provides a specific framework within which supervisors and their staff can jointly plan and review their work.

Secretary's apprentices prizes

The Secretary's prizes provide for two exchanges of apprentices, one with the United Kingdom and one with New Zealand. The 1987 Secretary's United Kingdom Prize winner was Alistair Coles, a radio electronics apprentice from the DSTO Surveillance Research Laboratory, Salisbury. The New Zealand Prize winner was Miss Christine Rafferty, an apprentice cutter at the Australian Government Clothing Factory in Coburg.

Work skills

Three Defence apprentices competed with the Australian team in the International Youth Skills Olympics held at the Darling Harbour complex in Sydney in February 1988. Colin Twigg of Garden Island Dockyard won a silver medal in the Turning section. Michael Brookes also of Garden Island Dockyard was placed fourth in Sheetmetal Work and Gary Young of Ammunition Factory Footscray was placed sixth in Computer Numerical Control Machining.

Other training and development activities

During the year the Department continued to provide a range of training and development opportunities for its staff. These included internally administered courses and programs, attendance at external training and educational institutions, participation at the more senior levels in services provided by the Public Service Commission and attendance at various conferences and seminars. Statistics on training and development are provided in Appendix 4.

The Department is a major participant in the Government's Youth Traineeship Scheme administered by the Department of Education, Employment and Training.

Occupational health and safety

The Department, the ADF and unions continued their close cooperation and consultation on occupational health and safety matters.

An Occupational Health and Safety Manual was issued which will be expanded as policies on new topics are agreed. Policies on first aid, occupational overuse syndrome, manual handling screen based equipment, and personal protective equipment have been developed in consultation with unions and are being considered by the Defence Occupational Health and Safety Policy Committee.

Other policies being developed are on eye protection, asbestos, heat stress, alcohol and other drug abuse in the workplace and foot protection. A departmental policy on smoking was issued in April 1988.

ODP developed and implemented a Checklist Assessment System for Occupational Health and Safety. This was piloted by two of their establishments and is now fully implemented.

ODP also purchased Adchem, a chemical data management system with the capability of providing site specific information on hazardous materials. ODP has site licences for the Adchem system at two Central Office sites and six establishment sites. Two more establishments are finalising plans to install Adchem and all will then be serviced by the system.

A comprehensive hearing conservation training package was developed in-house for use throughout ODP establishments. In addition, workshops on rehabilitation and self-regulation were conducted during the year, attracting attendance from both within and outside the Department. Both workshops provided a focus for future directions in the light of the emphasis given to rehabilitation under the new compensation system.

Industrial democracy

In accordance with legislative provisions in the Public Service Act, the Department has developed a comprehensive industrial democracy plan.

The Defence Consultative Council (DCC) is the Department's senior forum for management union consultation. It comprises senior management, including representatives of the ADF, and union representatives nominated in the States and major Defence establishments by the ACTU. The DCC and its complementary consultative network form the framework through which industrial democracy activities, including direct forms of employee participation, are promoted.

The DCC met twice during the year and considered a wide range of matters affecting the Department, including the review of DSTO, the reorganisation of the top structure of the department, the use of contract labour, long term higher duties and quality of work programs.

Industrial democracy segments have been progressively incorporated into a range of departmental training courses, Workplace participation projects are progressively being developed and work has begun on the development of local industrial democracy plans.

Equal employment opportunity

The objectives of the Department's EEO policies are to avoid unjustified discrimination and ensure a fair go for all staff in the Department and for those who wish to seek employment in it. In particular, the Department seeks to allow women and members of the designated groups (Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders, people from non-English speaking backgrounds and people with disabilities) to pursue careers in the Department as effectively as other people.

It is expected that these policies will increase the overall numbers of target group members in the Department, raise their status (in terms of numbers employed in middle and senior level positions) and reduce their occupational segregation.

The diversity and geographic spread of the Department's operations requires a decentralised approach to the development and management of the EEO program. Twenty-eight regional offices, scientific establishments and Defence factories have therefore drawn up EEO Plans suited to their organisational structures and local conditions. Based on common guidelines developed by the central policy unit, these plans constitute the Defence EEO program.

A network of EEO coordinators and contact officers throughout the organisation assists local managers to implement approved plans, while providing continual monitoring and timely advice. The central policy section provides support and advice to the network.

While individual plans vary with local circumstances and the composition of the local workforce, they share common, essential features in the form of arrangements to select personnel solely on the grounds of objectively verified merit, and to open up to target groups the full range of available opportunities for recruitment, selection, training and development.

As well as program development other specific EEO-related issues have been addressed. The most prominent has been the establishment and training in May 1988 of a network of sexual harassment contact officers. The Department has also been active in programs such as the encouragement of female school leavers to enter traditionally male-dominated careers like engineering and some trades.

The Department's civilian personnel information system, has, with some adaptation, been adequate in providing statistics. Consultation with staff developing a successor system will ensure that the EEO program has the benefit of a comprehensive and flexible data base for effective monitoring and accurate reporting.

Information collected in the EEO survey conducted by the Public Service Board in 1986 has provided an important body of base line data against which the Department will be able to assess the effects of its policies.

Post-separation employment

New guidelines were issued in 1987 to regulate post separation employment by staff of the Public Service. The guidelines simplified the procedures and devolved responsibility from the former Public Service Board to departments. They also placed an increased onus on individual officers to seek official consent before accepting post separation employment likely to give rise to a conflict of interest or the appearance of a conflict of interest.

The new guidelines have operated effectively in Defence. During 1987-88 eight ADF members and 14 civilian staff sought approval to post separation employment. While no proposals have been rejected, restrictions were applied in two cases.

Civilianisation

A program of civilianisation was initiated during the year. The aim of the program is to identify military appointments, capable of being filled by civilians, to release Service personnel for re-deployment to higher priority military positions. By June 1988, a total of 494 positions had been civilianised and of those 332 had been filled.

Consultancies

Defence engages external consultants to assist in developing procedures and solutions to particular problems in fields ranging from general management to specialists in areas such as scientific research, environmental impacts and advanced technology. Larger consultancy tasks involve advice in the development of defence facilities and capital equipment acquisition.

Decisions to engage consultants are taken for efficiency and effectiveness reasons. Consultancies are generally for short periods (less than 3 months) and provide special skills to the department; skills that are otherwise not available and would not normally be developed internally because of the short term need and high staff development cost. To maximise the benefits of a consultancy and facilitate the transfer of skills, consultants are required to work closely with departmental officers. In some instances a project team is also formed to assist with these processes.

Expenditure on consultancies has been increasing over recent years primarily due to environmental studies for the relocation of the Navy Fleet base from Sydney Harbour to Jervis Bay. Continuing activity to improve departmental effectiveness requires closer links with the private sector; this in turn leads to an increase in consultancies in general management improvement.

To assist in effectively monitoring and evaluating the performance of consultants and of departmental sponsors, guidelines for the engagement of consultants were published during the year. An important element of the guidelines is the requirement to develop a data base of consultants, consultancies and evaluations.

Expenditure on consultancies totalled \$6.646m in 1987-88 of which \$2.08m was spent on environmental studies and \$2.228m on computer consultancies.

Financial management

Financial management improvement program

Defence continues to participate in the Government's Financial Management Improvement Program (FMIP), as a member of the Steering Committee, the Interdepartmental Advisory Committee and such groups as the FMIP review of Commonwealth procurement. Defence has also implemented such changes as the decentralisation of claims processing and introduction of credit cards. A range of other initiatives is being undertaken or is planned, including the Financial Systems Redevelopment Project (FSRP).

Financial systems redevelopment project

Significant achievement and progress has been made with the pilot project in South Australia initiated in 1986–87. Commercial accounting software packages which have been implemented for the pilot project include general ledger, purchase order, accounts payable, and budget control. The packages and concepts are still undergoing testing with experience so far supporting the feasibility and achievability of the project concept.

Regional Office organisations in South Australia and HMAS Cerberus in Victoria have moved to the pilot system. It is planned that Army and Air Force units in South Australia commence operation in the near future.

Progress has also been made with the implementation of the Defence Ledger System, initially to support the implementation of program budgeting.

Public information and external review

Public relations

A new Public Information Strategy was formulated for the Department in 1987–88. This followed a national survey by Australian National Opinion Polls (ANOP) on public attitudes to the ADF and the Department.

The main findings of the survey were that:

- the public is not highly interested in or knowledgeable about defence, though 95% believe it important;
- the ADF's prime roles are seen as defence preparedness and as a source of training and employment;
- the Defence Policy Information Paper strategy of self-reliance while keeping close links with our allies, and a 'layered' defence of Northern Australia was widely supported;
- Service people are seen as highly credible, but with a low public profile; and
- television current affairs and news are the most important and credible sources of defence information.

The ANOP polls acknowledged that Defence public information initiatives seemed to be effective and recommended some main information themes, translating into a corporate strategy to demonstrate that the Defence organisation is important and effective, and that Defence personnel are well trained, highly capable and use advanced technology.

The ANOP poll suggested three main community groupings:

- 14% highly educated, mostly male and believing themselves to be well informed on defence matters;
- 44% middle educated, younger, mainly male, with less knowledge of but some interest in defence; and
- 42%, largely female, and those of ethnic background with little or no knowledge of or interest in defence.

A follow-on survey by Wollongong University is studying the attitudes of women and the ethnic communities in various age groups.

Major public relations plans were prepared for the over-the-horizon radar project, and the building of RAAF Tindal.

An illustrated book, *Australian Defence Heritage*, was produced as a contribution to the Bicentennial. The 206 page volume contains nearly 400 photographs, paintings and illustrations and over 60 chapters describing the Defence conservation of historic buildings and land (including Aboriginal sites), and the protection of flora and fauna. The book was launched by the CDF at Victoria Barracks, Melbourne, on 10 June 1988.

A wide range of booklets, leaflets, posters and other material was produced or updated and eight major media awareness and public relations courses arranged. The

Directorate of Public Relations also designed and presented several major exhibitions and displays and provided display support for other Defence functions.

Media relations

About 60 background briefings and interviews were arranged for the media on a range of topics. Material was provided for the United States based *Defense and Foreign Affairs magazine*, and for supplements in the *Bulletin*, the *Australian*, the *Age*, and the *Sydney Morning Herald*.

The ADF's new doctrine on the reporting of military operations in times of tension and conflict was tested successfully for RAN operations in Exercise VALIANT USHER. Trials for the RAAF are due to be held in July 1988, completing tri-Service testing. Specialist media interest was fostered by a series of briefings given to the Defence Correspondents Association by the CDF and the Secretary.

Details of publications, films and videos available from Defence Public Relations are contained in Appendix 6.

Ombudsman activities

Formal enquiries received from the Commonwealth Ombudsman (7) and the Defence Force Ombudsman (61) during the year were similar in volume to the 1986-87 enquiries. Seventy-three informal enquiries were handled by the Department's Ombudsman co-ordination group unit, while others were conducted by staff of the Ombudsman's office with responsible functional areas within the Defence organisation.

Arising from individual complaint to the Ombudsman the Department sought approval of the Department of Finance to four act of grace submissions. The Submissions were initially rejected and the Ombudsman in exercise of section 16 of the Ombudsman Act represented the cases to the Prime Minister for consideration. Approval for act of grace payments was obtained and the persons affected have been paid the amount determined in their particular case.

Freedom of information

The principal ongoing objective of the Department's Freedom of Information (FOI) program is to ensure the efficient and effective implementation of the FOI legislation throughout the Department and the Defence Force.

The Department's FOI Act Section 8 statement is published separately as Appendix 9 of this Report. Copies of the Department's FOI Act Section 9 statement are available from offices of Australian Archives throughout Australia. Access to documents in the statement may be arranged by contacting the Freedom of Information Section at Russell Offices, Canberra.

FOI requests and their outcomes

<i>Type of request</i>	<i>Processed to finality</i>	<i>Granted in full or part</i>
Access to documents (s19)	1599	1461
Amendment of personal record	7	6
Internal review	3	1
Administrative Appeals Tribunal	1	0

About 26% of the requests finalised were processed within the 30 days required by the Act.

A significant, but undetermined, number of applicants made requests purporting to be made under the FOI Act but elected not to proceed with them under the Act—usually after they were advised of the application fee and charges likely to be payable and other matters arising from their requests. The majority of these were then dealt with in an appropriate manner outside the provisions of the Act.

Over 90% of requests for documents by current and former members of the ADF and their next of kin and other relatives are for personnel and medical documents. The Government has directed that ADF personnel be given access to their personnel and medical documents outside the FOI Act.

FOI revenue and costs

Receipts: \$1889 as application fees and charges

Estimated costs of administering the FOI Act:

	\$
Manpower	733 791
On cost (at rate of 60%)	440 275
Other costs	31 340
Total	1 205 405

FOI training

Training sessions on the subject of Administrative Law, including FOI, are now regularly included in the Department's middle management courses.

Archives

Policies and programs to effectively implement the Archives Act continue to be developed. A major supplement to the Defence Archives Policy Manual has been developed. This provides guidance to the Department and the ADF on policy and administrative arrangements concerning disposal and destruction of Defence records in accordance with sections 24 and 27 of the Act.

During the year there has been a substantial increase in the number of requests the Department was obliged to respond to under the provisions of section 40 (Notification on Decisions) of the Archives Act. The Department received 128 requests involving an estimated 42 800 documents.

Programs to examine classified records under the provisions of section 35 (Identification of Exempt Records) continue and are being expanded to take account of classified Defence records in the custody of the Australian War Memorial. Section 35(1) arrangements negotiated between the Department and Australian Archives in 1986 are under review. These arrangements aim to ensure protection of classified Defence records containing information falling into the category of section 33 (Exempt Records) of the Act.

The United Kingdom Ministry of Defence provided an officer to assist in developing guidelines for the access clearance of classified records of the United Kingdom/Australia Joint Project at Woomera which ended in 1980.

The Department has been involved in two Administrative Appeals Tribunal actions taken against the Director-General Australian Archives under section 43.

Historical Studies

The Department continues to support the Official Historian, in the preparation of the Malaya Emergency and Vietnam War histories.

The Department continues to participate on the Editorial Advisory Board of the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade publishing projects *Documents on Australian Foreign Policy*. The Department also cooperated with the National Film and Sound Archives to identify moving image records of national archival value. Other activities involves consultation with Australian Archives in developing policy and administrative arrangements for the examination, transfer and disposal of Commonwealth records; and with the Australian War Memorial in the selective transfer and clearance of operational records concerning war like operations.

Appendix 1— Order of battle

Headquarters, Australian Defence Force

Joint Service units and organisations responsible direct to Headquarters, Australian Defence Force

Joint Services Staff College
Joint Telecommunications Unit
Australian Defence Force Academy
Australian Joint Warfare Establishment

Location
Canberra, ACT
Melbourne, VIC
Canberra, ACT
Williamstown,
NSW

Other Joint Service Units
Australian Joint Maritime Warfare Centre
(Joint RAN/RAAF unit)

Nowra, NSW

Royal Australian Navy

Department of Defence (Navy Office)
Maritime Headquarters

Canberra, ACT
Sydney, NSW

Fleet

<i>Type of Vessel</i>	<i>Armament</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Location</i>
3 guided missile destroyers	5 inch guns Standard SAM Ikara ASW missiles anti-submarine torpedoes	HMAS <i>Perth</i> HMAS <i>Hobart</i> HMAS <i>Brisbane</i>	Sydney, NSW
4 guided missile frigates	76 mm gun Standard SAM Harpoon SSM anti-submarine torpedoes Phalanx CIWS	HMAS <i>Adelaide</i> HMAS <i>Canberra</i> HMAS <i>Sydney</i> HMAS <i>Darwin</i>	Sydney, NSW
5 River-class destroyer escorts	4.5 inch guns Seacat SAM/SSM Ikara ASW missiles anti-submarine torpedoes	HMAS <i>Parramatta</i> HMAS <i>Stuart</i> HMAS <i>Torrens</i> HMAS <i>Derwent</i> HMAS <i>Swan</i>	Sydney, NSW Cockburn Sound, WA
6 Oberon-class submarines	anti-ship and anti-submarine torpedoes Harpoon SSM	HMAS <i>Oxley</i> HMAS <i>Otway</i> HMAS <i>Ovens</i> HMAS <i>Onslow</i> HMAS <i>Orion</i> HMAS <i>Otama</i>	Cockburn Sound, WA Sydney, NSW

<i>Type of Vessel</i>	<i>Armament</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Location</i>
1 minehunter (MCM trials support ship)		HMAS <i>Curlew</i>	Sydney, NSW
2 minehunter inshore	0.5 calibre machine gun	HMAS <i>Rushcutter</i>	Sydney, NSW
1 amphibious heavy lift ship	40 mm Bofors	HMAS <i>Shoalwater</i>	Sydney, NSW
4 landing craft heavy	0.5 inch machine guns	HMAS <i>Tobruk</i>	Sydney, NSW
		LCH <i>Balikpapan</i> (a)	Cairns, QLD
		LCH <i>Wewak</i> (a)	
		LCH <i>Tarakan</i> (a)	
		HMAS <i>Labuan</i> (b)	Brisbane, Qld
3 Attack-class patrol boats	40 mm Bofors	HMAS <i>Aware</i> (b)	Adelaide, SA
	0.5 inch machine guns	HMAS <i>Adroit</i> (b)	Cockburn Sound, WA
		HMAS <i>Ardent</i> (b)	Hobart, TAS
15 Fremantle-class patrol boats	40 mm Bofors	HMAS <i>Fremantle</i> (b)	Sydney, NSW
	0.5 inch machine guns	HMAS <i>Wollongong</i> (c)	
	81 mm mortar	HMAS <i>Dubbo</i> (c)	
		HMAS <i>Geraldton</i>	Cockburn Sound, WA
		HMAS <i>Bunbury</i>	
		HMAS <i>Ipswich</i>	Cairns, QLD
		HMAS <i>Townsville</i>	
		HMAS <i>Bendigo</i>	
		HMAS <i>Whyalla</i>	
		HMAS <i>Gladstone</i>	
		HMAS <i>Warrnambool</i> (b)	Westernport, VIC
		HMAS <i>Cessnock</i>	Darwin, NT
		HMAS <i>Launceston</i>	
		HMAS <i>Gawler</i>	
		HMAS <i>Geelong</i>	
1 training ship	Nil	HMAS <i>Jervis Bay</i>	Sydney, NSW
1 destroyer tender	40 mm Bofors	HMAS <i>Stalwart</i>	Sydney, NSW
1 fleet oiler	40 mm Bofors	HMAS <i>Success</i>	Sydney, NSW
2 hydrographic survey ships	Nil	HMAS <i>Moresby</i>	Cockburn Sound, WA
		HMAS <i>Flinders</i>	Cairns, QLD
1 oceanographic research ship	Nil	HMAS <i>Cook</i>	Sydney, NSW
2 interim survey ships	0.5 inch machine guns	HMAS <i>Betano</i> (d)	Cairns, QLD
		HMAS <i>Brunei</i> (d)	

Notes: (a) Operational Reserve

(b) Crewed by Reserves

(c) HMA Ships *Dubbo* and *Wollongong* transfer to Darwin in late 1988, early 1989

(d) Landing craft heavy

Fleet Air Arm

<i>Squadron</i>	<i>Aircraft</i>	<i>Location</i>
1 HS 817 anti-submarine helicopter squadron	Sea King	Nowra, NSW
	Mk 50/50A	
1 HC 723 helicopter training, EW and utility squadron	AS 350B Squirrel	Nowra, NSW
	UH-1B Iroquois	
	Bell 206B1	
	HS-748	
	Wessex 31B	

Commissioned establishments

	<i>Name</i>	<i>Location</i>
Headquarters/Area administration	HMAS Kuttabul	Sydney, NSW
Naval air station	HMAS Albatross	Nowra, NSW
Submarine base	HMAS Platypus	Sydney, NSW
Ship and submarine base	HMAS Stirling	Cockburn Sound, WA
Patrol boat base	HMAS Cairns	Cairns, QLD
Patrol boat base and communications station	HMAS Coonawarra	Darwin, NT
Mine warfare and patrol boat base and reserve training establishment	HMAS Waterhen	Sydney, NSW
Training establishments	HMAS Cerberus	Crib Point, VIC
	HMAS Creswell	Jervis Bay, ACT
	HMAS Nirimba	Quakers Hill, NSW
	HMAS Penguin	Middle Head, NSW
	HMAS Watson	Watsons Bay, NSW
Area administration and reserve training establishments	HMAS Moreton	Brisbane, QLD
	HMAS Encounter	Port Adelaide, SA
	HMAS Huon	Hobart, TAS
	HMAS Lonsdale	Melbourne, VIC
Communications station	HMAS Harman	Canberra, ACT

Non-commissioned establishments

<i>Facility</i>	<i>Location</i>
Jervis Bay Range Facility	Jervis Bay, ACT
Naval Supply Centre	Sydney, NSW
Naval supply depots	Randwick, NSW
	Rydalmere, NSW
	Newington, NSW
	Kingswood, NSW
	Somerton, VIC
Naval armament and equipment depots	Cockburn Sound, WA.
	Maribymong, VIC
	Kingswood, NSW
	North Sydney, NSW
RAN Missile Maintenance Establishment	Salisbury, SA
RAN Torpedo Maintenance Establishment	Belconnen, ACT
RAN Training Establishment	Shoal Bay, NT
Naval radio stations	Humpty Doo, NT

Australian Army

Department of Defence (Army Office)

Canberra, ACT

Land Command

	Formation/Unit	Equipment	Location
	Land Force Headquarters		Paddington, NSW
	Headquarters Northern Command		Darwin, NT
3	divisional headquarters (including 2 Army Reserve)		Enoggera, QLD
			Randwick, NSW
			Melbourne, VIC
10	brigade headquarters (including 7 Army Reserve)		Townsville, QLD (2)
			Enoggera, QLD
			Kelvin Grove, QLD
			Holsworthy, NSW
			Mosman, NSW
			Lidcombe, NSW
			Melbourne, VIC
			Perth, WA
			Unley, SA
1	ground liaison group		Penrith, NSW
			(Sections deployed at RAAF Bases)
1	armoured regiment (integrated)	Leopard tank	Puckapunyal, VIC
3	reconnaissance regiments (including 2 Army Reserve)	fire support vehicle M113A1	Holsworthy, NSW
			Parramatta, NSW
			Fitzroy, VIC
2	armoured personnel carrier regiments (1 integrated and 1 Army Reserve)	M113A1	Enoggera, QLD
1	independent reconnaissance squadron (Army Reserve)	M113A1	Tamworth, NSW
			Karrakatta, WA
3	armoured personnel carrier squadrons	M113A1	Townsville, QLD
			Albury, NSW
			Smithfield, SA
6	field artillery regiments (including 4 Army Reserve)	105 mm howitzer	Townsville, QLD
			Enoggera, QLD
			Annerley, QLD
			Willoughby, NSW
			Kogarah, NSW
			East Melbourne, VIC
3	independent field batteries	105 mm howitzer	Keswick, SA
			Karrakatta, WA
			Launceston, TAS
2	medium artillery regiments (including 1 Army Reserve)	155 mm guns	Holsworthy, NSW
			Geelong, VIC
1	divisional locating battery		Enoggera, QLD
1	air defence regiment	Rapier SAM	Woodside, SA
1	air defence battery (light)	Redeye SAM	Woodside, SA
3	field engineer regiments (including 2 Army Reserve)		Enoggera, QLD
			Gladesville, NSW
			Ringwood, VIC
3	field engineer squadrons (Army Reserve)		Warradale, SA
			Karrakatta, WA
			Mt Isa, QLD
2	engineer support squadrons (including 1 Army Reserve)		Enoggera, QLD
			Haberfield, NSW
1	engineer group headquarters (Army Reserve)		East Melbourne, VIC
3	construction regiment headquarters (including 2 supplementary Reserve units)		Holsworthy, NSW
			Haberfield, NSW
			East Melbourne, VIC
7	construction squadrons (including 4 Supplementary Reserve units)		Holsworthy, NSW
			Haberfield, NSW (2)
			East Melbourne, VIC (2)
			Puckapunyal, VIC
			Karrakatta, W.A.

Formation/Unit	Equipment	Location
1 plant squadron (heavy) (supplementary Reserve)		East Melbourne, VIC
1 chief engineer works unit		Randwick, NSW
1 port construction and repair group (Army Reserve)		Haberfield, NSW
1 electrical and mechanical squadron (supplementary Reserve)		Newborough, VIC
1 forestry squadron (supplementary Reserve)		East Melbourne, VIC
5 survey squadrons (including 1 integrated)		Enoggera, QLD
		Randwick, NSW
		Keswick, SA
		Karrakatta, WA
		Hohola, PNG
2 signals regiments		Enoggera, QLD
		Macleod, VIC
14 independent signal squadrons (including 5 Army Reserve and 1 integrated)		Cabarlah, QLD
		Townsville, QLD (2)
		Enoggera, QLD
		Kelvin Grove, QLD
		Holsworthy, NSW
		Stockton, NSW
		South Kensington, VIC (2)
		Beulah Park, SA
		East Perth, WA
		Ivanhoe, VIC
		Dundas, NSW
		Canberra, ACT
21 infantry battalions (including 15 Army Reserve)		Townsville, QLD (3)
		Wacol, QLD
		Enoggera, QLD (2)
		Kelvin Grove, QLD
		Toowoomba, Qld
		Rockhampton, QLD
		Holsworthy, NSW (2)
		Ingleburn, NSW (2)
		Pymble, NSW
		Lismore, NSW
		Hawthorn, VIC
		Ballarat, VIC
		Adelaide, SA
		Karrakatta, WA
		Victoria Park, WA
		Battery Point, TAS
1 independent rifle company		Canungra, QLD
1 special air service regiment		Swanbourne, WA
1 commando regiment (Army Reserve)		Randwick, NSW
3 regional force surveillance units (Army Reserve)		Cairns, QLD
		Darwin, NT
		Port Hedland, WA
2 aviation regiments	Bell 206B-1	Oakey, QLD
		Townsville, QLD
		Holsworthy, NSW
1 general support squadron (aviation)	Porter Nomad	Oakey, QLD
3 divisional intelligence companies (including 2 Army Reserve)		Enoggera, QLD
		Belmore, NSW
		East Brighton, VIC
		Randwick, NSW
		Richmond, NSW
		Middle Head, NSW
1 transport regiment headquarters		Townsville, QLD (2)
1 air transport support regiment headquarters		Enoggera, QLD
1 terminal regiment headquarters		Kelvin Grove, QLD
14 independent transport squadrons (including 9 Army Reserve)		Holsworthy, NSW
		Padstow, NSW

Formation/Unit		Equipment	Location
			Randwick, NSW
			Adamstown, NSW
			Coburg, VIC
			Puckapunyal VIC
			Bendigo, VIC
			Warradale, SA
			Devonport, TAS
			Helena Valley, WA
2	air dispatch squadrons (including 1 Army Reserve)		Penrith, NSW
2	terminal squadrons (including 1 Army Reserve)		Newington, NSW
1	water transport squadron		Mosman, NSW
1	general hospital (Army Reserve)		Woolwich, NSW
2	field hospitals (including 1 Army Reserve)		Millers Point, NSW
			Fortitude Valley, QLD
			Ingleburn, NSW
8	field ambulances (including 6 Army Reserve and 1 integrated)		Townsville, QLD (2)
			Enoggera, QLD
			Willoughby, NSW
			Ripponlea, VIC
			Warradale, VIC
			Fremantle, WA
			Glenorchy, TAS
6	field dental units		Townsville, QLD (2)
			Enoggera, QLD (2)
			Holsworthy, NSW (2)
1	field supply battalion		Townsville, QLD
3	independent field supply companies		Townsville, QLD
			Enoggera, QLD
			Holsworthy, NSW
11	field workshops (including 8 Army Reserve)		Townsville, QLD (2)
			Coopers Plains, QLD
			Ingleburn, NSW
			Bulimba, QLD
			Homebush, NSW
			Adamstown, NSW
			East St Kilda, VIC (2)
			Warradale, SA
			Fremantle, WA

Logistic Command and Military Districts

	<i>Formation/Unit</i>	<i>Location</i>
10	Logistic Command Headquarters movement and transport units	Melbourne, VIC Ashgrove, QLD Canungra, QLD Townsville, QLD Liverpool, NSW Singleton, NSW Albury, NSW South Melbourne, VIC Puckapunyal, VIC Adelaide, SA Perth, WA
5	movement control units (Army Reserve)	Hobart, TAS Ashgrove, QLD South Melbourne, VIC Unley, SA
6	supply battalions	Fremantle, WA Meeandah, QLD Moorebank, NSW Bandiana, VIC Broadmeadows, VIC Kewick, SA Karrakatta, WA Wallangarra, QLD Ashgrove, QLD Bogan Gate, NSW Myambat, NSW Marrangaroo, NSW Randwick, NSW Puckapunyal, VIC Glenorchy, TAS Bulimba, QLD Oakey, QLD Moorebank, NSW Broadmeadows, VIC Bandiana, VIC
8	supply companies	Townsville, QLD Mascot, NSW Woolwich, NSW South Melbourne, VIC Puckapunyal, VIC Adelaide, SA Midland, WA Brisbane, QLD Paddington, NSW Melbourne, VIC Kewick, SA Perth, WA Hobart, TAS Darwin, NT All States
5	base workshop battalions	
7	workshop companies	
7	military district headquarters	
70	military district units	

Training Command

	<i>Formation/Unit</i>	<i>Location</i>
	Training Command Headquarters	Georges Heights, NSW
	Royal Military College	Duntroon, ACT
	Command and Staff College	Queenscliff, VIC
	Land Warfare Centre	Canungra, QLD
	Recruit Training Battalion	Kapooka, NSW
	Army Apprentices School	Bandiana, VIC

Formation/Unit	Location
Parachute Training School	Nowra, NSW
Armoured Centre	Puckapunyal, VIC
School of Artillery	Manly, NSW
School of Military Engineering	Moorebank, NSW
School of Military Survey	Bandiana, VIC
School of Signals	Macleod, VIC
Infantry Centre	Singleton, NSW
School of Army Aviation	Oakey, QLD
School of Military Intelligence	Canungra, QLD
Army School of Transport	Puckapunyal, VIC
Army Maritime School	Chowder Bay, NSW
School of Army Health	Portsea, VIC
Royal Australian Army Ordnance Corps Centre	Bandiana, VIC
Royal Australian Electrical and Mechanical	
Engineers Training Centre	Bandiana, VIC
Army School of Catering	Puckapunyal, VIC
Military Police School	Ingleburn, NSW
Defence Force School of Music	Macleod, VIC
7 individual training groups	Townsville, QLD
(Army Reserve)	Wacol, QLD
	Ingleburn, NSW
	Melbourne, VIC
	Greenacres, SA
	Karrakatta, WA
	Brighton, TAS
9 tertiary institution training units	Townsville, QLD
(Army Reserve)	Gatton, QLD
	Darlington, NSW
	Kensington, NSW
	Carlton, VIC
	Geelong, VIC
	Adelaide, SA
	Perth, WA

Support Command

Units	Aircraft	Location
3	Headquarters Support Command flying schools	Melbourne, VIC Point Cook, VIC Pearce, WA East Sale, VIC
1	air navigation school	CT-4A Airtrainer Macchi MB.326H CT-4A airtrainer Macchi MB.326H Pilatus PC-9 HS-748 East Sale, VIC
1	aircraft research and development	Mirage 1110/D Macchi MB.326H CT-4A Airtrainer Pilatus PC-9 UH-1H Iroquois C-47 Dakota Edinburgh, SA
1	search and rescue flight	Caribou AS350B Squirrel Pearce, WA
1	basic staff college	Point Cook, VIC
1	advanced staff college	Fairbairn, ACT
1	air traffic control school	East Sale, VIC
1	airman aircrew training school	Edinburgh, SA
1	recruit training unit	Edinburgh, SA
1	photographic school	East Sale, VIC
1	photographic support unit	Laverton, VIC
3	technical and trade schools	Wagga Wagga, NSW
1	technical school	Laverton, VIC
1	security and fire school	Amberley, QLD
1	language school	Point Cook, VIC
1	maintenance unit	East Sale, VIC
3	aircraft depots	Amberley, QLD Richmond, NSW Laverton, VIC
3	stores depots	Toowoomba, QLD Regents Park, NSW Tottenham, VIC Kingswood, NSW Laverton, VIC Point Cook, VIC Laverton, VIC Pearce, WA Wagga Wagga, NSW Point Cook, VIC Laverton, VIC East Sale, VIC Fairbairn, ACT Melbourne, VIC Hobart, TAS
1	ammunition depot	
1	hospital	
1	aviation medicine support unit	
1	publications unit	
6	base squadrons	Fairbairn, ACT Laverton, VIC Pearce, WA Laverton, VIC Point Cook, VIC
2	support units	
3	reserve squadrons	
1	band	
1	museum	

Table 2 Expenditure by major appropriation groups at the program level of program budgeting

<i>Program</i>	<i>Capital equipment \$m</i>	<i>Capital facilities \$m</i>	<i>Personnel \$m</i>	<i>Operating costs \$m</i>	<i>Revenue \$m</i>	<i>Outlay \$m</i>
Defence Force	157.634	—	2389.540	1563.522	—94.502	4016.194
Defence development	1477.007	361.009	17.158	7.585	—15.449	1847.310
Defence Force Retirement Benefit	—	—	557.404	—	—102.280	455.124
Defence support	62.160	121.000	191.619	429.922	—94.424	710.277
Corporate services	36.495	—	177.146	226.075	—25.416	414.300
Total	1733.296	482.009	3332.867	2227.104	—332.071	7443.205

Personnel numbers (a)

<i>Program</i>	<i>Regulars</i>	<i>Reserves</i>	<i>Civilians</i>
Defence Force	69 445	3 101	15 630
Defence development	60	—	547
Defence Force Retirement Benefit	—	—	—
Defence support	47	—	4 479
Corporate services	629	—	5 453
Total personnel numbers	70 181	3101	26 109

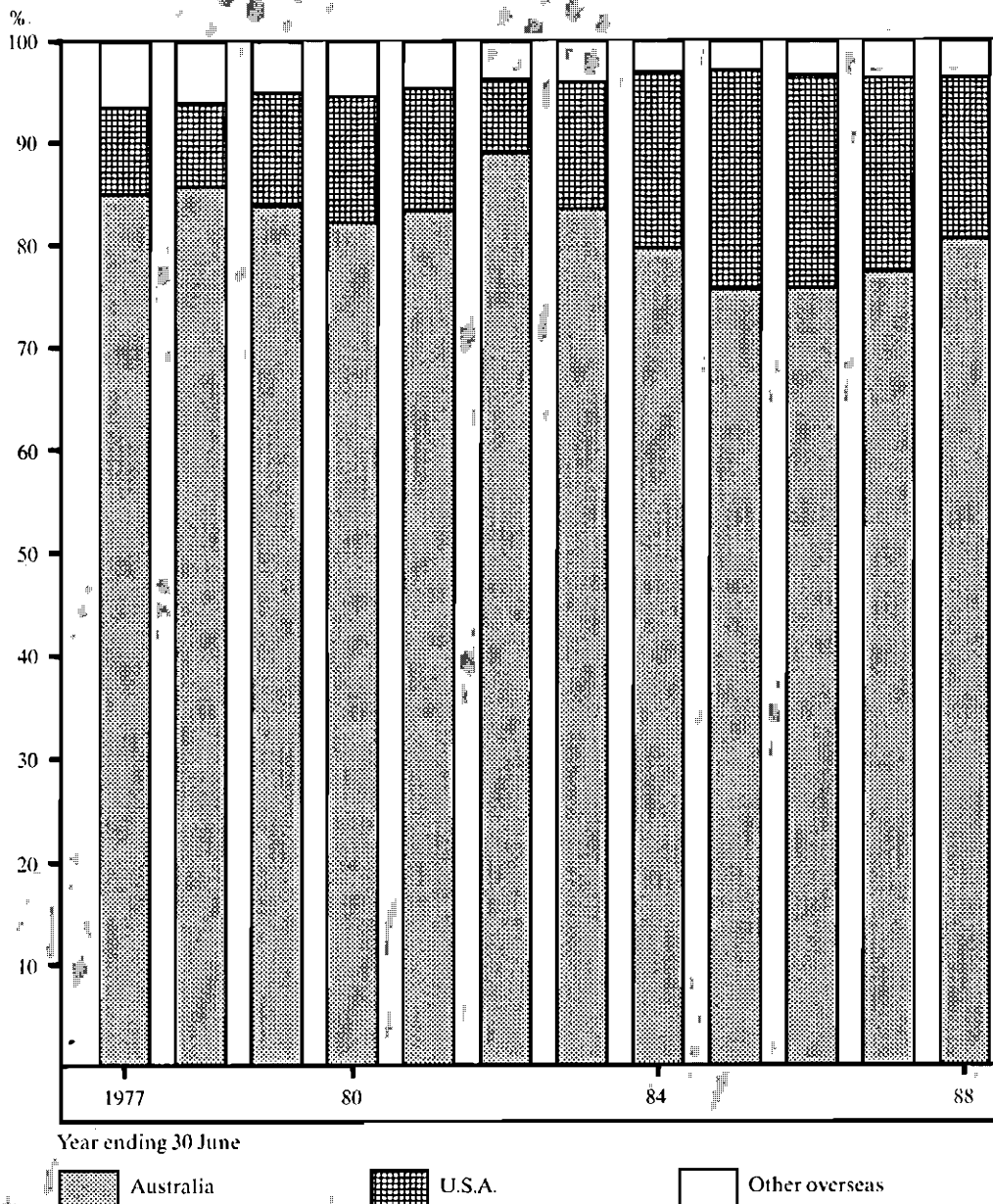
Note: (a) Actual average staff years for the military and average staffing level for civilians.

Table 3 Expenditure on Defence function: 1986–87 and 1987–88

<i>Major categories</i>	<i>1986–87</i>		<i>1987–88</i>			
	<i>Achieved \$m</i>	<i>% of Exp</i>	<i>Budget \$m</i>	<i>% of Exp</i>	<i>Achieved \$m</i>	<i>% of Exp</i>
Capital equipment	2055.252	27.1	1862.581	24.2	1733.296	22.4
Capital facilities	343.711	4.5	338.370	4.4	359.016	4.6
Personnel						
Service	2005.670	26.5	2076.789	26.9	2136.485	27.6
Civilian	601.783	7.9	629.666	8.2	638.288	8.2
DFRDB & special appropriations	483.200	6.4	547.629	7.1	558.094	7.2
Total personnel costs	3090.653	40.8	3254.084	42.2	3332.867	43.0
Defence cooperation	54.609	0.7	58.269	0.8	57.538	0.7
Other operating costs:						
Maintenance stores	689.636	9.1	727.738	9.4	723.655	9.3
Equipment repair	259.844	3.4	272.018	3.5	267.042	3.4
Building repair	149.822	2.0	168.704	2.2	167.785	2.2
Administrative expenses and other services	779.533	10.3	836.705	10.9	874.638	11.3
Rent	22.433	0.3	30.624	0.4	27.842	0.4
Total other operating costs	1901.268	25.1	2035.789	26.4	2060.962	26.6
Defence housing	132.510	1.7	157.277	2.0	210.552	2.7
Expenditure	7578.003	100.0	7706.370	100.0	7754.231	100.0
Revenue	—342.615		—352.291		—339.890	
Trust accounts	—27.494		24.903		7.818	
Prospective wage and salary increases			25.000			
Defence function outlay	7207.894		7403.982		7422.159	
Defence appropriations attributable to other functions:						
Cultural & recreation function	0.027		2.008		1.895	
Foreign Affairs & overseas aid	0.139					

Chart No 2 shows expenditure (by percentage) on Defence function in Australia, USA and other overseas. Please note that the figures are based on records of where payments are made and not on places of manufacture. Therefore these figures should not be construed as reflecting a record of import values. See Tables 4 and 5 for a more detailed breakdown.

Chart 2: Expenditure (by percentage) on defence function in Australia, U.S.A. and other overseas.



Expenditure (by percentage) on Defence function in Australia, USA and other overseas.

Table 4 Expenditure in Australia on Defence function

Major categories	1986-87		1987-88			
	Achieved \$m	%	Budget \$m	%	Achieved \$m	%
Capital equipment	712.238	34.67	722.388	38.78	933.410	53.85
Capital facilities	343.261	99.87	337.475	99.74	358.297	99.80
Personnel						
Service	1 945.806	97.02	2 010.943	96.83	2 084.017	97.54
Civilian	587.744	97.67	607.562	96.49	622.630	97.55
DFRDB & special appropriations	480.995	99.54	547.629	100.00	555.757	99.58
Total personnel costs	3 014.545	97.54	3 166.134	97.30	3 262.404	97.89
Defence cooperation	46.063	84.35	51.463	88.32	50.547	87.85
Other operating costs						
Maintenance stores	505.846	73.35	539.967	74.20	542.295	74.94
Equipment repair	244.970	94.28	249.324	91.66	244.588	91.59
Building repair	147.809	98.66	166.225	98.53	166.353	99.15
Administrative expenses and other services	686.241	83.03	779.598	93.17	823.694	94.18
Rent	16.835	75.05	22.946	74.93	20.898	75.06
Total other operating costs	1 601.701	84.24	1 758.060	86.36	1 797.828	87.23
Defence housing	132.510	100.00	157.277	100.00	210.552	100.00
Expenditure on Defence in Australia	5 850.318	77.20	6 192.797	80.36	6 613.038	85.28

Table 5. Expenditure overseas on Defence function

Major categories	1986-87		1987-88			
	Achieved \$m	%	Budget \$m	%	Achieved \$m	%
Capital equipment	1 343.014	65.35	1 140.193	61.22	799.886	46.15
Capital facilities	0.450	0.13	0.895	0.26	0.719	0.20
Personnel						
Service	59.864	2.98	65.846	3.17	52.468	2.46
Civilian	14.039	2.33	22.104	3.51	15.658	2.45
DFRDB & special appropriations	2.205	0.46	—	—	2.337	0.42
Total personnel costs	76.108	2.46	87.950	2.70	70.463	2.11
Defence cooperation	8.546	15.65	6.806	11.68	6.991	12.15
Other operating costs						
Maintenance stores	183.790	26.65	187.771	25.80	181.360	25.06
Equipment repair	14.874	5.72	22.694	8.34	22.454	8.41
Building repair	2.013	1.34	2.479	1.47	1.432	0.85
Administrative expenses and other services	93.292	11.97	57.107	6.83	50.944	5.82
Rent	5.598	24.95	7.678	25.07	6.944	24.94
Total other operating costs	299.567	15.76	277.729	13.64	263.134	12.77
Defence housing	—	—	—	—	—	—
Expenditure on Defence overseas	1 727.685	22.80	1 513.573	19.64	1 141.193	14.72

Table 6 Defence function revenue 1986-87 and 1987-88

<i>Sources</i>	<i>1986-87 Receipts \$m</i>	<i>1987-88 Budget \$m</i>	<i>1987-88 Receipts \$m</i>
Department of Defence			
Rental of accommodation	48.759	52.567	51.641
Rations and quarters	33.995	35.756	38.450
Defence science and technology	2.208	2.243	2.960
Office of Defence Production	53.496	47.477	46.231
Defence Cooperation	20.994	22.645	24.696
Repayment former year's expenditure	17.842	20.104	18.623
Recoverable expenditure other governments	16.981	32.633	17.956
Other	26.082	21.963	15.583
Total Department of Defence	220.357	235.388	216.140
Department of Administrative Services			
Disposal sales	23.299	16.301	20.110
Recoveries for loss and damage on furniture removals	0.919	—	—
Total Department of Administrative Services	24.218	16.301	20.110
Other revenue			
Commonwealth-State housing agreements	1.289	1.360	1.360
Members contributions—DFRDB	96.751	99.242	102.280
Total revenue Defence function	342.615	352.291	339.890
Trust accounts			
Net trust account movements—Office of Defence Production	27.365	—24.903	—7.712
Net trust account movements—other, Department of Defence	0.129	—	—0.169
Total movements in trust accounts	27.494	—24.903	—7.881
Total revenue and movements in trust accounts	370.109	327.388	332.009

Table 7 Major items of investment expenditure in 1987-88

<i>Projects</i>	<i>Expenditure 1987-88 \$m</i>
F/A-18 project and associated equipment	362.9
Six submarines	260.1
Construction of 2 FFG frigates	127.8
Black Hawk helicopters	94.8
Seahawk helicopters	84.5
Basic trainer aircraft	66.4
Tindal Air Base	53.4
Various precision guided weapons	46.6
DDG modernisation	37.2
HF and VHF single channel radios	36.8
Army light field vehicles	26.3
Army medium trucks	26.2
Acquisition of 4 FFG frigates	25.9
Project Nulka	19.2
Air-to-air refuelling aircraft	18.3
Discon	15.0
105mm Army field gun	13.6
Additional B707 aircraft	13.1
Airfield surveillance radars	12.3
Seahawk flight simulator/weapons system trainer	12.2
Townsville helicopter facilities	11.9
Swanbourne training facilities	10.8

Table 8 Total project cost for major new projects or project phases approved in 1987-88

<i>Projects</i>	<i>Total approved cost \$m</i>
Relocation of Mulwala Explosives Factory	62.3
Upgrading Army living-in accommodation	57.6
Communications facilities	46.0
Laser airborne depth sounder	39.8
Towed array full scale engineering development (Kariwara)	31.3
Maritime command support system	30.0
Additional B707 aircraft	25.0
Standard surface-to-air missiles	24.7
Marine pollution control	18.5
Tier 2 frigates (ANZAC Ship)	17.4
Initial minesweeping capability	16.0
Integrated Weapons Workshop—Garden Island	14.6
Helicopter Support facilities—Nowra	13.5
Development for over-the-horizon radar network	11.0
East Sale RAAF Base development	10.3
Naval communication station relocation	5.3
Avionics test equipment for F-111	4.7
Harpoon anti-ship telemetry missiles	4.4
Satellite navigation equipment	3.1
Supply systems redevelopment	2.7
Manpower systems redevelopment	2.2
Mine warfare systems centre	2.1
DDG modernisation (Chaff decoy system acquisition)	1.9
Nomad aircraft for the Army and the Air Force	1.6
F-111 high speed anti-radiation missile (Harm) trials	1.6
Towed acoustic arrays	0.9

Defence production establishments operations

The following four tables all relate to Defence production establishments.

Establishments which have not yet finalised and/or had audited financial statements required by Section 41d of the Audit Act are listed below. Such statements will be tabled by the Minister:

Ammunition Factory—Footscray Vic, Australian Government Clothing Factory—Coburg Vic, Explosives Factory—Maribyrnong Vic, Explosives Factory—Mulwala NSW, Garden Island Dockyard—Sydney NSW, Munitions Filling Factory—St Marys NSW, Ordnance Factory—Bendigo Vic, Ordnance Factory—Maribyrnong Vic, and Small Arms Factory—Lithgow NSW.

Table 9 Production establishments revenue and costs 1987-88

	Ammunition Factory Footscray	Explosives Factory Maribyrnong	Mulwala Explosives Factory	Munitions Filling Factory	Ordnance Factory Bendigo	Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong	Small Arms Factory	Australian Government Clothing Factory	Guided Weapons and Electronic Support Facility	Total
	\$m (a)									
Sales										
Australia	49.514	9.423	9.827	55.269	27.574	30.444	29.257	21.685	0.615	233.608
Overseas	0.105	0.358	0.000	0.835	9.029	2.778	0.005	0.475	0.000	13.585
Total sales	49.619	9.781	9.827	56.104	36.603	33.222	29.262	22.160	0.615	247.193
Final product										
Ordnance small arms					35.997	31.290	26.994			94.281
Explosives	47.858	7.148	8.509							63.515
Munitions filling				54.613						54.613
Clothing								21.862		21.862
Experimental & development	1.240	0.795	0.998	0.510	0.113	0.506	0.423	0.272		4.857
Other work	0.521	1.838	0.320	0.981	0.493	1.426	1.845	0.026	0.615	8.065
Total final product	49.619	9.781	9.827	56.104	36.603	33.222	29.262	22.160	0.615	247.193
Customer										
Defence	46.145	2.108	0.000	50.402	21.439	7.012	14.710	19.757	0.615	162.188
Commercial/other	3.474	7.673	9.827	5.702	15.164	26.210	14.552	2.403	0.000	85.005
Total customer	49.619	9.781	9.827	56.104	36.603	33.222	29.262	22.160	0.615	247.193
Operating results										
Revenue	49.619	9.781	9.827	56.104	36.603	33.222	29.262	22.160	0.615	247.193
Costs	51.203	13.349	13.708	58.965	39.486	35.434	33.076	22.160	2.161	269.542
Unrecovered costs (b)	1.584	3.568	3.881	2.861	2.883	2.212	3.814	0.000	1.546	22.349

Notes: (a) Data provided is provisional pending certification of the Australian Audit Office.

(b) Unrecovered costs not included—

\$0.788m—Relocation costs of Albion Explosives Factory

\$0.149m—Production development facility at Salisbury

\$0.118m—Explosives store at Point Wilson.

Table 10 Garden Island Dockyard (a)

	1987-88 \$m (b)
Direct costs	
Labour	27.617
Material	5.051
Contract services	31.000
Overhead costs	
Production	40.657
Administrative and general	9.875
General	29.945
Total costs	144.145
Value of work during the year for Department of Defence	
Ship construction	0.681
Ship repair and refit	124.181
Other work	
Stores	7.640
Submarines	4.866
Branch & establishments	6.189
Royal Australian Navy Research Laboratory	0.162
Commercial Work	0.426
Total value	144.145

Notes: (a) Pricing and costing procedures are different for the production establishments in Table 9, the Government Aircraft Factories, Williamstown Dockyard and Garden Island Dockyard. Care must therefore be taken in making comparisons between the various establishments.

(b) Data provided is provisional pending certification of The Australian Audit Office.

Table 11 Government Aircraft Factories (a)

	1987-88 \$m (b)(c)
Sales	
Australia	4.177
Overseas	16.780
Total sales	20.957
Customer	
Defence	2.727
Commercial	18.230
Operating results	
Revenue	20.957
Cost of operations	22.094
Unrecovered costs	1.137

Notes: (a) As per Table 10, note (a).

(b) Data provided is provisional pending certification of the Australian Audit Office.

(c) Represents only four months trading in 1987-88 due to the transfer of the factory to a Government-owned company known as Aerospace Technology of Australia Pty Ltd (ASTA) on 8 October 1987.

Table 12 Williamstown Dockyard (a)

	1987-88 \$m (b)(c)
Direct costs	
Labour	5.947
Material	9.118
Contract services	0.994
Overhead costs	25.882
Total costs	41.941
Value of work during the year for Department of Defence Ship construction	
Ship construction	27.193
Ship repair and refit	1.081
Other	0.587
Total Department of Defence	28.861
Other work	
Commercial	
Commercial work	0.158
Strategic defence capacity	0.478
Technical authority role	0.083
Other	0.303
Total value of work	29.883
Operating results	
Revenue	29.883
Cost of operations	41.941
Unrecovered costs	12.058

Notes: (a) As per Table 10, note (a).

(b) Data supplied is provisional pending completion of financial statements and certification by the Australian Audit Office.

(c) Represents only 7 months trading in 1987-88 due to the sale of the factory to the Australian Marine Engineering Corporation in early February 1988.

Table 13 Contracts let during 1987-88 by the Defence Contracting Organisation

<i>Office</i>	<i>Contracts for major projects</i>	<i>Value \$m</i>	<i>Contracts for minor projects</i>	<i>Value \$m</i>
Navy	16	497.183	649	383.399
Army	15	15.100	836	145.032
Air Force	3	58.000	734	124.139
Defence Central	10	44.048	233	118.467
ODP			367	111.054
Other			59	353.568
Total	44	614.331	2 878	1 235.662

Table 14—Trust accounts for other than ODP

<i>Account</i>	<i>Balance 1 July 1987</i>	<i>Receipts</i>	<i>Expenditure</i>	<i>Balance 30 June 1988</i>
	\$	\$	\$	\$
Endowments (a)	6 191	677	1 144	5 724
Defence Support Centre Woomera	2 203 882	13 257 892	13 426 548	2 035 226
Other Governments and international bodies	8 783 634	15 382 627	13 790 591	10 375 670
DSTO commercial activities	nil	63 211	nil	63 211
Young Endeavour youth program	nil	161 933	114 185	47 748
Defence services for non-departmental bodies	nil	1 281 000	810 196	470 804
Other trust monies	447 256	3 174 329	3 090 499	531 086
Total	11 440 963	33 321 669	31 233 163	13 529 469

Note: (a) Monies received and held as the basis of Defence prizes and awards. \$4 400 held in Government inscribed stock; the balance is held in cash.

Other financial statistics

- A total 1 180 455 claims were processed in 1987-88 with a value of \$5382.788m. Comparable figures for 1986-87 were 1 203 013 and \$4626.079m. Unpaid claims to a value of \$100.015m were held in the Department at 30 June 1988 (a comparable figure for 1986-87 is not available).
- A total of 8146 sundry debtors owed \$73.785m to Defence at 30 June 1988. Of that amount, \$59.219m was owed to ODP establishments (equivalent to 5.6% of 1987-88 ODP turnover). The majority of the \$59.219m represented claims by the ODP establishments on other elements of Defence. The balance of \$14.565m compares with \$10.677m in 1986-87; the increase is attributable largely to an increase in expenditure recoverable from other governments.
- The total number of advances made in 1987-88 was 77 663 of which 7592 were current at 30 June 1988. Comparable figures for 1986-77 were 152 419 and 19 242. The sharp decrease results from the changed Government policy on advances for travel within Australia.

Free services provided to Defence by other agencies

Department of Administrative Services

- services in support of capital works;
- design documentation;
- tendering services;
- management of leases, acquisitions and disposals of buildings;
- provision of a 'costing of removals' service to determine the validity of claims by Service personnel for reimbursement of privately arranged furniture removals;
- the Survey and Land Information Group provided free services until 1 January 1988 but commenced full costing from then. Half year charges are \$1.703m; and
- management by Australian Construction Services of Defence repairs and maintenance program.

Department of the Arts, Sport, the Environment, Tourism and Territories

- the placing of ODP advertisements; and
- rates for Anzac Park West.

Attorney-General's Department

- AGS manpower costs related to common law actions against Defence for personal injury and property damage;
- legal advice to ODP and DSTO; and
- services of an AGS solicitor to Industry Policy and Operations (IPO) Division.

Department of Employment, Education and Training

- provision of a recruiting service for ODP;
- occasional use of country CES Offices by service and recruiting offices; and
- occasional use of CES radio 'job spots' and advertisements in country newspapers.

Department of Finance

- a payroll and cheque paying service and ledger system to the Department;
- Department of Finance overseas salary (DFOSS) payments;
- payroll service to ODP Central office and Garden Island Dockyard at an estimated cost in 1987-88 of \$41 500;
- training courses for Defence personnel; and
- provision to IPO Division of an ASO 8 full time for 4 months as a consultant in corporate planning.

Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade

- provision of common support services to Defence personnel in overseas missions;
- ad hoc marketing assistance from Austrade overseas offices for ODP products and capabilities;
- waiver of passport charges on Services personnel leaving country; and
- issuance of passports/visas for 10 Defence personnel and dependents.

Department of Community Services and Health

- checks on RAAF aircraft transiting to and from overseas; and
- inoculation of 10 Defence personnel and dependents.

Department of Immigration, Local Government and Ethnic Affairs

- checks on RAAF aircraft transiting to and from overseas.

Department of Industrial Relations

- advice on industrial relations issues in ODP; and
- provision to Defence of instructions on management methods.

Australian Customs Service

- waiver of entry/departure tax to Service personnel; and
- customs checks on RAAF aircraft transiting to and from overseas. (The Government have recently advised the introduction of a charge to Defence for this service).

Department of Primary Industries and Energy

- energy management advice to ODP establishments (\$10 000).

Australian Audit Office

- auditing of financial statements in ODP establishments (\$851 000); and
- audits on other departmental activities.

Australian Bicentennial Authority

- payment under Remuneration Tribunal determination of fees to the Board of Management for STS Young Endeavour; and
- Commonwealth's Insurance Consultancy Service advice on insurance for STS Young Endeavour and the persons who board it.

Office of National Assessments

- intelligence assessments.

Department of Transport and Communication

- waiver of charges on use by RAAF aircraft of civil airports or route navigation facilities; and
- waiver of RAAF contribution to running costs of Transport Department's airfields at Rockhampton and Alice Springs.

Department of Treasury

- exemption from sales tax and FID and BAD taxes on bank accounts.

(Note: Figures in brackets represent estimated values of the services provided in 1987-88.)

Appendix 3— Personnel statistics

Table 1 Distribution of service personnel and civilian staff
Average strength 1987–88

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>RAAF</i>	<i>ADF</i>	<i>Civilian</i>	<i>Total</i>
Current Forces						
ADF command	328	551	434	1 313	229	1 542
Navy	15 100			15 180	5 087	20 187
Navy reserves(a)	154			154		154
Army		31 212		31 212	6 924	38 136
Army reserves(a)		2 728		2 728		2 728
Air force			21 820	21 820	3 390	25 210
Air force reserves(a)			219	219		219
Total	15 582	34 491	22 473	72 546	15 630	88 176
Defence development						
Procurement of capital equipment	5	16	37	58	290	348
Australian industry involvement					102	102
Procurement of capital facilities		2		2	155	157
Total	5	18	37	60	547	607
Defence force retirement and death benefits						
DFRDB						
Total						
Defence specialist support						
Defence science and technology	9	15	14	38	4 253	4 291
Office of defence production					9 850	9 850
Defence cooperation					2	2
Defence housing		3		3	22	25
Natural disasters and civil defence	1	5	—	6	62	68
Total	10	23	14	47	14 189	14 236
Corporate Services						
Executive					6	6
Strategic planning	73	87	73	233	1 024	1 257
Logistics	7	35	21	63	816	879
Personnel, management improvement and financial services	119	53	161	333	3 606	3 939
Total	199	175	255	629	5 452	6 081
Grand Total	15 796	34 707	22 779	73 282	35 818	109 100

Note: (a) The figure for reserves shows the average number of reserves for the year. For budget purposes an average number of staff years is calculated from the number of training days used.

(b) Civilian figures include paid inoperative staff, part-time staff and casual labour.

Table 2 Distribution of permanent service personnel and civilian staff by location of permanent employment as at 30 June 1988

	<i>NSW</i>	<i>Vic</i>	<i>Qld</i>	<i>SA</i>	<i>WA</i>	<i>Tas</i>	<i>NT</i>	<i>ACT</i>	<i>O/s (a)</i>	<i>Total</i>
Navy (b)	8 938	1 914	460	51	1 556	32	536	1 953	280	15 720
Army (b)	8 926	7 369	10 285	1 030	1 297	221	142	3 019	99	32 388
Air Force	7 376	4 692	3 490	2 108	1 076	18	1 128	2 210	408	22 506
Civilians	10 428	11 790	1 782	3 407	505	145	261	5 454	123	33 895
Total	35 668	25 765	16 017	6 596	4 434	416	2 067	12 636	910	104 509

Notes: (a) Personnel posted overseas for long term duty. Personnel on short term duty overseas are shown in the State column of the organisation in which they are permanently employed.

(b) Personnel serving in ships are shown in the column for the State in which the ship is base ported.

(c) Civilian staff include long and short term temporary staff.

(d) Civilian staff include (453) paid inoperative staff and (361) part-time staff but excludes (426) locally engaged civilians overseas.

Table 3 Australian Defence Force—Trained force/training force target and achieved average strengths 1987–88

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>ADF</i>
Trained force	14 017	28 687	20 397	63 101
Target Achieved	13 842	28 883	20 476	63 201
Training force	1 655	3 228	2 223	7 106
Target Achieved	1 805	3 088	2 078	6 971

(a) These figures have been calculated on a monthly basis whereas those in Table 1 were calculated from the fortnightly pay systems. This difference in the bases of calculation causes minor differences in the calculated averages. For this year the average ADF strength calculated on a monthly basis is 70 172 whereas calculated on a fortnightly basis the figure is 70 181.

Table 4 Australian Defence Force—Permanent service personnel (a) by sex as at 30 June 1984 to 1988

	<i>Navy</i>		<i>Army</i>		<i>Air Force</i>		<i>Total</i>	
	<i>Number</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>	<i>% of Number Total</i>
1984								
Men	15 693	21.9	30 315	42.3	20 961	29.3	66 969	93.5
Women	999	1.4	1 963	2.7	1 711	2.4	4 673	6.5
Total	16 692	23.3	32 278	45.1	22 672	31.6	71 642	100.0
1985								
Men	14 974	21.0	30 462	42.7	20 985	29.4	66 421	93.1
Women	1 085	1.5	1 998	2.8	1 878	2.6	4 961	6.9
Total	16 059	22.5	32 460	45.5	22 863	32.0	71 382	100.0
1986								
Men	14 311	20.4	29 698	42.4	20 484	29.2	64 493	92.1
Women	1 227	1.8	2 136	3.0	2 193	3.1	5 556	7.9
Total	15 538	22.2	31 834	45.4	22 677	32.4	70 049	100.0
1987								
Men	14 345	20.3	30 016	42.4	20 161	28.5	64 522	91.2
Women	1 458	2.1	2 295	3.2	2 486	3.5	6 239	8.8
Total	15 803	22.3	32 311	45.7	22 647	32.0	70 761	100.0
1988								
Men	14 090	20.0	29 868	42.3	19 796	28.0	63 754	90.3
Women	1 638	2.3	2 474	3.5	2 716	3.8	6 828	9.7
Total	15 728	22.3	32 342	45.8	22 512	31.9	70 582	100.0

Note: (a) Includes Reserve personnel on full-time duty but excludes non-effective personnel who have been taken off strength.

Table 5 Australian Defence Force—Permanent service personnel by employment category and sex as at 30 June 1984 to 1988

	Navy				Army				Air Force				ADF			
	Men	%	Women	%	Men	%	Women	%	Men	%	Women	%	Men	%	Women	%
1984																
Officers	2 117	12.7	127	0.8	4 197	13.0	335	1.0	3 384	14.9	225	1.0	9 698	13.5	687	1.0
Other Ranks	12 603	75.5	844	5.1	25 006	77.5	1 586	4.9	16 539	72.9	1 446	6.4	54 148	75.6	3 876	5.4
Apprentices	645	3.9	7	0.0	603	1.9	6	0.0	569	2.5	-	0.0	1 817	2.5	13	0.0
Cadets	328	2.0	21	0.1	509	1.5	36	0.1	469	2.1	40	0.2	1 306	1.8	97	0.1
Total	15 693	94.0	999	6.0	30 315	93.9	1 963	6.1	20 961	92.5	1 711	7.5	66 969	93.5	4 673	6.5
1985																
Officers	2 074	12.9	129	0.8	4 203	12.9	357	1.1	3 399	14.9	264	1.2	9 676	13.6	750	1.1
Other Ranks	12 037	75.0	930	5.8	25 292	77.9	1 612	5.0	16 597	72.6	1 562	6.8	54 186	76.0	4 104	5.7
Apprentices	542	3.4	9	0.1	547	1.7	11	0.0	513	2.2	2	0.0	1 602	2.2	22	0.0
Cadets	321	2.0	17	0.1	420	1.3	18	0.1	476	2.1	50	0.2	1 217	1.6	85	0.1
Total	14 974	93.3	1 085	6.8	30 462	93.8	1 998	6.2	20 985	91.8	1 878	8.2	66 421	93.1	4 961	6.9
1986																
Officers	2 091	13.5	134	0.9	4 018	12.6	343	1.1	3 356	14.8	283	1.3	9 465	13.5	760	1.1
Other Ranks	11 482	73.8	1 039	6.7	24 605	77.3	1 741	5.5	16 320	72.0	1 861	8.2	52 407	74.8	4 641	6.6
Apprentices	353	2.3	16	0.1	498	1.6	13	0.0	395	1.7	4	0.0	1 246	1.8	33	0.0
Cadets	385	2.5	38	0.2	577	1.8	39	0.1	413	1.8	45	0.2	1 375	2.0	122	0.2
Total	14 311	92.1	1 227	7.9	29 698	93.9	2 136	6.7	20 484	90.3	2 193	9.7	64 493	92.1	5 556	7.9
1987																
Officers	2 120	13.4	147	0.9	4 056	12.6	365	1.1	3 325	14.7	306	1.4	9 501	13.4	818	1.2
Other Ranks	11 410	72.2	1 226	7.8	25 008	77.4	1 870	5.8	16 035	70.8	2 101	9.3	52 453	74.1	5 197	7.3
Apprentices	425	2.7	22	0.1	435	1.3	12	0.0	388	1.7	9	0.0	1 248	1.8	43	0.1
Cadets	390	2.5	63	0.4	517	1.6	48	0.2	413	1.8	70	0.3	1 320	1.9	181	0.3
Total	14 345	90.8	1 458	9.2	30 016	92.9	2 295	7.1	20 161	89.0	2 486	11.0	64 522	91.2	6 239	8.8
1988																
Officers	2 128	13.5	166	1.1	4 118	12.7	368	1.1	3 185	14.1	322	1.4	9 431	13.4	856	1.2
Other Ranks	11 171	71.1	1 354	8.6	24 771	76.5	2 015	6.2	15 805	70.2	2 303	10.2	51 747	73.3	5 672	8.0
Apprentices	365	2.3	22	0.1	433	1.3	18	0.1	376	1.7	10	0.1	1 174	1.7	50	0.1
Cadets	426	2.7	96	0.6	546	1.7	73	0.2	430	1.9	81	0.4	1 402	1.9	250	0.4
Total	14 090	89.6	1 638	10.4	29 868	92.4	2 474	7.4	19 796	87.9	2 716	12.1	63 754	90.3	6 828	9.7

Table 6 Australian Defence Force—Separations 1983–84 to 1987–88

	<i>Cadets Trainees (a)</i>	<i>Involuntary Temporary</i>	<i>Reserves on full-time duty (b)</i>	<i>Pension Eligible</i>	<i>Pension Ineligible</i>	<i>Totals</i>
1983–84						
Navy	175	353	27	450	697	1702
Army	297	801	10	615	1612	3335
RAAF	247	304	37	527	579	1694
ADF	719	1458	74	1592	2888	6731
1984–85						
Navy	197	430	30	462	946	2065
Army	242	1561	10	513	1444	3770
RAAF	266	324	51	571	662	1874
ADF	705	2315	91	1546	3052	7709
1985–86						
Navy	147	445	25	451	901	1969
Army	702	877	31	516	2348	4474
RAAF	167	158	12	789	1045	2171
ADF	1016	1480	68	1756	4294	8614
1986–87						
Navy	211	426	71	411	818	1937
Army	904	934	54	553	2214	4659
RAAF	141	287	21	774	1100	2323
ADF	1256	1647	146	1738	4132	8919
1987–88						
Navy	381	472	59	409	863	2121
Army	919	1405	87	350	1920	4681
RAAF	244	416	21	788	1056	2525
ADF	1481	2293	167	1547	3839	9327

Notes: (a) Separations for all reasons by personnel undergoing initial training.

(b) Officers only; other rank reservist full-time duty separations included in involuntary/temporary for all years except 1987–88. For this year all reserve separations appear in this column.

**Table 7 Australian Defence Force—Enlistments and other gains
1983-84 to 1987-88**

	Navy		Army		Air Force		ADF	
	Men	Women	Men	Women	Men	Women	Men	Women
1983-84								
Officers	40	11	49	24	69	103	158	138
Other Ranks	686	40	1 624	278	787	315	3 097	633
Apprentices	176	7	256	6	234	—	666	13
Cadets	105	7	241	28	199	21	545	56
Total	1 007	65	2 170	336	1 289	439	4 466	840
1984-85								
Officers	31	5	85	21	91	72	207	98
Other Ranks	602	225	2 953	336	915	364	4 470	925
Apprentices	144	—	250	9	204	2	598	11
Cadets	113	8	167	13	181	26	461	47
Total	890	238	3 455	379	1 391	464	5 736	1 081
1985-86								
Officers	57	12	72	16	72	42	210	70
Other Ranks	677	268	2 695	492	827	527	4 199	1 287
Apprentices	179	11	206	5	180	3	565	19
Cadets	102	33	236	38	164	18	502	89
Total	1 015	324	3 209	551	1 243	590	5 467	1 465
1986-87								
Officers	100	28	136	43	103	43	339	114
Other Ranks	1207	352	3 814	573	1 044	503	6 065	1 428
Apprentices	225	13	185	6	218	5	628	24
Cadets	106	33	242	36	227	38	575	107
Total	1 638	426	4 377	658	1 592	589	7 607	1 673
1987-88								
Officers	119	18	204	59	173	19	396	96
Other Ranks	1 110	311	3 086	600	1 187	471	5 383	1 382
Apprentices	170	12	238	10	191	2	599	24
Cadets	153	53	304	53	238	50	695	156
Total	1 552	394	3 832	722	1 689	542	7 073	1 658

Notes: These figures include:
(i) direct entry personnel
(ii) reserves undertaking a period of full-time duty

Table 8 Australian Defence Force—Recruiting activity 1987–88

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>Total</i>
Total inquiries	46 109	76 104	77 256	199 469
Formal applications	6 964	20 462	11 755	39 181
Applicants interviewed	6 724	14 521	9 447	30 692
Applicants enlisted	1 736	4 570	2 177	8 483

Note: Each of the lines in this table contains data which is not necessarily related to data in other lines. For instance, not all of the 6942 applicants interviewed for Navy positions during the year would have been among the 8504 people who made formal applications and some of the 1919 enlistments may have been interviewed in previous years.

Table 9 Geographic distribution of reserve personnel with training obligations at 30 June 1985 to 1988

	<i>NSW</i>	<i>Vic</i>	<i>Qld</i>	<i>SA</i>	<i>WA</i>	<i>Tas</i>	<i>NT</i>	<i>ACT</i>	<i>Total</i>
1985									
Navy	214	252	172	188	158	134	17	(a)	1135
Army	6 964	5 439	5 398	2 233	2 307	1 042	339		23 722
Air Force	440	203	330	197	183	—	—		1353
Total	7 618	5 894	5 900	2 618	2 648	1 176	356		26 210
1986									
Navy	210	218	170	168	163	124	18	47	1 118
Army	6 487	6 487	5 644	2 076	2 361	1 028	290	379	23 145
Air Force	82	213	320	178	155	1	7	82	1 038
Total	6 779	5 311	6 134	2 422	2 679	1 153	315	508	25 301
1987									
Navy	274	252	185	174	182	118	30	4	1219
Army	6 446	5 305	6 317	2 120	2 611	1 074	323	436	24 632
Air Force	353	179	336	194	149	6	13	131	1 361
Total	7 073	5 736	6 838	2 488	2 942	1 198	366	571	27 212
1988									
Navy	313	295	218	203	169	130	40		1 368
Army	7 107	5 213	6 324	2 051	2 468	1 049	368	123	24 703
Air Force	347	175	340	202	142	3	6	126	1 341
Total	7 767	5 683	6 882	2 456	2 779	1 182	414	249	27 412

Notes: (a) Included with NSW.

Table 10 Australian Reserve Force—as at 30 June 1985 to 1988

	Navy		Army		Air Force		Total	
	Number	% of Total	Number	% of Total	Number	% of Total	Number	% of Total
1985								
Men	1 065	4.09	20 366	78.23	958	3.68	22 389	86.00
Women	27	0.10	3 356	12.89	263	1.01	3 646	14.00
Total	1 092	4.19	23 722	91.12	1 221	4.69	2 6035	100.00
1986								
Men	1 050	4.16	19 768	77.87	826	3.27	21 644	85.30
Women	68	0.27	3 377	13.87	269	1.06	3 714	14.70
Total	1 118	4.43	23 145	91.24	1 095	4.33	25 263	100.00
1987								
Men	1 124	4.13	2 0734	76.19	1 083	3.98	2 2941	84.30
Women	95	0.35	3 898	14.32	278	1.02	4271	15.70
Total	1 219	4.48	24 632	90.52	1 361	5.00	27 212	100.00
1988								
Men	1 227	4.48	20 858	76.09	1 080	3.94	23 165	84.51
Women	141	0.51	3 845	14.03	261	0.95	4 247	15.49
Total	1 368	4.99	24 703	90.12	1 341	4.89	27 412	100.00

Table 11 Defence Civilians Target and achieved average strengths 1984-85 to 1987-88 (a) (b) (c)

	Appropriation Funded Staff		Trust Accounts Staff		Total	
	Target	Achieved	Target	Achieved	Target	Achieved
1985-86	25 784	26 264	13 967	14 297	39 751	40 561
1986-87	26 159	26 161	13 010	12 816	39 169	38 977
1987-88	26 324	26 109	9 808	9 708	36 132	35 818

Notes: (a) Trust accounts staff include those paid through Munitions, Aerospace, Shipbuilding and Defence Support trust accounts.
(b) The figures for 1986-87 and subsequent years include paid inoperatives not given in previous years' figures.
(c) part-time staff converted to full time equivalents

Table 12 Distribution of civilian staff by employment category at 30 June 1988 (a) (b) (c)

	Men	Women	Total
Band 3			
Number	154	3	157
Percent	0.05	0.0	0.05
Band 2			
Number	2259	120	2379
Percent	6.8	0.04	7.2
Band 1			
Number	21270	9275	30545
Percent	64.3	28.0	92.3
Total			
Number	23683	9398	33081
Percent	71.6	28.4	100.0

Notes: (a) Staff have been categorised by band since the introduction of human resource budgeting in 1984-85.
The classifications included in the bands are:
Band 3—Senior Executive Service
Band 2—Administrative Service Officers Class 7 and 8 and equivalents
Band 1—All others
(b) Excludes locally engaged civilians
(c) Excludes casual labour.

Table 13 Representation of Equal Employment Opportunity target groups within salary levels—31 March 1988

<i>SALARY</i>		<i>WOMEN</i>	<i>A&TSI</i> (a) (b)	<i>NESB1</i> (b)	<i>NESB2</i> (b)	<i>PWD</i> (b)	<i>Departmental</i> <i>Total</i>
Below \$18 199		1 842	68	678	321	321	7 435
\$18 199 to \$21 083	% 24.8	5 498	1.0	9.1	3.7	4.3	12 759
\$21 084 to \$23 712	% 43.1	796	0.5	64	938	891	4 071
\$23 713 to \$26 367	% 19.5	399	0.1	5	335	317	2 021
\$26 368 to \$34 127	% 26.8	651	0.1	3	84	118	6 056
\$34 128 to \$49 388	% 10.7	122	0.1	6	306	311	2 435
Above \$49 388	% 5.0	5	0.1	2	113	99	189
	% 2.5		0.0	0	0	5	
				0.0	2.6	2.6	

(a) Figures for ODP are not available.

(b) Figures are based on voluntary response to surveys averaging 76% and includes women and men.

Key

ASTI: Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders

NESB1: Non-English Speaking Background, 1st generation

NESB2: Non-English Speaking Background, 2nd generation

PWD: People with Disabilities

Table 14 Representation of Equal Employment Opportunity target groups within ASO/SES structure—31 March 1988

<i>LEVEL</i>		<i>WOMEN</i>	<i>A&TSI</i> (a) (b)	<i>NESB1</i> (b)	<i>NESB2</i> (b)	<i>PWD</i> (b)	<i>Departmental</i> <i>Total</i>
SES		4	0	0	5	4	155
ASO8	% 2.6	20	0.0	0.0	3.2	2.6	292
ASO7	% 5.9	43	0.3	2.4	2.4	4.5	450
ASO6	% 9.6	178	0.0	12	4.0	4.0	916
ASO5	% 39.4	271	0.1	29	38	5.5	823
ASO4	% 32.9	188	0.2	23	39	5.6	489
ASO3	% 38.4	711	0.2	12	21	2.9	1543
ASO2	% 46.1	1966	0.1	49	120	5.0	3061
ASO1	% 54.2	3001	0.5	120	214	4.7	4127
	% 72.7		1.0	203	376	222	
			4.9	9.1	5.4		

(a) Figures for ODP are not available.

(b) Figures are based on voluntary response to surveys averaging 76% and includes women and men.

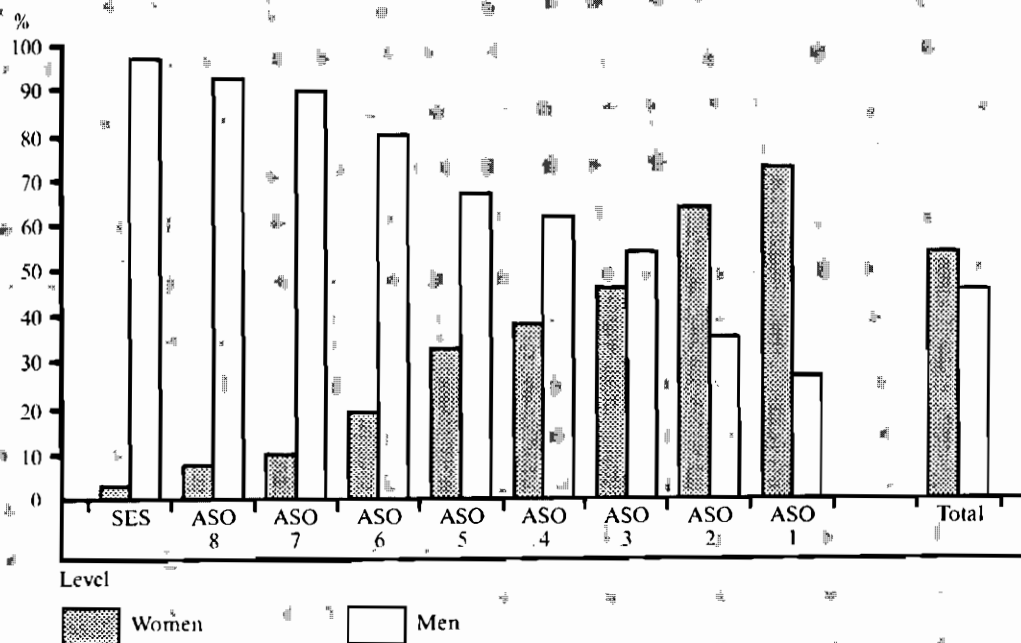
Table 15 Representation of Equal Employment Opportunity target groups within employment act/type—31 March 1988

<i>Employment Act</i>		<i>WOMEN</i>	<i>AS&TSI</i> (a)	<i>NESB1</i> (a)	<i>NESB2</i> (a)	<i>PWD</i> (a)	<i>Depart- mental Total</i>
Public Service Act		6531	100	1 033	1 363	1 304	21 750
Permanent	%	30.0	0.5	4.7	6.3	6.0	
Public Service Act		1603	47	352	183	262	5 999
Temporary	%	26.7	0.8	5.9	3.0	4.4	
Naval, Defence Act/ Supply and Development		1286	25	944	331	485	6 060
Act	%	21.2	0.4	15.6	5.5	8.0	
Special Programs		130	(b)	(b)	(b)	(b)	194
	%	57.0	(b)	(b)	(b)	(b)	

(a) Figures are based on voluntary responses to surveys averaging 76% and includes women and men

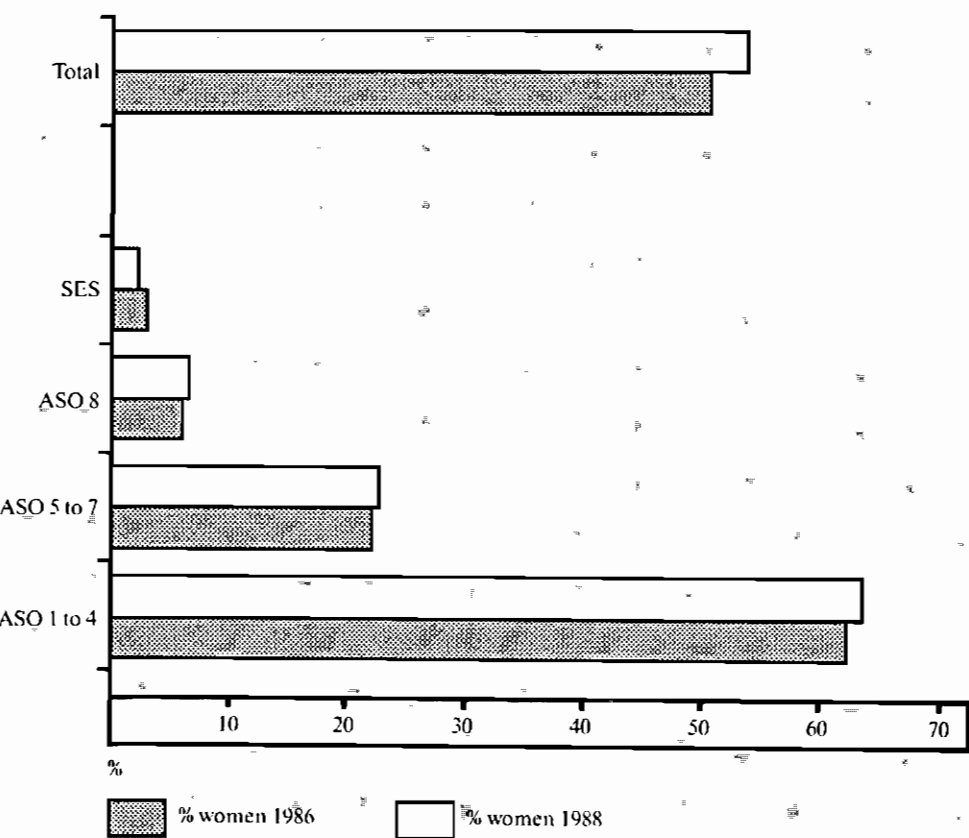
(b) Figures suppressed to preserve confidentiality of surveys

Chart 3 Distribution of women and men within the SES/ASO structure.



Source: SPECS, CASIMP

Chart 4 Distribution of women within the SES/ASO structure—Comparison between 1986 and 1988



Source: SPECS, CASIMP

Appendix 4— Civilian training and staff development

Table 1 Courses conducted by the Department

<i>Type of course</i>	<i>Number of courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>
Induction	38	762
Personnel management	28	456
Financial management	3	55
Computing	13	483
Scientific/technical	2	34
Specialised courses	11	239
Personal skills	46	579
Total	141	2608

Table 2 External courses

<i>Type of course</i>	<i>Number of courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>
Induction	13	40
Personnel management	57	621
Financial management	55	207
Computing	334	1112
Scientific/technical	106	293
Specialised courses	79	311
Personal skills	88	198
Industrial relations	40	169
Health and safety	48	164
Other	23	137
Total	843	3252

Table 3 Departmental development programs

<i>Type of course</i>	<i>Number of courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>	<i>Duration</i>
Graduate recruits	1	37	12 months
Middle managers development program	1	15	12 months
Industrial mobilisation	6	16	6-12 months
Joint Services Staff College	2	10	6 months (a)
Service Staff Colleges	6	8	6-12 months (a)
Joint warfare courses	7	6	1-2 weeks (a)
Undergraduate scholarships	1	4	12 months
Postgraduate scholarships	1	3	1-2 years
Career development for civilian engineers	12	269	
Technical training courses	9	131	

Notes: (a) Figures for Public Service personnel only.

Table 4 Studies assistance (leading to formal qualification—part-time leave)

	<i>Higher Degree</i>	<i>Bachelor Degree</i>		<i>Diploma (Inc Postgrad)</i>			<i>Total</i>
		<i>UNI</i>	<i>CAE</i>	<i>UNI</i>	<i>CAE</i>	<i>Other</i>	
Accounting	1	24	8	7	2	14	56
Administration/ management	8	6	12	5	3	28	62
Applied science		2	10			1	13
Architecture						1	1
Arts	2	21	21		1	2	26
Building						1	1
Computing	1	20	20	13	9	27	90
Drafting						3	3
Economics/commerce	2	19	19	1	1	4	46
Education	1						1
Engineering	4	9	14			50	77
Law		7	1	1	2	2	13
Liberal studies		1					1
Librarianship		2	6		1	8	17
Psychology		10		1			11
Political science		25				3	28
Science	2	14	14	1	1	2	34
Higher School Certificate						10	10
Secretarial				1		8	9
Social studies		6	6			1	13
Surveying						1	1
Technology		4	4	1		16	25
Other	20	46	46	8	3	136	259
Total	41	216	181	38	24	318	818

Table 5 Cadet, trainee and apprenticeship schemes

	<i>NSW</i>	<i>VIC</i>	<i>SA</i>	<i>ACT</i>	<i>WA</i>	<i>QLD</i>	<i>TAS</i>	<i>NT</i>	<i>Total</i>
Cadet economist	1	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	3
Cadet research scientist	2	16	37	—	—	—	—	—	55
Cadet engineer	31	19	28	6	1	5	3	—	93
Cadet naval architect	13	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	15
Para-professional trainee	125	115	34	25	1	—	—	—	300
Apprentice	311	456	126	1	—	—	—	—	894
Total	483	510	225	32	2	5	3	0	1360

Table 6 Courses attended by Senior Executive Service officers

<i>Type of course</i>	<i>Number of courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>
Departmental	3	11
External	18	80
Total	21	91

Appendix 5— Parliamentary and party committees and Auditor-General's reports

Parliamentary and party committees

Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade

Defence Sub-Committee

In addition to formal inquiries, the Department assisted the Sub-Committee with background information for its members on various aspects of defence and with visits to ADF exercises. The following briefings were also conducted:

- A briefing on the sustainability of ADF combat operations was given by representatives from the Department and the ADF on 23 February 1988.
- A briefing dealing with an analysis of the ADF capacity to respond to crises in the South-West Pacific was given on 18 May 1988.

The Sub-Committee toured defence establishments and units in Queensland, the Northern Territory and Western Australia from 18 February to 4 March 1988.

Inquiry into the Management of Australia's Defence

On 11 September 1985 the Sub-Committee announced its inquiry into the management of Australia's defence and national security. Following the convening of the 35th Parliament, the Sub-Committee decided to limit its inquiry and the terms of reference were amended to investigation and report on the management of the Department of Defence and the ADF, with particular reference to:

- the determination, management and implementation of Defence policies; and
- the suitability of the existing defence organisation for peace and war.

A number of questions from the Sub-Committee were responded to by the Department under covering comments from the Minister for Defence on 3 November 1987.

The Sub-Committee tabled its report on 7 December 1987 and the Government's response to the report was tabled on 3 June 1988.

Inquiry into Personnel Wastage Rates in the Australian Defence Force

On 21 October 1987 the Senate referred the following matters to the Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade for inquiry and report:

- the extent and magnitude of the Australian Defence Force wastage problem;
- the effects of the present level of wastage on the capability of the Australian Defence Force to fulfil its role in an effective manner; and
- measures to reduce wastage and an assessment of the relative effectiveness of those proposed measures.

The Defence Sub-Committee was subsequently directed to inquire into personnel wastage rates in the ADF.

The Department provided two submissions to the Sub-Committee on 11 April and 1 June 1988. The content of the submissions is discussed in Chapter 1.

The Sub-Committee so far has held two public hearings at which Defence was represented. The Secretary and the CDF appeared before the Sub-Committee on 14 March and Departmental and Service officers concerned with personnel matters attended on 11 April 1988. Further evidence has also been supplied to the Sub-Committee as a result of points raised at the hearings.

The Sub-Committee visited various Defence establishments in New South Wales and Queensland from 2 to 4 May 1988 to hold discussions with ADF personnel in connection with the inquiry:

The inquiry is continuing.

Inquiry into the Priorities for Australia Mine Countermeasure Needs

On 11 November 1987 the Minister for Defence proposed to the Sub-Committee that there would be value in its examining Australia's mine countermeasures capability. A background briefing on the topic was given to the Sub-Committee on 17 November 1987. The Chairman of the Sub-Committee accepted the proposal and asked the Minister to direct terms of reference for the inquiry to the Sub-Committee.

On 29 December the Minister sent the following terms of reference to the Sub-Committee:

- Within the broad policies set out in the policy information paper *The Defence of Australia 1987*, and having particular regard to Australia's strategic and geographic environment, and the policy of greater defence self-reliance within the framework of alliances and agreements, to investigate and report on the priorities for Australia's mine countermeasure needs, with particular reference to:
 - the nature and related timescales of the mining threat that Australia would be most likely to face;
 - the different technical approaches to mine counter-measures;
 - the defence of our major ports and their approaches, including implications for commercial shipping (such as delay and risk of loss);
 - the security of passage through our major coastal sea routes, including implications for commercial shipping;
 - recent developments in the use of mine warfare, such as in the Persian Gulf, and their implications for Australia;
 - having regard to the different levels of priority that might be identified, the resource implications of the associated different levels of mine countermeasures capability; and
 - the implications for Australian industry. On 24 February 1988 the Main Committee of the Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade formally directed the Defence Sub-Committee to investigate and report on 'priorities for Australia's mine countermeasure needs'.

On 12 April 1988 the Sub-Committee was briefed on the Minehunter Inshore (MHI) Bay Class vessel of which the Navy has two prototypes.

On 14 June 1988 a preliminary information paper on naval mines and mining techniques prepared by the Navy was forwarded to the Sub-Committee. The inquiry is continuing.

Sub-Committee on the South Pacific

Inquiry into Australia's relations with the South Pacific

Following the convening of the 35th Parliament, the Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade resolved in October 1987 to resume the inquiry. However the terms of reference were revised in order to examine specific topics of importance to Australia and its relations with the South Pacific. The revised terms of reference are:

- to investigate and report upon Australia's foreign relations with the island states of the South Pacific, with particular reference to:
 - regional political and security issues; and
 - economic relations between Australia and the other South Pacific countries, including the appropriateness of Australia's development assistance policies.

The inquiry was re-referred to the Sub-Committee who sought updated submissions in the light of the revised terms of reference. The Department's updated submission was forwarded to the Sub-Committee on 7 March 1988.

On 22 March the Sub-Committee received a background briefing on the South Pacific from officers of the Department and, on 18 May 1988, was also briefed on the ADF's capacity to respond to crises in the South-West Pacific.

Departmental officers discussed issues raised in the Department's submission at a public hearing on 29 March 1988. The officers were recalled to a further public hearing on 19 May to complete their evidence.

The inquiry is continuing.

Joint Committee of Public Accounts

The Committee did not table any reports resulting from inquiries that related specifically to the Department of Defence during 1987-88. However, following the tabling of the Auditor-General's reports (discussed later in this appendix) the Committee sought submissions from the Department on the engagement of external consultants, financial statements under section 41d of the Audit Act 1901 and safety principles for explosives. This last matter is expected to also address issues raised by the Auditor-General in respect of RAAF explosives ordnance. Public hearings of these matters are expected to commence early in 1988-89.

In May 1988 the Committee tabled Report 291: *Revised Procedures for Reports of the Joint Committee of Public Accounts*. The report mentioned the Committee's concern over continuing problems referred to in the Auditor-General's report with the production of timely and accurate financial statements for Defence munitions factories.

On 4 May 1988, the Committee wrote to the Department requesting details of action taken to improve its accountancy standards in the factories. The Department subsequently made a submission to the Committee that addressed the issues raised by the Auditor-General. Report 291 also advised the Committee's intention to review departments' annual reports to ensure compliance with revised guidelines.

Joint Committee on Public Works

Three major Defence facilities projects were considered by the Committee during the year.

Upgrade of Army living-in accommodation

This is a national project to upgrade 118 permanent living accommodation buildings for Army personnel and is estimated to cost \$57.6m (at November 1987 prices). The upgrade involves the conversion of existing barracks buildings to provide single bedrooms and improvements to ablution areas.

The project was referred to the Committee on 9 December 1987 and a hearing was held at Enoggera on 12 February 1988.

The Committee concluded that there was a need to upgrade single living-in accommodation and recommended that the proposed work be carried out.

Relocation of Albion Explosives Factory to Mulwala NSW

The project was referred to the Committee in February 1988 and the hearing was held at Mulwala on 3 and 4 May 1988. The project is estimated to cost \$78.4m (at November 1987 prices) which includes \$16.1m for machinery and plant. The Committee concluded that a need exists to relocate the Albion Explosives Factory from the Melbourne metropolitan area to Mulwala and to rationalise the activities of the Defence explosives factories.

New Utility Helicopter Facilities (Phase 2) at RAAF Townsville and Oakey Army airfield

The proposed work will provide operational and administrative facilities at RAAF Townsville and Oakey Army airfield to support the second phase of delivery of the new Black Hawk helicopters. The estimated cost of the proposal (at October 1987 prices) is \$19.2m at Townsville and \$5m at Oakey.

The project was referred to the Committee on 14 April 1988 and a hearing was held at Townsville on 16 June 1988 following inspections at Oakey and Townsville on 15 June 1988.

The Committee's report has not yet been submitted to Parliament.

Joint Committee on Publications

Inquiry into the Auditor-General's Efficiency Audit Report on the Australian Government Publishing Service (AGPS)

As part of the inquiry, the Committee sought written comments on the level of client satisfaction with services provided by the AGPS. The Department provided a submission on this aspect of the inquiry to the Committee on 1 March 1988.

The inquiry is continuing.

Senate Standing Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade

Inquiry into the adequacy of current continuing planning by Federal and State authorities to deal with the accidental release of ionising radiation from visiting nuclear powered or armed vessels in Australian waters and ports

In connection with its resumed inquiry, the Committee visited HMAS Stirling on 2 February, Sydney on 14 March and Hobart on 21 March 1988. The purpose of the visits was to inspect RAN facilities and be briefed on contingency plans to deal with possible accidents involving nuclear powered or armed vessels.

Defence and Australian Nuclear Science and Technology Organisation witnesses were recalled to a public hearing on 17 June 1988 to enable the Committee to clarify issues raised in the course of previous hearings. The Natural Disasters Organisation was also represented as the Committee wished to examine how contingency planning for visits by nuclear ships compared to planning for natural disasters. Further evidence was supplied to the Committee as a result of questions raised at the hearing.

The inquiry is continuing.

Senate Estimates Committee E

The estimates of the Department were subjected to annual parliamentary scrutiny by the Committee. Officers of the Department gave evidence before the Committee on 22 October 1987 (Budget Estimates 1987-88) and 21 April 1988 (Additional Estimates 1987-88).

Supplementary briefing material and elaborative information was also provided to the Committee.

Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Public Administration

Inquiry into the Efficiency Scrutiny Program

On 9 December 1987 the Senate referred the matter of *The Central Administration of the Australian Government* to the Committee. The first inquiry which the Committee proposed to conduct under this reference is the Efficiency Scrutiny Program.

The Department provided the Committee with a submission on 24 February 1988.

The inquiry is continuing.

House of Representatives Standing Committee on Finance and Public Administration

Inquiry into the Efficiency Audit by the Auditor-General on the Department of Housing and Construction: Repairs and Maintenance of Commonwealth Assets

The Minister for Administrative Services referred the efficiency audit by the Auditor-General to the Committee for inquiry. The Committee on 18 February 1988 adopted the inquiry and appointed a Sub-Committee to conduct it.

The Department forwarded a submission to the Sub-Committee on 13 April 1988.

The inquiry is continuing.

Opposition Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Veterans' Affairs

The Committee was briefed by Departmental officers on the topics of current operational effectiveness, combat sustainability and conditions of service on 24 May 1988.

Auditor-General's reports

Four Auditor-General's reports relating to the Department of Defence were tabled during the year. Two were Efficiency Audit Reports dealing with specific aspects of Departmental activity.

Matters reported on by the Auditor-General included:

Personnel

- Navy Apprenticeship Training
- Office of Defence Production—Garden Island Dockyard: Personnel Practices
- Navy Allotments and Married Quarters System

Facilities

- Planning for Future Development of Defence Facilities
- Engine Run-Up Facility—RAAF Williamtown, NSW
- Ship Lift Facility-Darwin Naval Base

Security

- Protective Security—Army Reserve Armouries

Finance

- Payments to Major Contractors
- Office of Defence Production—Williamstown Dockyard: Accounting and Management Information Systems
- Office of Defence Production—Financial Statements Under Section 41d of the Audit Act 1901
- Office of Defence Production—Installation of a Computerised General Ledger System

Logistics

- Victorian Regional Office—Stocktaking Procedures
- Army Transport: The Auditor-General reported satisfactory findings in respect of:
- Army Procurement—Brisbane
- Special Air Services Regiment and Perth Workshop Company
- Liquid Fuels and Lubricants—HMAS Stirling, WA
- Army Stores Control—Tasmania
- Army and Air Force Unit Pay—Northern Territory

The focus of Audit's attention during the conduct of these reviews was on the applicability of instructions to the tasks that they described, their overall relevance to the requirements of Departmental management and whether there was compliance with statutory requirements.

Where there has been adverse criticism by the Auditor-General, it has been related to administration generally, but financial administration in particular. There was significant criticism of financial administration within the Office of Defence Production, particularly in relation to the production and presentation of factories' financial statements.

Recommendations made by the Auditor-General to improve administrative aspects of Departmental activity have been generally accepted and are being implemented. Efficiency Audit Reports were tabled in respect of RAAF Explosive Ordnance and Safety Principles for Explosives. The Auditor-General's criticism of the Department's administration of these matters has led to the Joint Committee of Public Accounts seeking a submission from the Department addressing the concerns expressed by the Auditor-General.

Details of the Auditor-General's recommendations arising from audits and action taken to address them follow.

Navy Apprenticeship Training

The audit revealed a situation where:

- there are insufficient resources to validate courses properly in order to ensure that they meet the requirements of the Navy, or to follow up the recommendations of validation reviews properly;
- quality control over courses and instructors is inadequate;
- many instructors are inadequately qualified to perform their tasks properly;
- there are serious delays in recruiting civilian instructors;
- classes are conducted in substandard buildings; and
- much of the equipment is outdated and therefore cannot adequately train the apprentices in modern technology.

There is an Australia-wide shortage of technical trainees. Selective advertising for electrical and air technical apprentices, a new initiative, resulted in quotas being met in January 1988. Training effectiveness is now being assessed during regular inspections and more emphasis is being placed on validation.

Quality control of courses and instructors will improve as the designated billet in Quality Control has now been filled. Validation of electronic technical training is now virtually complete and an extensive validation of marine technical training is now underway with a view to completion by July 1988.

Achieving the aim of suitably qualifying instructors is an ongoing task. The number of qualified instructors has improved markedly and is now at a level of 88%. Although a further improvement will be sought, that level is considered acceptable in an environment of unavoidable posting turbulence.

Some reduction in the time taken to recruit civilian staff has been achieved. Public Service recruitment requirements preclude further reduction of any significance.

Unfilled training equipment requests, old buildings, substandard maintenance and lack of facilities generally have been caused by financial constraints and conflicting priorities. Equipment replacement will be met as funds are made available. The HMAS Nirimba Master Plan includes upgrading or replacement of all substandard buildings, but is a low priority. It should be noted, however, that a major review of RAN technical training facilities is presently being conducted with a view to seeing significant rationalisation of the shore training infrastructure in the medium term.

The audit highlighted a number of problems well known to those involved with RAN apprentice training and for which remedies are planned. The fundamental cause for the slowness of remedial action is the shortage of finance and manpower. Training competes for resources with operational and support activities. Nevertheless, HMAS Nirimba continues to produce sufficient trained personnel to allow the Fleet to continue to operate despite the fact that the establishment's resources are stretched. Provided the manpower and financial situations do not deteriorate further, future Fleet requirements should continue to be met.

Office of Defence Production—Garden Island Dockyard Personnel Practices

The Auditor-General noted that Section 5.6 of his September 1986 Report referred to audit findings arising from an examination of the personnel operations and procedures of the Dockyard, insofar as salaried staff employed under the Public Service Act 1922 were concerned. Findings referred to in the September 1986 Report included:

- deficiencies in procedures for preparing pay variation advice; and
- inadequate maintenance of personnel-related records.

At the exit interview Audit expressed concern that undertakings given in regard to corrective action were not fully implemented and that, as a consequence, the above deficiencies were still apparent.

The necessary procedures for preparing pay variation advice have been documented and corrective action taken to ensure that deficiencies are highlighted prior to processing these forms. Corrective action has also been taken to ensure adequate controls are in place for the maintenance of personnel-related forms.

Navy Allotments and Married Quarters System (NAVALMAQ)

Audit concluded that, overall, the system was operating satisfactorily although some procedural shortcomings were identified. The more significant weaknesses included:

- a lack of system and program documentation which affected work planning schedules and task implementation and resulted in ineffective use of personnel resources;
- the incorrect classification of a particular System Change Work Request as system maintenance rather than system enhancement, which resulted in a considerable time overrun and problems with project management;
- instances of non-compliance with departmental procedures as outlined in Navy pay manuals; and
- controls over the correction of corrupt data files outside of normal operational procedures not being consistently applied.

The documentation of NAVALMAQ programs is being updated as programs are being amended by normal maintenance action, as accepted by Audit. Systems Change Work Requests are being reclassified as 'Small Projects' when major slippage occurs.

The current rewrite of 'Manual of Navy Pay—FINSERVMAN 4 Volume 1', which was in progress at the time of the audit, removes the minimum allotment provisions,

which were unique to the Navy. The controls over the correction of corrupt data files outside of normal operational procedures are being consistently applied and documented as advised to Audit at the completion of the audit.

Planning for Future Development of Defence Facilities

Audit examined master planning in the Facilities Division of Defence Central, and in the Facilities Branches of the three Service Offices. The examination revealed that, at the time of the audit, 42 establishments did not have approved master plans.

To identify the reasons for the absence of an approved master plan, Audit selected one establishment from each Service and Defence Central on the basis of:

- size;
- relatively high master planning priorities; and
- monetary value of major works in the FYDP.

The establishments selected for review were:

- Materials Research Laboratory, Maribyrnong;
- HMAS Waterhen, Sydney;
- Ingleburn, NSW; and
- RAAF Base Richmond.

Materials Research Laboratory, Maribyrnong

The Auditor-General commented that:

Although master planning has been in progress at the laboratory since 1970, there is still no approved master plan. It was only in March 1987 that the Department requested the Australian Survey Office to conduct a full survey to enable the production of a zone plan to cover the whole of the Maribyrnong complex.

In 1985 none of the Defence establishments in the Maribyrnong area complied with regulations relating to explosives licencing.

Audit noted that factors contributing to the long delays in the development of the master plan included:

- the rationalisation of boundaries in the Maribyrnong area which had been subject to discussions and negotiations for a number of years and was still unresolved;
- delay in the finalisation of the factory's safety distance profile because the future of the Explosives Factory Maribyrnong (EFM) had been uncertain and depended on the outcome of the Review of Explosives Factories conducted in 1984. Master planning could not proceed until key recommendations of this report were agreed to by the Minister. After this agreement had been received, EFM sent its master planning brief to the Department of Housing and Construction in October 1986;
- a lack of communication on matters relating to internal safety distances required from explosives facilities. Master planning is continuing. The issues involved are complex and their implementation is expected to take some time.

HMAS Waterhen

The Auditor-General commented that:

At the time of audit, HMAS Waterhen did not have an approved master plan. Master planning for the modernisation project has been in progress since 1979/80 when a draft functional planning brief was submitted to Defence Central by the Commanding Officer HMAS Waterhen for review and comment.

Audit noted that the delay in the development of the master plan was due to:

- negotiations between the Commonwealth and NSW Governments, which have continued since 1972, for land leases for the existing site and additional land were still unresolved;
- the possible relocation of Fleet Base activities from Sydney to Jervis Bay; and
- uncertainty regarding the requirements for a ship-lift facility.

Restrictions have been lifted on the planning processes for the HMAS Waterhen Development Project. Advice has been received from the NSW Premier's Department

that a lease on the upper site will be possible from the end of 1990. Work on progressing the Stage 3 Feasibility Study is continuing.

Ingleburn Military Area

The Auditor-General commented that:

The Ingleburn Military Area does not have an approved master plan although master planning has been in progress since 1982 and noted that the main factors contributing to the delay included:

- the preparation of a zone plan by DHC had been delayed pending completion of a topographic survey by the Australian Survey Office;
- uncertainty about whether the School of Army Health was to be relocated to Ingleburn and the effects of this relocation on property development proposals at Ingleburn;
- uncertainty over a proposal to relocate the Military Police complex; and
- amendments to the zone plan as a result of the introduction in 1986 of the *Guidelines to Assist in the Master Planning of the Liverpool Military Area* approved by the CGS.

Master planning is continuing in an orderly manner subject to competing priorities in the allocation of limited resources.

RAAF Richmond

The Auditor-General noted that:

Although master planning for the base has been in progress for the past nine years, it does not have an approved master plan and that delays in finalising the master plan occurred largely because of:

- continuing delays in the implementation of revised safety principles concerning storage and handling of explosives;
- a delay in conducting a traffic study/survey;
- the uncertainty regarding the location of the second Sydney Airport; and
- protracted negotiations associated with land acquisition required for the planned development of the base.

Audit considers that a clarification of the planning policy involved is necessary and, if master planning is to continue, more comprehensive guidelines would be required.

Master planning for RAAF Richmond is being actively pursued. The relevant chapter of the *RAAF Facilities Manual* is about to be reissued to reflect the latest information on master planning procedures.

Engine Run-Up Facility—RAAF Williamtown, NSW

The Auditor-General reported that noise levels within the run-up facility were unacceptably high and likely to cause permanent disabilities to RAAF maintenance personnel. Also, that the noise levels in a nearby rural area contravened guarantees that were included in the Environmental Impact Statement.

The Auditor-General also noted that a report prepared by a consulting acoustical and vibration engineer revealed that preliminary reports of results of operational tests of the facility disclosed various engineering, environmental and safety related deficiencies. The report also disclosed that the original functional design brief prepared in November 1983 did not contain acoustical environmental criteria or acoustical data on the noise emission characteristics of the two primary aircraft classifications which would be operated in the facility (F/A-18 and Mirage). It was restricted primarily to design details and physical requirements.

Following a number of studies it was decided to undertake acoustical refurbishment to reduce high noise levels which were being generated within the facility. An amended functional design brief was issued which specified the noise attenuation criteria to be met and that monitoring of the noise levels was to be undertaken.

Work to improve the performance of the facility was undertaken and, as required by the amended functional design brief, the facility was redesigned to incorporate augmentor silencers at a cost of \$2.8m.

The Department of Administrative Services (Construction Group) is about to appoint W.L. Meinhardt and Partners Pty Ltd and Louis A. Challis and Associates Pty Ltd as design consultants. Detailed design work can then commence. An anticipated design/documentation period of six months and a scheduled construction period of 12 months gives rise to an expected project completion date of July–August 1989.

Ship-Lift Facility—Darwin Naval Base

Audit review of departmental records disclosed that the ship-lift facility was the first of its type to be installed at a RAN base. Lack of experience with this type of facility resulted in inadequate specification of ship handling requirements which only became apparent following discussions with the manufacturer.

Audit questioned whether, in the event of a cyclone, there was a risk of damage to Fremantle-class patrol boats moored at the base. The ship-lift facility was initially designed to lift vessels from the water to allow transfer to either parking bays or covered shelter which allow tie down for cyclone protection. However, the ship-lift facility was weather limited, which could lead to an inability to lift the vessels from the water when seas are high. In these circumstances it was not clear to Audit whether the ship-lift facility entirely met its design objectives.

Ship-lifts are not specifically designed to function under severe cyclone conditions causing adverse seas. Prudence, safety and good management dictates when lifting operations can occur and when operations must be temporarily terminated. Given the circumstances of weather and sea conditions, decisions on whether to operate the ship-lift rests with base technical staff. Management of lifting times during normal conditions makes the facility effective. During abnormal conditions the decision to lift boats or deploy them to open waters will be made depending on the situation at that time.

The Darwin Naval Base ship-lift facility has continued to operate effectively and meets its designed objectives.

Protective Security—Army Reserve Armouries

The Auditor-General noted that:

- Unit Security Officers (USOs) were being trained by the Army Operations (Intelligence) Section with little or no apparent input from the General Officer Commanding, Training Command. This is contrary to SECMAN requirements which give Training Command responsibility for training USOs and does not accord with the basic principle of Army training that training should be uniform throughout the Service;
- significant weaknesses were noted in the existing arrangements for the call-out of officers in reaction to intruder alarm systems; and
- security inspections or reviews of units have not been conducted by the Operations (Intelligence) Section at the intervals prescribed by SECMAN. In addition, it was noted that at the time of the audit, recommendations arising from two such inspections some six months earlier had not been actioned.

The training of USOs has been reviewed and Army Office is producing a standardised course package covering all aspects of security. This package has been completed but has yet to be tested and the method of implementation has not been finalised.

Payments to Major Contractors—ACT Region

The Auditor-General commented that:

- a high proportion (47%) of the claims were not paid within 30 days of receipt by the Department.

- a significant delay in processing claims occurred in Service Units and Central Office (CFO). Factors that contributed to these delays included:
 - slow confirmation of receipt of goods from Supply Centres;
 - late receipts of 'fund approval certificates' to approve increases in funds or payment demands;
 - holders of 'order and Receipt of Supplies' forms not sending relevant copies to CFO promptly for processing;
 - slow registration of claims and/or invoices after receipt by CFO; and
 - contrary to the requirements of Finance Directions and departmental instructions, a large number of claims were not being date stamped upon receipt by the Department.

The Department has taken a number of initiatives to address the problems. The impact of due date processing within the Department has been analysed and it has been found that 90% of all claims received for payment are received in advance of the due date. A report produced by the computerised Finance Office Management Accounting System indicates that over 95% of claims received are processed in less than 8 days. Taken together, these two statistics indicate that delays at units and establishments have been reduced and that by far the greater majority of *all* claims received are paid in 30 days.

The Department ensures that claims relating to major contracts receive special attention to ensure that the required payment terms are met.

The majority of delegations associated with the examination and certification of claims have been devolved to functional areas so that one source of potential delay, the duplication of activities between units and Finance offices, has been eliminated.

The Department continues to monitor the standard of claims presentation—a potential source of payment delay—and provides training or remedial action as necessary.

Office of Defence Production—Williamstown Dockyard Accounting and Management Information Systems

Unsatisfactory matters disclosed by the audit were in respect of:

Accounts Payable

Audit considered that the breakdown in control over receipt vouchers seriously hampered the effective operations of the Accounts Payable Section during 1985-86.

Deficiencies noted included:

- delays in payment of accounts;
- an additional workload for Accounts Payable staff attempting to locate receipt vouchers raised by Materiel Branch, but not forwarded to Finance Branch, after complaints from suppliers that their accounts had fallen overdue; and
- the inability of Finance Branch to produce a listing of outstanding receipt vouchers.

Several liability and provision General Ledger accounts at 1 July 1985 show neither a nil balance or a balance that was not able to be verified by Audit. Audit noted the inability of the dockyard to produce a listing of outstanding receipt vouchers and that certain provisions of the Audit Act and Finance Directions and Regulations were not always met. Examples cited were that claims had not been certified and invoices had not been stamped upon receipt.

General Ledger

There were no reconciliations performed during 1984-85 with the exception of debtors and cash accounts. A number of internal controls and checks normally associated with the General Ledger and related functions were found to be deficient or non-existent.

Accounts Receivable

The Accounts Receivable system is manually operated.

Audit noted that:

- a number of debit notes relating to 1984–85 transactions were raised in 1985–86 earnings.
- there were deficiencies in procedures for control over cash advances and a lack of instructions relating the responsibilities of advance holders.

Fixed Assets

Audit noted that the method adopted at 1 July 1984 to bring machinery and plant on charge was conducted during 1984–85 or 1985–86 to ascertain the dockyard's holdings.

Computer Environment

Audit noted that many of the weaknesses, errors and deficiencies identified were a consequence of the lack of written administrative procedures and instructions for each area reviewed.

In regard to systems weaknesses identified by Audit, dockyard management implemented new material tracking, costing and financial management systems. The success of this decision in addressing Audit concerns has not been evaluated due to the sale of the dockyard in February 1988.

Office of Defence Production—Financial Statements under Section 41d of the Audit Act

Ordnance Factory Bendigo

A number of matters were raised including:

- unclaimed moneys dating back to 1967 not having been cleared from the unpaid salaries and wages account;
- continuing arrears in sample stocktakes of some stores items; and
- the failure to assess working capital requirements.

Action is being taken to clear appropriate amounts of unclaimed moneys back to Consolidated Revenue. It was disclosed in a recent audit coverage that remedial action has resolved the area of arrears in sample stocktaking of some stock items.

Working Capital assessment procedures were improved in 1985–86.

Government Aircraft Factories

Audit included a qualification on the ground that it was not possible to verify the existence and value of work-in-progress because:

- work-in-progress was not subject to valuation or to verification procedures usually associated with an asset of a similar nature; and
- certain holdings of production stocks were not separately recorded on stock records nor were they subject to stocktaking.

The formal transfer of ownership passed from the Commonwealth to Aerospace Technologies of Australia (ASTA) on 8 October 1987 and full responsibility for the performance of contracts and recovery programs lies with ASTA.

The matter has now been taken up by the Joint Committee of Public Accounts.

Office of Defence Production—Installation of a Computerised General Ledger System

The audit covered the installation of the Munitions Filling Factory, St Marys computerised general ledger system on the Department's Manufacturing Computer Bureau computer in Melbourne. The system is based on a commercial software package that was originally leased by ODP for use at the Williamstown Dockyard.

The Auditor-General commented that the system had been implemented in a competent manner and was being operated effectively but made the following observations:

- As the lead factory implementation for the munitions group of factories the implementation should have been closely monitored and coordinated so that a standardised approach to planning, controlling, documenting and testing such projects could be developed.
- Disparate levels of project organisation and control of the implementation of the general ledger system at other factories had lead to an uneven level of achievement and as a result the success of the project at the Munitions Filling Factory would be of little benefit.
- While environmental and application controls are operating satisfactorily, a number of weaknesses indicate a potential for compromising the integrity of the general ledger processing. It was noted that, in particular, access by application support programmers and contractors to production data is incompatible with accepted industry practice.
- Internal Audit was not involved in the development of standards for Manufacturing Computer Bureau systems.

The Department has agreed that Internal Audit should be involved in the preparation of such standards. Internal Audit has been involved in the review of revised EDP standard for 1987.

Victorian Regional Office—Stocktaking Procedures

Audit undertook an examination of stocktaking procedures within the Victorian region. The objectives of the audit were to assess the adequacy of the stocktake function, the monitoring by management, and remedial action initiated by stocktakers when significant discrepancies were discovered.

Audit suggests that stocktaking operations could be enhanced by:

- establishing a centralised pool of stocktakers for both civilian and service areas at Regional Offices who would use common instructions, documentation and reporting systems. The centralised pool should have a clearly defined reporting role;
- removing stocktakers' access to stock balances, records and computer terminals;
- requiring stocktakers to comment as a matter of course on apparent obsolete, deteriorating or slow moving stocks; and
- ensuring stocktakers have independence of operation and properly follow up action taken on any significant discrepancies reported.

Defence does not consider the establishment of a centralised stocktaking pool as being practical because of the individual requirements of the Service Offices, ODP and Defence Central establishments.

Individual office procedures recognise that, because of resource constraints, it is not practical to provide dedicated stock-taking staff who are independent from all stock handling and control activity. Instructions specify actions to be taken in the management of the stocktake to preserve its integrity. Stocktaking officers who are appointed pursuant to the appropriate instruction are required to ensure that the specified procedures are rigidly adhered to and that a level of independence is employed during the obtaining of stock balances and during actual stock counts.

Existing instructions and operating instructions at Defence establishments are geared to meet local requirements. Control of stockholdings is treated as a function of management rather than the responsibility of individual stocktakers and existing Departmental and Service Office procedures are adequate to meet the requirements of management.

Army Transport

The audit revealed a situation where:

- there appeared to be cost advantages in leasing prime movers for the vehicle fleet

over the cost of running Defence owned vehicles which are now nearing the end of their operational life;

- facilities at some freight terminals were below standard and impinged on the efficiency of operations;
- separate consignment numbers from unique systems issued by each Service created administrative problems;
- there were deficiencies in the costing system used in respect of the provision of transport. As a consequence, there was a risk that military transport was being requested where cheaper public transport could have been used; and
- an inefficient means of collecting travelling allowance paid to line-haul service drivers was being used.

A review was conducted of the operations of the line-haul service for the twelve months to 30 November 1987. Recommendations from the review included removal of aging vehicles and the lease of additional vehicles coupled with the retention of the newer and more reliable vehicles already in the fleet.

Action is being taken to improve the standard of facilities at freight terminals as budgetary constraints permit. A new freight terminal is to be built at Broadmeadows in Victoria to replace the existing substandard facility.

A standardised consignment system is currently being considered and early resolution is expected. The lack of costing information has been recognised and action is being taken to overcome this deficiency by the development of an appropriate data base by monitoring transport costs within the Army system. The matter of payment of travelling allowance is currently being investigated within the Department to remove the inefficiencies.

Efficiency Audit Reports

During 1987-88 the Auditor-General tabled two Efficiency Audit reports: RAAF Explosive Ordnance and Safety Principles for Explosives.

RAAF Explosive Ordnance

Having regard to the nature of the material examined during the audit, the Minister for Defence sought and obtained a certificate from the Attorney-General under sub-section 48f(5) of the Audit Act 1901, on the basis that disclosure of certain information contained in the report would be contrary to the public interest, in that it would prejudice the security and defence of Australia. The Act provides that under such circumstances the Auditor-General may prepare a restricted report on the results of the audit and send it to the Prime Minister, the Minister with portfolio responsibility, the Minister for Finance and the Public Service Commission and that, if he does so, he shall prepare and transmit to the Parliament a separate report that does not disclose information that is subject to the Attorney-General's certificate.

A restricted report was prepared and transmitted to those listed above. A separate report which contains findings mainly in the areas of procurement, storage and stock records was also prepared. This report lists a number of administrative or procedural weaknesses, namely:

- the failure to amend standard procurement lead times when these were exceeded by actual lead times;
- the use of a manual system for stock recording of explosive ordnance items that was time consuming and open to error;
- significant numbers of transactions in respect of stock recording awaiting resolution of queries caused delays in the issue of ordnance into service;
- an excessive build up in the number and quantity of explosive items awaiting demolition; and
- the use of gantry cranes that were overdue for safety inspections for moving explosives.

In addition, Audit found that numerous departmental risk waivers which authorise non-adherence to the Department's safety principles for explosives ordnance were issued to enable RAAF to store explosives in larger quantities than would normally be permitted given the existing structure and location of its facilities.

The Department accepted six of the eight recommendations contained in this report and indicated that action to implement most of them had already been taken by October 1987.

Safety Principles for Explosives

Audit found that the Department did not meet its December 1983 target date for the implementation of its new safety principles.

With hindsight, it would appear that the timetable set by the Department was optimistic although Audit could find no evidence of a concerted and coordinated effort to implement the new principles within the Department until around 1986 and 1987; that is, after the audit had commenced. At the end of 1986 there were numerous situations where the new principles were not being complied with. Even by early 1988, although some progress had been made, there were still many locations at which the explosives-related operations did not comply with the safety principles adopted by the Department.

Audit observed that more than 100 waivers had either been issued or were pending approval and concluded that departmental operations were conducted in a manner that imposed a level of hazard to the public, facilities and departmental personnel that was greater than the level acceptable under the safety principles. In addition, several situations were noted where waivers had not been sought or obtained but non-compliant operations continued; for example, RAN operations in Sydney Harbour and some operations within ODP. The legal responsibility should an accident occur in such instances is somewhat unclear.

Audit noted that the Department did not have centralised records from which it could assess the extent of its non-compliant operations or activities.

At present there are no legislative provisions to enable enforcement of restrictions on the use of land surrounding Defence establishments. However, Audit found that, for various reasons, safeguarding maps generally were not being provided. In cases where hazard zones extended beyond the Commonwealth property boundary, the Department tended to reduce its explosives storage and handling activities so that safety arcs were contained within existing boundaries.

Appendix 6— Public information sources and addresses

The Directorate of Public Relations is the contact point for Public Information inquiries to the Department. The address is:

Directorate of Public Relations

Department of Defence

Russell Offices

RUSSELL ACT 2600

Tel: (062) 652999

Available from Defence Public Relations

Major Ministerial statements/speeches

Minister for Defence

<i>Date</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Forum</i>
8/10/87	Post Budget Statement	House of Representatives Weekly Hansard pp 997-1004
6/11/87	Thinking Defence—Key Concepts in Australian Defence Planning	Roy Milne Memorial Lecture
23/2/88	Self Reliance and Cooperation—Regional Defence Policy	House of Representatives Weekly Hansard pp 499-506
22/3/88	Government Defence Policy—A Progress Report	House of Representatives Weekly Hansard pp 1110-1116
28/3/88	The Two Ocean Navy	Centre for Indian Ocean Regional Studies
13/5/88	Pursuing Non Nuclear Options	Royal United Services Institute Bicentennial Seminar
13/5/88	Australia's Role in Arms Control	Checking the Arms Race Conference

Minister for Defence Science and Personnel

<i>Date</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Forum</i>
8/10/87	Post Budget Address-In-Reply on Matters Relating to the Defence Science and Personnel Portfolio	House of Representatives Weekly Hansard pp 1066-1071
27/4/88	Implementation of the Hamilton Report	House of Representatives Weekly Hansard pp 2178-2186

Press Releases

Key Media Releases

<i>Number</i>	<i>Topic</i>	<i>Date</i>
108/87	Companies Invited to Tender for Williamstown Dockyard	3/7/87
112/87	Service Allowance Increased by over 22%	10/7/87
115/87	Australia Welcomes New Zealand Warship Joint Project Decision	15/7/87
131/87	Army Reserve Brigade Raised in North Queensland	4/9/87
132/87	Joint Venture Established to Manufacture Batteries for New Submarine	7/9/87
137/87	Summary of Features of Defence Budget	15/9/87
140/87	First Submarine Homeported at HMAS Stirling	20/9/87
143/87	\$50m Increase in Naval Hydrographic Service Capabilities	24/9/87
149/87	Tenders Sought For New RAAF VIP Aircraft	30/9/87
156/87	Major Reorganisation of the Defence Science and Technology Organisation Announced	12/10/87
158/87	New Owner for Government Aircraft Factories	12/10/87
163/87	Consortia Arrangements for the Anzac Ship Project Announced	19/10/87
171/87	Site Selected for New Defence Satellite Communications Station	28/10/87
173/87	Service Spouse to be Appointed to Defence Housing Authority	29/10/87
180/87	Three New Conditions of Service For Australian Defence Force	9/11/87
191/87	New Defence Production Facility	26/11/87
196/87	Six Registrations of Interest for Anzac Ship Project	4/12/87
197/87	\$60m Submarine Contract for Ordnance Factories	7/12/87
199/87	Williamstown Dockyard Sold	11/12/87
201/87	First RAAF Trainer Aircraft Accepted	14/12/87
203/87	RAAF to Buy Two More B707 Aircraft	17/12/87
205/87	Superannuation Changes and Review for Defence Force	21/12/87
209/87	Selection of Prime Consortia for Anzac Ship Project	24/12/87
5/88	Defence Force AIDS Policy Agreed	20/1/88
4/88	Defence Housing Authority Up and Running	21/1/88
8/88	Two Pay and Allowance Increases in the ADF	21/1/88
9/88	Poll Shows Strong Public Support For Defence	22/1/88
11/88	Two Designs Selected Anzac Ship Project	29/1/88
12/88	Construction of New Hydrographic Ships	1/2/88
17/88	Increased Flying Allowance	5/2/88
18/88	Australia and Singapore Sign Status of Forces Agreement	10/2/88
21/88	Appointment of First Woman Commanding Officer of RAN Base	15/2/88
22/88	Community Development Co-ordinators Appointed to Help Service Families	15/2/88
40/88	Australia Co-Sponsors Maritime Surveillance Seminar in Vanuatu	9/3/88
44/88	Western Samoa Receives Australian Patrol Boat	18/3/88
51/88	Industry Participation Agreement Signed Anzac Ship Project	24/3/88
55/88	Improved Conditions for Single Members of the Defence Force	31/3/88
58/88	\$43m Strategic Communications Contract Awarded	6/4/88
60/88	New Education Allowance Provisions for Defence Families	8/4/88
64/88	Bilateral Discussions Between Australia and Indonesia	16/4/88
68/88	Additional \$46m for Defence Housing	19/4/88
71/88	Submarine Escape Facility Opened	22/4/88
72A/88	Retention Bonus for Defence Force Pilots	27/4/88

75/88	Corporate Statement for Defence Science and Technology Organisation Released	3/5/88
87/88	Real Growth in Defence Spending	25/5/88
94/88	Australia and UK to Collaborate on Defence Equipment	31/5/88
99/88	Revised Defence Export Controls	14/6/88
100/88	New RAAF Base (RAAF Curtin) Opened	11/6/88
118/88	First Women RAAF Pilots Graduate	30/6/88

Publications

Booklets

Navy Today, Army Today and Air Force Today Three booklets providing detailed information about each Service. *Navy—a brief history, Army—a brief history, Air Force—a brief history* Three booklets on the history of each Service.

Pamphlets

Project Defence Project material for schools. *Defence—Protecting Australia; Protecting the Environment* Outlines the part the military has played over the years in protecting some of our national heritage.

Posters

Navy—guarding our seas, Army—proud and professional, Air Force—the sky's the limit Three fold-out posters with pictures and illustrations of major equipment on one side and text and pictures outlining the individual Service on the other. *Badges of Rank* Shows the comparable badges of rank for all three Services.

F/A-18 Hornet

P3C Orion

F-111

Milan (anti-armour weapon)

Lithographs

Series of photographs of equipment and action of all three Services.

Stickers

Navy, Army and Air Force crests. Individual sticker for each Service.

Films and Videos

The Directorate's Film and Video Unit has the following in either film or video formats:

Title	Duration	Production Year
<i>The Cutting Edge</i>	47 mins	1987
<i>Bush Tucker Man</i>	59 mins	1986
<i>Frigate Strike</i>	9 mins	1986
<i>RAN 75 Years</i>	87 mins	1986
<i>Flying Among the Weeds</i>	14 mins	1985
<i>Exercise Green</i>	20 mins	1983
<i>Battlefield Pilot</i>	10 mins	1983
<i>Anyone, Anything, Anywhere</i>	15 mins	1983
<i>North-West Cape</i>	21 mins	1983
<i>Diggers</i>	18 mins	1982
<i>The Shape of Ships to Come</i>	12 mins	1982
<i>A Fighting Chance</i>	19 mins	1981
<i>Coastwatch</i>	15 mins	1981
<i>Sappers K-9 The Dogs of War</i>	15 mins	1981
<i>Light The Deep</i>	13 mins	1981
<i>The Challenge of Flight</i>	20 mins	1981
<i>Reaching for a Rainbow</i>	16 mins	1980
<i>Limiting the Goblin</i>	12 mins	1980

<i>Combating the 79 Locust Plague</i>	13 mins	1979
<i>Malaria the Recurring Enemy</i>	14 mins	1979
<i>F-111 The First Flight</i>	11 mins	1979
<i>Solar Oil</i>	17 mins	1979
<i>The Charge at Beersheba</i>	8 mins	1978
<i>About a Dollar's Worth</i>	24 mins	1978
<i>Rescue 036</i>	10 mins	1978
<i>Sixty Years Later</i>	15 mins	1977
<i>Anchorman</i>	15 mins	1977
<i>From Box Kite to Swing Wing</i>	28 mins	1977
<i>Mine on Channel Reef</i>	27 mins	1976
<i>The Grey Funnel Line</i>	57 mins	1974
<i>Steer 270</i>	31 mins	1974
<i>Operation Navy Help</i>	13 mins	1974
<i>The Sea, Ships, and the Surveyors</i>	27 mins	1974

The Directorate of Public Relations' film unit won its eighth international award, the Silver Screen Award, at the 1988 US Film and Video Festival for its television documentary *The Cutting Edge*, describing a field exercise by the Operational Deployment Force. There were 1350 entries in the Festival from 29 countries. Australian broadcast rights in the program have been bought by the Channel Nine network.

Available from the Natural Disasters Organisation

Address—Director General
 Natural Disasters Organisation
 P.O. Box E33
 Queen Victoria Terrace
 Canberra A.C.T. 2601
 Tel. (062) 46 6211

Publications

The Natural Disasters Organisation
Australian Counter Disaster Arrangements
Australian Disaster Welfare Manual
Australian Disaster Rescue Manual
Australian Disaster Operations Manual
Protecting from High Winds
Cyclone Action
Living with Cyclones
Flood Fact Quiz
Alternatives to an Ark
How to Handle an Earthquake
Smokey Explains Television's Fire Danger Meters
Disasters: A Booklet for Schools
Severe Storms: Facts and Precautions
Disasters: A Role for Defence
Survival: An Australian Manual for Combating Natural Disasters
Nuclear Weapons: Their Effects and Your Protection
Domestic Fallout Shelter Guide

Films

After the Floods
The Water Must Go Somewhere
Floods
Bushfires: Our Summer Fate

Ash Wednesday Fires
Fuel for Thought
Earth, Fire and Water
Hospitals Don't Burn Down
Cyclone Aftermath
Cyclone Tracy
Cyclone Approaching
NDO Exercise
Disasters: National Preparedness
Living with Disaster
Defence against Disaster
Granville Train Disaster
Protection in the Nuclear Age

Audio visual cassettes

Defence Against Disaster
Disasters
NDO Exercises
When will the Birds Return (Cyclone Tracy)
Cyclone Warnings for TV
Cyclone Namu, Solomon Is
Bay of Plenty (NZ) Earthquake
Mexico Earthquake
BLEVE (Boiling Liquid Expanding Vapour Explosion)
Hints for Holiday Safety
Holiday Survival Test
Foot and Mouth Disease
Floods including QLD and NSW
Bushfires: Our Summer Fate
Behaviour of Buildings in Bushfires
Ash Wednesday Fires
After the Holocaust (Nuclear)
On the Eighth Day (Nuclear Winter)
Threads (Nuclear)
Radiation 'Energy on the Move'
Drought
Anatomy of a Volcano (Mt St Helens)
Mt Erebus Air Disaster

**Available from the Defence Science and
Technology Organisation**

Address—Director General External Relations
Defence Science and Technology Organisation
Department of Defence
Canberra ACT 2600
Tel. (062) 66 4305

Publications

The DSTO Corporate Statement 1988
DSTO Recent Activities
DSTO Research News—quarterly newsletter

Copies of presentations giving general information about the organisation and its activities, as well as various information brochures and leaflets on specific projects and aspects of laboratory activities are also available.

Available from Aeronautical Research Laboratory (ARL)

DSTO Melbourne

GPO Box 4331

Melbourne VIC 3001

ARL—Structure and Information 1988

ARL Aircraft Systems Division Activities 1987

ARL Aircraft Structures Division Activities Brochure 1988

Available from Materials Research Laboratory (MRL)

DSTO Melbourne

PO Box 50

Ascot Vale VIC 3032

MRL—Structure and Information 1988

MRL—Staff and Staff Achievements 1986–87

MRL—Scientific Papers and Reports 1986–87

MRL—Research Highlights 1988

MRL—Consultancy Highlights 1988

From Horseshoe Nails to High-power Lasers—A History of Materials Research Laboratory

Available from Electronics Research Laboratory (ERL)

DSTO Salisbury

PO Box 1600

Salisbury SA 5108

ERL Organisation and Information—1988

Available from Surveillance Research Laboratory (SRL)

DSTO Salisbury

PO Box 1650

Salisbury SA 5108

A Guide to SRL—1988

Available from Weapons Systems Research Laboratory (WSRL)

DSTO Salisbury

PO Box 1700

Salisbury SA 5108

WSRL Information Handbook—1988

Audio visual cassettes

Available from Aeronautical Research Laboratory (ARL), Melbourne

Helicopter Transmission Fatigue Life Monitoring

Tacterm

Austower—Air Traffic Control Tower Simulator

Structural Fatigue Testing

Available from Materials Research Laboratory (MRL), Melbourne

The Role of MRL in Defence Materiel Production

Tungsten Alloy Penetrator development for Phalanx

Pyrotechnic Signal Launched from a Submarine

MRL in Support of the Minehunter Inshore Project

Coop—Influence Sweeping and the Stonefish Exercise Mine

The DSTO Laboratories at Salisbury, South Australia share a video unit which has the following videos available from:

The Public Relations Officer
Support and Services Organisation
PO Box 1500
Salisbury SA 5108.

The DSTO Laboratories in South Australia

*Munitions to Microchips—A History of DRCS and Woomera
Wresat*

Aeromed—Neo-Natal Retrieval Unit and Force Measuring Glove

Lasers

Barra—The New Sonar Buoy

Hoveroc

Jindalee

Available from the Office of Defence Production

Address—Director Marketing Operations

Office of Defence Production

Anzac Park West Building

Constitution Ave

Canberra ACT 2601

Tel: (062) 482872

Leaflets

Office of Defence Production

Capability Brochures

Ammunition Factory Footscray

Australian Government Clothing Factory

Electromagnetic Field Measurement

Garden Island Dockyard

Meteorology

Ordnance Factory Bendigo

Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong

The Ordnance Group

(Marine Engineering Technology)

The Ordnance Group (Gun Technology)

The Ordnance Group (Submarine Fleet)

The Proof and Experimental Organisation

Product Brochures

Air Transportable Crane Mk1

Ammunition

—Small Arms

—7.62mm ball F4

—Medium Calibre

—Phalanx

—40mm L60

—40mm L60 Break-up Shot

—40mm L60 HE Tracer

—40mm Practice Weighted and Plugged

—76mm Practice L25A3

—76mm HE/T L24A3

—105mm

—105mm HE M1

—105mm Blank F1

—105mm HC BE Smoke M84

—105mm WP Smoke M60

—105mm Illuminating M314A2

—105mm Practice

—4.5 inch

AN 40/60 Gun Mounting Bombs

—Practice BDU-33 C/B 25lb

—500lb GP Mk82 Mod 2 HE

Brass Cartridge Cases

Camping Stores

Ergonomic Office Furniture

Extended Range Propulsion Charge System – 7.62mm Blank
81mm Mortar Fuses – 9mm Parabellum
 – Proximity Fuse VT AN3 – .50 inch Ball F1
 – Point Detonating Fuse AN2 Mod 2 – 20mm Phalanx and M55A2
 – Point Detonating Fuse An306 – 30mm DEFA
F88 Weapon System – 105mm LZ (Tank)
Generating Equipment – 5 inch 54
 – Power Generating Equipment **Pyrotechnics/Demolition Materials**
 – Generator 15 KVA 115/200v – Birdfrite
 – Alternator 24v 100 amp – Coloured Smoke Grenade
 – Alternator 24v 160 amp – Firing Device Demolition
Grenade Tester – Plastic Explosive No 4
Handcuffs – Thunderflash
Propellants **Railway Signal Devices**
 – Single and double base **Recompression Chamber**
 – 5.56mm NATO Ball and Tracer **308 Target Barrels (Rifle)**
 – 7.62 NATO Ball and Tracer

Posters

F88 Weapon System

Video Tapes

Corporate Capabilities

- The Office of Defence Production
- Proof and Experimental Organisation

Factory Capabilities

- Australian Government Clothing Factory
- Garden Island Dockyard
- Explosives Factory Maribyrnong
- Mulwala Explosives Factory
- Munitions Filling Factory
- Ordnance Factory Bendigo
- Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong
- Small Arms Factory

Products

- Coloured Smoke Grenade
- Firing Device Demolition
- Range Clearing Machine
- Thunderflash

Public Relations Offices

Sydney

Navy

Mr K.F. Creighton
Remington Centre
Level 22
175 Liverpool Street
Sydney NSW 2000
Tel: (02) 359 2587

Army

Lieutenant Colonel R. Palk
Victoria Barracks
Paddington NSW 2021
Tel: (02) 339 3176

Air Force

Mrs E. Holtham
HQ OPCOM
RAAF Glenbrook NSW 2773
Tel: (047) 394 445

Melbourne

Navy

Mr G. Brooks
Victoria Barracks
St Kilda Road
MELBOURNE VIC 3004
Tel: (03) 697 4478

Army

Lieutenant Colonel K. Wolfe
Victoria Barracks
St Kilda Rd
MELBOURNE VIC 3004
Tel: (03) 697 6226

Air Force

Mr P. Johnson
Victoria Barracks
St Kilda Road
MELBOURNE VIC 3004
Tel: (03) 697 5255

Brisbane

Army

Lieutenant Colonel J. Hancock
Victoria Barracks
BRISBANE QLD 4000
Tel: (07) 233 4210

Air Force

Mr B.T. Noonan
RAAF Public Relations
3rd Floor
Watkins Pl, 288 Edwards St
BRISBANE QLD 4001
Tel: (07) 226 2602

Adelaide

Army

Major K. Boehme
Keswick Barracks
KESWICK SA 5035
Tel: (08) 293 9427

Perth

Navy/Air Force

Mr V.B. Jeffrey
HMAS Stirling
ROCKINGHAM WA 6168
Tel: (095) 27 0415

Army

Captain S. Delaney
Swan Barracks
Francis St
PERTH WA 6000
Tel: (09) 328 0650

Hobart

Tri-Service

Captain D. Tyler
Anglesea Barracks
HOBART TAS 7077
Tel: (002) 212 205

Townsville

Captain P. Scaman
Lavarack Barracks
TOWNSVILLE QLD 4810
Tel: (077) 717346

Recruiting Centres

The following abbreviations are used:

DFRC - Defence Force Recruiting Centre

ACIC - Army Careers Information Centre

DFCRC - Defence Force Careers Reference Centre

New South Wales

DFRC

ACIC

323 Castlereagh St

Londsdale St

SYDNEY NSW 2000

Tel: (02) 219 5555

ACIC

143 Blacktown Rd

BLACKTOWN NSW 2148

Tel: (02) 641 3484

DFCRC

384 Hunter St

NEWCASTLE NSW 2300

Tel: (049) 26 3011 26 3011

DFCRC

306 Crown St

WOLLONGONG NSW 2500

Tel: (042) 28 1855

ACIC

700 Canterbury Road

BELMORE NSW 2912

Tel: (02) 581 448

DFCRC

520 Swift St

ALBURY NSW 2640

Tel: (060) 218277

ACIC

Training Dept

Military Rd

LISMORE NSW 2480

Tel: (066) 21 6111

DFCRC

60 Macquarie

PARRAMATTA NSW 2150

Tel: (02) 635 1511

ACIC

Cnr Docker and Dobb Sts

WAGGA WAGGA NSW 2650

Victoria

DFRC and DFCRC

332 St Kilda Road

MELBOURNE VIC 3004

Tel: (03) 687 9755

TOWNSVILLE QLD 4810

Tel: (077) 717346

DFCRC

282 Lyttleton Terrace

BENDIGO VIC 3351

Tel: (054) 43 8008

ACIC

Cnr Dublin Rd & Railway Avenue

EAST RINGWOOD VIC 3135

Tel: (03) 879 2381

ACIC

Cnr Ragland and High Sts

PRESTON VIC 3072

Tel: (03) 484 6291

ACIC

Training Depot

Curtis St

BALLARAT VIC 3350

Tel: (053) 31 1240

ACIC

Londsdale St

DANDENONG VIC 3175

Tel: (03) 791 5110

DFCRC

109 Yarra St

GEELONG VIC 3220

Tel: (052) 21 1588

South Australia

DFRC

Commonwealth Centre

55 Currie St

ADELAIDE SA 5000

Tel: (08) 237 6222

Queensland

DFRC

288 Edward St

BRISBANE QLD 4000

Tel: (07) 226 2626

DFRC

Commonwealth Building

Cnr Walker and Stanley Sts

TOWNSVILLE QLD 4810

Tel: (077) 72 4566

ACIC

Quay St

BUNDABERG QLD 4670

Tel: (071) 73 1152

Western Australia

DFRC and DFCRC

Caga Centre

256 Adelaide Terrace

PERTH WA 6000

Tel: (09) 325 6222

Tasmania

DFRC

162 Macquarie St

HOBART TAS 7000

Tel: (002) 34 7077

DFCRC

42 Brisbane St

LAUNCESTON TAS 7250

Tel: (003) 31 1005

Australian Capital Territory

DFCRC

Shop C, Ground Floor

Techway Building

62 Northbourne Ave

CANBERRA ACT 2601

Tel: (062) 572 311

Appendix 7—

Acts administered by the Minister for Defence

Air Force Act 1923

Approved Defence Projects Protection Act 1947

Cockatoo and Schnapper Islands Act 1949

Control of Naval Waters Act 1918

Defence Act 1903 (a)

Defence Force Discipline Act 1982

Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Act 1973

Defence Forces Retirement and Death Benefits (Pension Increases) Acts

Defence Forces Retirement Benefits Acts

Defence Forces Retirement Benefits Fund (Distribution of Surplus to Pensioners) Act 1976

Defence Housing Authority Act 1987

Defence (Parliamentary Candidates) Act 1969

Defence (Special Undertakings) Act 1952

Geneva Conventions Act 1957 (Part IV) (b)

Naval Defence Act 1910

Royal Australian Air Force Veterans' Residences Act 1953

Services Trust Funds Act 1947

Supply and Development Act 1939

War Service Estates Act 1942

Williamstown Dockyard Employees Act 1987

- Notes: (a) *Defence Act 1903*. Sections 40A, 61, 61A, 61B, 61C, 118A and 118B are administered by the Minister for Employment, Education and Training. They deal with wartime service obligations. Sections 58A to 58Y, dealing with financial conditions of service for members of the Defence Force, are administered by the Minister for Industrial Relations. Paragraph 124(1)(qba), dealing with war graves is administered by the Minister for Veterans' Affairs.
- (b) *Geneva Conventions Act 1957*. Parts I, II, III and V, dealing with the enforcement of the Geneva Conventions, are administered by the Attorney-General.

Appendix 8— Non Statutory Bodies

Emergency Broadcasting Committee

The Committee was established by Ministerial Directive in 1963 to review existing broadcasting facilities and to recommend what additional facilities would be required to maintain broadcasting communications following a major disaster arising from civil defence or natural causes.

The Committee meets only when required. It did not meet during the year; the next meeting is tentatively planned for late 1988. The membership of the Committee is:

Chairman:	Director General, Natural Disasters Organisation
Membership:	Representatives from: Joint Communications Staff Department of Defence Department of Transport and Communications Australian Broadcasting Corporation Australian Telecommunications Commission
Co-opted Members:	Representatives from: Federation of Australian Commercial Radio Broadcasters Federation of Australian Commercial Television Stations

No remuneration is paid to the members. The representative members are appointed by their organisation on the basis of position and expertise.

Defence Industry Committee

The Committee advises the Minister and Department on defence industry issues, stockpiling of strategic materials and the retention or creation of manufacturing capacity to meet Service requirements.

The Committee meets four times a year. The membership of the committee is:

Chairman:	Mr J.A.L. Hooke OBE Chairman and Chief Executive Amalgamated Wireless (A'Asia) Ltd
Business Members:	Mr B.S. Price Chairman Hawker de Havilland Ltd. Mr J.A. Davidson AO Former Chairman and Chief Executive Commonwealth Industrial Gases Ltd. Sir Peter Abels Managing Director and Chief Executive TNT Ltd.

Sir Eric Neal AC
 Deputy Chairman
 Mr J.B. Prescott
 Chief Executive Officer
 BHP Steel
 Mr J.G. Bagshaw
 Managing Director
 General Motors Holden
 Senior Defence Member: Chief of Capital Procurement
 Members: Assistant Chief of Naval Staff—Logistics
 Assistant Chief of the General Staff—Materiel
 Assistant Chief of the Air Staff—Engineering
 Chief of Defence Production
 Chief Defence Scientist
 Chief of Logistic Development
 Deputy Secretary
 Department of Industry, Technology and Commerce
 First Assistant Secretary
 Defence and Government Division
 Department of Finance
 Executive Member: First Assistant Secretary
 Industry Policy and Operations

Business members of the Committee are invited to join by the Minister for Defence. No remuneration is paid to the members but costs associated with attendance at meetings are met by the Department.

In 1987–88 the Committee monitored the progress and effectiveness of the defence offsets program and initiated two studies which are reviewing the civilian transport infrastructure and barriers to Australian industry when tendering for defence work. The Committee supervised the Industrial Mobilisation Courses which in 1988 was held in Sydney, Melbourne and Adelaide. Forty-eight representatives from industry, commerce and tertiary institutions, thirty-five from the federal and State Public Services and nineteen from the Australian Defence Force participated in these courses during the year. The Committee was kept advised of major projects like the new submarines, the ANZAC Ship and F/A-18 introduction

Munitions Board of Management

The Board was constituted by the Minister for Defence Support on 15 July 1984. The role of the Board is to provide direction to management, provide a focus for decision-making and to regularly review the performance of Defence munitions production activities. Its objectives are to provide direction and guidance to management on improving the munitions industry's efficiency and increase overseas sales of defence products, and to review, monitor and provide guidance on operational and financial performance of the Defence munitions establishments and on employee workplace issues. The Board met four times during 1987–88.

The current membership of the Board is:

Chairman: First Assistant Secretary Production
 Office of Defence Production
 Members: Miss A. Catling, Reserve Bank of Australia
 Mr M. Nicolaidis, Federal Industrial Officer
 Association of Draughting, Supervisory and Technical
 Employees

Mr H. Holowell, President, Victorian Branch
Federated Ironworkers Association of Australia
Dr P. Wilkinson, ICI Australia Limited
Chief of Logistic Development
Assistant Chief of the General Staff—Material
First Assistant Secretary Industry Policy and Operations
Division,
Capital Procurement Organisation
First Assistant Secretary
Corporate Development Division, Office of Defence
Production
Special Adviser Production, Office of Defence Production
Finance Member, First Assistant Secretary
Budget and Support Division, Office of Defence Production

Members are appointed by the Minister for Defence for an unspecified term. Non-departmental members are paid a daily fee in accordance with the Remuneration Tribunal's Determination No. 18 of 1987.

Funds to meet fees, travel and accommodation expenses for external members are paid out of the Office of Defence Production vote for administrative expenses. Departmental members pay for travel out of their respective administrative vote.

Secretariat services are provided by the Office of Defence Production.

In March 1987, the Minister approved the continuance of arrangements for the Board and agreed to a review in 1988 of its terms of reference and the consideration of options for replacing the Board to adequately reflect the role it plays in the processes of consultation and outside advice. This review, and the assessment of options, is currently being prepared and should be completed by the end of August 1988.

Australian Shipping Defence Council

The Council was formed on 25 February 1982 with the approval of the Minister for Defence. The objectives of the Council are to provide liaison between the Royal Australian Navy and those who control and operate Australian Merchant Shipping in time of peace in order to plan for its safety and protection in times of threat, tension, emergency and war.

The Council meets twice a year and is hosted in turn by participating members of the Council. The membership of the Council is:

Chairman:

Members:

Deputy Chief of Naval Staff
Director General Movements and Transport Defence
Director of Naval Force Development
Director of Air Force Development
Deputy Secretary
Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade
First Assistant Secretary,
Marine Operations Division, Department of Transport and
Communications
Chairman
Australian National Maritime Association
General Manager
Refining and Supply
AMPOL Petroleum Limited

General Manager Transport
BHP Company Limited
Chief Executive
TNT Bulkships
Chairman
Australian National Line
Chief General Manager
Howard Smith Industries
Staff Officer (Trade)
Directorate of Naval Operations

Secretary:

There is no specified term of appointment to the Council and there is no remuneration paid to members.

Committee For Employer Support Of Reserve Forces

The Committee was established on 23 February 1977 by the Minister for Defence, following a Millar Committee Recommendation 'that a committee for employer support for the Army Reserve be established, with an element in each State'. The Committee's role is 'to encourage employers to promote service in the Reserves of the Defence Force.'

The Committee consists of a National Executive and committees at State level, with the National Executive composed of:

- Chairman (appointed by the Minister of Defence);
- Deputy Chairman;
- ACTU representative;
- Defence Central Representative;
- An Army Reserve representative;
- A Navy representative, normally the Director, Naval Reserves and Cadets;
- An Air Force representative, normally the Director of Reserves—Air Force; and
- The Officer filling the Appointment of Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff—Army Reserve.

The 1987-88 budget for the Committee was \$152 000, primarily used for activities promoting employer support by National and State Committees.

Army Reserve Advisory Council

Following Millar Committee Recommendation 19 'that an Army Reserve advisory council be established to advise the CGS on matters affecting the Reserve and the civil community', the Council was established on 10 February 1976 by the Minister for Defence and has the role 'to advise the CGS on matters affecting the Army Reserve'.

These matters include:

- any changes necessary or proposed which affect the Army Reserve, not excluding policy matters;
- management and other practices in the Army Reserve in light of changes in comparable civilian activities; and
- other measures which might be taken to promote interest in the Army Reserve.

The composition of the Council is:

- Assistant Chief of the General Staff—Army Reserve (Chairman);
- Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff—Army Reserve;
- an employer representative;
- an ACTU representative;
- a Defence Central representative;
- a representative of the Returned Services League;
- a behavioural scientist; and
- a young ARes officer.

Appointment to the Council is usually for three years with eligibility for reappointment for a further period of not more than three years.

The Council had a 1987-88 budget of \$3 000, which was used for their travel to the annual Council meeting at Army Office. An agenda of topical items was addressed to pursue compliance with the role of the Council.

Joint Services Staff College Advisory Council

The Council was formed in 1976 at the instigation of the Chiefs of Staff Committee. Its functions are 'to provide advice to the Commandant, JSSC on academic matters relating to the JSSC and to provide advice to the CDF and the Secretary of Defence on those matters referred to it'.

Specific tasks are to:

- review each course (two per year) as a whole on its completion;
- offer advice and comments as a basis for the Commandant's report to the Chiefs of Staff Committee at the conclusion of each course; and
- advise the Commandant, JSSC of changes both in content and methodology considered necessary in the light of experience and changing circumstances.

Council members are as follows:

Chairman:	Air Chief Marshal Sir Neville McNamara, KBE, AO, FC, AE (retired)—appointed June 1987 for a three year period
Academic Members:	Professor G.V.H. Wilson (Rector, Australian Defence Force Academy)—appointed September 1986 for a three year period Doctor C.M. Bell (Senior Research Fellow, Australian National University)—appointed October 1986 for a three year period
Military Members:	Major General H.J. Coates, AO, MBE (Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Policy)) Brigadier S.N. Gower (Commandant JSSC)—ex officio member
Department of Defence Member:	Mr J.M. Moten (Deputy Secretary B, Department of Defence)

As the Chairman and the academic members act in a consultancy capacity, remuneration in the form of local travel and attendance allowances is determined by the Chiefs of Staff Committee in consultation with the Department's Management Improvement and Manpower Policy Division. These allowances are paid from Army funds as the Army is the parent body responsible for the administration of the JSSC.

Defence Press and Broadcasting Committee

The Committee dates from 1952 when the Government invited media representatives to participate in a scheme of voluntary restraint regarding the publication of material bearing on national security.

The Committee was formed to administer the D Notice (Defence Notice to the Press) system. D Notices outline information which, if published, would be detrimental to Australia's security. D Notices are issued, withdrawn and amended on the authority of the Committee.

The Committee is chaired by the Minister for Defence and comprises four Defence members on an ex officio basis (the Secretary, the Chief of the Defence Force, First Assistant Secretary Policy Co-ordination and Director Joint Intelligence Organization) and a wide representation from Australia's media organisations.

There was no requirement for the Committee to meet in the reporting period, and no expenses were incurred.

The Australian Defence Force Academy Advisory Council

The ADFA Council is required under Part 6-2 of the agreement between the University of New South Wales and the Commonwealth of Australia dated 7 May 1981 to report at least annually to the Minister for Defence and the University. Copies of the 1987 Report are available from the Academy.

Index of Major Topics

- accommodation 36
- Acts administered by the Minister for Defence 142
- addresses, public relations and recruiting offices 131-141
- Administrative Appeals Tribunal 77, 78
- administrative review 77-78
- Administrative Service Officer structure 72
- Aerospace Technologies of Australia 49, 50, 98, 132
- aircraft navigation system 45
- aircraft structures 42
- air defence weapon system 29
- airfield surveillance radars 22
- Air Force 13, 87
 - Airmen/Airwomen permanent engagement scheme 15
 - assistance to civil community 15
 - Butterworth, Malaysia 15
 - force structure 13
 - northern airfields 14
 - personnel management 15
 - separation rates 16
 - strike and reconnaissance force 13
 - tactical fighter force 14
- air warfare 26
- Albion explosives factory 51
- Ammunition Factory, Footscray 97
- Anzac Ship Project 23
- apprentices prizes 73
- archives and historical studies 78
- arms control and disarmament measures 46, 59
- Army 9, 82
 - assistance to the civil community 10
 - career management 10
 - counter terrorism 10
 - family support 12
 - force development initiatives 9
 - force structure 9
 - health 12
 - integrated distribution system 12
 - logistic support force 12
 - logistic initiatives 12
 - movement control 12
 - northern basing 9
 - open ended enlistment 10
 - ordnance detection and disposal 10
 - personnel management 10
 - survey operations 10
 - training 10
- Army Reserve Advisory Council 146
- ASEAN 53, 60
- assistance to the civil community 10, 15
- Auditor-General's reports 71, 119-129
- Austaccs 31
- Australian Defence Force 1
 - command, control and communications 1
 - Command Study 1
 - conditions of service 3
 - exercises 3
 - family support 6
 - force planning and operational concepts 2
 - logistic support 2
 - personnel resource strategy 4
 - reserves 5
 - separation rates 5
 - service health 6
 - stockholding policy 3
- Australian Defence Force Academy
 - Advisory Council 148
- Australian Government Clothing Factory 97
- Australian industrial base 31
 - defence offsets 32
 - defence requirements 31
 - disposal of machinery and plant 34
 - industry assistance 32
 - industry structure 31
 - local content 32
- Australian industry involvement 32
- Australian industry mission to the US 33
- Australian Ordnance Council 47
- Australian Shipping Defence Council 145
- battlefield surveillance equipment 45
- battlefield thermal imager 45
- Black Hawk helicopters 28
- Board of management, Munitions 144
- Boeing 707 27
 - additional aircraft 27
 - tanker conversion 27
- Brunei, defence relations with 60
- Butterworth, Malaysia 15, 60

- cadet, trainee and apprenticeship schemes 114
- Cairo International Defence Equipment Exhibition 33
- capital equipment procurement 20
- air warfare 26
- intelligence and surveillance 21
- land warfare 28
- maritime warfare 23
- project management 21
- strike and interdiction 23
- capital facilities 34
- command, control and intelligence 36
- Defence facilities review 37
- environmental protection 37
- HMAS Stirling 35
- improvements in planning and management 38
- living-in accommodation 36
- master planning 37
- property acquisition and disposal 38
- rationalisation and redevelopment 36
- support of northern operations 34
- Capital Procurement Organisation 20
- management objectives 20
- project activity 21
- project management 21
- career development program for engineers 72
- career management 10, 15
- civil defence 55
- civilianisation 75
- combat clothing and personal equipment 29
- combat systems trainer 26
- combat tactical message switch 45
- command, control, communications and intelligence 30, 36
- commercialisation of defence technologies 33
- committees, parliamentary and party 71, 115
- Committee for Employer Support of Reserve Forces 146
- conditions of service, ADF 3
- Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal activities 4
- Hamilton Report 6
- Pilot retention bonus 4
- revised administrative arrangements 3
- service housing 36, 53
- service pay 4
- consultancies 75
- contracting, defence 68
- controls on dual use technology 33
- Cooksey Review 37
- corporate services 57
- councils 145-148
- Army Reserve Advisory Council 146
- Australian Defence Force Academy Advisory Council 148
- Australian Shipping Defence Council 145
- Joint Services Staff College Advisory Council 147
- courses attended by Senior Executive Service officers 114
- courses conducted by the Department 113
- DDG modernisation 24
- Defaussat 30
- Defence
- Act 142
- contracting 68
- corporate services 57
- exports 33
- facilities 34
- force development 19
- industry 31
- information services 47
- integrated secure communications network 30
- intelligence organisations 63
- logistics 66
- Logistics Organisation 66
- offsets 32
- Operational Concepts and Capabilities Committee 2
- outlays 1, 20, 39, 57, 64, 90
- Policy Information Paper 58
- production establishments 49, 97-99
- overseas relations activities 51-53, 58
- satellite network 30
- Signals Directorate 36, 63
- spending 64, 90
- Support Centre Woomera 47
- technology 33
- Defence and the community
- disaster relief and emergency assistance 15, 54

major non-emergency assistance	10	Defence Support Centre	
Defence Contracting Organisation	68	Woomera	47
Defence Cooperation	51	Department of Defence	
Asean	53	civilian staffing	72
Papua New Guinea	52	Defence contracting	68
South Pacific	52	equal employment opportunity	74
Defence corporate services	57	financial administration	90
Defence exports	33	industrial democracy	73
Defence Force		information systems development	67
Discipline Act	142	occupational health and safety	73
Remuneration Tribunal	4	resources	57
Defence force development	19	reviews	69, 71
capital equipment procurement	20	staff development and training	113
elements in force development	19	Departmental development	
defence housing	53	programs	72, 113
Defence Housing Authority	53	Desine	67
defence-in-depth	19	disarmament	46, 57
Defence Industry Committee	143	Discon	30
Defence Press and Broadcasting		disaster relief and emergency	
Committee	148	assistance	53
Defence production	48	civil defence	55
business directions	48	disaster responses	54
corporate philosophy	48	emergency assistance	54
progress on existing major		information	55
projects	51	Natural Disasters Organisation	53
reforms in financial and administration		planning	55
systems	50	public awareness and information	
Defence Science and Technology		programs	55
Organisation	39	resources	39
advice on policy and equipment		support program	55
selection	42	training	55
Australian Ordnance Council	47	Disnet	47
commercialisation	41	disposal of machinery and plant	34
contracts and technology			
transfer	41	efficiency scrutinies	71
Defence information services	47	electronic warfare support	
function and structure	40	measures	22
new equipment development	45	emergency assistance	54
objectives	39	Emergency Broadcasting	
outlays	39	Committee	143
problem solving/support to the		engineering equipment	29
ADF	43	equal employment opportunity	74
review of DSTO	40	equipment projects	
specialist non-defence assistance and		airfield surveillance radars	22
industry support	46	Anzac Ship	23, 42
Technical Cooperation Program	47	Austaacs	31
technology base	42	Australian frigates	24
Defence Signals Directorate	36, 63	battlefield thermal imager	45
Defence specialist support	39	Black Hawk helicopters	28
Defence spending	64, 90	Boeing 707 aircraft	27
Defence outlays in 1987/88	90	Boeing 707 tanker conversion	27
Five Year Defence Program	64	combat clothing and personal	
resources and financial management		equipment	29
improvement activities	70		

combat systems trainer	26	explosive ordnance disposal	10
DDG modernisation	24, 51	external courses	113
Defence integrated secure communications network	30	F-111	13
Defence satellite network	30	F/A-18 aircraft	14, 23
Desine	67	F/A-18 operational flight trainer	23
electronic warfare support measures	22	facilities, review of	37
engineering equipment	29	factories	49, 97
F/A-18 aircraft	23	Ammunition Factory Footscray	97
F/A-18 operational flight trainer	23	Australian Government Clothing Factory	97
FFG07 class frigates	24	Explosives Factory Maribyrnong	97
FFG helicopter modification	24	Guided Weapons and Electronic Support Facility	97
field catering equipment	29	Mulwala Explosives Factory	97
Hamel 105mm light field gun	29, 51	Munitions Filling Factory	97
inshore minehunters	25	Ordnance Factory Bendigo	97
laser airborne depth sounder	22	Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong	97
light vehicles	28	Small Arms Factory Lithgow	97
maritime command support system	31	family support	6, 12
medium trucks	28	fast time acoustic analysis system	22
mine countermeasures force	25, 43	FFG-7 class frigates	24
mine warfare systems centre	26	FFG helicopter modification	24
minesweepers	25	field catering equipment	29
mobile air traffic control system	28	films and video	133-138
Mulloka sonar	26	financial administration, Departmental	69, 75
naval tactical trainer	26	Financial Management Improvement Program	75
navigation and survey equipment	22	Financial Systems Redevelopment Project	76
new small arms	29, 51	financial statistics	90
new submarines	23	Five Power Defence Arrangements	60
Nulka	25, 45, 51	Five Year Defence Plan	64
over-the-horizon radar	21, 42, 45	force development initiatives	9
P3C operational flight trainer enhancement	28	force planning and operational concepts	2
Parakeet	30	force structure development	19
PC9 training aircraft	26	freedom of information	77
Perentie	28	FOI requests and their outcome	77
Raven	30	FOI revenue and costs	78
Seahawk helicopters	24, 51	FOI training	78
semi-trailers and prime movers	28	Freedom of Information Section 8 Statement (see separate volume)	
sonobuoy developments	25	frigates	24
surveillance and night vision equipment	22	Garden Island Dockyard	98
survey motor launches	26	gliding 250kg bomb	42
very low level air defence weapon system	29	Government Aircraft Factories (replacement by Aerospace Technologies of Australia)	49, 50, 98
voice security equipment	31		
environmental protection	37		
Exercise Kangaroo	89		
exercises and exchanges	3		
Explosives Factory Maribyrnong	97		

Guided weapon and electronic support facility 97
Gulf mine countermeasures unit 8

Hamel 105mm light field gun 29, 51
Hamilton Report 6
harpoon engagement training aid 25
health 6, 12
helicopter modification 24
historical collection 78
historical studies and archives 78
HMAS Stirling 35
House of Representatives Standing Committee on Finance and Public Administration 119

industrial democracy 73
industry structure 31
information systems policy 67
graduate Computer Systems officers 67
information systems development 67
Project Desine 67
Inquiry into Australia's relations with the South Pacific 116
Inquiry into Safety Procedures relating to Nuclear Powered or Armed Vessels in Australian waters 118
Inquiry into the Auditor-General's Efficiency Audit Report on AGPS 118
Inquiry into the Efficiency Audit by the Auditor-General on the Department of Housing and Construction 119
Inquiry into the Efficiency Scrutiny Program 119
Inquiry into Personnel Wastage Rates in the Australian Defence Force 115
Inquiry into the Priorities for Australia's Mine Countermeasure Needs 116
Inquiry into the Management of Australia's Defence 115
intelligence and surveillance 21
internal audit 71
international collaboration 32
controls on dual use technology 33
defence exports 33
international cooperation 47
international defence relations 58-63
international logistics arrangements 67

Jervis Bay 8, 37

Jindalee 22
Joint Committee of Public Accounts 117

Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade 115
Defence Sub-Committee 115
Sub-Committee on the South Pacific 116

Joint Committee on Public Works 117

Joint Committee on Publications 118
joint facilities 59
Joint Intelligence Organization 63
Joint Services Staff College Advisory Council 147

Kangaroo 89 2, 3
Kariwara hydrophone array 45
Kuru Muna 45

laser airborne depth sounder 22
light vehicles 28
logistics 66
computing centre 68
corporate plan for logistic support of the ADF 2
development of an ADF stockholding policy 3
development of joint administrative planning procedures 3
information systems policy 67
supply systems redevelopment 69
support 66

major non-emergency assistance 10
Malaysia, defence relations with 60
manpower and personnel resources 4
Manpower Systems Redevelopment Project 72
maritime

command support system 31
defence 7
exercises 3
warfare 23

master planning 37
media relations 77
medium trucks 28
mine countermeasures 25, 43
minehunter inshore project 25
Mine Warfare Systems Centre 26
mobile air traffic control system 28
Munitions Board of Management 144
munitions factories 97
Mullocka sonar 26

Mulwala Explosives Factory	97	P3C operational flight trainer	
Munitions Filling Factory, St Marys	97	enhancement	28
national commitments (disaster relief and emergency assistance)	53	Parakeet	30
National Consultative Group of Service Spouses	6	Papua New Guinea, defence relations with	52, 60
natural disasters and civil defence	53	parliamentary and party committees	71, 115
operational achievements	54	PC9 trainer aircraft	26
planning achievements	55	Perentie	28
public awareness and information programs	55	personnel	
support programs	55	civilian statistics	103
training	55	management improvement and financial services	69
Natural Disasters Organisation	53	review and reform	69
naval tactical trainer	26	Service statistics	103
navigation and survey	22	Philippines, defence relations with	53
Navy	6, 79	pilot retention bonus	4
Gulf mine countermeasures unit	8	Policy Information Paper, Defence	19, 58
logistics	8	post separation employment	75
personnel matters	8	posting policy	8
posting policy	8	prizes, apprentices	73
reserves	8	Program Budgeting	65
restructuring	8	progress on approved projects	21
surface combatant force	7	project management	21
trained force	8	project overview	21
two ocean navy	7	property acquisition and disposal	38
new small arms	29, 51	publications	131
new submarines	23	public information and external review	76
New Zealand, defence relations with	62	archives	78
non-emergency assistance	10	external review	76
non-statutory bodies	143	FOI requests and their outcome	77
northern airfields	14	FOI revenue and costs	78
Northern Command	2	FOI training	78
northern deployment of Regular Army units	9	freedom of information	77
Nulka project	25, 45, 51	historical studies	78
occupational health and safety	73	media relations	77
Office of Defence Production	48	ombudsman activities	77
business directions	48	public information	76, 131
corporate philosophy	48	public relations	76
ombudsman activities	77	sources and addresses	131
Opposition Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Veterans' Affairs	119	radar	21, 42, 43, 45
order of battle	79	radar cross-section measurement	43
ordnance detection and disposal	10	Raven	30
Ordnance Factory Bendigo	97	reactive armour	42
Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong	97	recruiting centres	140
organisation reviews	71	recruitment	4, 108
over-the-horizon radar	21, 42, 45	reforms in financial and administrative systems	69, 75
P3C Orion	15	regional security	60
		relocation of explosives facilities	51
		reserve forces	5, 8

current status	5	Middle Managers' Development Program	113
resources and financial planning	64	occupational health and safety	73
introduction of program		post separation employment	75
budgeting	65	review of personnel development	72
financial obligations at 30 June 1988	64	Secretary's apprentices' prizes	73
financial result for 1987/88	64	work skills	73
the Five Year Defence Program	64	stockholding policy (ADF)	3
restructuring	69	strategic and international policy	57
reviews and reform		alliance cooperation with the US	58
civilian personnel development	72	impact of the Policy Information Paper	58
facilities review	37	planning activity	58
general	69	regional cooperation	60
Hamilton	6	strategic planning	57
organisation	71	strike and interdiction	23
productivity	70	studies assistance	114
rocket launches	46	submarines	23
Salisbury production development facility	51	support of northern operations	34
Seahawk helicopters	24, 51	surface combatant force	7
Secretary's apprentices' prizes	73	surveillance	
semi-trailer and prime mover project	28	airfield surveillance radars	22
Senate Estimates Committee E	118	electronic warfare support measures	22
Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Public Administration	119	fast time acoustic analysis system	22
Senate Standing Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade	118	survey motor launches	26
separation rates	5	survey operations	10
service health	6	tactical fighter force	14
service housing	36, 53	tetryl replacement	43
service pay	4	Thailand, defence relations with	53, 60
Singapore, defence relations with	60	trained force	4
Small Arms Factory, Lithgow	31, 97	trainer aircraft, PC9	26
Small Arms Replacement Project	31	training and staff development	73, 113
Sonobuoy developments	25	trials of defence equipment	45
South-East Asia, defence relations with	60	two ocean navy	7
South Pacific and Papua New Guinea, defence relations with	60	unexploded munitions	10
specialist non-defence assistance	46	United Nations	46
staff development and training, civilian	113	United States, defence relations with	58
Administrative Service Officer structure	72	very low level air defence weapon system	29
career development program for engineers	72	voice security equipment	31
civilianisation	75	weapons systems avionics	43
consultancies	75	Williamstown Dockyard	50
equal employment opportunity	74	Williamstown Dockyard Employees Act	50
graduate recruitment and development	113	wing reinforcement	43
industrial democracy	73	Woomera	47
		work skills	73

DEFENCE REPORT 1987-88

APPENDIX 9

Freedom of Information Section 8 Statement

Australian Government Publishing Service
Canberra

© Commonwealth of Australia 1988

ISBN 0 644 08364 6 (set)

ISBN 0 644 08450 2

This work is copyright. Apart from any use as permitted under the *Copyright Act 1968*, no part may be reproduced by any process without written permission from the Director Publishing and Marketing, AGPS. Inquiries should be directed to the Manager, AGPS Press, Australian Government Publishing Service, GPO Box 84, Canberra, ACT 2601.

Printed in Australia by Better Printing Service, 44 Paterson Parade, Queanbeyan NSW 2620

Foreword

Within the Department of Defence, including the Navy, Army and Air Force, is replicated most of the activities which occur in the community at large as well as those of a purely military nature. This results in a great variety of specialist organisational forms and functions which are impractical to enumerate in detail. Hence the detail in this statement is generally given only down to approximately the Commonwealth public service divisional/first assistant secretary level and two star military rank level (divisions in the case of Navy Office and Air Force Office; branches in the case of Army Office). The identity, location and function of Defence factories and laboratories, and the composition and function of those standing bodies which provide for outside participation in Defence activities are given.

The powers referred to are those decision-making and other powers affecting members of the public in the exercise of the functions instanced.

Categories of documents maintained are listed. To request access to documents of the Department it is not necessary to make an application under the Freedom of Information Act but if it is decided to make a request under the FOI Act it should be made in the manner and to the address given in the latter part of this volume. The addresses and telephone numbers of Defence Regional Offices and establishments, and Service headquarters and units are included in the Commonwealth Government section of capital city and local telephone directories. Non-FOI enquiries about local matters within their areas of responsibility may be made of them.

A chart which outlines the Defence Higher Organisation, divisions (branches in the case of Army) and above, is at the rear of this volume and may be folded out for reference when consulting other parts of this volume.

This statement is a snapshot of the Defence organisation and the functions of its elements as at 30 June 1988. It is to be expected that changes will progressively occur after this date.

Contents

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENCE

Establishment

Organisation

The Chief of the Defence Force and the Secretary

The Chief of the Defence Force

The Secretary

Headquarters Australian Defence Force

Vice Chief of the Defence Force

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Policy)

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Operations)

Judge Advocate General

Surgeon General Australian Defence Force

Subordinate headquarters and establishments

Navy Office

Chief of Naval Staff

Deputy Chief of Naval Staff

Naval Development Division

Naval Personnel Division

Naval Logistics Division

Naval Materiel Division

Fleet Command

Naval Support Command

Naval Area Commands

Army Office

Chief of the General Staff

Deputy Chief of the General Staff

Army Operations Branch

Army Personnel Branch

Army Logistics Branch

Army Materiel Branch

Office of the Chief of Reserves — Army

Army Commands

General Officer Commanding Land Command

Divisional Headquarters Nos. 1–3, Brigades Nos. 1, 3 to 9, 11 and 13

General Officer Commanding Logistic Command

General Officer Commanding Training Command

Commanders Military Districts

Commandant, Royal Military College, Duntroon

Air Force Office

Chief of the Air Staff

Deputy Chief of the Air Staff

Office of the Chief of the Air Staff

Air Force Development Division

Air Force Personnel Division

Air Force Engineering Division

Air Force Materiel Division

Air Force Supply Division

Operational Command

Support Command

Deputy Secretary A

Human Resources Division

Management Improvement and Manpower Policy Division

- Inspector-General Division
- Policy Coordination Division
- Deputy Secretary B
 - Strategic and International Policy Division
 - Force Development and Analysis Division
 - Resources and Financial Programs Division
- Capital Procurement Organisation
 - Resources and Project Support Division
 - Industry Policy and Operations Division
 - Project Development and Communications Division
- Defence Logistics Organisation
 - Logistics Review Group
 - Logistics Development Division
 - Services Logistics and Engineering
 - Facilities and Property Division
 - Information Systems Policy Division
 - Defence Contracting Organisation
- Defence Science and Technology Organisation
 - Chief Defence Scientist
 - Science for Policy Division
 - Science Programs and Administration Division
 - DSTO overseas representation
 - DSTO laboratories
 - Other smaller DSTO organisations reporting to DSTO's Central Office in Canberra
 - The Australian Ordnance Council
- Office of Defence Production
 - Production Division
 - Budget and Support Division
 - Corporate Development Division
 - Establishments
- Department of Defence Regional Offices
- Outrider organisations
 - Joint Intelligence Organization
 - Defence Signals Directorate
 - Natural Disasters Organisation
- Arrangements for outside participation
- Categories of documents
 - Documents as part of a register or otherwise with another enactment, where access is subject to a fee or other charge
 - Documents customarily made available to the public free of charge upon request
 - Documents available for purchase by the public in accordance with normal arrangements
 - Other documents
- Facilities for access
- Freedom of Information
 - Procedures and initial contact points
 - Authorised 'Denial Authorities'
- DEFENCE PORTFOLIO AUTHORITIES**
- Council of Defence
- Defence Committee
- Munitions Board of Management
- Royal Australian Navy Central Canteens Board

Appendixes:
List of abbreviations and acronyms
Commonwealth acts administered by the Minister for Defence
Defence Higher Organisation

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENCE

This statement is correct to 30 June 1988 and replaces the statement published in the *Defence Report 1986–87*, dated 14 October 1987.

Establishment

The Department of Defence was established by the Governor-General in Council on 1 January 1901. On 13 November 1939 it was renamed the Department of Defence Co-ordination and, at the same time, the Departments of the Navy, the Army and Air were established. The Department was renamed as the Department of Defence on 14 April 1942. The Departments of Navy, the Army and Air were abolished on 30 November 1973. The functions of these departments were then transferred to the Department of Defence. The research and development function of the former Department of Supply was transferred to the Department of Defence on 1 July 1975. The Department of Defence Support was established in May 1982 and it assumed responsibility for the Dockyard Secretariat and the day to day administration of the Defence Science and Technology Organisation laboratories. Following the change of government in March 1983, the laboratories reverted to the Department of Defence, and in December 1984 the Department of Defence Support was abolished and most of its functions became the responsibility of the Office of Defence Production in the Department of Defence.

Organisation

The Defence organisation is made up of the three arms of the Australian Defence Force (ADF) and the Department of Defence. The ADF is under the command of the Chief of the Defence Force (CDF). The Department of Defence is headed by the Secretary.

The CDF is supported by staff within the Headquarters Australian Defence Force (HQADF). This support is provided by the Vice Chief of the Defence Force (VCDF) who is the principal staff officer in HQADF, by the Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Policy) (ACPOL) and by the Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Operations) (ACOPS). The Service Chiefs of Staff provide advice to the CDF and are responsible to him for the command of their respective Services.

In the Department, defence policy functions are carried out by the Central Staff, under the direction of the Secretary, in six major groupings, namely, Manpower, Management Improvement, Inspector-General, and Policy Coordination; Strategic Policy, Force Development, and Resources and Financial Programs; Capital Procurement; Defence Logistics; Defence Science and Technology; and Defence Production. In addition, there are specialist out-lying organisations — the Defence Signals Directorate and the Natural Disasters Organisation which are responsible to the Secretary, and the Joint Intelligence Organization which is responsible to the Secretary and CDF jointly.

The Chief of the Defence Force and the Secretary

Functions

Subject to the Minister's powers of general control and administration of the ADF, command of the ADF is vested in the CDF. Under the CDF, the Chiefs of Naval Staff, the General Staff and the Air Staff command their respective arms of the ADF. The Secretary and the CDF by virtue of Section 9A of the Defence Act jointly have the administration of the ADF except with respect to matters falling within the command of the ADF by the CDF or the command of each arm of the ADF by the Chief of Staff of that arm; or any other matter specified by the Minister. Ministerial directives further define the joint and separate responsibilities of the Secretary and the CDF.

The Chief of the Defence Force

The CDF is the principal military adviser to the Minister for Defence and, in accordance with the Defence Act and subject to the control of the Minister, he commands the ADF. He is responsible to the Minister for the arrangements for the exercise of command and control within the ADF in accordance with the provisions of the Defence Act, and within approved policies, for the planning and conduct of military operations; within approved policies and subject to the resources allocated he is responsible for the preparedness of the ADF including its organisation, manning, training and logistic support; he is responsible for the raising of joint forces and joint Service units; and the maintenance of standards of health, welfare, morale and discipline. As principal military adviser, and taking into account the views of the Service Chiefs of Staff, he is responsible to the Minister for Defence for advising on the military implications of strategic developments; military strategy; military aspects of ADF capabilities necessary to meet approved defence policy objectives; military aspects of the ADF development including the size of the ADF and the balance within it, and supporting infrastructure; and military aspects of the disposition of the components of the ADF.

He is to seek the endorsement of the Minister for Service promotions to one star rank.

He is to be Chairman of the Chiefs of Staff Committee, arrange its business and meetings and tender the collective advice of the Committee to the Minister for Defence together with the specific views of any Service Chief of Staff if he so requests.

In fulfilling his responsibilities for command of the ADF he is to ensure that in keeping with the joint process, staff functioning under his authority are responsive to the Secretary to the Department of Defence acting within his responsibilities.

Together with the Secretary he is to provide advice to the Minister on matters of joint responsibility. Where advice to the Minister would affect the functions and responsibilities of the Secretary, it is expected that joint advice will be prepared. He is to represent the Government or the Defence Force at appropriate international conferences.

The Secretary

The Secretary is the principal civilian adviser to the Minister and is responsible to him for advising on policy, resources and organisation; for financial planning and programming within the Department of Defence and for advising on these matters; and for financial administration and control of expenditure, including the correct and proper use of public funds in all fields of defence expenditure. He is responsible for financial control of all buildings, land and materials acquired for use by or within the ADF or Department and for advising on the management of these resources. He is also responsible for ensuring the issue of directions on all matters concerning the receipt, custody or disposal of, or accounting for, public stores. The Secretary acts as Chairman of the Defence Committee and the Defence Force Development Committee and tenders the advice of those committees to the Minister. In fulfilling his responsibilities for management of civilian staff, he is to ensure that, in keeping with the joint process, staff functioning under his authority are responsive to the CDF acting within his responsibilities. Together with the CDF he is to provide advice to the Minister on matters of joint responsibility. Where advice to the Minister would affect the functions and responsibilities of the CDF, it is expected that joint advice will be prepared.

The Secretary and CDF exercise joint responsibility to the Minister for Defence for the general functioning of the Joint Intelligence Organization; for recommending, on the advice of the Chief of Staff concerned, promotion to and posting of two star officers and above; posting of one star officers to appointments which have more than single Service implications; oversight of Service establishments and of related Service staffing policies; recommending establishment of service positions at one star level and above; advising on manpower policy objectives including conditions of service and education of members of the ADF; the development and maintenance of facilities required by the ADF; planning for defence emergency or war including advice on infrastructure support to the ADF; promoting the efficient and economic use of resources within the ADF; and continuing review of the adequacy of the organisation and administration of the Department of Defence and the ADF.

Headquarters Australian Defence Force

Vice Chief of the Defence Force

Functions

CDF's principal staff officer and chief of the headquarters staff. Supervises the operation of HQADF, directs further development of ADF long-term planning including military planning for the defence of Australia and is responsible to CDF for the coordination of present ADF force development planning processes.

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Policy)

Functions

Assist the CDF to discharge his responsibilities in relation to the military implications of strategic guidance, force development, defence facilities, science and technology, planning, programming and budgeting, defence aid and supply and support.

Oversees, on behalf of the CDF, administration of the ADF in regard to Service personnel aspects, the Australian Defence Force Academy (ADFA) and Joint Services Staff College (JSSC). He has supervisory responsibility on behalf of CDF in relevant areas.

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Operations)

Functions

Assists CDF to discharge his command functions as they relate to military operations and plans, training, logistics, intelligence, command support systems and communications-electronics.

Judge Advocate General

Functions

Appoints Defence Force Magistrates, makes rules of procedure for Service tribunals, examines and advises on proceedings of Service tribunals referred to him by Chiefs of Staff and Reviewing Authorities, nominates members of the Judge Advocates Panel and reports annually to the Minister on the operations of the Defence Force Discipline Act.

Surgeon General Australian Defence Force

Functions

Responsible to CDF through VCDF for the provision of a unified source of comprehensive health policy guidance and advice for the ADF and the exercise of technical control over the health services of the ADF. In addition, SGADF is responsive to the Secretary, as the co-ordinating point, for all health matters raised within the Department.

Subordinate headquarters and establishments

Maritime Headquarters

Functions

Conduct joint maritime operations and other activities as specified by CDF.

Land Headquarters

Functions

Conducts joint land operations and other activities as specified by CDF.

Headquarters Northern Command (NORCOM)

Functions

NORCOM is responsible to the CDF through the Land Commander for planning and conducting the defence of northern Australia, including the Northern Territory and the Kimberley region of Western Australia, and defence tasks other than those aspects which are the specific responsibility of the Maritime Commander and the Air Commander.

Air Headquarters

Functions

Conducts joint and specified air operations and other activities as specified by CDF.

Australian Joint Warfare Establishment

Functions

Studies, develops and teaches Australian joint warfare doctrine, and evaluates exercises.

Australian Joint Maritime Warfare Centre

Functions

Enhances Australian joint operations by developing and teaching Australian joint maritime tactics and procedures, and by the provision of assistance for the planning and conduct of joint maritime operations and exercises to the Maritime Commander (Australia) or the Air Commander (Australia) when they are directed by CDF to conduct such operations and exercises.

Defence Force School of Music

Functions

Conducts musical training for members of the ADF.

Joint Services Staff College

Functions

Conducts two courses per year designed to provide selected officers with a more advanced education in preparation for senior appointments in the Department of Defence and in the Services. The College also takes students from other countries and other departments.

Australian Defence Force Academy

Functions

The Academy provides military education and training for officer cadets of the three Services and other countries and concurrent studies at tertiary level under an agreement with the University of New South Wales.

Navy Office

Functions

Navy Office is responsible for all aspects of naval policy and responsible for the long-term planning and support aspects for the Royal Australian Navy (RAN).

Chief of Naval Staff

Functions

The CNS is the professional head of the RAN. He commands and administers the RAN under the authority of CDF, and is responsible to the Minister for Defence through CDF for Navy Office and Navy Commands. His command includes the authority and responsibility for

effectively using available resources and for training, organising, directing, coordinating and controlling naval forces in assigned duties in accordance with stated policies, directions and programs.

Powers

May declare by notice published in the Commonwealth of Australia Gazette an area in or adjacent to Australia to be an area for gunnery, small arms, bombing, torpedo firing, minelaying, mine sweeping, minehunting, mine disposal, underwater explosive, demolitions, or similar practice (Naval (Firing Areas) Regulation 2).

May make orders and give instructions, of either general or particular application, in relation to the establishment, maintenance, supervision, management, inspection, conduct, control and closing of canteens and clubs for members of the Navy (Navy (Canteens) Regulation 3).

May grant to a person a licence to trade in a Naval establishment for the purpose of rendering a service not otherwise catered for in that establishment (Navy (Canteens) Regulation 18).

May approve which subjects at a matriculation examination will qualify a person for entry to the Royal Australian Naval College (Naval College Regulation 6B(1)(b), 6(B)(2)).

Deputy Chief of Naval Staff

Organisation

The Office of the DCNS comprises the following branches: Programs and Resource Management, Policy Coordination, and Hydrography.

Functions

Represent and act on behalf of CNS. Oversight day to day business of the Navy, coordinate implementation of Navy and Defence policy, management resources of the RAN, monitor and advise external Naval commands.

Naval Development Division

Organisation

The Naval Development Division includes the following branches: Naval Warfare, Naval Forward Planning, Facilities — Navy (dual responsibility with First Assistant Secretary Facilities and Property), Naval Scientific Adviser (dual responsibility to Chief Defence Scientist).

Functions

Formulates and proposes policies, consistent with strategic guidance and other approved Defence policies, which provide guidance for development of Naval force structure and capability requirements. Formulates Navy's facilities programs.

Naval Personnel Division

Organisation

The Division comprises Personal Services Branch, Manning and Training Branch, and Health Services Branch.

Functions

Responsible for all personnel management functions for the permanent Naval forces and reserves, including education, training, legal and disciplinary matters, conditions of service and the overall development process for officers and sailors.

Naval Logistics Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Fleet Maintenance, Naval Design, Supply, and Naval Quality Assurance.

Functions

Provide professional guidance and assistance towards development of Naval strategy, force structure, logistic plans and personnel matters. Professional responsibilities cover the logistic support for the RAN broken down as follows:

- engineering design and maintenance policies and support for ships, submarines and support craft including new construction, modernisations, modifications and through life maintenance;
- airworthiness and maintenance of naval aircraft, their weapons and equipments;
- supply policy and provision in support of construction and maintenance of ships, submarines, aircraft and support craft; and
- quality assurance policy and standards for Navy and supplies to the Navy.

Naval Materiel Division

Organisation

The Naval Materiel Division comprises the following four branches: Materiel Definition, Naval Production, Equipment Projects and New Submarine.

Functions

Assistant Chief of Naval Staff — Materiel (ACMAT-N) is the Senior Officer of the Division and is jointly responsible to the Chief of Naval Staff and the Chief of Capital Procurement for the introduction into service of naval equipment from the approved capability proposal through the process of analysis, government decision and acquisition.

Powers

Issue of invitations to register interest and requests for tender.

Evaluation of tender applications.

Recommendation of preferred tender.

Commands

These consist of functional units with responsibility for RAN operations.

Fleet Command

Functions

The Flag Officer Commanding Her Majesty's Australian Fleet has command of the fleet and is responsible for the training and efficiency of all operational assets assigned for the administration of fleet command and for the operational command of reserve training ships and craft. The Fleet Commander is also appointed as the Maritime Commander.

Naval Support Command

Functions

The Flag Officer Naval Support Command has command of establishments allocated to Naval Support Command; administers NSW and the ACT as the Naval area commander; controls the Naval supply element of the Naval Support Command; controls various assigned technical organisations and the implementation of their technical functions; administers works and

property matters in NSW and the ACT including those in fleet establishments; and is responsible for custody and maintenance of ships in reserve, for Naval aspects of area public relations and for provision of assistance to State authorities in civil emergencies.

Naval Area Commands

Naval Officers Commanding West Australia, Victoria, Queensland, North Australia, South Australia and Tasmania.

Functions

Responsible for the administration and security of commissioned Naval establishments, Naval aspects of public relations in the areas, command and local administration of Naval Reserve Port Divisions and Naval reserve cadet units, and provides assistance to State authorities in civil emergencies.

Naval Police

Powers

The Naval Police have the power without warrant to detain and search any person who is in a Naval establishment, or any bag, parcel, vehicle, or other receptacle which is in, or is being conveyed into or out of a Naval establishment, or any ship, boat or aircraft in or alongside or in the vicinity of a Naval establishment for the purpose of ascertaining whether an offence is being or has been committed or attempted in any Naval establishment. The Naval Police also have the power, without warrant, to apprehend any person who has committed or attempted to commit any offence in a Naval establishment (Naval Establishments Regulation 101).

Senior Naval Officer

Powers

The Senior Naval Officer has the power to unmoor vessels in Naval waters, remove wrecks and vessels from Naval waters, recover expenses incurred in recovering wrecks and vessels from Naval waters (sections 6–8 of *Control of Naval Waters Act 1918*). The Senior Naval Officer has the power to grant permission to the master of a vessel to make the vessel fast to any port, government moorings, buoys, breakwaters, jetties, piles, vessels or Naval ships in Naval waters; to specify the distance from the centre of any government moorings at which the master of a vessel may anchor or moor; to permit the master of a vessel to dredge, loiter or anchor within 100 metres of an installation, vessel or Naval ship in Naval waters or approach within 30 metres of such installations, vessel or Naval ship; to permit the laying of moorings in Naval waters; to direct the removal of any moorings in Naval waters and move vessels or moorings in Naval waters; to direct the clearing of anchors hooking moorings in Naval waters; to permit the deposit of refuse in specified places in Naval waters; to permit the cleaning of vessels in Naval waters; to direct the removal of sunken vessels in Naval waters; to direct the speed of vessels in Naval waters; to prohibit or permit the entry of vessels with dangerous cargoes into Naval waters; to promulgate areas in Naval waters which may be reserved for mining and gunnery; to remove any jetty, wharf, building or structure on the foreshores of Naval waters, the construction of which has been prohibited by ministerial notice; to search or examine any vessel in Naval waters (Control of Naval Waters Regulations 7–9, 11–14, 16, 25–28, 30, 33, 34(2)).

Commanding Officer

Powers

A commanding officer has the power to permit a person to bring a vehicle into, or use a vehicle in, a public area which forms part of an island; to light, maintain or use a fire in a public area; to take an animal into a public area; to have in his possession firearms in a public area; to enter or remain on an island which is a public area between sunset and sunrise; to park other than in a parking area in a public area or camp in a public area other than in a camping area; to erect a sign or a building, booth, stall, post or other structure in a public area; to supply goods or services in

a public area; to damage, destroy or remove a natural or man-made structure or feature in a public area; and to interfere with, damage, injure, destroy or take an animal or plant or the nest or dwelling of an animal in a public area (Naval Establishments (Public Areas) Regulations 4–10).

Naval Medical Officer

Powers

Naval Medical Officers have the power to determine physical requirements for entry into the Royal Australian Naval College (Naval College Regulation 12(3)).

Army Office

Note: The major organisational elements within Army Office are branches and not divisions as found in other Government agencies. In the Army context the title, 'division' is strictly reserved for that formation in the field.

Chief of the General Staff

Functions

The CGS is the professional head of the Australian Army. He commands and administers the Army under the authority of the CDF and the Minister for Defence. His command includes the authority and responsibility for effectively using available resources, and for training, organising, directing, coordinating and controlling military forces for the accomplishment of assigned duties in accordance with stated policies, directions and programs. It also includes responsibility for the welfare, morale, discipline and health of personnel under his command.

Powers

May appoint officers of the Army to command parts of the Army (section 9(4), Defence Act).
May issue instructions in relation to the administration of the Army (section 9A(1), (2) and (3) Defence Act).

May prescribe conditions for entry to the Army (AMR 72(1)(r); section 123F, Defence Act).

May promote, second, transfer, attach, post, suspend, reduce in rank, discharge, re-instate and terminate the service of members of the Army according to statutes and such criteria and conditions as he shall determine. AMR 74(4), 76(1), 77(2), 79(2), 79(3), 79(6), 82(2), 109(1)(c), 147(1), 147(4), 161(1), 161(2), 174A, 174B, 174C, 176 (1), 177(1), 178; (sections 17, 19, 44, 116B, Defence Act).

May place names of officers or former officers on retired lists, to grant them military title and authorise the wearing of uniforms and insignia by such persons (AMR 125(1) and (2), 129(1)).
May determine the order of battle for the Army (AMR 21(a)).

May order the recovery of money to make good the loss or damage to Commonwealth property due to the negligence or misconduct of a member (AMR 294A(6) and (7)).

May determine the organisation, conditions, uniform, maintenance, and military service of the ARES (AMR 482, 483A, 486, 487, 488 and 790).

May administer and control the conduct of Messes (AMR 782; section 19(1) and (2), Service Trust Funds Act).

May determine who shall be employed, reside or stay in any military works (AMR 807(2)).

May authorise uniforms to be worn by the Army (AMR 789).

May administer the Australian Cadet Corps (Cadet Forces Regulations 3–6, 8, 11–15).

May approve the possession, sale, supply and consumption of intoxicating liquor at a gathering of members of the Army and their guests (section 123A Defence Act).

May nominate a member of the Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Authority (section 8(3)(c), Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Act).

May authorise disclosure of reasons for retirement (section 37, Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Act).

May order the sale or destruction of unclaimed property held in a Defence Force establishment or store (regulation 41(1) Defence Force Regulations).

May direct the sale of personal property and effects of a deceased member (regulation 5, War Service Establishment Regulations).

May make rules as to consequences of punishments (section 68A(2), Defence Force Discipline Act).

May appoint commanding officers, convening authorities and reviewing authorities (section 5, 102 and 154(1), Defence Force Discipline Act).

Deputy Chief of the General Staff

Functions

Controls and directs the activities of the staff elements within the Office of CGS and attached elements on related Army matters; deputises for and represents CGS as required; and becomes Acting CGS in the absence of CGS.

Director General of Coordination and Organisation

Functions

Coordinates Army staff work including relationships with commands, military districts, overseas staffs and Army Office branches.

Coordinates Army input into financial programming and estimates, including the staff work within Army Office associated with the approval of the Army contributions to the Five Year Defence Program (FYDP) and its submission to the appropriate Deputy Secretary.

Formulates Army Office policy on the Army's Order of Battle, workforce control and establishments.

Determines the detailed peace establishment of all units and determines the detailed war establishment of field force units on advice from Operations Branch.

Reviews the Army administrative system.

Coordinates Army Office matters relating to automatic data processing.

Coordinates the routine working of various components of the Office of the CGS.

Exercises responsibility for Army public relations matters, historical matters and research, and the operation and coordination of the Freedom of Information Act within the Army.

Coordinates overseas visits and visits within Australia by non-Army members.

Formulates and manages Army policy on occupational health and safety matters.

Scientific Adviser — Army

Functions

Provides scientific and technological advice to the Army; provides a formal link between the Army and the Defence Science and Technology Organisation; and provides technical supervision of the Directorate of Operational Analysis — Army and Staff Officers Science.

Army Operations Branch

Organisation

Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Operations (ACOPS-A) is the Senior Officer of the Branch. He is assisted by the Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Operations, Director-General of Operations and Plans, Director-General of Army Development and Director-General of Army Training and various functional and Arms Directorates.

Functions

Responsible to the CGS for military operations and plans; for Army development, combat development, and operational requirements and Command and Control Systems; for Army training and education; and for intelligence, survey, and overall direction of the Arms Directorates (that is Armour, Artillery, Engineers, Signals, Infantry and Army Aviation).

Army Personnel Branch

Organisation

The Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Personnel (ACPERS-A) is the Senior Officer of the Branch. He is assisted by the Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Personnel, Director General of Army Health Services (DGAHS), Director General of Personnel Operations — Army (DGPO-A), Director of Army Legal Services (DALs), Military Secretary and various functional directorates.

Functions

Responsible to the CGS for the acquisition and management of the military workforce which the Army needs to meet its commitments.

DGAHS is responsible to CGS for ensuring that the health services of the Australian Army are appropriately organised, equipped and trained so as to perform best their role of personnel conservation in war and peace.

DALS advises the Minister and CDF on such military legal matters affecting the Army as are referred to him; advises the CGS and his staff on military legal matters affecting the Army.

Powers

ACPERS-A determines policy and exercises financial delegation for personnel management. May authorise the release of serving or former members military history in accordance with Australian Military Regulation 770.

DGAHS has powers concerning all matters relating to the medical and dental management of members and to the medical classification of members during service and on discharge, and applicants for enlistment or appointment. May authorise the release of medical and dental history relating to serving and former members of the Army in accordance with Australian Military Regulation 770.

DGPO-A has powers concerning the recognition of de facto relationships within the Army; forfeiture and restoration of medals; overseas travel by dependants; recovery of medical costs; approval of travel under Australian Dangerously Ill List Scheme (AUSDIL); allocation of married quarters in special circumstances; use of canteen facilities; payments in lieu of long service leave; and approval of service for long service leave purposes. Has powers as a committee member of the Army Health Benefit Society (AHBS) Management Committee and as a trustee of the Army Central Amenities fund.

DALS has powers over matters relating to any appointment, promotion, or transfer to, in or in connection with the Australian Army Legal Corps; and certification of suitability for appointment to or promotion in the Australian Army Legal Corps. May authorise the release of military histories of members (pursuant to Australian Military Regulation 770). In the absence of an opinion by the Judge Advocate General, an officer of the Australian Army Legal Corps is bound by the rulings and opinions on matters of military law made by the DALS.

Army Logistics Branch

Organisation

The Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Logistics (ACLOG-A) is the Senior Officer of the Branch. He is assisted by Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Logistics, Director General of Logistics — Army (DGLOG), Director General of Accommodation and Works — Army, Director General of Supply — Army, Director General of Electrical and Mechanical Engineering (DGEME), and various functional directorates.

Functions

Responsible to the CGS for the formulation and implementation of Army Office policies concerning logistic support within the Army and for contributing to the formulation of departmental policies on logistic support for the ADF.

Develops and supervises the execution of policy concerning the functions of transport, movements, postal, supply, electrical and mechanical engineering, catering, fire services, and accommodation and works.

Is responsible for the Army elements of the votes of replacement equipment, stores, machinery and plant, repair and overhaul of equipment, stores, machinery and plant, travelling and subsistence, officer requisites and equipment, printing and stationery, fuel, light and power, water supply and sanitation, freight and cartage, port handling, licences, agencies and other commercial activities (other than survey and night watching services), and transfer expenses. Has responsibilities as head of the Branch in respect of the heads of the Royal Australian Corps of Transport (RACT); Royal Australian Army Ordnance Corps (RAAOC); Royal Australian Electrical and Mechanical Engineers (RAEME); and Australian Army Catering Corps (AACC).

Powers

ACLOG-A determines policy and financial delegation for stocking and replacement of stores and equipment; and manages accommodation facilities and services in the logistic area of responsibility.

DGLOG has powers concerning the sale, loan or hire of Army stores to the public; disposal of Army stores; repair policy and stocking policy of repair parts; cleaning and sanitation contracts; and employment of the Army Fire Service in Australian Defence Force aid to the civil community.

DGEME makes decisions relating to the repair and maintenance of equipment where it is allocated to trade repair resources in accordance with current repair policies.

Army Materiel Branch

Organisation

Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Materiel (ACMAT-A) is the Senior Officer of the Army Materiel Branch and is jointly responsible to the Chief of the General Staff and the Chief of Capital Procurement. He is assisted by the Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Materiel, Director General of Materiel — Army, Director General of Army Quality Assurance, and the Commander Engineering Development Establishment and various functional directorates.

Functions

Manages the processes leading to research, development, design, testing, evaluation and procurement of new or improved materiel equipment.

Administers materiel standardisation and pattern control within the Army, and in relation to other Services where Army has the assigned responsibility.

Develops and implements policy concerning the quality assurance function for the Army.

Determines and records materiel entitlements and scales of issue, in consultation with other branches as appropriate.

Advises in materiel aspects of Army planning and preparation for operations and mobilisation.

Controls the Engineering Development Establishment on behalf of CGS.

Office of the Chief of Reserves — Army

Functions

The Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Army Reserve is responsible to CGS for advice on policy and procedures affecting the Army Reserve.

Is Chairman of the Army Reserve Advisory Council.

Is Commander of the Australian Cadet Corps.

He is assisted by the Deputy Assistant Chief — Army Reserve who is also Director of Cadets.

Army Commands

Functions

Army commands consist of Land Command, Logistic Command, Training Command and seven military districts. They are responsible for the Army Field Force, logistic units, Army schools and training establishments and military district support respectively.

General Officer Commanding Land Command

Functions

Is responsible to CGS for the command of the Field Army and of allied forces that may be allocated to it except for those formations and units placed under command of a separate joint force commander in an area of operations; contributing to the formulation of Army policy, plans and doctrine; the development of Army aspects of Australia Joint Service plans as directed by CGS; the provision, and mounting of an Army force for operations as required; the maintenance of specified operational readiness states in Land Command formations and units consistent with ADF policy; the command in peace of all Regular Army and Army Reserve Field Army formations and independent units allotted to Land Command; the issue of training directives and the overall supervision of training within Land Command, including the setting of major formation exercises; in consultation with commanders of the military districts, and when appropriate General Officer Commanding Training Command, assessing the requirement for and planning the development of ranges, facilities and training areas for use by Field Army units; the development of plans to meet the needs of mobilisation for his command; and the management of assigned materiel resources.

Powers

May make decisions relating to public access to military (Army) areas; the selection of private or State property for Field Army exercises; Defence aid to the civil community when not managed through the HQ of a Military District; local Army public relations (for example, the provision of speakers for meetings); release of Army personal information; local hire or lease of Army property; and constraints on Army personnel which impinge on public enterprise.

Divisional Headquarters Nos. 1-3, Brigades Nos. 1, 3 to 9, 11 and 13

Functions

Commands those formations or units allocated.

General Officer Commanding Logistic Command

Functions

Is responsible to CGS for the command, through military district commanders, of all Regular Army and Army Reserves units allotted to Logistic Command; the provision of base level movement and transport, supply, electrical and mechanical engineering, and quality assurance support for the Army in accordance with the policy of CGS and within the limits of delegations; contributed to the formulation of Army policy, plans and doctrine; the management of assigned materiel resources, including reserve stocks, in accordance with the policy of CGS; the operational readiness of Logistic Command units in accordance with the policy of CGS; assisting Land Command in the development of logistic aspects of Australian Joint Service plans; the issue of training directives and the overall supervision of training within Logistic Command, including the setting of major logistic exercises; the provision of base level movement and transport, supply, electrical and mechanical engineering, and quality assurance support for the other Services and organisations outside the Army in accordance with the policy of CGS; the provision of wholesale canteens support during operations and major exercises; stating the requirement for staff and facilities for road convoy staging areas as required; the development of plans to meet the needs of mobilisation; and the provision of postal support.

Powers

May enter into procurement contracts and lease or hire of equipment. (In many cases, the Department of Administrative Services acts as agent in making these arrangements.)

General Officer Commanding Training Command

Functions

Is responsible to CGS for the command of Army schools and training establishments, except RMC Duntroon; contributing to the formulation of Army policy and plans; the implementation of the policy of CGS on individual training within Training Command, the advising of functional commands and the military districts of individual training needs not being met by Training Command and the managing of formal external validation; the formulation and development of doctrine in accordance with the policy of CGS and in consultation with Army Office, Land Headquarters and HQ Logistic Command; the promulgation of doctrine for training purposes after the approval of CGS; in consultation with Army Office the development of plans to meet the individual training needs of mobilisation; the control of the conduct of Army promotion and education examinations and courses; in consultation with commanders of military districts, assessing the requirements for and planning the development of ranges and training areas for use by Training Command units and providing technical advice on other ranges and training areas.

Commanders Military Districts Nos 1 to 7*

Functions

Are responsible to CGS for the command of assigned formations and units; liaison with other elements of the Australian Defence Force, State authorities and Commonwealth Government regional offices in the States and the provision of appropriate assistance if required; the provision of district support; and the management of Army controlled land, barracks, training areas, ranges, accommodation and other facilities in the military district either directly or through appointed area commanders, in accordance with directives issued by CGS.

* 1. Queensland, 2. New South Wales, 3. Victoria, 4. South Australia, 5. Western Australia, 6. Tasmania, 7. Northern Territory.

Powers

Exercises powers in accordance with regulations under the Defence Act relating to rifle clubs and associations; provision of Australian Defence Force (Army) aid to the civil community; public access to a military area; the use or hire of private and State property; security of Army property; the loan, hire or purchase of stores and equipment; local compensation arising from exercises and accidents; and local Army public relations.

Commandant, Royal Military College, Duntroon

Functions

Is responsible for the training of cadets for careers as officers in the Australian Army.

Powers

May authorise the provision of assistance to the civil community by RMC; and may release information from the records of members and ex-members of RMC.

Air Force Office

Chief of the Air Staff

Functions

The CAS is the professional head of the Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF). He commands and administers the Air Force under the authority of CDF and is responsible to the Minister for Defence through CDF for Air Force Office and Air Force Commands. His command includes the authority and responsibility for effectively using available resources and for training, organising, directing, coordinating and controlling the Air Force in assigned duties in accordance with stated policies, directions and programs.

Powers

The CAS has the power to determine the conditions for the appointment of officers and airmen to the RAAF.

Deputy Chief of the Air Staff

Functions

Represents and acts on behalf of CAS in his absence and exercises responsibility to CAS for the day-to-day management of Air Force Office and RAAF Commands.

Office of the Chief of the Air Staff

Organisation

Includes the branches of Resource Management and Operations.

Functions

Provide coordination of functions and activities within Air Force Office. Provide administration and support services to personnel serving in Air Force Office and Defence Canberra. Entry point to the RAAF for other Services, Government departments and the public.

Resource management.

Operations monitoring.

Air Force Development Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Operational Requirements — Air Force, Policy and Plans — Air Force, and Facilities — Air Force.

Functions

The Assistant Chief of the Air Staff — Development is the Senior Officer of the Division and is responsible to the CAS for the planning and development of RAAF capabilities and force structure.

Air Force Personnel Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Manpower Branch, Personnel Services Branch, Health Services Branch, and Legal Services Branch.

Functions

The Assistant Chief of the Air Staff — Personnel is the Senior Officer of the Division and is responsible for the development of personnel policy, recruiting, training and staffing, financial and general conditions of service, dress regulations, casualties, leave, ceremonial, honours and awards, and liaison with other divisions on mobilisation and operational planning.

Air Force Engineering Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Technical Plans Branch, Aircraft Engineering Branch and Quality Assurance Branch.

Functions

The Assistant Chief of the Air Staff — Engineering is the Senior Officer of the Division and is responsible to the CAS for Air Force policies relating to airworthiness and the engineering, maintenance and quality assurance functions, and for the implementation of those policies with regard to new capital equipment projects.

Is responsible to the Head of Defence Logistics for contributing advice on engineering, maintenance and quality assurance matters, and for the estimation, programming and management of RAAF repair and overhaul funds.

Air Force Materiel Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Materiel Definition and Materiel Projects.

Functions

Assistant Chief of the Air Staff — Materiel is the Senior Officer of the Division and coordinates the development of new RAAF equipment proposals from the point of their endorsement within the RAAF, through the letting of contracts and the procurement transactions of supply and support elements, to the point of introduction into service.

Powers

The Director-General Quality Assurance — Air Force may accept or reject supplies procured by the Australian Defence Force from public contractors.

Air Force Supply Division

Functions

The Assistant Chief of the Air Staff — Supply is the Senior Officer of the Division and is responsible to the CAS for the provision of technical and non-technical equipment to the RAAF, and contributes to the ADF supply policy, systems and management of the RAAF element of the Defence vote for equipment and stores.

Is responsible to the CAS for determining RAAF supply policy and for the provision, ordering, receipt, storage and issue of all RAAF equipment to meet the operational and support roles of the RAAF.

Exercises responsibility for RAAF air and sea movements, and transportation, including the operation of motor vehicles; RAAF messing which includes the arrangement and administration of food period contracts, and specification of the standards and qualifications of equipment and messing personnel; canteen service in the field in support of RAAF personnel; postal arrangements for RAAF bases and units; coordination of the RAAF supply works and works services; monitoring fuel and explosive storage requirements; determination of financial bids for supply support and management of supply support funds obligation and expenditure; direction of the progression of contracts for major delivery dates; formulation and implementation of RAAF supply EDP policy, including the design, specification and implementation of EDP supply systems; and exercising of financial and non-financial delegations for RAAF supply catering movements, transporation and base or unit service matters.

Is responsible to the Chief of Logistics Development for contributing to the formulation of Defence supply policies, practices, systems and procedures, and for the management of those Air Force elements of the Defence vote for equipment and stores.

Powers

May accept or reject supplies procured by the Australian Defence Force from public contractors.

Operational Command

Organisation

The Command is commanded by the Air Officer Commanding whose Headquarters is comprised of the following branches: Operations, Administration, Maintenance, and Supply.

Functions

The conduct of Air Operations and Operational Training, including definition of standards, evolution of techniques and preparation of plans.

The maintenance of lines of communication throughout Australia and its territories.

Cooperation with Commonwealth and State Authorities in matters relating to civil defence, search and rescue and assistance to the civil community.

Powers

Provides Australian Defence Force aid to the civil power in situations other than counter-terrorist operations pursuant to the Constitution (section 51 (vi), 61 and 119), the Defence Act (section 51) and the Air Force Regulations (Part IX).

Conducts or contributes to search and rescue operations in accordance with Joint Service Publication (Australian 2(A) Chapter 27).

Has the power to summon civilian witnesses to attend Air Force courts-martial pursuant to the Air Force Act Rules of Procedure 78(B) and 78(C).

Support Command

Organisation

The Command is commanded by the Air Officer Commanding whose Headquarters comprise the following branches: Chief of Staff, Controller of Logistics, Senior Logistics Engineering Officer, Senior Logistics Support Officer, and Senior Administrative Staff Officer.

Functions

Conduct of individual air and ground training.

Provision of logistic support for all in-service RAAF aircraft, other equipment and Navy and Army aircraft for which RAAF is designated single Service manager; includes logistics activities in support of new capital equipment acquisition.

Cooperation with Commonwealth and State authorities in matters relating to civil defence search and rescue and assistance to the civil community.

Powers

Issue local purchase orders and period contracts.

Evaluates tenders and makes recommendations as appropriate and lets contracts on the basis of tenders received.

Compel attendance of civilians at Courts Martial.

Deal with suppliers of films and cinema equipment to RAAF recreational theatres.

Deputy Secretary A

Functions

Provides advice to the Secretary and the Chief of the Defence Force on workforce, management improvement and policy coordination; exercises supervisory responsibility on behalf of the Secretary for the following divisions: Human Resources, Management Improvement and Manpower Policy, Inspector-General, and Policy Coordination.

Human Resources Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Service Personnel — Navy, Service Personnel — Army, Service Personnel — Air Force, Defence Force Recruiting, Civil Personnel, Service Personnel Policy, Defence Industrial, and Training and Development.

Functions

Formulate and implement departmental policy for Service and civilian personnel employed by the Department. Manage the recruitment, conditions, development, training and administration of civil personnel in the Department. Develop policy on and manage civilian industrial relations. Provide advice on ADF pay and conditions of service matters. Develop policy on and manage the Service recruitment function. Develop policy on industrial non-operational military training and educational.

Management Improvement and Manpower Policy Division

Organisation

The Division comprises branches as follows: Administrative Services, Manpower Computing Centre, Manpower Policy and Strategies, Organisation and Structures, and Productivity Improvement.

Functions

Formulates policies for management improvement and human resources budgeting for Service and civilian manpower; directs and undertakes studies and reviews relating to management efficiency, organisation and human resource utilisation; formulates policy on and manages departmental administrative services; and formulates manpower systems computing policy and manages the Manpower Computing Centre.

Powers

Approves expenditure within finance limits.

Approves establishment variations and restaffing of all civilian positions outside the Senior Executive Service.

Inspector-General Division

Organisation

The Division comprises Management Audit Branch, General Investigation and Review Branch and the Research and Administration Sub-section.

Functions

Undertake independent reviews, either under an annual program or as specifically directed, report on the situation found to exist and make suggestions for improved management in relation to:

- the regularity, efficiency, effectiveness and economy in the discharge of Defence activities and expenditure; and
- the regularity, efficiency, effectiveness and economy of management policies, practices and controls within the Defence organisation.

In conjunction with the civilian and Service deputies, develop annually a program of reviews. Report progressively to the deputies on the results of reviews undertaken, including suggested actions to remedy deficiencies in policies, practices and procedures.

Report annually to the Secretary and CDF on the results of the annual program of reviews, including progress made by functional areas in implementing reports and suggested actions, and an assessment of the general effectiveness of the Defence organisation.

Be the primary point of contact within the Department of Defence for the Auditor-General and the Joint Parliamentary Committee on Public Accounts.
Is responsible for interpretation and application throughout the Australian Defence Force of the provisions of the Audit Act.

Powers

To determine, in association with the Department of Finance, rates of cost recovery to be applied in respect of Australian Defence Force assistance to the civil community.

Policy Coordination Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Coordination and Liaison, Public Information, Security and Legislation.

Functions

Provides advice to the Secretary and CDF on the development of policies, and the coordination and resolution of issues, in respect of matters affecting a number of functional areas, for which none has prime responsibility.

Is responsible for ministerial and parliamentary liaison, intelligence coordination, security advice, administrative review, protocol and visits, secretariat services to higher Defence committees, the development and overseeing of policy relating to public information, access to official records and civilian and military security policy.

Provides departmental legal services.

Powers

Disclose official records.

Apply and waive fees and charges payable under the Freedom of Information legislation.

Office of Industry Security sets standards for premises and conducts security clearances of personnel employed by contractors engaged on Defence projects.

Deputy Secretary B

Functions

Provides advice to the Secretary and CDF on strategic and international policy, force structure, and programs and budgetary matters.

Exercises supervisory responsibility on behalf of the Secretary for the Strategic and International Policy Division, Force Development and Analysis Division, and Resources and Financial Programs Division with additional responsibility for the departmental functions of the Natural Disasters Organisation and the Defence Signals Directorate.

Strategic and International Policy Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the Special Adviser Strategic and International Policy, Strategic Guidance and Policy Branch, Military Staff Branch and the International Policy Sub-division which includes the ANZUS and the United Nations Branch, Papua New Guinea and Defence Cooperation Programs Branch, and Asia Territorial and General Branch.

Functions

Develops strategic assessment and policy to guide defence development and manages defence aspects of international relations and defence representation abroad.

Force Development and Analysis Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Force Development, Project Development, Program Analysis, and Central Studies.

Functions

Force Development and Analysis Division formulates and provides advice on options for the development of defence capabilities, including their relative priorities and resource implications. The Division analyses major equipment proposals for new and replacement weapons systems prior to their submission to Government for approval, undertakes analytical studies of force structure issues and drafts the new major equipment component of the Five Year Defence Program. The Division participates in the analysis needed for program budgeting.

Resources and Financial Programs Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Financial Programs, Resources Policy; Resources Planning Branches for Navy, Army, Air Force, Central, and Capital Procurement; Development and Budget Control, Accounting Policy and Operations, and Service Pay Accounting and Systems.

Functions

Formulate and implement financial, accounting and resources policy for Defence requirements, activities and proposals. Develop and maintain the Defence resource programming and budgeting system. Design, develop, implement and maintain computer-based financial estimating, accounting and management systems. Provide financial and resource management advice and services to the Secretary, CDF, Chiefs of Staff and heads of other Defence organisations. Prepare, control and review the Five Year Development Program, forward estimates and the annual obligation program, annual and additional estimates. Ensure financial processes and procedures accord with relevant Acts and Regulations and that accountability and probity in public money matters is preserved.

Capital Procurement Organisation

Organisation

The Senior Officer of the Organisation is the Chief of Capital Procurement. The Organisation comprises the following divisions: Resources and Project Support, Industrial Policy, and Project Development and Communications.

Functions

Manages the procurement of capital equipment to the point of introduction into service. Supports the Service Offices in the development of capital equipment proposals prior to Government approval. Advises on and implements defence industry policy and capital equipment procurement policy. Coordinates resources for approved capital equipment programs. The Chief of Capital Procurement is assisted in these functions by the Special Adviser, Resources — Procurement.

Resources and Project Support Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches and groups: Project Planning and Evaluation Branch; Assistant Secretaries, Materiel Branches; Special Adviser, Resources and Project Support; Project Pool, and CPO Regional Offices in NSW, VIC/TAS, SA/NT, WA and QLD.

Functions

Participate in the development of capital equipment projects through advice on financial, industry, resource and commercial aspects of individual acquisitions; participate in the evaluation and further development of proposals from suppliers; participate in the negotiation of contracts; and the development of international procurement cooperation programs. Develop and implement financial information systems and procedures for managing capital equipment procurement. Provide resource coordination for the approved capital equipment program. Provide business and financial advice to Service Materiel Divisions. Monitor quality and level of Australian Industry Involvement in capital equipment acquisitions. Manage CPO staff in the CPO project management pool and CPO Regional Offices.

Industry Policy and Operations Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Industry Policy and Programs Branch, Materiel Policy Branch, and Export and International Programs Branch.

Functions

Formulate and coordinate the application of Defence industry and procurement policy within the Capital Procurement Organisation (CPO) particularly, and the Department of Defence generally. Responsible for facilitating the commercial exploitation of indigenously developed and produced defence equipment and intellectual property. Provide advice on defence industry capability objectives. Advise and assist in the formulation of programs for the development of defence industry and facilities and their participation in defence related acquisition.

Powers

Granting of Australian Ownership and Control of Information (AOCI) eligibility and related matters.
Granting of waivers of residency criteria for personnel security clearances for foreign persons in Australian industry.
Approval of exports of certain defence equipment up to specified levels.

Project Development and Communications Division

Organisation

The Division is comprised of the following branches: Communications Planning, Communications Engineering, Jindalee Project Office and Development Project Management.

Functions

Develop, program and manage the procurement of new secure, survivable, Defence Strategic Communications Systems needed to meet the requirements of the Australian Defence Force and the Department of Defence for command and control and management of the Defence function. Provide overall systems planning, establish network architecture and manage procurement of strategic over-the-horizon radar surveillance systems to meet overall Defence requirements. Develop, program and manage the procurement of strategic Command Support Systems in support of the Chief of the Defence Force and the Headquarters of the Australian Defence Force.

Develop, program and manage major and minor capital equipment projects and contracts associated with the introduction of new communications networks, systems and equipments and modifications to, or replacement of, the Defence strategic communications systems. Manage projects in transition from a Defence research and development phase to the production and Service acquisition phase.

Defence Logistics Organisation

Organisation

The Senior Officer of the Organisation is the Head of Defence Logistics. The Organisation comprises the following divisions: Logistic Development, Facilities and Property, Information Systems Policy; and the following other elements: Logistics Review Group, Logistics Computer Centre, Supply Systems Redevelopment Branch and the Defence Contracting Organisation.

Functions

Provides advice to the Secretary on policy, resources and organisation of Defence Logistics and those aspects of financial planning and programming assigned to it by the Secretary.

Plan, coordinate and facilitate effective supply and support of Logistic services and activities in the most economic manner feasible.

Promote improved cohesion and effectiveness of logistics activities and to maximise exploitation of opportunities for rationalisation and economy.

Promote performance evaluation systems which emphasise results.

Logistics Review Group

Functions

To review Defence Logistics including:

- the size, structure and responsibilities of relevant parts of the Department;
- to improve performance and effectiveness across the range of Logistic functions;
- to reduce costs, promote costs consciousness and expenditure control;
- to reduce unnecessary demands on service logistics manpower to enable manpower to become more available for higher priority activities;
- to introduce common approaches to like activities and promote interoperability and optimisation of single or joint service arrangements;
- to rationalise Defence property holdings; and
- to place responsibility and authority closer to point of action.

Logistics Development Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches and elements: Supply Policy and Procedures Branch, Technical Services Policy Branch, Movements and Transport Branch, Logistics Resources and Programs Section and Logistics Coordination Staff.

Functions

Develops and promulgates policies aimed at achieving a common standard of logistics procedure and practice across the services and department. Provides computing support for the ADF logistics function. Areas of particular emphasis include:

- inventory policy and provisioning, procedures, cataloguing and warehousing policy;
- management and storage of explosives and hazardous stores;
- effective and economic use of transport resources by the ADF;
- management of materiel aspects of the Defence Cooperation Program;
- quality assurance, engineering resources and repair and maintenance policy development;
- negotiation of logistic support agreements with other countries;
- oversight of Materiels Testing Laboratory activities; and
- redevelopment of the Services logistic computing systems, and disposal of major capital equipment.

Services Logistics and Engineering

The Assistant Chief of Naval Staff — Logistics, Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Logistics and the Assistant Chief of the Air Staff — Engineering who are responsible to the Secretary and to their respective Chiefs of Staff are also responsible for providing the Head of Defence Logistics with logistical advice in respect of their own Service.

Facilities and Property Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following branches: Policy and Analysis, Resources and Project Management, Property Operations and Special Projects, Navy Facilities Branch, Accommodation and Works — Army and Air Force Facilities Branch.

Functions

Develop and implement facilities and property policies, plans and programs, within overall Government and Defence policy, financial and priority guidelines.

Information Systems Policy Division

Organisation

The Division comprises two branches: Information Systems Plans and Requirements, and Information Systems Standards and Resources; with a third temporary branch to evaluate tenders and manage to contract stage the Defence EDP Systems Integrated Network Environment (DESINE) project.

Functions

Initiate and develop information systems (IS) policy and promulgate that policy. Develop the annual five year Defence IS Master Plan. Develop and maintain Defence shared EDP information architecture and co-ordinate technical architecture and standards. Develop and maintain DESINE. Coordinate statements of requirements for centrally provided communications and higher level IS. Seek approval for resultant projects. Coordinate the recruitment and development of computer systems officers for Defence. Act as resource coordinator for IS acquisition and expenditure. Provide consultancy and advice on IS matters in the Defence organisation. Act as the executive arm of the Defence Information Systems Policy Committee.

Defence Contracting Organisation

Organisation

The organisation comprises two branches: Contracting — Administration Branch and Contracting — Major Projects Branch.

Functions

Is responsible for all purchases by contract placed from Australia of capital equipment, supplies and services above the public tender threshold of \$20 000 for the Department of Defence and the Australian Defence Force.

Powers

Constitution Section 64. Appointed to accept tender and quotation recommendations for the purchase of supplies, and to amend the terms and conditions of an existing agreement or contract.

Finance Regulation 52AA(4). Authorised to certify that obtaining representative quotations or tenders is impractical or inexpedient.

Finance Regulation 53(1). Authorised to publish in the *Commonwealth Purchasing and Disposals Gazette* a summary of the provisions of a contract.

Finance Regulation 53(2)(d). Authorised to determine that the provision of a contract for supplies should not be published in the *Commonwealth Purchasing and Disposals Gazette*.

Finance Regulation 53(3). Authorised to authorise the disclosure of information relating to a contract for supplies.

Defence Science and Technology Organisation

Organisation

The Senior Officer of the organisation is the Chief Defence Scientist. The organisation comprises two divisions: Science for Policy Division and Science Programs and Administration Division located in Canberra; five major laboratories and several smaller establishments located in Victoria, South Australia, New South Wales, Tasmania and Queensland; and DSTO representatives overseas.

Chief Defence Scientist

Functions

The Chief Defence Scientist is the chief adviser on science and technology to the Minister, the Secretary and the Chief of the Defence Force. Under the authority of the Secretary, he is the head of the Defence Science and Technology Organisation. He is responsive to operational priorities and standards determined by the CDF.

CDS is responsible for implementing the DSTO Charter, the main provisions of which are to:

- provide scientific and technical advice for defence policy makers and other defence clients to enable them to be wise buyers and users of equipment;
- solve the operating problems of the Australian Defence Force (ADF) and other members of the Australian defence community;
- develop and maintain a base of defence science and technology skills and knowledge in DSTO and the Australian defence community which are relevant to Australia's strategic and natural environment;
- conceive new equipment, devices or systems and if necessary, undertake development of prototypes; and
- assist appropriate non-defence bodies with DSTO skills and facilities and contribute to the development of Australia's overall industrial capabilities.

CDS is responsible for the Science for Policy and the Science Programs and Administration Divisions in Canberra, DSTO laboratories, the joint Defence facilities for which DSTO maintains cooperating agency responsibilities, the defence science representation overseas, and has joint responsibility with CDF for the Australian Ordnance Council.

To aid the CDS in the performance of his function the Assistant Chief Defence Scientists, who head the Canberra Divisions of DSTO, the Directors of the five DSTO laboratories and other members appropriate to matters under discussion, serve on the Chief Defence Scientist's Advisory Committee.

Science for Policy Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following elements: Directorate of Materiel Assessments — Science, External Relations Branch, Defence Information Services Branch, Directorate of Trials, Range Measurements Branch, Scientific Advisers attached to the Services.

Functions

Coordinates advice on policy matters involving DSTO and Senior Defence Committees with particular reference to major equipment proposals.

Provides scientific policy advice and DSTO representation in the fields of surveillance, space research and military electronics.

Acts as an initial point of contact and arranges for scientific advice from DSTO for other Departmental functional areas.

Responsible for coordination of the commercial exploitation of DSTO technologies, projects and resources.

Fosters and facilitates DSTO contacts with other national and international science and technology agencies and bodies, including tertiary educational institutions.

Is responsible for development of DSTO cooperation with overseas governments and coordination of Australian activity in the Technical Cooperation Program and other international defence science agreements.

Coordinates preparation of all overseas visits and attachments for DSTO.

Develops policy and coordinates library and information services for DSTO, the ADF and the Department including information and document exchange arrangements with overseas countries.

Is responsible for policy on trials and trials-based evaluation of equipment for the ADF and the conduct of Defence trials as required.

Develops, maintains and operates the Woomera Instrumented Range as a trials facility.

Carries out technical cinephotography trials.

Is responsible for Scientific Advisers from DSTO who are attached to each of the Services to provide advice on scientific and technological matters to their respective Chiefs of Staff. Also to provide advice on Service policy for optimum use of DSTO resources and capabilities to meet Service requirements and its implementation, and analytical studies in support of Service requirements.

Is responsible, on behalf of CDS, for administration of the Australian Ordnance Council.

Science Programs and Administration Division

Organisation

The Division comprises the following elements: Science and Technology Programs Branch, Development Projects Branch, Science and Technology Administration Branch, and Defence Support Centre Woomera.

Functions

Provides advice on defence science policy plans, coordinates and reviews the program of activities of the DSTO and the allocation of resources; prepares financial programs and budgets.

Provides policy advice and central management for DSTO development projects.

Provides advice on financial, personnel and other policy and procedures for the management and administration of the DSTO.

Provides policy and central management for the Defence Support Centre, Woomera.

DSTO overseas representation

Functions

The CDS is advised by Counsellor Defence Science in London and Counsellor Defence Science in Washington who maintain liaison with professional counterparts in Europe and the Americas and monitor world technological and scientific developments. DSTO also maintains Defence Science Advisers in Bangkok and Kuala Lumpur.

DSTO laboratories

DSTO Aeronautical Research Laboratory, Fishermens Bend, Melbourne, Vic

Functions

Provides research in such fields as aerodynamics, aircraft materials, structural integrity and efficiency of aircraft, analysis and integration of systems, and on air breathing propulsion systems and engine airframe integration and performance. Also assists civil aviation in some of these fields.

DSTO Electronics Research Laboratory, Salisbury, Adelaide, SA

Functions

Provides research in the fields of electronic warfare, information technology, communications and command and control.

Powers

The Officer-in-Charge of the DSTO Salisbury Prohibited Area under the Defence (Special Undertakings) Act may grant permission to enter, travel through or overfly the DSTO Salisbury Prohibited Area.

DSTO Materials Research Laboratory, Maribyrnong, Melbourne, Vic

Organisation

In addition to the elements located at Maribyrnong the Laboratory has elements located at Scottsdale, Tas; Innisfail, Qld and Sydney, NSW. See below.

Functions

Provides research into organic and inorganic materials, metallurgy and behaviour of composites, explosives and explosive munitions, mines and underwater ordnance, camouflage and other forms of protection of personnel and equipment and the design and construction of land and sea platforms.

DSTO Materials Research Laboratory, Scottsdale, Tas

Functions

Determines the energy and nutrient requirements of servicemen under all conditions in which they may be expected to operate and translate these needs into ration scales for static mess feeding and ration packs for emergency and combat conditions. Also researches the storage and packaging of food.

DSTO Materials Research Laboratory, Innisfail, Qld

Functions

Investigates the effects of tropical environments on materials, equipment and electromagnetic wave propagation, and on mechanisms and measurement of degradation. Also classifies and studies tropical environment reference sites. Part of its program is jointly sponsored by the United Kingdom.

DSTO Materials Research Laboratory, Sydney, NSW

Functions

Researches underwater weapons and countermeasures systems.

DSTO Surveillance Research Laboratory, Salisbury, Adelaide, SA

Functions

Provides research into HF radar, microwave radar and optoelectronics for electromagnetic surveillance.

DSTO Weapons Systems Research Laboratory, Salisbury, SA

Functions

Researches aeroballistics aspects of weapons and weapon systems, rocket and gun propulsion systems, combat data and display systems, guidance and control systems for weapons, underwater detection systems and their integration with other military equipment. The laboratory also has staff based at Pyrmont, Sydney NSW who analyse maritime warfare, maritime exercises and research underwater acoustics, oceanography, and sonars.

Other small DSTO organisations reporting to DSTO's Central Office in Canberra

Defence Support Centre Woomera, SA

Functions

The Area Administrator Woomera is responsible to the Assistant Secretary Science and Technology Administration, Canberra for:

- security of the Woomera Prohibited Area and, as Officer-in-Charge, for liaison with the Australian Government Protective Service;
- civic administration and management of the Woomera village, including housing and single accommodation; community services and cultural, sporting and recreational amenities;
- municipal services and civil works, business undertakings, messes and fire fighting services;
- hospital, medical, dental and ambulance services; electricity, water and sewerage services;
- management of Woomera airfield and associated facilities; and
- liaison with State police and other Commonwealth and State departments; and overseeing the Woomera Board and its activities.

Provides a residential base for the operation of Joint US/Australian facilities at Nurrungar. The Area Administrator Woomera is responsible for informing pastoralists of uncleared hazardous debris on their properties, erecting, inspecting and maintaining safety fences and warning signs, and issuing passes to restricted areas.

Powers

The Area Administrator Woomera has powers under Defence Force Regulations 35 (entry to prohibited areas), 38 (liquor supply) and 38A (transport and storage of warlike materiel) under the *Defence Act 1903*.

DSTO Defence Information Services, Canberra, ACT

Provides information and library services to Defence.

DSTO Range Measurements Branch, Salisbury, SA

Provides trials instrumentation, management and analysis of scientific trials at Woomera and elsewhere.

DSTO Trials Directorate, Canberra, ACT

Provides planning, manages and analyses Defence trials for the Department.

The Support and Services Organisation, DSTO Salisbury, Adelaide, SA

Provides common support services and facilities to all DSTO organisations at Salisbury.

The Australian Ordnance Council

Organisation

The Australian Ordnance Council, which is headed by a President, is under the joint functional control of the Chief of the Defence Force and the Chief Defence Scientist. Administration of the Australian Ordnance Council is the responsibility of the Assistant Chief Defence Scientist, Policy (ACDSP).

Functions

The Australian Ordnance Council is an independent body responsible for advising on the safety and suitability for service of weapons (and those parts of weapons systems) in which explosives are associated. The Council sponsors and directs the activities of six committees with membership drawn from all relevant elements of Defence and other Government Departments, for example Transport and Communications, Administrative Services (Australian Construction Services).

The Committees are the Explosives Storage and Transport Committee, the Explosives Environmental and Service Life Advisory Committee, the Defence Laser Safety Committee, the Electrical Explosives Hazards Committee, the Ballistics Coordination Committee and the Fuze Committee.

The Council also provides advice on the safety of explosives and explosive ordnance used in training and on the safety of Defence employees and the general public in relation to the research, development, manufacture, transport, storage and use of explosives and explosive ordnance by the Department of Defence.

Except for self-initiated work (as approved by ACDSP) which may be financed by the Council, investigations in aid of a specific project are normally financed by the tasking authority.

Office of Defence Production

Organisation

The Senior Officer of ODP is the Chief of Defence Production. ODP has a Central Office in Canberra which comprises 3 Divisions: Production, Budget & Support, and Corporate Development. It also manages the operations of a dockyard, munitions and ordnance factories, a clothing factory and an electronics establishment which are situated in New South Wales, Victoria and South Australia.

Function

Manage, in a businesslike way, a range of specialised industrial capabilities for the support of the Australian Defence Force.

Production Division

Functions

Responsible for manufacturing policy, production and delivery, quality, productivity and efficiency of the manufacturing processes employed at ODP Establishments.

Budget and Support Division

Organisation

The Division has two branches: Accounting and Budgets, and Investment and Support.

Functions

Provide policy advice to the CDP on ODP financial and resource objectives and strategies.

Administer the corporate financial program, budget and accounting processes.

Formulate and maintain policies and objectives relating to ODP computing systems.

Formulate and maintain policies on employee relations matters such as equal employment opportunity, industrial relations, conditions of employment, arbitration, industrial democracy, and occupational health and safety.

Corporate Development Division

Organisation

The Division has two branches: Business Development, and Technology and Planning.

Functions

Provide policy advice to CDP on ODP corporate objectives and strategies.
Administer the corporate and business planning and development processes.
Maintain policies on the corporate processes relating to human resource development, marketing, selected new projects, product development and technology development.
Liaise with other areas of the Department of Defence on these matters.

Establishments

New South Wales

Garden Island Dockyard, Sydney

Functions

Repairs, refits and modernises ships and support craft. As technical authority for a range of ships provides appropriate specialist information and guidance to the Navy. Maintains specialised naval equipments in radio communications stations and establishments.

Small Arms Factory, Lithgow

Functions

Manufactures rifles and small calibre weapons, ammunition components and light engineering components. Provides support services for the overhaul, repair and modification of military small arms.

Explosive Factory Mulwala

Functions

Manufactures guns and small arms propellants.

Munitions Filling Factory, St Marys

Functions

Fills and assembles gun ammunition, bombs, grenades and pyrotechnics.

Guided Weapons and Electronics Support Facility, St Marys

Functions

Maintenance of defence electronics components, assemblies and systems, including testing, evaluation, repair and post-design service. Undertakes certain radio frequency modelling tasks.

Victoria

Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong

Functions

Manufactures ordnance, projectiles, bomb bodies, depth charges, missile launchers, general engineering equipment, heavy forgings and undertakes fabrication.

Ordnance Factory Bendigo

Functions

Manufactures guns and gun mountings, aerial bombs, ships gearing and propulsion shafting. Undertakes fabrication and machining.

Ammunition Factory Footscray

Functions

Manufactures small and medium calibre ammunition, cases, fuses, primers and components.

Explosives Factory Maribyrnong

Functions

Manufactures gun and rocket propellants; designs, develops and assembles rocket motors and designs major chemical and explosives processing plant.

Australian Government Clothing Factory, Coburg

Functions

Manufactures uniforms and protective clothing for the ADF, Commonwealth and State departments and instrumentalities.

South Australia

Production Development Facility Salisbury

Functions

Design, development and production facility for rocket motors.

Powers (ODP)

Naval Defence Act 1910

Empowers the Minister to authorise the construction of ships, the operation of departmental establishments and the employment of civil personnel necessary for this purpose (Part VI).

Supply and Development Act 1939

Provides for the acquisition, manufacture and supply of war materiel, including aircraft, for the defence needs of Australia and for the establishment and maintenance of undertakings for this purpose.

Supply and Development Regulations

Empower the Minister to do anything he considers necessary for defence purposes, including the purchase, requisitioning or compulsory acquisition of goods or services or war materiel, or any property or machinery used in the production of war materiel (Regulation 8). Empower the managers of undertakings established under the *Supply and Development Act 1939* to do anything necessary to ensure the safe and efficient operation of the undertaking, and to make local rules regulating its activities. Depending on the nature of the undertaking, such rules might, for example, concern declaration of prohibited areas, search of persons, regulation of the passage of liquefied petroleum and gas powered vehicles on the premises etc (regulations 41 and 42). Empower officers within the Department, under delegation, to enter into contracts or agreements in connection with the purchase, production and supply of goods or services or war materiel, and to vary such contracts or agreements previously entered into (regulation 8).

Department of Defence Regional Offices

Organisation

Defence regional offices, under the control of a Regional Secretary, are located in each state capital and Darwin. In addition a sub-regional office is located in Townsville under the control of Regional Secretary Queensland.

Functions

The functions of regional offices are to provide support to all Service and Departmental elements in the regions and to functional divisions in Defence Central.

Regional Secretaries and the Deputy Regional Secretary are responsible to the Secretary and represent him as appropriate. They are functionally responsible to all functional divisions in Defence Central and responsive to Chiefs of Staff. For day to day administration, Regional Secretaries are responsible to the First Assistant Secretary Management Improvement and Manpower Policy.

Outrider organisations

Joint Intelligence Organization

Function

In accordance with priorities set by the Secretary and the Chief of Defence Force (CDF), the Joint Intelligence Organization (JIO) acquires, from all available sources, assesses and interprets information relevant to Australia's strategic environment, military security and defence policy formulation. Based on this foundation, it provides assessments and advice on international events and developments to meet the needs of the Defence Organisation (Minister, Department and Australian Defence Force), the Office of National Assessments and other elements of the Australian Government as required.

Defence Signals Directorate (DSD)

Functions

In respect of signal intelligence, DSD and specialist units of the ADF develop and maintain a capability to provide signal intelligence in support of the ADF; and collect, produce and disseminate foreign signal intelligence to meet the national requirements of the Commonwealth Government.

In respect of computer and communications security, DSD provides material, advice and assistance to Commonwealth Government departments and authorities and the ADF on matters relevant to the security and integrity of official information that is processed, stored or communicated by electronic or similar means.

Natural Disasters Organisation (NDO)

Functions

Develops national counter-disaster plans and civil defence policy and plans; coordinates provision of Commonwealth physical assistance to the States and Territories in the event of a disaster; operates the National Emergency Operations Centre; coordinates government and non-government disaster relief to Papua New Guinea and the South West Pacific nations at the request of the Australian Development Assistance Bureau. Directs Commonwealth support programs to the State and Territory Emergency Services; conducts a public information program; maintains fallout shelter survey expertise; directs the Australian Counter Disaster College (ACDC).

ACDC is the training, education and research arm of NDO. It conducts appropriate courses on disaster management, maintains disaster information data; conducts studies into selected aspects of disaster management and civil defence.

Arrangements for outside participation

Army Reserve Advisory Council

The Council advises the Chief of General Staff on matters affecting the Army Reserve and the civil community. Members include one trade union official, one employers' representative, one RSL representative, one behavioural scientist and one Army Reserve Officer.

Army Reserve Recruiting and Retention Advisory Council

The Council provides advice on the management and coordination of Army Reserve recruiting and measures to improve retention in the Army Reserve. The Chairman is a civilian, appointed by the Minister.

Australian Counter Disaster College

State counter-disaster authorities participate in the formulation of training policy and its effect on courses conducted at the ACDC by attendance at regular conferences.

Australian Defence Force Academy Council

An agreement exists between the Department of Defence and the University of New South Wales for the joint operation of the Australian Defence Force Academy which consists of a Military Unit and a University College. An Academy Council under the Chairmanship of a prominent civilian nominated by the Minister after consultation with the Vice Chancellor and including no more than three other persons prominent in civil life (again nominated by the Minister after consultation with the Vice Chancellor) and military and academic representation has been established to:

- advise the Minister on the development and operation of the Academy; and
- advise the University on matters relating to the development and operation of the College.

Australian Shipping Defence Council

The Council meets to provide liaison between the Royal Australian Navy and those who control and operate Australia's maritime shipping in peace time, in order to plan for its safety and protection in time of threat, tension, emergency and war. Membership includes leading executives of Australia's maritime transport companies.

Citizens in Support of Reserve Forces (Trust) Fund

The Fund provides for the welfare of the Reserves by community, particularly employer, awareness of the Reserve Force aims. It includes representation from the civil community, nominated by industry bodies.

Committee for Employer Support to the Reserve Force

The Committee works to encourage employers to promote service in the Reserves of the three arms of the Australian Defence Force. The Chairman is a retired businessperson appointed by the Minister.

Defence Consultative Council

The Council was established jointly by the ACTU and the Department of Defence to deal with a wide range of matters affecting civilian employees of the Department. Contemplatory consultative committees have been established in Regions and major Defence establishments.

Defence Industry Committee

This Committee advises the Minister for Defence on matters relating to Australian industry support of the Australian Defence Force. It is a consultative committee which complements the formal departmental Committee machinery.

The Chairman is a leading Australian businessman and the Committee currently includes eight other representatives of Australian industrial and commercial organisations, in addition to members from the Departments of Defence, Finance and Industry and Commerce. The Secretariat of the Committee is provided by the Industry Policy and Program Branch of the Defence Industry Policy and Operations Division, CPO.

Defence Industry Quality Forum

The Forum promotes understanding through regular meetings of Defence and Industry representatives and a trade union official who are concerned with quality assurance concepts and practices.

Defence Press and Broadcasting Committee

The Committee, chaired by the Minister for Defence, issues 'D' notices; there are sixteen media and five Government nominated members. New members are decided on by the Committee as a whole. All submissions are received in confidence.

Defence Standardisation Committee

The Committee has representatives from the Department, the Services and the Standards Association of Australia. It approves and manages the preparation of Defence (Australia) standards and specifications used in procuring equipment for the ADF. There are thirty-three DSC sub-committees which are involved in liaison with a wide variety of private firms in order to produce draft Defence (Australia) standards.

Emergency Broadcasting Committee

The Committee reviews existing broadcasting facilities and recommends what additional facilities, if any, would be required to maintain broadcasting communication following a major disaster arising from armed hostilities or natural causes. It includes commercial specialists from the Federation of Australian Radio Broadcasters and the Federation of Australian Commercial Television Stations.

Hydrographic Survey Program

The program is published at five-yearly intervals. State survey and marine authorities, the relevant sections of industry and the National Mapping Council are consulted prior to publication.

Jindivik Mark 4 Project Review Board

The Board was set up under a memorandum of arrangements between the governments of the United Kingdom and Australia. Members of the Board include officers of the Department of Defence and representatives of the Ministry of Defence, United Kingdom. Its function is to oversee the development of the Jindivik Mark 4 series aircraft.

Joint Consultative Council

The Council was established under the Department of Defence (Commonwealth of Australia) West Malaysia Employees Agreement 1970 to provide a forum for the negotiation of matters coming within the scope of the Agreement, to arrive at mutually agreed changes in it, where appropriate, and to discuss other matters relating to pay and conditions of employment.

Joint Industrial Committee

The JIC reviews the continued operation of the Naval Work Adjustment Allowance Scheme as well as continually reviewing other industrial problems. It also provides a channel for communications when matters affecting several unions arise.

The JIC is composed of up to six Federal Trade Union representatives and up to four representatives of the Minister. However, the composition may vary to suit individual needs. Both the Minister and the ACTU, acting on behalf of the unions, will nominate conveners. The representatives of the Minister will provide a secretarial services as required.

Joint Service Staff College Advisory Council

The Chiefs of Staff Committee has established a Joint Services Staff College Advisory Council to advise the Commandant JSSC on academic developments, review each course, report to the Chiefs of Staff Committee on each course, and conduct a five yearly review of the JSSC syllabus.

The Council Chairman is a prominent citizen appointed by CDF with the concurrence of the Secretary. The Council members are a prominent academic, the Rector ADFA, ACPOL and Deputy Secretary B. The Commandant is an ex officio member.

National Consultative Group of Service Spouses

The NCGSS was established by Defence as an advisory body. The aim of the NCGSS is to improve the quality of life for Service spouses and their families by:

- providing a forum for the views of Service spouses and their families;
- reporting and making recommendations to CDF; and
- influencing policy making that directly affects Service families.

The structure of NCGSS is at national, regional and local levels. At national level there is a committee of eleven members comprising a Convener appointed by the Director of Australian Defence Families Information and Liaison Staff (ADFILS) from nominations provided by NCGSS plus ten delegates elected from the ten Regional Consultative Groups of Service Spouses.

Natural Disasters Organisation (NDO)

State and Territory counter disaster authorities have an opportunity to participate in the formulation of policy regarding counter disaster and civil defence arrangements between the Commonwealth and States and Territories. This occurs at annual conferences between NDO and State/Territory Emergency Services and during liaison visits to other disaster response organisations. Contribution to training policy and practice occurs through a Training Policy Advisory Committee and by attendance of a wide cross section of the Australian community at NDO funded symposiums seminars and workshops.

Occupational Health and Safety Committee — ODP

The OHSC (ODP) committee advises the Defence OH&S Policy Committee on policy matters applicable to all ODP employees. It also provides advice to CDP on policy matters affecting employees in ODP establishments.

The committee comprises 11 senior Departmental and union representatives chaired by a senior Departmental officer. Secretarial services are provided by the ODP OH&S Section.

Operational Safety Committee (Explosives)

Members include representatives from the Department of Defence, the Victorian Government and ICI Australia (Operations) Pty Ltd. The Committee provides advice on safety matters relating to explosives, ammunition or hazardous chemicals. It makes recommendations as to policy, research or investigation concerning the prevention of accidents. Serious accidents are investigated and reports on accidents brought to the Committee's attention are considered. The Committee also investigates and reports on matters concerning explosives, ammunition or hazardous chemicals in places administered by other Commonwealth and State departments or by other government instrumentalities.

Policy Review Board (Barra Project)

The Resources and Financial Programs Division provides representation for Policy Review Board meetings and project directors' meetings for the Barra Project. The Board administers the joint development and production of a Defence Force submarine detection system and includes representatives from the Commonwealth and the United Kingdom government.

Regional Consultative Committees

The Committees, along with similar bodies in each State and major Defence establishments, were established by the Defence Consultative Council. They provide a forum for consultation between regional management and unions on matters which affect staff in the regions.

Woomera Support Area Advisory Committee

This Committee advises the Department of Defence on matters relating to the management of Woomera and includes representatives from the Department of Defence, the United States Air Force and the Woomera Board which comprises appointed and elected residents of Woomera.

Categories of Documents

Documents as part of a register or otherwise with another enactment, where access is subject to a fee or other charge

Oceanographic data (copies of original survey documents and hydrographic and oceanographic data held by Navy Office on computer file).

Documents customarily made available to the public free of charge upon request

The Department holds a wide range of such material including, for instance, information on, or in the nature of, the following:

- Academic calendars and prospectuses (for the Service Colleges) annual Reports (of various statutory authorities, such as the Services Canteen Trust Fund, the Australian Military Forces Relief Trust Fund and the RAAF Veterans' Residence Trust).
- Army newspaper.
- Conditions of service.
- *Defence Force Journal*.
- Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Scheme (leaflets about the scheme, produced by the DFRDB Authority, are held) Defence Science and Technology Organisation (DSTO) through the Central Office in Canberra supplies Information and Activities brochures and booklets on the organisation. DSTO laboratories supply Activities and Information brochures and booklets.
- *DSTO Research News* newsletter.
- DSTO other documents include occasional brochures (for example *Research Careers* etc), selected technical reports, handouts concerning facilities and capabilities, technical and research press releases, videos on projects and describing research establishments and lectures given to professional and public institutions.
- Flying and ground safety (the Air Force makes available to some professional organisations, magazines on this subject) Natural Disasters Organisation (NDO) produces for distribution free of charge through State and Territory Emergency Services (T/SES), a range of pamphlets and booklets on natural and man-made disasters and civil defence. In addition training manuals, films and cassettes are provided to T/SES for training purposes. NDO headquarters and the Australian Council Disaster College (ACDC) both maintain film and cassette libraries for use by schools and colleges. Particulars of ACDC courses, notes for trainers, precis, course handouts and proceedings of seminars are also available from ACDC. Notices to mariners (the RAN issues such notices, which contain hydrographic advice to correct navigational charts and documents and detailed information of exercises and firings).
- Organisational material (functional statements, organisation charts and duty statements).
- Packaging specifications.
- Plans and planning documents (including unclassified fundamental plans; planning documents and general communications planning documents, together with associated equipment/systems specifications; Defence cataloguing training rates and guides).
- Procurement (including details of procurement activities contained in the *Commonwealth of Australian Purchasing and Disposals Gazette*; the Defence Register of Assessed Suppliers).
- Public relations (including brochures, pamphlets and booklets on Defence and the individual Services; historical outlines of the three Services; films on a variety of subjects, distributed to media outlets, State and national film libraries, educational institutions and the Australian Information Service; press releases).
- Recruiting pamphlets and brochures (for the three Services).
- Speeches by the Minister for Defence.
- Speeches by the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel.

- Technical material (including technical details of obsolete RAAF aircraft; selected technical details of current RAAF and Army aircraft; unclassified technical report; Defence (Australia) standards).
- Defence Register of Assessed Suppliers.

Documents available for purchase by the public in accordance with normal arrangements

Departmental material in this category includes:

- Aeronautical information (Annual Flying Safety Calendar);
- Aeronautical maps and charts, supplements and planning documents, aerial photographs;
- Conditions of service (determinations under section 58B of the *Defence Act 1903*);
- Defence Cataloguing Handbooks and Information;
- *Defence Report* (and other Departmental material on sale through the Australian Government Publishing Service);
- Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Authority Annual Reports;
- draft and final Environmental Impact Statements (held by Defence Facilities and Property Division);
- journals and magazines published by Service Colleges and schools;
- Service newspapers (both the RAAF and RAN News can be bought singly or by annual subscription);
- Tide tables (Australian national tide tables, navigational charts and publications, available for purchase either through appointed chart agents or direct from the Hydrographic Office in Sydney by mail order).

Other documents

The Department maintains records in various forms relating to the functions described in this statement. Registries exist throughout the organisation to provide record-keeping services. Records are retained for various periods, depending on their administrative and historical value, and are disposed of in accordance with standards and practices approved by Australian Archives. Particular categories of documents are:

- Administrative papers (publications relating to the command and control of the RAN; submissions, transcripts and decisions of the Administrative Review Tribunal).
- Agreements (Register of Agreements, containing agreements between the Department and other countries; and general administrative agreements and arrangements).
- Cabinet documents (including submissions, promulgations etc).
- Claims for payment (documentation, including supporting evidence, in respect of goods or services rendered to the Department).
- Committee records (includes secretarial notes, agenda, minutes, business lists, submissions and reports for the higher defence and Service committees; and minutes, business lists, agenda, secretarial notes for the Defence Industry Policy and Defence Industry Committees; minutes of the Committee of Reference for Defence Force Pay, records of hearings, submissions, reports and assessments, arbitration determinations and awards by commissions and recommendations on Defence Force service conditions).
- Computing services (*Computing Services Information Directory*; computing manuals and instructions; agenda, minutes and secretarial notes; reports on technical (computing) studies, visits, seminars, and conferences. Computer system manuals and specifications; computer programs and data file for various branch functions held on magnetic discs and tapes).
- Conditions of service (includes documents relating to the development of policy including reports, position papers, representations, and submissions covering the following: allowances other than pay related allowances; bounties and gratuities, travel and removal; accommodation, leave and compensation other than personal injury; financial conditions relating to overseas service; compensation for personal injury — Defence Instruction General

PERS 27-1). (Internal administration and management documents, concerning pay and conditions of service of wages personnel and occupational safety and health matters involving the civilian workforce are also maintained).

- Contractual documents.
- D Notices (including records of the Defence Press and Broadcasting Committee).
- Departmental instructions, circulars, manuals and reference books (these are held throughout the Department and cover subjects such as salaries and conditions of service for the permanent and reserve forces; Defence facilities manuals and instructions; Defence reference books on classification of receipts and expenditure for the three Services and Defence Central; security manuals and instructions; parliamentary instructions; *PERSMAN 1* (interim edition) covering policies and procedures for civilian workforce allocation and control) establishment matters (Air Force personnel establishment tables, motor transport establishment tables, and a guide to on-site establishment reviews).
- Historical records held temporarily before transfer to custody of Australian Archives and Australian War Memorial (Air Force historical records, including photographs; Air Board records collection; Secretary Air Board and Department of Air permanent heads' collections; VIP aircraft flight records; historical listings of former Ministers for Defence and Service Chiefs and civilian departmental heads).
- Industrial matters (including agenda and minutes of meetings of the Defence Consultative Council, Joint Industrial Committee, Joint Consultative Council, Regional Consultative Committees, and Occupational Safety and Health Committees, departmental industrial instructions: policy on industrial practices within the Department; requests for tender documents and industry study reports).
- Memoranda of understanding with other governments and agencies personal documentation (processing and enlistment documents subject to decisions involving personal privacy, and 'in-confidence' documents of a medical and psychological nature).
- Press cuttings (a press cuttings' service is maintained for senior officials of the Department).
- Production documents and CAD/CAM machine readable records relating to the design and manufacture of munitions and the manufacture and repair of aircraft, ships, arms and clothing for the ADF (including drawings, design and development proposals and applications, records of factory workloads, quality assurance reports, records of labour workforce rates, procurement demands, production and stock summary sheets, specifications process manuals, production permits, quotations for commercial work, capacity records and marketing and sale of defence equipment reports).
- Public access (guidelines on handling of Defence archival material; manuals and guidelines used for clearing documents for public access; Freedom of Information manual; reports on scientific studies; transcripts of evidence before parliamentary committees; archival disposal schedules; files and documents held temporarily for processing prior to transfer to archival custody; registers of files examined and cleared for public access).
- Purchasing documents (including overseas orders and assessment of tenders).
- Quality assurance (documents originating with the United Kingdom Ministry of Defence Procurement Executive).
- RAAF Manuals (security manuals and instructions; RAAF police administration and procedure manuals; ground defence and fire manuals; air operations procedures manual; aircrew manual; special flying instructions).
- Reports (various reports, statements and accounting records produced by the finance ledger system on achieved expenditure, receipts and financial obligations entered into for Defence and each of the three Services).
- Security manuals and instructions; personal security files seminars (transcripts of public seminars conducted by the Department).
- Speeches.
- Supply matters (RAAF Supply EDP reports and files; supply contacts; Defence Instructions (Air Force) Supply; tables of entitlement or scale of equipment publications; reports on supply studies).

- Technical publications (relating to the maintenance of Defence Force materiel, and drawings, specifications and standards relating to, for example, ships, aircraft and other equipment in use).
- Working papers (internal branch working papers and files are maintained throughout the Department on a wide range of policy, technical and administrative subjects).

Facilities for Access

The following areas within the Department maintain access points at which information about their activities is available. For information concerning access to documents under the Freedom of Information Act, see below.

The Director
Australian Counter Disaster College
MACEDON VIC 3440
(Information Officer — Telephone: (054) 26 1205)

Defence (Australia) Standards
Executive Officer
Technical Information Unit
Department of Defence
P.O. Box No. 4
COLLINGWOOD VIC 3066
(Telephone: (03) 665 6457)

Defence Cataloguing
(training notes, guides, handbooks and information)
Director, Defence Cataloguing Authority
70 Albert Road
SOUTH MELBOURNE VIC 3000
(Telephone: (03) 697 5162)

Defence Science and Technology Organisation
Campbell Park Offices
CP3-3-35
CANBERRA ACT 2600
(Telephone: (062) 66 4305; (062) 48 9906)

Natural Disasters Organisation
6th Floor, Northbourne House
Northbourne Avenue
TURNER ACT 2601
(Contact the Executive Officer, Liaison and Public Awareness
Telephone: (062) 46 6611)

Quality Assurance
For the Defence Register of Assessed Suppliers, write to or contact:
Director Quality Assurance Coordination
Campbell Park Offices
CP4-3-36
(Telephone: (062) 66 4097)

Freedom of Information

Procedures and initial contact points

To request information or copies of documents of the Department it is not necessary to make a request under the FOI Act. But should it be intended to make a request for access to documents under the Act (the Act does not apply to information as such, nor is the Department obliged to create a document except where information stored in a computer may be produced in the form of a written document by the use of an existing program or where it is possible to prepare a written transcript from a sound recording) the request:

- must be made in writing;
- provide such information concerning the documents as is reasonably necessary to enable a responsible officer of the Department to identify them; and
- be accompanied by an application fee (\$30 as of June 1988) or include a submission for remission of the fee which is subsequently remitted.
- The request should:
- claim to be made under the FOI Act;
- specify an address in Australia to which replies to the application may be sent; and
- be sent by post to the following address:

The Secretary
Department of Defence
Russell Offices
CANBERRA ACT 2600

It is also desirable that home and work telephone numbers be included so that any matter in relation to the request may be discussed.

Should assistance be required regarding access under the Act advice may be obtained by telephone by ringing (062) 65 2189. Inquiries on FOI matters can be made between 8.30 am and 4.45 pm on weekdays.

Applicants may be liable to pay charges at rates prescribed by the FOI (Fees and Charges) Regulations.

Authorised 'Denial Authorities'

The occupants of the positions described below are authorised to refuse requests for access to documents under the Freedom of Information Act.

Defence Central — All occupants of positions classified at Level 3 or higher in the Senior Executive Service of the APS and all occupants of positions classified at Major General or equivalent, or at higher rank.

Navy — All occupants of positions classified at Rear Admiral or higher rank.

Army — All occupants of positions classified at Major General or higher rank.

Air Force — All occupants of positions classified at Air Vice Marshal or higher rank.

DEFENCE PORTFOLIO AUTHORITIES

Council of Defence

This statement is correct to 30 June 1988 and replaces the statement published in the *Defence Report 1986-87*, dated 14 October 1987.

Establishment

The Council of Defence was constituted in February 1976 pursuant to Section 28(1) of the *Defence Act 1903*.

Organisation

By Executive Council instrument dated 22 October 1987, the Council of Defence was constituted with the following membership:

Minister for Defence (Chairman)	Chief of Naval Staff
Minister for Defence Science and Personnel	Chief of the General Staff
Secretary, Department of Defence	Chief of the Air Staff
Chief of the Defence Force	Vice Chief of the Defence Force

Functions

Regulation 12 of the Defence Force Regulations provides that the function of the Council is to consider and discuss matters relating to the control and administration of the Defence Force and the respective arms of the Defence Force, referred to it by the Minister.

FOI procedures and initial contact points

Requests for access to documents of the Council should be directed to the Secretary, Council of Defence, Department of Defence, Canberra, ACT 2600 and be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

Defence Committee

This statement is correct to 30 June 1988 and replaces the statement published in the *Defence Report 1986-87*, dated 14 October 1987.

Establishment

The Defence Committee was established in May 1926 by Ministerial direction and more formally constituted in March 1929 by regulation.

Organisation

Members of the Committee consists of the following:

- Secretary, Department of Defence (Chairman)
- Chief of the Defence Force
- Chief of Naval Staff
- Chief of the General Staff
- Chief of the Air Staff
- Secretary to the Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet
- Secretary to the Department of the Treasury
- Secretary to the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade

Whenever the Committee considers it necessary to do so, the Committee may, with the approval of the Minister, coopt any person for the consideration of a matter before the Committee and

that person shall for the time being be deemed to be a member of the Committee. The Committee may call into consultation representatives of a department or authority concerned in a matter under discussion.

Functions

The current Defence Committee Regulations provide that the functions of the Committee shall be to advise the Minister on:

- defence policy as a whole;
- the coordination of military, strategic, economic, financial and external affairs aspects of defence policy; and
- matters of policy or principle and important questions having a joint Service or inter-departmental defence aspect; and such other matters having a defence aspect as are referred to the Committee by or on behalf of the Minister.

The Committee may carry out such investigations as it thinks fit for the purpose of advising the Minister on those matters.

FOI procedures and initial contact points

Persons wishing to gain access to documents of the Defence Committee should write to or contact the Secretary, Defence Committee, Department of Defence, Canberra, ACT 2600. A request should be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

Munitions Board of Management

This statement is correct to 30 June 1988 and replaces the statement published in the *Defence Report 1986-87*, dated 14 October 1987.

Establishment

On 15 July 1984, the Munitions Board of Management was established pursuant to the *Supply and Development Act 1939* and the Supply and Development Regulations.

Organisation

The Board has tripartite membership with representatives from industry, unions and officials of the Department of Defence. The Chairman is a senior departmental officer in the Office of Defence Production. Secretariat services for the Board are provided by the Office of Defence Production.

Functions

The Board reviews, monitors and provides guidance on the actual operational and financial performance of the Defence ODP establishments for which ODP is responsible, and on related employee/workplace issues.

Powers

The Board has no executive powers.

Categories of Documents

Documents relating to the administration of the Department's establishments are prepared for the Board. These are held as registered files and include agenda for meetings, minutes of meetings and working papers.

FOI procedures and initial contact points

Persons wishing to gain access to documents of the Board should write to or contact the Director Executive Coordination, Office of Defence Production, APW 1-308, Constitution Ave, Reid, ACT 2601. A request should be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

Royal Australian Navy Central Canteens Board

This statement is correct to 30 June 1988 and replaces the statement published in the *Defence Report 1986-87*, dated 14 October 1987.

Establishment

The Board was established within the Authority of the Navy (Canteens) Regulations under the Naval Defence Act.

Organisation

The Board consists of a chairman and four members located in Canberra.

Functions

The Board provides for the welfare and amenities of the Navy community by making grants and loans of money and property to organisations within the Naval community.

Powers

May enter into a contract in which the Board accepts the liability to pay a sum of money to a person helping to erect a building for members of the Navy as specified in the contract, where the building is no longer used for the services specified in the contract.

May enter into a contract for purchasing or supplying goods to be sold in canteens or clubs.

May sell, to persons conducting canteens or clubs, goods purchased by the Board for resale.

May receive levies from naval canteens and gifts and donations for the support of the fund.

May purchase, lease, hire or otherwise acquire land, building, stock, plant, equipment for the purpose of providing services, entertainment, recreation or other amenities for members of the Navy.

FOI procedures and initial contact points

Persons wishing to gain access to documents should write to or contact the RAN Central Canteens Board, c/- FOI Operations Office, B-4-26, Russell Offices, Canberra, ACT 2600. A request should be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

Appendixes

List of abbreviations and acronyms

AACC	Australian Army Catering Corps
ACDC	Australian Counter Disaster College
ACDSP	Assistant Chief Defence Scientist, Policy
ACLOG-A	Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Logistics
ACMAT-A	Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Materiel
ACMAT-AF	Chief of the Air Force Materiel
ACMAT-N	Assistant Chief of Naval Staff — Materiel
ACOPS	Assistant Chief of Defence Force (Operations)
ACPERS-A	Assistant Chief of the General Staff — Personnel
ACPOL	Assistant Chief of Defence Force (Policy)
ADF	Australian Defence Force
ADFA	Australian Defence Force Academy
ADFILS	Australian Defence Families Information and Liaison Staff
AHBS	Army Health Benefit Society
ANZUS	Australia, New Zealand and United States (Alliance)
AOCI	Australian Ownership and Control of Information
AOQC	Australian Organisation for Quality Control
APS	Australian Public Service
AUSDIL	Australian Dangerously Ill List (Scheme)
CAS	Chief of the Air Staff
CDF	Chief of the Defence Force
CDP	Chief of Defence Production
CDS	Chief Defence Scientist
CGS	Chief of the General Staff
DGLOG	Director General of Logistics — Army
CNS	Chief of Naval Staff
Comd	Command
CPO	Capital Procurement Organisation
DALS	Director Army Legal Services
DCAS	Deputy Chief of the Air Staff
DCNS	Deputy Chief of Naval Staff
DESINE	Defence EDP Systems Integrated Network Environment
DFRDB	Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits
DGOP-A	Director General of Operations and Plans — Army
DSC	Defence Standardisation Committee
DSTO	Defence Science and Technology Organisation
EDP	Electronic Data Processing
FOI	Freedom Of Information
GOC	General Officer Commanding
HQ	Headquarters
HQADF	Headquarters Australian Defence Force
JSSC	Joint Service Staff College
LHQ	Land Command Headquarters
JIC	Joint Industrial Committee
JIO	Joint Intelligence Organization
Log	Logistics
Log Comd	Logistics Command (Army)
NATA	National Association of Testing Authorities
NCGSS	National Consultative Group of Service Spouses
NDO	Natural Disasters Organisation

NORCOM	Northern Command
ODP	Office of Defence Production
OHSC	Occupational Health and Safety Committee
PERS	Personnel
PERSMAN	Personnel Manual
RAAF	Royal Australian Air Force
RAAOC	Royal Australian Army Ordnance Corps
RACT	Royal Australian Corps of Transport
RAEME	Royal Australian Electrical and Mechanical Engineers
RMC	Royal Military College
SAA	Standards Association of Australia
Trg Comd	Training Command (Army)
T/SES	State and Territories Emergency Service
VCDF	Vice Chief of the Defence Force

Commonwealth acts administered by the Minister for Defence

Air Force Act 1923

Approved Defence Projects Protection Act 1947

Cockatoo and Schnapper Islands Act 1949

Control of Naval Waters Act 1918

Defence Act 1903, (a)

Defence Force Discipline Act 1982

Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Act 1973

Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits (Pension Increases) Acts

Defence Forces Retirement Benefits Acts

Defence Forces Retirement Benefits Fund (Distribution of Surplus to Pensioners) Act 1976

Defence Forces Retirement Benefits (Pension Increases) Acts

Defence Housing Authority Act 1987

Defence (Parliamentary Candidates) Act 1969

Defence (Special Undertakings) Act 1952

Geneva Conventions Act 1957, (Part IV) (b)

Naval Defence Act 1910

Royal Australian Air Force Veterans' Residences Act 1953

Services Trust Funds Act 1947

Supply and Development Act 1939

War Services Estates Act 1942

Williamstown Dockyard Employees Act 1987

- Notes: (a) *Defence Act 1903*. Sections 40A, 61, 61A, 61B, 61C, 118A and 118B are administered by the Minister for Employment, Education and Training. They deal with wartime service obligations. Sections 58A to 58Y, dealing with financial conditions of service for members of the Defence Force, are administered by the Minister for Industrial Relations. Paragraph 124(1)(qba), dealing with war graves, is administered by the Minister for Veterans' Affairs.
- (b) *Geneva Conventions Act 1957*. Parts I, II, III and V, dealing with the enforcement of the Geneva Conventions, are administered by the Attorney-General.



MINISTER FOR DEFENCE

the Defence Force (CDF) and the Secretary
responsibility for administration of the

SECRETARY

The Secretary is the principal civilian adviser to the Minister. In addition to functions conferred by the Defence Act and other legislation, he advises on policy, resources and organisation, and is responsible for financial planning programming, administration and control of expenditure.

E

R FORCE
FICE

puty
velopment
ersonnel
gineering
teriel
pply

JOINT
INTELLIGENCE
ORGANISATION (a)

DEFENCE
SIGNALS
DIRECTORATE (b)

NATURAL
DISASTERS
ORGANISATION (b)

REGIONAL
SECRETARIES (c)

DEPUTY
SECRETARY A
(Level 6)

MANPOWER
AND
MANAGEMENT
SERVICES

Human
Resources

Management
Improvement
and
Manpower
Policy

Inspector-
General

Policy
Coordination

DEPUTY
SECRETARY B
(Level 6)

STRATEGIC
POLICY
FORCE
DEVELOPMENT
AND RESOURCES
AND FINANCIAL
PROGRAMS

Strategic
and
International
Policy

Force
Development
and
Analysis

Resources
and
Financial
Programs

CHIEF OF
CAPITAL
PROCUREMENT
(Level 6)

CAPITAL
PROCUREMENT

Resources
and Project
Support

Industry
Policy
and
Operations

Project
Development
and
Communications

HEAD OF
DEFENCE
LOGISTICS
(Level 6)

DEFENCE
LOGISTICS
ORGANISATION

Logistics
Review

Logistics
Development

Facilities
and
Property

Information
Systems
Policy

Defence
Contracting

Services
Logistics
and
Engineering

CHIEF
DEFENCE
SCIENTIST
(Level 6)

DEFENCE
SCIENCE
AND
TECHNOLOGY
ORGANISATION

Science
Policy

Science
Programs
and
Administration
Laboratories

CHIEF OF
DEFENCE
PRODUCTION
(Level 6)

OFFICE OF
DEFENCE
PRODUCTION

Production

Budget
and
Support

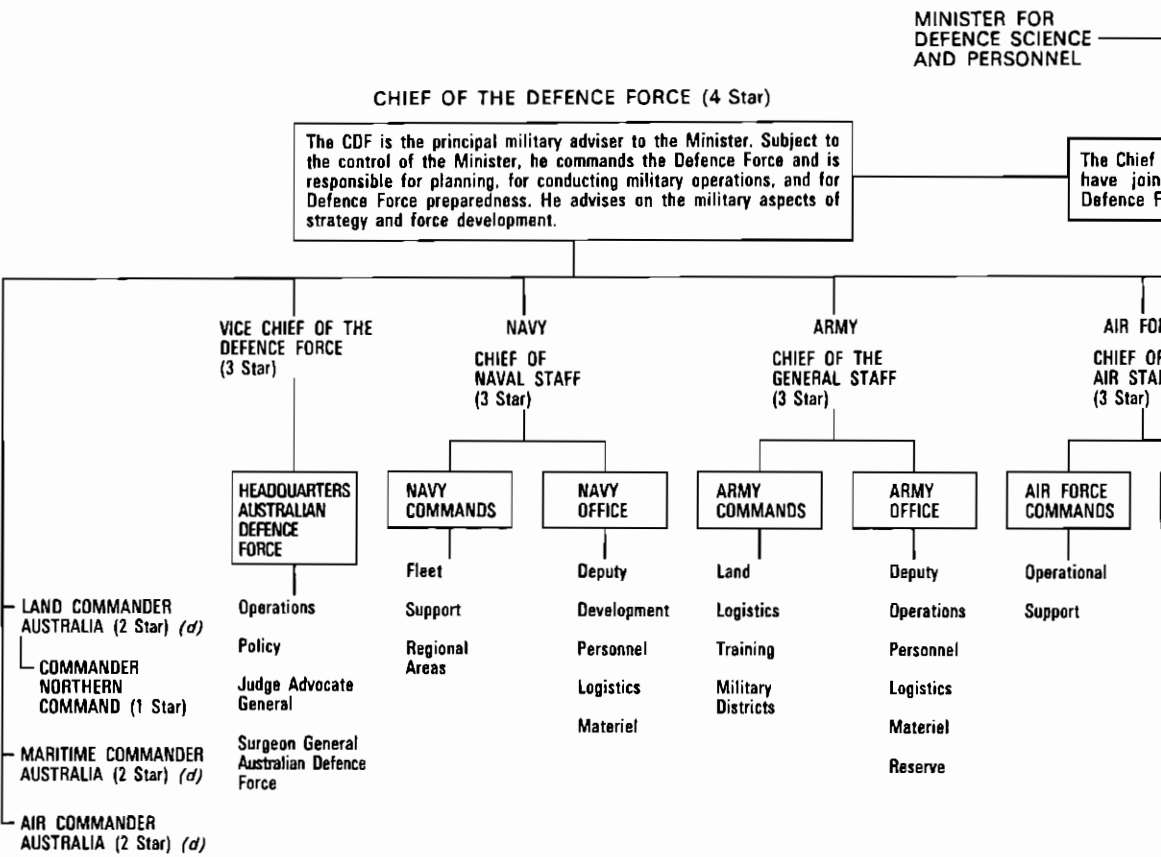
Corporate
Development

Garden
Island
Dockyard

Establishments

DEFENCE HIGHER ORGANISATION

(as at 30 June 1988)



Notes: (a) Responsible to both the Secretary and the Chief of the Defence Force.
(b) Under the supervision of Deputy Secretary B.
(c) Also responsible for providing Service Commanders with assistance they specify.
(d) The Operational Commander of the relevant single Service command is normally appointed to these positions.

DEFENCE REPORT

1989-90

Australian Government Publishing Service
Canberra

FRONT COVER

The endeavours of the First AIF were not confined solely to those that won them their reputation for gallantry. In December 1915 they produced the 'Anzac Book', a collection of drawings, photographs, poems and stories contributed by individual soldiers at Gallipoli. Two years later, on the Western Front in France, they produced a second publication entitled 'From the Australian Front: Shrapnel and Smiles'. The illustration from the cover of 'Shrapnel and Smiles' has been adapted for this year's Defence Report. It shows two diggers, one operating a Lewis gun, and the 'Rising Sun' of the First AIF. The artist is given simply as 'Fred Leist - France'.

© Commonwealth of Australia

ISSN 0587-5811

This work is copyright. Apart from any use as permitted under the *Copyright Act 1968*, no part may be reproduced by any process without written permission from the Australian Government Publishing Service. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights should be directed to the Manager, AGPS Press, Australian Government Publishing Service, GPO Box 84, Canberra ACT 2601.

Printed in Australia by Better Printing Service, 1 Foster Street, Queanbeyan, N.S.W. 2620



7 September 1990

Senator the Honourable Robert Ray
Minister for Defence

Dear Minister

We present the report on the performance of the Defence organisation for the year ended 30 June 1990. The report also covers the obligation under sub-section 25(6) of the Public Service Act 1922.

1989-90 has been a year of unprecedented change in the Defence organisation. Unprecedented because the changes that have been introduced during the year have affected the very culture of the organisation.

It has been our policy to place responsibility where efficiency demands that it be placed.

Program Management and Budgeting provides the framework and vehicle for the changes that pervade the entire organisation, focusing through the review of the higher Defence Force structure, the complementary review of civilian structures and the revision of the higher Defence process.

We believe that in this way Defence can carry out more effectively its fundamental responsibility to the nation within the resources that are available to it.

Yours sincerely

A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to be 'E.J. Ayers'.

E.J. AYERS

Secretary

Department of Defence

A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to be 'P.C. Gration'.

P.C. GRATION

General

Chief of the Defence Force

CONTENTS

Letter of Transmittal	iii
Guide to the Report	vii

PART ONE - INTRODUCTION

Defence Program Overview	3
Management of the Defence Organisation	9

PART TWO - PROGRAMS

Program 1: Current Defence Forces	17
1.1 ADF Command	19
1.2 Navy	31
1.3 Army	36
1.4 Air Force	41
The Labours of Hercules: Defence Assistance to the Civil Community	47
Program 2: Defence Development	49
2.1 Procurement of Capital Equipment	50
2.2 Australian Industry Involvement	62
2.3 Procurement of Capital Facilities	66
Defence and Industry: Building More Than Confidence	71
Program 3: Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits	73
Program 4: Defence Support	75
4.1 Natural Disasters and Civil Defence	76
4.2 Defence Housing	80
4.3 Defence Cooperation	81
4.4 Defence Production	85
4.5 Defence Science and Technology	86
DSTO 'Steels' The New Subs for Australia	95
Program 5: Defence Corporate Services	97
5.1 Executive	97
5.2 Personnel, Resources Management and Support	98
5.3 Strategic Planning	119
5.4 Logistics	128
The Employment of Women in the ADF	131

PART THREE - APPENDICES

Appendix A: Acts Administered by the Minister for Defence	135
Appendix B: Non Statutory Bodies	137
Appendix C: Parliamentary Committees and Auditor-General's Reports	143
Appendix D: Public Information	151
Appendix E: External Consultancies	159
Appendix F: Freedom of Information Section 8 Statement	177
Appendix G: Financial Statements	187

INDEX

CHARTS AND TABLES

Defence Higher Organisation	4
Portfolio Program Structure	5
Defence Portfolio - Statistical Overview	6-8
Program Management and Budgeting Cycle	12
Current Defence Forces - Resources Expended	18
ADF Personnel Statistics	25-27
Army Operational Readiness	37-39
Air Force Operational Readiness	42-44
Defence Development - Resources Expended	49
Capital Equipment - Project Approvals and Expenditure	53-54
Contracts Awarded	55
Capital Facilities - Project Approvals and Expenditure	68
DFRDB - Resources Expended	73
Defence Support - Resources Expended	75
Corporate Services - Resources Expended	97
Defence Civilian Personnel Statistics	100-101
Training and Staff Development Statistics	103-105
Equal Employment Opportunity Statistics	108-109
ADF Recruiting	111
Resources Management - Financial Summary	115-118
FOI Statistics	127

PART ONE

INTRODUCTION



DEFENCE PROGRAM OVERVIEW

The first responsibility of government is to provide the nation with security from armed attack and from the constraints on independent national decisions imposed by the threat of such attack.

The Government's approach to defence is to seek to reinforce the positive aspects of Australia's strategic environment and to provide an appropriate measure of insurance against future uncertainty. The fundamental elements of that approach are to:

- maintain and develop capabilities for the independent defence of Australia and its interests;
- promote strategic stability and security in our region; and
- as a member of the Western strategic community, to work for a continuation of the reduction in the level of tension between the superpowers and to limit the spread of influences in our region inimical to Western interests.

Consistent with Australia's strategic circumstances, prospects and policies, the Defence organisation aims to provide Australia with an increased ability to defend itself within its own resources. This policy of self-reliance is pursued within a framework of alliances and agreements.

In support of these aims, Defence operated under five programs in 1989-90:

Current Defence Forces - which provide the operational and training elements capable of maintaining a self-reliant defence posture for the defence of Australia and its direct interests;

Defence Development - which provides for selective upgrading of Defence capabilities through a long-term program of equipment and facilities investment, including related industry development;

Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits - which provides members of the Defence Force with an occupational superannuation scheme;

Defence Support - which embraces functions important to our independent defence capacity including:

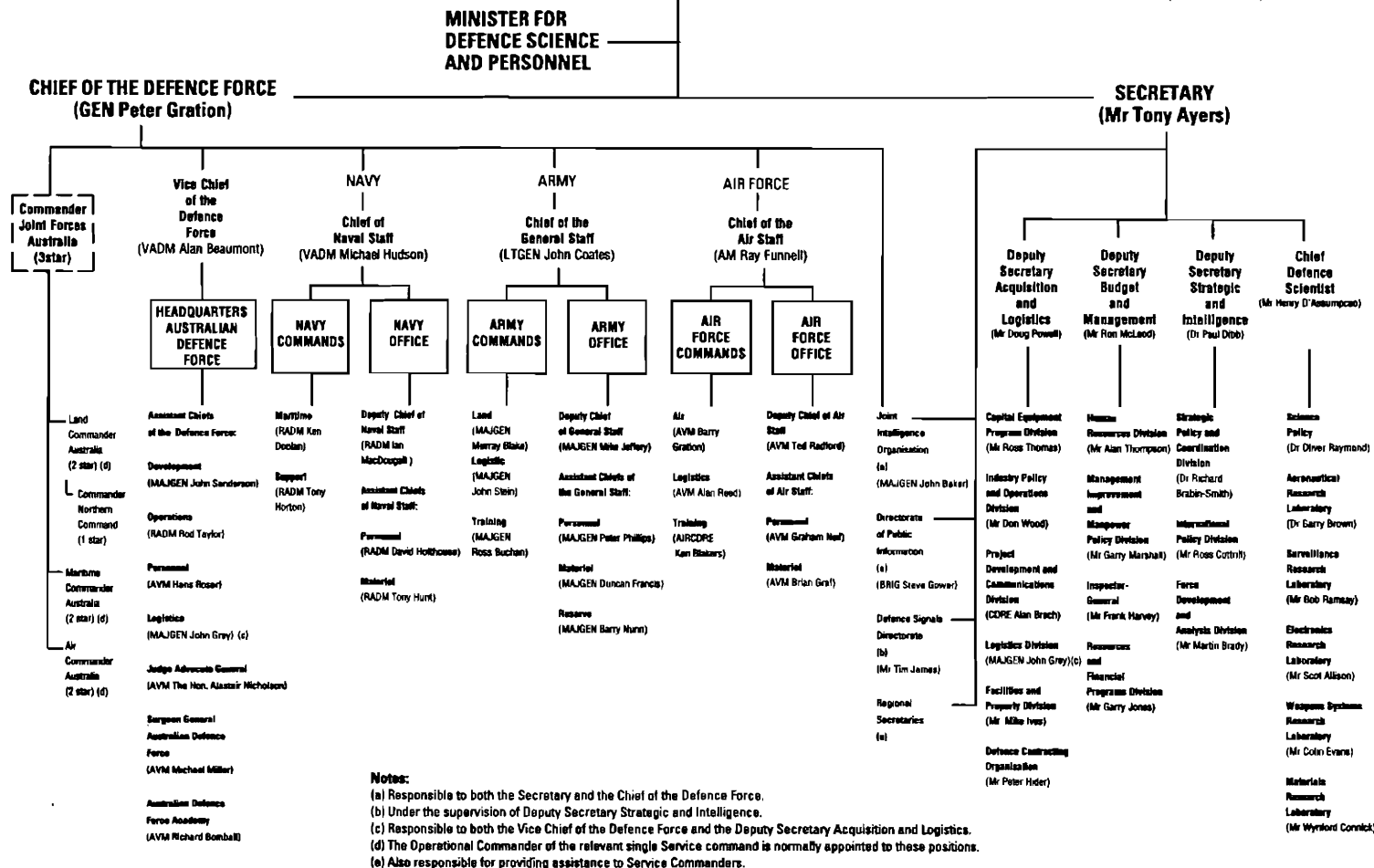
- a base of scientific and technological expertise and facilities;
- selected production capabilities;
- cooperation with regional friends in matters of mutual defence interest;
- coordination and planning of the national response to natural disasters; and
- the provision of housing and accommodation services for eligible ADF personnel.

Defence Corporate Services - which develops, manages and coordinates the policies and resources of the Department towards the efficient support and implementation of programs, in particular to:

- provide resources policy and management services;
- monitor changes in strategic circumstances through intelligence, assessment and review processes, and analyse regularly the consequences for the force structure of the types of military pressure that could arise; and
- contribute to the planning and provision of common logistic systems.

Through these programs, the Defence organisation aims to maintain strong defence relationships with the United States and with New Zealand, to further a favourable strategic situation in South East Asia and the South West Pacific and to promote a sense of strategic community between Australia and its neighbours in our area of primary strategic interest.

MINISTER FOR DEFENCE

DEFENCE HIGHER ORGANISATION
(30 June 1990)

PORTFOLIO PROGRAM STRUCTURE

1

CURRENT DEFENCE FORCES

- 1.1 ADF COMMAND
- 1.2 NAVY
- 1.3 ARMY
- 1.4 AIR FORCE

2

DEFENCE DEVELOPMENT

- 2.1 PROCUREMENT OF CAPITAL EQUIPMENT
- 2.2 AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRY INVOLVEMENT
- 2.3 PROCUREMENT OF CAPITAL FACILITIES

3

DEFENCE FORCE RETIREMENT & DEATH BENEFITS

4

DEFENCE SUPPORT

- 4.1 NATURAL DISASTERS AND CIVIL DEFENCE
- 4.2 DEFENCE HOUSING
- 4.3 DEFENCE COOPERATION
- 4.4 DEFENCE PRODUCTION
- 4.5 DEFENCE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

5

DEFENCE CORPORATE SERVICES

- 5.1 EXECUTIVE
- 5.2 STRATEGIC PLANNING
- 5.3 PERSONNEL, RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND SUPPORT
- 5.4 LOGISTICS

DEFENCE PORTFOLIO - STATISTICAL OVERVIEW

Table A: Expenditure 1989-90 by Program and Major Appropriation Groups

<i>Program</i>	<i>Capital Equipment</i>	<i>Capital Facilities</i>	<i>Personnel</i>	<i>Operating Costs</i>	<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Outlay</i>
	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>
Current						
Defence Forces	148.008		2 605.882	1 869.433	-133.778	4 489.545
Defence						
Development	1 694.558	446.477	35.466	34.001	-81.459	2 129.043
Defence Force						
Retirement Benefit			670.996		-108.157	562.839
Defence Support	27.787	131.100	202.050	447.192	-68.951	739.178
Corporate Services	37.697		182.926	371.146	-36.103	555.666
Total	1 908.050	577.577	3 697.320	2 721.772	-428.448	8 476.271

Notes (a) Excludes expenditure on Young Endeavour and revenue not attributable to Defence.

(b) Expenditure on Defence Housing has been split between capital facilities and operating costs in the Defence Support program.

(c) Revenue includes trust account movements.

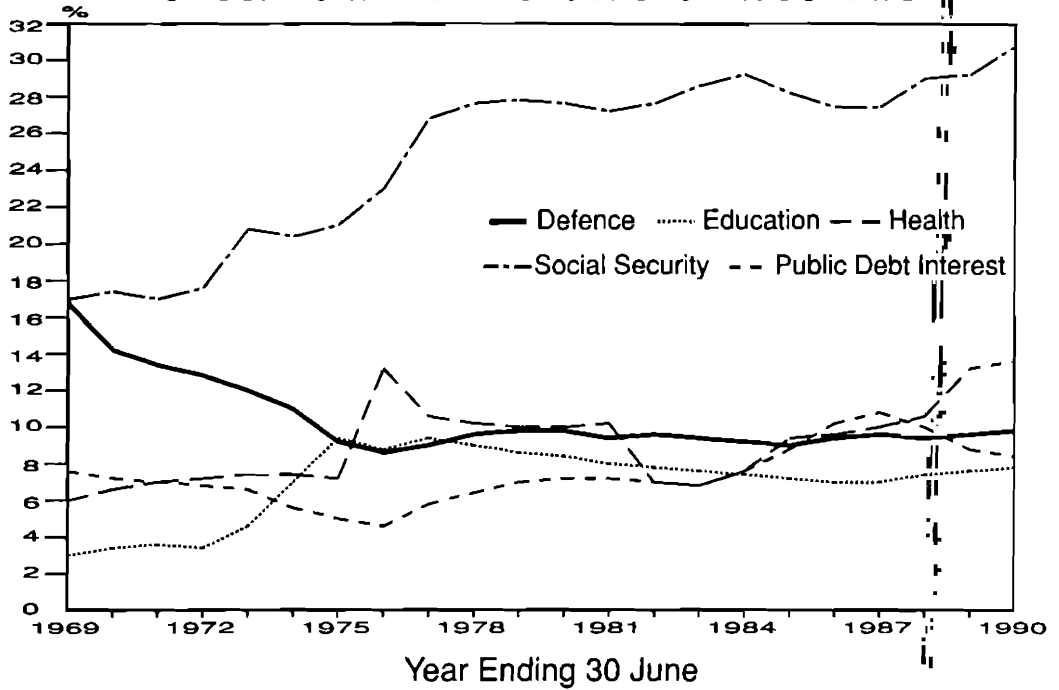
**Table B: Distribution of Service Personnel and Civilian Staff by Program
Average Strength 1989-90**

<i>Program</i>	<i>Australian Defence Force</i>			<i>Civilian</i>	<i>Total</i>
	<i>Reserves</i>	<i>Trained Force</i>	<i>Training Force</i>		
Current Forces					
ADF Command		637	855	293	1785
Navy	185	13 404	1 475	4 868	19 932
Army	2 886	27 298	2 856	6 210	39 250
Air Force	231	19 770	1 858	2 746	24 605
Total: Current Forces	3 302	61 109	7 044	14 117	85 572
Defence Development		97		798	895
Defence Support		45		3 873	3 918
Corporate Services		530		5 134	5 664
Total	3 302	61 781	7 044	23 922	96 049

Notes (a) The figure for Reserves shows the average number of full-time equivalent reserves for the year. For budget purposes, the average number of staff years is calculated from the number of training days used.

(b) Civilian figures include paid inoperative staff, part-time staff and casual labour expressed as full-time equivalents.

DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAY AS A PERCENTAGE OF COMMONWEALTH BUDGET SECTOR OUTLAYS



DEFENCE EXPENDITURE AS A % OF GDP AUSTRALIA & SELECTED OVERSEAS COUNTRIES

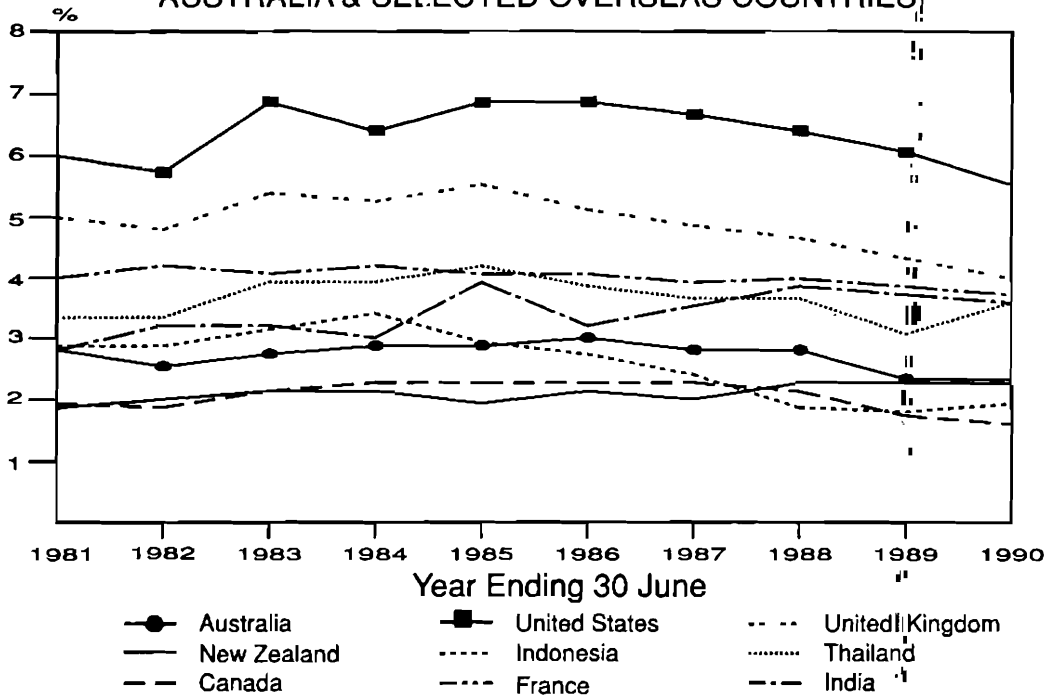


Table C: Distribution of ADF Reserve and Civilian Personnel by Location of Employment as at 30 June 1990

	NSW	Vic	Qld	SA	WA	Tas	NT	ACT	Over-seas	Total
Navy	8 690	1 985	507	63	1 526	29	573	2 150	133	15 656
Navy Reserve	325	282	284	215	173	156	49	10	0	1 494
Army	8 119	6 633	10 201	983	1 211	224	193	3 109	148	30 821
Army Reserve	7 036	4 328	5 968	1 973	2 375	1 073	626	141	0	23 520
Air Force	6 988	4 648	3 351	2 066	1 145	28	1 282	2 090	254	21 852
Air Force Reserve	461	280	373	205	160	10	20	109	0	1 618
Cvilians	6 256	7 363	1 660	3 038	500	108	267	4 849	67	24 108
Total	37 875	25 519	22 344	8 543	7 090	1 628	3 010	12 458	602	119 069

- Notes (a) Overseas figures include personnel posted for long term duty. Personnel on short term duty overseas are included against the State or Territory in which they are permanently employed.
- (b) Figures for Navy and Air Force include all paid and unpaid members. Army figures are posted strength, including Reserves on full time duty but not including unpaid members. Army Reserve figures exclude non-effective Reserves and the Emergency Reserve (1 616).
- (c) Personnel serving in ships are included against the State or Territory in which the ship is home-ported.
- (d) Civilian staff figures include long and short term temporary staff. They also include 309 paid inoperative staff and 465 part time staff but exclude 239 Munitions Trust Account staff, 195 casual staff, 590 unpaid inoperative staff and 227 overseas locally-engaged civilians.

MANAGEMENT OF THE DEFENCE ORGANISATION

For the Defence organisation, this financial year has been marked by the introduction of some of the most far-reaching changes in structure and practices since the Defence reorganisation of 1975.

The changes fall into four main areas: the Structural Review of Higher ADF Staff Arrangements; the Secretary's Review of Defence Central Office organisation; Program Management and Budgeting; and the revised Higher Defence Process. These changes are all directed to creating an organisational environment which has economy and the more effective use of Defence resources as its focus.

THE STRUCTURAL REVIEW OF HIGHER ADF STAFF ARRANGEMENTS

The Chief of the Defence Force (CDF) directed a review of higher ADF staff arrangements to improve policy formulation and administration, allow the introduction of flatter management structures more in tune with modern practices and enhance the authority of senior officers. The review was specifically directed to recommend arrangements which would reduce the number of senior Service officers, particularly in Canberra. This was aimed at easing pay compression at higher ranks, with the resultant savings to be used to offset higher rewards for greater responsibility under the Structural Efficiency Principle.

The review was completed in June 1989 and the then Minister for Defence approved the implementation of the new arrangements on 5 July 1989.

The review identified those questions which a national defence planning process must be capable of addressing: namely, what should force characteristics and size be in the future; how should the force be disposed now and how should it be moved to higher levels of preparedness to meet changing circumstances; and how should the national infrastructure be employed to ensure that operations can be sustained appropriately? The recommendations of the review were based on the premise that the processes used to determine the answers to these questions must be not only rigorous and free from self interest but also able to cope with the unforeseen and, most importantly, foster a spirit of corporate identification with the resulting objectives.

The review identified greater centralisation of military policy development and programming and further devolution of responsibility and authority for the execution of programs as necessary to achieve structural efficiency. It identified the introduction of PMB as a management and command mechanism in the Department and the ADF and the key to the reorganisation. It also recognised that the concentration of policy and programming functions in Headquarters Australian Defence Force (HQADF) would give rise to the need for adjustment to the joint service/civilian process.

The review concluded that the Chiefs of Staff have a vital part to play in higher policy development and should remain as the professional heads and commanders of their Services for all activities other than operations.

Three principles were applied to identify those positions which were to be eliminated and to achieve flatter management structures: rank should be based on the level of work performed; functions should be concentrated to identify redundant positions; and the collocation of some functions was desirable to facilitate the joint process.

The structural changes flowing from the review's recommendations were formally implemented on 13 February 1990.

Within HQADF, a Development Division was formed from the existing Policy Division, the force development organisations of each of the Services and elements of the Information Systems Policy Division. Responsibility for service personnel policy, pay and conditions and aspects of their

administration was transferred from the Secretary to the CDF and added to the functions of Personnel Division. The functions and staffing levels of Operations Division were revised to reflect changes in ADF higher command arrangements, particularly the transfer of responsibility for the command of operations from the Service Chiefs of Staff to the CDF that resulted from the review of higher level command arrangements conducted in 1988. Several other changes have taken place in the higher ADF staff arrangements, notably the creation of an Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Logistics). This position replaces the former Head of Defence Logistics and is responsible to both the CDF and the Secretary. Other changes are described elsewhere in this report.

A common organisational model for the Service Offices was developed which recognised that the detailed organisation of each Office remained the responsibility of the Chief of Staff. The three Service Offices each now has three divisions: a Deputy Chief of Staff Division; Personnel Division; and Materiel Division. The size of the Service Offices has been reduced considerably by the transfer of staff and functions into HQADF and overall a reduction of 127 senior military officer positions. These reductions, representing annual savings of \$8 million, included 10 two star and 15 one star officers and represented 20 per cent of the senior military officer positions in Canberra.

The revised arrangements concentrate long term planning, programming and force development staffs in a joint working environment within HQADF, responsible to CDF and responsive to the Secretary and Service Chiefs of Staff. The new organisation and procedures have given senior staff commensurately greater responsibilities and removed duplication of functions. Increases in responsibility at one level have meant greater autonomy at the next level down, in keeping with efficiency objectives of the Structural Review. There has been greater delegation of executive authority away from Canberra to the areas responsible for particular functions.

THE SECRETARY'S REVIEW OF DEFENCE CENTRAL OFFICE ORGANISATION

A complementary review of Defence Central Office was undertaken by the Secretary. This review was aimed at rationalising and decentralising aspects of the Department's central office organisation in a manner which would better align it with the changed arrangements for HQADF and the Service Offices and provide a structure which was more consistent with the principles of the Financial Management Improvement Program.

The Secretary's review determined that 17 Senior Executive Service (SES) positions would be abolished and showed that a reduction in the order of 300 Defence Central civilian staff could be achieved, representing a reduction of 10 per cent in Canberra based civilian staff numbers. A total of 35 SES positions have now been abolished since 1986, representing an overall reduction of 20 per cent in SES resources in Defence. The positions abolished comprised three at deputy secretary level, nine at division head level and 23 at branch head level. The 10 per cent reduction in personnel has been achieved through natural attrition in the areas concerned.

The reorganisation has affected all major areas of Defence Central and has resulted in a flatter management structure for the Department through the amalgamation of some branches and the rationalisation or shedding of functions. The Secretary's review of the Department's Central Office organisation, together with initiatives such as the devolution of personnel, financial and administrative responsibilities, has provided the basis for a significant change to Defence management.

THE DEFENCE REGIONAL SUPPORT REVIEW

The Secretary and the CDF also directed a review of Defence Regional Support arrangements to examine ways to extend more effective management throughout Defence within Australia. This wide-ranging review of the Defence regional organisation, both military and civilian, was undertaken to determine the most effective and economic procedures and structural arrangements to support

Defence activities. The aim of the review was to identify measures to rationalise support functions and eliminate duplication, with emphasis on the potential for joint Service and integrated Service and civilian arrangements to produce significant resource savings.

A report was completed in December 1989 and its recommendations have since been under close examination within Defence. A separate study team commenced work in May 1990 to develop specific proposals for devolution and integration of administrative support arrangements within Victoria and Tasmania. The Chiefs of Staff and the Secretary considered the report formally in June and agreed that 76 other studies or propositions which appear to offer the economy and change of direction sought from the review should proceed and be completed within 12 months. Overall resource savings will be able to be identified only when the studies have been completed and accepted.

THE REVISED HIGHER DEFENCE PROCESS

Within the Defence organisation the CDF and the Secretary have both separate powers and joint responsibilities under statute and through Ministerial directives. In advice to Government on most Defence matters there needs to be a civilian input to the CDF's role as commander and principal military adviser to the Minister, and a military input to the Secretary's role as resource manager and principal civilian adviser to the Minister. The Defence committee system draws together in a formal way the responsibilities of the CDF and the Secretary to provide advice to government.

The concentration of military policy development and resource planning within HQADF and the changed organisation and responsibilities for each of the Service Offices as a result of the Structural Review and the introduction of PMB demanded some adjustment to the higher Defence working process.

The revised process commenced on 1 February 1990.

A key feature of this process and the other organisational initiatives generally is the recognition given to the need for Defence to undergo a cultural change. This refers to both the traditional interaction among the Canberra based policy staffs and the devolution of authority and responsibility. The revised higher Defence process emphasises the importance of resolving issues at the staff level, or in informal working groups wherever practical, in preference to processing issues through the formal committee system. Closer staff consultation will be assisted by the collocation of joint military staffs and by their close proximity to Defence Central policy staff. Duplication of effort is to be avoided and authority and responsibility devolved to the maximum extent possible.

The revised higher Defence committee system will concentrate on providing advice on major issues, managing the programming process and planning and reviewing proposals for ADF development.

PROGRAM MANAGEMENT AND BUDGETING

Preparatory work on the full introduction of PMB was undertaken by a Task Force set up by the Secretary and the CDF to report on all issues associated with PMB. PMB provides the central framework for the other management reforms in Defence.

Program Structure

A structure of eight major programs to accord with the military chain of command and lines of management authority will be introduced for 1990-91. Accountability for program performance, including arrangements for allocation and management of resources, will follow this structure. The close identification of the revised program structure with the management arrangements in Defence will enhance the value of PMB as an aid to Defence managers.

The eight programs and their respective program managers are:

Program	Program Manager
Forces Executive	Vice Chief of the Defence Force
Navy	Chief of the Naval Staff
Army	Chief of the General Staff
Air Force	Chief of the Air Staff
Science and Technology	Chief Defence Scientist
Strategy and Intelligence	Deputy Secretary Strategic and Intelligence
Acquisition and Logistics	Deputy Secretary Acquisition and Logistics
Budget and Management	Deputy Secretary Budget and Management

This structure will be supported by 43 subprograms and together these will form the basis of program reporting each year. For internal purposes, the program structure is expected to be further dissected into at least 900 components and elements at the lowest levels. Further work is needed on logical groupings of elements of the ADF into force element groups as a basis for better internal program management and reporting.

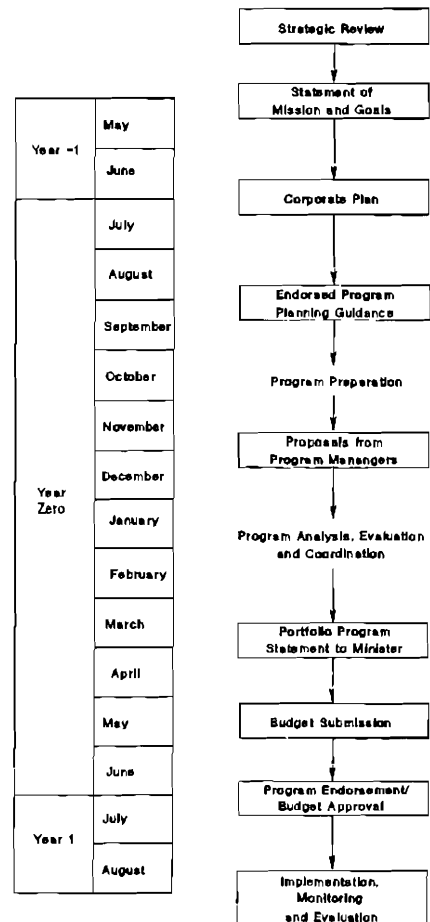
Program Management Arrangements

New arrangements will be adopted to reflect the way Parliament now wishes to focus on accountability for resources allocated to programs and program performance rather than by examining appropriation line items of the Budget.

Program Managers will be accountable to the Secretary and the CDF for the management of their assigned programs, including the development of program plans and the achievement of agreed program objectives. Lower level managers will be accountable, through the chain of command or line of management responsibility, to the Program Manager. Program Managers are expected to devolve appropriate program management responsibilities to lower level managers.

In addition, portfolio policy advisers will be responsible for ensuring that guidance on policy and statutory requirements is available to the Program Managers in the exercise of their responsibility for particular functions. Portfolio policy advisers have policy responsibilities, on behalf of the Secretary and the CDF, which extend across the boundaries of individual programs and will participate in corporate planning and evaluation. Program Managers will be responsible for implementation. All eight Program Managers will have some portfolio policy advising role.

The overall PMB cycle is geared to the requirements for strategic, financial and corporate planning guidance at



the government, portfolio or program level and dovetails with the annual budgeting timetable.

The cycle extends for 16 months, as shown in the accompanying diagram. The overlap from one annual cycle to the next reflects the rolling nature of the process. The present system of forward financial planning in Defence will be largely retained and is discussed in greater detail under Program 5 'Defence Corporate Services'.

Devolution and Decentralisation

Many former control mechanisms, which constrained the real authority and flexibility available to Program Managers and their lower level commanders and managers, have been removed or greatly relaxed. These changes are also described in more detail under Program 5 but include:

- giving Departmental Division Heads and Chiefs of Staff the power to create and abolish civilian positions;
- allowing individual managers to approve expenditure on routine items up to the limit of funds available; and
- giving Program Managers greater flexibility to redirect allocated resources towards day-to-day priorities, as a consequence of substantially fewer parliamentary appropriation line items.

A more modern and flexible financial management information system, to support the program structure and to streamline departmental accounting processes, will be introduced from 1 July 1990 in all Australian capital cities. It will be extended to all major Defence establishments over the next few years. Similar improvements are planned for personnel and supply systems.

Performance Evaluation

A key feature of the Financial Management Improvement Program and PMB is the increased emphasis on accountability of Program Managers, to Ministers and to Parliament, for program performance in return for devolution of the necessary authority to execute programs more autonomously.

The 1989-90 Budget Explanatory Notes included information on program performance which was considerably more detailed than previously. But further work is necessary to develop adequate information on the performance of Defence programs and the management of budgetary resources to meet parliamentary concerns. Initiatives have been taken to improve and make more visible the evaluation of Defence proposals and programs and to reconcile the demands of public accountability of commanders and managers with the interests of national security.

We hope that the *Defence Report* for 1989-90 will be seen as progress along that path.



PART TWO

PROGRAMS



PROGRAM 1: CURRENT DEFENCE FORCES

OBJECTIVE

For contingencies within Australia's area of direct military interest, in defence of Australia and its interests at sea, on land, in the air, or combinations of these, to be able to:

- undertake current and foreseeable peacetime operational tasks as directed by the Government;
- deal effectively with the kinds of credible contingencies, such as raids, harassment and incursions, that could arise over shorter timescales; and
- provide a suitable basis for timely expansion to meet higher levels of threat if Australia's strategic circumstances deteriorate over the longer term.

Meeting the requirement for the defence of Australia provides the Government with practical options for the use of elements of the ADF in tasks beyond Australia's area of direct military interest in support of regional friends and allies.

DESCRIPTION

Within this planning framework, priority capability areas include:

- surveillance and patrol operations in our maritime resources zone and proximate ocean areas;
- maritime forces (including mine countermeasure forces) able to protect shipping in coastal waters and in our focal areas and ports;
- mobile ground forces able to defeat hostile incursions at remote localities and to protect military and infrastructure assets, especially those that support the projection of our maritime power;
- ground reconnaissance and surveillance forces;
- air defence within our maritime areas and northern approaches;
- maritime and land interdiction and strike capabilities, particularly the ability to undertake maritime operations in the approaches to north and north-west Australia;
- a capability to sustain operations in areas of Australia and its territories remote from our industrial and logistic support centres; and
- command, control and communications systems commensurate with these tasks.

The Current Defence Forces program comprises the active and reserve combat forces and those service and civilian personnel involved in support, training and command and control functions for the ADF. It does not include ADF personnel dedicated to other programs.

PERFORMANCE

The performance of the Current Defence Forces program is measured by the ability of our defence forces to provide in a timely way forces appropriately equipped, trained and supported for contingencies envisaged by strategic guidance. It is also measured by the ability of our defence forces to contribute to regional security through information exchanges, combined exercises, high level visits and other activities. (Activities under the Defence Cooperation subprogram are also related.)

Criteria for assessment of these abilities are:

- effectiveness in deployment and operations;
- the standard of single, joint and combined exercises;

Part Two

- the achievement of readiness, surge and sustainability targets;
- the level and standard of training and skills of personnel; and
- capability and availability of equipment.

The capability and readiness of the defence forces are reported biannually to the CDF. Although the material involved is mostly security classified, the public presentation of such information will continue to be improved.

Table 1.1: Current Defence Forces - Resources Expended 1989-90

		<i>Outlays</i>
		<i>\$m</i>
1.1	ADF Command	104.833
1.2	Navy	1 182.468
1.3	Army	1 763.171
1.4	Air Force	1 439.073
Total: Current Defence Forces		4 489.545



A Hamel 105mm howitzer of 4 Field Regiment is about to be deployed by a Black Hawk helicopter of 5 Aviation Regiment at Pine Creek, NT, during K89.

SUBPROGRAM 1.1: ADF COMMAND

OBJECTIVE

To support the CDF's dual role as commander of the ADF and principal military adviser to the Government; to provide military policy, planning, operational training, intelligence, communications, force development and logistics direction to the ADF; to support command of joint forces, including Headquarters Joint Forces Australia and Maritime, Land and Air Commands; and to formulate joint military policy on personnel matters, conditions of service and training and health.

DESCRIPTION

The ADF command component comprises HQADF which has been expanded and strengthened over recent years to reflect the importance of joint planning for ADF operations and for effective joint operations in credible contingencies. HQADF provides policy, planning and administrative support to the CDF, as well as command support systems to assist the CDF's command of operations.

PERFORMANCE

The effectiveness of HQADF is measured by key results in:

- command of the ADF, including deployed forces;
- development, in accordance with strategic priorities, of ADF force structure, capabilities and doctrine;
- setting and monitoring of operational readiness requirements; and
- fostering ADF effectiveness and efficiency by coordinating Service activity in such areas as administration, personnel, conditions of service and training and health.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Command and Control of the ADF

Exercise Kangaroo 89 - Conduct and Results

Exercise *Kangaroo 89* (K89) represented the first opportunity to assess the current tactical capabilities of the ADF in a joint operational setting based on the concept of defence in depth provided by the 1987 Defence White Paper.

K89 was conducted from July to September 1989. The area of operations extended from Cape York to the Pilbara region and involved nearly one third of the regular ADF and about 6 000 reservists from all Services. Over 2 000 United States Service personnel also participated in the exercise.

Exercises such as K89 are an important source of information on the performance of the ADF in meeting its objectives. The exercise demonstrated that the ADF can deploy, operate and support itself in the north and defend the area against a low level threat. It also exposed a number of deficiencies in equipment, training and infrastructure. Over 160 major recommendations requiring follow-up action were identified in the classified Post Exercise Report in April 1990. An unclassified account of the exercise has been distributed widely within Australia and overseas.

The Benefits

For the first time, the major proportion of the ADF's deployable combat force was exposed to the northern Australian environment as an area of operations.

The exercise yielded considerable value in tactical training at all levels and for all participants. Many

unit and formation training activities which would be scheduled in a normal training year were covered by K89. The ADF as a whole benefited from the concurrent training activity among many units within each Service and from each of the Services which such an exercise makes possible. Significant experience in interoperability with United States forces at the tactical level was achieved by all Services.

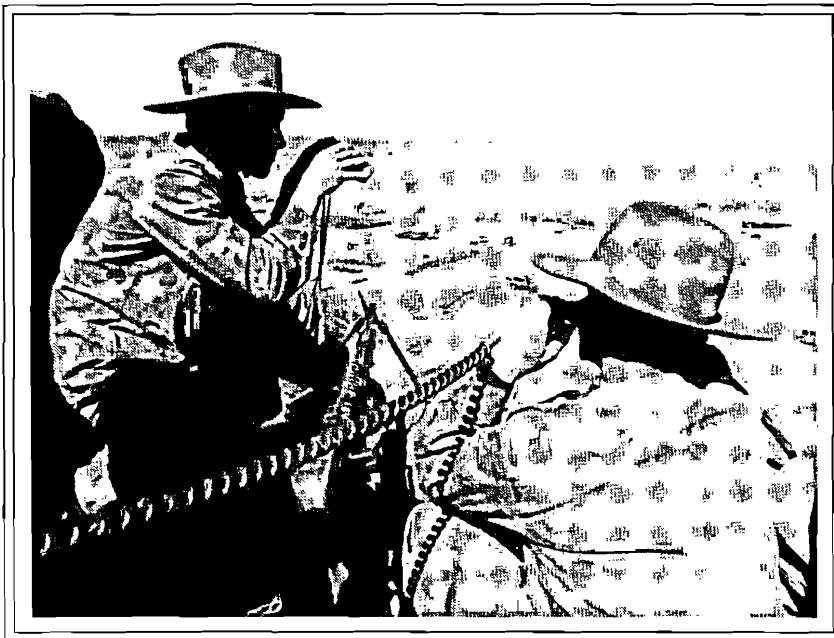
Arrangements between civilian and military organisations for the planning and conduct of operations in Australia were enhanced considerably. Particular emphasis was placed on the use of civil support and commercial infrastructure both locally and on a broader basis through the involvement of state, territory and regional counter disaster organisations, state and territory police forces, Coastwatch, Telecom, the civil airlines, the Civil Aviation Authority and the National Freight Forwarders Association. A high level of cooperation with local communities was achieved and it has been estimated that about \$11 million was injected into the local economy by the exercise.

The publicity generated by the exercise significantly raised public awareness of Australia's defence policies and the profile of the Services.

K89 also demonstrated that relatively large scale exercises can be conducted on non-defence land with minimal environmental impact if the appropriate safeguards are developed by planning staff in consultation with the appropriate authorities. The compensation bill was less than half a million dollars, of which ninety per cent was for road maintenance.

The Lessons

K89 demonstrated that low level operations are manpower and resource intensive. The potential for widespread enemy action in low level operations will require the ADF to be prepared to operate in widely dispersed areas and to patrol and protect population centres, vital national installations and our air and sea lines of communication. At the same time the ADF must be able to concentrate or redeploy forces rapidly if this is required. Vital asset protection tasks are manpower intensive and a system of priorities for such tasks will need to be addressed.



Two soldiers from 11/28 Battalion maintain surveillance of the Woodside Petroleum supply depot on the Burrup Peninsular. Vital asset protection was a principal role for the Army Reserve during K89.

The Jindalee over-the-horizon radar proved its capability to provide early warning and an indication of target size. Data is still being assessed but, when the system is fully developed and supported by other electronic surveillance assets, it will provide an important link in long range surveillance.

The National Air Defence System worked well, although, when used in conjunction with long range air defence of the fleet, it proved costly in resources and confirmed the need for airborne refuelling. Activation of, and operations from, the bare base at RAAF Curtin were successful and it was confirmed that an additional bare base in the Weipa area is required to support air defence and maritime operations in the Gulf of Carpentaria, Torres Strait and points further east.

Surveillance and intelligence gathering involved electronic means, military units including regional force surveillance units and conventional reconnaissance assets, the civilian community and non-defence resources such as Coastwatch. The huge amount of information available, its timeliness and the diversity of sources suggest the need for a coordinated strategic surveillance plan. This will be the subject of further study.

From the maritime perspective a number of concepts were tested and they provided valuable lessons for operations in the northern sea/air gap. The concept of a commodore of flotillas exercising tactical command of a naval task group was most successful. Valuable anti-submarine warfare experience was gained under northern Australian environmental conditions. The significant assistance that ship-borne helicopters can provide to surface ships was demonstrated during anti-submarine, surface surveillance and contact identification operations. Fremantle Class Patrol Boats were integrated into major fleet task group operations to an extent not previously attempted. The effect of the huge areas of ocean between Torres Strait and North West Cape on naval operations was reinforced.

The tactical mobility afforded by the Black Hawk helicopters was excellent; however, a requirement remains to ensure that fuel, stores, troops and combat support are positioned within Black Hawk range of potential areas of operations. This is being examined and a solution may be in increasing the number of landing strips in the north capable of taking a C-130 Hercules.

Northern Command achieved particular success early in the exercise operating against small raiding and reconnaissance parties who had the initiative in selecting the point of attack. A thorough knowledge of the terrain and the support of local communities reduced the problem to manageable proportions. The effectiveness of the combination of inshore patrol craft, regional force surveillance units, aviation for spotting and cavalry for reacting to enemy groups was highlighted. Even so, it remains difficult to detect and deal with a hostile high calibre special forces operating over such a vast area.

Cooperation with the civil community was good and the system of territory/state and regional committees which were established worked well. This is developing along the right lines and the experience will contribute to studies currently in progress.

Communications over the vast distances involved are critical. Although the strategic network fully met the additional traffic loads generated by the exercise, the introduction of the Defence Integrated Secure Communications Network will greatly enhance communications. At the tactical level, a variety of technical problems were apparent. These will be rectified as existing communications projects are completed. Extensive liaison with Telecom will continue to ensure efficient Defence utilisation of Telecom facilities and that Defence needs are considered in the development of the national communications infrastructure.

Although the logistic system worked very well, the results are to be analysed very carefully. The supply routes were not disrupted by hostile action and the full range of combat supplies, such as ammunition, were not moved during the exercise. Some problems with naval fuel were apparent but the acquisition of HMAS *Westralia* will help alleviate this.

Conclusion

The exercise was very successful and achieved its aim. K89 demonstrated that, with the timely introduction into service of those capabilities identified in the 1987 Defence White Paper, the ADF could mount a defence of Australia against the sorts of low level contingency credible in the short term.



The Minister for Defence Kim Beazley and the CDF General Peter Gration at the K89 press conference on 5 August 1989.

K89 confirmed the validity of command and control doctrine for the conduct of operations in low level and escalated low level conflict. In particular, it confirmed the validity of appointing a Commander Joint Forces Australia and raising the necessary operational headquarters, Headquarters Joint Forces Australia, during escalated low level conflict.

There were some difficulties in raising an ad-hoc headquarters from within the existing manpower and facilities of the ADF. A study is being undertaken by HQADF to determine how Maritime, Land and Air Headquarters could be collocated to provide the basis for Headquarters Joint Forces Australia. Such an arrangement would provide the necessary staff, facilities and command support system for Commander Joint Forces Australia while allowing the existing headquarters to function normally at other times.

The direct cost of K89, other than salaries, was \$114 million. Of this sum, approximately \$78 million would have been committed to single Service and other joint exercises or routine aspects of operations and training which would otherwise have been carried out during 1989-90. The additional cost of conducting K89 was therefore about \$36 million. This covered the increased use of fuel, food and repair and maintenance items as well as the cost of moving troops, vehicles and equipment to and from the exercise area.

The extra cost of \$36 million has been more than justified by the wealth of experience gained and lessons learnt in what was a milestone in the development of the ADF.

Communications Corporate Plan

The importance of communications has increased due to the new and evolving command structure within the ADF, the emphasis on joint forces and the distances over which the ADF might now be required to operate and hence communicate.

In late 1988 work commenced on an ADF communications plan to ensure equipment projects fit into a longer term plan that rationalises our current facilities and ensures, firstly, our joint force commanders have strategic and tactical communications in important strategic areas and, secondly, that the communications network also covers peacetime training and administrative communications.

The plan is to provide guidance on the nature and extent of communications capabilities needed to support the ADF up to the year 2000, taking into account strategic policies, the Force Structure Review, improvements in technology and resource availability. The first stage of the Communications Corporate Plan is expected to be complete by late 1990.

ADF Readiness Reporting

Following a review of ADF operational readiness, the CDF issued a directive in April 1989 which set specific operational readiness objectives for the Navy, Army and Air Force to achieve. These objectives set the minimum standards of readiness for specific force elements in relation to roles and tasks that the ADF might be required to undertake. The objectives are framed in terms of quantities (force elements), and tasks and time (notice to achieve an operational level of capability).

Service Chiefs of Staff biannual operational readiness reports inform the CDF of the capability and readiness of force elements, specifically those elements at shorter notice. Inabilities to meet objectives are identified as shortfalls in manpower, equipment, stocks and training. As part of the introduction of PMB, Development Division HQADF is developing procedures to quantify the resource costs for maintaining force elements at different levels of readiness. The two initial rounds of reports have indicated that, in general, ADF force elements at shorter notice maintain a satisfactory level of readiness. Readiness reporting has not yet developed sufficiently to allow accurate assessments of the readiness of longer notice elements.

The CDF's Operational Readiness Directive has been reviewed in the light of experience after one year of implementation. A revised directive will be issued after consideration by the Chiefs of Staff Committee.

Operational readiness reporting is complemented by the CDF's annual report to the Minister for Defence on the 'State of the ADF'. This year's report was made in May 1990 and highlighted the progress made in the ability of the ADF to conduct operations as well as progress in implementing the policies contained in the 1987 Defence White Paper. The report contains information on matters such as personnel wastage, the introduction of new equipment and the conduct of operations during the year and shows how these factors have affected the ability of each of the Services to carry out the tasks assigned to them.

Owing to the sensitive nature of the operational readiness reporting, detailed information is not made publicly available.

Development of the ADF

The most significant development this year has been the implementation of the Structural Review which is discussed in Part I. Other significant steps in the development of the ADF are as follows.

Force Development and Operational Concept Papers

The force development process is concerned with both the review of existing capabilities and the development of new capabilities within the framework established by strategic and financial guidance from the Government. Operational concepts provide the foundation for the force development process by defining how the ADF will accomplish its likely tasks and consequently the basis for examining what capabilities the ADF requires.

Until the end of 1989, work on operational concepts was based on treatment of maritime, land and air environments. While this produced valuable results, it did not meet the requirements of the force development process for examining ADF capabilities. The approach to operational concepts was re-examined in early 1990 and a new approach endorsed in April by the Defence Concepts and Capabilities Committee. This will involve a series of concepts papers based on the ten principal Defence roles identified in the recent strategic review, 'Australia's Strategic Planning for the 1990s'. Work has commenced on the first three concepts. The strategic review is discussed under subprogram 5.3 Strategic Planning.

Force Structure Review

The terms of reference for the force structure review were approved by the Minister for Defence on 28 May 1990. The aim is to examine current ADF force structure and, based on developments in strategic and financial guidance since the 1987 Defence White Paper, recommend priorities for adjusting force structure up to the year 2000.

The review will provide the higher level framework for those continuing activities by the ADF and Department which constitute the force development process. It will be undertaken by the Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Development) and the First Assistant Secretary Force Development and Analysis and is to be completed by the end of March 1991.

Chinook Withdrawal From Service

The fleet of CH47C Chinook medium lift helicopters was withdrawn from service on 1 July 1989 and is currently in storage at RAAF Amberley. K89 demonstrated that new ways had to be found to perform the tasks usually undertaken by the Chinooks, such as transporting fuel for the Black Hawk helicopters. The Defence Program Management Committee considered a proposal to re-introduce a limited number of Chinooks into the ADF in May 1990 and directed that further studies be undertaken. A decision on the matter will be made early in 1990-91.

Review of ADF Stockholding Policy.

During 1989-90, directives were issued by the CDF and the Secretary to develop a policy framework for stockholding preparedness and to develop a Defence stockholding policy. As a necessary first step, the Defence Logistic Planning Guide was produced in May 1990. The major theme of the guide is to link logistics resources to operational requirements. Building on this base, further work focusing on the means of deriving stockholding requirements from readiness and sustainability objectives is planned for 1990-91.

Review of ADF Support Flying.

During 1989-90, the ADF and the New Zealand Defence Force completed negotiations for an agreement under which a detachment of Royal New Zealand Air Force (RNZAF) personnel will conduct air defence support flying for the Royal Australian Navy on the east and west coasts of Australia. The use of RNZAF Skyhawks in this role will provide annual savings to the ADF and effectively extend the life of the F/A-18. The RNZAF detachment will be able to train with ADF force elements while the support flying task also offers the opportunity for training RNZAF Skyhawk pilots. The agreement is to be signed early in 1990-91 and the first RNZAF detachment will arrive in March 1991.

ADF Personnel Management

The objective is to develop comprehensive personnel policies which improve recruitment and retention in the ADF. This covers policies and practices which will assist in improving conditions of service and career opportunities and the provision of retirement and death benefits, housing and family support for ADF personnel

ADF PERSONNEL STATISTICS

Table 1.1.1: Australian Defence Force - Permanent Service Personnel by Employment Category and Sex

	<i>As at 30 June 1989</i>				<i>As at 30 June 1990</i>			
	<i>Men</i>	<i>%</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>%</i>	<i>Men</i>	<i>%</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>%</i>
Navy								
Officers	2 068	13.1	170	1.1	2 116	13.5	214	1.4
Other Ranks	10 357	65.8	1 312	8.4	10 223	65.3	1 417	9.1
Officer Trainees	453	2.8	149	0.9	426	2.7	133	0.8
Other Ranks Trainees	790	5.0	145	0.9	671	4.3	142	0.9
Apprentices	289	1.9	17	0.1	301	1.9	13	0.1
Total	13 957	88.6	1 793	11.4	13 737	87.7	1 919	12.3
Army								
Officers	4 144	13.3	379	1.2	4 108	13.5	404	1.3
Other Ranks	21 801	69.8	1 848	5.9	20 611	68.0	1 901	6.3
Officer Trainees	505	1.6	78	0.3	553	1.8	80	0.3
Other Ranks Trainees	1 726	5.5	253	0.8	1 652	5.4	201	0.7
Apprentices	495	1.5	23	0.1	792	2.6	31	0.1
Total	28 671	91.7	2 581	8.3	27 716	91.3	2 617	8.7
Air Force								
Officers	2 926	12.9	299	1.3	3 045	13.9	367	1.7
Other Ranks	14 570	64.5	2 373	10.5	13 835	63.3	2 532	11.6
Officer Trainees	643	2.8	146	0.6	539	2.5	112	0.5
Other Ranks Trainees	1 009	4.5	276	1.2	880	4.0	203	0.9
Apprentices	371	1.6	14	0.1	325	1.5	14	0.1
Total	19 519	86.3	3 108	13.7	18 624	85.2	3 228	14.8
ADF								
Officers	9 138	13.1	848	1.2	9 269	13.7	985	1.5
Other Ranks	46 728	67.2	5 533	7.9	44 669	65.8	5 850	8.6
Officer Trainees	1 601	2.3	373	0.6	1 518	2.2	325	0.5
Other Ranks Trainees	3 525	5.1	674	0.9	3 203	4.7	546	0.8
Apprentices	1 155	1.6	54	0.1	1 418	2.1	58	0.1
Total	62 147	89.3	7 482	10.7	60 077	88.5	7 764	11.5

Notes: (a) Prior to 1988-89, other rank trainees, apart from apprentices, were included in the other rank category. These trainees are now shown separately.

(b) The category 'officer cadets' has been changed to 'officer trainees' from 1988-89 and now includes direct entry officers undertaking initial training.

ADF PERSONNEL STATISTICS

Table 1.1.2: ADF - Trained Force and Training Force Targeted and Achieved Average Strengths 1989-90

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>Total ADF</i>
Trained Force				
Target	14 047	28 891	20 004	62 942
Achieved	13 927	27 566	19 996	61 489
Training Force				
Target	1 749	3 312	1 930	6 991
Achieved	1 725	3 293	2 196	7 214

Notes (a) Historically, two different methods have been used for averaging ADF strength. This table reflects the reported monthly paid strength, averaged for the year. The table 'Program Distribution of Service Personnel and Civilian Staff, Average Strength 1989-90' in the Defence Program Overview is based on the average number of ADF members paid fortnightly. Variations between trained force and training force figures result from personnel who are recognised as commissioned officers and other ranks who are still undergoing initial training.

(b) Target figures used in this table are those agreed for the 1989-90 Budget.

Table 1.1.3: ADF Reserves by Sex as at 30 June 1989 and 30 June 1990

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>Total ADF</i>
1989				
Men	1 208	21 184	1 347	23 739
Women	165	4 058	281	4 504
Total	1 373	26 242	1 628	28 243
1990				
Men	1 297	20 900	1 337	23 534
Women	197	4 236	281	4 714
Total	1 494	25 136	1 618	28 248

Note: These figures are of reservists with training obligations, including those reserve personnel on full time duty. At 30 June 1989 there were 432 Army and 17 Air Force reserves with training obligations undertaking full time duty. At 30 June 1990 the corresponding figures were 485 Army, 15 Air Force and 38 Navy.

ADF PERSONNEL STATISTICS

Table 1.1.4: Australian Defence Force Separations 1988-89 and 1989-90

	<i>Voluntary</i>	<i>Involuntary</i>	<i>Cadets and Trainees</i>	<i>Age</i>	<i>Total</i>
1988-89					
Navy					
Officers	144	2	59	13	218
Other Ranks	1 017	335	211	1	1 564
Army					
Officers	298	2	174	14	488
Other Ranks	3 035	362	666	7	4 070
Air Force					
Officers	311	3	84	14	412
Other Ranks	1 401	201	162	16	1 780
ADF					
Officers	753	7	317	41	1 118
Other Ranks	5 453	898	1 039	24	7 414
1989-90					
Navy					
Officers	157	21	79	13	270
Other Ranks	958	366	195	1	1 520
Army					
Officers	324	44	128	14	510
Other Ranks	2 972	503	535	9	4 019
Air Force					
Officers	259	28	61	10	358
Other Ranks	1 621	198	175	22	2 016
ADF					
Officers	740	93	268	37	1 138
Other Ranks	5 551	1 067	905	32	7 555

Notes: (a) Officer involuntary separations for 1989-90 include those who separated following the ADF Structural Review.

(b) Cadet and trainee separations include separations from the Training Force for all reasons.

A significant step in ADF personnel practices this year has been the review of the categories of employment open to women in the ADF. A report on this appears in a separate article following Program 5.

Personnel Wastage - Implementation of the Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade Report Recommendations

This report addressed personnel wastage in the ADF and measures to improve retention. Of the 48 recommendations contained in the report, 41 have been adopted. Some have already been implemented and the more significant are discussed below:

Career Satisfaction and Personnel Management - reviews with completion dates in late 1990 have been undertaken by the Services to enhance the job satisfaction of Service personnel. A report by Dr Nick Jans on the desired patterns and characteristics of careers in the ADF from the present until about the year 2015 is being implemented.

Reservists - an increase in the use of Reservists to augment the Permanent Forces is occurring.

Geographic Stability - where possible, the Services are striving to achieve locational stability of their personnel by means such as three year postings and "back-to-back" postings in the same location.

Dual Career Family - investigations are continuing on the opportunities for part-time employment for spouses of ADF personnel. Some part-time employment opportunities have materialised with the introduction of a discount buying scheme for the ADF and the Family Support Funding Program.

Family Support Funding Program - this program commenced operation in 1989-90. The objectives are to encourage self-help among Service families, to improve their access to community facilities and to maximise the benefits of available resources. Almost \$1 million was distributed to family groups and indications are that the first year of the program was most successful in meeting its objectives. The program is planned to continue at its current level.

Communications and Information - dissemination of information concerning conditions of service and Service families has been greatly improved through personnel liaison team visits, personnel bulletins and newsletters and the Family Information Network for Defence.

Conditions of Service - many detailed policy changes in conditions of service were achieved during 1989-90 to remove anomalies, address new circumstances, provide more equitable entitlements, simplify administration and to devolve authority. These included:

- automatic concurrent flow-on of rate changes in conditions of service that are common with Australian Public Service provisions;
- introduction of rates of Disturbance Allowance for members without family who move from live-in accommodation to live-in accommodation in a different locality and who move between living-out residences in the same locality;
- revision of travel policy so that the most economical method, with regard to both the fares and paid duty time, is used in all circumstances;
- revision of the measures for all conditions of service not in the nature of pay that are not common with APS provisions and adjustment of rates where appropriate; and
- revision of some existing and introduction of some new resettlement provisions for members leaving the ADF.

ADF Pay and Entitlements

Under National Wage Case guidelines a case was put to the Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal in November 1989. This resulted in a wage increase for all ADF members of between \$10 per week

and 3 per cent of salary. A case seeking the second half of the National Wage Case increase was submitted in May 1990 and resulted in wage increases of between \$12.50 per week and 3 per cent of salary.

Special cases for certain ADF groups supplemented the general pay case. A case for Senior Officers was put to the Tribunal in December 1989 and increases awarded from 1 February 1990. An application for the second stage of additional increases to senior officers' salaries will be put to the Tribunal in August 1990. Other cases on Chaplains, Medical and Dental Officers, and Reservists were approved by the Tribunal with increases awarded from 19 July 1990.

In association with Service Offices, HQADF has engaged consultants to undertake a review of work within the ADF as a basis for presentation of a pay case to the Tribunal in 1991. This process will also establish an acceptable methodology suitable for progressing future Service Allowance cases. The ADF also commenced a work value pay review of all other rank categories and junior officers within the three Services to assess the scope and depth of work value change within the ADF.

The Services in conjunction with the Department of Industrial Relations have also commenced action to devolve delegations to the lowest appropriate level, so enhancing responsibility and providing quicker decisions on entitlements. The aim is for policy issues or complex matters only to be referred to higher authorities. Delegations on a number of major allowances including Temporary Rental Allowance, Temporary Accommodation Allowance and Home Purchase and Sale Expenses Allowance have already been devolved.

The concept of a costed "package" description of ADF salary and related entitlements has been developed and HQADF has recently engaged consultants to prepare the information. This will enable personnel better to comprehend full remuneration packages and is seen as an aid to retention.

Discount Buying Scheme

A discount buying scheme for members of the ADF was launched on 18 April 1990. The scheme is designed to provide the opportunity for ADF personnel and their families, and certain categories of retired ADF members, to purchase a wide range of goods and services at discount prices. The scheme, which operates throughout Australia, has been developed by a private company, DEFCOM Pty Ltd, in conjunction with the Commonwealth. Membership to the scheme is free to serving personnel. Interim membership cards have been distributed to some 100 000 Regular and Reserve personnel who are now taking advantage of the discounts on offer.

Information Systems Policy

Following the Structural Review and the disbandment of the Information Systems Policy Division, information systems policy formulation has been separated from implementation. The introduction of PMB within Defence also made a review of the information systems strategy necessary. Responsibility for policy formulation has been passed to Development Division HQADF with implementation and execution responsibilities of such policies resting with Project Development and Communications Division and user areas. To assist in presenting an overall report on information systems development within Defence both aspects are dealt with at this point.

The Defence Information Systems Master Plan has been developed to take account of PMB as well as structural and organisational changes within Defence. Under PMB, greater responsibility will rest with program areas for the implementation of information systems under the standards developed centrally and promulgated in the Information Systems Master Plan. Studies, including information systems modelling, are continuing in order to identify the information needs of the organisation under PMB structures and procedures. Modelling will take some years to complete.

Defence EDP Systems Integrated Network Environment

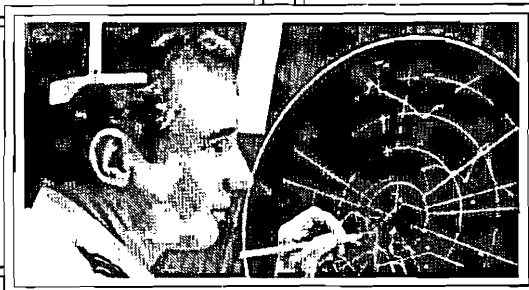
The Defence EDP Systems Integrated Network Environment (Desine) concept is central to the strategy contained in the Defence Computing Master Plan and an essential element of the decentralisation of computing within Defence. The Desine contract with the IBM company has been in place since February 1989. This contract was established to implement an information systems environment within Defence which allows interoperability between information systems and the ready exchange of information and data between users.

Defence has used the contract to progress towards a standardised environment through the acquisition of compatible hardware and software, including the major computing projects - the Supply, Manpower and Financial Systems Redevelopment Projects. Defence has also sought to maintain an appropriate set of products on the contract price list, including, where possible, the introduction of products that are relevant to the objective of supporting Open Systems Interconnect.

The contract and the standards established are under constant review to ensure that the needs of the user are satisfied. Studies have been undertaken to examine the incorporation of UNIX into the Defence Information Systems environment and similar studies are being undertaken to address other enhancements. A computer systems user group has been established to provide a forum for disseminating and gathering information relevant to the administration of Desine and discussing issues with users.



**K89: (clockwise) 2/4
RAR boarding a
Caribou, McDonald
Field, NT. Preparing for
battle, Pine Creek, NT.
At the double, crossing
Roper Barr, NT.**



**Black Hawks at forward
operations base
Ngukurr, NT. (Centre)
Air traffic controller
Fltlt Pete Reynold, RAAF
Darwin**



SUBPROGRAM 1.2: NAVY

OBJECTIVE

To provide capable maritime forces structured for:

- credible maritime contingencies in Australia's area of direct military interest, generally as part of a joint force; and
- longer term expansion should this be required.

DESCRIPTION

The Navy subprogram is structured around three components:

- combat forces for maritime operations activity and the fulfilment of maritime objectives;
- executive management of the Royal Australian Navy (RAN); and
- support and maintenance of maritime forces including administration, training and logistics.

PERFORMANCE

The prime indicators of the Navy's performance are the levels of readiness, capability and skill achieved by maritime combat forces through training and assessed through evaluation of combined, joint and single-service exercises. The Chief of Naval Staff reports biannually to the CDF on these matters.

Other indicators of performance include the Navy's contribution to:

- surveillance of Australia's area of direct military interest, including our Exclusive Economic Zone;
- national marine science activities; and
- assisting the Defence Cooperation Program.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Operational Readiness Requirements

The operational readiness of ships, submarines and aircraft is measured after a formal, structured program of operational training culminating in an operational readiness evaluation by the Maritime Commander. It is also measured by supply effectiveness, by the manning level and by continued assessment of a unit's sensors and weapons proficiency in meeting continuation training goals. All operational ships, submarines and aircraft, some held at higher levels of operational readiness than others, met the required standard of Fleet Operational Efficiency although some difficulties in supply support were evident.

Major Joint and Combined Exercises

The Navy participated in *K89* and in Exercises *Starfish* and *Rimpac 90* to practise and test supporting infrastructure and interoperability. The combined exercise program for 1989-90 included activities with Brunei, Canada, France, India, Indonesia, Malaysia, New Zealand, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea, Singapore, Thailand, Turkey, the United Kingdom and the United States.

Deployments

HMA Ships *Tobruk*, *Sydney* and the submarine *Oxley* were deployed for the Gallipoli 75th Anniversary. HMAS *Sydney* proceeded to the United Kingdom and successfully verified RAN operational standards against those of the Royal Navy.

Rolling deployments to South East Asia by major Fleet units included port visits to Brunei, Hong Kong, Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand. Bilateral exercises with those countries continue to improve in tempo and complexity.

The Navy continued its high-profile presence in the South West Pacific region throughout 1989-90. Port visits were undertaken to American Samoa, French Polynesia, New Caledonia, the Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, Kiribati, Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands, Tonga, Tuvalu, Vanuatu and Western Samoa.

National Surveillance Tasking

The RAN Fremantle Class Patrol Boats provided 1 883 patrol days for coastal surveillance activity. Operations included the boarding of 334 foreign fishing vessels from Indonesia, Korea, the People's Republic of China, Thailand, Taiwan and Japan. Of those vessels boarded, 46 were apprehended and escorted to port. The rate of apprehensions has increased markedly through the year. In addition, three Cambodian refugee vessels with 223 persons on board were located and escorted to port.

Strategic Development of the Navy

Two-Ocean Basing

The long-range plan to have half the operational fleet homeported at HMAS Stirling by the year 2000 will enable the Navy to carry out more effectively its responsibilities in our area of direct military interest. This year the auxiliary tanker, HMAS *Westralia*, joined the three destroyer escorts, one submarine, one survey vessel and three patrol boats based at HMAS Stirling. The plan also calls for the progressive upgrading and expansion of facilities. Works that have been completed recently and are currently in use include a torpedo support facility, cabins for officers and sailors, additional wharfside facilities to support submarines and some engineering workshops.

Maritime Command Support System

The Maritime Command Support System project was established to acquire a system to support the command, control and intelligence processing requirements for the maritime environment. System installation commenced in March 1990 followed by set to work and operator training.

Force Structure

Mine Countermeasures

The Government's response to the report by the Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade *The Priorities for Australia's Mine Countermeasures Needs* recognised deficiencies in this area and Defence is actively pursuing a number of initiatives in both minehunting (addressed in this report under Capital Procurement) and minesweeping.

Minesweeping Project

This project aims to provide a minesweeping core-force over the period 1992-94. This is a new concept and very dependent on successful trials in moving from phase to phase. The mine countermeasures equipment is being developed from innovative Australian designs for deployment from craft of opportunity such as fishing vessels. An interim minesweeping capability for shallow waters has been established. This consists of three fishing vessels which have been involved in development trials and evaluation throughout 1989-90. Naval Reserve personnel have been included in the training.

Two larger craft of opportunity (tugs) were acquired during the year to develop the offshore minesweeping capability in 1991 and 1992. The core minesweeping capability will be used to

develop other capabilities for minesweeping vessels planned for acquisition subject to the satisfactory trial and evaluation of the interim force and larger craft of opportunity.

Auxiliary Tanker

Following approval to acquire RFA Appleleaf as an auxiliary tanker, the vessel was delivered to the RAN (in the United Kingdom) and commissioned as HMAS *Westralia* on 9 October 1989. The ship arrived at HMAS Stirling on 20 December 1989 and is based in Western Australia.

Wessex Helicopters

The RAN Wessex fleet was withdrawn from service on 31 December 1989. Several of the airframes are in use for maintenance training purposes at Naval Air Station, Nowra, under a trial manpower reduction scheme. This trial is due to be completed later in 1990.

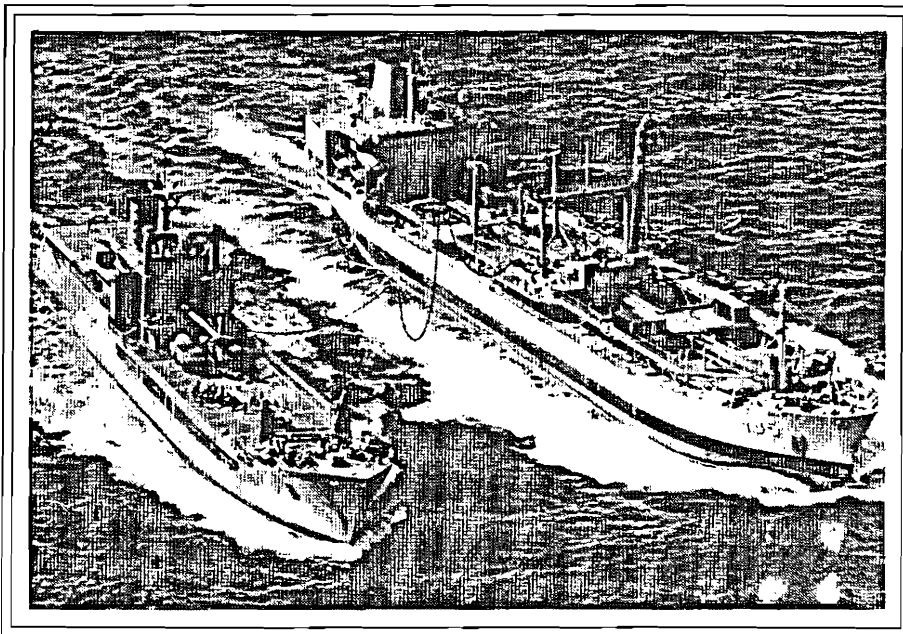
Marine Surveys

The activities of an increased inventory of marine science vessels have contributed significantly to improving the Navy's accumulation of hydrographic and oceanographic data. The four new Survey Motor Launches have now been commissioned and are operational in northern waters, each supported by the digital Hydrographic Data Logging and Processing System.

Hydrographic surveys were conducted by HMAS *Moresby* in coastal waters off Arnhem Land and south-west Australia and by HMAS *Flinders* in the Coral Sea and Papua New Guinea waters. Some existing charts were updated and 14 new charts were published.

A contract was let for the development and implementation of a digital Oceanographic Information System. Delivery is required by mid 1991. The system, to be supported by an Oceanographic Survey Program, will provide data and information from Australia's area of direct military interest, with an initial emphasis on northern waters.

Assistance to the Defence Cooperation Program was provided through manpower support to the hydrographic services of the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu.



HMAS Tobruk is refuelled by HMAS Westralia while underway in the Indian Ocean en route to Gallipoli, March 1990.

Logistic Support

Industry has been invited to become more involved in Naval logistic support. Generally, the response has been encouraging and indigenous capability is being developed slowly in a diverse range of areas. These will assist in minimising the need to rely on overseas sources of logistic support. A 'turnkey' approach, which puts the contractual arrangements on a proper commercial footing, is seen as advantageous to both industry and the Navy.

Review of Inventory

To 30 June 1990, about 173 000 line items had been identified for removal from the inventory. This achievement was above the set goal of 150 000 line items. Technical evaluation of an additional 12 000 line items is currently underway to determine their suitability for disposal. The physical removal of the items is progressing and to date almost \$800 000 has been recovered from the sale of obsolete stores. The development of procedures to control any unnecessary growth of the RAN inventory is continuing.

Devolution of Logistics Responsibilities

Actions to devolve logistics responsibilities from Navy Office to Naval Support Command, which flowed from the Naval Logistics Implementation Plan and the Review of Naval Support Command, are generally complete.

Personnel and Management

The principal changes to Navy Office this year have resulted from the implementation of the ADF Structural Review. This included a reduction in the number of Navy Office divisions to three, Deputy Chief of Staff, Personnel and Materiel Divisions, and a reduction of 47 billets from the ranks of commander to rear admiral. The reductions are to be achieved by 1 February 1991 and are on target. Other major outcomes in this area are discussed under separate headings below.

Retention and Conditions of Service

The failure to meet recruiting targets is a cause for concern. A considerable effort has been put into investigating the causes and the Navy is increasing the resources devoted to recruiting. The decision to allow women to serve in combat related positions, and consequently on all RAN surface ships, will offer improved career opportunities for women and assist in both recruiting and retention.

Improving locational stability and sea/shore ratios is an important step. Under current policy, no sailor is required to serve for more than three and half years at sea and this is to be followed by at least eighteen months ashore.

However, the disproportionately high number of sea billets compared to shore billets in Western Australia, and the reverse in Victoria, make this impossible to achieve for most sailors serving in these areas. In due course, opening up billets to women in all surface ships will have the effect of producing slightly more favourable sea/shore ratios.

Reduced posting turbulence is sought wherever possible through three year postings with two successive postings in the same locality and six months notice of postings. There are significant impediments to meeting these objectives such as the sea/shore roster, unplanned discharges, medical unfitness, promotions, compassionate cases, maternity leave and operational requirements. A computer based system has recently been established to provide statistics on postings and so analyse ways of achieving greater posting stability.

For sailors, more personalised career management has been introduced through visits by Directorate of Sailors Postings staff to ships and establishments combined with direct contact between posting personnel and sailors.

The Navy, both individually and in conjunction with HQADF, has made a number of retention efforts based on developments in conditions of service and manpower studies. One example, Project Mainstay, is a study initiated by the Navy into the employment of senior sailors. Improved retention of these sailors is one desired outcome from the study.

Review of Training and Career Structures

The establishment of a separate Navy training organisation has been effective in devolving the day-to-day management of training from Navy Office. The new organisation is located in Victoria at HMAS Cerberus.

Project Streamline has been instrumental in demonstrating to the Defence Force Remuneration Tribunal that the Navy is reviewing training and category structures in a manner that satisfies the requirements of the Structural Efficiency Principles. Achievements under Project Streamline for 1989-90 include the rationalisation and amalgamation of sailor categories and for general duties entry sailors to undertake common recruit training at HMAS Cerberus. The RAN Officers Career Study team has been formed and is reviewing officer career patterns.

During 1989-90, the Navy introduced computer modelling of manpower. This has considerably improved the ability to plan officer and sailor career patterns. The structures of two employment categories have been adjusted to improve manpower utilisation. Computer modelling has quantified the shortfalls of personnel, particularly in the submarine arm and technical areas, that will continue into the future. Plans are being formulated to overcome or at least ameliorate projected manpower shortfalls in order that sea/shore ratios may be improved and new classes of ships are bought into service on time.

Naval Reserves

Following investigations into Naval Aviation and the use of specialist Reserve personnel, the Nowra Air Division opened in August 1989. Initial recruiting matched expectations. A three year growth plan is in place to ensure that the valuable pool of aviation expertise is not lost. A Reserve policy stressing a total Navy concept with full integration of Reserve forces with the Permanent forces has been produced. Strong growth is continuing throughout the Naval Reserve.

RAN Occupational Health and Safety

The Environmental Medicine Unit is now established to carry out regular occupational health surveys in all ships and shore establishments. This includes air monitoring in ships while underway to ensure that National Health and Medical Research Council threshold limit values of asbestos are not exceeded. An increase in manpower is being sought to increase the frequencies of these occupational health surveys.

Management Information Systems

The Navy has implemented an Executive Decision Information System, which is a computer based management information system designed to provide senior managers with information to support their programming, evaluation and monitoring functions. It currently contains information on Naval budget estimates and expenditure, manpower, including wastage, retention and recruiting, and supply and support. Among other tasks, it will be used to support performance measurement for Navy program management.

SUBPROGRAM 1.3: ARMY

OBJECTIVE

To provide ground forces structured for:

- credible land contingencies in the defence of Australia, its territories and interests, generally as part of a joint force, using both regular and reserve forces; and
- longer term expansion should this be required.

DESCRIPTION

The Army subprogram includes combat forces, executive, logistics, training and support components.

The Army's combat forces structure must include highly mobile forces capable of rapid deployment anywhere within Australia and its territories and area of direct military interest. It must be able to conduct protracted and dispersed operations in harsh terrain where the existing infrastructure and resources are sparse.

The Army combat force structure consists of a ready deployment force, units identified to augment the ready deployment force, a manoeuvre force and follow on force, an expansion base force for higher levels of conflict and a lines of communication support force.

This combat force structure is developed to provide:

- ground surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities;
- forces capable of deploying to defend vital defence installations and national infrastructure;
- a largely air portable force, including an airborne (parachute) element, capable of rapid deployment within Australia and its territories;
- limited tactical battlefield mobility;
- a force capable of resolving high risk terrorist incidents in support of civil authorities;
- forces capable of following up initial deployments; and
- forces of greater combat power to reinforce deployed formations if necessary.

Combat forces are under the command of Land Headquarters in Sydney. Headquarters Land Command and Headquarters Northern Command in Darwin plan for land warfare, command deployed land warfare forces, provide command communications and direct the conduct of military operations in concert with civil authorities.

PERFORMANCE

Military capability is a function of force structure, operational readiness and sustainability. The Chief of General Staff (CGS) reports biannually to the CDF on these matters. The CGS is informed by a range of reports prepared by commanders on force structure, operational readiness, sustainability, operations, personnel, finances and morale. The CGS is also informed by assessments of the performance of Army elements participating in combined, joint and single-service exercises. Much of the information contained in these reports is security classified.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Operational Readiness

Combat forces are considered effective if force structure, capability, training activity and preparedness are consistent with strategic priorities. These are measured by assessing the operational

capability of the force, including its sustainability and proficiency, and the level of actual exercise activity.

Capability and Sustainability

A prime indicator of capability and sustainability is the level of personnel and equipment held by each force element group. This is measured by comparing actual manning and equipment holdings against authorised establishments, as detailed in the following table:

Table 1.3.1: Capability and Sustainability

<i>Force Element Group</i>	<i>Authorised</i>	<i>Personnel</i>		<i>Equipment</i>
		<i>Actual as at 30 June 90</i>	<i>Actual as a % of Authorised</i>	<i>Proportion of Principal Items Held</i>
Command and Control	1272	964	76	Not Applicable
Ready Deployment Force	3944	3681	93	High
Ready Deployment Force Augmentation	579	555	96	High
Surveillance Forces	1432	1358	95	Medium
Manoeuvre Forces	12034	10108	84	Low
Follow-on Forces	5892	4671	79	Low
Protective Forces	8672	6479	75	Low
Logistic Forces	3414	2722	80	Low
Total	37239	30538	82	

Notes: (a) These combat forces, force element groups were restructured during 1989-90 to reflect changes in strategic priorities.

(b) The total authorised and actual strengths include both regular Army and Army Reserve personnel. The variation between these strengths is due to manning shortfalls in the Army or Army Reserve.

Training Activities

Army training is based on a hierarchy of activities. Training commences with the development of individual skills in recruit, trade, corps and officer undergraduate training. Individual skills are then developed into corporate skills through collective training.

Land Command is responsible for collective training which includes:

- sub-unit and unit training to develop teamwork to the point where the sub-unit and unit are proficient in their operational role;
- combined arms training where the collective skills of sub-units and units of different corps are brought together to develop a fully operational capability;

- joint training between maritime, land and air elements of the ADF to develop inter-service cooperation; and
- combined training between the armed forces of two or more nations.

Regular revision of individual skills and the application of trade training in an operational environment are essential preparation for collective training. This revision is an integral part of the annual cycle of training activity undertaken within Land Command.

The level of collective training undertaken depends on required readiness levels and resource allocations, available manpower and equipment and the level of training achievable in units as a result. For example, Reserve elements are generally limited to sub-unit training due to their strength, the effects of manpower turnover on individual skills proficiency and collective training, readiness requirements and available equipment levels and the amount of time which the average Reservist can devote to military service.

In addition to training for operational roles, units and sub-units also undertake a range of other activities not directly associated with their operational roles and internal administration which develop teamwork and individual skills.

Within this framework for combat forces training, the principal measure is the number of days in a given period that a unit or independent sub-unit spends on collective training for the purpose of developing its operational capability. The number of collective training days for 1989-90 for each force element group for combat forces is detailed below:

Table 1.3.2: Collective Training for Operations

<i>Force Element Group</i>	<i>1989-90 Total Planned Days (‘000)</i>	<i>1989-90 Total Actual Days (‘000)</i>
Command and Control	14	14
Ready Deployment Force	145	148
Ready Deployment Force Augmentation	47	46
Manoeuvre Forces	187	190
Follow-on Forces	87	83
Expansion Base Forces	66	88
Lines of Communication Support Force	86	88
Total	632	634

Levels of Preparedness

Preparedness of a force element group for operations is a function of operational readiness and sustainability. In judging preparedness, all aspects of manning, including the balance of trades and qualifications within units, equipment holdings and condition, individual and collective training standards, operational documentation and the ability to support and sustain operations with equipment and stores are considered.

The judgement of the preparedness of combat forces, on a scale of very high/high/medium/low/very low for each force element group, is given in the following table:

Table 1.3.3: Levels of Preparedness

<i>Force Element Group</i>	<i>Levels Achieved</i>
Command and Control	high
Ready Deployment Force	high
Ready Deployment Force Augmentation	medium
Manoeuvre Forces	medium
Follow-on Forces	low
Expansion Base Forces	low
Logistics Forces	medium

Participation in Major Exercises

Force element groups were maintained at their nominated levels of readiness. This was demonstrated during K89. The logistic support for the exercise included lines of communication operations which involved establishing 23 staging areas and 37 refuelling areas and the deployment to and extraction from the area of operations of 3 000 vehicles and 7 000 personnel by road, 11 000 personnel by air and 400 by sea. A satisfaction rate of 86 per cent was achieved for stock demands submitted by forces deployed on K89.

The Army's parachute capability was enhanced by raising the Parachute Battalion Group. During K89 and Exercise *Far Canopy* the Airborne Force exercised to their required degrees of notice. The participation of the three Regional Force Surveillance Units (Norforce, the Pilbara Regiment and 51 Far North Queensland Regiment) in K89 further developed the capability for surveillance and vital asset protection in the north of Australia and its offshore territories. Approximately 165 personnel participated as escorts, guards and in bands over 10 days during the Gallipoli Pilgrimage.

Peacekeeping Operations

Australia continued its participation in United Nations peacekeeping operations. The United Nations Iran/Iraq Military Observer Group involved two 15-man contingents each posted to the Middle East for six months duration. The United Nations Mine Clearing Training Team involved nine-man contingents posted to Pakistan for three months on a continuous basis. The United Nations Transitional Assistance Group involved two 309-man contingents each posted to Namibia for six months duration, primarily to carry out general construction tasks.

Strategic Development of the Army

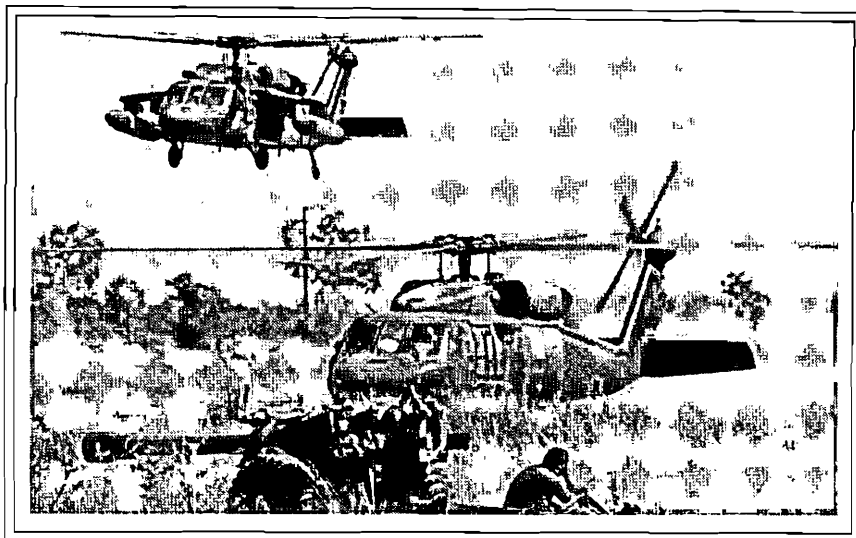
Preparation for the move of 2 Cavalry Regiment to Darwin by the end of 1992 continued. The construction of Waler Barracks to house the Regiment has commenced. Earthworks have been completed, engineering services provided and water mains and high voltage powerlines laid. Studies are being undertaken into the appropriate level of further Army forces to be permanently located in the north.

Force Structure

Transfer of Battlefield Helicopters

As part of the transfer of responsibility for battlefield helicopters from the Air Force, an additional 15 Black Hawk helicopters and the resource allocation for 237 personnel were transferred to the Army.

Two Black Hawk helicopters in operation in northern Australia during K89.



Wheeled Armoured Fighting Vehicles

Fifteen LAV 25 wheeled armoured vehicles were delivered as part of the evaluation of operational concepts for employing wheeled armoured fighting vehicles in northern Australia. They were procured from the United States Marine Corps under Foreign Military Sales procedures and were produced by General Motors Canada.

Personnel and Management

The implementation of the Structural Review within Army Office was an important achievement. This involved the restructuring of Army Office into three divisions, the Deputy Chief of General Staff, Personnel and Materiel Divisions, and the abolition of 47 positions ranging in rank from lieutenant colonel to major general.

Restructuring of the Army Reserve

The restructuring of the Army Reserve continued. There has been comprehensive reorganisation to produce more effective Reserve units by linking or amalgamating some units and integrating others with Regular Army components. The vital asset protection role for 4, 9, 11 and 13 Brigades was developed and exercises were conducted in that role. Planning for the introduction of the Army Individual Emergency Reserve was completed. This is intended to make better use of the trained manpower leaving the Regular Army and Army Reserve.

Logistic Support

The reduction from 55 logistic units in financial year 1985-86 to 32 units, as part of the rationalisation of Logistic Command units to composite base logistic units, was completed.

Reduction of Logistic Overheads

Further studies have been conducted into the reduction of logistic overheads, particularly with respect to Direct Unit Purchasing, and the supply of medical/dental equipment and pharmaceuticals under Army's Single Service Line Management responsibility.

The Army Quality Assurance organisation was disbanded and responsibility, together with 422 positions, was transferred to the newly established Defence Quality Assurance Organisation.

SUBPROGRAM 1.4: AIR FORCE

OBJECTIVE

To provide air forces structured for:

- credible air contingencies in the defence of Australia, its territories and approaches, generally as part of a joint force, and including support of maritime and land operations, and
- longer term expansion should this be required.

DESCRIPTION

The combat forces are structured for independent air operations as well as participation in and support of maritime and land operations. These comprise:

- tactical fighter aircraft for air defence and offensive air support;
- combat aircraft for reconnaissance and strike against maritime and land targets;
- a long range maritime patrol force for sea-surveillance, maritime targeting and strike, anti-submarine warfare, aerial mine-laying and search and rescue;
- an air-lift group for long range transport and air-to-air refuelling;
- a tactical transport force in support of land operations; and
- command and control, local and other support.

PERFORMANCE

A variety of information sources contribute to the effectiveness of the Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF). For combat forces, exercises provide training and evaluation for both individual aircrew role-skills and combined joint operations. Competitions such as the annual anti-submarine warfare *Fincastle Trophy* and the air transport *Air Lift Rodeo* provide comparison with allied air forces. Both activities provide feedback to validate aircrew categorisation standards. Data on aircrew availability, support effectiveness, crew availability, weapons training and the like is also compiled.

In combination, these evaluation sources provide both routine management inputs and data for the Air Commander's reports and the Chief of the Air Staff's biannual reports to CDF. Much of this information remains security classified.

Evaluations are also conducted on the Executive, Logistics and Training subprograms. These evaluations focus on the efficiency and effectiveness of policy formulation and resource management, logistics support (embracing engineering maintenance and supply) and air and ground training for the RAAF and other agencies. Together with the Air Commander's report, these evaluations provide a measure of Air Force operational readiness and sustainability.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Operational Readiness

During 1989-90, Air Force units conducted operations, exercises and unit level training directed towards meeting performance criteria. Scheduled activities were conducted within approved ADF plans and policies and the authorised flying hours program was achieved.

Tactical Fighter Group

The Tactical Fighter Group continued to accept F/A-18 aircraft into service. All aircraft had been delivered by the end of May 1990. Hornet flying was devoted to the following activities:

Table 1.4.1: Tactical Fighter Group Tasking 1989-90

	<i>Target %</i>	<i>Achieved %</i>
National Tasks	4	4
Defence Support, Joint and Combined Exercises	12	12
Operational Training and RAAF Support	40	40
Army Support	2	2
Navy Support	10	10
Conversion and Continuation Training	32	32

Hornet tasking met Air Command objectives without serious deficiencies.

Significant activities during the year included operations with airborne early-warning and control and tanker aircraft as part of the RAAF's participation in *K89*. Live firings of Aim-9 Sidewinder and Aim-7 Sparrow missiles were carried out to maintain squadron capabilities and ensure system integrity.

Strike Reconnaissance Group

Strike Reconnaissance Group activity was maintained at a similar level to last year.

Table 1.4.2: Strike Reconnaissance Group Tasking 1989-90

	<i>Target %</i>	<i>Achieved %</i>
National Tasks	1	1
Defence Support, Joint and Combined Exercises	25	25
Operational Training and RAAF Support	46	45
Army Support	3	3
Navy Support	4	4
Conversion and Continuation Training	21	22

Group tasking achieved Air Command objectives without significant deficiencies. However, F-111 maintenance availability was low because of an unusually high number of fuel tank deseal/reseal problems, the cold proof load testing program and the need to provide an aircraft for the Avionics Update Program modification work-up.

Maritime Patrol Group

The Maritime Patrol Group continued the high activity rate of last year.

National tasks included Gateway and Solania maritime patrols by P-3C aircraft from Malaysia and in the South West Pacific respectively, as well as aerial fisheries surveillance.

The Group met Air Command objectives within acceptable limits. Aircraft availability was affected by the high use rate of previous years.

One aircraft and crew were on search and rescue standby each day and night throughout the year. The Group was involved in exercises to develop joint maritime strike operations by F-111, P-C3 and F/A-18 aircraft. One Harpoon was fired during Exercise *Rimpac 90* for crew training and to ensure system integrity.

Table 1.4.3: Maritime Patrol Group Tasking 1989-90

	<i>Target %</i>	<i>Achieved %</i>
National Tasks (including Gateway and Solania)	33	34
Defence Support, Joint and Combined Exercises	18	19
Operational Training and RAAF Support	13	13
Army Support	-	-
Navy Support	12	11
Conversion and Continuation Training	24	23

Air Lift Group

The Air Lift Group was required to achieve significantly higher rates of activity than those planned. Operation Immune included 6549 Air Force flying hours which were added to the original annual flying hours allocation. The Group also had a significant involvement in flood relief operations in southern Queensland and New South Wales.

Table 1.4.4: Air Lift Group Tasking 1989-90

	<i>C130</i>		<i>B707</i>		<i>HS748</i>		<i>Falcon 900</i>	
	<i>Target</i>	<i>Achieved</i>	<i>Target</i>	<i>Achieved</i>	<i>Target</i>	<i>Achieved</i>	<i>Target</i>	<i>Achieved</i>
	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%
National Tasks	9	9	12	14	3	3	75	76
Defence Support, Joint and Combined Exercises	30	30	34	33	12	12	-	-
Operational Training and RAAF Support	10	10	22	21	48	49	4	3
Army Support	10	10	1	1	1	1	-	-
Navy Support	3	3	1	1	15	14	-	-
Scheduled Services	15	15	8	8	-	-	-	-
Conversion and Continuation Training	23	23	22	22	21	21	21	21
Operation Immune	-	26	-	29	-	37	-	-

Note: Operation Immune accounted for 6549 RAAF flying hours. These were in addition to the annual flying hours originally allocated. The Operation Immune percentages consequently relate to the rate of effort planned at 1 July 1989 and the total achieved exceeds 100%.

The Group achieved its objectives without significant deficiencies. Largely as a result of Operation Immune and the flood relief operations, aircrew extra duty amounted to 3 560 man days and additional maintenance work involved 21 191 hours. Aircraft availability for the year was an outstanding result, given a 25 per cent increase in the required rate of effort.

The Group also took part in training with the RNZAF at McMurdo Base, the evaluation of possible C-130 operations from a snow/ice runway at Casey Base and was involved in cyclone relief in the South Pacific during March. It was responsible for the introduction of five Falcon 900 aircraft for VIP transport.

A team from the Group won *Bullseye*, an international air drop competition.

Tactical Transport Group

The Tactical Transport Group underwent significant change this year. All rotary wing flying was transferred to Land Command and the Chinooks were withdrawn from service.

The Group generally met its objectives. Owing mainly to flood relief, additional aircrew duty amounted to 400 man days and extra maintenance work amounted to 7 453 hours.

Significant Group activities included the deployment of an RAAF tactical air support force and the activation of RAAF Curtin for *K89*.

Table 1.4.5: Tactical Transport Group Tasking 1989-90

	<i>Target %</i>	<i>Achieved %</i>
National Tasks	3	4
Defence Support, Joint and Combined Exercises	16	16
Operational Training and RAAF Support	34	33
Army Support	24	25
Navy Support	2	3
Scheduled Services	3	2
Conversion and Continuation Training	17	18

Development of Comprehensive Operational Evaluation

Air Command is adapting existing operational evaluation systems to reflect program performance needs. The focus will be on task satisfaction rates in the areas of mission capable aircraft and crews, mission effectiveness and logistics support efficiency.

Participation in Major Joint and Combined Exercises

Air Command was responsible for the conduct of the air aspects of *K89*. This included the use of temporary facilities at Air Headquarters to display the northern air picture from the Air Defence Ground Environment network which includes the Alice Springs over-the-horizon radar.

RAAF elements continued their involvement in and support for Five Power Defence Arrangements (FPDA) exercises. F/A-18 and F-111 aircraft undertook 66 and 12 aircraft/weeks respectively in deployed operations in South East Asia. This was both in support of FPDA and as part of other international and bilateral exercises such as *Churinga 2*, *Adex 89-2 and 90-2*, *Cope Thunder 90* and *Allied Exposure*.

P3-C aircraft also participated in international and bilateral exercises such as *Starfish 89*, *Fincastle 89* and *Rimpac 90* as well as other activities under the FPDA.

RAAF F/A-18 aircraft were also involved in exercises, such as *Willow 90-2*, with RNZAF fighter, maritime and air transport forces.

Strategic Development of the Air Force

Developments in Air Command

Developments included the enhancement of the computer based Basic Air Command Support System and the Video Conferencing Network. The command of all Reserve Squadrons was transferred to Air Command.

RAAF Scherger

It is planned that this airfield will be a deployment 'bare base' located at Peppan, to the east of Weipa on Cape York Peninsula. It will be similar to RAAF bases Curtin and Learmonth in Western Australia and will complete the chain of airfields across northern Australia.

The works proposed for the base consist primarily of an aircraft runway and taxiways and the minimum facilities to support operations.

There has been extensive consultation with State and local government authorities, the Weipa Aboriginal Council, environmental groups and Comalco, as well as keeping the public informed on the airfield proposal and progress in seeking environmental clearance. The environmental impact statement process is expected to be completed by the end of 1990 at which time the land for the airfield could be acquired.

Force Structure

New Squadrons

32 Transport Squadron was formed and introduced into the Air Lift Group. It operates HS748 aircraft reconfigured after their service as VIP transport aircraft with 34 Squadron. 25 Macchi Squadron was also formed during the year and introduced into the Tactical Fighter Group to provide operational training of newly graduated pilots in order to cover structural difficulties resulting from pilot wastage. 13 RAAF Reserve Squadron was formed in Darwin and was awarded the United States Presidential Citation originally recommended for its predecessor, 13 Squadron, during the Second World War by the Allied Commander in the South West Pacific, General Douglas MacArthur.

Logistic Support

The formation of separate Logistics and Training Commands from the previous Support Command was a major achievement during the year. The transition is now complete and has been achieved in a resource neutral manner without degrading the level of logistics support provided.

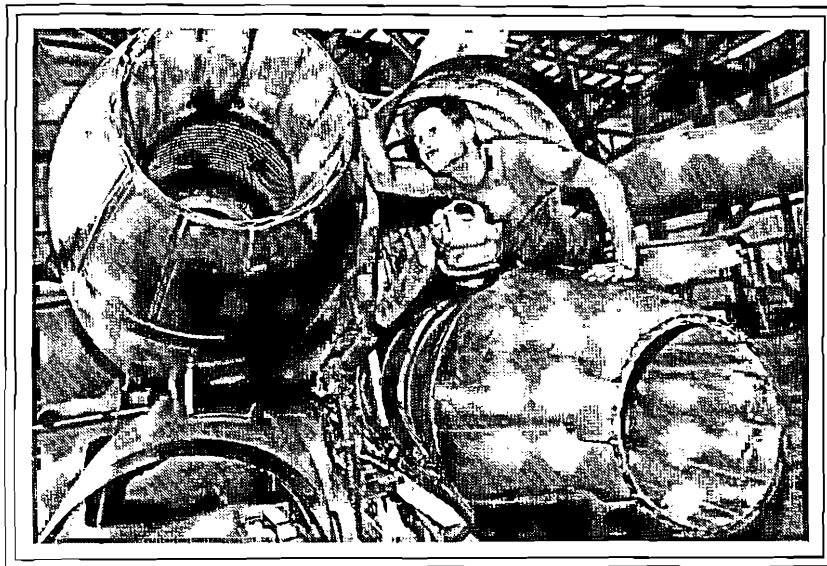
Throughout the year, Headquarters Logistic Command has focused on improving logistics processes through the RAAF Total Quality Management philosophy and in developing a Logistics Command plan. The progress achieved towards those goals has met expectations.

Process Action Teams have been formed and trained in RAAF Quality principles. The teams have commenced reviews of: the determination of requirements; purchasing; project provisioning; repair level analysis and maintenance engineering analysis; reparable item circuits; warranty; and disposals. In addition to the activities of the Process Action Teams, 'step change' reviews have been initiated in areas such as inventory management, maintenance philosophy and logistic support costs. All these reviews are to be completed by October 1990.

Air Force funded, contractor operated repair loan stores have been closed in Melbourne and Sydney with an estimated saving of \$1.2 million annually. The contractors are now supported directly by the RAAF.

Devolution of supply support for capital procurement was completed. Other reviews, which will reduce logistics overheads, have been successfully completed. These include the first phase of the

review of technical trades, supply trades amalgamation and an organisational review of the management control organisation. Management incentives such as Logistics Capability Assessment were developed to enhance future program performance evaluations.



An aircraft mechanic at RAAF Darwin changing the engine of an F/A-18

Personnel Management

The implementation of the ADF Structural Review involved the reorganisation of Air Force Office into three divisions, Deputy Chief of the Air Staff, Personnel and Materiel Divisions, and the abolition of 47 positions from the ranks of wing commander to air marshal.

Personnel outcomes for the past year include: improved locational stability in postings; broader based recruiting and lateral recruiting from overseas; the increased use of manpower modelling; more flexible engagement of airmen; and posting and promotion cycles which allow six months notice of posting.

Training

At any one time about 2 500 personnel are undergoing training. The pass rate of the basic pilot training course has been improved and new courses, including adventurous and motivational flight training, have been developed.

An evaluation of the Computer Based Training System for F/A-18 Hornet training was completed. This course has received Australian and world-wide recognition. The report findings have been used to improve the system's effectiveness and to develop a valid computer based training policy for the future.

Occupational surveys have been improved to develop more exact trade standards and training objectives as well as to provide a more regular review of management and environmental health issues. A project to reduce the administrative costs and time for the acquisition of training support equipment was initiated as a pilot project for the introduction of the RAAF Quality program into Training Command.

The major constraint in training has been the continuing shortfall in recruiting for some employment categories and musters.

THE LABOURS OF HERCULES: DEFENCE ASSISTANCE TO THE CIVIL COMMUNITY

Within the broad role that the ADF undertakes, the most visible aspect for the majority of Australians is the part it plays in civil emergencies. Whether it is diggers erecting instant tent cities for victims of natural disasters or RAAF aircraft dropping essential food supplies to stranded communities, defence assistance to the civil community shows the public the professionalism and capability of our defence personnel.

Whatever the request, the ADF is well placed to respond. Commanders at all levels are empowered to provide immediate assistance in emergency situations from within their own resources. For more substantial problems, requiring a coordinated, larger scale response, well developed contingency plans are in place. These are designed to tap the ADF's reserves of disciplined personnel, specialist equipment and extensive stocks of material. Superimpose on that a well oiled command and control system, significant mobility and the disposition of Defence units around Australia, and the ADF's utility in emergency situations readily becomes apparent.

A number of civil support tasks undertaken by the ADF made headlines over the last year. Foremost among these was Operation *Immune*, which commenced in August 1989 when it became clear that a national transport crisis was imminent following the mass resignations of domestic pilots. With remote communities isolated, large numbers of tourists stranded and many businesses seriously affected, the ADF was called on to provide aircraft and crews until normal services could restart.

Operation *Immune* extended over four months until December 1989 when the domestic airlines had regained some capacity. In a typical week, the RAAF had eight aircraft and the RAN one aircraft operating the country's domestic airline services. 176 555 passengers were moved and the ADF aircraft involved flew 3 895 sorties over 7 167 flying hours.

Although a C-130 Hercules transport aircraft may have been less comfortable than a Boeing 737 and the flight attendant might have needed a shave, the flying public responded enthusiastically. Indeed, in what is probably a unique world first, the popularity of the service was recognised when the RAAF's 36 Squadron won the tourist transportation section of the Queensland Tourism awards.

Certainly the Australian public gained a new appreciation of the Services' capabilities and those that flew in Defence aircraft formed lasting and favourable impressions of the ADF.

Emergency situations arising from natural disasters tend to attract significant Defence assistance simply because the ADF can respond quickly and in a variety of ways. One such example occurred in the aftermath of the earthquake which struck Newcastle on 28 December 1989. Damage assessment teams and assistance in the clearance of rubble were requested. The ADF provided 400 personnel including reservists from Army units at Singleton, Holsworthy and Newcastle itself and the RAAF base at Williamtown.

No sooner had the task at Newcastle been completed when ADF assistance was requested to fight bushfires which were raging around Albury. Fortunately, major ADF establishments have plans in place and personnel and equipment earmarked for just such a situation. In this case, Army units from the Albury/Wodonga area were able quickly to assist local authorities in bringing the fires under control.

In April 1990, a further example of Defence assistance occurred when vast sections of southern Queensland and north-west New South Wales were flooded. Initially the assistance provided was in the form of fodder drops and minor resupply tasks but the ADF became involved in a major way on 20 April 1990 when Charleville in Queensland was flooded and the entire community had to be evacuated. ADF helicopters were immediately committed to this urgent task, successfully moving

people stranded on rooftops to the airfield at Charleville. Having moved the townsfolk to safety it was immediately apparent that temporary accommodation, food and cooking facilities were needed for those at the airfield. The result was a 'tent city' for 2000 people largely provided, erected and run by the Army.

On the same day that Charleville was flooded, HQADF implemented the contingency plan for providing ADF assistance during natural disasters. Over the next few days many requests were received which resulted in a host of tasks for RAAF transport aircraft and Army helicopters and ground units.

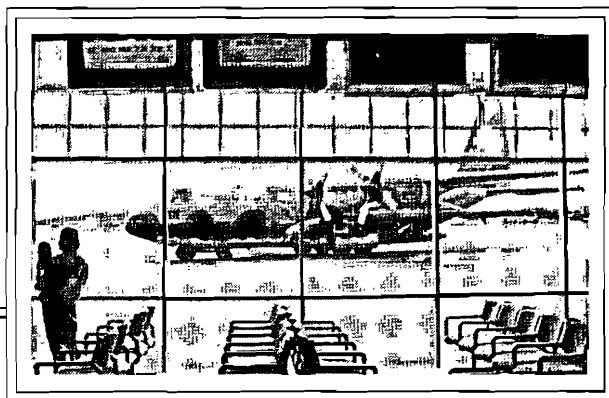
During the evening of 23 April 1990 the township of Nyngan in New South Wales was completely flooded and the evacuation of the entire community was ordered. Army and RAN helicopters played the major role in that event and the versatility and speed of response of ADF units were once again demonstrated.

The flood relief operations continued until 29 May 1990 by which time the ADF had been involved in 82 tasks of various types. In all, the Hercules fleet flew 325 hours, the Caribou fleet 345 hours and Army helicopters 680 hours.

Aside from assistance provided during natural disasters, there are other forms of emergency civil assistance. The RAAF is experienced in aeromedical evacuation of people injured or ill in places remote from major hospitals, including from overseas. The ADF is often involved in search and rescue operations at sea and on land. On the lighter side, the provision of bands, personnel, equipment, ships and aircraft for displays and other public events occurs regularly.

Defence assistance to the civil community is a continuing commitment for the ADF. Clearly such commitment requires considerable effort and resources. However the benefits are substantial, not least because it brings the ADF closer to the community from which it recruits and which it seeks to defend.

Right: An RAAF Hercules stands on the tarmac at Canberra airport on day one of Operation Immune.



Left: Ansett flight attendant Suzy Edwards hands out ear plugs to passengers aboard a C-130.

PROGRAM 2: DEFENCE DEVELOPMENT

OBJECTIVE

To realise the Government's priorities for the development of Australia's defence capabilities, through coordinated planning and implementation of long term investment in equipment and infrastructure, with an emphasis on the use of Australian industrial capacities and civil infrastructure where appropriate.

DESCRIPTION

The force development process is complex, involving assessment, for example, of strategic circumstances, changes in capabilities in the region, changes in the capabilities of our own forces, technological trends and consideration of Australia's ability to support forces of particular kinds. Planning consideration involves HQADF, the Services and central offices of the Department.

To achieve a future defence force appropriate to Australia's evolving strategic needs, the Department takes a coordinated approach to planning for and implementation of capital investment proposals with an emphasis on their ultimate contribution to defence capabilities. The investment element (comprising major capital equipment and capital facilities) within the Defence development program has averaged around 30 per cent of overall Defence expenditure in recent years and it is intended to sustain investment at about those levels.

Table 2.1: Defence Development - Resources Expended 1989-90

	<i>Outlays</i> <i>\$m</i>
2.1 Procurement of Capital Equipment	1 669.035
2.2 Australian Industry Involvement	21.397
2.3 Procurement of Capital Facilities	438.611
Total: Defence Development	2 129.043



The Secretary, Department of Defence, Mr Tony Ayers and the High Commissioner for New Zealand, Mr Edward Woodfield, at the signing of the collaborative agreement between Australia and New Zealand for the aquisition of the Anzac Ships.

SUBPROGRAM 2.1: PROCUREMENT OF CAPITAL EQUIPMENT

OBJECTIVE

To develop and manage capital equipment acquisitions to achieve the timely introduction of equipment into service within budget and to meet the operational requirements of the ADF. Through these acquisitions and industry development policies, to create an environment for the development of an efficient industrial base in Australia capable of self-reliant supply and support of the ADF.

DESCRIPTION

The procurement of major capital equipment and the development of policy for industry support of the ADF is undertaken by the Acquisition and Logistics Organisation, centrally located in Canberra but with staff in capital cities to provide a point of contact with industry and state and local authorities.

PERFORMANCE

The effectiveness of the capital equipment procurement program is assessed in terms of the extent to which:

- capital equipment acquisition processes are developed and managed to enable introduction of equipment into service on time and within budget to meet the operational requirements of the ADF;
- through these processes and industry development policies, an environment is created for the development of an efficient industrial base in Australia capable of self-reliant supply to the ADF;
- Financial Management Improvement Program initiatives for reform of the purchasing function are implemented; and
- staff professionalism is enhanced through development and training.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Management of the Acquisition Process

Implementation of Purchasing Reforms

The Defence Purchasing Reform Implementation Strategy was endorsed by the then Minister for Defence in November 1989. This document outlines the strategy by which the purchasing reform objectives of best value for money through the maximum use of open and effective competition will be achieved in Defence purchasing. Preparations for implementing the purchasing reforms were largely completed by 30 June 1990. They will be adopted from 1 July 1990 to coincide with the introduction of PMB.

An important aim of the purchasing reforms is to provide managers with greater flexibility to choose the most appropriate method and source of supply and in approving proposals to commit public monies. Those agencies in Defence responsible for the acquisition of goods and services will be able to adopt purchasing methods which suit the complexity of the particular procurement rather than focusing attention on conforming to prescriptive rules. The wider use of less restrictive and more function oriented specifications will also assist in achieving value for money in Defence procurement.

On 1 July 1990 a system of Ministerial authorisations will be introduced in place of the structure of financial delegations based on monetary thresholds which flowed from the Audit Act and Finance

Regulations. A system of benchmarks for making decisions on purchasing methods will replace the application of procedures predetermined on the basis of value thresholds. While the value of a procurement will initially suggest the appropriate procedures, these may be varied to meet particular requirements regardless of value. For example, the purchase of \$100 000 worth of commercially available spare parts in a competitive market would demand a different approach from that required for \$100 000 worth of specialist design and engineering work. This will simplify the procurement process and place the authority and responsibility for decision making in the hands of purchasing managers.

Separate procedures for major capital acquisitions, that is those valued over \$20 million, have been in place for some time. In general, these procedures rely on the same principles as the purchasing reforms now being introduced more widely.

Detailed arrangements for the implementation of purchasing reforms in Defence have been developed by a Purchasing Reform Implementation Team within the Defence Contracting Organisation. The team has issued a number of bulletins during the year to promulgate information on the reforms throughout the Defence organisation. These bulletins have covered topics such as changes to legislation, the new authorisation structure, a code of ethics and the roles of procurement sponsors and agencies. A Defence Purchasing Handbook covering less complex procurement techniques will be issued to all Defence purchasing officers. For the more complex purchases, where the Defence Contracting Organisation will continue to solicit proposals and issue contracts, a contracts manual collating all current procedures is nearing completion.

The Defence Contracting Organisation is providing training for the estimated 2 000 Defence staff nationwide who are involved in direct or less complex purchasing. By 30 June this year, 1 500 officers had completed the appropriate training programs and the remainder are scheduled to receive training early in the 1990-91 financial year. The training needs of Defence purchasing staff overseas will be met as appropriate opportunities arise. There will be a continuing need for courses in purchasing reforms and the Defence Contracting Organisation now has a base of trained presenters for this purpose in its central and regional offices. Industry seminars have been conducted recently through Defence Contracting regional offices to provide information on the reforms and their implications for local and international industry.

Value Management

During the year, the Department moved to establish a formal value management incentive program which will be launched by the Minister for Defence on 2 July 1990. The Value Management Incentive Program, which will be applicable to all Defence firm and variable price contracts, has been based upon the United States Department of Defense value engineering program. With value management, the emphasis is placed upon meeting essential functional requirements rather than a rigid adherence to specification or tradition. Extensive discussions with Australian industry have ensured that the program has a high level of support from Defence contractors. ⁿ

The program will encourage industry to provide innovative solutions to Defence requirements, ensuring better value for the defence dollar and ultimately supporting defence industry export programs. The savings which the program is designed to generate will be shared with industry. The Defence portion of the savings will be utilised for other priority procurements.

Other Commonwealth, state and territory authorities are monitoring value management in Defence with a view to introducing similar programs.

Contractor Performance Measurement

In response to the Joint Parliamentary Committee on Public Accounts Review of Defence Project

Management (Report 243), Defence has established policy and procedures for implementing uniform contractor performance measurement. The management reporting for nominated projects must conform with the Cost/Schedule Control Systems Criteria (C/SCSC) similar to that which has been applied successfully in the United States.

There is a need for the Department and Australian industry to manage, and to be seen to manage, major capital projects well. C/SCSC is an important element in the successful management of large capital projects. Over the year, Defence has issued a policy paper on the application of C/SCSC to Australian Defence equipment acquisition managers and to industry.

Major Defence contractors have begun to review their systems for conformity with the requirements of C/SCSC and seminars for industry, developed by specialist firms, have been held in all major capital cities. Those involved within the Department have received specialist training in the United States and Australia.

The requirements of C/SCSC are currently applied to a number of major projects - the Collins Class Submarine, Anzac Ship and Australian Frigate projects. The requirements are to be included in contracts for Jindalee over-the-horizon radar and the F-111 aircraft upgrade and future large projects.

Project Management Training and Project Management Pool

Training efforts play an important part in the enhancement of the project management skills of those Defence personnel, service and civilian, charged with the responsibility for managing the significant portion of the annual Defence budget devoted to the acquisition of equipment.

A specialised training program for staff involved in major acquisition projects continued during 1989-90. Organised around a number of course modules on discrete topics, 522 places were utilised on 48 courses providing a total of 1 600 training days. Project management staff each received, on average, 3.5 days training. A two week condensed module course on project management has been added to the program.

A further three Defence personnel commenced the two year Master of Business in Capital Project Management at the University College of Southern Queensland. A total of 17 Defence personnel have now commenced this course since its inception in 1988. Four students graduated during 1989-90 and are applying their training to Defence acquisition management tasks. Additional external tertiary programs are being explored. Practical measures such as negotiation skills workshops for teams about to enter contract negotiation, case studies of major procurements and the first stage of a project managers resource centre have been introduced to ensure that skills acquired through training remain current.

Project management pool arrangements established to support the development and management of capital equipment projects have continued to be implemented. Engineering, technical and administrative staff have been provided to assist project directors with financial, business advisory and industry matters. The concept is designed to provide a flexible pool of staff to respond to project team requirements.

Progress of Projects

Overview

A total of ten new major equipment acquisition projects or project phases valued at \$3.9 billion were approved during 1989-90. The total value of the 68 major capital equipment projects currently approved, that is those with a project cost exceeding \$20 million, is \$22.8 billion with outstanding expenditure of \$11.6 billion at 30 June 1990. Apart from major projects, other capital equipment items with a total cost of \$358 million are also under procurement.

CAPITAL EQUIPMENT - PROJECT APPROVALS AND EXPENDITURE

Table 2.1.1: Total Project Costs for Major New Projects or Project Phases Approved in 1989-90

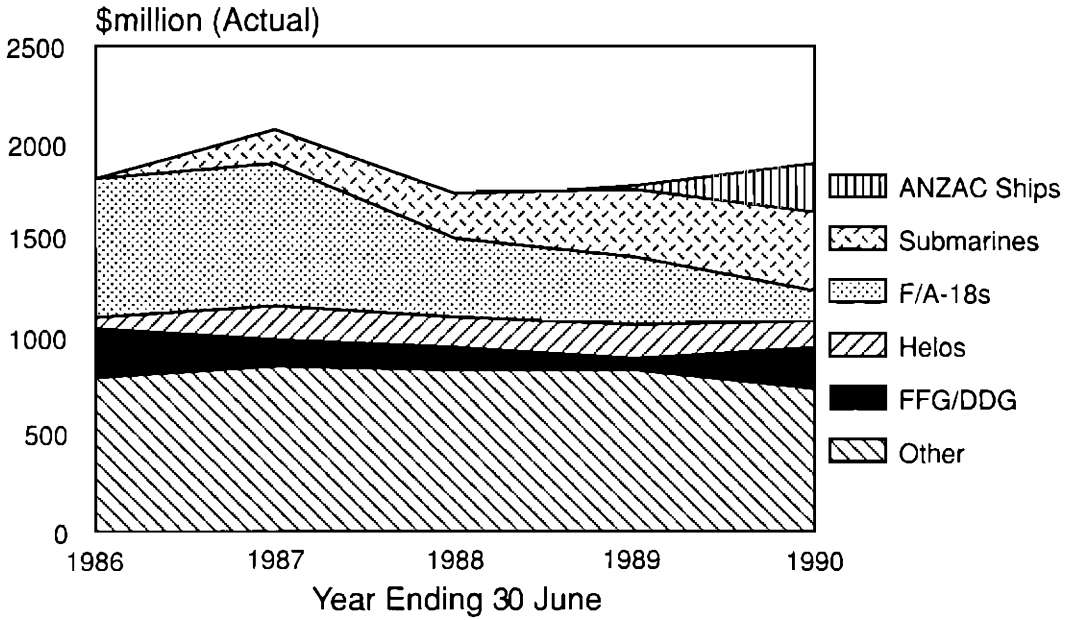
<i>Project</i>	<i>Total Cost Approved (\$m)</i>
Anzac Ships	3 594.0
P-3C Improved Electronic Support Measures	115.7
Supply Systems Redevelopment Project	55.6
Australian Army Command Support System	41.7
Perentie Light Field Vehicles	41.4
Minesweepers (two tugs)	19.9
Naval Exercise Mines	8.7
Financial Systems Redevelopment Project	3.0
Military Satellite Communications	2.6
Precursor Minesweepers	2.0

Note: All costs are in Budget 1989-90 prices (April 1989) with the exception of the Anzac Ships which is at Budget 1988-89 prices (April 1988) and Perentie at December 1988 prices.

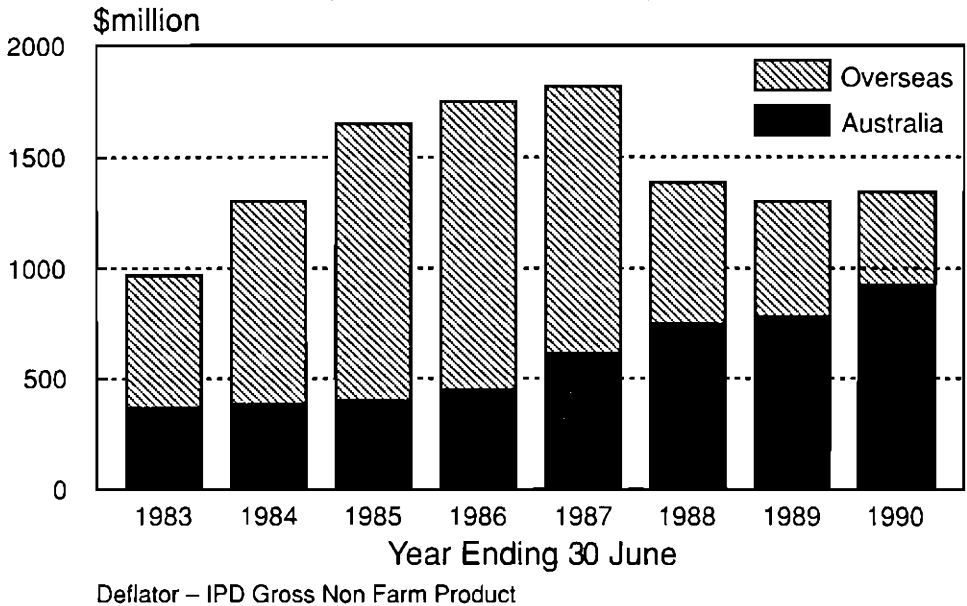
Table 2.1.2: Major Items of Capital Equipment Expenditure 1989-90

<i>Project</i>	<i>Expenditure 1989-90 (\$m)</i>
Collins Class Submarines	460.2
F/A-18 Project and associated equipment	212.6
Anzac Ships	201.1
Construction of two FFG frigates	144.5
Seahawk Helicopters	80.9
DDG Modernisation	55.0
Black Hawk Helicopters	53.9
Army Light Field Vehicles	51.8
Basic Trainer Aircraft	45.3
HF and VHF Single Channel Radios	38.9
Defence Integrated Secure Communications Network	31.0
F-111 Avionics Update	29.0
Jindalee Over-the-horizon Radar	25.6
105mm Army Field Gun	20.3
Acquisition of four FFG frigates	19.6
P-3C Electronic Surveillance Measures	17.7
Laser Airborne Depth Sounder	16.6
Supply Systems Redevelopment Project	14.4
Acquisition of small arms	11.9
Medium trucks for Army	11.2
Army bridging	11.1
Trucks, tractors and semi-trailers for Army	10.7

CAPITAL EQUIPMENT EXPENDITURE BY MAJOR PROJECT



CAPITAL EQUIPMENT EXPENDITURE AUSTRALIA AND OVERSEAS (Constant 84/85 Prices)



The Defence Contracting Organisation, which is responsible for the more complex Defence tendering and contracting actions, awarded 2 372 contracts valued at \$5 billion during 1989-90. A more detailed breakdown of Defence contracting activity is given in the table below.

Table 2.1.3: Contracts Awarded by the Defence Contracting Organisation 1989-90

	Contracts Awarded	
	<i>Number</i>	<i>Value \$m</i>
Navy	405	4 464
Army	948	254
Air Force	673	172
Defence Central	346	126
Total	2 372	5 016

Strategic Communications Projects

There are a number of current Defence projects which will develop and enhance a more capable secure and survivable voice, facsimile, telegraph and data communications system.

Defence Integrated Secure Communications Network

The Discon system will provide an Australia-wide secure communications network to meet Defence needs. Other communications projects will utilise Discon and some of these are mentioned below. Discon will also service the Financial, Supply and Manpower Systems Redevelopment Projects as well as the Video Conferencing Network.

During 1989-90 the Phase One circuit switched network became partly operational. Residual software faults are being rectified and formal operational evaluation is expected during the last quarter of 1990. The message switched network, which is to replace the existing network, is not expected to be in service before the end of 1991. Overall delay against the original schedule is about 30 months. Expenditure is still within the original project approval.

Phase Two, to extend the network nationally from the eastern states, is in the third year of the implementation period. The Canberra Switching Centre has been installed and operational use of the circuit switched network is on schedule for mid 1991. As with the first phase, the message switched network has slipped to the first half of 1992.

Project managers commenced a review of Discon's capability and potential in 1989-90. The analysis takes account of the technological developments, services becoming available under the civil telecommunications infrastructure and expected future needs.

Discon Packet Switched Data Network

This project will provide both secure and non secure communications to meet Defence computing needs. Tenders were called for and evaluated in 1989-90 and a contract is expected to be awarded in late 1990. It has the potential to save several million dollars per annum in recurrent data communications expenditure.

Defence Satellite Network

The eleven ground stations to provide the satellite links for Discon have been completed. Ten have completed Aussat commissioning tests and the Canberra station is due to complete its tests during July 1990. The overall network will not be commissioned until late 1990 due to problems with the satellite facilities control centre.

The two transportable shelters for ground stations to support the field deployment of a joint headquarters have been completed and passed acceptance tests. They will not, however, be available for operational use until the end of 1990 due to the need to fit Discon equipment. A contract has been let for this work.

Video Conferencing Network

The network provides video conference facilities for the CDF and the Joint Force commanders. The network, managed as a fast track project, uses Discon transmission links. It was provided on time and within budget and was used with success in an operational environment during K89.

Satellite Communications Facility

During 1989-90, an invitation to register interest was issued and over 30 industry responses were evaluated for two systems definition studies to cover the range of costed options for a satellite communications facility. A request for tender for the first study will be issued in 1991 to those on the shortlist and the results will be available in 1992 to assist Defence in making decisions on satellite communications capability.

Projects Based on Indigenous Technology

Jindalee Over-the-Horizon Radar Network

Tenders for the operational network of over-the-horizon radars were issued to three consortia in May 1989. Initial examination of the responses in September 1989 eliminated BHP. Further responses will be sought from AWA and Telecom to developed network requirements. The revision follows analysis concluded after receipt of the tenders. The requirements now include centralised control and the potential for later upgrade of 180 degree coverage. It is planned to award a contract for the two radars, associated facilities and management and computer support in late 1990.

The intention to establish a Jindalee site near Longreach was announced by the then Minister for Defence in March this year and examination of suitable sites in the Leonora area of Western Australia is continuing.

Over-the-Horizon Radar Facility, Alice Springs

The upgrade of the experimental over-the-horizon radar near Alice Springs, to support the development of the Jindalee network, is scheduled for completion in December 1990. It is expected to meet that schedule and be within budget. The radar was used successfully in K89 and will be used in Exercise Pitch Black 90.

The 1989 *Defence Quality and Achievement Award* went to AWA and Computer Sciences of Australia for their performance in upgrading the Alice Springs over-the-horizon radar.

From July 1990 the Alice Springs radar will be used operationally and for continuing research and is expected to remain in use for many years. The installation of frequency agile transmitters is expected to be completed on schedule in late 1991.

Project Kariwara

Project Kariwara provides for the engineering development of local towed array technology. By mid 1993, an indigenous manufacturing capability will have been established and arrays delivered to the

Collins Class Submarine and for surface ship applications. Scope will also exist for gaining overseas sales.

During 1989-90, contracts were awarded for the full scale engineering development of the baseline version arrays and digital telemetry system. Mechanical and acoustic test facilities have been established and the extended project definition studies have been completed. Tenders for the full scale engineering development of the enhanced towed array were received and assessed with the intention of awarding a contract later in 1990.

The Kariwara project is on schedule and within budget.

Project Nulka

Full scale engineering development of the Nulka ship defence system has continued under collaborative arrangements agreed between the United States and Australian Governments.

Progress this year includes the design, construction, testing and delivery of engineering development hardware in anticipation of the first series of trials to be conducted in Australia later in 1990. No significant slippages occurred with Australian activities.

Australian Sonobuoy Development and Production

This project involved the development and exploitation of expendable passive directional sonobuoys for use in the detection and tracking of submarines. The Sonobuoys Australia partnership has been granted an exclusive licence to manufacture, market and sell the Barra sonobuoy and its derivatives.

During 1989-90 a series of cost reduction changes have been implemented for the Barra buoy. In-buoy signal processing concepts applicable for the new generation sonobuoy have been developed and demonstrated in the laboratory.

Navy Projects

Anzac Ship Project

Australian Marine Engineering Consolidated Ltd (Amecon) was selected as the prime contractor for the project on 14 August 1989.

The contract with Amecon was signed on 10 November 1989 and the contract price is \$3 807 million (at April 1988 prices) and is variable only for price escalation and exchange variation. It includes the construction of 10 ships, eight for Australia and two, with an option for two more, for New Zealand. The contract also covers the provision of shore facilities and logistic support, including spares. Approximately 80 per cent of the contract price will be spent in Australia and New Zealand.

The total project cost for the ten ships is \$4 366 million at April 1988 prices and exchange, of which Australia's eight ships account for \$3594 million. As well as the prime contract, the project cost includes other items such as government furnished material, insurance, trials, initial outfits of ammunition and project management required to bring the ships into service.

A treaty between Australia and New Zealand detailing the collaborative arrangements for the project was also signed on 10 November 1989. A joint project office has been established in Canberra with on-site representation at Amecon. Contract monitoring arrangements include the requirement for Amecon's performance reporting to meet cost/schedule control system criteria.

Initial work under contract has concentrated on detailed planning, modifications of the basic Meko-200 ship design to specified requirements, equipment selection and awarding major subcontracts. At 30 June 1990, Amecon had entered into eight major subcontracts with Australian or New Zealand firms for the provision of design and logistic support services, and communications, combat system and other equipment.

Design work is underway in Australia at Amecon and in Germany at Blohm & Voss, the ship designer. Major hull and superstructure modules will be constructed in Newcastle and New Zealand and shipped by barge to Williamstown. Construction of the first ship will commence at Williamstown in 1992.

On 14 December 1989, the treaty partners took up the option offered by Amecon to fit a larger (127mm) gun to the ships. An evaluation of the two guns offered has been completed and a selection decision is to be made in early 1990-91.

Collins Class Submarines

The Australian Submarine Corporation's Australian construction facility at Port Adelaide was opened on schedule in November 1989. The 'keel' (the initial hull section) for the first submarine was laid on 14 February 1990 and the submarines were named the Collins Class after Vice Admiral Sir John Collins, one of the RAN's most distinguished officers.

Fabrication of hull sections and platforms for the first submarine commenced during the year as did production and testing of equipment such as the main propulsion system, weapons discharge system, submarine control equipment and combat system hardware and software. Progress with this work is monitored through the Contract Monitoring and Control System and payments made to the corporation are linked to the achievement of physical progress through this system.

As at 30 June 1990, 55 local companies are participating in the project and contracts representing 95 per cent of the Australian content obligation have been placed on Australian firms.

Australian Frigates

Following the launching of *Melbourne* (FFG 05) in May 1989, work has continued on schedule to fit ship systems such as the missile launcher and other weapons systems and sensors. Based on current performance, Amecon is expected to deliver the ship in early 1992. The keel for FFG 06 (to be named *Newcastle*) was laid in July 1989. Work is on schedule with 65 per cent of hull construction completed. The ship is expected to be launched in March 1992 and, based on current performance, to be delivered in late 1993.

Seahawk Helicopters

The lead aircraft of the eight built by Sikorsky in the United States was accepted on 13 September 1989. A further six have now been accepted and are undergoing testing and evaluation at Nowra. Acceptance of the eighth is scheduled for later in 1990. The second lot of eight aircraft is being assembled and tested by Aerospace Technologies of Australia. These will be delivered from September 1990 to May 1991.

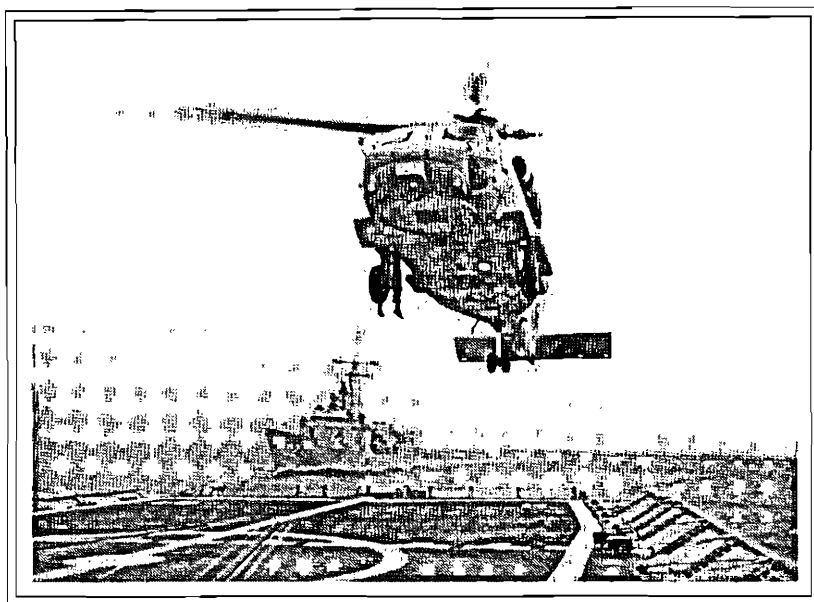
Minehunter Inshore

Following difficulties with the minehunting weapon system, a strategy for acquiring an alternative system for trial in the inshore minehunter was agreed in November 1989. This strategy involves the lease of two potentially suitable systems for comparative trials and the early release of requests for tender for production models so as to preserve competition.

Tenders for the lease of alternative minehunting weapon systems were released in January 1990. Responses were evaluated and both proposals were found satisfactory. It is planned to proceed with the lease in late 1990 with trials being completed in early 1992. If successful, this would allow a recommendation to proceed with the production of the minehunter inshore to be made by mid 1992, with the first production model available in 1995.

The two prototype minehunters, HMAS *Rushcutter* and HMAS *Shoalwater*, continued with developmental testing and evaluation. They participated in a mine countermeasures exercise in Port

A Seahawk helicopter hovers above the flight deck of HMAS Darwin. HMAS Canberra is in the background.



Kembla in late 1989. However, in view of the failure of the current minehunting weapon system, the result from the exercise was not conclusive. In March 1990, both completed modifications to meet seakeeping requirements.

DDG Modernisation and FFG Helicopter Modifications

The modernisation of the RAN's three guided missile destroyers commenced in 1985 at Garden Island Dockyard in Sydney, now operated by Australian Defence Industries. The second ship, HMAS *Perth*, was accepted back into operational service in mid June 1990. Modernisation of the third, HMAS *Hobart*, is planned for completion in July 1991. This modernisation will enable the ships to continue in operational service with improved capabilities into the year 2000.

Three of the RAN's guided missile frigates are being modified in order to deploy the Navy's new Seahawk helicopters. The second ship in the modification program, HMAS *Adelaide*, was completed in December 1989 and accepted back into operational service at the end of June 1990. Modifications to the last ship, HMAS *Canberra*, are due to commence in August 1990 under a variable price, incentive fee contract with Australian Defence Industries' Garden Island Facility.

Army Projects

Project Raven.

The project involves the development and production of an integrated family of combat net radios, both HF and VHF, together with their maintenance facilities and a frequency management system.

Production of HF radios commenced at the Meadowbank, NSW, facility of Siemens Plessey Electronic Systems during December 1989, where over 80 per cent of radio manufacture will take place. Deliveries are scheduled to continue throughout 1990 and 1991.

Early production of VHF radios continued in the United Kingdom and will commence in Australia in 1991. The project is on target to achieve an Australian content of 60 per cent. Introduction of these radios into service will also commence in 1991.

Project Parakeet.

A secure, digital tactical trunk communications system for the ADF is to be procured under this project. The first three phases resulted in a specification for the system and these phases were completed by the end of 1988. Approval to proceed with initial procurement will be considered in the 1990-91 budget context. Contract award is planned for late 1991, with deliveries to commence in 1993.

Project Perentie.

This project replaces the Army's light field vehicles with Australian manufactured Land Rovers. One tonne (4x4) and two tonne (6x6) payload vehicles are in production at the Moorebank, New South Wales, manufacturing facility of the prime contractor, JRA Ltd. About 100 Australian subcontractors are involved and the project provides Australian content of about 70 per cent. The initial production phase provided for 2 500 one tonne and 400 two tonne vehicles. A further procurement of 392 one tonne, 188 two tonne and 189 commercial 4 wheel drive vehicles was approved in November 1989. The project is progressing on schedule with 869 vehicles delivered in 1989-90. Final deliveries will be in late 1992.

Small Arms.

This project is to procure a new range of small arms and 5.56mm ammunition for the ADF.

67 000 Austeyr F88 rifles and 3 420 Minimi F89 machine guns are being produced at Australian Defence Industries Lithgow. Troop trials of early production rifles were completed in 1989. Production in Australia involves a transfer of technology from overseas and, as is often quite normal, some production problems have been experienced. It is expected that these problems will be overcome and that the rifles will enter service with the ADF from early 1991.

Trials of 50 machine guns delivered in 1990 are scheduled to be completed later in the year. They are also planned to enter service from 1991.

The capability to manufacture 5.56mm NATO standard ball ammunition has been established at Australian Defence Industries Footscray with 16 million rounds delivered in 1990. The capability to produce 5.56mm tracer and blank ammunition in Australia is being developed over the next two years.

Air Force Projects

Air-to-Air Refuelling : B707 Tanker Conversion

The first of the four aircraft to be converted was due for delivery in May 1990. Despite delays in the schedule, the flight test program has commenced at Tullamarine and the first aircraft is now due for delivery in October 1990.

P-3C Orion Electronic Support Measures

A contract valued at \$80 million was awarded in November 1989 to AWA Defence Industries to fit a modern electronic support measures system to half the RAAF fleet of P-3C aircraft. This system will improve the ability of our Orions to meet the maritime surveillance role.

Elta Electronic Industries, the major subcontractor, will provide the system hardware and Hawker de Havilland, under subcontract to Elta, is responsible for the design of aircraft modifications and their installation. The first modified aircraft is scheduled for delivery in September 1992 and the contract is due to be completed in December 1994.

F-111C Avionics Update

The avionics update project will provide improved reliability and maintainability for the F-111 and will allow our strike and reconnaissance force to continue operating into the next century.

Under contract to Texas Instruments and General Electric respectively, production of the modification kits for the terrain following and attack radars commenced in 1989 and is continuing on schedule and within budget. Part of the work is being performed at Phillips Defence Systems in Liverpool.

Contract negotiations with the preferred tenderer for the major program, the avionics update, began in June 1990. Evaluation of tenders for the replacement of automatic test equipment has also begun and objectives for updating the F-111 simulator are being prepared. The project is planned for completion by 1996.

F/A-18 Fighter Aircraft

On 16 May 1990, the RAAF formally accepted the last F/A-18. This marks the end of a highly successful major acquisition project which has been achieved to a schedule and budget established in 1981.

In other work associated with the introduction of these aircraft into service, a contract was signed with McDonnell-Douglas in November 1989 for a modification program to improve the structural integrity of the airframe and to incorporate the wiring for new avionics. Work on six aircraft has commenced at Aerospace Technologies of Australia, Avalon. Proposals have also been sought from industry for an integrated avionic system software support facility.

PC9/A Pilot Training Aircraft

Hawker de Havilland Ltd (HdH) has delivered 31 of the 67 PC9/A aircraft the Commonwealth contracted to buy. The program is on schedule with the last aircraft planned for delivery in February 1992. A trial course of eight students has completed training in the PC9/A at RAAF Pearce and the first full class of PC9/A students will begin training in January 1991. HdH provided logistics planning, spares analysis and initial operation level maintenance for the PC9/A at RAAF East Sale. HdH is also assisting the RAAF in depot level maintenance planning and activation as well as providing training for RAAF technicians. All depot level maintenance and some intermediate level maintenance will be placed with industry.

Black Hawk Helicopter Project

The Black Hawk helicopter is being procured to improve Army battlefield mobility. The contract for 39 aircraft with Sikorsky Aircraft has seen 29 Black Hawks delivered since 31 December 1987. Deliveries are scheduled to be completed by May 1991.

Of the total contract of \$480 million, approximately \$190 million of work is being completed by Australian industry, including the assembly and test of 37 Black Hawks, assembly and test of 50 engines with some component manufacture and the manufacture of some major aircraft components such as gearboxes and rotor blade parts. Facilities at Townsville and Oakey to house the Black Hawks were included in the project.

SUBPROGRAM 2.2: AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRY INVOLVEMENT

OBJECTIVE

The priority objectives are to foster:

- indigenous capacity for the repair, overhaul and adaptation of military equipment and the provision of munitions, spares and consumable stores; and
- a range of technology and supply/support capabilities (including design development and manufacture) consistent with longer term ADF requirements and Government policy.

DESCRIPTION

Australian Industry Involvement provides programs for defence industry development and Australian industry participation in defence-related acquisition and facilitates the commercial exploitation of indigenously developed equipment and intellectual property. It also includes defence offsets which may be effected through specific agreements with overseas firms.

PERFORMANCE

The effectiveness of Australian Industry Involvement policies and programs is shown by reference to the extent to which Australian industry:

- repairs, maintains and adapts military equipments fundamental to Australia's defence circumstances to which the Government has given priority;
- can supply munitions, spares and other consumable stores (including stockpiling and other actions for greater assurance of supply);
- can supply equipment through indigenous design, development and production, adaptation of overseas technologies or manufacture of overseas designs and involvement in major overseas procurements;
- exports defence-related products; and
- develops the infrastructure and generic technology in accordance with the above requirements.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Australian Industry Involvement in Defence Projects

From January 1986, following the restatement of the Government's offsets policy, to June 1990, the overall level of Australian industry participation in contracts for Defence equipment has substantially increased. Of the contracts let over this period approximately \$5.5 billion involves local production and another \$850 million was directed through offsets obligations.

The trend toward higher local content in major projects has continued, particularly in the case of the Anzac Ship project. The higher levels of Australian content have been made possible by the transfer of new technologies and skills in project management, manufacturing processes and advanced electronics. Australian Industry Involvement programs for major projects such as the F/A-18 and Black Hawk/Seahawk helicopters still have several years until completion. Targeted levels for these projects have been achieved at past milestones.

Defence Offsets

The Defence Offsets program involves placing an obligation on overseas suppliers to direct work to

Australian industry which will help foster or maintain industry capabilities of importance to the priorities for self-reliant supply and support of the ADF. Offset obligations are incurred against the imported content of contracts. In addition to securing the performance of an offset obligation through the contract, Defence may enter into a separate deed with a company for that purpose.

Five deeds to secure offsets obligations were signed during 1989-90 as part of the Australian Industry Involvement arrangements for projects to acquire the paveway laser guided bomb kits, electronic support measures equipment for the RAAF, the MK41 vertical launch system for the Anzac Ship, test equipment for the Seahawk helicopter and radar test requirement data for the RAN. Two joint civil and defence offset deeds are being negotiated.

These deeds will direct work and new technology to Australian industry and will bring to 25 the number of such agreements concluded since January 1986.

Following a review of the joint civil and defence offsets guidelines in 1986, the revised Australian Defence Offsets Program was established in October 1989. The review established that while there was a single policy on offsets, there was a need for two separate programs. The new arrangements address this by publishing separate guidelines for civil and defence offsets.

To clarify the new requirements and promote the Defence Offsets program, seminars were held in capital cities in Australia and in London. Australia was represented at a United States Defence Offsets seminar in Seattle during February and May 1990. A booklet of revised guidelines for participants has been released; for further details see Appendix D.

A survey of Australian industry was conducted during the year to determine the impact of Defence Offsets and other Defence industry programs. The survey results are being analysed and a report will be finalised in November 1990.

Offsets Obligations and Achievements

The total value of contracts awarded this year which involve offsets obligations increased to \$3.9 billion. The value of new offset obligations was \$347 million. These result mainly from contracts placed for the Anzac Ship project and are relatively small due to the high Australian and New Zealand content.

Against contracts signed since January 1986, \$20 million of offset work was achieved in 1989-90. For contracts signed prior to that date under the Australian Industry Participation Program, the corresponding figure was \$54 million.

Development of Industry Capabilities

In addition to arrangements within or parallel to contracts for the supply of equipment and services to Defence, other steps are taken to ensure that Australian industry has access to overseas developments in technology relevant to the ADF's longer term needs and Australia's strategic requirements.

In contributing to the creation, enhancement and maintenance of industry capability in support of defence self-reliance, specific contracts are placed with industry for technology development or the development of generic industrial capabilities. Other contracts are for the development of specific equipment to position Australian industry to participate in current and future major Defence acquisitions or the development of production processes of particular importance.

Examples of achievements in industry capability development in 1989-90 are:

- further development of the expendable jammer Remotely Independently Operated Transmitter;
- development of a battlefield illumination system;

- establishment in industry of a non-spherical lens production capability; and
- establishment of precision hydraulics and fine mechanisms machining capability in industry.

A review of electronic warfare capability in Australian industry was undertaken in 1989-90. A principal conclusion of the review was that this industry sector, after 10 years of support, was mature enough to allow this work to be spread around a broader range of contractors. Tendering is underway to have new contracts available by 31 January 1991.

To sustain strategic capabilities the Department has developed the concept of Defence Required Support Capabilities to apply to facilities leased from the Commonwealth or owned by Australian Defence Industries. Expenditure in 1989-90 was \$19.15 million. A plan has been prepared for the review, funding and management of these capabilities. As an example, a maintenance program for the Captain Cook Dock at the Garden Island Facility will be undertaken over the next two years.

The program to dispose of Commonwealth-owned plant and equipment to industry is now substantially complete and will continue at a low level for several years as contractual commitments expire, releasing remaining plant for disposal.

International Collaboration

Defence is actively involved in efforts towards international collaboration in the development, production and procurement of equipment for defence purposes.

Government to government memoranda of understanding, such as those concluded with the Governments of Sweden and the United Kingdom in 1988, provide the framework for such collaboration. Under these particular memoranda, arrangements have been concluded during 1989-90 with the United Kingdom for the further development of an air purification system for submarines and with Sweden for collaboration in field telephone and early-warning radar technology.

Action is being taken to purchase a Stirling air-independent submarine engine for further research by the Materials Research Laboratory. Discussions are underway with Sweden to share the results of this work. There are potential benefits to Australian industry in the application of new materials to engine components. Similar memoranda of understanding have been drafted this year for negotiation with the governments of several other countries.

Defence Intellectual Property and Licencing Agreements

Defence generates intellectual property primarily through the Defence Science and Technology Organisation, the Engineering Development Establishment and development contracts with industry. This intellectual property is protected through a combination of security classifications and commercial arrangements - patents, registered designs and copyright.

Protection of Defence intellectual property has been improved this year by the establishment of a central database, new internal instructions and compilation of an explanatory reference manual. The manual has been widely distributed within Defence since an understanding of this subject is central to the efficient use of our intellectual property for equipment procurement and servicing as well as commercial exploitation.

To support the development in Australia of industry capabilities which have a defence priority, manufacturing and marketing licence agreements are negotiated with local industry for proprietary Defence technologies. Sixteen agreements were signed during 1989-90 for technologies such as a computer memory module designed by the Navy, a close quarters battle torch developed under an Army contract and a missile modification kit developed under a RAAF contract. These agreements will attract royalty payments when sales occur.

Controls on Dual Use Technology

In May 1989, Defence began to administer Australian controls on the export of dual use technology which had been expanded to cover all destination countries. This has been achieved with the cooperation of Australian industry. It has resulted in expedited access for Australian firms to advanced Western technology by reducing significantly the necessary licensing lead-time in supplying countries.

Since joining the Coordinating Committee for Multilateral Export Controls in April 1989, Australia has sought to maximise the benefit of membership to Australian industry. Delegations from Defence and other Commonwealth departments have taken part in a number of meetings of committees and working parties. These groups have been involved in the development of policy and procedures on the types and levels of technology subject to control and the conditions under which this technology may be made available to proscribed countries.

This participation has provided Australia with first hand information on prospective changes in technology and on in-country relationships, particularly those in Europe. Australia has been successful in obtaining a favourable outcome in a number of exception cases where Australian firms have sought to export civil infrastructure goods such as telecommunications equipment to proscribed countries.

The past year has seen a significant easing of tension in Western relations with Eastern Europe and, to a lesser degree, the Soviet Union. This has resulted in more relaxed controls on the export of dual use goods and technology to those countries. These more relaxed controls are being administered by Australia with effect from 1 July 1990.

Export Control

The introduction in July 1989 of revised Customs (Prohibited Exports) Regulations included a system of licences for bona fide exporters of non-military lethal goods, such as sporting rifles. The publication entitled *Australian Controls on the Export of Defence and Related Goods - Guidelines for Exporters*, which was distributed widely in July 1989, has led to a much greater public awareness of the export controls. Information on obtaining this document can be found in Appendix D.

In the first full year of operation of the revised export guidelines, Defence issued 1 600 permits for the export of defence and related goods. A large proportion of these have been for exports to the United States and New Zealand. Defence is committed to processing applications within 21 days. Unless there are unusual circumstances this is being met and, in most cases, applications are processed within five days.

Export Facilitation

Defence has continued to assist in promoting exports of Australian defence and defence related products and services. For example, Defence coordinated the attendance of 30 Australian companies at COMDEF89 in Washington DC and arranged visits by their representatives to United States Department of Defence procurement agencies. Defence and Austrade sponsored a national pavilion at DSA90 in Kuala Lumpur in March 1990, at which 17 Australian companies were represented.

Exposing Australian companies to markets in the defence sector overseas with official Government support contributes to their commercial competitiveness and Australia's defence self-reliance.

SUBPROGRAM 2.3: PROCUREMENT OF CAPITAL FACILITIES

OBJECTIVE

To formulate the forward investment program for facilities and infrastructure development and to arrange the provision and management of facilities.

DESCRIPTION

An extensive infrastructure of bases, airfields, communications stations and training and other facilities is needed to support Defence operations. Their development is ordered by specific objectives and priorities.

- Strategic development of infrastructure in the north and west of Australia to meet operational needs in credible contingencies. Priorities for implementation reflect judgments on warning time, lead times for construction and the need for training in the area.
- Upgrading living-in accommodation contributes to improving conditions for Service personnel.
- Rationalisation of facilities reflects the drive for economies which allow resources to be directed to priority capabilities and other national objectives.
- Explosive ordnance facilities are being redeveloped to meet Nato safety principles which were adopted in 1980-81.
- Equipment related facilities support the introduction of new equipment.
- Occupational health and safety items have policy and industrial importance and receive priority accordingly.
- Protection of the environment.

PERFORMANCE

The effectiveness of the capital facilities subprogram can be gauged from the extent to which activities reflect policy priorities for defence infrastructure development and the efficiency with which these activities are managed to cost, time and quality standards. Defence infrastructure priorities are reported on in terms of physical progress and trends in aggregate spending and grouped according to the categories outlined above.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Strategic Infrastructure Developments

Support for Northern Operations

The development of new working and living accommodation at Darwin for 2 Cavalry Regiment, at a cost of \$63.3 million, has commenced on schedule. Expenditure to June 1990 was \$5.5 million.

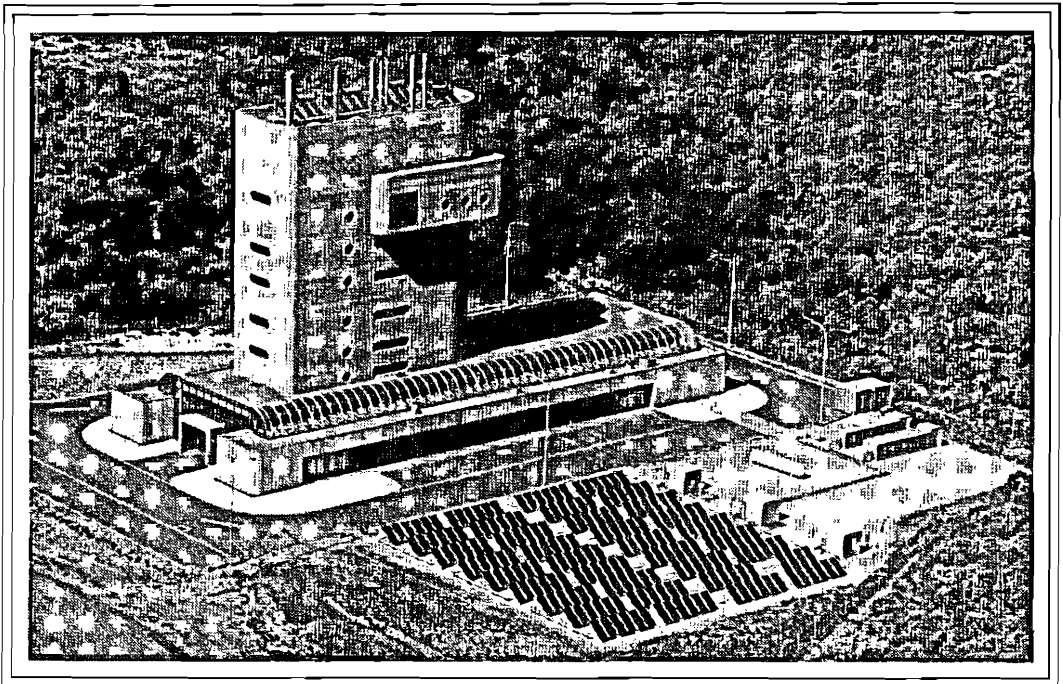
The redevelopment of HMAS Coonawarra in Darwin, at a cost of \$12.6 million, is approximately 50 per cent complete.

The development of further facilities - explosive preparation, equipment warehouse and medical/dental - to support the Hornet Squadron at RAAF Tindal at a total cost of \$9 million is approximately 40 per cent complete.

Facilities for Two Ocean Basing

Facilities at HMAS Stirling to support basing of half the fleet in Western Australia include:

- The Submarine Escape Training facility has been completed at a cost of \$20.4 million. Significant delays occurred as a result of the complexity of the construction work and delays with the procurement overseas of some plant and equipment.
- The Submarine Training School facility, at an estimated cost of \$12.6 million, has commenced on schedule with expenditure of \$2.2 million to 30 June 1990.
- The next phase of development has commenced on schedule and is estimated to cost \$58.8 million. Facilities being provided include living-in accommodation, wharfage and support services to meet basing of up to eight destroyers, four submarines, a tanker, three patrol boats and various other naval vessels and support craft.



The Submarine Escape Training facility at HMAS Stirling. The solar panels in the foreground are used to heat the Facility's water supply.

Living-in Accommodation

Since 1985-86, upgrading or replacement of below-standard rooms has been initiated as individual projects or as part of larger developments. About 2 800 rooms have been completed this year in addition to over 2 600 completed in prior years. Upgrading of a further 2 500 rooms is planned and the Services are giving consideration to the extent of sub-standard accommodation remaining to be upgraded.

The accommodation upgrade program for the Army nationally involves expenditure of over \$100 million and is approximately two thirds complete. Work on new living-in accommodation for the Navy at HMAS Cerberus, at a cost of \$11.9 million, has commenced and other major developments at HMAS Kuttabul, HMAS Stirling and Randwick, at a combined cost of \$12 million, and at Air Force bases Amberley, Darwin, Fairbairn, and Williams, at a combined cost of \$9.3 million, are nearing completion.

CAPITAL FACILITIES - PROJECT APPROVALS AND EXPENDITURE

Table 2.3.1: Total Project Cost for Major New Projects or Project Phases Approved in 1989-90

<i>Project</i>	<i>Total Approved Cost (\$m)</i>
Darwin - 2 Cavalry Regiment working and living accommodation	67.9
HMAS Stirling - development Stage 2B	58.8
RAAF Base Wagga - redevelopment	25.6
Army Aviation Oakey - redevelopment Stage 1	13.4
RAAF Base Tindal - further development	13.3
HMAS Stirling - submarine school	12.6
HMAS Cerberus - living-in accommodation upgrade Phase A	11.3
Puckapunyal - essential services redevelopment Stage 1	10.1
Oakleigh - Army multi-user depot	8.8
HMAS Cerberus - new-recruit school	7.0
Enoggera - new living-in accommodation	5.8
Enoggera - relocation of 106 Field Workshop Company	5.8
Darwin - Marrara Swamp explosive ordnance storage	4.8
Salisbury - radar building	4.7

Table 2.3.2: Major Items of Facilities Expenditure in 1989-90

<i>Project</i>	<i>Expenditure in 1989-90 (\$m)</i>
Army living-in accommodation	27.6
Relocation of Albion Explosives Factory	21.2
School of Military Engineering - Casula	14.6
Townsville - Black Hawk helicopter facility	11.9
Moorebank - 21 Supply Battalion warehousing	11.8
Australian Defence Force Academy	9.8
ADI Garden Island Facility - integrated weapons workshop	8.4

Rationalisation, Relocation and Economy

New logistics facilities at Bandiana, at an estimated total cost of \$14.5 million with expenditure of \$5 million to 30 June 1990, are 33 per cent complete and within budget and on schedule. Logistics facilities at Moorebank, at an estimated total cost of \$19 million with expenditure of \$18.3 million to 30 June 1990, have been completed but were slightly behind schedule due to wet weather. They will be formally opened in August 1990. Other developments include new working accommodation and training facilities for the military police at Green Hills, New South Wales, and for the Army Reserve at Oakleigh in Victoria. Working accommodation in Toowoomba and Melbourne is also being rationalised. These projects are all on schedule.

Explosive Ordnance Storage

Studies are continuing into alternative locations for the naval armament depot and wharf at Newington. Planning for the rationalisation and redevelopment of the Army's explosives store-houses is well advanced and will allow construction to commence in 1990-91.

Support for the Introduction of New Equipment

Stage two of the construction of new facilities at RAAF Townsville to support the Black Hawk helicopters, at an estimated total cost of \$22.3 million with expenditure to 30 June 1990 of \$21.4 million, has been substantially completed on time and to its cost target. Construction of training and maintenance facilities at Oakey, at an estimated total cost of \$6.7 million with expenditure of \$6.5 million to 30 June 1990, is also substantially complete, although some delay resulted from the significant redesign required on fire protection services.

Production and Maintenance Infrastructure

A project to relocate ADI's explosives manufacturing capability to Mulwala, New South Wales, is 40 per cent complete. The estimated total cost is \$72.7 million with expenditure of \$33.4 million to 30 June 1990. It is within budgeted cost but slightly behind schedule due to difficulties with the procurement of equipment from overseas.

Construction of the Shell Filling Factory at St Mary's, New South Wales, has commenced at an estimated total cost of \$8.2 million with expenditure of \$2.6 million to 30 June 1990. It is ahead of schedule and slightly below its cost target.

Development of the Integrated Weapons Workshop at ADI's Garden Island Facility is 55 per cent complete. The estimated total cost is \$15.5 million with expenditure of \$10.3 million to 30 June 1990. While the work is on schedule, some costs have been slightly underestimated. The modernisation of facilities at Garden Island, with Stage Two estimates at \$40 million, and other building works, estimated at \$13.3 million, are substantially complete. Some cost overruns were experienced as a result of the formation of ADI and construction difficulties on a building with significant heritage value.

Working and Training Facilities

Development for the School of Military Engineering at Casula, at an estimated total cost of \$35.6 million with expenditure of \$24.1 million to 30 June 1990, is on schedule and approximately 70 per cent complete. Other work at Swanbourne in Western Australia, at an estimated total cost of \$30 million with expenditure of \$24.8 million to 30 June 1990, is 80 per cent complete. Some delays have occurred at Swanbourne due to contractual difficulties but overall the project is within cost targets.

Other significant projects include development of the Naval Communications School at HMAS Cerberus, at \$10.7 million, and other training facilities at HMAS Albatross, at \$14.1 million, and at East Sale, at \$26.5 million, and Wagga Wagga, at \$27.2 million, for the RAAF. The facilities at Nowra and East Sale have been completed and those at HMAS Cerberus and Wagga Wagga are progressing on schedule.

Environmental Protection and Public Safety

During the year, there were a number of Defence proposals which required an assessment of their environmental significance and clearance in compliance with the Environmental Protection (Impact of Proposals) Act 1974.

A draft environmental impact statement on the proposal to construct a bare-base airfield, RAAF Scherger, near Weipa on Cape York Peninsula was released on 28 February 1990 for a three month public review period. Preparation of a supplement, taking into account the comments received, has commenced and is expected to be completed by December 1990.

Preparation of a draft environmental impact statement on the proposed use of the Mt Bunday pastoral holding in the Northern Territory as a field firing range for 2 Cavalry Regiment is nearing completion.

Following the Prime Minister's announcement in December 1989 that the proposal to relocate the RAN fleet base from Sydney to Jervis Bay would not proceed, the draft environmental impact statement on the relocation of this facility and the naval armament complex was deferred, pending the outcome of a review of alternative sites directed by the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel. The extensive marine ecology studies of the Bay are continuing.

During the year, the Minister for the Arts, Sport, the Environment, Tourism and Territories requested that an environmental impact statement on the proposed development and use of the Townsville Field Training Area (the extended High Range) and a public environment report on the proposed over-the-horizon radar facility in Western Australia be prepared. Work on these is proceeding.

The Department of Arts, Sport, the Environment, Tourism and Territories determined that no environmental impact statement or public environmental report was required in relation to the over-the-horizon radar facility in Queensland. It did, however, recommend that certain conditions be met when implementing the proposal.

Projects relating to liquid and other trade waste at Maribymong and pollution control works at RAAF Richmond, RAAF Amberley, HMAS Albatross and Garden Island Facility are under construction. Work continued on demolition and clearance of the Albion Explosives Factory site in Melbourne. Planning for the decontamination of the site is continuing.

Property Acquisition and Disposal

In 1989-90, nine properties were acquired for Defence purposes at a total cost of \$10.5 million. A number of areas were acquired to provide buffer zones for existing Defence facilities at St. Mary's, Geraldton, Pearce, Oakey and Amberley. In addition, properties were acquired for Army Reserve depots at Oakleigh, Nambour and Stanthorpe. A joint service facility was also acquired in Alice Springs for Norforce and Jindalee project administration.

Working and Training Facilities

As part of the continuing rationalisation of Defence property holdings, a number of Defence properties were declared surplus and sold during 1989-90. Under Government agreed arrangements for the disposition of revenue from the sale of property, Defence retained \$18 million from sales. The properties sold included land at Laverton, Ingleburn and Holsworthy.

DEFENCE AND INDUSTRY: BUILDING MORE THAN CONFIDENCE

One of the success stories of recent years is the revitalisation of Australian industry's defence capabilities. A major rationalisation of Defence factories and dockyards, and more importantly, a fundamental change in attitude in defence-related industry at large have resulted in major benefits to both Defence and the Australian taxpayer.

Defence policy has helped to develop defence-related industry in two ways. Firstly, the defence factories in Government ownership were commercialised and given corporate-style structures. Secondly, defence procurement policies were directed to encourage sensible rationalisation in the private sector of areas vital to our defence effort.

On both fronts the objective was the same as for Australian industry overall: to create industry structures that are global in outlook, export oriented and internationally competitive.

Over the last year, in particular, we have seen some of the returns start to come in. Based on the premise that a strong economic and industrial infrastructure is the starting point of a strong national defence, current thinking is that defence contracts should dovetail with industry's civil commercial activities as much as possible. It is now accepted that, while a substantial commercial workload can provide a base from which to bid for Defence contracts, it is rarely true that Defence contracts alone can provide the basis of a viable business.

Defence has been noted for the size and diversity of its major capital equipment projects. These projects involve vast sums of money and require industrial techniques and capabilities that are often new to Australia. The flow-on effect is substantial. Consequently, how we manage these projects is critical not only to Defence but to Australian industry as a whole.

This year saw the last of the F/A-18 Hornet fighter aircraft roll off the production line in Melbourne. Defence, industry and government authorities all agree that this \$4.6 billion project was a resounding success. The project is one of the biggest ever peacetime acquisitions, with unique management arrangements and an industry program spread over 10 years; it still came in on schedule and to budget.

To some extent, the expertise and confidence generated by the Hornet program paved the way for the even more ambitious in-country construction programs now underway. The Anzac Ship project and, more particularly, the new submarine project have evolved into very demanding industry programs. The latter will test to the full our ability to manage innovatively the myriad factors involved in constructing the best conventional submarines in the world.

The Collins Class submarine is based on an overseas design adapted to exacting Australian specifications. Ownership of the local design work and related technology resides with Australia. The finished product will see between 70 and 80 per cent of the total outlay spent in Australia with Australian industry.

Although defence expenditure accounts for about one per cent of Australia's manufacturing output, its effect is quite dramatic in some sectors. For example the Hornet program has changed the Australian aerospace industry. It is a leaner and more efficient entity equipped with more up-to-date facilities and capabilities than it was 10 years ago. It has a new confidence to operate in the international market. ASTA's work in servicing Boeing 747s and Hawker's involvement as a partner with McDonnell Douglas in the experimental helicopter program are but two examples of this.

Overall, the proportion of new capital equipment sourced in Australia has doubled to about 60 per cent since the mid 1980s and Australian Industry Involvement is now the cornerstone of defence procurement. There are three elements of Australian Industry Involvement - competitive Australian production, designated work and offsets.

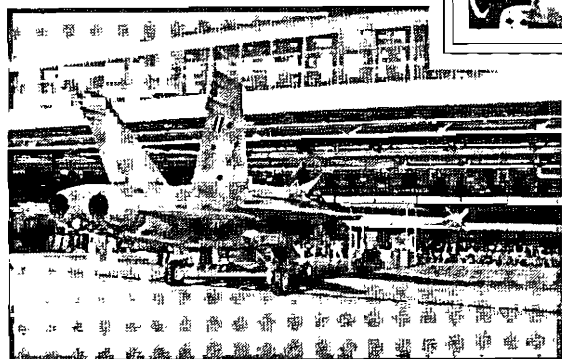
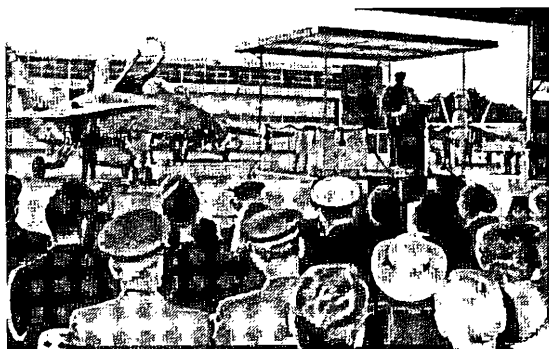
Competitive Australian production is self-explanatory; if Australian firms can provide a product that is competitive in terms of price, performance and quality, then they receive orders on their own merits.

Designated work is that part of a project which for strategic reasons must be done in Australia, even if it means paying a higher price for the equipment. The intention is for designated work to reduce in the future, just as it is intended to increase competitive Australian production.

Offsets are more complex. Essentially overseas suppliers are required to ensure that orders equal in value to a proportion of the imported cost, generally 30 per cent, of defence contracts are placed with Australian suppliers. In some cases these orders are related to the equipment to be supplied under the contract while in other cases orders may be unrelated but must exercise similar technologies.

Clearly the goal is to reduce reliance on offsets work in the long term. This demands that Australian industry be prepared to accept the challenge of building more defence equipment locally, to invest in the necessary equipment and facilities and to have the confidence to take on the role of prime contractor.

These new practices and attitudes are revolutionising the defence component of Australian industry. Defence-capable industry is now an essential element in our response to our strategic environment as well as being in tune with the economic requirements of the 1990s. In short it provides us with the basis upon which to maintain a credible self-reliant defence position as we move into the next century.



The final F/A-18 was delivered to the RAAF at a handover ceremony on 16 May 1990 at RAAF Fairbairn, ACT.

PROGRAM 3: DEFENCE FORCE RETIREMENT AND DEATH BENEFITS

OBJECTIVE

To provide members of the ADF with an occupational superannuation scheme.

DESCRIPTION

DFRDB Scheme

The Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits (DFRDB) Scheme was established by the *Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Act 1973* and is a contributory superannuation scheme. The Scheme began operating on 1 October 1972 and provides an occupational superannuation scheme for members who joined the ADF on or after 1 October 1972 and contributors to the Defence Forces Retirement Benefits (DFRB) Scheme on 30 September 1972 who transferred as contributors on 1 October 1972.

DFRB Scheme

The DFRB Scheme, established by the *Defence Forces Retirement Benefits Act 1948*, was closed to new contributors from 30 September 1972. The DFRB Scheme continues to provide the benefit entitlements of those members who retired from the ADF before 1 October 1972 and their spouses and children.

PERFORMANCE

Defence is responsible for policy matters relating to the DFRDB and DFRB Schemes and continually monitors Government standards and industry practices. The schemes are administered by the DFRDB Authority, assisted by the Australian Government Retirement Benefits Office. The Authority reports annually on the administration of the schemes to the Minister for Defence and the report is tabled in the Parliament.

Table 3.1: Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits - Resources Expended 1989-90

	<i>Outlays</i> \$m
Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits	562.839
Total	562.839

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Review of DFRDB

The then Minister for Defence Science and Personnel announced on 11 May 1989 that the DFRDB Scheme was to be reviewed.

The DFRDB Scheme was designed primarily to pay benefits to ADF members who left after 20 or more years service. As most members serve for less than 20 years they receive no interest on their own contributions and no benefit from the employer. These aspects are below current community standards. The DFRDB Scheme does not meet the minimum requirements for all public and private sector schemes set by the Occupational Superannuation Standards and no longer provides an incentive for those who wish to make a career in the armed services.

The review was conducted by an independent committee chaired by Sir William Cole, a former Secretary to the Department of Defence. The other members were Major General Derek Deighton (retired) and Mr John Carden, a retired businessman.

The Terms of Reference required the Committee to:

- report on the suitability of the DFRDB Scheme (and the three per cent productivity benefit) for the Commonwealth as employer, for the ADF and for members of the Defence Force;
- to recommend changes to the DFRDB Scheme or, if applicable, the creation of a new scheme, and to recommend a final form of application of the three per cent benefit; and
- the feasibility of providing serving members with the option of transferring to any new scheme.

The Review Committee was required to consider the particular nature of employment in the ADF, the extent to which the arrangements can be readily understood and the costs of any proposed arrangements. The Committee's recommendations also had to comply with the Government's decision that all public sector superannuation and retirement benefit schemes must comply with the Occupational Superannuation Standards, including the reasonable benefit limits.

The report, which recommended a new scheme, was handed to the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel on 26 June 1990 and is still being considered.

When receiving the report, the Minister said that the new scheme had been designed to provide modern superannuation conditions for service personnel which would be attractive to them. The new scheme would be known as the Military Superannuation and Benefits Scheme. It met the Occupational Superannuation Standards and made final arrangements for the 3 per cent superannuation productivity benefit.

He reiterated the guarantee, given by the Government when the review commenced, that present members would be able to choose whether to transfer to the new scheme or remain in the DFRDB Scheme.

Orphans Benefits

Legislation to implement the previously announced increase in orphan's benefits under both the DFRB and DFRDB Act was introduced to the Parliament on 29 November 1989 but not debated.

The legislation was re-introduced on 16 May 1990. The increase of \$4 300 will take effect from 13 July 1989.

PROGRAM 4: DEFENCE SUPPORT

OBJECTIVE

To contribute to increased defence self-reliance by providing and maintaining within the Defence organisation specialist skills, services and resources to support Australia's capacity for its independent defence.

DESCRIPTION

Increasing defence self-reliance requires specialist support in a range of areas not directly related to combat power. These include international defence cooperation, scientific and technological support and the establishment of relevant production and manufacturing capacities in association with private industry.

Table 4.1: Defence Support - Resources Expended 1989-90

		<i>Outlays</i>
		<i>\$m</i>
4.1	Natural Disasters and Civil Defence	7.800
4.2	Defence Housing	264.091
4.3	Defence Cooperation	74.200
4.4	Defence Production	178.505
4.5	Defence Science and Technology	214.582
Total Defence Support		739.178

SUBPROGRAM 4.1: NATURAL DISASTERS & CIVIL DEFENCE

OBJECTIVE

To promote and support an effective national counter disaster and core civil defence capability, to coordinate Commonwealth Government physical assistance within Australia in time of disaster and act as the operational agent for the Australian International Development Assistance Bureau within the South West Pacific and Papua New Guinea.

DESCRIPTION

The Natural Disasters Organisation (NDO) has its headquarters in Canberra and includes the Australian Counter Disaster College (ACDC) at Mt Macedon, Victoria. Most of the annual NDO budget is directed towards the support of the states and territories by way of:

- support programs;
- training in disaster management;
- educational programs to enhance the level of public awareness, particularly of disaster prone communities; and
- operation of the National Emergency Operations Centre to provide information and coordinate support to states and territories.

PERFORMANCE

The NDO achieves its objectives by:

- ensuring that the Australian population is aware of the hazards that can affect their communities and how to cope with them;
- supporting the development of adequate counter disaster and core civil defence capabilities within Australia;
- ensuring rapid, effective Commonwealth response to disasters; and
- acting as an agent for the Australian International Development Assistance Bureau by providing assistance in disaster response and preparedness to the countries of the South West Pacific and Papua New Guinea.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Counter Disaster Operations

The NDO, through the National Emergency Operations Centre, was involved this year, both nationally and overseas, in providing assistance following a number of significant emergencies or disasters.

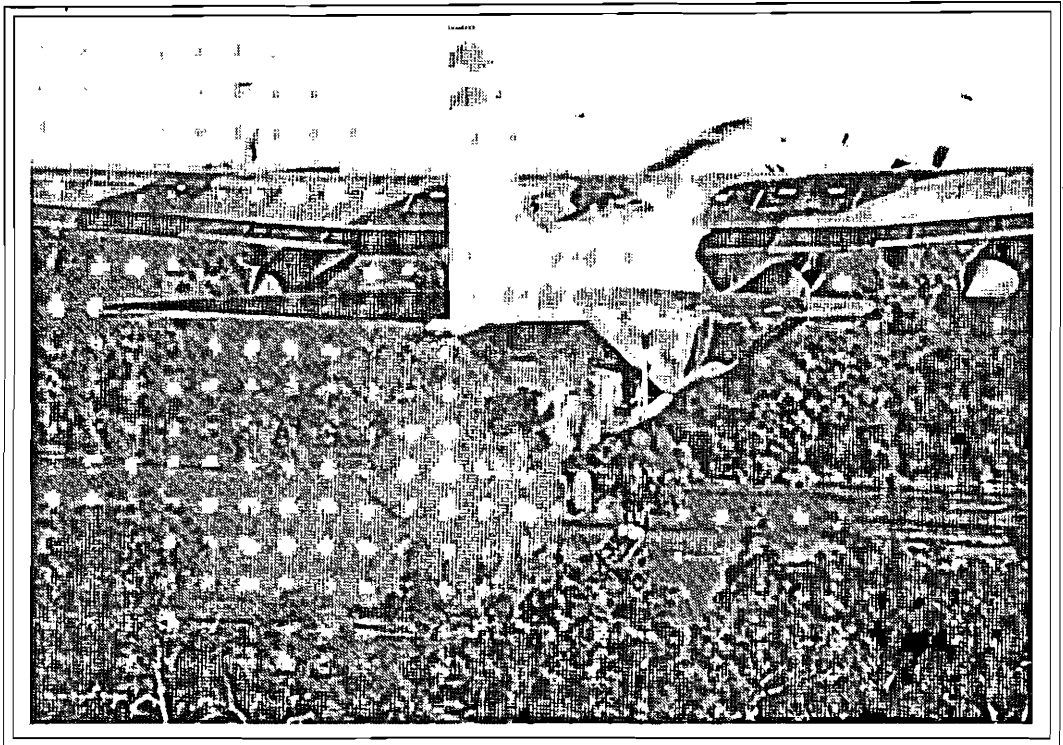
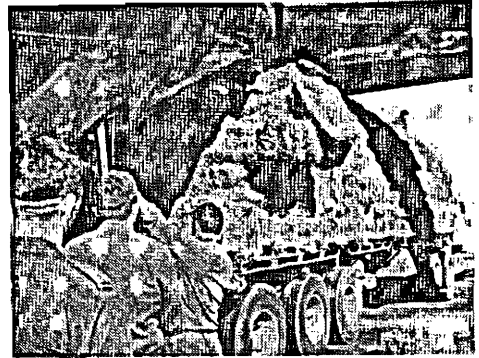
Newcastle Earthquake

Initial earthquake assistance was provided directly by ADF personnel from the local Service establishments. Further requests for eight Army engineer assessment teams and 100 NDO tarpaulins were also met. The NSW State Emergency Service judged the provision of ADF assistance to have been effective.

Flooding in Queensland and New South Wales

The widespread flooding in western Queensland and New South Wales, which first began on 13 April 1990, taxed the disaster response capabilities of the Commonwealth and both States. Even in July,

Members of 2 Airfield Defence Squadron loading fodder on to a C-130 at Narromine, NSW, during the flooding in April 1990.



A C-130 of 36 Squadron dropping the fodder to isolated stock near Narromine.

the effects of the flooding were still being experienced at Condobolin in south-west New South Wales. Overall, these floods were probably the worst experienced since the early 1970s.

The Commonwealth, through the NDO, responded to 95 requests for assistance. These covered medical evacuations, resupply of food and essential stores, the evacuation and transfer of personnel and fodder drops, and included the evacuation of Nyngan by ADF and commercial helicopters.

Tropical Cyclone Ivor

Although the local Townsville SES bore the brunt of the flooding problems caused by the cyclone, the NDO provided 10 high clearance Army unimogs.

Tropical Cyclone Nancy

With the flooding to the Hunter River valley that followed Tropical Cyclone Nancy in February 1990, the NDO assisted by issuing tarpaulins and plastic sheeting from the Disaster Earmark Store at Dubbo.

Tropical Cyclone Ofa

This cyclone was the worst to hit Western Samoa and the surrounding region in one hundred years. It warranted major responses from Australia, New Zealand and the United States, as well as significant monetary donations from other countries. The cyclone caused massive damage; largely the result of a high tide combined with storm surge which wiped out entire coastal villages and the road system on several islands.

ADF support included the deployment of one Iroquois helicopter and five C130 flights with provisions such as shelter material, collapsible water containers, mosquito netting, chain saws and medical and food supplies. A diving team from the North Queensland Emergency Response Group lent assistance and meteorological equipment was provided to replace the local meteorological office, which had been washed out to sea.

Modest assistance was also provided to Tuvalu in the form of shelter material, food and urgent medical supplies. What seemed to be a minor response proved to be life saving and has boosted relations with Tuvalu considerably.

The NDO also met an urgent request from Vanuatu for a mobile air traffic control facility following the destruction of the control tower at Bauer Field, Port Vila, by fire. The equipment was provided by the Civil Aviation Authority.

Disaster Awareness and Information

Features of the 1989-90 program were the publication of:

- the revised *Australia Counter-Disaster Handbook* to explain Australian counter disaster arrangements to the authorities and people involved in responding;
- the new *Surviving Cyclones* pamphlet, jointly produced by the NDO and the Bureau of Meteorology to inform the people living in cyclone vulnerable areas of the hazards and appropriate responses;
- a new *Earthquake Awareness* pamphlet, which includes a special section on Newcastle, to provide advice on earthquake hazards and how to react; and
- the first two major publications of the new operations and training *Australian Emergency Manuals* series. These were entitled *Disaster Rescue* and *Land Search Operations*.

The NDO continues jointly to fund the emergency/disaster information pages in Telecom directories in all states and territories. Progress was also made in encouraging corporate sponsorship and joint venture funding. BHP, for example, contributed substantially towards production costs for the *Disaster Rescue Manual*.

A total of \$202 000 was spent on awareness and operations and training publications in 1989-90.

Support for State and Territory Emergency Services

Assistance to state and territory emergency services valued at over \$4 million was provided through Commonwealth programs managed by the NDO. The salaries of 80 professional counter disaster

officers, who assist local authorities, help organise and train local volunteer groups and provide public counter disaster awareness, are subsidised by the Commonwealth. Building subsidies are also made available to local units as is basic rescue and communications equipment to supplement that provided through self-help or local and state arrangements.

All three programs are highly valued by state and territory emergency services. From a Commonwealth viewpoint, they represent good value for money as they directly contribute to the effectiveness of local disaster response agencies.

International Decade for Natural Disaster Reduction

This is a United Nations initiative. The Prime Minister, in accepting Australia's participation, announced the formation of an Australian coordination committee to be chaired by the Director General NDO. The International Decade was launched in Australia at the Australian Counter Disaster College on 11-13 February 1990 by the then Minister for Defence Science and Personnel.

The aims for the International Decade are to reduce the loss of life and property damage from natural disasters, especially in developing countries. Australian activities will focus on Papua New Guinea and the South West Pacific region. They will concentrate on improving public awareness and the level of counter disaster preparation to reduce the dependence of countries in the region on overseas responses.

Training

A total of 38 courses, seminars, working parties and workshops were conducted by the Australian Counter Disaster College, Mt Macedon. These activities catered for over 1 000 people from all levels of government and from other agencies with roles in disaster preparedness, response and recovery. As required by the formal College Charter, these activities are designed "to contribute to the development of an efficient Australian counter disaster capability" and the College's annual program is developed in conjunction with the states and territories.



Earthquake damage, Newcastle.

SUBPROGRAM 4.2: DEFENCE HOUSING

OBJECTIVE

To support the Defence Housing Authority in the provision of adequate housing for Defence personnel (Service personnel and civilians where appropriate) and to provide adequate levels of financial assistance for accommodation for eligible ADF personnel.

DESCRIPTION

Defence housing activities include support for the Defence Housing Authority through the payment of full commercial rent for houses from the Authority's stock used for Defence purposes. In addition, within its overall priorities, the Department of Defence allocates funds on a loan basis to assist with the Authority's capital works program. The Government has committed itself to ensuring that the Authority has available \$750 million for capital outlays over a 10 year period. The other element of this subprogram covers rental assistance to eligible ADF Force personnel occupying private accommodation.

The Defence Housing subprogram comprises a Defence Housing Services component covering payments, in the form of loan and rental funds, to the Defence Housing Authority to construct, acquire, lease, refurbish, dispose, and maintain all Defence housing and an Other Accommodation Services component covering other expenditures related to the objective of providing accommodation for eligible ADF personnel.

The Defence Housing Authority has been established to provide the entrepreneurial skills that will enable the ADF to be housed at community standards. Four Defence representatives sit on the governing Board of the Authority.

PERFORMANCE

Performance is measured by:

- providing the necessary loan funds to meet the Government's 10 year Defence housing commitment and the timely payment of rent to the Authority;
- the return, in the quality and quantity of housing, on the allocated Defence funding to the Authority;
- satisfying Defence personnel with the quality of Defence provided housing; and
- the cost effectiveness of housing and other Defence accommodation arrangements.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

During the year \$165.16 million was paid to the Authority for rental of married quarters from the Authority's housing stock. Included in this amount were some minor payments for excess water and other related charges. The Department also provided \$88.07 million, including an interest supplementation of \$14.21 million, to the Authority from the Government's funds commitment of \$750 million over ten years. A program has been established, in consultation with the Defence Housing Authority, to give effect to the Government's requirement that the Authority progressively substitute itself as the lessee of rented housing for members of the ADF.

Review of the Group Rent Scheme

The Group Rent Scheme is still under review. A report on the review is expected by the end of this calendar year. This review is examining the effectiveness of the existing scheme in setting rents that reflect the overall quality and amenity of the Defence housing stock as it is improved. The review is also looking to see whether the scheme establishes fair differentials in rent for those members occupying poorer quality housing.

SUBPROGRAM 4.3: DEFENCE COOPERATION

OBJECTIVE

To promote Australia's security interests in the Asia Pacific region, especially the South Pacific and South East Asia, and to facilitate cooperative defence activities with countries in those regions.

DESCRIPTION

The Defence Cooperation subprogram is structured around five components: Papua New Guinea; Asean; South Pacific; Other Regional Activities; and Facilities for Training in Australia. To meet Defence Cooperation objectives, activities are developed in terms of the following criteria:

- The contribution activities make to the development of regional defence capabilities which reinforce our mutual strategic interest.
- The degree to which activities promote cooperation between the ADF and regional forces through the exchange of expertise, information and experience in the defence field by training, combined exercises, study visits and exchanges.

PERFORMANCE

The effectiveness and efficiency of activities under the Defence Cooperation subprogram can be measured against the broad objective of strengthening common regional interests and stability. The effectiveness of Defence Cooperation activities is regularly evaluated in Australia and through annual formal talks with regional countries to ensure that activities remain timely, relevant and meet mutual requirements. The efficiency of the subprogram can be measured in terms of the extent to which projects, training and other activities meet planning targets.

Evaluation mechanisms for Defence Cooperation include:

- joint reviews with participating countries to ensure activities are timely, relevant and meet mutual requirements;
- reports by ADF and Departmental personnel engaged in activities; and
- regular review by ADF and Departmental personnel responsible for administering programs.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Papua New Guinea

Defence cooperation with Papua New Guinea assists with the maintenance of Australia's position as that country's primary defence partner and assists in the development of the capabilities of the Papua New Guinea Defence Force (PNGDF). The principal achievements in our defence cooperation efforts with Papua New Guinea during 1989-90 are outlined below.

Training Assistance to the PNGDF

Agreement was reached between the two Governments in January 1990 for Australian Army personnel to assist with the training of an additional 600 recruits to the PNGDF. This is expected to result in the expansion of the force by 450 after training. It was also agreed that personnel exchanges between the ADF and PNGDF will be established in a range of areas relevant to the development of the PNGDF. This reflects a new and more mature relationship between the two forces, although the loan of ADF personnel for specialist support in areas such as the PNGDF Air Transport Squadron will continue.



Squadron Leader Daryl Redding (left foreground) and Lieutenant Peter Ansphil, a pilot on exchange from the PNGDF (right), are pictured with property owner Jim O'Brien (centre) and officers from the NSW Department of Agriculture and Fisheries planning aerial fodder drops in the Walgett area.

Individual and group training of PNGDF personnel continued during the year. A total of 430 trainees undertook courses in Australia while other training, such as development courses for junior non-commissioned officers, was given in Papua New Guinea. Other assistance continued to be provided in the form of loan personnel in PNGDF units, project personnel and the maintenance of formed units covering civil engineering and survey activities; as well as continuing assistance to the Royal Papua New Guinea Constabulary in communications.

Support for Equipment and Infrastructure Projects

Construction of airfield facilities at Port Moresby commenced in May 1990 as part of the project to relocate the PNGDF Air Transport Squadron from Lae. Design and construction assistance was provided for a wharf as part of the upgrade to patrol boat support facilities at Manus Island. Apart from provision of ongoing training and an advisory team, our involvement with Papua New Guinea through the Pacific Patrol Boat project was completed when a fourth patrol boat was provided in July 1989. At Papua New Guinea's request, four Iroquois helicopters were provided for PNGDF use on Bougainville. Defence also provided assistance with facilities for ammunition storage.

Asean Countries

Defence cooperation with Asean countries is designed to promote common security interests with those countries and to encourage and assist with the development of their defence self-reliance. The principal achievements in our defence cooperation efforts with Asean countries during 1989-90 are outlined below.

Training Assistance

Training assistance provided to Asean countries during 1989-90 contributed to the development of their defence capabilities through the provision of in-country advisory and consultancy assistance in the areas of specialist service skills, technical trade skills, defence science, language training and individual and group training of Asean personnel in Australia.

Assistance to Malaysia included the Australian Army Project Team Malaysia (11 Army advisers and one civilian adviser) to assist in the development of the Malaysian Army's conventional warfare capability. The provision of four exchange officer positions (two Army, one Navy and one Air Force) provided an opportunity to enhance the level of understanding between the Malaysian Armed Forces and the ADF and a vehicle for mutual exchanges of skills and knowledge. Defence science cooperation included the long term attachment of a Defence Science Adviser to the Defence Research Centre, Kuala Lumpur, to contribute to the development of a Malaysian defence science capability.

Assistance to Thailand included the provision of technical and management consultancy by two advisers attached to the Armed Forces Vehicle Rebuild Workshop to contribute to improving the productivity of that unit. A Defence Science Adviser was attached to the Thai Supreme Command Headquarters to assist with the development of the Thai defence science research capability. In addition, a language adviser provided advice to the Royal Thai Armed Forces directed at improving the language capabilities of Thai students attending courses in Australia.

Individual and group training of Asean personnel in Australia during the year was provided for 209 Malaysians, 46 Singaporeans, 200 Thais and 109 Filipinos. Reciprocal training and study visits were made on a wide range of matters of mutual interest.

South Pacific

Cooperative defence activities with South Pacific countries demonstrate a continuing Australian interest in the strategic and security concerns of the region and assist in encouraging South Pacific countries to regard Australia as a primary source of defence assistance and a natural participant in consideration of regional security issues.

In 1989-90 defence cooperative activities continued to focus on developing regional maritime surveillance capabilities. Pacific Patrol Boats were handed over to the Cook Island (September 1989), Tonga (October 1989 and June 1990) and the Federated States of Micronesia (April 1990). During the year the project was expanded to include the Marshall Islands which will receive one boat in June 1991.

Australia continued to provide individual and group training, both in Australia and in the South Pacific countries and advisory assistance in the operation and maintenance of patrol boat and in survey and hydrography. Australia also pursued other activities under Defence Cooperation which concentrated on infrastructure development in the South Pacific countries including work towards the construction of wharves, maritime surveillance centres and other maritime facilities in the Solomon Islands, Tonga and Western Samoa and the upgrade of barracks and other facilities in Vanuatu.

Other Regional Activities

Through involvement in regional activities Australia is able to promote contacts between defence and security force representatives of regional countries and encourage open discussion on defence and security issues of mutual interest.

Activities undertaken in 1989-90 included the attendance at Joint and single Service Staff Colleges in Australia of students from Pakistan and Bangladesh and familiarisation visits to Australia by overseas Staff College groups from India and Pakistan.

By enabling ideas and perceptions on defence and security issues to be shared in a learning environment, such contacts usefully contribute to our goal of encouraging mutual understanding of strategic interests and defence policies amongst countries in the wider Asia Pacific region.

Facilities for Training in Australia

The provision of equipment and facilities at ADF training establishments enhances the capacity of the ADF to provide training assistance to regional countries and at the same time provides the Services with the capacity to expand their training base if necessary.

The principal achievement in 1989-90 was the provision of personal computers and associated equipment to RAN junior officer, navigation and diving schools and the Army Aviation Centre to improve quality, streamline the preparation of course material and provide a facility for self-paced instruction for overseas students.



The Minister for Defence Senator Robert Ray, President John Haglclgim of the Federated States of Micronesia and Commander Mathias Mangmog, at the handover of the patrol boat Palakir to the Federated States of Micronesia on 28 April 1990.

SUBPROGRAM 4.4: DEFENCE PRODUCTION

OBJECTIVE

To foster an industrial base for the development, production and maintenance of stores and equipment where timely and independent indigenous supply is of prime strategic importance to Australia's defence.

DESCRIPTION

Since the creation of Australian Defence Industries Pty Ltd (ADI) in May 1989, the Defence Production subprogram has covered two aspects of the transition. These are costs associated with the rationalisation of munitions manufacturing capability and the costs of corporatisation. The management of strategic capabilities in industry, previously reported under Defence Production, is now managed as part of Industry Involvement. A report on this aspect is given under subprogram 2.2.

Capability rationalisation provides for the costs associated with the closure of two munitions factories, Albion Explosives Factory and the Explosives Factory Maribyrnong, and the cost of decontamination, demolition and preparation of those sites to meet local and state regulations. Capabilities of these two factories are being relocated primarily to the Mulwala Explosives Factory.

Costs of corporatisation include:

- payment for the accrued credits of recreation, long service and sick leave of former Commonwealth employees who transferred to the new company;
- adjustment of a number of contracts and orders in place in former Office of Defence Production factories at transition date, but for which completion under existing conditions would have resulted in a loss to the company;
- finalisation of contracts placed on industry on behalf of the factories; and
- costs associated with development of the new company including the introduction of new systems, employment of consultants, legal fees and accommodation.

PERFORMANCE

These elements are short-term in nature. Performance is measured against the transition project milestones in terms of cost and schedule. The negotiation of an agreement on the conduct and funding of the respective programs has been one of this year's achievements.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

At Albion, all production has ceased and removal of plant is well advanced. Production at the Explosives Factory Maribyrnong continued as planned during 1989-90 but is due to cease in August 1990 on completion of existing orders. A program for relocation of plant to various ADI facilities continued as planned during the year.

Decontamination and demolition at Albion proceeded according to plan but an acceptable method of decontamination of some areas of the site is yet to be agreed. A start on demolition has been made at the Explosives Factory Maribyrnong. Site preparation in both factories will continue to late 1992.

SUBPROGRAM 4.5: DEFENCE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

OBJECTIVE

To contribute to the development and implementation of Australian defence policies through the application of science and technology, including the provision of assistance to the Defence organisation and Australian industry.

DESCRIPTION

The Defence Science and Technology Organisation (DSTO) contributes to the solution of scientific and technological problems of the Defence organisation and relevant Australian industries. It develops and maintains a base of skill and knowledge in defence science and technology and fosters scientific and technological expertise in industry and tertiary institutions, concentrating on areas of priority to the Australian strategic and natural environment.

PERFORMANCE

Each year the Chief Defence Scientist publishes the DSTO Report which summarises the major achievements of the organisation against its corporate objectives.

Performance in each subcomponent is reviewed by the Chief of Defence Scientist in June each year against the plan presented at the previous review. Accountability for performance and use of resources in the current year is assessed and future plans are examined. The priority areas for achievement are:

- scientific and technical advice on defence policy matters and on selection of new defence equipment and systems;
- timely contribution to the solution of scientific and technological problems of the Defence organisation and relevant Australian industries;
- the conception of new equipment or systems of potential value to Australia's defence;
- assistance to appropriate non-Defence bodies, when Defence priorities allow, to foster a viable Australian defence industry;
- development of an adequate in-house base of skills and knowledge in defence science and technology, and the fostering of relevant scientific and technical expertise in industry and tertiary institutions; and
- commercialisation of high technology innovations.

Technical reviews are also conducted throughout each year to examine the scientific and engineering quality of research in each component of the Defence Science and Technology subprogram and its relevance for Defence.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Policy Initiatives and Corporate Management

DSTO Laboratories Reorganisation

A five year re-profiling of staff is being undertaken to increase the number of scientists and research engineers and to reduce the number of support staff. As natural wastage rates have been insufficient to realise the number of staff losses required to support the re-profiling, Public Service Commission approval and union agreement were obtained to offer voluntary retrenchment packages to 194 staff at DSTO Salisbury; 166 staff accepted the offers at a cost this financial year of \$5.3 million. The annual saving in salaries of \$4.2 million will help finance additional professional staff.

DSTO Central Office Reorganisation

Further changes have occurred during the reporting period. The Australian Ordnance Council and Special Undertakings Branch, previously the responsibility of DSTO, were transferred to Headquarters Australian Defence Force and International Policy Division respectively. During the year, a consultant was engaged to propose a more effective organisation for Central Office and the recommendations are now being implemented. The recommendations included a merger of corporate and resource planning, allocation and review functions; a heightened focus on science policy; the establishment of a DSTO-wide management information system; and an emphasis on staff development and career planning.

Industrial Relations

To improve consultative mechanisms, the Defence Consultative Council agreed that the Regional Consultative Committee at Salisbury should be replaced by a consultative committee at each laboratory. The Council also agreed to reactivate the DSTO Subcommittee which has now met twice. Already there is evidence of improvement in the level of consultation taking place.

Public Relations

To raise its community profile, DSTO has increased its participation in such mass appeal exhibitions as the Sydney Royal Easter Show and achieved results from exhibiting at specialist forums such as Aidex 89. Continuing activities include media liaison, advertising, newsletters, publications, displays and events. *DSTO Industry Brief*, a monthly newsletter, was initiated during the year to provide information to a targeted audience about DSTO innovations and commercial opportunities. Each laboratory is responsible for its own public relations program to promote its professional work. Activities have continued to project an image of DSTO's excellence and relevance and to focus on a theme that the Organisation's strengths are based on the quality of its people.

Minister's Award

The Minister for Defence Science and Personnel's award recognises outstanding contributions to the achievement of DSTO's objectives. The 1989 winner was Dr Fred Earl of the Surveillance Research Laboratory for the frequency management system for DSTO's Jindalee over-the-horizon radar. The frequency management system automatically determines the best frequencies for the radar to use to get maximum return from the target with minimum noise interference.

Policy Advice

Jindalee Over-the-horizon Radar Network As part of the project, the High Frequency Radar Division of the Surveillance Research Laboratory (SRL) has provided support to the Jindalee Project Office with the vetting and compilation of specifications, review and steering of contractors' studies, advice on risk and timescale implications of the capabilities offered by the tenderers and assessment of propagation relevant to over-the-horizon radar performance at nominated sites within Australia.

F-111C Avionics Update The Aeronautical Research Laboratory (ARL) has provided technical support to RAAF on the critical tendering and source selection phases of the projects to update the analogue avionics systems of the F-111.

Communications Architectures The Communications Division of the Electronics Research Laboratory (ERL) has conducted a major study on future communications architectures. This study covers the provision of secure, survivable communications with connectivity from the core networks to elements of the deployed force. These concepts are expected to have a major impact on HQADF's planning of defence communications into the next century.

Satellite Communications ERL's Communications Division is providing technical expertise to the steering committee which is studying the options for a defence-owned satellite communications facility.

Chemical Weapons Convention The Materials Research Laboratory (MRL) has provided significant input to negotiations towards a global Chemical Weapons Convention. Expert technical information and advice have been given to numerous regional and international disarmament forums, including the Geneva Conference on Disarmament, Australia Group meetings in Paris and the Government/Industry Conference on Chemical Weapons held in Canberra in September 1989.

Problem Solving and Specialist Support

Weapon Systems The Ordnance Systems Division of the Weapons Systems Research Laboratory (WSRL) has reported on options for improving the gun and ammunition aspects of the Navy's 20 mm Phalanx weapon and on new sighting and aiming systems required to meet the operational requirements of the Army's 84 mm and 106 mm weapons.

Improved Combustion System for T56 Engine Modifications proposed by ARL to the combustion system of the T56 engine have been tested and found effective in flight. Modified engines fitted to a RAAF P-3C aircraft were demonstrated to yield a large reduction in exhaust emissions together with some reduction in fuel consumption.

F/A-18 International Structural Test Project ARL is undertaking for the RAAF a major fatigue test program on the F/A-18 in collaboration with the Canadian Government. The fatigue test of the wing and centre-fuselage will be undertaken by Canada, whilst the empennage and rear fuselage will be tested by ARL. Good progress has been made on the flight loads program and in the test-rig development. The rear-fuselage test specimen has now been received at ARL.

Radar Warning Receivers During 1989-90, ERL's Electronic Warfare Division combined with Australian industry in carrying out an enhancement study on the rear warning receiver on the F-111 aircraft. The Division also carried out an evaluation study on the radar warning receiver which is installed on the RAN's FFGs. The aim of this study is to improve performance of the receiver in Australia's region of interest.

Mine Warfare MRL is carrying out mine warfare simulation studies to assess the suitability of operational models for the RAN Mine Warfare Systems Centre. Simulation models have been obtained from the United States and United Kingdom to model single ship/mine engagements and also to model minefield planning and sweeping operations. The models are being applied to the study of new mining concepts for specified RAN requirements and to the planning and evaluation of mine countermeasures exercises.

F-111 Aircraft Maintenance MRL investigation and advice on the failure of coatings used in the integral fuel tank and involvement in preparations for the second deseal/reseal round have provided significant contributions to the continued successful operation of the F-111 fleet.

Marine Fouling Investigations MRL investigations will help provide the Navy with antifouling coatings that are effective yet have a minimum impact on the environment. MRL is also developing an effective system for combating the fouling of sea water cooling systems in Oberon Class and Collins Class submarines.

Composite Crack Patching of FFG-7 Frigates Novel carbon fibre composite reinforcement technology is being developed at MRL to arrest and prevent cracking problems prevalent in the FFG aluminium superstructure. Composite repair patching will replace short-term weld repair techniques.

Laser Protection A computer model has been developed at MRL to predict the effect of laser-induced flash blindness of a pilot behind an aircraft canopy. The suitability of commercial and experimental goggles and visors for laser eye protection has also been assessed.

Doubly Labelled Water MRL Tasmania is pioneering, in Australia, the use of water labelled with stable isotopes in energy expenditure studies under field conditions. The technique is employed in studies on food intake and nutritional needs of Service personnel. It is an effective way of taking into account the effects on nutrition of stress and activity during field operations.

Anechoic Coatings for Submarines Recent trials of MRL developed anechoic coatings have shown extremely good adhesion to the submarine and strong resistance to fouling by marine organisms.

Periscope Refurbishment As a result of optical technology transfer and assistance from SRL to industry, the RAN is now having periscope optics refurbished in Australia at considerable savings in time and cost compared with returning them to the United Kingdom manufacturer.

K89 - Jindalee SRL's High Frequency Radar Division staff provided support to Service groups regarding the use of Jindalee in the exercise. This support included planning, assistance during the exercise and subsequent data analysis.

K89 - Air Defence Studies A team of 38 staff from WSRL participated in the exercise. Maritime effectiveness studies highlighted the problems associated with air defence of ships at sea and anti-submarine warfare operations. An initial evaluation was made of the ability of Army gunners to engage aircraft targets using ground-to-air RBS 70 missiles and studies of the information flow in and out of Land Headquarters Darwin were conducted. The data collected during the exercise will be used to refine WSRL's support in these areas.

Stack Fragmentation Trials In May 1990, Directorate of Trials detonated 75 tonnes of TNT at Woomera to test a Nato-approved design for buildings to be used to store explosives and to test an Australian-designed storehouse for its effectiveness in providing protection against a nearby explosion. WSRL's Range Measurements Branch supported the trial evaluation. Up to 200 new storehouses will be needed in Australia over the next 10 years to replace ageing facilities and those being relocated.

New Equipment Development

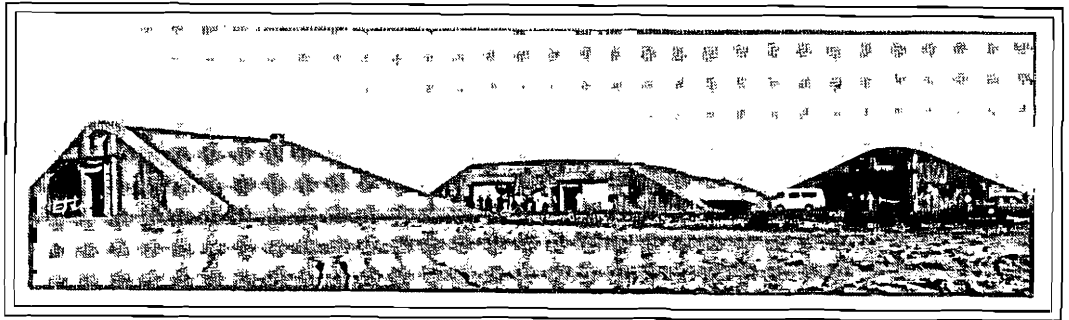
Towed Decoy ERL's Electronic Warfare Division has tested a low cost radar decoy which is towed behind a military aircraft to seduce incoming radar guided missiles away from the aircraft itself. Research and trials to date indicate that the concept, known as *Project Kalili*, which is aboriginal for 'to send away', is viable and that there may be a world defence market for such a product.

Secure Communications ERL's Communications Division has conceived and developed an item of secure communications equipment which is now in service. This task involved more than 200 000 lines of software code.

Compact Tactical Message Switch The Army has selected ERL's Compact Tactical Message Switch for use in the Project Parakeet tactical trunking system. Australian industry is currently producing three prototypes for the Army.

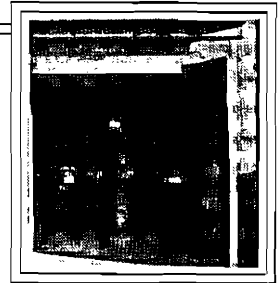
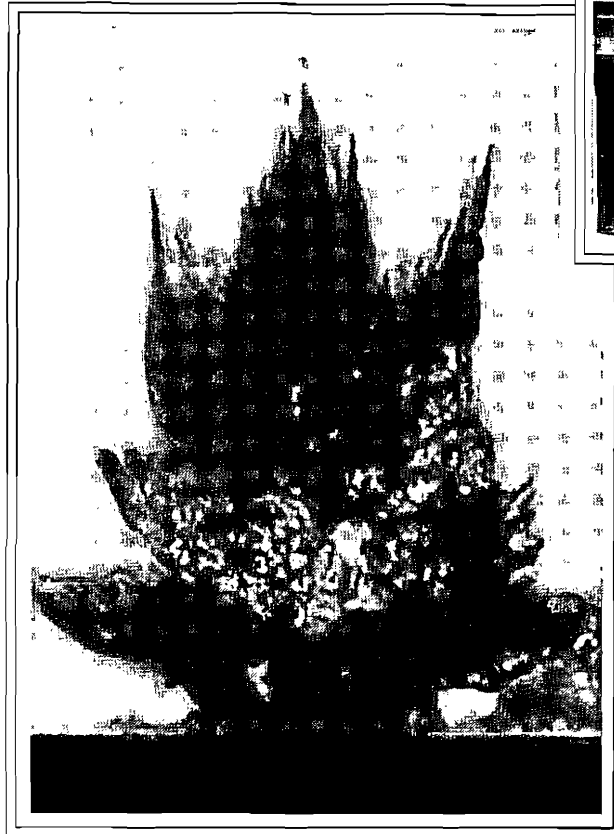
Mine Countermeasures Equipment MRL has conducted successful operational trials on the underwater explosive-shock performance of the dyad magnets and drone boats in the Australian influence mine sweeping array.

Stirling Engine One candidate for an Air Independent Propulsion system for the new Collins Class submarine is the Stirling engine. MRL will install and commission a Kockums Marine AB V4-275 Stirling engine to determine its capabilities and durability.



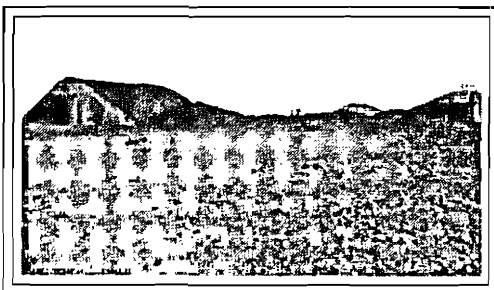
The stack fragmentation trial investigated the break-up of a Nato-designed storehouse and the blast and fragment hazards as a result of the explosion. It was also an opportunity to test a new low-cost Australian designed storehouse to see how well it would protect its contents in the event of a nearby explosion.

Top: the explosives storehouses at the trial site near Woomera. The central igloo is the Nato storehouse where the explosives were stacked. Surrounding it to the front, side and rear are the Australian storehouses.



Above: wiring the 20 000 WW II anti-tank mines used for the explosion to detonate simultaneously was a feat in itself.

Bottom Left: The Australian designed storehouses remained relatively unscathed. Right: the trial manager, Major Darryl Stuart, stands in the crater holding a piece of the reinforced concrete structure.



Diamond-like Coatings SRL has completed a facility for the coating of optical components with a hard carbon film which confers diamond-like qualities of hardness and durability to optical surfaces. Significant benefits are being realised in the protection of infra-red optical systems exposed to harsh environments.

Project Nulka WSRL's Ordnance Systems Division has developed an interim fire control system for Project Nulka. The system is being manufactured by AWA and will be used in forthcoming Nulka trials.

Extensive configuration aerodynamic development on the Nulka vehicle has been conducted for AWA in the ARL low-speed wind tunnel. Also, ARL's Aircraft Systems Division has completed the update on the mathematical model of the Nulka control system and several investigations have since been executed. ERL's Electronic Warfare Division has continued development of a computer-based system effectiveness model for predicting the performance of the decoy system, and has developed extensive test equipment for evaluating the performance of the United States developed payload in the joint trials of the Nulka system.

Technology Base Development

Jindalee Over-the-horizon Radar In support of the development of the Jindalee wide area surveillance capability, SRL's research into HF propagation has required development of equipment to support investigations into path loss measurements and frequency management during periods of high sunspot number. Other research work included further development of signal processing, tracking and displays.

Combustion Test Facility ARL's capabilities for experimental R&D in combustion for flight propulsion have been greatly enhanced by the completion of the new Combustion Test Facility. It provides the capability to represent accurately the environment of combustion system components in contemporary military gas turbine engines.

Stress Analysis of Composites The technique of measuring applied stress in metals by monitoring the thermal emissions resulting from alternating stress fields is well established. ARL has made a major step forward by successfully applying this technique to the measurement of stresses in composite materials.

Ship Noise and Vibration A noise and vibration capability has been set up at MRL to investigate conventional and novel means of minimising the acoustic emissions from RAN ships and submarines.

Light Armour Developments Mathematical models of the behaviour of composite, ceramic and metallic light armour have been developed to tailor armour protection systems for critical areas in ships and armoured vehicles.

Trustworthy Computing ERL has established a new capability for assessing the trustworthiness of computer systems. Initial application areas include security for command support systems and safety critical software for mine fuzes and launch systems.

Command Support Systems Research Facility A new Command Support Systems Group has been established at the Fern Hill Technology Park in Canberra by ERL's Information Technology Division. The facility is involving DSTO, the ADF, industry and, possibly, academic institutions in forming a research test bed close to ADF operations to develop and evaluate command and control concepts given a high priority by the ADF.

Communications Research ERL's Communications Division is establishing an important new capability in the study of real-time performance, of communications links and methods of coping with degradation problems.

Mine Warfare To support high priority Defence requirements, MRL is undertaking studies on sea mines. This entails work on multi-influence sensors, environmental parameters, target and background signatures and advanced signal processing together with the development of mine counter-measures techniques involving target signature control, remotely operated vehicles, minesweeping and sonar-based minehunting.

Chemical Sensors An investigation into chemical sensors for detecting trace chemicals of Defence interest has been initiated at MRL. Current activities concern fluorescence and phosphorescence techniques and have applications in areas of pollution monitoring, chemical agent detection and environmental health and safety aspects of chemicals and materials used by Service personnel.

Magnetisation of Submarine Steel Hull Work on the magnetisation of submarine steels due to magnetic fields and stress fluctuations will lead to procedures to minimise the signature of the Collins Class submarine.

Towed Acoustic Arrays WSRL is preparing an instrumented streamer which will be fitted to a Oberon Class submarine for sea trials in October 1990 to collect performance data on towed arrays.

Simulated Operations WSRL has installed an experimental version of the Janus wargame system. It will be used to develop wargaming software in support of a full installation at the Army War Game Centre, Sydney.

Interaction with Civil Science Organisations

DSTO maintained strong links with civil science during 1989-90, providing members or observers on 20 external scientific boards, committees and panels. In so doing, DSTO plays an important role in the formulation of national scientific research policy and in the coordination of research within Australia into a wide range of relevant disciplines. In addition, DSTO continued to be involved with civil science at the working level. This included agreements with tertiary education institutions to conduct nominated research tasks, involving a total expenditure for 1989-90 of \$899 000.

During the reporting period, DSTO continued to strengthen its links with CSIRO. There are currently two active joint projects: on architectures and operating systems for multiprocessor-based computers and a dual band system of infra-red and millimetre wave detection.

SRL's Microwave Radar Division organised a well-supported radar conference and exhibition, *Radarcon 90*, which drew considerable media attention and public comment.

MOU on Broadband ISDN Technology An MOU has been negotiated between Telecom Research Laboratories and ERL's Communications Division to establish a test bed between the two organisations to undertake collaborative research aimed at clarifying the defence requirements for the use of broadband ISDN technology.

Grants for Industrial Research and Development MRL is involved in two collaborative Grants for Industrial R&D projects:

- Development of Ceramic Coatings by Sol-Gel Processes with Monash University, the University of Technology, Sydney, and Silicon Technologies Australia.
- Engineering Polymer Blends with Chemplex Australia Ltd, Chisholm Institute of Technology, the CSIRO Division of Chemicals and Polymers, Moldflow Pty Ltd, Monash University and RMIT.

International Cooperation

Australia receives substantial benefit to its defence science capability through international collaboration in defence research. Such cooperation acts as a resource multiplier, allowing Australia to

participate in relevant research projects that would otherwise be beyond its financial reach.

Australia's most significant collaborative undertaking in defence science is with four other nations in The Technical Cooperation Program (TTCP). In 1990, six DSTO scientists were recognised by their international peers with the presentation of *TTCP Achievement Awards* for work in pyrotechnics, mathematical modelling, sonobuoys, fracture mechanics, electronic detonators and electronic countermeasures.

The strongest bilateral links remain with the United States and the United Kingdom. Australia is only the second non-Nato country to sign an agreement with the United States which attracts funding under the Nunn legislation. On 14 March 1990, an MOU worth US\$6 million was signed with the US Air Force's Rome Air Development Centre (RADC) to develop a high speed voice and data communications test bed at RADC and one at Communications Division's Salisbury facility in South Australia. Essentially, the two test beds will be used independently to satisfy each country's unique defence tactical communications R&D needs but, most importantly, Communications Division will benefit by translating this research into a totally Australian collaborative program.

In addition, ERL's Information Technology Division is negotiating a Data Exchange Agreement with RADC covering research into knowledge-based assistance to software development. The Division has formed an Australian consortium of university-based research groups to collaborate on this research. Results and software will be exchanged with a similar consortium in the United States coordinated by RADC.

Negotiations on new links with Canada and France are close to completion and the negotiation of a treaty with Singapore on defence R&D is underway. A project is being developed with New Zealand to support developments on towed arrays and another with Malaysia on ionospheric frequency studies. The recently established link with Sweden now supports the exchange of two scientists and a cooperative project on synthetic aperture radar. DSTO supports defence cooperation with Malaysia and Thailand by providing on-the-job training and experience for technical staff.

During 1989-90, Defence Science Counsellors in Washington and London continued to play an invaluable role in coordinating interaction between DSTO and the defence science communities in the respective countries, as well as reporting on science and technology developments of relevance to DSTO. DSTO also continued to conduct an active overseas posting and exchange program for professional staff.

Commercialisation

Without detracting from the support provided to its Defence customers, DSTO contributes to overall industrial capability and helps to boost exports through its commercialisation initiatives. An outstanding example has been the licensing of video movement detector technology to Vision Systems Pty Ltd who have generated substantial overseas sales. DSTO has also developed a unique Very Large Scale Integration processing computer chip which has created commercial interest in the United States.

In another highly successful move, ARL has transferred its world-acclaimed technology for aircraft repair to Australian industry by signing a licence agreement with a Brisbane firm, Helitech Industries. The technology, which has reduced the time taken to repair stress corrosion cracking in a RAAF Hercules from six man days to half a man day, is expected to find a significant international market.

DSTO is developing policies and procedures for managing its commercial activities. Commercialisation officers have been appointed in each laboratory and a Science Commercialisation Directorate has been established in DSTO Central Office. Wider media coverage of commercial opportunities

is being achieved and industry briefings and seminars are being held, covering both commercialisations in general and specific opportunities for industry. Commercial financial transactions are handled through a special purpose trust account.

Commercialisation to date has concentrated on licensing agreements where companies are granted licences to further develop and manufacture products from DSTO patents. At 30 June 1990, there were 29 licences extant, with financial returns expected to increase, and a further eight under negotiation. However, the use of joint ventures and other collaborative arrangements is now increasing.

Woomera Instrumented Range Options for the future of the range are being considered. Surveys indicated that the market for the type of range services required by Defence was not as great as earlier expected and the commercialisation schemes proposed would yield no cost advantage to Defence.

Low-cost Uncooled Thermal Sensors DSTO has been active in the development of high-performance infra-red intrusion sensors and lightweight thermal imagers for the ADF. A recent world-wide market survey has shown a high potential for commercialisation of this technology and Australian industry has been invited to develop a business plan.

Colour Periscope Television for Swedish Navy The development and supply of a colour periscope camera for use on Swedish Navy submarines was successfully completed during the past financial year. Apart from the design, development and installation of this camera, other significant benefits accrued. These included opportunities for staff to participate in a Navy to Navy exchange of special technology, to acquire experience and technical information on new model periscopes, to develop techniques for the periscopes of the new Australian submarine and to investigate the sales potential to other navies.

Radar Ventures Invitations to register interest in the development of an airborne imaging radar system and in the production of image data in collaboration with CSIRO have drawn strong responses from Australia and overseas. Good responses have also been received to an invitation to register interest in developing radar target generator equipment.

DSTO 'STEELS' THE NEW SUBS FOR AUSTRALIA

Expertise within the Materials Research Laboratory of DSTO has allowed state-of-the-art high strength Australian steel to be used in the construction of the six new Collins Class submarines. The steel will be manufactured by a BHP subsidiary, Bunge Industrial Steels.

This technical know-how was critical to the decision to build the submarines in Australia. Besides the obvious benefit to the Australian economy of local construction, the Royal Australian Navy stands to save millions of dollars by avoiding costly hull repairs in the future. Although steel of the required type was available in Sweden, in-country manufacture was necessary to make building the submarines in Australia a viable proposition.

The success of the new submarine project depended on achieving satisfactory hull steel performance. A team of scientists led by Dr John Ritter developed specifications for an Australian version of the Swedish submarine steel and for the adaptation of welding procedures. This work was crucial to the progress of the project, ensuring the toughness and shock resistance necessary for a submarine to dive to required depths and thus reduce its vulnerability to attack.

The steel is a novel type and has a strength higher than most western navies use but it is unproven in submarines. To minimise the risks of introducing this new technology, DSTO has developed a fracture control philosophy which the Navy has adopted to underpin the design, construction and through-life support of the submarines.

These developments did not occur overnight. DSTO scientists in Melbourne began stepping up research into welding technology and hull strengths in the late 1970s when the Navy first proposed a program for replacing the Oberon Class submarines.

When major defence systems are introduced, our access to, and understanding of, the technology involved has to be sufficiently advanced to ensure self-reliant support during the equipment's life cycle. DSTO'S 'technology base', that is the knowledge and skills of our scientists, the necessary support equipment and technology access at home and overseas, forms the basis of our ability to meet this requirement.

Dr Ritter's research has involved negotiations with Kockums, Swedish Steel, the Australian Submarine Corporation and collaboration with Bunge Industrial Steels. The new knowledge about the welding of special steels has been passed on to welding companies including ESAB (Sweden and Australia), Oerlikon (Switzerland), Welding Industries of Australia and CIGWELD.

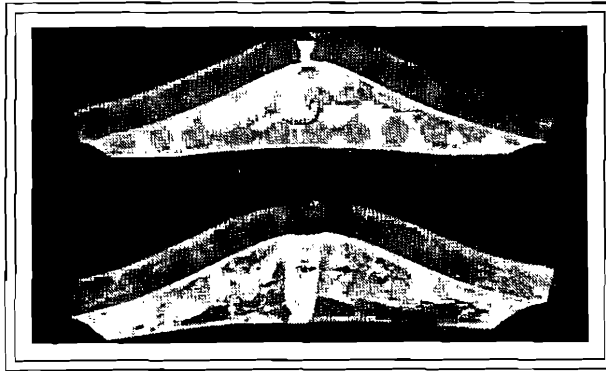
The Materials Research Laboratory has established the benchmark values for both hull steel and the welds which will ensure Navy operational requirements are met. The research team has devised a series of tests which are unique to this project. John Ritter explains:

The key test is the explosion bulge test, a severe but realistic test in which a 50mm thick plate containing a full butt weld is cooled to the sub zero temperature of -18 C, and then subjected to repeated explosive blasts. These blasts, conducted in open air using 15kg of high explosive placed at very short stand-off distances, cause the plate to bulge progressively. To pass the test, the central region of the bulge must thin down by at least 14 per cent without serious cracking. Underlying this very complex and expensive test, the dynamic tear test is used as an indicator and preliminary sorting test.

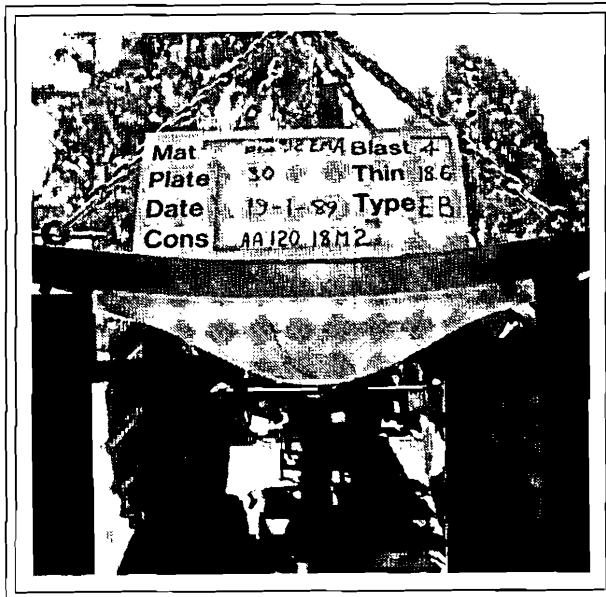
Routine tensile and impact tests conducted in plants during manufacture enable industry to gauge whether the requirements of the bulge test are being met.

Furthermore, the Laboratory has assisted the Navy in putting these tests into the relevant technical specifications for the submarine, so that the fracture control technology is formalised from design through to material suppliers and construction subcontractors.

MRL's valuable work on steels and steel testing for the new submarine project is a product of DSTO's highly-developed technology base. It is typical of both the excellence and relevance of the Organisation's research for Defence. It is also a clear example of how specialised defence research can benefit the Australian community as a whole through the flow-on of high technology research to the nation's industrial base.



The results of explosion bulge tests on welded HY80 high - tensile steel plates. The top plate shows failure by extensive cracking through the weld. The bottom plate, welded using the MRL procedure, sustained 18% thinning without cracking.



The MRL welded steel plate after under going the bulge test.

PROGRAM 5: DEFENCE CORPORATE SERVICES

OBJECTIVE

To foster the implementation of the Government's defence policies through the provision of planning, financial, personnel, logistics and other policy and management services to the Defence organisation.

DESCRIPTION

Corporate Services consists of those central divisions and agencies which provide overall services to the Defence organisation, or which provide such services on a regional basis. These services include the provision and support of an overall Defence corporate planning framework through the Five Year Defence Program, the coördination and development of strategic planning from strategic review to application of policies and plans and the provision of a range of logistics, personnel, financial and implementation services to Defence organisations.

Table 5.1: Corporate Services - Resources Expended 1989-90

	<i>Outlays \$m</i>
5.1 Executive (Office of the Secretary)	0.486
5.2 Personnel, Resources Management and Support	427.223
5.3 Strategic Planning	80.723
5.4 Logistics	47.234
Total Corporate Services	555.666

SUBPROGRAM 5.1: EXECUTIVE (OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY)

The objective of the Executive subprogram is to ensure that the general working and business of the Defence Department is carried out in accordance with Government and Ministerial directions.

The Secretary of Defence, under the Minister for Defence and the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel, is responsible for the general workings and business of the Defence Department and for priority advice to the Ministers in matters relating to the Department.

SUBPROGRAM 5.2: PERSONNEL, RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND SUPPORT

OBJECTIVE

To develop and oversee policies on personnel, organisation and administrative resources; to manage associated information systems and to provide associated services; and to coordinate and develop Defence programs and budgets,

DESCRIPTION

This subprogram comprises:

- Management Improvement and Manpower Policy with the objective to encourage the efficient and effective use of personnel resources and to provide a focus for management improvement activities undertaken in Defence.
- Human Resources with the objective of supporting HQADF in developing personnel policies for the ADF and the management of the development, training and administration of civilian personnel.
- Resources and Financial Programs with the objective to ensure that financial and accounting policy and plans are developed in accordance with Government and Departmental priorities, to manage Defence financial allocations and to develop management information and accounting systems including those for program budgeting.
- Inspector General with the program objective to provide the Secretary and the CDF with the capacity to undertake independent assessments of the efficiency and effectiveness of the Defence organisation.

PERFORMANCE

In 1989-90, measures of performance for this subprogram had not progressed to a stage where objective indicators of the effectiveness of the services delivered were fully developed.

Performance was, in the main, measured in terms of internal reviews of specific organisational components and activities undertaken within the subprogram. In addition to this internal review process of performance measurement, the evaluation of Defence Force Recruiting by the Australian Audit Office and the Regional Support Review, a joint ADF/Departmental exercise with a view to rationalising regional support arrangements, was undertaken.

For future years, a more comprehensive and regular system of performance reporting is being developed in keeping with management arrangements, introduced to facilitate the move to the new eight program structure. These arrangements include the establishment of an advisory group within the subprogram to monitor and review performance in terms of outcomes against objectives and the efficient use of resources. To aid this process, a hierarchy of performance indicators, rising from very specific indicators with the lower program elements to more general indicators for the whole program is being implemented. Regular performance reports on these indicators will be considered by the advisory group.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Organisational Review and Resources Savings

The Secretary's Senior Executive Service position reduction initiative, announced on 5 July 1989, has resulted in a reduction of 17 SES positions in the Defence Central (Canberra) area. A review of

civilian positions below SES level in Defence Central was also completed and achieved a reduction of 300 positions in the Canberra area. In addition, civilian manpower was again reduced by 1 per cent this year to give a total of 24 050 staff at 30 June 1990. The funds saved were transferred to other categories of expenditure.

The Secretary's review was undertaken to rationalise and decentralise the Central Office organisation consistent with Government initiatives and reforms; in particular the Financial Management Improvement Program, one element of which is the promotion of a decentralised organisational structure together with devolved management arrangements.

To give effect to the reduction in the number of civilian positions and the devolution of functions, a number of organisational reviews were completed during the year. These reviews were designed to restructure organisation and classifications within Central Office divisions to accord with reductions arising from the Secretary's review. This included the amalgamation of branches and sections to reflect flattened structures.

Reviews completed to date include:

- Resources and Financial Programs Division
- Inspector General's Division
- Defence Logistics Division
- Joint Intelligence Organisation
- Defence Quality Assurance Organisation

Devolution of Establishment Powers

In keeping with the strategy to devolve authority from central areas to Program Managers and their subordinate managers, the Secretary devolved his powers for the creation, abolition and reclassification of civilian offices under sections 27 and 29a of the *Public Service Act* with effect from 1 March 1990. The devolution of establishments authority involved all Program Managers, subprogram managers and some program element managers in Defence Central, HQADF, the Service Offices, DSTO and outrider organisations. Devolution beyond these levels is currently under consideration.

The devolution, when matched with the responsibility for managing staff budgets, is intended to allow managers the capacity to use their human resources in the most effective manner to achieve objectives within budget. It is also aimed at streamlining the existing Defence organisation's management processes by encouraging managers to use flexibility in their establishments.

Structural Efficiency Principle

The Department made a significant contribution to the case presented to the Industrial Relations Commission hearing on the Senior Officer structure. In particular, evidence was prepared detailing changes in work value across the generality of positions at Administrative Service Officer Class 7/8 and professional equivalents in Computer Systems Officer, Engineer, Librarian, Technical Officer and Science/Experimental Officer employment categories. In addition to the detailed evidence presented, the Deputy Secretary Budget & Management appeared before the Commission and presented a strategic overview of changes to the management environment in the Defence organisation in support of the case. This phase was completed on Wednesday 13 June 1990 and further participation in the development and implementation is anticipated.

Civilianisation

The civilianisation program was aimed at releasing Service personnel for primary military duties. The total program provided the ADF with 600 additional civilian staff years, with a final allocation of 100 staff years made in 1989-90. This completed the program.

DEFENCE CIVILIAN PERSONNEL STATISTICS

Table 5.2.1: Estimated and Achieved Average Staffing Level 1988-89 and 1989-90

	<i>Appropriation</i>		<i>Trust Account</i>		<i>Total</i>	
	<i>Funded Staff</i>		<i>Funded Staff</i>			
	<i>Estimated</i>	<i>Achieved</i>	<i>Estimated</i>	<i>Achieved</i>	<i>Estimated</i>	<i>Achieved</i>
1988-89	25 543	25 328	8 225	7 174	33 768	32 502
1989-90	24 323	23 922	513	478	24 836	24 400

Note: Trust account staff figures for 1988-89 include personnel paid through the Munitions, Aerospace, Shipbuilding and Defence Support Centre Woomera Trust Accounts. Trust account figures for 1989-90 comprise personnel under the Munitions and Defence Support Centre Woomera Trust Accounts only, following the transfer of the other trust accounts to ADI.

Table 5.2.2: Distribution of Civilian Staff by Employment Category

	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>Total</i>
<i>Band 2 (SES)</i>			
Number	116	2	118
Percent	0.5	0	0.5
<i>Band 1 (Non-SES)</i>			
Number	16 573	7 417	23 990
Percent	68.7	30.8	99.5
Total	16 689	7 419	24 108

Note: These figures exclude 227 overseas locally-engaged civilian staff, 239 Munitions Trust Account staff, 195 casual staff and 590 unpaid inoperative staff.

Table 5.2.3: Civilian Staff Commencements 1988-89 and 1989-90

	<i>1988-89</i>	<i>1989-90</i>
Permanent	1 124	1 255
Temporary	2 680	3 096
Youth Trainees	113	101
Vacational	42	38
Other	3	13
Naval Defence Act	128	168
Total	4 090	4 671

Note: These figures include transfers from other Departments, staff from the Defence Support Centre Woomera but exclude casual labour

DEFENCE CIVILIAN PERSONNEL STATISTICS

Table 5.2.4: Civilian Staff Separations 1988-89 and 1989-90

	1988-89	1989-90
Redundancy	325	189
Resignation	2 895	2 169
Retirement	550	417
Retirement - invalidity	191	102
Dismissal	17	18
Death	54	53
Transfer or promotion to other Departments	614	703
Termination of temporary employment	2 187	1 471
Other	31	37
Total	6 864	5 159

Note: These figures include staff from the Defence Support Centre Woomera but do not include casual labour. Redundancy figures for 1988-89 include 120 early retirement packages.

Defence Management Improvement

Improvements in the effectiveness and efficiency of Defence processes are being achieved through a coordinated strategy which encourages and assists with the pursuit of staff involvement programs and other management sponsored improvement activities.

The Defence Management Improvement Plan includes 57 initiatives for improving the cost-effectiveness of Defence activities. A final report on the 1989-90 Plan is being prepared with the majority of initiatives being reported as successfully completed.

One notable example is the enhancement of the 'Parliamentary Support System' which has integrated imaging technology for filing of incoming representations, facsimile for transmission and optical character recognition for conversion to word processing documents. Major improvements have been achieved in turnaround time, file access and quality of responses. Another example is the introduction of computerised bar-coding for Defence asset management in Canberra. This has reduced stocktaking time from 12 to two months.

The Productivity Enhancement Program, or Pep Up for short, was instituted in 1987. This scheme provides early funding for proposals that project significant and rapid productivity returns. As at 30 June 1990, returns assessed at \$7 752 300 have been achieved for a total investment of \$1 711 000 in 61 projects.

Management of the Defence Suggestion Scheme was devolved and continued to provide an incentive for staff to improve the cost effectiveness and safety of the work place and, in return, receive recognition and financial reward. Between November 1988 and December 1989, a total saving of \$882 080 was achieved for a pay-out of \$105 334.

In addition to these productivity enhancing incentive schemes, the value of personal recognition of staff has been reinforced through a range of Departmental awards and recognition schemes. These are: the *Secretary's Award for Achievement*, of which there have been two recipients; the annual *Defence Productivity Awards*, the inaugural award being scheduled for September 1990; and the *Long Service Awards*, which have been available since January 1990. In addition, several recognition schemes have been established at local management level.

Personnel Policies and Practices

Social Justice

The Government's social justice strategy requires program managers in all departments and agencies to take account of the four elements of social justice - equality, equity, access and participation - in developing, implementing and evaluating programs.

Defence is a significant employer nation-wide and it is through the personnel policies and practices that apply to the Defence civilian workforce and the ADF that the most significant contribution to social justice is made, directly and by example. Allowing women members of the ADF to serve in combat-related positions is a landmark decision for 1989-90 and is discussed in the article at the end of Program 5. There have been other developments in Service pay and conditions and these are detailed in Program 1. The Department has also been recognised during the year for its efforts in the employment of people with disabilities. This, and other developments which have contributed to meeting social justice objectives, is described in the remainder of this section dealing with personnel policies and practices.

Training and Development

An increased emphasis has been given to civilian training and development with the most significant changes in the areas of management and supervision. Savings in the order of \$3 million from previous staff cuts have been invested in this area, resulting in increased opportunities being available for training and development among civilian staff at all levels. In particular, revised workshops for Branch Heads and new workshops for Directors were introduced to enhance current management knowledge and skills and to prepare better for future change. The first of an initial series of 11 four-day Directors' workshops commenced in 1990.

Twenty three staff completed the year-long Middle Managers' Development Program within the Department this year. Civilian staff also participated in the service-wide Executive Development Scheme and attended Joint and single Service staff colleges.

Occupational Health and Safety

To ensure that the consultative processes set out in the Defence Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Agreement are followed, a three tiered OHS committee structure has been put in place. These committees are:

- the Defence Occupational Health and Safety Policy Committee. This is the peak consultative committee concerned with the development, implementation and monitoring of OHS policies and programs within the Department;
- the Executive OHS Committees, which are located within each region, establishment and central office. The role of these committees is to monitor the implementation of OHS policies and provide a consultative forum on OHS matters; and
- Local OHS Committees which are responsible for the day to day implementation of OHS policies and are intended to resolve problems as they arise. They have been established in workplaces where the number of employees or the location and nature of the work warrants such a committee.

In the interests of maintaining a high standard of occupational health and safety, the Defence Occupational Health and Safety Policy Committee, during 1989-90, endorsed policies on:

- Screen Based Equipment;
- Eye Protection;
- Foot Protection;
- Smoke Free Workplace; and

TRAINING AND STAFF DEVELOPMENT STATISTICS

Table 5.2.5: Courses Conducted by the Department

<i>Type of Course</i>	<i>No of Courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>
Induction Training	95	1 296
General Supervision	112	1 313
General Computing Skills	508	2 993
Health and Safety Training	21	290
Management and Professional Training	140	2 713
Technical and Para-professional Training	5	73
Trade and Apprenticeship Training	16	140
Clerical/Office, Sales and Personal Services Training	291	3 249
Plant & Machinery Operating, Labouring and Related Training	1	1
Other	129	1 884
Total	1 321	13 952

Table 5.2.6: Formal External Training

<i>Type of Course</i>	<i>No of Courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>
Induction Training	1	4
General Supervision	86	229
General Computing skills	516	1 800
Health and Safety Training	167	425
Management and Professional Training	750	1 820
Technical and Para-professional Training	281	575
Trade and Apprenticeship Training	23	30
Clerical/Office, Sales and Personal Services Training	354	741
Plant & Machinery Operating, Labouring and Related Training	7	72
Other	203	640
Total	2 388	6 336

Table 5.2.7: Departmental Development Programs

<i>Type of Course</i>	<i>No of Courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>	<i>Duration</i>
Graduate Administrative Assistants	1	39	1 year
Middle Managers Development Program	1	21	1 year
Joint Services Staff College	2	10(a)	6 months
Service Staff College	4	4(a)	6-12 mths
Joint Warfare Courses	4	8(a)	1-2 weeks
Undergraduate Scholarships	1	5	1 year
Postgraduate Scholarships	1	6	1-2 years

Note: (a) These figures include public service personnel only.

TRAINING AND STAFF DEVELOPMENT STATISTICS

Table 5.2.8: Studies Assistance (leading to formal qualification - part time leave)

	<i>Higher Degree</i>	<i>Bachelor Degree</i>		<i>Diploma (inc Post Grad)</i>		<i>Other</i>	<i>Total</i>
		<i>UNI</i>	<i>CAE</i>	<i>UNI</i>	<i>CAE</i>		
Accounting		9		8	4	15	36
Administration							0
Management	14	42	8	13	15	30	122
Applied Science	1	4	6	1	2	1	15
Architecture						2	2
Arts	5	49	7				61
Building				1	3		4
Computing	2	26	4	29	10	95	166
Drafting						4	4
Economics/Commerce	1	14	1	1		8	23
Education	4	4	1	10	1	13	33
Engineering	12	18	1	28	23	60	142
Law		4	1	6			11
Liberal Studies		1					1
Librarianship	1	7		3		12	23
Psychology	1		3	1			5
Political Science							0
Science	8	36	1	2	2	2	51
Higher School Certificate					6	8	14
Secretarial					1	1	2
Social Studies		1	1		3		5
Surveying		2				4	6
Technology		2	1	3	2	3	10
Other	13	12	1	7	25	143	201
Total	62	231	36	113	97	400	939

Table 5.2.9: Workshops Attended by Senior Executive Service Officers for Management Development

<i>Type of Course</i>	<i>No of Courses</i>	<i>Personnel</i>
Departmental	6	112
External	15	35
Total	24	147

TRAINING AND STAFF DEVELOPMENT STATISTICS

Table 5.2.10: Australian Defence Force Service Colleges

<i>Type of Course</i>	<i>No of Course</i>	<i>Duration of Course</i>	<i>Graduates (a)</i>
Joint Services Staff College	2	6 months	46 (Dec 89) 45 (Jun 89)
RAN Staff College	2	6 months	25 (Dec 89) 27 (Jun 90)
RAN College			
- Junior Naval Command Course	2	6 months	77 (Aug 89) 85 (Mar 90)
- Special Duties Officers Course	3	3 months	19 (Aug 89) 10 (Dec 89) 17 (Mar 90)
Royal Military College	2	18 months	102 (Dec 89) 101 (Jun 90)
Command and Staff College	1	12 months	87
RAAF Staff College	1	12 months	nil (b)
RAAF College (Initial Officer Training)	13	3 months	251
Australian Defence Force Academy	(c)	3 years	156
	(d)	4 years	48

Notes: (a) Includes civilian and overseas students

(b) Course not conducted in 1989

(c) Three year degree in Science and Arts

(d) Four year degree in Engineering + honours degrees in Science and Arts

Table 5.2.11: Training at Non-Defence Institutions - ADF Personnel

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>Total</i>
FULL TIME				
Higher Degree	51	49	27	127
Undergraduate	98	52	204	354
Diploma	3	23	174	200
Certificate/other	22	83	11	116
Sub Total	174	207	416	797
PART TIME				
Higher Degree	100	125	211	436
Undergraduate	147	302	365	814
Diploma	136	206	341	683
Certificate/other	602	514	455	1 571
Sub Total	985	1 147	1 372	3 504
Total	1 159	1 354	1 788	4 301

- Access for people with disabilities in Defence owned and leased buildings.

At the Defence Occupational Health and Safety Policy Committee meeting held in February 1990, full membership of the committee for the three Services was endorsed by the members. The Services were previously observers at the committee and now join senior management, DSTO and representative unions from the ACTU.

A computerised information system is being planned to capture data relating to workplace injuries. The data will be used in the development of policies designed for more effective management of health and safety issues confronting the Department.

The development of an asbestos awareness campaign is also well advanced. The aim is to inform Defence personnel of the risks associated with asbestos and the strategies employed to control the asbestos hazard.

It is planned to continue to publish articles on OHS issues in departmental journals and Service newspapers to keep staff informed and make them more aware of developments.

Industrial Relations and Consultation

The consultative arrangements within the Department are now well established and are generally considered by both management and unions to be operating effectively. The Defence Consultative Council, the Department's senior forum for consultation between management and unions, continues to meet regularly; the most recent meeting being held at RAAF Amberley in Queensland. Following the amalgamation of the two clerical unions last year, the union representation is now comprised of seven unions with members employed in the Department. The atmosphere remains positive between departmental and union representatives.

The Council's subcommittees - which encompass equal employment opportunity, training and development and occupational health and safety - play a valuable supportive role as do the numerous regional and establishment consultative committees which have been formed to complement the function of the Council at the local level. An additional subcommittee was reactivated earlier this year as a result of the desire by management and unions to provide a more effective consultative forum for matters specific to DSTO.

Defence continues to play a major role in the various levels of award restructuring negotiations that are occurring under the auspices of the Structural Efficiency Principle.

The Department was affected by the industrial action that took place in support of public service wide claims for increased pay arising from award restructuring negotiations, although not to the same extent as some other departments. The industrial action was largely confined to the professional and technical grades.

Following the transfer of the functions of the Office of Defence Production to Australian Defence Industries in May 1989, the incidence of industrial disputation has remained relatively low within the Department. While unions have continued to pursue traditional claims, the most significant cause of disputation has been concern among staff and their unions about organisational restructuring. Industrial action has almost invariably taken the form of work bans. On the relatively few occasions that strikes have occurred, they have only been of short duration. Generally speaking, only small numbers of staff have participated in industrial action at the one time and this action has usually been restricted to the one workplace.

Post Separation Employment

Instructions have been issued for the use of all Defence staff, Service and civilian, detailing the procedures to be followed to regulate post separation employment. An information kit has also been developed and distributed widely in the Department.

During 1989-90, 11 ADF members and 19 civilian staff sought approval to engage in post separation employment activities. While no applications were rejected, conditions were applied in five cases.

Equal Employment Opportunity

In keeping with the plan agreed with the unions, four major strategies have been adopted: evaluation, marketing of the EEO program, training and development and enhancement of the network of EEO contact officers throughout the Department.

Evaluation This strategy aims to concentrate efforts on results rather than processes in order to identify trends and progress made and thereby focus attention on areas of greatest need. To do this, both the quantitative input from personnel records and the qualitative feedback from regional networks are utilised.

Marketing The marketing strategy is focused on enhancing the knowledge and appreciation of the Department's EEO programs in targeted areas such as prospective and new staff, as well as current employees.

Training and Development - Particular emphasis is being placed on ensuring that all new training and development initiatives continue to promote EEO as an integral component.

Networking This strategy recognises the existence of effective networks of EEO coordinators and contact officers throughout the Department. The strategy aims to ensure that officers in networks are adequately trained, with continuing support mechanisms to enhance their self-sufficiency and effectiveness. Women's networks are operating successfully in several regions and functional areas. Meetings are held regularly to provide a forum for development opportunities, to enhance inter-personal networks and to provide a focus for the presentation of common concerns to management.

Sexual Harassment Contact Officers The Department has an existing network of contact officers throughout work areas. Attention has been focused on ensuring that those officers receive adequate training and follow up support. To this end, a training package has been widely distributed.

Employment of People with Disabilities The Department has achieved noteworthy successes in the employment of people with disabilities and received two nominations for the Prime Minister's *Employer of the Year Award*. The first, as ACT finalist, was for its participation in the Government's Intellectual Disability Access Program. The second nomination, by the Royal Victorian Institute for the Blind, was for success in the employment of visually impaired staff by the Defence Regional Office Victoria.

Access and Equity Plan

The initial Defence portfolio Access and Equity Plan has been implemented and is now being reviewed to identify barriers within the new program structure and the steps that may be taken to eliminate those barriers.

The Natural Disasters Organisation disseminates information to the community on counter disaster and civil defence matters in response to requests from the state and territory emergency services. Community awareness of NDO services has been increased through the use of the ethnic media although, to date, no formal requests have been made for translated material.

In 1988, the Department's Public Information Branch awarded a tender to the Centre for Multicultural Studies, Wollongong University to undertake a survey in Sydney and Wollongong of selected communities of people with non-English speaking backgrounds to determine their perception of the ADF.

A number of conclusions were drawn from the survey. The main one confirmed that there is no foundation for the belief that people from non-English speaking backgrounds as a whole are less well

Table 5.2.12: Representation of Equal Employment Opportunity Target Groups by Salary Levels as at 30 June 1990

<i>Salary</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>A&TSI</i>	<i>NESB1</i>	<i>NESB2</i>	<i>PWD</i>	<i>Total Surveyed</i>
Below \$20 467	4 070	94	468	394	365	9 784
%	41.6	1.9	9.4	7.9	7.4	
\$20 467 to \$23 504	1 600	24	226	268	201	3 822
%	41.9	0.9	8.6	10.2	7.7	
\$23 505 to \$26 182	755	8	85	137	124	2 041
%	37.0	0.5	5.6	9.1	8.2	
\$26 183 to \$29 082	305	2	43	63	58	1 189
%	25.7	0.2	5.2	7.6	7.0	
\$29 083 to \$31 693	394	5	84	122	110	2 292
%	17.2	0.3	5.7	8.2	7.4	
\$31 694 to \$37 033	372	1	130	125	128	2 670
%	13.9	0.1	6.6	6.4	6.5	
\$37 034 to \$39 897	96	0	17	28	28	704
%	13.6	0	3.4	5.6	5.6	
\$39 898 to \$55 998	79	2	89	73	53	1 588
%	5.0	0.2	8.0	6.6	4.8	
Above \$55 998	3	0	2	6	5	159
%	1.9	0	1.7	5.1	4.2	

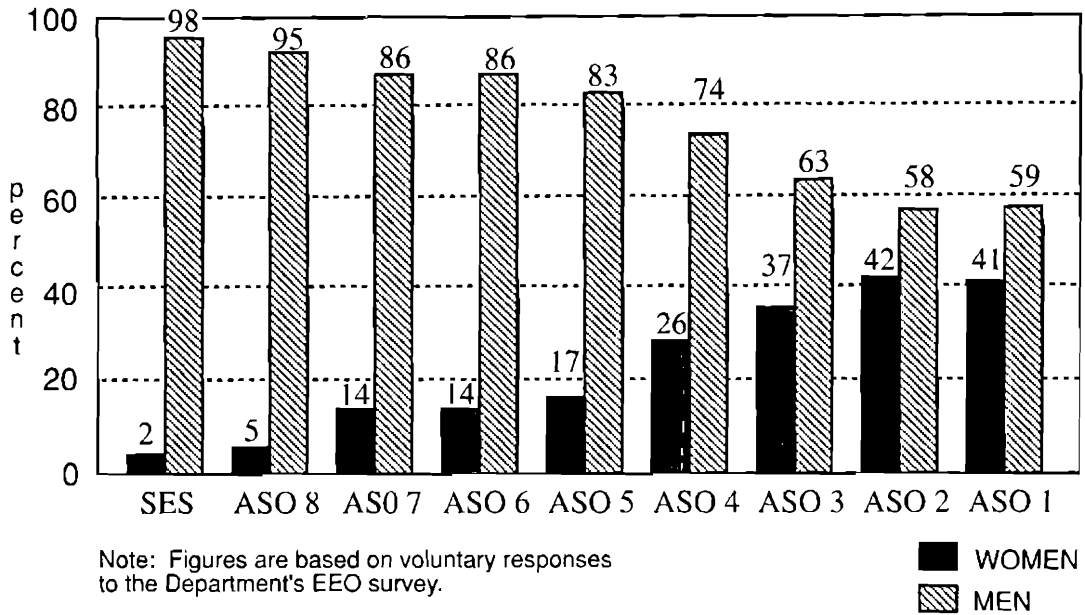
Table 5.2.13: Representation of Equal Employment Opportunity Target Groups by Occupational Category as at 30 June 1990

<i>Occupational Category</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>A&TSI</i>	<i>NESB1</i>	<i>NESB2</i>	<i>PWD</i>	<i>Total Surveyed</i>
SES	2	0	2	5	3	109
%	1.8	0	2.6	6.4	3.9	
ASO & Equivalent	5 852	63	453	771	558	11 238
%	52.1	0.8	5.8	9.8	7.1	
Trades	66	5	99	37	55	1 216
%	5.4	0.8	16.1	6.0	8.9	
Physical Grades	1 270	59	311	137	199	5 978
%	21.2	2.0	10.7	4.7	6.8	
Professions	273	1	125	116	57	2 315
%	11.8	0.1	9.2	8.5	4.2	
Technical	181	8	154	145	200	3 316
%	5.5	0.4	6.8	6.4	8.9	
Miscellaneous	30	0	0	5	0	77
%	39.0	0	0	13.2	0	

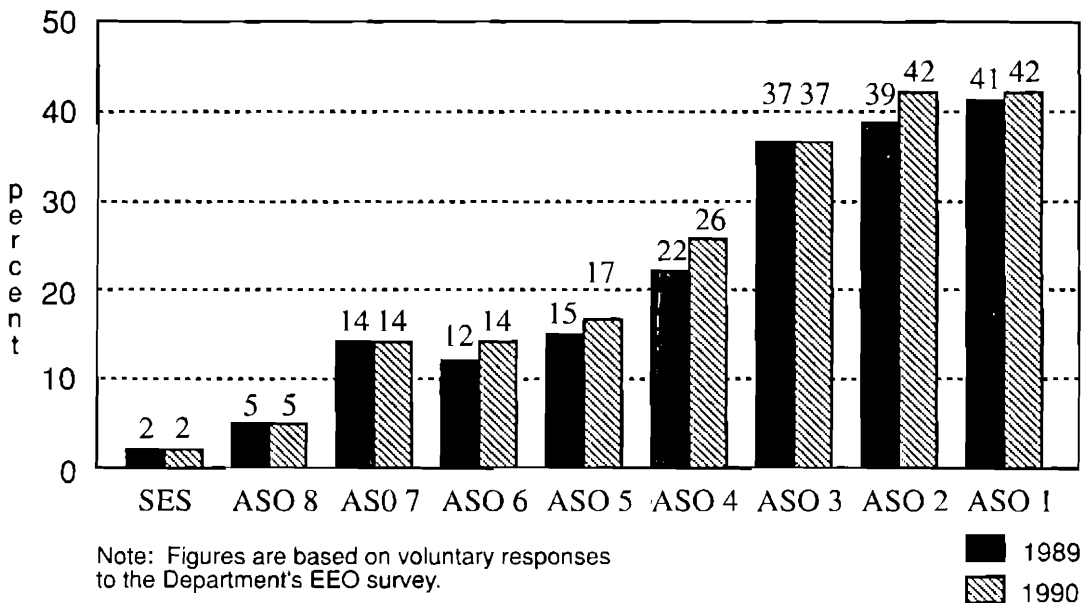
Key: A&TSI - Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders
 NESB1 - Non-English Speaking Background, 1st Generation
 NESB2 - Non-English Speaking Background, 2nd Generation
 PWD - People with Disabilities

Note: The figures for these target groups are based on voluntary responses to the Department's EEO survey. Source: SPECS - EEOSTATS

PROPORTIONAL DISTRIBUTION OF WOMEN AND MEN BY ASO EQUIVALENTS AS AT 30 JUNE 1990



DISTRIBUTION OF WOMEN BY ASO EQUIVALENT SALARY LEVELS - COMPARISON BETWEEN 1989 AND 1990



informed on defence issues or less well disposed towards the ADF than the general population. While there were variations among particular groups and across specific questions, these people generally held the ADF in higher regard than people from an English speaking background.

Some of the longer established groups with non-English speaking backgrounds exhibited considerably higher levels of knowledge about defence issues than those with English speaking backgrounds, whereas the more recently established groups tended to have substantially lower knowledge levels.

To promote better communication with potential recruits from communities of people with non-English speaking backgrounds, the ADF has now incorporated cultural awareness training into the recruiters' course.

Recruiting for the ADF

Recruitment activities experienced difficulty in attracting sufficient applicants to the ADF to meet targets during the first half of 1989-90. Increased competition for applicants, particularly those with technical skills or aptitudes, from other employers has increased the difficulty of recruiting suitable personnel. The outlook for the next five years presents similar difficulties in recruiting and is influenced by the following factors:

- A demographic trough in the recruitable age range.
- Increased competition for technical skills.
- Constraints on resources available for the recruiting task.

Increased funding for advertising in the latter half of the year contributed significantly to improving the situation and, consequently, ADF strengths will be maintained close to the authorised maximum. Over the longer term, the advertising budget planned over the next five years together with increased productivity in applicant processing through technology improvements will enable:

- the continuation of appropriate levels of recruiting to meet the requirements of the ADF;
- the provision of promotional material to support recruiting activities, and
- the provision of planning data that is soundly based on statistical evidence to be used as a basis for recruiting strategies.

Personnel Issues Occasional Papers

During 1989-90, twelve occasional papers were produced, each designed to inform and encourage debate on manpower issues among Defence policy and resource practitioners. The papers were very successful and feedback from client areas was positive. One paper, on the impact of future demographic trends on the ADF, provided a significant underpinning to the ADF submission to the DFRDB review.

Resources Planning and Management

The comprehensive adoption of PMB within Defence, outlined in Part 1, will have a significant effect on organisational arrangements for resources planning and management.

Defence has used a Planning, Programming and Budgeting System (PPBS) based approach to financial planning and management since the early seventies. Defence has adapted the former PPBS approach to conform with the application of a government-wide, program-based management and budgeting system but the present system of forward financial planning in Defence meets many of the requirements of PMB and has been largely retained.

Resource planning and management continues to rely on guidance from the Government on the level of funding which should be assumed for planning purposes over the four year horizon of the forward estimates. This is normally given in terms of annual real growth in outlays. Estimates of the costs

AUSTRALIAN DEFENCE FORCE RECRUITING

Table 5.2.14: Australian Defence Force Enlistments 1988-89 and 1989-90

	<i>Navy</i>		<i>Army</i>		<i>Air Force</i>		<i>ADF</i>	
	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>
1988-89								
Trained Force								
Officers	21	5	63	23	3	2	87	30
Other Ranks	31	4	163	21	15		209	25
Training Force								
Officers	143	69	279	57	272	70	694	196
Other Ranks	1 214	196	2 298	368	1 080	480	4 592	1 044
Apprentices	152	6	236	13	204	6	592	25
Total	1 561	280	3 039	482	1 574	558	6 174	1 320
1989-90								
Trained Force								
Officers	36	4	56	20	21		113	24
Other Ranks	43	4	229	31	33	3	305	38
Training Force								
Officers	131	53	276	43	276	84	683	180
Other Ranks	993	250	2 364	340	860	396	4 217	986
Apprentices	156	7	232	14	161	11	549	32
Total	1 359	318	3 157	448	1 351	494	5 867	1 260

Table 5.2.15: Australian Defence Force Recruiting Activity 1988-89 and 1989-90

	<i>Navy</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Air Force</i>	<i>Total</i>
1988-89				
Total Inquiries	46 727	70 850	78 847	196 424
Formal Applications	6 648	19 038	13 705	39 391
Applicants Interviewed	6 043	14 738	11 937	32 718
Applicants Enlisted	1 792	3 459	2 131	7 382
1989-90				
Total Inquiries	46 649	69 879	87 310	203 838
Formal Applications	6 285	16 727	15 003	38 015
Applicants Interviewed	4 840	14 207	11 650	30 697
Applicants Enlisted	1 602	3 558	1 855	7 015

Note: (a) The lines of data in this table are not strictly related. Not all of those interviewed or enlisted will have made a formal application or have been interviewed in the same year.

(b) Transfers and re-enlistments are not included in this table and consequently the total of applicants enlisted given above differs from total ADF enlistments.

or savings of program options for major acquisitions, existing commitments, personnel and recurrent operational and administrative activities continue to be developed in the usual fashion.

With the development of organisational arrangements leading up to the introduction of PMB, there have been important changes in the joint examination by Service and Departmental managers of relative priorities against established policy objectives prior to making particular recommendations to Ministers and to the Government. The most significant has been the introduction of the Defence Program Management Committee (DPMC) from 1 February 1990 as part of the revised higher Defence process.

The DPMC puts the Secretary and the CDF in formal contact with the eight Program Managers and provides a forum to oversee program management and evaluation and resolve issues associated with the production of the Defence Corporate Plan. The creation of the DPMC reflects the importance of resource allocation decisions and the increasingly difficult nature of those decisions should resource constraints become more severe.

Defence has also moved to a ten-year planning framework. Given the time scale of some major projects and the general pressures on the Defence program, there is a need to address these issues from a longer term perspective. The existing Five Year Defence Program arrangements will be supported within Defence by a further five year program covering broad, major resource implications. The early years of the Ten Year Development Program will form the basis of Defence submissions to Government. The latter half of the Ten Year Development Program will, necessarily, be developed in less precise form than the Five Year Defence Program as costings, timescales and details become more uncertain.

Devolution

A new Ministerial authorisation structure was established in line with the implementation of the purchasing reforms to provide for simplified and more flexible authority for managers. Financial management of a range of administrative expenses has been devolved to managers in Defence and proposals are also being developed for further devolution in the next financial year.

Asset Reporting

Further development of departmental financial statements, including asset management and reporting, has occurred. Changes to section 50 of the *Audit Act* require Departmental Secretaries to report annually to the Parliament on financial performance including the financial value of assets in their portfolio. To meet this objective, which is proving to be very difficult in the Defence environment because of lack of value data in existing asset management systems, a number of conferences were held with the Services and the Department of Finance to address the range of issues involved. Work is now concentrating on:

- the valuation of administrative assets;
- the development of valuation methodologies; and
- the development of system design specifications for any new systems required.

Present indications are that the project will take several years to complete. It is expected that it will be possible to achieve full reporting on all assets by 1994-95.

Information Systems

Arrangements have been made for the computerisation of Defence Finance Offices and the introduction of automated accounts payment from 1 July 1990. The first stage of a new payment system for Reserves will be implemented on that date.

Implementation of part of a new computerised discharge system for the ADF has been achieved.

Manpower

The Manpower Systems Redevelopment Project was designed primarily to redevelop Service pay and personnel systems but also included Reserves and civilian personnel systems. Following a review this year, the project is to be replaced by a Service Manpower and Pay Project, concentrating solely on Service systems.

A civilian personnel and pay system has been successfully tested in the ACT and Queensland and will be implemented progressively throughout Australia in the next three years.

Financial Systems Redevelopment Project

In September 1989, approval was given for the implementation of the project in three phases with phase one to be implemented by 1 July 1990. Following ADP Acquisition Council endorsement and Ministerial approval, phase one, known as the Defence Financial Management Information System, has been implemented in all Regional Offices. Phases two and three of the project will extend the full functionality of the Defence Financial Management Information System software initially to all major Service units and, in phase three, to all Departmental financial processing areas. Phase two will be submitted for Departmental approval and funding in 1990/91.

Audit and Review

Management Audit

The Inspector General conducted audits and reviews across all Defence programs addressing issues of capital equipment acquisition, resource and financial management, contracting, devolution, use of the Australian Government credit card, computing and probity.

In addition, a joint review was carried out with the Department of Administrative Services into the provision of security guards from the Australian Protective Services. Administrative Services has the responsibility to arrange these services for Defence on a principal/client basis.

Implementation of Fraud Control

A comprehensive fraud risk assessment and control plan was endorsed by the then Minister for Defence in November 1989. Strategies to control Defence fraud are undergoing progressive implementation. Other initiatives on fraud and major investigations undertaken were:

- the investigation of specific allegations that arose from "whistleblowers", internal reviews and referral by other agencies;
- visits to the United States and United Kingdom in connection with fraud control activities; and
- a fraud impact evaluation of Aeronautical Research Laboratories.

Defence Information Services

Following a review of Defence Information Services organisation and structures, responsibility was transferred from DSTO to Deputy Secretary Budget and Management. In other achievements for 1989-90:

- On-line cataloguing was tested and subsequently implemented in about 30 libraries in the Defence network of 79 libraries in 83 locations.
- A market survey was initiated to determine possible industry demand for Defence Information Services products and services.
- Defence Information Services was involved in a joint government/industry research project for an artificially intelligent document analyser.

Public Relations and Public Information

A Public Relations Strategy and Plan for Defence was approved in December 1989.

As part of the strategy, there has been a more vigorous media publicity stance and coverage on a day to day basis of special events such as K89. There has been greater emphasis on radio and television, regular briefing of defence correspondents and promotion of major themes in the strategy. Continuing content analysis indicates improving quality of coverage on defence issues.

Major Defence exhibitions were staged at the Royal Melbourne Show in September/October 1989 and the Sydney Royal Easter Show in April 1990. Total public attendance at these events was up to 850 000 people of whom, according to independent research, 56 per cent had an improved awareness and understanding of defence. Associated publicity reached a total audience of 1.7 million.

Surveys undertaken during the year have indicated:

- An overall three per cent improvement around Australia in general indicators of community awareness of defence.
- At the same time there was a nine per cent fall in the number of people in the community who felt completely uninformed about defence.
- A seven per cent increase in the level of community concern about defence and national security.

Archives and Historical Studies

Archives

During the year, the Department received 121 requests for access under the *Archives Act 1983* involving 40 120 individual documents. There were 152 cases completed involving 50 600 documents. Examination of Defence classified records is assisted by access to the in-house computer database which has been continually expanded since being brought into operation last year. Policies and arrangements for the effectiveness of the examinations are undergoing continuing modification and reappraisal.

Historical Studies

The Department has continued to support the Official Historian in research of the Malayan Emergency, Borneo Confrontation and Vietnam War. The process of manuscript clearance for publication has commenced.

The Department has continued to participate on the Editorial Advisory Board of the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade for the publication of *Documents on Australian Foreign Policy*.

Historical Collections and Museums

The Department and the Services hold and are responsible for a substantial part of the National Collection. The Department is presently formulating policy for the future management of the material held in Defence custody.

RESOURCES MANAGEMENT: FINANCIAL SUMMARY

Table 5.2.16: Expenditure on Defence Function 1988-89 and 1989-90

Major Appropriation Categories	1988-89		1989-90		Achieved \$m	% of Exp
	Achieved \$m	% of Exp	Budget \$m	% of Exp		
Capital						
Capital Equipment	1 778.571	21.8	1 863.252	21.5	1 908.050	21.4
Capital Facilities	383.568	4.7	411.810	4.7	446.477	5.0
Total Capital	2 162.139	26.5	2 275.062	26.2	2 354.527	26.4
Personnel						
Service	2 262.621	27.7	2 296.371	26.5	2 359.938	26.5
Civilian	676.885	8.3	658.890	7.6	666.386	7.5
DFRDB and Special Appropriations	594.447	7.3	660.284	7.6	670.996	7.5
Total Personnel Costs	3 533.953	43.3	3 615.545	41.7	3 697.320	41.5
Defence Cooperation	60.596	0.7	74.195	0.9	74.200	0.8
Other Operating Costs						
Maintenance Stores	747.185	9.1	817.325	9.4	832.891	9.4
Equipment Repair	278.954	3.4	319.282	3.7	326.947	3.7
Building Repair	170.866	2.1	191.935	2.2	198.497	2.2
Administrative Expenses and Other Services	990.035	12.1	1 070.452	12.3	1 092.734	12.3
Rent	31.709	0.4	76.095	0.9	74.374	0.8
Total Other Operating Costs	2 218.749	27.2	2 475.089	28.5	2 525.443	28.4
Defence Housing	195.487	2.4	230.134	2.7	253.229	2.8
Expenditure	8 170.924	100.0	8 670.025	100.0	8 904.719	100.0
Revenue	-433.807		-422.944		-427.126	
Trust Accounts	43.301		0.000		-1.322	
Prospective Wage and Salary Increases	0.000		80.000		0.000	
Defence Function Outlay	7 780.418		8 327.081		8 476.271	
Defence appropriations attributable to other functions:						
Cultural & recreation (Young Endeavour)	1.967		1.909		1.691	
Revenue not attributable to Defence					-0.650	

FINANCIAL SUMMARY

Table 5.2.17: Expenditure in Australia on Defence - 1988-89 and 1989-90

<i>Major Appropriation Categories</i>	1988-89		1989-90			
	<i>Achieved \$m</i>	<i>% of Exp</i>	<i>Budget \$m</i>	<i>% of Exp</i>	<i>Achieved \$m</i>	<i>% of Exp</i>
Capital						
Capital Equipment	1 044.592	58.73	1 190.041	63.87	1 282.332	67.21
Capital Facilities	382.340	99.68	411.236	99.86	444.672	99.60
Total Capital	1 426.932	66.00	1 601.277	70.38	1 727.004	73.35
Personnel						
Service	2 215.383	97.91	2 238.100	97.46	2 304.041	97.63
Civilian	668.087	98.70	651.120	98.82	658.425	98.81
DFRDB and Special Appropriations	591.750	99.55	657.484	99.58	668.060	99.56
Total Personnel Costs	3 475.220	98.34	3 546.704	98.10	3 630.526	98.19
Defence Cooperation	50.048	82.59	53.851	72.58	64.073	86.35
Other Operating Costs						
Maintenance Stores	583.088	78.04	555.381	67.95	660.006	79.24
Equipment Repair	253.012	90.70	281.549	88.18	301.138	92.11
Building Repair	169.790	99.37	191.817	99.94	197.666	99.58
Administrative Expenses and Other Services	952.160	96.17	1 029.907	96.21	1 053.294	96.39
Rent	27.945	88.13	72.835	95.72	71.150	95.67
Total Other Operating Costs	1 985.995	89.51	2 131.489	86.12	2 283.254	90.41
Defence Housing	195.487	100.00	230.134	100.00	253.229	100.00
Expenditure on Defence in Australia	7 133.682	87.31	7 563.455	87.24	7 958.086	89.37

FINANCIAL SUMMARY

Table 5.2.18: Expenditure Overseas on Defence Function 1988-89 and 1989-90

Major Appropriation Categories	1988-89		1989-90		Achieved \$m	% of Exp
	Achieved \$m	% of Exp	Budget \$m	% of Exp		
Capital						
Capital Equipment	733.979	41.27	673.211	36.13	625.718	32.79
Capital Facilities	1.228	0.32	0.574	0.14	1.805	0.40
Total Capital	735.207	34.00	673.785	29.62	627.523	26.65
Personnel						
Service	47.238	2.09	58.271	2.54	55.897	2.37
Civilian	8.798	1.30	7.770	1.18	7.961	1.19
DFRDB and Special Appropriations	2.697	0.45	2.800	0.42	2.936	0.44
Total Personnel	58.733	1.66	68.841	1.90	66.794	1.81
Defence Cooperation	10.548	17.41	20.344	27.42	10.127	13.65
Other Operating Costs						
Maintenance Stores	164.097	21.96	261.944	32.05	172.885	20.76
Equipment Repair	25.942	9.30	37.733	11.82	25.809	7.89
Building Repair	1.076	0.063	0.118	0.06	0.831	0.42
Administrative Expenses and Other Services	37.875	3.83	40.545	3.79	39.440	3.61
Rent	3.764	11.87	3.260	4.28	3.224	4.33
Total Other Operating Costs	232.754	10.49	343.600	13.88	242.189	9.59
Defence Housing	0.000	0.00	0.000	0.00	0.000	0.00
Expenditure Overseas on Defence	1 037.242	12.69	1 106.570	12.76	946.633	10.63

FINANCIAL SUMMARY

Table 5.2.19: Defence Function Revenue 1988-89 and 1989-90

<i>Sources</i>	<i>1988-89</i>	<i>1989-90</i>	<i>Receipts</i>
	<i>Receipt</i>	<i>Budget</i>	
	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>	<i>\$m</i>
Department of Defence:			
Rental of married quarters	55.633	63.310	59.507
Rations and quarters	39.991	42.856	41.524
Rental of other Defence properties	1.394	0.915	1.289
Sale of surplus assets			1.167
Foreign military sales	65.123	18.560	9.641
Defence Cooperation	21.648	3.563	5.418
Expenditure recoverable from other governments	22.486	27.723	19.039
Recoveries: Divisions 230, 234 and 245		20.213	33.607
Anzac Ship receipts			52.999
Office of Defence Production			
- Ship repair operating expenses	10.386		
- Repayment of working capital	24.833		3.064
Miscellaneous	57.308	44.220	50.569
Total Department of Defence	298.802	221.360	277.824
Department of Administrative Services			
Property Sales	6.394	70.369	18.819
Sale of surplus assets	17.905	18.900	20.810
Total Administrative Services	24.229	89.269	39.629
Other revenue			
Commonwealth-State housing agreements	1.436	1.516	1.516
Members contributions - DFRDB	108.567	110.799	108.157
National Development Commission	0.703		
Total revenue Defence function	433.807	422.944	427.126
Total movements in Trust Accounts	-43.301		1.322
Total Revenue and Movements in Trust Accounts	390.506	422.944	428.448

SUBPROGRAM 5.3: STRATEGIC PLANNING

OBJECTIVE

To formulate and develop strategic and international defence policy and guidance and to apply this to the assessment and review of priorities for defence capabilities and activities.

DESCRIPTION

The Strategic Planning subprogram comprises:

- Strategic Policy and Coordination, with the objective of ensuring that Australia's defence planning and the development of national defence and supporting capabilities are based on accurate advice on Australia's strategic circumstances and security interests. The component ensures that policy development is coordinated within the Department and that, when matters cover a number of functional areas, the Secretary and the CDF are provided with clear, well coordinated advice. The component also provides legal advice and legal policy guidance and assistance in the formulation of legal and legislative frameworks for Government initiatives.
- International Policy, with the objective to provide advice on policy for the management of defence relations with foreign countries including the Australian/United States Joint Defence Facilities, the use overseas of Australian military capabilities and developing defence responses to change in our strategic environment and to manage international defence relationships, including Defence Cooperation, and to coordinate the implementation of policy on the use of Defence resources overseas.
- Force Development and Analysis, with the objective to ensure that force development proposals are founded on sound analysis and are in accordance with Government and Departmental policies and priorities; and to further the use of rigorous analysis in defence planning and force structure development.

PERFORMANCE

For the policy divisions involved in the Strategic Planning subprogram, considerable effort revolves around the development of policy advice and briefs for the Government. While it would not be appropriate to report on the conduct of such relations between Ministers and officials, there are a number of activities and initiatives that flow from the broad subprogram objectives which can be used to indicate performance.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

Strategic Policy

The key tasks for strategic policy are to provide a comprehensive framework for the development of defence policy in specific areas and to provide practical support for the application of that policy to capability proposals and ADF activities. 1989-90 has seen significant progress.

A new strategic review has been prepared with direct involvement by HQADF. It assesses the implications of the changing Asia Pacific security environment; reviews progress towards the development of self-reliant defence capabilities as set out in the 1987 Defence White Paper; and emphasises the importance of promoting strategic stability and shared strategic perspectives within Australia's region. An extensive program of briefings has been undertaken to acquaint key Defence and ADF personnel with the review.

Work on the application of strategic policy principles and priorities has focused on the areas of operational concepts and intelligence. Close working relationships have been established with the expanded HQADF and the complementarity between strategic issues and priorities and the development of ADF operational concepts has been firmly established.

Progress has been made in coordinating intelligence and strategic policy and in fostering the intelligence community's awareness to primary defence interests. Comprehensive policy guidance has been provided in relation to a range of capability proposals and to inform the conduct of defence activities, including inputs to *K89* and *Simex 90* at the higher planning levels.

International Policy

The key tasks for international policy are to promote Australian security interests through international defence relations: in particular through a continuing program of bilateral and multilateral activities; extensive consultation with relevant government departments and agencies; the development of policy options for the Government; and the general preparation of advice relevant to international defence activities. 1989-90 saw continuing work in these areas, particularly in the key areas of defence relations with the United States, New Zealand, Papua New Guinea and other member countries of the South Pacific Forum, and the countries of Asean.

United States

The annual Australia United States Ministerial Talks were held in Sydney on 2-3 November 1989 and attended by the then Minister for Defence, Mr Beazley, and senior Defence officials. This meeting, the first with officials of the Bush Administration, including the Secretary of Defense Mr Richard Cheney, reaffirmed the positive contribution the Anzus alliance makes to regional security and stability as well as its relevance to the global balance. Following the talks, Mr Beazley and Mr Cheney signed a defence logistics support agreement.

Australian and United States officials continued to consult closely during 1989-90 on developments affecting our defence and security interests in the Asia Pacific region, including the significant improvement in superpower relations and the changes in Europe. These included discussions in Canberra in March 1990 about United States military strategy and possible adjustments in its military presence in the region, and high-level officials talks in Washington in June 1990 as part of the regular Defence/Defense Talks.

The bilateral relationship continues to provide benefits to Australia in the form of an extensive program of military training and combined exercises, intelligence exchanges, and cooperation in defence science and technology, communications and logistics.

A total of 43 United States warships, of which two were nuclear-powered, made 23 port visits to Australian ports during the year. Visits by all United States warships are an important element of the extensive defence cooperation activities shared by the two countries. As well as the ship visits, unarmed USAF B52 aircraft continued to visit Australia for low-level navigation training, although the frequency of such flights has diminished with the withdrawal from Guam of the B52 aircraft previously stationed there.

The Senate Standing Committee on Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade tabled its report on safety aspects of visits by nuclear-powered and nuclear-weapons capable warships in August 1989. The Committee endorsed judgements by successive Australian Governments about the safety issues involved in such visits. The Government welcomed the report as an independent assessment of visit arrangements and for its contribution to public awareness. The recommendations of the report have been or are being carried out with the cooperation of Federal, state and territorial governments and relevant agencies.

Australia's continued cooperation with the United States in the operation and management of the Joint Australia United States Defence Facilities was enhanced, in accordance with arrangements announced by the Prime Minister on 22 November 1988. Additional Australian Defence personnel have been integrated into senior management positions and into the more highly specialised technical and operational functions at the Joint Defence Facilities at Pine Gap and Nurrungar. This has included the appointment of Australians as Deputy Chief of Facility at Pine Gap and Deputy Commander at Nurrungar. The facilities continue to play a vital role in arms control and global stability, as well as directly serving Australian interests through the provision of intelligence and other information essential for our defence requirements.

On 12 March 1990, the Prime Minister announced that the Australian and United States Governments had agreed to study an Australian proposal to take over and operate the Naval Communications Station at North West Cape as an Australian Defence Facility rather than as a Joint Defence Facility. Officials had exploratory discussions on the proposal in Washington in June 1990. The Australian proposal looks to the future and to enhancing our self-reliant defence capability. North West Cape presently provides the primary means of communicating with our submerged submarines and we use that capability extensively. North West Cape will become even more important to Australia over the next ten years as our new submarines join the RAN.

New Zealand

During the year, Australia pursued a range of activities with New Zealand reflecting the defence relationship's basic importance to the security of both countries. In particular:

- The Anzac Ship project was approved and a treaty signed between the two countries in relation to New Zealand's partnership in the project.
- Negotiations were completed for an agreement under which the RNZAF's Skyhawk aircraft would undertake advanced support flying for the RAN.
- Regular maritime surveillance patrols by RAAF and RNZAF P-3C Orion aircraft continued to be coordinated with RAN, RNZN and regional patrol boat activity.
- The two Defence Ministers agreed to the commencement of negotiations on a logistic support agreement.

The annual review of the Defence relationship by the Australian and New Zealand Defence Ministers was held in Canberra in June 1990. The meeting was preceded by the annual meeting of the Australia New Zealand Consultative Committee.

Papua New Guinea

During 1989-90, the dispute on Bougainville focused attention on Australia's defence relationship with Papua New Guinea. The impact of specific events and requests, particularly relating to the safety of Australians on the island, had to be assessed on a day to day basis. More generally, the broader implications of the dispute for Australian and Papua New Guinea security interests had to be considered and defence activities coordinated with the activities of other government departments and overall Government policy. The crisis also highlighted the need for greater emphasis to be placed on cooperative defence activities designed to improve the discipline and infantry skills of the PNGDF.

The then Minister for Defence, Mr Beazley, visited Papua New Guinea in January for the annual Ministerial Forum established under the auspices of the Joint Declaration of Principles between Australia and Papua New Guinea. The Secretary and the CDF also attended the annual High Level Defence Consultations in December 1989, which were held in Port Moresby.

South Pacific

Defence continued to monitor international developments in the South Pacific region and to promote a program of bilateral and multilateral defence activities with the South Pacific countries. Defence activities continued under the Defence Cooperation umbrella and focused on improving the maritime surveillance capabilities and national infrastructure of the Pacific island countries.

In particular, annual talks reviewing Defence Cooperation activities were held during the year; four Pacific Patrol Boats were handed over to Pacific island countries; Australia funded and managed major construction and communication projects in the Pacific Island countries; and two series of long-range maritime patrol deployments were complemented by RAN ship visits to South Pacific countries.

Asean Countries

The development, management and implementation of defence international policy governing interaction with the Asean countries continued during 1989-90. This included support for bilateral exercise activity, high level visits and policy consultations, training, study visits and ship deployments.

We maintained our commitment to the Five Power Defence Arrangements through our presence at Butterworth and participation in the Integrated Air Defence System (IADS) and Five Power exercises. The Australian presence at Butterworth included rotational F/A-18 and F-111 deployments from Australia, P-3C long-range maritime patrol aircraft conducting surveillance operations and an infantry company for base security.

FPDA exercises held during 1989-90 were:

- Maritime exercise *Starfish*, sponsored alternately by Malaysia and Singapore and sponsored by Malaysia in July 1989.
- Land exercise *Lion Spirit* in October 1989, hosted by Singapore.
- Major air exercises *Adex 89-4* during September/October 1989 and *Adex 90-2* during March 1990.

The first IADS Air Defence Seminar for eight years was held in November 1989 in Singapore. The seminar included speeches from senior defence officials from FPDA countries and presentations from the RAAF, RNZAF, the Royal Air Force and the Royal Navy on topics related to air defence operations.

During 1989-90, Australia and Indonesia began to explore the scope for a broader range of bilateral cooperation. The Commander of the Indonesian Armed Forces, General Try Sutrisno, visited Australia in July 1989. During the visit, agreement was reached on a core agenda of future cooperation which would be activity oriented and emphasise personnel contacts.

Bilateral discussions were continued during the visit of the CDF to Jakarta in March 1990 to consider the future development of the defence relationship. The agenda outlined during General Sutrisno's earlier visit to Australia was expanded and endorsed. It is aimed at increasing both countries' appreciation of the strategic interests we share, promoting a greater understanding of each other's defence policy and planning processes and laying the foundations for more substantive cooperation in future.

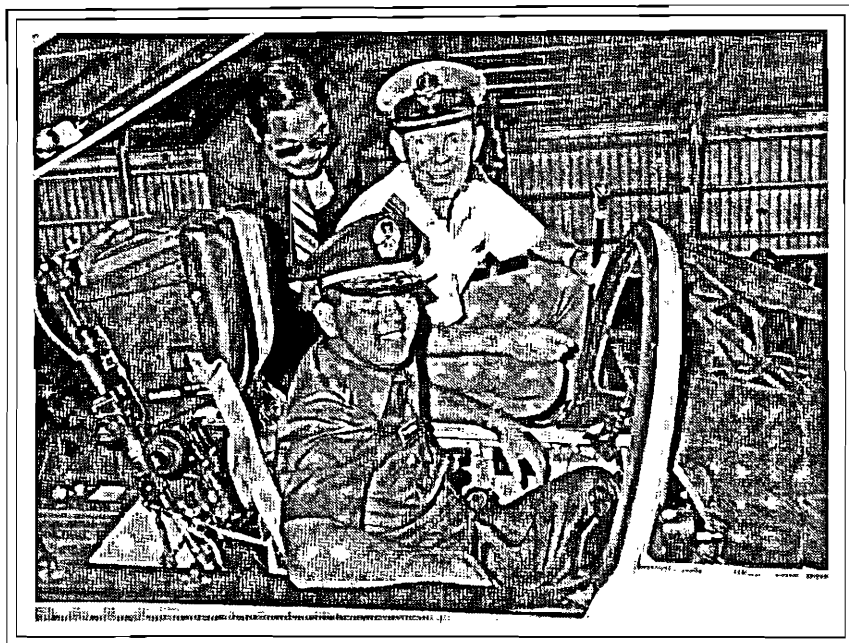
Both Chiefs took the opportunity at their meeting to endorse the following proposals for mutual cooperation:

- Future bilateral defence activities will involve regular exchange of views on the regional strategic situation.

- Senior level study visits to explore in more detail possible areas of cooperation such as logistics, training and survey.
- An increase in the number of places for Indonesian attendance at Australian staff colleges.
- Further development of the scope and complexity of the current series of combined naval exercises.
- Visits of transiting RAAF F/A-18 aircraft. Such visits would provide opportunities to establish contacts between aircrews of the two countries with the prospect of combined air exercises at a later stage.

These measures will enhance mutual understanding through increased personnel contact at all levels.

General Try Sutrisno, the Commander of the Indonesian Armed Forces, inspects an F/A-18 at RAAF Tindall during his visit to Australia in July 1989. Accompanying him are Group Captain Peter Ncholson, the Commanding Officer of Tindall, and the Indonesian Ambassador to Australia, His Excellency Mr Roesman.



Joint exercises held with Asean countries during 1989-90 included:

- Exercise *Night Panther* in Thailand during April/May 1990 involving the Australian infantry company from Butterworth.
- Exercise *Cope Thunder* in the Philippines during May 1990 involving RAAF F/A-18 and F-111 aircraft, the USAF and, in a ground support role, the Philippines Air Force.
- Exercise *Extendex* in the Philippines during May 1990 involving RAAF P-3C aircraft and the United States Navy.
- Exercise *Aussiam* in Thai waters during June 1990 involving RAN ships with vessels and aircraft of the Royal Thai Navy.

Senior level visits made between Asean countries and Australia during 1989-90 included consultations on regional security issues, defence force development and defence cooperation.

They included: visits to Malaysia by the CDF, attending the FPDA countries' Chiefs of Defence Force Meeting, and by Deputy Secretary Budget and Management and the Chief of General Staff; visits to Thailand by Deputy Secretary Strategic and Intelligence for defence policy talks and by the Chief of

Air Staff; visits to Singapore by the CDF, Chief of Naval Staff, Chief of Air Staff and Deputy Secretary Strategic and Intelligence; and a visit to Brunei by the Chief of Air Staff.

Senior level visits were made to Australia from Malaysia by Secretary General Malaysian Ministry of Defence, Dato Nasruddin, and the Fleet Commander, Rear Admiral Haram. Visits were also made from Thailand by Commanding General Special Warfare Command, Lieutenant General Wimol, and Assistant Chief, Aide-de-Camp General, Lieutenant General Sayan, and from Singapore by First Permanent Secretary for Defence, Lim Siong Guan.

RAN vessels carried out rotational deployments on a virtually continuous basis to South East Asian waters using support facilities in Malaysia and Singapore. Opportunity bilateral exercises were conducted with regional navies.

Individual and group training in Australia involving personnel from Asean countries and study visits were conducted under the auspices of Defence Cooperation.

Japan

The development of a dialogue with Japan on strategic and international security issues of mutual interest commenced, with senior officials talks by Deputy Secretary Strategic and Intelligence and the Vice Chief of the Defence Force, in Japan in March 1990. The high level dialogue continued with the visit to Australia in May 1990 of Japanese Minister of State for Defence Ishikawa. At the same time, Service contacts have been fostered by visits to Japan by the CDF in September 1989 and the Chief of Naval Staff in April 1990.

Europe

While Defence priorities are focused on Australia's region and the United States, Defence contacts with other areas such as Canada and European countries, including the Soviet Union, were maintained. This included visits to and from countries such as the United Kingdom and Sweden such as the visit to Australia by the Swedish Defence Commander, General Gustafsson.

Disarmament and Arms Control

Defence involvement in disarmament and arms control matters continued particularly in the newer priority areas such as a global chemical weapons convention and participation in the Missile Technology Control Regime, an important mechanism to prevent proliferation of ballistic missile technologies.

Defence was closely involved in Australia's decision to adhere to the guidelines of the Missile Technology Control Regime, which was announced in June 1990. The Regime seeks to prevent the proliferation of missiles which can carry a 500 kg payload to a range of at least 300 km. Such missiles are capable of delivering weapons of mass destruction. Defence will administer export controls to give effect to Australia's adherence to the Regime.

Defence Support Centre Woomera

The responsibility for the policy direction and overall management of the Centre was transferred from DSTO to International Policy Division during 1989-90, reflecting the town's main role as the residential and support base for the Joint Defence Facility at Nurrungar. Action was taken during the year to implement a corporate management plan for the Centre. The Area Administrator Woomera has been given full management control and a specific directive as to responsibilities and objectives. The new arrangements have already produced savings in recurring costs of \$450 000 for 1989-90. In succeeding years, this will rise to \$600 000 per annum in current dollars. The savings have resulted from better management of resources, rationalisation of support services, the introduction of greater efficiencies into the organisation of services and the marketing of the Centre's capabilities on a commercial basis. It is planned that more savings will be identified for future years.

Force Development

Following the Structural Review of Higher ADF Staff Arrangements, there have been significant changes to the management of the new major investment program. The revised higher Defence process now covers all new major investment, not simply new major capital equipment, and the focus is on longer term planning, with the preparation of a ten year new major equipment program in place of the previous five year program.

Force Development and Analysis Division contributes to the revised process by providing advice on options to inform decisions on a range of force development issues. During 1989-90 these have included: surveillance and early warning; strategic strike; naval surface and submarine warfare; mine countermeasures; strategic transport; battlefield mobility; and the Reserves. The Division also contributed to the development of PMB arrangements, particularly for planning and performance reporting. It is coordinating the development of the initial Defence Corporate Plan and management arrangements for the new Strategy and Intelligence program.

Defence Intelligence

Joint Intelligence Organization

During 1989-90, JIO provided a wide range of information and assessments of international developments and foreign defence capabilities relevant to Australia's strategic environment to support policy formulation, force structure development and military planning.

In particular, JIO's assessments were used in relation to Australian contributions to United Nations peacekeeping activities in Namibia, the Middle East and Iran/Iraq, and to inform Australian participation in arms control discussions. They also supported contingency planning for the safety of Australian citizens and disaster relief in the South Pacific as well as assessments of the outflow of refugees from Vietnam and Cambodia.

To ensure that its work focuses on matters of most direct concern to the Defence organisation as a whole, JIO's efforts this year culminated in a new statement of priorities approved by the Secretary and the CDF in June 1990.

The amalgamation of HQADF intelligence staff with JIO has proved to be a productive change. The review of the intelligence requirements and resources of the ADF, undertaken by the Director of JIO, is resulting in other changes. Principal among these are the development of the intelligence staffs at Maritime, Land and Air Commands, the eventual distribution of some responsibility for intelligence production from JIO to the Commands and major changes in the structure of the organisation. The new organisation will adopt a multi-disciplinary approach to analysis and provide a strong focus on intelligence production. It will be put into effect on 1 July 1990.

The change of name to Defence Intelligence Organisation foreshadowed last year, will be given effect as soon as the necessary amendments to relevant legislation have been passed by Parliament.

Defence Signals Directorate

The Defence Signals Directorate collects, produces and disseminates foreign signals intelligence and advises the Government on all matters pertaining to communications security and computer security. The Directorate operates in concert with the joint and single Service staffs, the other intelligence and security agencies and with counterpart agencies overseas.

The Directorate's preparations for relocation to Canberra are proceeding as scheduled and the relocation is expected to be substantially completed by the end of 1992. The contract has been let for the construction of the Directorate's new building. The major personnel issues related to the relocation, including a relocation package, have been subject to continuing discussions with staff

associations in a joint consultative body and are close to resolution.

The project to establish the Australian Defence Satellite Communications Station at Geraldton continued on schedule with site preparation and building construction progressing well.

Legislation and Litigation

Defence (Areas Control) Regulations

New Defence (Areas Control) Regulations, which were gazetted on 7 December 1989, restrict the height of buildings and other objects in the vicinity of Defence airfields. The new Regulations are based on current civil aviation provisions and replace obsolete Defence provisions which date from 1937. The new Regulations at present apply only to the Defence airfield at Nowra in New South Wales which is being used as a pilot project. However, it is intended that the Regulations will be progressively extended to cover all major Defence airfields.

Defence Force Discipline Legislation Board of Review

The report of the Board of Review into the operation of the *Defence Force Discipline Act 1982* was tabled in Parliament on 7 September 1989. The majority of the recommendations of the board have been accepted by the Defence Force Personnel Policy Committee and action is now underway to implement those recommendations. Subject to acceptance by the Government, extensive amendments to the Act and subordinate legislation will be proposed.

Voyager Litigation

Since 1983, about 80 survivors of the Voyager sinking in 1964 have begun actions for damages against the Commonwealth and other claims are foreshadowed. The claims are being defended by the Commonwealth.

On 7 November 1988, the Full Court of the Victorian Supreme Court found for the plaintiff in a test case (Verwayen) about the availability to the Commonwealth of legal defences to the claims. The Commonwealth was granted special leave to appeal to the High Court and the appeal was heard on 8 February 1990. The decision was reserved.

Asbestos Claims

There was considerable media publicity during the year about compensation entitlements for persons suffering from asbestos-related diseases. The *Commonwealth Employees Rehabilitation and Compensation Act 1988* provides statutory benefits to present and past employees (including members and ex-members of the ADF) for work-related asbestos diseases. In addition, a small number of common law damages claims have been made by past and present Commonwealth employees. There were 24 such claims current at 30 June 1990, seven being from former Navy members.

Freedom of Information

About 20 per cent of the requests for access which were finalised were processed within the 30 days required by the *Freedom of Information Act*.

During the year, 181 valid requests for access to documents were received. In addition, 681 requests, claiming to be made under the Act, were processed outside the Act. This is in accordance with the Government's direction that present and past employees be allowed access to their personnel documents without having to resort to a request under the Act. In other cases, the claimant elected not to proceed with the request under the FOI Act.

Table 5.3.1: FOI Requests

<i>Type of Request</i>	<i>Processed to Finality</i>	<i>Granted in Full or Part</i>
Access to documents (s19)	172	141
Amendment of personal record	3	1
Internal review	1	1

The Administrative Appeals Tribunal reviewed two FOI related applications involving the Department. In the first case, the Department's decision to refuse a request by a former Army officer that his personal records be amended was overturned by the Tribunal. In the second case, the Tribunal found in the Department's favour on a procedural question involving requests for compensation records.

FOI Revenue and Costs

Application fees and charges totalling \$2 786 were received during 1989-90.

Table 5.3.2: Estimated Costs of Administering the FOI Act

	\$
Personnel	357 250
On cost (at rate of 60%)	214 350
Other costs	19 560
Total	591 160

Sections 8 and 9 of the FOI Act

The Department's FOI Act section 8 statement and those for certain Defence portfolio authorities are given in Appendix F. Copies of the Department's FOI Act section 9 statement, which lists documents and other materials which give guidance to its officers when making decisions affecting members of the public, are available from the Department's FOI Section in Canberra and from offices of the Australian Archives throughout Australia. Details on how to obtain these are given in Appendix D.

FOI Training

Training sessions on the subject of Administrative Law, including FOI, are included regularly in the Department's executive and middle management courses.

SUBPROGRAM 5.4: LOGISTICS

OBJECTIVE

The mission of logistics in Defence is to provide the effective and efficient logistics support needed for the ADF to meet endorsed readiness and sustainability objectives. This support is provided mainly by other programs, principally Current Defence Forces, within policy guidance provided by the Logistics subprogram.

The objective of the Logistics subprogram, then, is to develop logistics policies and procedures within available resources and, exploiting civil resources where practicable, to contribute to effective and efficient logistics support to the ADF for current and foreseeable peacetime tasks and credible contingencies, maintaining skills for expansion to meet those contingencies which may arise in the longer term.

DESCRIPTION

The Defence Logistics Division implements the Logistics subprogram and is part of the Acquisition and Logistics Organisation. The Division is responsible for the development of logistics policy, Defence quality assurance activities, coordination of operational logistic support to the ADF, joint movements and transport and logistics computing support, including the Supply Systems Redevelopment Project.

PERFORMANCE

The Logistics subprogram covers activities ranging from policy advice to data processing. Quantitative indicators of performance can be used in the more operational areas; for example, the number of Defence Standards developed or system uptime in the computing support area. Measurement of performance in policy development areas has to rely mainly on the assessment or demonstration of the gains in effectiveness or resource savings in other programs which results from policy and procedural development and reviews conducted within the Logistics subprogram.

OUTCOMES FOR 1989-90

The more significant outcomes which have been achieved in Defence Logistics this year are outlined below.

Organisation and Management

There has been a major change to the organisational structure of Defence Logistics which has involved two steps. Firstly, the previous Defence Logistics Organisation was rationalised and became the Defence Logistics Division. This resulted in a more effective structure through centralising policy development and decentralising execution, thus devolving more authority, particularly for financial approvals, in accordance with Financial Management Improvement Plan principles.

Secondly, the new Defence Logistics Division has been amalgamated with the Capital Procurement Organisation to become the Acquisition and Logistics Organisation. This was initiated to streamline operations and more closely align the logistics and acquisition functions to obtain greater effectiveness in these areas. As a result, the through-life support requirements of Defence capabilities will have a higher priority in the acquisition process.

This second step resulted from the recommendation of the ADF Structural Review to appoint an

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force for Logistics with functional responsibility to both Deputy Secretary Acquisition and Logistics and the Vice Chief of the Defence Force. It will improve management practices by giving centralised policy direction to logistics activities throughout Defence.

Another significant achievement for the management of Defence Logistics has been the development and release, on 18 June 1990, of the Defence Logistics Strategic Planning Guide. The Guide's principal themes are relating logistics resources and plans to operational requirements, improving logistics information systems as an investment in force capability and developing military and civil infrastructure. It will improve the strategic planning process and provide a clearer focus for the

development of logistic planning at all levels. The Defence logistics mission statement is an important step in that process.

Rationalisation of Explosives Storage

Defence policy for the safe storage of ammunition and explosives has been revised. Important changes include the annual review and renewal of Ministerial approvals for risk waivers from safety principles, an audit program to assure policy compliance and increased consultation with the community on proposed land use changes for properties adjacent to explosive storage and handling facilities. These changes will enhance safety and lead to more efficient and environmentally sensitive handling of ammunition and explosives.

More effective Commonwealth policy for the management of property affected by unexploded ordnance is also under development. This will be achieved through maintenance of a central register of land affected by unexploded ordnance and consultation with state and local governments on the appropriate development of such land and will assist in meeting environmental concerns.

Review of Inventory Holdings and Management

The Defence Logistic Redevelopment Project was announced on 18 June 1990. The project will implement changes with the potential to produce savings of up to \$450 million in the cost of logistics support over the next 10 years.

The changes include increased accountability for consumption of stores at unit level, reduced duplication between the Services in inventory management and rationalisation of warehousing arrangements as well as reductions in Defence logistics personnel. The project follows preparatory work by a Defence task force and a commercial consultant.

Movements and Transport

A program has been implemented to improve the life cycle management of commercial vehicles, with estimated savings of \$231 million over 10 years. During the year, procedures were also developed with civil transport organisations for use of their resources in defence emergencies.

International Logistics Aspects

The Cooperative Defence Logistic Support Agreement with the United States has been renegotiated and was signed on 4 November 1989. The Agreement contributes to self-reliance as, without that support, the ADF would need to hold larger stocks of equipment and munitions at a commensurately greater cost.

Other bilateral logistics agreements have been arranged with regional nations. These will both enhance Australia's defence relationships with the region and present opportunities for Australian industry.

Development of Civil Infrastructure

A pilot repair program has been established with the United States Navy under which Australian contractors will become qualified to undertake United States Department of Defense maintenance work. This will contribute to improved Australian industry capability and preparedness.

A number of activities have contributed to developing national standards of measurement to meet Defence requirements. These include providing financial resources to the National Measurement Laboratory of the CSIRO, rationalising Defence calibration capabilities, developing a program with the National Association of Testing Authorities for its accreditation of Defence calibration facilities and developing a training program for civilian and military calibration technicians.

Information Systems

The adoption of improved management practices in Defence logistics is being aided by the development and implementation of systems which provide management information and support performance measurement and decision making. An integrated tri-service Foreign Military Sales information reporting and management system has been implemented while the Supply Systems Redevelopment Project has awarded a contract for commercial software, established a main-frame development environment and developed a local area network for the Army at Moorebank.

Defence Quality Assurance

A single Defence Quality Assurance organisation has been established, resulting in a more effective quality assurance service and significant manpower and administrative savings. A reduction of 248 military and civilian positions was achieved during the year, yielding an annual saving of \$8.9 million.

Disposals

The sale of surplus assets, including the Mirage aircraft and Centurion tanks, contributed to reductions in the Defence inventory.

THE EMPLOYMENT OF WOMEN IN THE ADF

The new policy on the employment of women in the ADF will lead to substantially improved career opportunities for women. It will also permit a more flexible and effective use of personnel while maintaining Australia's defence capabilities at the required level.

Changes announced in May 1990 by Gordon Bilney, the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel, mean that women in the ADF will now serve in combat-related positions. Combat-related positions include those which require a person to work in proximity to combat operations such as in transport, resupply, intelligence and communications.

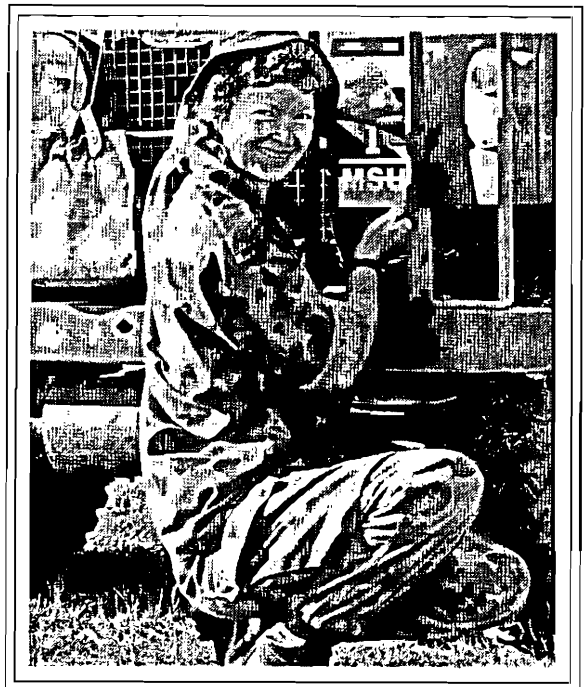
A number of factors influenced this decision, not least of which was the recognition of the need to provide Servicewomen with quality career opportunities. Other considerations included community expectations in relation to equal opportunities and the need to attract talented women to a long-term career in the ADF. Also taken into account were the views of Servicewomen themselves on their career prospects and employment preferences.

The changes reflect the realisation that the ADF cannot continue to segregate the roles of men and women according to a social model from the 1950s. Modern social and political reality demands a more equitable approach.

At present, many young women with considerable ability and promise are being recruited. These recruits are not helped by opening up large numbers of essentially low level, often low skill, and certainly low prospect positions. What they require, and deserve, are real career opportunities and positions of quality and challenge. They must be given the opportunity to develop to their full potential, to reach the very highest ranks on merit and to make the maximum contribution to the ADF and the nation. There is no doubt this can be achieved. Women recruits have, for example, topped the Defence Force Academy for the last two years. Such women can make a great contribution to the ADF - they now have the opportunity to do so.

The Navy expects to have 500 women at sea by the mid-1990s. The service is opening up all surface ship positions to women, providing 14 900 positions out of a total of 15 800, or 94 per cent of the force, in open competition. Only the submarine force remains single sex.

Likewise, the Air Force has opened all positions except those for aircrew in combat aircraft - F/A-18s, F-111s, and P-3Cs - and the airfield defence guard category. Thus 94 per cent of the force will be available to women in competition.



LAC Sue Wuoti fitting a unit identification sign to a Landrover at Darwin Naval Base during the K89 buildup in July 1989

The Army anticipates that women will become eligible for 59 per cent of the force. The combat exemption will still apply and excludes women from infantry, artillery, armour and combat engineers.

Women entering combat-related positions will be required to meet the same professional and physical standards as men. Should a conflict develop, women will not be withdrawn from these positions before their units are committed to operations but will continue to perform the duties for which they have been trained. Furthermore, changes in the employment policy for women in the permanent force will flow on to the reserves.

The employment of women in new areas and occupations will be introduced progressively. This controlled implementation will ensure that any disruption to existing career structures and, in the case of the Navy, sea/shore ratios, will be minimised. Recruiting and training women in significant numbers for deployment into combat-related positions will also take some time.

Progress on the implementation of this initiative will be reviewed in June of 1991 and 1992 and the policy itself in June 1993. The improved career opportunities now available will raise the profile of the ADF as a career choice for young women and be reflected in higher rates of recruitment and retention.

PART THREE

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A: ACTS ADMINISTERED BY THE MINISTER FOR DEFENCE

Air Force Act 1923
Approved Defence Projects Protection Act 1947
Cockatoo and Schnapper Islands Act 1949
Control of Naval Waters Act 1918
Defence Act 1903 (a)
Defence Force Discipline Act 1982
Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Act 1973
 Defence Force Retirements and Death Benefits (Pension Increases) Acts
 Defence Force Retirement Benefits Acts
Defence Forces Retirement Benefits Fund (Distribution of Surplus to Pensioners) Act 1976
 Defence Forces Retirement Benefits (Pension Increases) Acts
Defence Housing Authority Act 1987
Defence (Parliamentary Candidates) Act 1969
Defence (Special Undertakings) Acts 1952
Geneva Conventions Act 1957, (Part IV) (b)
Naval Defence Act 1910
Royal Australian Air Force Veterans' Residences Act 1953
Services Trust Funds Act 1947
Supply and Development Act 1939
War Service Estates Act 1942
Williamstown Dockyard Employees Act 1987

Notes: (a) Defence Act 1903.

Sections 58A to 58Y, dealing with financial conditions of service for members of the Defence Force are administered by the Department of Industrial Relations.

Sections 61, 61A, 61B, 118A and 118B are administered by the Minister for Employment, Education and Training. They deal with wartime service obligations.

Paragraph 124 (1) (qba), dealing with war graves, is administered by the Minister for Veterans' Affairs.

(b) Geneva Conventions Act 1957.

Parts I, II, III and V, dealing with the enforcement of the Geneva Conventions, are administered by the Attorney-General.

APPENDIX B: NON STATUTORY BODIES

Emergency Broadcasting Committee

The Committee was established by a Ministerial Directive in 1963 to review existing broadcasting facilities and to recommend the additional facilities that would be required to maintain broadcasting communications following a major disaster arising from civil defence or natural causes.

The Committee meets only when required. It did not meet during the year; the next meeting is tentatively planned for early 1991.

The membership of the Committee comprises:

- Director General Natural Disasters Organisation (Chair)
- Department of Defence - Joint Communications Staff representative
- Department of Transport and Communications representative
- Australian Broadcasting Corporation representative
- Australian Telecommunications Commission representative
- Federation of Australian Commercial Radio Broadcasters representative (coopted)
- Federation of Australian Commercial Television Stations representative (coopted)
- Manager Communications and Information Systems - Natural Disasters Organisation (Secretary)

No remuneration is paid to the members. Representative members are appointed by their organisation on the basis of position and expertise.

Defence Industry Committee

The Committee advises the Minister and the Department on Defence industry issues, including the Defence Offsets Program, stockpiling of strategic materials and the retention or creation of manufacturing capacity to meet Defence requirements.

The Committee met three times during the year. The membership of the Committee is:

- Mr J A L Hooke CBE (Chair)
- Mr J G Bagshaw, Managing Director, General Motors-Holden Automotive Ltd
- Mr V Falconer, National Vice President, Federated Ironworkers' Association of Australia
- Mr B Fraser, National Organiser, AMWU
- Mr K A Harris, Managing Director, Australian Defence Industries Pty Ltd
- Mr J B Prescott, Chief Executive Officer, BHP Steel
- Three business vacancies (to be announced)
- Deputy Secretary, Acquisition and Logistics
- Assistant Chief of Naval Staff - Materiel
- Assistant Chief of the General Staff - Materiel
- Assistant Chief of the Air Staff - Materiel
- Chief Defence Scientist
- Assistant Chief of Defence Force - Logistics
- Deputy Secretary, Department of Industry, Technology and Commerce
- First Assistant Secretary, Department of Finance, Defence and Government Division
- First Assistant Secretary, Industry Policy and Operations (Executive member)

Business members of the Committee are invited to join by the Minister for Defence. No remuneration is paid to the members but costs associated with attendance at meetings are met by the Department.

In 1989, the Committee initiated the widest ranging survey to be undertaken by the Department. The survey aims to identify any actual or perceived barriers to Australian firms seeking Defence business. A report on the findings is expected by the end of 1990.

The Committee, in line with its responsibilities to oversee and provide advice on Defence offsets, contributed to and endorsed new guidelines for Defence offsets which were subsequently approved by the Minister in October 1989.

Throughout the year, the Committee was kept advised of major defence projects and participated in assessing the impact on Australian companies of the import/export controls on commercial technology.

The Committee supervised the 1990 Industrial Mobilisation Courses held in Sydney, Melbourne and Perth. The numbers of representatives from industry, commerce and tertiary institutions attending the courses were roughly equivalent to participants from the Federal and State Public Services and the ADF.

Part Three

Australian Shipping Defence Council

The Council was formed on 25 February 1982 with the approval of the Minister for Defence. The objectives of the Council are to provide liaison between the Royal Australian Navy and those who control and operate peacetime Australian merchant shipping in order to plan for its safety and protection in times of threat, tension, emergency or war.

The Council meets twice a year and is hosted in turn by participating members.

The membership of the Council is:

- Deputy Chief of Naval Staff (Chair)
- Director General Joint Movements and Transport
- Director of Naval Policy and Maritime Doctrine
- Director of Air Warfare
- Deputy Secretary, Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade
- First Assistant Secretary, Marine Policy Division, Department of Transport and Communications
- Chairman, Australian National Maritime Association
- General Manager, Refining and Supply, AMPOL Petroleum Limited
- General Manager Transport, BHP Company Limited
- Chief Executive, TNT Shipping and Development Limited
- Chairman, Australian National Line
- General Manager - Shipping, Howard Smith Industries
- Chief Executive Officer, Union Shipping Australia
- Staff Officer (Naval Control and Protection of Shipping), Directorate of Coordination - Navy (Secretary)

There is no specified term of appointment to the Council and there is no remuneration paid to members.

Committee for Employer Support of Reserve Forces

The Committee was established on 23 February 1977 by the Minister for Defence to encourage employers to promote service in the ADF Reserves.

The Committee consists of a national executive and committees at state level, with the national executive composed of:

- Mr A N Edwards AM OBE, Managing Director, DEFCOM Pty Ltd (Chair)
- Major General J M L MacDonald (retired) (Deputy Chair)
- Captain J Sketchley RAN EM (National Executive Officer)
- ACTU representative
- Defence Central representative
- A representative from Directorate of Reserves - Navy
- A representative from the Office of the Assistant Chief of the General Staff - Army Reserve
- A representative from the Directorate of Reserves - Air Force
- The chair from each state/territory committee

The 1989-90 budget for the Committee was \$252 000.

Army Reserve Advisory Council

The Council was established on 10 February 1976 by the Minister for Defence to advise the CGS on matters affecting the Army Reserve. These matters include any changes necessary or proposed which affect the Army Reserve, not excluding policy matters; management and other practices in the Army Reserve in light of changes in comparable civilian activities; and other measures which might be taken to promote interest in the Army Reserve.

The composition of the Council is:

- Assistant Chief of the General Staff - Army Reserve (Chair)
- Deputy Assistant Chief of the General Staff - Army Reserve
- An employer representative
- An ACTU representative
- A Defence Central representative
- A representative of the Returned Services League
- A behavioural scientist
- A junior ARes officer

Appointment to the Council is usually for three years with eligibility for reappointment for a further period of not more than three years.

The Council had a 1989-90 budget of \$3 000 which was used for travel to the annual Council meeting at Army Office. An agenda of topical items was addressed to pursue compliance with the role of the Council.

Defence Press and Broadcasting Committee

The Committee dates from 1952 when the Government invited media representatives to participate in a scheme of voluntary restraint regarding the publication of material bearing on national security.

The Committee was formed to administer the D Notice (Defence Notice to the Press) system. D Notices outline information which, if published, would be detrimental to Australia's security. D Notices are issued, withdrawn and amended on the authority of the Committee.

The Committee is chaired by the Minister for Defence and comprises four Defence members on an ex officio basis (the Secretary, the CDF, First Assistant Secretary Strategic Policy and Coordination and Director Joint Intelligence Organization) and wide representation from Australia's media organisations.

There was no requirement for the Committee to meet in the reporting period and no expenses were incurred.

The Australian Defence Force Academy Council

The Academy Council was established under Part 6 of the Agreement dated 7 May 1981 between the Commonwealth of Australia and the University of New South Wales which provided for the establishment of the Australian Defence Force Academy.

The objectives and functions of the Council are to advise the Minister for Defence on the development and operation of the Academy and to advise the University on matters relating to the development and operation of the College.

The Council meets twice yearly with each meeting being preceded by meetings of its Executive and Finance and Administration Committees. Consideration of progress reports from the Commandant, Rector and the Finance and Administration Committee, together with any items of significance tabled outside of these reports represents the major activities of the Academy Council. The Council also reports annually to the Minister for Defence and the University as required under the Agreement.

Council members are as follows:

The Hon Sir Edward Woodward OBE - (Chair)

Academic members:

Professor D.J. Anderson, Chairman Academic Board, UNSW

Professor L. Michael Birt AO CBE, Vice-Chancellor, UNSW

Mrs C Kendrick, University College

Mr S P Khan, University College

Professor J Ronayne, UNSW

Professor A Wicken, UNSW

Professor G V H Wilson, Rector

Captain C T Hollier, University College

Professor R F McLean, University College

Dr P A McGavin, University College

Dr J Sneddon, University College

Military members:

General P C Gratton AC OBE, Chief of the Defence Force

Vice Admiral M W Hudson AC, Chief of Naval Staff

Lieutenant General H J Coates AO, Chief of the General Staff

Air Marshal R G Funnell AC, Chief of the Air Staff

Air Vice Marshal R J Bomball AO, Commandant

Captain R J Letts MVO RAN, Military Staff

Officer Cadet F E Kusternig, Undergraduate

Department of Defence member:

Mr A J Ayers AO, Secretary, Department of Defence

Ministerial appointments:

Miss E Alexander AM

Professor D Ball

Sir William Keys AC OBE MC

Terms of appointment vary according to the circumstances under which a member is appointed to the Council. Aside from those appointments related to a particular office, the maximum term is 3 years with such members being eligible for reappointment.

Part Three

No remuneration is paid to members; however the Academy meets the travel and accommodation expenses of interstate members from within its administrative allocation.

The Academy Council has no budget of its own and has no role in the distribution of funds to the Academy. In addition to meeting the travel and accommodation expenses of members, the Defence Academy provides secretariat support to the Council.

The Academy Council is required, under the Agreement, to report at least annually to the Minister for Defence and to the University. It does this through its Chair.

National Consultative Group of Service Spouses

An interim National Consultative Group of Service Spouses was convened by the Department of Defence in 1986 to act as a representative advisory group to assist the Department in the implementation of the Hamilton Report *Supporting Service Families*. The Group was subsequently retained in a consultative capacity by the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel and the CDF.

The aim of the Consultative Group is to improve the quality of life for Service spouses and their families; reporting and making recommendations to the CDF; and influencing policy making that directly affects Service spouses.

Membership of the Group is open to all spouses and recognised defacto spouses of serving members and serving members who are also sole parents. It operates at local, regional and national level. The national committee meets twice yearly in Canberra and comprises a national convenor and ten elected national delegates representing the following regions:

- North Queensland
- South-east Queensland
- Sydney/Hunter
- South-west Sydney
- North-east Victoria/Riverina
- South Victoria/Tasmania
- South Australia
- Northern Territory
- Western Australia
- ACT/Nowra

All national committee appointments are for a maximum of two years. The national convenor is appointed from Group nominees by the Director Families Information and Liaison Staff and is paid an annual fee in accordance with the Remuneration Tribunal's Determination No. 2 of 1989. The convenor and national delegates are paid sitting fees and allowances for attendance at conferences. National and area group delegates are reimbursed out-of-pocket expenses for stationery, postal, telephone, petrol and limited local travel costs incurred in their duties.

The 1989-90 budget for the Group was \$74 000. Financial and administrative support is provided by Australian Defence Families Information and Liaison Staff.

Citizens in Support of Reserve Forces Trust Fund

The Fund was established in 1979 by the Minister for Defence to support the Reserves by providing up to ten 'Prince of Wales' scholarships for individual excellence of Reservists. The award provides free overseas travel to either the United States, the United Kingdom or Canada for a two week attachment with a military unit and a further two week attachment with a selected civilian or governmental body and \$1 000 spending money.

Trust members are as follows:

Sir Eric Willis KBE CMG
Mr A N Edwards AM OBE
Lieutenant General Sir Mervyn Brogan KBE CB (retired)
Mr A Urquhart CBE
Lieutenant Colonel J C Southwell RFD, ED (retired)

There is no specified term of appointment for the Trustees and there is no remuneration paid to members.

The Defence Industry Quality Forum

The Forum was established in 1985 when the Minister for Defence invited industry and the trade union movement to take part in a joint initiative aimed at promoting an improved understanding between Defence and industry in respect of quality assurance policies, concepts and practices.

The Forum comprises:

Mr R Seymour, General Manager - Technical, Cockatoo Island Dockyard Pty Ltd and MTIA shipbuilding representative (Chair)
Metal Trades Industry Association - two members representing shipbuilding and aircraft industry
Federal Chamber of Automotive Industries - one member
Australian Electrical and Electronics Manufacturers Association - one member representing electronics and computer software

Textile, Clothing and Footwear Council of Australia - one member
Association of Drafting Supervisory and Technical Employees - one member representing the trade union movement
Australian Defence Industries Pty Ltd - one member representing the munitions industry.
Director General Defence Quality Assurance (Defence member)
Director of Quality Assurance Policy (Defence member)

The secretariat function is provided from within the Directorate of Quality Assurance Policy.

Appointment to the Forum is for two years with eligibility for reappointment for a further term. No remuneration is paid to members.

Defence Force Health Consultative Group

The Defence Force Health Consultative Group was originally formed with Ministerial approval in July 1978 under the title of Services Health Consultative Group. Its function was reviewed in 1986 (and its title changed) under a report on the establishment of the Office of the Surgeon General Australian Defence Force.

The Committee's role is to establish, at senior professional level, formal liaison between the Services and appropriate civilian health authorities and to provide advice on major professional health matters having relevance to the Department of Defence. Such matters could include medical aspects of national disaster planning, national mobilisation, availability of strategically important medical supplies, national health schemes, post graduate training, vocational training, professional registration and hospital and health services policy.

The membership of the Group is:

Surgeon General Australian Defence Force (Chair)
Director General, Navy Health Services
Director General, Army Health Services
Director General, Air Force Health Services
Australian Medical Association representative
Department of Community Services and Health representative
Department of Veterans' Affairs representative

The Secretary is provided by Director Defence Force Health Services staff. Other specialists may be invited to attend meetings as required. Remuneration is applicable to the Australian Medical Association representative who is paid a consultant's fee and travel expenses.

The Group meets as required by the Surgeon General Australian Defence Force. The Group did not meet during the year.

Australian Defence Medical Ethics Committee

The Australian Defence Medical Ethics Committee was established by the CDF and the Secretary in 1988. The functions of the Committee are to:

- consider the ethical implications of all proposed biomedical research on human volunteers and to advise sponsors and the Surgeon General as to their ethical acceptability;
- monitor experiments involving biomedical research on human volunteers to completion to ensure compliance with approved ethical standards;
- maintain a register of such experiments in sufficient detail to provide for adequate monitoring; and
- establish and maintain communication with the National Health and Medical Research Council's Medical Research and Ethical Committee.

The membership of the Committee is:

Air Vice Marshal M D Miller AO, Surgeon General Australian Defence Force (Chair)
Mrs E Grant AM, a layperson not associated with the ADF
Mr D J Dillon, a layperson not associated with the ADF
Air Commodore J J White MBE, a Minister of Religion
Group Captain L A Watson, a medical graduate with research experience.

The Secretary is provided by Director Defence Force Health Services staff. Other specialists may be invited to attend meetings as required. There is no specific term of appointment to the Committee. No remuneration is paid to members.

The Committee meets biannually or as required by the Chair. The Committee met on 27 November 1989 and 28 May 1990.



APPENDIX C: PARLIAMENTARY COMMITTEES AND AUDITOR-GENERAL'S REPORTS

PARLIAMENTARY COMMITTEES

JOINT COMMITTEE ON FOREIGN AFFAIRS, DEFENCE AND TRADE

DEFENCE SUB-COMMITTEE

Inquiry into the priorities for Australia's mine countermeasure needs

The Government's response to the Committee's report was tabled on 29 November 1989.

Inquiry into the Australian Defence Force Reserves

Four public hearings were held during the year; in Canberra on 23 October 1989, in Sydney on 7 February 1990, in Brisbane on 8 February 1990 and in Townsville on 9 February 1990. The inquiry was re-referred in the current Parliament and inspections of Defence establishments were held in Brisbane on Tuesday 26 June 1990.

The inquiry is continuing.

Visits and briefings

In addition to formal inquiries, the Department assisted the Sub-Committee with background information for its members on various aspects of defence and with visits to ADF exercises and establishments. Briefings were also conducted on the following topics:

- The Defence Budget, on 29 August 1989
- Indian Defence Force Structure, on 5 September 1989
- ADF Peacekeeping Activities, on 3 October 1989
- Joint Facilities, on 24 October 1989
- Indonesian Defence Force Structure and Capabilities, on 31 October 1989
- Preliminary lessons - K89, on 21 November 1989

SUB-COMMITTEE ON THE NATIONAL SAFETY COUNCIL OF AUSTRALIA (VICTORIAN DIVISION)

Inquiry into the operations of the National Safety Council of Australia (Victorian Division)

A Departmental submission was provided to the Sub-Committee on 4 July 1989 and Defence witnesses appeared at a public hearing on 13 October 1989. Answers to questions on notice arising from the hearing were provided to the Sub-Committee on 1 November 1989.

The inquiry has not been re-referred in the current Parliament.

FOREIGN AFFAIRS SUB-COMMITTEE

Inquiry into Australia's relations with Papua New Guinea

A Departmental submission was provided to the former Sub-Committee on Papua New Guinea on 10 July 1989 and Defence witnesses attended a public hearing before the former Sub-Committee on 20 November 1989. Under the 36th Parliament, the inquiry was referred to the Foreign Affairs Sub-Committee under the same terms of reference of the original inquiry. A supplementary submission is currently being prepared.

The inquiry is continuing.

JOINT COMMITTEE ON THE AUSTRALIAN SECURITY INTELLIGENCE ORGANIZATION

Inquiry into access provisions of the Archives Act

The Committee of the 36th Parliament decided to proceed with the inquiry which was commenced by the Committee's predecessor in the 35th Parliament.

Under the terms of reference, the Committee is required to consider how the activities of ASIO are affected by the operation of the *Archives Act 1983* taking into account:

- the adequacy, appropriateness and effectiveness of the access provisions of the Archives Act in so far as they relate to the activities of ASIO;
- the implications for the privacy of the individual and/or his or her immediate family of the release of information;
- the options available to overcome any identified concerns for security arising from the current provisions of the Archives Act, including the option recommended in the RCASIA report on ASIO;

Part Three

- the law and practice concerning the release of security and intelligence information in overseas countries, particularly the UK, Canada, the US and NZ;
- resource implications of the options considered; and
- any other matters that emerge which may have a bearing on the inquiry.

At 30 June 1990, a Departmental submission was being prepared.

The inquiry is continuing.

JOINT COMMITTEE OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS

The Department provided written submissions to the Committee and gave evidence at public hearings during inquiries into:

- **The Supply Systems Redevelopment Project:** the inquiry is continuing.
- **The administration of the Australian Industry Participation and Offsets Program:** the inquiry has been finalised and is reported on below.

In November 1989 the Committee tabled a number of reports which related either directly or indirectly to the Department. The reports in the main related to matters that had been the subject of inquiries by the Committee in previous financial years.

Report 299 - Compliance with Guidelines for the preparation of Departmental Annual Reports.

The Department was criticised by the Committee for failing to comply with the guidelines by not including sufficient detail in relation to reviews by the Auditor-General or by parliamentary committees in its 1987-88 report. The Department took action to ensure that the 1988-89 and subsequent reports met this requirement.

The Department was also criticised for providing inaccurate information concerning external consultants in its 1987-88 Annual Report. The Department subsequently advised the correct information to the Committee's inquiry into the engagement of external consultants by Commonwealth departments.

Report 300 - Reports of the Auditor-General March 1988, September 1988 and April 1989

The Department was referred to in relation to Office of Defence Production Financial Statements where the Committee noted that there had been general improvement in the standard of the Statements. The Committee expressed the opinion that more work was required to be done in relation to the management of departmental assets. The Committee stated that it was not satisfied with the Department's response on this particular issue. This is currently the subject of negotiation between the Departments of Defence and Finance.

Report 301 - Finance Minutes

This report contains the Government responses to earlier reports by the Committee:

- Report 254 - Project Desine - Department of Defence Computer Proposal
- Report 263 - Aspects of Defence Equipment Support Volume 1 - Spares and Ammunition and Aspects of Defence Equipment Support Volume 2 - Technical Documentation
- Report 270 - Implementation of the Offsets Program
- Report 280 - Defence Science and Technology Organisation - Task Cost Management
- Report 294 - Five Efficiency Audits (two of which involve the Department of Defence)
- Army Mapping
- Principle Items Stock Control Entitlement System

Report 302 - Engagement of external consultants by Commonwealth departments

The attention of the Committee was drawn to the engagement of external consultants by Commonwealth departments as a result of adverse comments made by the Auditor-General in relation to several instances of poor management of external consultants by some Departments. The Committee found that the situation with respect to consultants was confused and inconsistent across the public sector and made recommendations. The Department has issued internal instructions which are consistent with the Committee's recommendations.

Report 303 - Safety principles for explosives and RAAF explosives ordnance

This report outlines the findings of the Committee's review of the Auditor-General's efficiency audit of the Department of Defence's safety principles for explosives. The Committee concurred with the majority of Audit's findings and considered that, although most of Audit's recommendations had been implemented, some had taken a long time to be addressed. Principal among these was the time taken to issue the Department's revised draft instruction on the application of the Nato safety principles and the level of consultation between the Department and local councils not being satisfactory. The Committee also expressed concern that ministerial approval had not been sought or granted for numerous situations where explosives operations increased the level of risk to the public.

The Committee's recommendations were generally agreed. Procedures have continued to be put in place which ensure compliance with the Nato safety principles wherever practicable. Where it is not, the Department has developed and implemented procedures to ensure that public safety is not at risk.

Report 304 - Guidelines for Departmental Annual Reports

The Department provided detailed comments to the Department of Prime Minister and Cabinet on the preparation of annual reports since the introduction of the guidelines. Those comments were subsequently passed to the Committee by Prime Minister and Cabinet in the form of a submission to the inquiry. The Committee tabled its report on 30 November 1989. On 20 December 1989, the Department sent its comments on the Committee's recommendations to Prime Minister and Cabinet which was preparing a response to the Committee.

Report 305 - Review of the Finance Minute on Report 270 - 'Implementation of the Offsets Program'

The inquiry into this matter was reopened because of the Committee's expressed disappointment with the Government's response to the previous report.

The Department of Defence was one of a number of Government departments, authorities and organisations called upon to make a submission to the Committee addressing issues of compliance to program requirements, consistency with other Government programs, evaluation and valuation of offsets proposals and program accountability and evaluation. The Committee made a number of recommendations to ensure compliance with these issues.

The Government response was prepared jointly by the Departments of Defence, Industry, Technology and Commerce and Finance and strongly rejected a number of the Committee's recommendations, most of which were rejected in the Government's response to the previous report. The principal issues included combining civil and Defence programs into a single offsets authority and disclosure of outstanding obligations of individual firms.

JOINT COMMITTEE ON PUBLIC WORKS

Three major Defence facilities projects were considered by the Committee during the year.

Army Aviation Centre Oakey, stage one redevelopment

The airfield at Oakey, Queensland, is a joint user aerodrome; the Army being the principal user with the Department of Transport and Communications as the tenant for usage of about 15 per cent. The Army Aviation Centre provides for both aviation training and support for the Army throughout Australia.

Stage one redevelopment was examined by the Committee on 13 December 1989. The project involves the upgrading of existing buildings and the construction of new facilities. The Limit of Cost estimate was \$14.6 million at September 1989 prices. The Committee recommended that the redevelopment proceed.

Puckapunyal, stage one redevelopment

Puckapunyal is a significant defence base employing 2000 Service personnel. The area consists of three distinct special purpose zones; the range complex, the military cantonment and the village which includes the married quarters.

The project, which involves replacing sub-standard living-in accommodation, upgrading engineering services and replacing and upgrading working accommodation, was considered by the Committee on 6 February 1990. The Limit of Cost estimate was \$32.5 million at July 1989 prices. The Committee recommended that redevelopment proceed.

Multi-user Army store depot

The construction of a multi-user depot at Oakleigh, Victoria, was proposed to enable Army Reserve units to relocate from Richmond. The Commonwealth agreed to make the land at Richmond available to the Victorian Government. The project, at a Limit of Cost estimate of \$9 million at November 1989 prices, was examined by the Committee on 7 February 1990. The Committee agreed that there was a need to relocate and recommended that the project proceed.

SENATE STANDING COMMITTEE ON FOREIGN AFFAIRS, DEFENCE AND TRADE

Inquiry into the adequacy of current contingency planning by Federal and state authorities to deal with the accidental release of ionising radiation from visiting nuclear powered or armed vessels in Australian waters or ports

The Committee's report was tabled on 16 August 1989 and the Government responded on 13 December 1989.

Inquiry into Australia's relations with India

The Department provided additional information to the Committee on 8 January 1990.

The Committee is currently finalising its report.

Inquiry into perestroika and the implications for Australia

On 7 September 1989 the Senate referred the following matter to the Committee for inquiry:

- the implications for Australia of economic and political reform in the Soviet Union, with special reference to strategic relationships in the Asia/Pacific region; and
- the opportunities for expanded Australian trade with the Soviet Union, particularly the Soviet Far East and Siberia.

Part Three

The Department provided the Committee with a submission on 14 November 1989 and Defence witnesses attended a public hearing on 1 December 1989.

The inquiry is continuing.

SENATE STANDING COMMITTEE ON FINANCE AND PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION

Inquiry into the development of the Senior Executive Service

A Departmental submission was provided to the Committee on 30 August 1989 and the Secretary to the Department attended a public hearing on 31 January 1990. An interim report by the Committee on performance based pay for the SES was tabled on 9 May 1990.

The inquiry is continuing.

Inquiry into Departmental Explanatory Notes

The matter was referred by the Senate on 14 December 1989 and a Departmental submission was provided to the Committee on 15 February 1990. The Committee's report was tabled on 31 May 1990.

SENATE STANDING COMMITTEE ON LEGAL AND CONSTITUTIONAL AFFAIRS

Inquiry into the operation of the doctrine known as 'Shield of the Crown'

A Departmental submission was provided to the Committee on 14 August 1989.

The inquiry is continuing.

SENATE STANDING COMMITTEE ON TRANSPORT, COMMUNICATIONS AND INFRASTRUCTURE

Inquiry into the Very Fast Train

On 17 August 1989 the Senate referred to the Committee for inquiry and report the following matters relating to the Very Fast Train project:

- the effects which such a project could have on existing and future land use patterns and transport and communications infrastructure in south-eastern Australia;
- other possible environmental impacts of such a project including possible noise and atmospheric effects;
- transit time, route and technology options;
- safety aspects, both in terms of protection of passengers and in terms of effect on the road toll; and
- effect of energy use.

A Departmental submission was provided to the Committee on 28 November 1989. An interim report was tabled on 29 May 1990.

The inquiry is continuing.

SENATE SELECT COMMITTEE ON CERTAIN ASPECTS OF THE PILOTS' DISPUTE

On 17 October 1989 the Senate referred to the Committee for inquiry and report the following matters relating to the pilots' dispute:

- the nature, extent and legality of all changes to training, licensing, administration, employment and other organisational and operational practices during the pilots' dispute relevant to the operation of airline services in Australia;
- the extent to which air safety may have been affected by any such changes;
- the nature, extent and legality of the compensation arrangements entered into by the Government and the airlines; and
- the economic implications of the dispute.

On 5 December 1989, Defence officers provided evidence to the Committee at a public hearing. An interim report was tabled on 21 December 1989 and the final report was presented to the President of the Senate on 27 February and tabled on 8 May.

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES STANDING COMMITTEE ON FINANCE AND PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION

Inquiry into the 1988 Financial Management Improvement Program

A Departmental submission was provided to the Committee on 4 August 1989.

The inquiry is continuing.

Inquiry into the Australian Customs Service

The Committee was asked by the Minister for Small Business and Customs in May 1990 to inquire into and report on various aspects of the Australian Customs Service. The inquiry incorporates the following areas: the program management structure, import/export control, Coastwatch, the drug detector dog unit and drug interceptions.

Appendix C: Parliamentary Committees and Auditor-General's Reports

A Departmental submission is being prepared in relation to the areas of import/export control and Coastwatch.

The inquiry is continuing.

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES STANDING COMMITTEE ON THE ENVIRONMENT, RECREATION AND THE ARTS

Inquiry into the environmental protection of the Australian coastline and coastal waters

The inquiry was re-referred under the same terms of reference as in the 35th Parliament; namely, that the Committee inquire into the environmental degradation of the Australian coastline and coastal waters, with particular reference to:

- causes, effects and costs of pollution, sewage disposal, coastal land degradation and resource depletion;
- management of urban water resources;
- impacts on tourism, fishing and other industries dependent on the coastal zone and coastal waters;
- the adequacy of existing management regimes;
- administrative arrangements, legislative measures and development policies required to ensure sustained use and environmental protection;
- review of previous parliamentary reports relating to the coastal zone; and
- role of the Commonwealth Government in ensuring proper management of the coastal zone.

The Department provided a submission to the Committee in August 1989.

The inquiry is continuing.

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES STANDING COMMITTEE ON LEGAL AND CONSTITUTIONAL AFFAIRS

Inquiry into equal opportunity and status for women

The Committee is required to inquire into and report on the progress made towards the achievement of equal opportunity and equal status for Australian women and the extent to which the objects of the *Sex Discrimination Act 1984* have been achieved or are capable of being achieved by legislation or other means, with particular reference to:

- effective participation by women, including young women, in decision making processes;
- the extent to which women receive appropriate recognition for their contribution to society;
- participation by women in the labour force including the efficacy of equal employment opportunity schemes;
- participation by women in leisure and sport; and
- the extent to which young women are encouraged to participate equally in society.

A Defence submission was provided to the Committee on 24 May 1990.

The inquiry is continuing.

AUDITOR-GENERAL'S REPORTS

Seven Auditor-General's reports relating to the Department of Defence were tabled during the year. Matters reported on included:

Efficiency audits

Squirrel training helicopters - utilisation and maintenance (Report 33)

Finance

Finance Systems Redevelopment Project (Report 20)

Salaries and payments in the nature of salary (Report 20)

Defence Science and Technology Organisation - expenditure recording (Report 20)

Industry

Office of Defence Production - financial statements under s.41D of the *Audit Act 1901* (Reports 20 and 31)

Logistics

Overseas procurement - Europe (Report 1)

Naval Supply Centre, Zetland (Report 18)

Depot stores (Report 20)

Major projects

New Submarine Project (Report 18)

Part Three

Personnel

Post separation employment (Report 9)

Recruitment practices (Report 11)

Security

Protective security (Report 20)

The focus of Audit's attention during the conduct of the reviews was on the applicability of instructions to the tasks that they described, their overall relevance to the requirements of Departmental management and whether there was compliance with statutory requirements.

Where there has been adverse criticism by the Auditor-General, it has been related to administration generally, but financial administration in particular. There was continuing criticism of financial administration in the former Office of Defence Production in relation to the production and presentation of factories' financial statements; some of which remained incomplete at 30 June 1990.

Recommendations made by the Auditor-General for improvement of administrative aspects of Departmental activity have been generally accepted and are being implemented.

Details of the Auditor-General's recommendations arising from the audits and reviews and action taken to address them follow.

Report 1: Overseas procurement - Europe

The audit revealed a situation where:

- there was scope for rationalising the operations in Australia and at European offices;
- the Nato stock number system, including the lists of manufacturers, could be used to greater advantage;
- the offices in Europe could seek more actively new sources of supply and hasten delivery after orders were placed as these were the tasks for which their location appeared to offer the greatest potential advantage; and
- the description of requirements as listed on purchase demands and requests for tender in many cases narrowed the potential sources of supply more than was necessary thus reducing the scope for cost effective purchasing.

Action has been taken to rectify the identified shortcomings and, where recommendations for improvement have been made, action is continuing to review policies and procedures to ensure that value for money is a consideration in all purchases.

Report 9: Post separation employment

The audit revealed that:

- an appropriate administrative framework for post separation employment had been developed in accordance with Service guidelines;
- extended delays had occurred in the implementation of the post separation guidelines;
- policy initiatives had been designed to improve the effectiveness of post separation procedures; and
- periodic reviews of the effectiveness of the assent arrangements should be undertaken.

The audit recommendations for improvement of the administration of post separation employment have been implemented.

Report 11: Recruitment practices

The audit revealed a situation where:

- the Defence Force Recruiting Branch had been effective in substantially achieving annual recruitment targets despite a number of difficulties;
- improved use of resources was possible, particularly in areas of activity common to all Service Offices;
- initiatives to introduce computer based processes for recording management information and for administering recruitment tests should be accorded a high priority;
- there was scope for increased economy and efficiency through the rationalisation of entry standards, selection methods, allocation of vehicles and outposted testing across the Services; and
- the planning, coordination and control of psychological services associated with recruiting activities required examination.

The recommendations that flowed from the review have been implemented where possible or are in the process of implementation. The Department's response to the five key recommendations relating to psychological services has been to undertake a review with the intention of rationalising the services as far as possible to take advantage of common aspects. The review is continuing.

Report 18: Naval Supply Centre, Zetland

The audit revealed a situation where:

- a proliferation of documents and reports and poorly coordinated document processing which were leading to delays and lack of control required streamlining;
- micro-computer based systems were not well integrated with some duplication of functions and additional manual support; and
- mainframe computer and support systems were not capturing relevant operational data in a timely manner adversely affecting the efficiency and effectiveness of stores management.

The Department has reviewed systems as necessary and introduced remedial measures to overcome identified deficiencies in relation to document processing and addressed the remaining identified shortcomings as a part of the introduction of redeveloped supply systems.

Report 18: New Submarine Project

This review was conducted at the request of the Department and covered aspects of Departmental management of the project and, in particular, the control of contract amendment proposals. The review concentrated on matters related to the effectiveness of the Department's cost investigation of labour rates.

Audit noted a number of deficiencies in procedures which could significantly increase costs and made a number of recommendations for improvement, all of which were accepted and, where necessary, remedial action was taken.

Report 20: Finance Systems Redevelopment Project

The audit concentrated on the manner in which commercial software packages used have been set up for the processing needs of the Department, the control mechanisms which have been put in place around the software and the regulatory requirements of the new environment.

The audit review is continuing as the project is implemented and matters that have been discussed with the Department relate to:

- audit trails for electronic signatures;
- controls required given the production status of the pilot project;
- the delay in implementing the system's budgetary control module; and
- the intended use of the general ledger and accounts payable modules in Defence Regional Offices.

Report 20: Protective security

The audit was carried out in Western Australia and disclosed a satisfactory level of awareness of the protective security needs and arrangements.

Report 20: Depot stores

This audit was conducted at Army Logistic Command's 11 Supply Battalion in Queensland. Matters raised by Audit included security arrangements and stocktaking procedures. The necessary remedial action was taken.

Report 20: Salaries and payments in the nature of salary

This audit was carried out at the Department's South Australian Regional Office. The results were satisfactory.

Report 20: Defence Science and Technology Organisation - expenditure recording

This audit was carried out at Salisbury, South Australia. The results were satisfactory.

Report 20: Office of Defence Production - accounts and financial statements under section 41D of the *Audit Act 1901*

Explosives Factory Maribyrnong

The audit revealed that the general ledger was not supported by an adequate chart of accounts. The factory is being closed down but action has been taken to rationalise the chart of accounts.

Garden Island Dockyard

The audit of accounts and records indicated a number of situations where there were unsatisfactory accounting arrangements or system weaknesses. Dockyard management advised that it regarded the matters as serious and that action had been taken to rectify the deficiencies identified.

Part Three

Report 31: Office of Defence Production - financial statements under section 41D of the Audit Act 1901

Audits of factory financial statements revealed a dispute between the Audit Office and the Office of Defence Production about the methodology used to value non-current assets.

Ordnance Factory Maribyrnong

Satisfactory.

Mulwala Explosives Factory

Satisfactory.

Ammunition Factory Footscray

Deficiencies in accounting at the factory led to the Auditor-General qualifying the report on the financial statements for the period ended 3 May 1989 in relation to the value of work-in-progress.

Munitions Filling Factory, St Marys

Deficiencies in accounting led to the Auditor-General being unable to form an opinion on the financial statements for the period ended 3 May 1989.

Ordnance Factory Bendigo

Satisfactory.

Australian Government Clothing Factory

Statements were qualified in relation to incorrect apportionment of long service leave between current and non-current liabilities.

Small Arms Factory, Lithgow

Satisfactory.

Garden Island Dockyard

Financial statements as at 30 June 1989 were qualified because of difficulties with apportionment of costs; errors were carried over from the previous financial year; there were difficulties with interpretation of the principles of operation; and clarification of rights over certain assets was necessary.

Explosives Factory Maribyrnong

Statements were qualified in relation to the work-in-progress component of stock because of the factory's failure to undertake a stocktake or other suitable valuation procedures during the year.

Report 33: Squirrel training helicopters - utilisation and maintenance

The audit revealed that a more rigorous analysis by Defence of aircraft requirements could result in a reduction in the number of helicopters required for training purposes and estimated that improved management of existing maintenance resources and contracting of maintenance services for Squirrel helicopters could produce savings of at least \$2 million per annum. The report contained specific recommendations in relation to these findings and also identified some issues where the recommendations could have more general application to Defence, particularly in relation to recurrent costs incurred during the life of the aircraft in comparison with initial purchase price and also the need for regular performance monitoring of maintenance costs to achieve cost effective outcomes.

Remedial action has been instigated.

APPENDIX D: PUBLIC INFORMATION

PUBLICATIONS AND AUDIO-VISUAL MATERIAL

AVAILABLE FROM DEFENCE PUBLICATION RELATIONS

Defence Public Relations produces a wide range of publications which provide information about defence policy, the structure of Defence and its use of resources and the structure of each of the Services. Copies of Ministerial speeches and media releases can also be provided.

Defence Public Relations also offers promotional material such as stickers and posters featuring various items of ADF equipment.

Some of the more important information brochures, booklets and journals available include:

- *The Royal Australian Navy*
- *The Australian Army*
- *The Royal Australian Air Force*
- *Army - A Brief History*
- *Australia's Defence Policy*
- *The Defence Organisation*
- *Australian Defence Force*
- *Defence Information Bulletin*
- *The Defence Force Journal*

Some of the more notable of the 209 media releases produced during the year include:

130-89	Second underway replenishment ship for the Navy	29/06/89
133-89	New Defence organisation to be leaner, more efficient	5/07/89
140-89	Joint Statement - General P.C Gratton Chief of the Australian Defence Forces and General Try Sutrisno Commander-in-Chief Indonesian Armed Forces	14/07/89
146-89	Largest peacetime Defence exercise	31/07/89
153-89	Amecon chosen to build RAN'S new frigates	14/08/89
159-89	RAAF assistance to maintain civil air services	23/08/89
164-89	UN troops return from Namibia	1/09/89
166-89	K89 - Confirming the emergence of an effective national defence	5/09/89
181-89	Grants to improve conditions for Defence Force families	10/10/89
197-89	Australia and the USA sign logistics cooperation treaty	4/11/89
203-89	Anzac Ship project contract signing	10/11/89
213-89	Defence to crack down on fraud	22/11/89
240-89	HMAS Westralia arrives	20/12/89
14-90	Defence Minister names Australia's new submarines	14/02/90
19-90	UN peacekeepers homeward bound	26/02/90
23-90	New air base named (RAAF Sherger)	4/03/90
49-90	Defence Forces providing around-the-clock flood relief	22/04/90
50-90	Japanese Minister of State for Defence to visit Australia	27/04/90
51-90	Pakistan to buy RAAF Mirage aircraft	23/04/90
63-90	Delivery of final Hornet	14/05/90
70-90	Australian Defence Force Structure Review	29/05/89
71-90	Expanded role for women in the Australian Defence Force	30/05/89
84-90	Report on Defence Force Superannuation Review presented	26/06/90

The Directorate's Film and Video Unit has many productions available, in either film or video format, covering such topics as K89, the *Bush Tucker Man* series and the history of the Royal Australian Navy. A full list of productions is available from the Directorate.

Part Three

PUBLIC RELATIONS OFFICES

Australian Capital Territory

Directorate of Public Relations
Department of Defence
Russell Offices
RUSSELL ACT 2600

Tel: (06) 265 2999

Fax: (06) 265 1099

Telex: 62624

New South Wales

Navy

Mr R Gillet
Level 22
Remington Centre
175 Liverpool St
SYDNEY NSW 2000

Tel: (02) 266 2095

Fax: (02) 266 2307

Army

Lt Col A Reynolds
SO1 (PR) HQ 2 MD
Victoria Barracks
PADDINGTON NSW 2021

Tel: (02) 339 3176

Fax: (02) 331 2808

Victoria

Navy

Mr G Brooks
Navy PRO
NOVIC Defence Centre
Victoria Barracks
St Kilda Rd
MELBOURNE VIC 3004

Tel: (03) 697 4478

Fax: (03) 697 3953

Air Force

Mr P Johnson
CPRO
HQ Support Command
Victoria Barracks
St Kilda Rd
MELBOURNE VIC 3004

Tel: (03) 697 5255

Fax: (03) 697 6205

Army

Lt Col R Palk
SO1 (PR)
HQ Land Command
Victoria Barracks
PADDINGTON NSW 2021

Tel: (02) 339 3477

Fax: (02) 331 2808

Air Force

Mrs E Holtham
PRO
AHQ Australia
RAAF GLENBROOK NSW 2773

Tel: (02) 39 4445

Fax: (02) 39 7027

Army

Lt Col K Wolfe
SO1 (PR)
HQ 3 MD
Victoria Barracks
St Kilda Rd
MELBOURNE VIC 3004

Tel: (03) 697 6226

Fax: (03) 697 6205

Queensland

Army

Lt Col J Weiland
SO1 (PR)
HQ 1 MD
Victoria Barracks
Petrie Tce
BRISBANE QLD 4000

Tel: (07) 233 4210
Fax: (07) 236 1478

Maj P Seaman
SO2 (PR)
HQ DSG NQ
Lavarack Barracks
TOWNSVILLE QLD 4813
Tel: (077) 71 7346
Fax: (077) 71 7705

Western Australia

Navy/Air Force

Mr V B Jeffrey
CPRO
HQ NOCWA
HMAS Stirling
ROCKINGHAM WA 6168
Tel: (09) 527 0415
Fax: (09) 527 0454

South Australia

Tri-Service

Maj S Delaney
SO2 (PR)
HQ 4 MD
Keswick Barracks
KESWICK SA 5035
Tel: (08) 293 9427
Fax: (08) 293 8456

Northern Territory

Tri-Service

Mr M Lawson
Defence PRO
HQ NCOMD
Larrakeyah Barracks
DARWIN NT 0800
Tel: (089) 80 1311
Fax: (089) 41 1966

Air Force

Mr B T Noonan
RAAF PRO-QLD
3rd Floor
Jetset Centre
288 Edward St.
BRISBANE QLD 4000

Tel: (07) 226 2602
Tel: (07) 221 4912
Telex: 43634

Army

Leut K Coningham
SO3 (PR)
HQ 6 MD
Swan Barracks
PERTH WA 6000
Tel: (09) 328 0650
Fax: (09) 227 5266

Tasmania

Tri-Service

Capt R Barnes
SO3 (PR)
HQ 6 MD
Anglesea Barracks
HOBART TAS 7001
Tel: (002) 21 2205
Fax: (002) 21 2306

Part Three

AVAILABLE FROM ACQUISITION AND LOGISTICS

The following publications concerning defence-related industry matters are available:

- Australian Controls on the Export of Defence and Related Goods - Guidelines for Exporters
- Australian Defence Offsets Program - Guidelines for Participants
- Doing Australian Defence Business
- Australian Controls on the Export of Technology with Civil and Military Applications (COCOM) - Guidelines
- Value Management and Incentive Contracts

Copies of these publications can be obtained by contacting:

First Assistant Secretary
Industry Policy and Operations Division
Department of Defence
PO Box E33
Queen Victoria Terrace
PARKES ACT 2600
Tel: (06) 265 3849

AVAILABLE FROM NATURAL DISASTERS ORGANISATION

The Organisation produces the following publications:

The Australian Natural Disasters Organisation
Commonwealth Counter-Disaster Concepts and Principles
Australian Counter-Disaster Arrangements
*Australian Emergency Manual - Disaster Rescue**
*Australian Emergency Manual - Land Search Operations**
*Australian Emergency Manual - Flood Rescue Boat Operation**
Operations Response Manual - A Guide to Local Disaster Response
Protecting from High Winds
Cyclone Action
Surviving Cyclones
Flood Fact Quiz
Alternatives to an Ark (Flood Procedures)
Smokey Explains Television's Fire Danger Meters
Disasters: A Booklet for Schools
Severe Storms: Facts and Precautions
Disasters: A Role for Defence
Survival: An Australian Manual for Combating Natural Disasters
Nuclear Weapons: Their Effects and Your Protection
Domestic Fallout Shelters

(* Restricted issue to emergency services organisations)

The Natural Disasters Organisation has many film and video productions available to the general public, including material on such topics as floods, bushfires, cyclones, earthquakes, the effects of nuclear war and general disaster awareness.

Copies of publications, films and videos are available from:

Director General
Natural Disasters Organisation
PO Box E33
Queen Victoria Terrace
PARKES ACT 2600
Tel: (06) 246 6211

AVAILABLE FROM THE DEFENCE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY ORGANISATION

The following publications are available from DSTO:

Supporting Defence

DSTO Profile

New Directions for DSTO

DSTO Research News - quarterly magazine

DSTO Industry Brief - monthly

The DSTO Corporate Statement 1988

Promotional material, including calendars, posters, magnets and stickers, is also available.

For information about DSTO and corporate public relations matters, including publications and promotional material, the contact is:

Director Science Liaison

Defence Science and Technology Organisation

Department of Defence

Anzac Park West 1-3-17

CANBERRA ACT 2600

Tel: (06) 266 6541

The DSTO laboratories produce a large number of technical memoranda and reports as well as pamphlets on individual projects which are available for public release. General information and public relations material is available from each laboratory listed below:

Aeronautical Research Laboratory

Public Relations Officer

DSTO Aeronautical Research Laboratory

PO Box 4331

MELBOURNE VIC 3001

Tel: (03) 647 7418

Fax: (03) 645 3869

Electronics Research Laboratory

Public Relations Officer

DSTO Electronics Research Laboratory

PO Box 1600

SALISBURY SA 5108

Tel: (08) 259 5015

Fax: (08) 259 6567

Materials Research Laboratory

Head, Scientific Services Division

DSTO Materials Research Laboratory

PO Box 50

ASCOT VALE VIC 3032

Tel: (03) 319 3600

Fax: (03) 318 4536

Surveillance Research Laboratory

Public Relations Officer

DSTO Surveillance Research Laboratory

PO Box 1650

SALISBURY SA 5108

Tel: (08) 259 6923

Fax: (08) 259 5638

Part Three

Weapons Systems Research Laboratory

Public Relations Officer
DSTO Weapons Systems Research Laboratory
PO Box 1700
SALISBURY SA 5108
Tel: (08) 259 7086
Fax: (08) 259 5476

The DSTO Laboratories at Salisbury, South Australia, share a video unit which has made the following videos:

Munitions to Microchips - A History of Defence Science in Western Australia
Aeromed - Neo-Natal Retrieval Unit
Lasers
Barra - The New Sonar Buoy
Jindalee
Atom By Atom
Guidance Test Vehicle

These videos are available by contacting:

Visits and Information Officer
DSTO Salisbury
PO Box 1500
SALISBURY SA 5108

Film and video material is also available from the Aeronautical Research Laboratory and Materials Research Laboratory.

RECRUITING CENTRES

The following abbreviations are used:

DFRC - Defence Force Recruitment Centre
ACIC - Army Careers Information Centre
DFCRC - Defence Force Careers Reference Centre

New South Wales

DFRC and DFCRC
232 Castlereagh St
SYDNEY NSW 2000
Tel: (02) 219 5550

ACIC
143 Blacktown Rd
BLACKTOWN NSW 2148
Tel: (02) 621 3484

DFCRC
384 Hunter St
NEWCASTLE NSW 2300
Tel: (049) 26 3011

ACIC
75 Warrane Rd
WILLOUGHBY NSW 2068
Tel: (02) 417 2211

DFCRC
520 Swift St
ALBURY NSW 2640
Tel: (060) 21 8277

ACIC
Military Rd
LISMORE NSW 2480
Tel: (066) 21 6111

DFCRC
60 Macquarie St
PARRAMATTA NSW 2150
Tel: (02) 635 1511

DFCRC
1-73 Church St
WOLLONGONG NSW 2500
Tel: (042) 28 1855

Victoria

DFCRC
332 St Kilda Rd
MELBOURNE VIC 3004
Tel: (03) 697 9755

ACIC
Curtis St
BALLARAT VIC 3350
Tel: (053) 33 2827

ACIC
Lonsdale St
DANDENONG VIC 3175
Tel: (03) 791 5110

DFCRC
109 Yarra St
GEELONG VIC 3220
Tel: (052) 21 1588

South Australia
DFRC and DFCRC
Commonwealth Centre
55 Currie St
ADELAIDE SA 5000
Tel: (08) 237 6222

Tasmania
DFRC and DFCRC
162 Macquarie St
HOBART TAS 7000
Tel: (002) 34 7077

Queensland
DFRC and DFCRC
288 Edward St
BRISBANE QLD 4000
Tel: (07) 226 2626

DFRC
Commonwealth Building
Cnr Walker & Stanley St
TOWNSVILLE QLD 4810
Tel: (077) 72 4566

Australian Capital Territory
DFCRC
AIDAB Building
62 Northbourne Ave
CANBERRA CITY ACT 2600
Tel: (06) 257 2311

DFCRC
330 St Kilda Rd
MELBOURNE VIC 3004
Tel: (03) 696 2677

DFCRC
282 Lyttleton Tce
BENDIGO VIC 3550
Tel: (054) 41 2500

ACIC
Cnr Dublin Rd & Railway Ave
EAST RINGWOOD VIC 3135
Tel: (03) 879 2381

ACIC
127 Pascoe Vale Rd
MOONEE PONDS VIC 3039
Tel: (03) 375 3544

Western Australia
DFRC and DFCRC
256 Adelaide Tce
PERTH WA 6000
Tel: (09) 325 6222

DFCRC
42 Brisbane St
LAUNCESTON TAS 7250

ACIC
50 Quay St
BUNDABERG QLD 4670
Tel: (071) 53 1152

APPENDIX E: EXTERNAL CONSULTANCIES

Consultants are persons or organisations, outside the Australian Public Service, engaged under contract by the Commonwealth for the performance of a 'consultancy service'.

Consultancy services may include the following:

- obtaining advice on policy matters and technical and professional subjects;
- carrying out research projects; attitude surveys and fact-finding investigations;
- gaining access to local or overseas pre-eminent experts for discussions, briefings sessions or seminars;
- conducting staff training courses or sessions at courses from time to time; and
- consulting specialists such as lawyers, engineers, architects, medical and dental specialists and management consultants.

The figures given are reported contract value and some expenditure extends beyond this financial year.

SUMMARY

	\$
Headquarters Australian Defence Force	702 404
Navy	250 419
Army	177 870
Air Force	130 478
Deputy Secretary Acquisition and Logistics	17 311 955
Deputy Secretary Budget and Management	2 959 905
Deputy Secretary Strategic and Intelligence	603 030
Chief Defence Scientist	880 482
Defence Regional Offices	44 604
Total	23 061 147

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Headquarters Australian Defence Force			
Koranya	Pilot study of master planning for Air Force Materiel Division.	24/4/90-30/6/90	35 677
Koranya	Information system master plan methodology.	1/7/89-30/6/90	10 290
Coopers & Lybrand	Contingency planning methodology	30/12/89-25/6/90	159 000
Instat	Statistical analysis on all data from other ranks, junior and senior officers and medical/dental officers	1/7/89-30/6/90	17 500
Trades and Labour Council (Qld)	Analysis of data and design of survey documents for other ranks work analysis, provision of software	1/7/89-30/6/90	36 000
Hay Group	Job sizing exercise and analysis for senior, junior, medical and dental officer job evaluation (including on Hay data system)	1/7/89-30/6/90	90 994
Price Waterhouse	Outplacement counselling for redundant members	15/1/90- open	68 000
Urwick	ADF redundancy package and ADF activities survey, analysis and report	3/90- open	63 506
KPMG Peat Marwick			
Dr & Mrs J.A. Jans	'Facing Up To The Future' proposals for career/personnel initiatives to assist in staffing the ADF in 1990 and beyond 'Jans Report'	Jul-Dec 89	53 000
Wendy Coyles and Associates	Pilot study 'Relocation Stress' ADF members and families	6/89-8/90	10 000
Dyseaton	Review current Federal/State/Territory Dangerous Goods Class 1 Acts and Regulations	1/90-7/90	6 225
Frank Small & Associates	Surveys: Attitudes to Defence	7/89, 11/89, 6/90	42 142
Aspect Computing	HQADF Command SPT Systems	2/90-5/90	51 300
Information Electronics Ltd	Integration of Tempest/EMP shielding in Defence C-E facilities	3/90-7/90	49 000
Dr Wardlaw	Lecture	8/89	128
Dr Gerritsen	Lecture	7/89	128
Dr Fonteyne	Lectures	7/89 & 1/90	278
Mr Findlay	Lecture	7/89	128
Dr Clark	Lecture	7/89	204
Dr Bell	Lectures	7/89 & 1/90	556
Dr Higgott	Lecture	7/89	128
Dr Ritchie	Lecture	7/89 & 1/90	278
Mr Leaver	Lecture	7/89	128
Dr Thompson	Lectures	7/89 & 1/90	374
Mr Fry	Lecture	8/89	128
Dr McKinley	Lecture	8/89	128
Prof Ball	Lecture	8/89	128
Mr Besemeres	Lecture	8/89	128
Mr Knotworth	Lecture	8/89	128
Dr Thayer	Lectures	8/89 & 2/90	278
Dr May	Lecture	8/89	128
Mr Hegarty	Lecture	8/89	128
Dr Saikal	Lectures	8/89 & 3/90	406
Prof Wilson	Lecture	8/89	204

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
ACM Sir N McNamara (Ret)	Lecture	8/89	360
Dr Dorwick	Lectures	9/89 & 1,3/90	450
Prof Kasper	Lectures	9/89 & 23/3/90	300
Dr Babbage	Lectures	9,10,11/89 & 2/90	858
Mr Mackerras	Lectures	9/89 & 4/90	300
Dr Smith	Lectures	9/89 & 3/90	300
Mr Bennett	Lecture	9/89	150
Dr Hart	Lectures	8/89 & 2/90	278
Col J Langtry (Ret)	Lectures	10/89 & 4/90	450
Mr Young	Lectures	11/89 & 5/90	358
AVM Hughes (Ret)	Lecture	11/89	150
Dr Clarke	Lecture	1/90	246
Dr Higgott	Lecture	1/90	150
Prof Ball	Lecture	2/90	150
Dr May	Lecture	3/90	150
Prof Mackie	Lecture	2/90	150
Mr MacLean	Lecture	2/90	150
Mr Adams	Lecture	4/90	150
Mr Hind	Lecture	4/90	208
Mr Halfpenny	Lecture	4/90	208
AVM Hughes (Ret)	Lecture	5/90	150
Navy			
Mr A Young	Strategic plan for Navy Logistic Division - out of pocket expenses	TBA	715
R V Goode	Introduction of performance based pay for senior Navy officers	14-18/5/90	14 800
A V Cassells	RAN's Ships Names, Badges & Honours Committee for 89/90	7/89-6/90	1 052
P Bruce-Walker	Editorial work for Naval Engineering Bulletin	8/88-6/91	10 000
University NSW Départment of Politics	RAN officer career study	3-10/89	30 000
Morgan & Banks	Consultancy services for Director Sailor Postings	TBA	24 000
Lloyds of London	Survey RFA Appleleaf	6-11/89	50 000
Army			
Technology Australia	Provision of training on cost schedule control systems	6/90	4 000
James Cook University	Conduct of language aptitude training on Army personnel	5/980	210
P Gyngell	To provide update and training on management appreciation of information systems	4/7/90-5/7/90	5 590
Lt Col Wigan	To write intelligence related pamphlets of the Manual of Land Warfare series	7/90-9/90	7 500
Dr Downes	Examine issues of Army manpower	2/90-6/90	6 000
D Kelleit	Advise on ADF entry into Whitbread Yacht race 1993	3/90-5/90	2 000
CSIRO	To complete development of technology for assessing cross country trafficability	1/6/90-30/6/90	18 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Defence Research Centre Salisbury	Continuation of research on remote sensing terrain analysis	1/6/89-12/89	40 000
Lt Col O'Neill	Assist on initial administration staff course at Land Warfare Centre	1/11/89-22/11/89	2 000
Rossoft	Produce static and animated sequences to support computer based training under development by RAEME Training Centre	6/90-2/91	42 570
Advanced Education Software	To develop courseware for School of Signals and Joint Telecommunications School on special-to-trade keyboard training	7/90-2/91	50 000
Air Force			
Pacific Institute	Speaking fees at RAAF Pearce	6/89	16 000
Y T Kee	Creativity and strategic planning	11-12/8/89	4 000
N Goldfield	Development of a Russian language course at RAAF Language School	7/9-31/10/89	2 512
M Owen	Confidence training and adventure learning	20-22/11/89	1 693
Enterprise Australia	Total quality management philosophy	23/11/89	700
S Priest	Lectures to Junior Officer Staff	5/12/89	450
	Course on the use of adventurous learning to develop attitudes		
N Goldfield	Development of a Russian language course at RAAF Language School	1/90-3/90	5 338
B Golding	Development of a Thai lecture package at RAAF Language School	3/90-4/90	3 341
Informis Software	Software conversion for Directorate of Air Force Safety	3/90-4/90	14 250
K Goresht	Development of syllabus for Russian language training at RAAF Language School	10-17/5/90	324
Australian Quality Enterprises	Total quality management - awareness tools - Canberra, Perth & Melbourne	16-23/5/90	8 910
Foley and Dunsmuir	RAAF Quality Seminar:	25-27/5/90	10 000
Prof P Fitzroy	Facilitate development of RAAF Logistics Command Plan	1-6/90	4 500
NCR Australia	Software development for RAAF NCR Tower 32/600 computers	4-6/90	20 000
Various	Provision of input for all cultural languages held at RAAF Language School	9/6/90	920
Mr B Murphy	Conduct feasibility study into potential development of an In-line Bomb Fuse.	22/6/90-30/9/90	37 540
Deputy Secretary Acquisition and Logistics			
Ansett Technologies	Engineering specifications for Black Hawk Helicopter	89-90	33 555
Aspect Computing	Design study for project management of Austaccs	5-6/90	12 000
Ball Engineering	Requirements for independent validation of AUP	8/90	103 000
C3 Pty Ltd	Specifications - Black Hawk Maintenance Simulators	89-90	29 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Cameron and Associates	Develop strategies and theories on needs analysis	9/89	1 000
Cameron and Associates	Provide negotiation skills training	9/89-2/90	2 650
Cameron and Associates	Facilitate MTP section planning day	11-12/89	3 540
Citrad	Present software in project management session	8/89	3 000
Citrad	Prepare software tools	5/90	4 870
Colin Barclay	Present MBUS course lectures	9/89	2 000
Computer Power	Update industry involvement data base	6-9/89	175 403
Consult	Review of CAMM2 system design	89-90	20 000
Crooks Mitchell	EWCAPC tender evaluations	12/89	5 211
Peacock & Stewart D & A E Hannan & Associates	Value management training	10-12/89, 6/90	103 000
Disney Howe	Presentation of contracting lectures	9/89	350
Easams	Configuration management study	2-6/90	114 945
Ewbank Preece	Write system specification for JPB65 program	12/89-5/90	40 000
Sinclair & Knight Freehill Hollingdale & Page	Legal services	1/90	1 373
Hyde Dynamics	Initial MODAPTS training	5/90	2 000
IBM Australia	CES distribution project	4/90	43 027
Long Distance Communications Management & Logistics Studies Centre	Radio equipment for RIB project	2/90, 5-6/90	900
	Investigate inventory management within Navy	89-90	11 434
Manufacturing Management Services Mintech Ltd.	Analysis of CAMM2 planning and scheduling modules	3-6/90	19 296
BAE & CSA	Specification for Air 5136 - ATE	89-90	140 000
Morgan, Lewis, Bokius	Legal advice for draft AUP contract	1-2/90	20 000
Mr B Elphick	Technical tender assessment MES 50	12/89	5 000
Mr B Elphick	Software consultancy MES 50 Phase 5	12/89-6/90	209 000
Navlog	Assist in raising SOR for IASSF	7/89-6/90	250 000
Open Networks	Support for Austaccs project	10/89-6/90	19 800
P J Arthur	Produce post approval self learn guide	12/89	400
P J Arthur	Develop and conduct condensed module	3/90	1 000
P J Arthur	Post approval management module	8/89, 4/90	440
Paxus Connet	CAMM2 development & implementation strategy	6/89-6/90	232 000
Price Waterhouse, Urwick	Engineering management services for F/A-18 IASSF	3-6/90	100 000
R W Chittenden	Provide advice on RAAF value management needs	6-12/90	4 000
Rockwell & General Dynamics	Environmental control system study - F-111 AUP	12/89-1/90	207 000
Schroders Aust Ltd	Cockatoo Island sale proposal	7/89-6/90	350 000
Technology Australia	Assistance with CEDE project evaluation	89-90	38 000
Technology Australia	Evaluation of tenders for EDE computer	12/89-3/90	38 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
National Acoustic Labs	Noise assessments of Defence facilities and hardware	7/89-6/90	261 400
H Bicknell	Measurement and evaluation of Defence noise sources	8/89-6/90	20 000
CSIRO	Jervis Bay marine studies	87/88-91/92	4 451 843
Fisheries Research Institute	Jervis Bay marine studies	87/88-91/92	1 434 100
A H E Cook	Jervis Bay Marine Studies	89/90	3 000
Environmental Management Services	Public environment reports	88/89-6/90	240 000
Kinhill Engineers	Mt Bunday NT EIS	87/88-90/91	560 869
Schroders Aust	Feasibility of Victoria Barracks Prince Henry Hospital sale	88/89-89/90	101 200
Victec	Upgrade of SA DID Office finance database to advance revelation	5/6/89-14/7/89	15 000
Aspect Computing	Development of integrated industry database system for the Qld DID Office	9 weeks commencing 21/5/90	26 034
Humphreys & Associates	Training & implementation of cost/schedule control systems into capital equipment projects	4/9/89-24/2/90	166 000
Aussat	Prepare requirement statement specifying interrelationships for hybrid satellite that Milsatcom study contractor will need to consider when examining the hybrid satellite option	6/4/90-18/5/90	15 949
Engman Engineering Services	Provision of specialist engineering support to the towed array full scale engineering development project	1/7/89-current	156 000
Ferranti Computer Systems	Evaluation of prime contractors risk reduction studies & review software development plan and tracker analysis - Jindalee Project. Final claim yet to be received.	5/10/89-31/1/90	20 800
Maunsell & Partners	Review facility specifications as drafted by the three risk reduction study contractors - Jindalee Project	5/10/89-31/1/90	15 480
Datamatic	Provide specialist engineering assistance with traceability analysis for Jindalee Phase 3 specification	7/8/89-5/1/90	6 170
Maunsell & Partners	Assist in evaluation of Jindalee tendered facilities under turnkey concept	28/8/89-current	47 085
Defence Acquisition Service	Assist evaluation of tendered incentive contracting arrangements and provide management support - Jindalee Project	28/8/89-29/9/89	13 050
Shearer Walker Assoc	Assist evaluation of installation test and acceptance and integrated logistics for Jindalee Project	28/8/89-15/12/89	87 840
Standford Research Institute	Assist evaluation of design, development & integration system aspects of Jindalee Project	15/8/89-30/11/89	213 743

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Support Systems Assoc	Assist evaluation of systems engineering, design, development and integration, test Evaluation and acceptance proposals of Jindalee Project tenders	21/9/89-31/11/89	55 552
Stanford Research Institute	Provide expert OTHR technical assistance - Jindalee Project	10/7/89-7/8/89	63 690
Aussat	Assess appropriateness of task specification included in the Invitation to Register for the Milsatcom System Definition Study	1/2/90-21/2/90	6 938
Aussat	Review the Auspace Report on proposed Flinders Light Satellite and compare with a possible Aussat A3 replacement hybrid commercial/military satellite	19/3/90-24/4/90	14 314
Australian Construction Service	Mechanical, electrical & architectural advice on Jindalee facilities component	23/8/89-30/11/89	125 000
Technology Australia	Assist with tender responses Project Romance	22/9/89-10/1/90	38 000
Computer and Educational Consultants	Assist in evaluation of tendered management aspects - Jindalee Project	28/8/89-12/12/89	47 360
Crooks Michell	Assist in evaluation of tendered management aspects - Jindalee Project	23/8/89-31/10/89	38 500
Peacock Stewart	Assist in evaluation Jindalee Project tender; commercialisation electro magnetic environment & engineering Assistance & advice on the Kariwara Project document Leatherite manufacturing techniques	23/8/89-31/10/89	31 905
Devtech	Investigate moisture absorption characteristics & drying methods of Kevlar 29 type 956 - Towed Array Project	27/9/89-9/10/89	4 200
Anenco	Develop software for Jindalee traceability matrix	5/12/89-15/12/89	3 224
Adept Technologies	Advise on corporate arrangements proposed by prime contractors and on executive contracting aspects - Jindalee Project	23/10/89-30/11/89	990
Mr D Dyer	Evaluation of 9 potential sites in WA for the Jindalee Project	13/9/89-current	40 000
Australian Construction Service	Prepare evidence for Public Works Committee on development of radar for Qld & WA - Jindalee Project	8/8/89-30/11/89	96 000
Dyseaton	Report on the environmental aspects of radar sites search area in Qld - Jindalee Project	25/9/89-current	15 850
CSIRO Division of Wildlife and Ecology	Report on the environmental aspects of radar sites search area in WA - Jindalee Project	11/10/89-12/12/89	10 000
CSIRO Division of Wildlife and Ecology	Evaluation of prime contractors specification and plan and risk reduction studies - Jindalee Project	17/8/89-29/11/89	17 000
CEA Technology		5/10/89-31/1/90	48 679

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Crooks Michell	Review project management & computer requirements for PDC Division	13/11/89-15/5/90	38 086
Peacock Stewart	Reports for Tender Evaluation Board	28/8/89-15/12/89	85 680
Shearer Walker & Associates	& Defence Definition Committee - Jindalee Project		
Mr A L. Odgers	Rationale for ignition system rocket motor - Nulka Project	1/8/89-28/9/89	9 610
Ewbank Preece	Engineering, management, systems, human engineering, tender documents and advice - Jindalee Project	4/9/89-10/11/89	33 720
Sinclair Knight	Beacon subsystems, radar frequency systems, maintainability, availability - Jindalee Project	28/8/89-3/11/89	26 176
Paxus Comnet	Tender documents and advice, systems, radar, technical, audits & facilities software - Jindalee Project	23/8/89-3/11/89	35 700
Auspace	Jindalee tender documents, software support & training facility, specification database	23/8/89-2/11/89	43 488
Imber Nugent	Evaluate proposals for management of test, evaluation and acceptance program, assist with tender documents - Jindalee Project	23/8/89-22/12/89	177 922
Advanced Technology	Advise and assist with tender documents - Jindalee Project	23/8/89-31/10/89	30 000
Futuretech	Advise and assist with tender documents - Jindalee Project	23/8/89-1/6/90	39 000
Easams	Evaluation system engineering, design development, integration & management - Jindalee Project. Contract to be extended by a further 10 weeks.	23/8/89-current	207 500
Trippett-Shedden	To develop a system specification for the FIMA MIS	12/6/90-27/12/90	62 019
Harris and Sutherland	Commercial lead assessor/auditor course	4 days	16 000
Engineering Testing & Research Services	Commercial lead assessor/auditor course	8 days	32 000
Bywater Camac	The structure of writing	1 day	1 250
MADS Centre	Engineering support	9/89-open	57 396
Dalec Consultants	Design development	8/89-open	139 600
Brinkley Tasbrin	Programming/analysis	11/89-1/90	286 400
BHP Engineering	Logistic support	11/89-6/90	228 795
BHP Engineering	Maintenance support	11/89-6/90	242 820
Value People	Software testing	11/89-8/90	70 340
Coopers & Lybrand	Corporate financial advisor	2/90	4 200
Vipac	Engineering support	12/89-7/90	362 200
Scientific	Engineering support	11/89-10/90	381 134
Management Assoc	Test programming	2/88-1/91	601 000
Scientific	Classification/specification	2/87-3/91	148 000
Management Assoc	Engineering support	11/88-open	111 539
Lloyds Register	Engineering support	4/88-open	89 605
AWA Defence Industries	Technical support and clerical services	10/88-open	95 158
J Brock & Co			
Tymboard			

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Dalec	Management support	7/89-open	65 889
Dalec	Management support	7/88-open	88 145
Compucat	Engineering services	7/89-open	89 969
Dalec	Management support	3/90-open	11 808
P Bruce-Walker	Editorial services	7/88-6/90	10 000
Easams	Test requirement data package	7/89-4/90	19 640
Easams	Test programming	8/89-2/90	20 214
ASTA	Field survey	10/89-open	25 270
Scientific Management Associates	Licensing agreement	3/90-open	14 333
Strobl, Killius & Vorbrugg	Legal services	10/89-2/90	5 093
IBM	Computer course Desine	7/89-open	9 949
IBM	Computer course Desine	8/89-9/89	23 674
IBM	Computer & software Desine	10/89-open	47 433
MWP Aust	Int PC payment	9/89-open	51 229
Foleys	Legal services	9/89-12/89	5 000
Aspect	Codification	9/89-10/89	1 525 532
MWP Aust	ILS	12/89-open	51 403
Marsh & McLennan	Insurance	11/89-open	81 000
IBM	Computer Desine	12/89-open	150 676
MTG Aust	Gun studies	2/90-open	16 500
Coubert Brothers	Legal services	3/90-open	9 504
Easams	Test equipment data packages	4/90	24 840
Unisearch	Research into ships motions	5/90	71 470
Unisearch	Conversion of armament drawings	4/90	83 975
Citrad	Project definition study - computing acquisition - NES	5/90	26 900
Thomson & Assoc	Assistance with maintenance and implementation of the facilities plan	5/90-4/91	65 000
Aspect Computing	Coding of Anzac Ship Project MIS functional specs.	5/90-6/90	24 750
Bradley T Marshall	Development of computer systems	1989-90	130 000
Morgan Lewis and Bockius	Legal services	1989-90	46 000
Information Spectrum	Industry contracts consultancy	6/90	11 500
Deputy Secretary Budget and Management			
Price Waterhouse & Urwick	Project Manager FSRP Phase I implementation	31/10/89-31/8/90	250 154
Price Waterhouse & Urwick	Contract programming support - Phase I	1/2/90-29/6/90	76 500
Ernst & Young	Membership ADP Acquisition Council	3/90	3 250
McGregor & Assoc	Audit manual	9/89-10/89	5 800
Arthur Andersen	Risk assessment	9/89-12/89	33 612
Coopers & Lybrand	Study on capital acquisition	8/89	17 600
Actaid	Development of training course	2/90-4/90	11 518
Ernst & Young	ADP audit methods	2/90	12 000
Coopers & Lybrand	Report on major capital acquisition study	2/90	7 650
Arthur Andersen	Review of selected Defence contracts with Krupp	2/90-3/90	33 901
Mackay Research	Report on findings of a survey	4/90-5/90	10 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Australian Institute of Criminology	Develop a survey questionnaire on staff attitudes on ethics	4/90-5/90	19 000
Australian Institute of Criminology	Conduct searches for information re Corporate ethics and fraud	4/90-5/90	5 000
Computer Associates (Richard Holden)	Technical Support for CA-IDMS	2 days	2 046
Oralle Systems	Consultants tracking system	89/90	10 112
A Garrison	These consultants were employed to perform the following tasks: 1. To review and where appropriate develop procedures and guidelines for the examination of classified material; 2. Train selected DoD staff in the principles of document and series appraisal for s.35 (Archives Act) examination; and, 3. Examine classified archival records of the DoD with the aim of establishing their public access status in accordance with the provisions of s.35 (Archives Act) 1983. Preliminary technical assessment for asbestos legislation discovering/ evidence gathering exercise. To provide maintenance support to Navy net pay deposit system.	1/7/89-30/6/90	119 000
R H Bourne		1/7/90-30/6/90	
J H Prout		12/10/89-30/6/90	
L MacLean		13/11/89-30/6/90	
J B Healy		1/7/89-30/6/90	
H C Hill		1/7/89-30/6/90	
P G Richards		1/7/89-30/6/90	
J Tregellas-Williams		1/7/89-30/6/90	
D J Richardson		1/7/89-30/6/90	
J Lewis		1/2/90-30/6/90	
Informed Sources	Cataloging review.	89/90	17 000
Datascape	Indexing system	3-6/90	10 000
Peter Judge & Associates	Survey data processing	89/90	2 000
Ken Randall	Public affairs	89/90	70 008
Prof Kasper	ADFADSMC	23/7/90-17/8/90	5 516
Performance Education	Introduction to computing	7/89, 9/89, 10/89, 2/90, 5/90, 6/90	11 100
Technisearch	Negotiating Skills	7/89, 9/89, 3/90, 5/90	15 200
Performance Education	Introduction to Programming	7/89, 9/89, 2/90	9 990
ICL	Data Communications	8/89, 11/89, 6/90	21 300
Performance Education	Introduction to computing	9/89 - 10/89	3 700
Human Systems Development	DSMC	23/7/89 - 17/8/89	2 636
Rose & Barton	Analysis of Attitude	19/6/89-10/7/89	1 650
K & S Thornton	Senior Negotiating skills	9/89, 11/89, 3/90	17 536
ACT Community & Health	Project Network Analysis	7-11/8/89	7 400
Performance Education	Stress Management	15; 22 & 29/8/89, 3, 10 & 17/10/89	3 600
Systematics	Introduction to programming	18-28/9/89	3 330
Dr T Teasdale	Spectrum	23-27/10/89	7 650
Le Clair Enterprises	GAA training	9/89, 2/90	4 350
Life & Career	GAA training	9/89	1 665
	SES Workshops	30/10, 2 & 21/11,	17 220

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Options		& 3 half days	
Performance	Introduction to computing	5-9/2, 21-25/5,	5 550
Education		18-22/6/90	
ICL	Data Communications	4-7/6/90	7 100
Dorothy Outram	Introduction to correspondence	1, 2, 27&28/11/89	2 200
Il J Potts	Executive Management	10-18/10 & 28/11-7/12/89	3 596
H Whitmore	Executive Management	10-18/10 & 28/11-7/12/89	4 604
Dr T Teasdale	MMDP training	2 days	2 700
MERA	"C" Programming	9-12/4/90	3 680
Human Systems Development	Directors Management Workshop	22-23/2/90	4 298
R J Mobbs	GAA training	19-21/12/89	5 648
University of Adelaide	Diagnostics of Digital Systems	3/90	11 100
Professional Trg & Development	Situational Leadership	30/4-4/5/90	16 759
Micro Energy	Wordstar 5 Advanced	21, 22 & 26/3/90	3 630
ACT TAFE	Pilot Audit course	9-12/4/90	9 060
Arthur Anderson	Risk Analysis	5 days	13 533
Total Organisational Management	Self paced orientation	3 months	50 900
T Richardson & R Hockley	Directors Management Workshops	8-12/4, 13-17/5, 3-7/6/90	52 500
Aust Org for Quality	Quality Assurance Software Engineering	7-8/6/90	13 500
Draft One Communications	Promoting Staff Development	8-9/5/90	4 000
University of Adelaide	Programming in ADA	18-22/6/90	11 700
Technology Training Corporation	Software Project Management	7-9/5/90	18 190
Sybase	Introduction to SQL	7, 8 & 11/5/90	4 000
Communica Software	Communica x Windows	18-20/6/90	7 500
ACT TAFE	CAD Design Package	5 days	14 000
Manastra	Project Management for Engineers	16-18/5&29-31/5/90	35 978
EPM	Management Principles for Engineers	6-8/6/90&13-15/6/90	26 400
RMIT	Satellite Communications	13 days/2/90	19 698
UNSW	MMDP Residentials	1/90, 8/90	192 300
Dr Crombie	SES Workshop	4-6/9/89	2 400
K & S Thornton	Project Management	11/89, 3/90	22 200
Manastra Pty Ltd	Engineering Project Management	5-7/12/89	9 174
Dr F Emery	SES Workshop	3/12/89	1 000
Dr Crombie	Executive Management Workshop	13-5/12/89	2 400
Total Organisational Management	Individual Development Program	11-16/12/89	16 600
Dorothy Outram	Writing Skills	13-4/4 & 17-18/4/90	11 000
Total Organisational Management	Individual Development Program	12-15/3/90	8 600
ADFA	Defence Laser Safety Course	8-10/5/90	8 500
Profile Services	Interpreter training	4-6/12/89	2 250
Crosstech Pty Ltd	GAA induction	9/1/90	1 216
Crosstech Pty Ltd	OSI for Managers	3 days	3 800
Technisearch	Foreman II Courses	15-18/5&11-14/7/90	8 000
RMIT	Helicopter Design Course	26/2-2/3/90	3 750
Technisearch	"C" Programming Courses	3/90, 5/90	14 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Technology Training Corporation	Software System Engineering	2-4/4/90	4 770
VICTRACC	Programming in Pascal	2-4/4/90	4 250
VICTRACC	Using D Base III 18-20/6/90	2 550	
VICTRACC	Introduction for Computer Users	7-9/5/90	2 550
Unisys	DMS'1100 Concepts & DML	5/90, 6/90	36 000
Computer Power	Open Access	27-30/5/90	7 750
Edward De Bono	Lateral Thinking	5/5/90	9 885
John Martin	Working with Consultants	22/6/90	800
Prof J Harris	Radar Imaging	2 months	8 733
Technisearch	"C" Programming	5/90, 6/90	21 020
M J Clarke	D Base IV	6 days	12 800
ADFA	DSMC	10-23/5/90	2 587
CITRAD	DSMC	10-23/5/90	9 400
Cullen Egan Dell Ltd	Performance Management Seminar	2 days	3 226
Sigma Data	Advanced UNIX	3 days	4 800
Optic Systems Design	Fibre Optic LAN	22-24/5/90	6 154
Bruce TAFE	PLC Systems	10 days	10 400
Professional Match Services	Staff Planning Data Base	3 month	58 600
Arthur Anderson	Contract Audit Course	3 days	15 800
PHRD	Managers and Supervisors Courses	6 days	8 700
Technisearch	Computer Courses	17 days	14 800
Chisholm Institute of Technology	Program Design Course	18 & 25/6/90	10 500
Challenge Consulting	New Supervisors Course	20 days	37 695
AIM	Time Management	8 days	7 760
Australian Organisation for Quality	How to implement Quality System	4-5/6/90	7 820
Ernst & Young	EDP Auditing	12-15/6/90	14 430
Imageword	Advanced DOS, D Base Graphics	5 days	13 200
Aspect Computing	IBM Overview for Defence	5 days	23 100
Aspect Computing	IBM Environment Course	5 days	14 250
ACTAID	PLC Hydraulics Course	12 weeks	11 572
Eston Aust Pty Ltd	Technical Writers Course	12 days	32 400
ACTAID	Civil Recognition Consultancy	115 days	60 180
Imageword	Introduction to Computers and Windows	14 days	12 200
IBM	AS400 Course	5 days	11 165
KPMG Peat Marwick	Training Needs Analysis	12 months	61 000
PHRD	Managers Management I Course	14 days	18 850
PHRD	Experienced Supervisors Course	9 days	18 095
Institute of Admin	R & D Course	27/5-6/6/90	40 000
ACTAID	Eligibility Testing	12 months	28 390
VICTRACC	Introduction to Computers	19-23/4/90	4 000
University of Canberra	Budgeting and financial administration course	21-22/5/90	5 130
Dr G Wittingslow	To review psychology services provided in support of the recruiting function as recommended in Auditor-General's Report of Recruiting Practices	28/3-30/6/90	21 860
Royal Melbourne Institute of Technology			
Mr D Stratford	Career evaluation services	1 day	1 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Civic Securities	Consultation on Retirement	1 day	445
Computer Power	Civilprism	60 days	27 000
Concurrent - Computer Corporation	Consultancy	6 days	6 750
Service Management Australia	Client service program	24/1-30/5/90	30 713
Ernst & Young	Client service program	1 day	2 025
J B Were & Son	Preparation Retirement Portfolio	12/12/89-16/2/90	500
Mr W Rome	Team Building Workshop	12-13/6/90	1 700
Ernst & Young	Team Building Workshop	28-29/5/90	1 867
Sir William Cole	Review of DFRDB Scheme	1/7/89-30/6/90	42 164
MAJGEN D Deighton	Review of DFRDB Scheme	1/7/89-30/6/90	24 091
Mr L J Carden	Review of DFRDB Scheme	1/7/89-30/6/90	20 527
TPF & C	Actuarial services for DFRDB Scheme	1/7/89-30/6/90	574 773
Insurance & Superannuation Commission	Actuarial services for DFRDB Scheme	1/7/89-30/6/90	17 600
Deputy Secretary Strategic and Intelligence			
Consult Pty Ltd	IDMS software support	4/4-7/9/90	60 000
G D Gorman	Historical/archival research	15/7/89-14/7/90	13 000
Lateral Systems Pty Ltd	Software development and modification	7/89-3/91	180 600
Slade Consulting Group Pty Ltd	Recruitment of CSO 5	11/89	10 000
Australian Online Systems Pty Ltd	Software development	4/90-4/91	114 000
Telecom Australia	Powning Association Contingency planning	7/2-7/7/90	56 250
Australian Construction Services	Communications strategy planning	19/3/90 (480 hrs)	58 560
OIC Systems	Port Augusta Woomera Pipeline - electrification of pumpstations (design and survey work)	1/7/89-30/6/90	85 000
Consultants Pty Ltd	Installation of Woomera local area	1/3/90-30/6/90	13 313
CITRAD Charles Newton	Lecture at the DSMC and rewrite course notes	6-18/5/90	9 750
Centre for Studies in Management and Logistics	Lectures at the DSMC	22-23/5/90 10-11/5/90	2 557
Chief Defence Scientist			
D Glenn	Computer problem	1 day	150
R Begbie	Review of Central Office	9/89-12/89	17 000
AMJ Newham (Reid)	ARL program evaluation	11/89	6 000
A M McNabb	One day consultancy visit for Aircraft Materials Division	21/6/89	390
Ward Consulting	Commercialisation	3-6/90	24 500
SYDAC	Engineering services - commercialisation	3/5-90	3 683
SYDAC	System engineering study of CIWS	4/89	500
SYDAC	Engineering services for CIWS D/V phase	up to 5/90	1 479
Swinburne Ltd	Development of aircraft performance databases	3/90	15 000
SYDAC	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 4/90	3 396

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
SYDAC	Engineering services for CIWST D/V phase	up to 4/90	1 841
Kings Engineering Services	Black Hawk helicopter fatigue	up to 5/90	3 000
David Ryan Consulting Pty Ltd	Workshops for administration staff		4 500
Computer Applications	Development of ARL financial management system	up to 5/90	8 540
Pannell, Kerr, Forster	Report on financial management at ARL	10/89-3/90	9 500
Setek Milos	ACARS turbulence analysis project	5/90	1 000
Monash University	Meteorological analysis of wind shear hazards	3/90	7 500
AWA Defence Industries	Project definition study - TACTERN navigation system	5/90	99 725
Dart Defence Industries	Target scoring feasibility study	2/90	10 854
AWA Defence Industries	Preparation of commercial bid estimate for A.H.T.S.	2/90	17 550
SYDAC	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 3/90	6 641
Ward Consulting	Commercialisation	1-2/90	12 500
RAC Science Consultants	Design and specify safety shielding for x-ray system	3/90	1 000
RAC Science Consultants	Development of energy dispersive x-ray technique	3/90	5 000
Technisearch	Development project - supersonic flows	5-12/90	3 000
Dr J F Williams	Theoretical analysis and testing on incremental plasticity problem	3/90	5 000
Tripal Systems	Feasibility study - remote scoring system for aerial towed targets	1/90	23 400
British Aerospace	Technical study & report on context switched memory	2/90	11 149
SYDAC	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 2/90	3 442
Davies & Collison	Legal advice on intellectual property protection	9/89	675
Kings Engineering Services	Black Hawk helicopter fatigue	up to 3/90	7 000
Ward Consulting	Commercialisation	10-12/89	11 000
SYDAC	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 1/90	2 726
David Ryan Consulting	Planning workshops for administration staff	11-12/89	2 810
SYDAC	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 4/12/89	4 683
Laser Systems Australia	CIWS target laser altimeter technology assessment	up to 4/12/89	2 500
Ross Begbie & Associates Pty Ltd	ARL contribution to management & consulting skills workshop	18-20/10/89	2 110
Dr Perry	Interview selection panel	1/90	233
Jayman Scinfo Services	Life enhancement project	12/89	4 500
Monash University	Report by Dr Y C Lam on "Effects of	12/89	8 000

Appendix E: External Consultancies

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
	"Residual Stress on Fatigue Crack Growth"		
Tripal Systems	Feasibility study - remote scoring system for aerial towed targets	12/89	23 400
Computer Sciences of Australia Pty Ltd	Software analysis	up to 27/10/89	17 697
University of Sydney	Software and analysis of test results	11/89	10 000
Computer Applications University of Sydney	Development of ARL Financial Management System	up to 12/89	12 680
	Development project dynamic finite element models	advance payment	6 000
Phillip Institute (Ken Wright)	Development and objective setting program - information and supervisors session	7-9/89	1 650
Ward Consulting	Commercialisation	up to 25/9/89	15 000
Dr I Kennedy	Seminar on turbulent flows	18/12/89	197
SYDAC	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 9/11/89	3 176
Monash University	Meteorological analysis of wind shear hazards	10/89	2 090
Computer Applications	Financial Management System	up to 9/89	9 130
Control Dynamics	Project management assistance - CIWS target demonstration	up to 30/9/89	12 567
Control Dynamics	Engineering support for feasibility study (F-111)	up to 20/8/89	2 000
AWA Defence Industries	Contract for the specification of trials instrumentation - CIWS target demonstration	progress payment	4 481
Computer Sciences of Australia Pty Ltd	Software analysis	up to 29/9/89	26 216
Technisearch	Report on supersonic flows	up to 29/10/89	13 000
Symmetry Pty Ltd	Seminar - "Counselling for Managers"	21/9/89	350
Pannell, Kerr, Forster	Consulting assistance	11/8/89	8 500
Control Dynamics	Project management assistance	up to 3/9/89	8 937
AWA Defence Industries	Contract for the specification of trials instrumentation	8/89	1 046
Computer Sciences	Software analysis	up to 1/9/89	37 373
Milos Setek	ACARS turbulence data study	up to 13/9/89	2 000
David Ryan	Counselling session for ARL staff	25/9/89	400
Computer Applications	Development of ARL financial management	up to 8/89	14 740
Australian National Inspecting & Testing	Analysis of steel	8/89	55
AWA Defence Industries	Contract for the specification of trials instrumentation	8/89	472
Control Dynamics Pty Ltd	Provision of project management assistance - professional engineering services (CIWS project)	up to 30/6/89	1 375
Bar Associates	"Preparing for Change" workshop	20/7/89	900
Symmetry Pty Ltd	To conduct a seminar at ARL Melbourne - "Counselling skills for managers"	15-17/8/89	1 800
Marsh & McLennan Pty Ltd	Risk exposure and insurance requirements related to commercial	advance payment	427

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
Tripal Systems Pty Ltd	work Feasibility study for remote scoring system.	advance payment	11 700
Computer Sciences Dr A Matthews	Software analysis Consultant on surface coating technology	7/89 1/8/89	12 933 172
Prof J D Crisp	Interview panel for SPRS interviews	20/7/89	233
Phillips, Ormonde & Fitzpatrick	Patent search (of gear failure detection system)	10/4/89	1 200
A Blenkin	Cryptomathematics consultancy (UK private consultant)	8/6/89-11/5/90	58 122
Aspect	Review and recommend and computing network management system	1 month 30 days 2/90	14 640 at \$488/day
VIPAC Engineers & Scientists	Consultation on mechanical engineering package "SUPERTAB FEM"	8 hours on 16/3/90	495
Disc Computer Systems	Costs of ETHERNET LAN seminar at DSTO. 17 people at \$450 each	10-12/10/89	5 800
RE Technical Services	Project management support for Project Kalili	1-4/90	10 590
Hamilton Watts	Recruit 2 specialist SRS's from UK for specific requirements (Initial fee paid upfront)	17/8/89-1/90	16 000
Prof R Ritchie	Fatigue crack growth	17/10/89	118
Prof R L Apps	Welding technology	21/11/89	277
T Dickinson	Defence diesel engines	22/11/89	195
J Blackburn-Watson	Stirling engine	28/11/89	199
Prof J M Dewey	Airblast software	27/2/90	340
Dr S Freeman	NBC (Chemical consultancy)	30/3/90	118
G Kelso	Gas chromatography	2 days	296
Prof D Ewins	Modal analysis	24/4/90	1 688
Brentwood Butler Consultants	Address to trainees	16/5/90	300
Dr R Bailey	Interview panel	0.5 day	117
Dr K Tiller	Referee scientific paper	1 day	199
Dr J Eadie	Referee scientific paper	2.5 days	498
Dr J Stanley	Referee scientific paper	1 day	199
S Soon	Referee scientific paper	1.5 days	299
Dr D Phillips	Referee scientific paper	3 days	597
Dr G Dietachmayer	Referee scientific paper	1.5 days	299
Dr R Read	Referee scientific paper	1 day	199
Dr R Langman	Referee scientific paper	1 day	199
Dr C Johnson	Referee scientific paper	1 day	199
T Chandra	Referee scientific paper	1.5 days	299
B Jarrold	Referee scientific paper	0.5 day	100
Aspect Computing	Development of SRL migration plans for Desine	10/10-12/10/89	3 225
Aspect Computing	Preparation of computing system migration plans	10/89 (18 days approx)	10 000
Hamilton Watts International	Overseas recruitment campaign	1-2/90	12 000
Hamilton Watts	Overseas recruitment campaign	3-4/90	54 100
Aspect Computing Technology	Stage 1, Information Systems Plan	5/90 (5 days)	3 275
Innovation	SLR SAR project	5/90	11 130
Aspect Computing	Stage 2, Information Systems Plan	6/90	11 900
Hamilton Watts	UK recruitment - MSD	26/2/90	16 000
Hamilton Watts	UK recruitment - CSD	6/2/90	16 000

Consultant	Purpose of Engagement	Period of Engagement	Contract Value (\$)
DAS	Interview panel	7/11/90	170
CONIROD - Vic	Safety Awareness Course	14/11/89	15 180
Jennifer Richardson	Interview panel	18/10/89	2 210
R K Maddern & Assoc	Computer consultancy	15/9/89	2 518
Anthony Lavers & Associates	Training documentation	24/5/89	813
Heritage Consultants	Photographic consultancy	14/05/90	2 225
Defence Regional Offices			
Australian Govt Solicitor	Legal expenses in respect of sale of Defence property	1988/89	69
Mr W Binetal	Instruction training program	4/89	125
Mr A Haarbarger	Development of external placement test	8/89	850
Mrs L Wilmot (EPRA)	Presentation at retirement planning seminar	9/89	80
Dr J Hill	Session: Managing Industrial	8/89, 10/89	1 600
Ms J Ingleton	Counselling for Managers	11/89	2 000
Mrs L Wilmot	Retirement Seminar	12/89	292
Dr Puzey	Retirement Seminar	12/89	223
Dr J Hill	Management Industrial Relations Course	3/89, 6/89 & 10/89	3 000
Mr B Byrt	Leadership and Motivation Development Activity for DRO Vic Management Committee	2/90	200
Mr J Overberg	English Teacher Development Course	2/90	100
Mr J Johnson	English Teacher Development Course	3/90	100
Dr L Mackay	English Teacher Development Course	4/90	100
Adult Migrant Education Service	English Teacher Development Course	4/90	480
Ms C McDavell	Present training for Proficiency Testing	5/90	500
Mr G Charlesworth	Training in Aegis script writing	7/90	1 932
Stabel Design	Load floor plan details onto a computerised data base	5-6/90	16 170
Weir Knightsbridge and Associates	Stress Management Training	4/90	2 000
Jackman and Treloar	Valuation of Army Reserve land for disposal	89	3 897
Australian Purchasing Group	Valuation of Army Reserve land for disposal	89	350
Australian Purchasing Group	Plan computer station layout for DRO SA	2/90	1 000
TAFE Customised Training Agency	Career Development Seminar/Workshop	3/90	1 506
M Caulfield	EEO Workshop	3/90	800
Integra	Stress Management	6/90	2 000
St John's Ambulance	Basic Life Support Course	5/90	360
Muis Bishop and Associates	Counselling Skills workshop	6/90	13 250

APPENDIX F: FREEDOM OF INFORMATION SECTION 8 STATEMENT

Section 8 of the FOI Act requires each Commonwealth agency to publish information about the way it is organised, its decision making powers, arrangements for public participation in the work of the agency, documents held by the agency and how these can be accessed by the public.

FOI PROCEDURES AND INITIAL CONTACT POINTS

A request for access to documents under the FOI Act must be made in writing, provide such information concerning the documents as is reasonably necessary to enable a responsible officer of the Department to identify them and be accompanied by a \$30 application fee. Home and work telephone numbers should be included. The request should claim to be made under the FOI Act, provide an address to which replies may be sent and be sent by post to the following address:

The Secretary
Department of Defence
Russell Offices
CANBERRA ACT 2600
Attention: FOI Section

Should assistance be required regarding access under the Act, advice may be obtained by telephoning (06) 266 6811.

Applicants may be liable to pay charges at rates prescribed by the FOI (Fees and Charges) Regulations.

AUTHORISED FOI DECISION-MAKERS

The authority to disclose documents is held widely throughout the Department and the ADF.

The occupants of positions classified at Band 2 level or higher in the Senior Executive Service of the APS and the occupants of positions classified at Major General (or equivalent) or higher rank are authorised to refuse requests for access to documents under the FOI Act.

THE DEFENCE ORGANISATION, FUNCTIONS AND POWERS AFFECTING THE PUBLIC

(Readers will find it useful when reading this section to refer to the program and organisation charts in Part One of the report.)

THE SECRETARY AND THE CHIEF OF THE DEFENCE FORCE

The Secretary administers the Department of Defence and advises the Minister for Defence and the Minister for Defence Science and Personnel on policy, resources and organisation.

The CDF commands the ADF and advises the Minister on the military aspects of ADF development including the size of the ADF and the balance within it in relation to strategic requirements.

The Secretary and CDF jointly advise on manpower policy requirements, including conditions of service, for the ADF; on the use of resources within the ADF; on the continuing review of the adequacy of the organisation and administration of the Department of Defence and the ADF; and on promotions and postings of two star officers and above and the posting of one star officers to appointments which have more than single Service implications.

HEADQUARTERS AUSTRALIAN DEFENCE FORCE

Vice Chief of the Defence Force. CDF's principal staff officer and chief of the headquarters staff. Supervises the operation of HQADF; directs development of ADF long-term planning, including military planning for the defence of Australia; and coordinates the ADF force development processes.

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Development). Assists the CDF to discharge his responsibilities in relation to the military implications of strategic guidance, force development, defence facilities, science and technology, planning, programming and budgeting, defence aid and supply and support.

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Operations). Assists the CDF to discharge his command functions as they relate to military operations and plans, training, logistics, intelligence command support systems and communications and electronics.

Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Personnel). Assists the CDF to discharge his responsibilities in relation to Service personnel policy and ADF administrative policy.

Surgeon General Australian Defence Force. Provides health policy guidance and advice for the ADF.

Judge Advocate General. Examines and advises on proceedings of Service tribunals and nominates members of the Judge Advocates Panel. Reports annually to the Minister on the operations of the Defence Force Discipline Act.

Director General Defence Force Legal Services. Provides advice on disciplinary, administrative, international and operational law and other legal questions relating to the CDF's command and administration of the ADF.

Maritime Headquarters. Conducts joint maritime operations and other activities as specified by the CDF.

Land Headquarters. Conducts joint land operations and other activities as specified by the CDF.

Headquarters Northern Command. Responsible to the CDF through the Land Commander for planning and conducting the defence of northern Australia.

Air Headquarters. Conducts joint and specified air operations and other activities as specified by the CDF.

Australian Joint Warfare Establishment. Studies, develops and teaches Australian joint warfare doctrine and evaluates exercises.

Joint Services Staff College. Provides selected officers with an advanced education in preparation for senior appointments in the Department of Defence and in the Services. Also takes students from other countries and other departments.

Australian Defence Force Academy. Provides military education and training for officer cadets of the three Services and other countries and concurrent studies at tertiary level under an agreement with the University of New South Wales.

Natural Disasters Organisation. Develops national counter-disaster plans and civil defence policy and plans and coordinates Commonwealth physical assistance to the States and Territories in the event of a disaster. Coordinates government and non-government disaster relief to Papua New Guinea and the South West Pacific nations at the request of the Australian International Development Assistance Bureau.

NAVY OFFICE

Chief of Naval Staff. Commands and administers the RAN.

Powers affecting members of the public: May declare by notice in the Commonwealth of Australia Gazette an area in or adjacent to Australia to be a firing area; may make orders and give instructions in relation to canteens and clubs for members of the Navy; may grant to a person a licence to trade in a Naval establishment; and may approve which subjects at a matriculation examination will qualify a person for entry to the Royal Australian Naval College.

Deputy Chief of Naval Staff. Oversees day to day business of the Navy, coordinates implementation of Navy and Defence policy, oversees the management of RAN resources and monitors and advises external Naval commands. Formulates and proposes policies which provide guidance for development of Naval force structure and capability requirements. Formulates the Navy's facilities programs. Represents and acts on behalf of CNS.

Naval Personnel Division. Responsible for all personnel management functions (including health management) for the permanent Naval forces and reserves.

Naval Materiel Division. Jointly responsible to the CNS and Deputy Secretary, Acquisition and Logistics, for the introduction into service of naval equipment from the approved capability proposal to government decision and acquisition. Responsible for the Navy's logistics policy development including engineering and supply policies, engineering user requirements including repair and maintenance of ships, submarines, naval aircraft, support craft and equipment, engineering services including design and quality assurance.

Powers affecting members of the public: Issue of invitations to register interest and requests for tender; evaluation of tender applications; and recommendation of preferred tender.

Maritime Command. The Maritime Commander Australia has command of the fleet and is responsible to the CDF for the planning and conduct of maritime operations.

Naval Support Command. The Flag Officer Naval Support Command has command of establishments allocated to Naval Support Command and administers NSW and the ACT as the Naval area commander.

Naval Area Commands. Naval Officers Commanding Western Australia, Victoria, Queensland, north Australia, South Australia and Tasmania are responsible for the administration and security of commissioned Naval establishments, facilities and their personnel; command and local administration of Naval Reserve Port Divisions and Naval reserve cadet units; and providing assistance to state authorities in civil emergencies.

ARMY OFFICE

Chief of the General Staff. Commands and administers the Army.

Appendix F: Freedom of Information Section 8 Statement

Powers affecting members of the public: May prescribe conditions for entry to the Army; may place names of officers or former officers on retired lists, to grant them military title and authorise the wearing of uniforms and insignia by such persons; may determine who shall be employed, reside or stay in any military works; may approve the possession, sale, supply and consumption of intoxicating liquor at a gathering of members of the Army and their guests; may authorise disclosure of reasons for retirement; may order the sale or destruction of unclaimed property held in a Defence Force establishment or store; and may direct the sale of personal property and effects of a deceased member.

Deputy Chief of the General Staff. Controls and directs the activities of the staff elements within the Office of the CGS and attached elements. Responsible for military operations and plans, Army development, training and education, intelligence, survey and overall direction of the Arms Directorates (that is Armour, Artillery, Engineers, Signals Infantry and Army Aviation). Represents and acts on behalf of the CGS as required.

Office of the Assistant Chief of the General Staff - Army Reserve. Advises on policy and procedures affecting the Army Reserve.

Army Personnel Division. Responsible for the acquisition and management (including health management) of the military workforce which the Army needs to meet its commitments.

Powers affecting members of the public: May authorise the release of serving and former members' military, medical and dental history.

Army Logistics Division. Responsible for formulation and implementation of Army Office policies concerning logistic support within the Army and for contributing to the formulation of departmental policies on logistic support for the ADF.

Powers affecting members of the public: May approve the sale, loan or hire of Army stores to the public; disposal of Army stores; determines repair policy and stocking policy of repair parts; may enter into cleaning and sanitation contracts; and authorise employment of the Army Fire Service in Defence aid to the civil community.

Army Materiel Division. Jointly responsible to the CGS and Deputy Secretary, Acquisition and Logistics, for managing the processes leading to research, development, design, testing, evaluation and procurement of new or improved materiel equipment. Management of Army aspects of accommodation and works.

Land Command. Commanded by the Land Commander who is responsible for the command of the Field Army and of allied forces that may be allocated to it, except for those formations and units placed under command of a separate joint force commander in an area of operations; for contributing to the formulation of Army policy, plans and doctrine; and for the development of Army aspects of Australian Joint Service plans as directed by the CGS.

Powers affecting members of the public: May make decisions relating to public access to military (Army) areas; selects private or state property for Field Army exercises; provides Defence aid to the civil community when not managed through the HQ of a Military District; may release Army personnel information; may approve local hire or lease of Army property; and may impose constraints on Army personnel which impinge on public enterprise.

Logistic Command. Provides base level movement and transport, supply, electrical and mechanical engineering and quality assurance support for the Army and contributes to the formulation of Army policy, plans and doctrine.

Powers affecting members of the public: May enter into procurement contracts and authorise the lease or hire of equipment.

Training Command. Is responsible for the command of Army schools and training establishments, except the Royal Military College Duntroon, and for contributing to the formulation of Army policy and plans.

Commanders of Military Districts. Are responsible for the command of assigned formations and units and the management of Army controlled land, barracks, training areas, ranges, accommodation and other facilities in the military district either directly or through appointed area commanders. The Military Districts are:

1. Queensland
2. New South Wales
3. Victoria
4. South Australia
5. Western Australia (less the Kimberley region)
6. Tasmania
7. Northern Territory (including the Kimberley region of Western Australia).

Powers affecting members of the public: Exercises powers in accordance with regulations under the Defence Act relating to rifle clubs and associations; provides Defence aid to the civil community; controls public access to a military area; approves the use or hire of private and State property; controls security of Army property; approves the loan, hire or purchase of stores and equipment; and may grant local compensation arising from exercises or accidents.

Commandant, Royal Military College, Duntroon. Is responsible for the training of cadets for careers as officers in the Australian Army.

Part Three

Powers affecting members of the public: May authorise the provision of assistance to the civil community by the College and may release information from the records of members and ex-members of the College.

AIR FORCE OFFICE

Chief of the Air Staff. Commands and administers the Air Force.

Powers affecting members of the public: Has the power to determine the conditions for the appointment of officers and airmen to the RAAF.

Deputy Chief of the Air Staff. Determines Air Force policy and plans for the development, disposition and employment of the operational force and supporting elements, allocates resource priorities and manages the Air Force Executive Program. Represents and acts on behalf of the CAS in his absence.

Air Force Personnel Division. Develops and implements personnel policy (including health policy) for the RAAF, participates in mobilisation and operational planning, and provides recruiting targets, standards and policy.

Air Force Materiel Division. Has policy responsibility for engineering, logistic and materiel matters.

Air Command. Conducts air operations and operational training, including definition of standards, evolution of techniques and preparation of plans; maintains lines of communication throughout Australia and its territories; and cooperates with Commonwealth and state authorities in matters relating to civil defence, search and rescue and assistance to the civil community.

Powers affecting members of the public: Provides Defence Force aid to the civil power in situations other than counter-terrorist operations; and may summon civilian witnesses to attend Air Force courts martial.

Logistics Command. Provides logistic support for all in-service RAAF aircraft, other equipment and Navy and Army aircraft for which the RAAF is designated single Service manager; and cooperates with Commonwealth and state authorities in matters relating to civil defence, search and rescue and assistance to the civil community.

Powers affecting members of the public: Issues local purchase orders and period contracts; evaluates tenders and makes recommendations as appropriate and lets contracts on the basis of tenders received; and can compel attendance of civilians at courts martial or Defence Force Magistrate hearings.

Training Command. Conducts individual air and ground training.

ACQUISITION AND LOGISTICS ORGANISATION

Deputy Secretary, Acquisition and Logistics. Advises on acquisition and logistic matters and responsible for the operations of the Capital Procurement Organisation (consisting of Capital Equipment Program Division, Industry Policy and Operations Division, Project Development and Communications Division and the Assistant Chiefs of Staff-Materiel), Defence Logistics Organisation (consisting of the Assistant Chief of the Defence Force (Logistics), Facilities and Property Division and a Services logistics and engineering element) and the Defence Contracting Organisation.

Capital Equipment Program Division. Participates in the development of capital equipment projects through advice on financial, industry, resource and commercial aspects of individual acquisitions.

Industry Policy and Operations Division. Formulates and coordinates the application of Defence policy for industry and procurement policy for equipment acquisition and is responsible for facilitating the commercial exploitation of indigenously developed and produced defence equipment and intellectual property.

Powers affecting members of the public: Granting of Australian Ownership and Control of Information eligibility and related matters; granting of waivers of residency criteria for personnel security clearances for foreign persons in Australian industry; and approval of exports of certain defence equipment and goods with dual civil and military applications.

Project Development and Communications Division. Responsible for major and minor capital equipment projects, its primary tasks are to transform developmental indigenous research and development concepts into operational systems suitable for manufacture and manage the development, acquisition and introduction into service of designated complex telecommunications, information and other systems.

Assistant Chiefs of Staff-Materiel. See entry under relevant Service Office for description of dual responsibilities.

Assistant Chief of Defence Force (Logistics). Jointly responsible to VCDF and Deputy Secretary, Acquisition and Logistics, develops and promulgates policies aimed at achieving a common standard of logistics procedure and practice across the Services and Department; handles the disposal of major capital equipment; and provides computing support for the ADF logistics function.

Facilities and Property Division. Develops and implements facilities and property policies, plans and programs.

Services Logistics and Engineering. The Assistant Chief of Naval Staff - Logistics, Assistant Chief of the General Staff - Logistics and the Assistant Chief of the Air Staff - Engineering are responsible to the Deputy Secretary, Acquisition and Logistics and to their respective Chiefs of Staff for providing advice in respect of their own Service.

Defence Contracting Organisation. The Organisation comprises the Central Secretariat and six regional offices situated in each of the mainland capitals, including Canberra, and is responsible for the more complex tender and contract actions involving contracts for equipment, supplies and services for the ADF and the Department.

Powers affecting members of the public: Accepts tender and quotation recommendations for the purchase of supplies and to amend the terms and conditions of an existing agreement or contract; certifies that obtaining representative quotations or tenders is impractical or inexpedient; determines that the provisions of a contract for supplies should not be published in the Commonwealth Purchasing and Disposals Gazette; and approves the disclosure of information relating to a contract for supplies.

BUDGET AND MANAGEMENT ORGANISATION

Deputy Secretary, Budget and Management. Advises on workforce, management improvement and programs and budget matters and exercises supervisory responsibility on behalf of the Secretary for the following Divisions: Human Resources, Management Improvement and Manpower Policy, Inspector-General and Resources and Financial Programs.

Human Resources Division. Formulates and implements departmental policy for Service and civilian personnel employed by the Department; manages the recruitment, conditions, development, training and administration of civil personnel in the Department; and provides advice on ADF pay and conditions of service matters and manages Service recruitment.

Management Improvement and Manpower Policy Division. Formulates policies for management improvement and human resources budgeting for Service and civilian manpower and manages departmental administrative services.

Inspector - General Division. Undertakes independent reviews and makes suggestions for improved management in relation to the regularity, efficiency, effectiveness and economy in the discharge of Defence activities and expenditure and management policies, practices and controls within the Defence organisation.

Resources and Financial Programs Division. Formulates and implements financial, accounting and resources policy for Defence requirements, activities and proposals. Prepares, controls and reviews the Five Year Development program, forward estimates and the annual obligation program, annual and additional estimates.

Powers affecting members of the public: Determines the rates of charge for the use of Departmental stores and services; determines, in association with the Department of Finance, the costs to be recovered in respect of ADF assistance to the civil community; accepts the insurable risk in respect of Defence Force activities and stores on loan to the Department; may write-off irrecoverable revenue, debts and overpayments and amounts uneconomical to recover; and may allow an amount payable to the Commonwealth to be paid in instalments.

STRATEGIC AND INTELLIGENCE ORGANISATION

Deputy Secretary, Strategic and Intelligence. Advises on strategic and international policy, force structure and policy coordination and exercises responsibility for three divisions: Strategic Policy and Coordination Division, International Policy Division and Force Development and Analysis Division with additional responsibility for policy oversight of the intelligence function.

Strategic Policy and Coordination Division. Monitors Australia's strategic environment, develops strategic policies and issues strategic guidance advice; provides parliamentary support services; provides coordination and resolution of issues in respect of matters affecting a number of functional areas for which none has prime responsibility; and provides Departmental legal services and coordinates the Department's responsibilities under the *Freedom of Information Act 1982*.

Powers affecting members of the public: Imposes and grants remission of fees and charges payable under the Freedom of Information legislation.

International Policy Division. Develops defence international policy and manages defence aspects of international relations, including defence cooperation activity and the operation of the joint US-Australia defence facilities.

Force Development and Analysis Division. Formulates and provides advice on options for the development of defence capabilities, including their relative priorities and resource implications.

DEFENCE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY ORGANISATION

Chief Defence Scientist. Chief adviser on science and technology and head of the Defence Science and Technology Organisation. The Organisation comprises five major laboratories and several smaller establishments located in South Australia, Victoria, New South Wales, Tasmania and Queensland; Science Policy Division based in Canberra; and DSTO representatives overseas. The function of the DSTO is to contribute to the development and implementation of Australian defence policies through the application of scientific and technical advice.

Aeronautical Research Laboratory, Fishermans Bend, Vic. Carries out research in such fields as flight mechanics, aircraft materials, structural integrity and efficiency of aircraft, analysis and integration of systems, air breathing propulsion systems and engine airframe integration and performance. Also assists civil aviation in some of these fields. The Laboratory has an element located at Salisbury, researching into flight mechanics and avionics systems.

Electronics Research Laboratory, Salisbury, SA. Carries out research in the fields of electronic warfare, information technology, communications and command and control. The Laboratory also has an element located at Belconnen, ACT.

Powers affecting members of the public: The Officer-in-Charge of the DSTO Salisbury Prohibited Area under the Defence (Special Undertakings) Act may grant permission to enter, travel through or overfly the Prohibited Area.

DSTO Materials Research Laboratory, Maribyrnong, Vic. Carries out research into organic and inorganic materials, metallurgy and behaviour of composites, explosives and explosive munitions, mines and underwater ordnance, camouflage and other forms of protection of personnel and equipment and the design and construction of land and sea platforms. In addition to Maribyrnong, the Laboratory has elements at Scottsdale, Tasmania to carry out rations research; at Innisfail, Queensland to investigate the effects of tropical environments on materials and equipment; and at Sydney, to research underwater weapons and countermeasures systems.

Surveillance Research Laboratory, Salisbury, SA. Carries out research into HF radar, microwave radar and optoelectronics for electromagnetic surveillance.

Weapons Systems Research Laboratory, Salisbury, SA. Carries out research into aeroballistics aspects of weapons systems, combat data and display systems, guidance and control systems for weapons, underwater detection systems and their integration with other military equipment. The Laboratory also has staff based at Pyrmont, Sydney, to analyse maritime warfare, maritime exercises and research underwater acoustics, oceanography, and sonars.

Science Policy Division. Provides scientific and technical advice on defence policy, ADF development of equipment and through life support.

The Australian Ordnance Council: An independent body which advises on the safety and suitability for service of weapons in which explosives are associated.

DSTO Overseas Representation. Defence Science Counsellors in London and in Washington maintain liaison with professional counterparts and governments in Europe and North America. DSTO also maintains Defence Science Advisers in Bangkok and Kuala Lumpur.

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENCE REGIONAL OFFICES

Defence Regional Offices, under the control of a Regional Secretary, are located in each state capital and Darwin. In addition, a Sub-regional Office is located in Townsville under the control of Regional Secretary Queensland. They provide support to all Service and Departmental elements in the regions and to functional divisions in Defence Central.

OUTRIDER ORGANISATIONS

Joint Intelligence Organization. Assesses and interprets information relevant to Australia's strategic environment, military security and defence policy formulation and provides assessments and advice on international events and developments.

Defence Signals Directorate. The Directorate and specialist units of the ADF develop and maintain a capability to collect, reproduce and disseminate foreign signal intelligence to meet Government requirements. The Directorate also advises the Government on all matters relating to communications and computer security.

Public Information. Ensures that public information activities reflect and further the understanding of the policy of the Government in defence matters.

ARRANGEMENTS FOR OUTSIDE PARTICIPATION

Army Reserve Recruiting Coordination Committee. Established by the CGS in December 1984 to consider policies and plans in regard to Army Reserve recruiting and retention. Has one non-Defence representative: the Chair, Committee for Employer Support of Reserve Forces.

Citizens in Support of Reserve Forces (Trust) Fund. The Fund provides for the welfare of the Reserves by community, particularly employer, awareness of the Reserve Force aims. The Fund is administered by a board of trustees.

Defence Consultative Council. Established jointly by the ACTU and the Department of Defence to deal with a wide range of matters affecting civilian employees of the Department. In addition to Departmental officers, it has a co-chair and six staff association members nominated by the ACTU. Complementary consultative committees have been established in the regions and major Defence establishments.

Defence Force Health Consultative Group. Establishes formal liaison between the Services and appropriate civilian health authorities. Provides advice on major professional matters having relevance to the Department of Defence. Such matters could include medical aspects of disaster planning, availability of strategically important medical supplies, national health schemes, postgraduate training, vocational training, professional registration and hospital and health services policy. It has representatives from Defence, other departments and the Australian Medical Association. Other civilian specialists may be invited to attend meetings as required.

Appendix F: Freedom of Information Section 8 Statement

Defence Industry Quality Forum. Established by the Minister for Defence in 1985, the Forum meets at least twice a year to promote understanding between Defence and industry of each other's quality concepts, policies and practices. In addition to Defence members, it has six representatives from Australian industry and an ACTU member with the chairperson being elected by the non-Defence representatives from one of their own number.

Defence Standardisation Committee. The Committee approves and manages the preparation of Defence standards and specifications used in procuring equipment for the ADF. It reports to the Defence Industry Committee. There are thirty-three DSC subcommittees which are involved in liaison with a wide variety of private firms in order to produce draft Defence standards. Outside representation is from the Standards Association of Australia and the New Zealand Department of Defence.

Hydrographic Survey Program. The program is published at five-yearly intervals. State survey and marine authorities, the relevant sections of industry and the National Mapping Council are consulted prior to publication.

Joint Consultative Council. The Council was established under the *Department of Defence (Commonwealth of Australia) West Malaysia Employees Agreement 1970* to provide a forum for the negotiation of matters coming within the scope of the Agreement, to arrive at mutually agreed changes in it, where appropriate, and to discuss other matters relating to pay and conditions of employment.

Joint Industrial Committee. The Committee reviews the continued operation of the Naval Work Agreement Allowance Scheme as well as continually reviewing other industrial problems. It also provides a channel for communications when matters affecting several unions arise. It is composed of up to six federal trade union representatives and up to four representatives of the Minister for Defence. The composition may vary to suit needs. Both the Minister and the ACTU, acting on behalf of the unions, will nominate convenors.

National Counter Disaster-Civil Defence Training Policy Advisory Committee. The Committee provides advice to the Natural Disasters Organisation concerning requirements that should be satisfied by the Australian Counter Disaster College in meeting the training needs of the counter disaster-civil defence community. Outside representation is from state and territory emergency services, the police, fire services, academia, local government and environmental groups. Members may also be invited from other organisations when a contribution to training policy matters can be made.

State-Territory Emergency Services Directors Conference. The conference, chaired by Defence, provides a forum for discussion between Commonwealth and state and territory officials on matters of mutual interest relating to counter disaster measures, including civil defence planning and preparedness.

Woomera Support Area Advisory Committee. This Committee advises the Department of Defence on matters relating to the management of Woomera and includes representatives from the Department of Defence, the United States Air Force and the Woomera Board which comprises appointed and elected residents of Woomera.

CATEGORIES OF DOCUMENTS MAINTAINED

Documents available as part of a public register or otherwise, in accordance with another enactment (other than the FOI Act), subject to a fee or other charge:

- oceanographic data (copies of original survey documents and hydrographic and oceanographic data held by Navy Office on computer file).

Documents available for purchase by the public in accordance with arrangements made by the Department:

- Aeronautical information (Annual Flying Safety Calendar); aeronautical maps and charts; supplements and planning documents; aerial photographs;
- Defence Cataloguing Handbooks and Information;
- the Defence Report (and other Departmental material on sale through the Australian Government Publishing Service);
- Draft and final Environmental Impact Statements (held by Defence Facilities and Property Division);
- Journals and magazines published by Service Colleges and schools;
- Service newspapers (both the RAAF and RAN News may be bought singly or by annual subscription and the Army News by annual subscription); and
- Tide tables (Australian national tide tables; navigational charts and publications, available for purchase either through appointed chart agents or direct from the Hydrographic Office in Sydney by mail order).

Documents customarily made available to the public free of charge upon request. The Department holds a wide range of such material including, for instance, information on:

- Academic calendars and prospectuses (for the Service Colleges);
- Annual reports of various Defence statutory authorities;
- Defence Force Journal;
- Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits Scheme;

Part Three

- Defence Science and Technology Organisation supplies information and activities brochures and booklets, a Research News newsletter, selected technical reports, technical and research press releases, videos on projects and lectures given to professional and public institutions;
- Flying and ground safety (the Air Force makes magazines on these subjects available to some professional organisations);
- Natural Disasters Organisation produces, for distribution through state and territory emergency services, a range of pamphlets and booklets on natural and man-made disasters and civil defence as well as training manuals, films and cassettes. The Organisation's headquarters and the Australian Counter Disaster College both maintain film and cassette libraries for use by schools and colleges. Particulars of College courses, notes for trainers, course handouts and proceedings of seminars are also available from the college;
- Notices to mariners (the Navy issues such notices, which contain hydrographic advice to correct navigational charts and documents and detailed information of exercises and firings);
- Organisational material (functional statements, organisation charts and duty statements);
- Procurement (including the Defence Register of Assessed Suppliers);
- Public relations material;
- Recruitment pamphlets and brochures (for the three Services);
- Speeches by the Ministers; and
- Technical material (including technical details of obsolete and selected current equipment; unclassified technical reports and Defence (Australia) Standards).

Other documents. The Department maintains records in various forms relating to the functions described in this statement which are kept throughout the organisation. Records are retained for varying periods, depending on their administrative and historical value, and are disposed of in accordance with standards and practices approved by Australian Archives. Some particular categories of documents held are:

- agreements (including a Register of Agreements);
- accounting records;
- committee records;
- conditions of service (includes documents relating to compensation other than personal injury, financial conditions relating to overseas service);
- contractual documents, requests for tender documents and industry study reports;
- departmental instructions, circulars and reference books;
- industrial matters (including agenda and minutes of meetings of various industrial committees and councils, and Occupational Safety and Health Committees; and policy on industrial practices within the Department);
- intelligence reports;
- memoranda of understanding with other governments and agencies;
- personal documentation (e.g. recruitment-enlistment and selection for promotion documents, documents of a medical and psychological nature);
- press cuttings;
- purchasing documents (including overseas orders and assessment of tenders);
- documents concerning quality assurance;
- transcripts of public seminars conducted by the Department;
- supply matters (tables of entitlement or scale of equipment publications, reports on supply studies);
- technical publications (relating to maintenance of ADF materiel, and drawings, specifications and standards relating to, for example, ships, aircraft and other equipment in use); and
- working papers (internal working papers are maintained throughout the Department and the ADF on a wide range of policy, technical and administrative subjects).

FACILITIES FOR ACCESS TO DOCUMENTS

The following areas within the Department maintain access points at which information about their activities is available:

Australian Counter Disaster College;

The Director
Australian Counter Disaster College
MACEDON VIC 3440
(Information Officer: telephone (054) 26 1205)

Defence (Australia) Standards:

Executive Officer
Technical Information Unit
Department of Defence
P.O. Box No. 4
COLLINGWOOD VIC 3066
(Telephone: (03) 665 6457)

Defence Cataloguing:

Director, Defence Cataloguing Authority
70 Albert Road
SOUTH MELBOURNE VIC 3000
(Telephone: (03) 697 5162)

Defence Register of Assessed Suppliers

Director Quality Assurance Coordination
Campbell Park Offices
CP4-3-36
CANBERRA ACT 2600
(Telephone: (06) 266 4097)

Defence Science and Technology Organisation:

Director, Science Liaison
Defence Science and Technology Organisation
Department of Defence (APW1-317)
CANBERRA ACT 2600
(Telephone: (06) 266 6541)

Natural Disasters Organisation:

Natural Disasters Organisation
6th Floor, Northbourne House
Northbourne Avenue
TURNER ACT 2601
(Contact the Executive Officer, Liaison and Public Awareness,
Telephone: (06) 246 6611)

Public Relations:

Director of Public Relations
Department of Defence
Russell Offices (B-4-29)
CANBERRA ACT 2600
(Telephone: (06) 265 2999)

FOI SECTION 8 STATEMENTS FOR THOSE DEFENCE PORTFOLIO AUTHORITIES WHICH DO NOT PUBLISH THEIR OWN ANNUAL REPORTS

COUNCIL OF DEFENCE

The Council considers and discusses matters relating to the control and administration of the ADF and its respective arms referred to it by the Minister. Membership of the Council comprises:

Minister for Defence (Chair)
Minister for Defence Science and Personnel
Secretary, Department of Defence
Chief of the Defence Force
Chief of the Naval Staff
Chief of the General Staff
Chief of the Air Staff
Vice Chief of the Defence Force

Requests for access to documents, including agenda and minutes of meetings, of the Council should be directed to the Secretary, Council of Defence, Department of Defence, Canberra, ACT 2600 and be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

DEFENCE COMMITTEE

The Committee advises the Minister on defence policy as a whole; the coordination of military, strategic, economic, financial and external affairs aspects of defence policy; on matters of policy or principle and important questions having a joint Service or inter-departmental defence aspect; and such other matters having a defence aspect as are referred to the Committee by or on behalf of the Minister.

Membership of the Committee consists of the following:

- Secretary, Department of Defence (Chair)
 - Chief of the Defence Force
 - Chief of the Naval Staff
 - Chief of the General Staff
 - Chief of the Air Staff
 - Secretary to the Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet
 - Secretary to the Department of the Treasury
 - Secretary to the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade
- (Members may also be coopted for consideration of specific matters.)

Persons wishing to gain access to documents, including agenda and minutes of meetings, of the Defence Committee, should write to the Secretary, Defence Committee, Department of Defence, Canberra, ACT 2600. A request should be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

ROYAL AUSTRALIAN NAVY CENTRAL CANTEENS BOARD

The Board provides for the welfare and amenities of the Navy community by making grants and loans of money and property to organisations within that community. It consists of a chairperson and four members.

Powers affecting members of the public: may enter into a contract in which the Board accepts the liability to pay a sum of money to a person helping to erect a building for members of the Navy as specified in the contract, where the building is no longer used for the services specified in the contract; may enter into a contract for purchasing or supplying goods to be sold in canteens or clubs; may sell, to persons conducting canteens or clubs, goods purchased by the Board for resale; may receive levies from naval canteens and gifts and donations for the support of the fund; and may purchase, lease, hire or otherwise acquire land, building, stock, plant, equipment for the purpose of providing services, entertainment, recreation or other amenities for members of the Navy.

Persons wishing to gain access to documents, including financial statements and audits of the Central Canteens Fund, canteens of HMA ships and establishments and the RAN Holiday Centres, should write to or contact the RAN Central Canteens Board, c/- FOI Section, Department of Defence, Canberra, ACT 2600. A request should be made in a manner similar to a request being made to the Department of Defence.

APPENDIX G: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Department of Defence
STATEMENT BY
THE DEPARTMENTAL SECRETARY
AND
PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING OFFICER

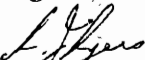
CERTIFICATION

We certify that the attached financial statements are in agreement with the department's accounts and records and, in our opinion, the statements have been prepared in accordance with the Financial Statements Guidelines for Departmental Secretaries with the following exceptions:

- (a) Program summary, Program Statement and Statement of Supplementary Financial Information have not been audited;
- (b) Values for all fixed assets have not been included.
(Note 1(f) refers)

Steps currently in process are expected to allow audit review of Program information in 1990-91 and full disclosure of the value of fixed assets by 1994-95.

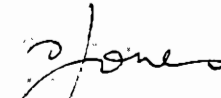
Signed



Secretary

Dated 11 October 1990

Signed



First Assistant Secretary
Resources & Financial Programs

Dated 11 October 1990

AGGREGATE STATEMENT OF TRANSACTIONS BY FUND

This statement shows aggregate cash transactions, for which the Department is responsible for each of the three funds comprising the Commonwealth Public Account (CPA).

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Budget	1989/90 Actual
\$	Notes	\$	\$
CONSOLIDATED REVENUE FUND (CRF)			
407,374,024	Receipts	346,369,000	400,840,742
594,445,228	Expenditure from Special Appropriations	660,284,000	670,996,051
7,577,864,325	Expenditure from Annual Appropriations	8,010,576,000	8,234,631,508
8,172,309,553	Total Expenditure	8,670,860,000	8,905,627,559
Nil	LOAN FUND	Nil	Nil
	TRUST FUND		
		21	
21,486,858	Opening Balance 1 July (Notional)		30,043,852
79,181,128	Receipts		74,341,869
70,624,134	Expenditure		78,018,046
30,043,852	Closing Balance 30 June (Notional)		26,367,675
	Represented By:		
30,039,452	Cash		26,241,621
4,400	Investments		126,054
30,043,852			26,367,675

DETAILED STATEMENT OF TRANSACTIONS BY FUND

CONSOLIDATED REVENUE FUND (CRF): RECEIPTS TO CRF

The CRF is the main working fund of the Commonwealth and consists of all current moneys received by the Commonwealth (excluding loan raisings and moneys received by the Trust Fund). The Department is responsible for the following receipt items:

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Budget	1989/90 Actual
\$	Sub Prog.	\$	\$
DEFENCE REVENUE			
39,990,094	Rations & Quarters contributions *	42,856,000	41,524,744
55,633,474	Married Quarters contribution *	63,310,000	59,506,838
1,394,580	Rental of Defence property *	915,000	1,289,263
108,567,116	DFRDB contributions 3	110,799,000	108,157,365
10,375,841	Garden Island Dockyard	0	0
Operating Expenses			
24,833,088	Repayment of Working Cap'l Adv's	0	3,063,869
3,992,141	Recoverable Services - DSTO Repayments 4.5	4,207,000	1,210,243
0	Anzac Ship Receipts *	0	52,998,507
0	Sale of surplus equipment 5.4	0	650,100
0	Interest on DHA Capital Subvention	14,210,000	14,209,952
0	DSTO Commercial Activities 4.5	0	54,720
162,587,690	Miscellaneous *	110,072,000	118,175,141
407,374,024	TOTAL RECEIPTS CRF	346,369,000	400,840,742

All Receipts are offset within outlays. *Receipts apply to a number of programs.

EXPENDITURE FROM CRF

The Constitution requires that an appropriation of moneys by the Parliament is required before any expenditure can be made from the CRF. Appropriations follow two forms: Special Appropriations and Annual Appropriations. The Department is responsible for the following expenditure items.

1988/89 Expenditure		1989/90 Budget	1989/90 Expenditure
\$		\$	\$
SPECIAL APPROPRIATIONS			
594,445,228	DFRB Act	660,284,000	670,996,051
<u>594,445,228</u>	Total Expenditure From Special Appropriations	<u>660,284,000</u>	<u>670,996,051</u>
ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS			
	(Appropriation Act No 1	8,010,576,000)	
7,577,864,325	(Appropriation Act No 3	239,954,000)	8,234,631,508
	(Appropriation Act No 1 Sect.5	2,495,000)	
	(Advance to the Minister for Finance (Act No 1)	20,413,401)	
<u>7,577,864,325</u>	Total Expenditure from Annual Appropriations	<u>8,273,438,401</u>	<u>8,234,631,508</u>
SPECIAL & ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS			
<u>8,172,309,553</u>	TOTAL EXPENDITURE FROM CRF	<u>8,933,722,401</u>	<u>8,905,627,559</u>

Appropriation Acts Nos 2 and 4 are not applicable to Defence.

DETAILS OF EXPENDITURE FROM ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

1988/89 Expenditure				1989/90 Appropriation	1989/90 Expenditure
\$	Notes	Sub- Prog.*		\$	\$
Appropriation Acts 1 & 3					
Division 230 - Administrative Costs					
Running Costs (230-1)					
Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries:					
2,199,418,111				2,286,059,000	2,281,975,735
63,203,495				71,902,000	77,962,511
676,886,455				668,381,000	666,385,825
709,618,276				834,304,000	834,359,270
Other Services (230-2)					
42,437,611				35,191,000	34,827,005
24,097,000		1.1		27,343,000	27,014,000
	NSW for University College at ADFA				
220,134				105,000	84,157
4,831,929		4.1		5,039,000	5,038,106
	Assistance to the States, the NT and the A.C.T. (230.02.04)				
774,488		4.5		900,000	899,642
	Payments to tertiary institutions & other bodies for defence science research (230.02.02)				
6,400,000	17	5.3		7,308,000	7,308,000
	Woomera Village; operating expenses for payment to the DSCW Trust Account (230.02.05)				
18,000		5.2		19,000	19,000
	Grant to Royal United Services Institute of Australia (230.02.01)				
60,461		5.2		143,401	143,400
	Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders - Settlement of underpayments to WW II servicemen (230.02.06)				
1,967,101	19	5.2		1,909,000	1,690,552
	Young Endeavour - Scheme for youth (230.02.10)				
0				25,000	25,000
	Returned Services League contribution to Commemoration of 75th Anniversary of the Gallipoli landing (230.02.11)				
0		5.3		50,000	50,000
	History Research project West New Guinea (230.02.14)				
10,867		5.2		0	0
334,936		5.4		200,000	159,183
	Hedley Bull Memorial Fund				
	Warnbro unexploded ordnance - Payments to WA Government				
3,730,278,864				3,938,878,401	3,937,941,386
Total Division 230 - Carried Forward					

* Refer to Program Statement (which is not subject to audit).

DETAILS OF EXPENDITURE FROM ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS (cont)

1988/89 Expenditure			1989/90 Appropriation	1989/90 Expenditure
\$	Notes	Sub- Prog.*	\$	\$
3,730,278,864	Division 230 - Brought Forward		3,938,878,401	3,937,941,386
2,804,709,663	Division 234 - Equip & Stores		3,092,569,000	3,067,888,018
60,595,582	Division 240 - Defence Cooperation	4.3	74,195,000	74,200,197
	Division 241 - Defence Production			
72,233,985	Munitions	4.4	43,628,000	42,559,078
6,837,098	Aerospace	2.2 & 4.4	6,883,000	5,748,003
16,887,414	Shipbuilding	4.4	6,166,000	6,105,737
29,691,000	ASTA Superannuation		0	0
21,190,000	Division 242 - ASTA Pty Ltd	4.4	40,166,000	40,166,000
51,703,000	Division 243 - ADI Pty Ltd transition	4.4	87,446,000	87,445,230
2,106,000	Division 244 - Capital Advances & Loans		0	0
	Division 245 - Defence Facilities:			
360,427,455	Construction, acquisition & consultants (245.01)	2.3	431,815,000	431,805,763
222,810,058	Property operations (245.02)		295,950,000	287,542,614
195,487,206	Division 246 - Payments to Defence Housing Authority	4.2	255,742,000	253,229,482
707,000	Division 248 - Housing	14	0	0
2,200,000	Division 249 - Pays to NCDC	15	0	0
<u>7,577,864,325</u>	TOTAL DEFENCE APPROPRIATION		<u>8,273,438,401</u>	<u>8,234,631,508</u>

* Refer to Program Statement (which is not subject to audit).

TRUST FUND

This section discloses details of each Head of the Trust Fund and trust account administered by the Department. It provides a breakdown of the information relating to the Trust Fund contained in the Aggregate Statement of Transactions by Fund.

1988/89		1989/90	
Actual		Actual	
\$		Notes	
		\$	
GROUP 1:	DEFENCE - PROJECTS FOR OTHER GOVERNMENTS AND INTERNATIONAL BODIES		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 60 Purposes - payment of all costs in connection with specified activities on behalf of other Governments and international bodies. Receipts and Expenditure: 		
12,307,965	Opening Balance 1 July		16,629,824
32,189,646	Receipts		32,650,088
27,867,787	Expenditure		33,964,286
<u>16,629,824</u>	Closing Cash Balance 30 June		<u>15,315,626</u>
	DEFENCE - SERVICES FOR NON-DEPARTMENTAL BODIES		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 60 Purposes - payment of costs in connection with services performed on behalf of non-Departmental bodies. Receipts and Expenditure: 		
470,804	Opening Balance 1 July		247,936
5,403,687	Receipts		5,330,000
5,626,555	Expenditure		5,561,953
<u>247,936</u>	Closing Cash Balance 30 June		<u>15,983</u>
	ENDOWMENTS - DEFENCE		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 60 Purposes - for application in accordance with the conditions of each endowment. 		
	(a) Receipts and expenditure -		
5,724	Opening Notional balance at 1 July		6,598
1,550	Receipts		29,376
676	Expenditure		4,884
<u>6,598</u>	Closing Notional Balance at 30 June		<u>31,090</u>
	(b) Investments Transaction Account		
4,400	Opening Invested Balance at 1 July		4,400
0	Purchase of Investments		21,606
0	Realisation of Investments		0
<u>4,400</u>	Closing Invested Balance at 30 June	22	<u>26,006</u>
<u>2,198</u>	Closing Cash Balance at 30 June		<u>5,084</u>

TRUST FUND (cont)

1988/89 Actual	\$	Notes	1989/90 Actual	\$
GROUP 1: FEDORCZENKO LEGACY FUND				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 190, section 60. Purposes - residue of the estate of the late Petro Fedorczenko to be used for the defence of Australia. Receipts and Expenditure: 				
100,048		Opening Balance 1 July	100,048	
0		Receipts	8,797	
0		Expenditure	0	
<u>100,048</u>		Closing Notional Balance 30 June	<u>108,845</u>	
Represented by:				
100,048		Cash	8,797	
0		Investments	100,048	22
<u>100,048</u>			<u>108,845</u>	
OTHER TRUST MONEYS				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 60 Purposes - for the receipt of moneys temporarily held in trust for other persons. Receipts and Expenditure: 				
531,085		Opening Balance 1 July	5,108,861	
6,862,412		- Receipts	2,468,371	
2,284,636		- Expenditure	5,911,149	
<u>5,108,861</u>		Closing Cash Balance 30 June	<u>1,666,083</u>	
YOUNG ENDEAVOUR YOUTH SCHEME OPERATING FUND				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 60 Purposes: (a) For the receipt of moneys in connection with the operation and activities of the STS <i>Young Endeavour</i>. (b) For the payment to the suppliers, or the CRF, of money due in connection with the operation and activities of the STS <i>Young Endeavour</i>. (c) For payment of refunds to persons entitled to such refunds in connection with operations and activities of the STS <i>Young Endeavour</i>. (d) For payment of moneys as specified by the Young Endeavour Youth Program Board of Management, for purposes relating to the operation of the STS <i>Young Endeavour</i>, or by the Commonwealth. Receipts and Expenditure : 				
47,749		Opening Notional balance at 1 July	50,900	
637,005		Receipts	550,595	
633,854		Expenditure	594,197	
<u>50,900</u>		Closing Cash Balance at 30 June	<u>7,298</u>	

TRUST FUND (cont)

1988/89			1989/90
Actual			Actual
\$		Notes	\$
GROUP 2: EXPLOSIVES FACTORY, MARIBYRNONG, TRUST ACCOUNT			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 62A Purposes - payment for goods and services and of salaries, wages and all other expenses incurred in connection with the operations of the factory for the production of war materiel and other production approved by the Minister. 			
Receipts and Expenditure:			18
5,925,045	Opening Notional Balance at 1 July		4,134,462
16,627,327	Receipts		13,695,004
	Expenditure		
11,972,287	Operating expenditure		12,965,704
6,445,623	Transfer of investments to ADI		0
<u>4,134,462</u>	Closing Cash Balance at 30 June		<u>4,863,762</u>
Investments Transaction Account:			
3,020,044	Invested Balance 1 July		0
3,425,579	Purchase of Investments		0
6,445,623	Transfer of Investments to ADI		0
<u>0</u>	Invested Balance 30 June		<u>0</u>
Outstanding Advances at 30 June 1990: NIL			
DSTO COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES TRUST ACCOUNT			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 62A. Purpose - for the receipt of revenues and for expenditure incurred in connection with work for customers other than the Commonwealth Department of Defence and the Australian Defence Force involving: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Use of research facilities and investigative work; (b) Performance of consultancy and investigative work; and (c) Realisation of commercial opportunities developed from DSTO scientific research and development activities. 			
Receipts and Expenditure:			18
63,211	Opening Balance 1 July		839,497
796,430	Receipts		1,780,597
20,144	Expenditure		1,466,076
<u>839,497</u>	Closing Cash Balance 30 June		<u>1,154,018</u>
DEFENCE SUPPORT CENTRE, WOOMERA, TRUST ACCOUNT			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Legal Authority - Audit Act 1901, section 62A Purpose - for expenditure, in connection with the Defence Support Centre, Woomera, of moneys contributed by Australia and other Governments. 			
Receipts and Expenditure:			
2,035,227	Opening Balance 1 July		2,925,726
16,663,071	Receipts		17,829,041
15,772,572	Expenditure		17,549,797
<u>2,925,726</u>	Closing Cash Balance 30 June		<u>3,204,970</u>

PROGRAM SUMMARY

This Statement shows the outlays for each program administered by the Department and reconciles the Department's total outlays to total expenditure from appropriations. 'Expenditure' refers to the actual amount of resources consumed by a program whereas 'Outlays' refers to the 'net' amount of resources consumed, after offsetting associated receipts and other items.

The statement also reconciles the total receipts classified as revenue (i.e. Receipts not offset within outlays or classified as financing transactions) for each program, with 'Receipts to CRF'.

This statement has not been subject to Audit as the amounts are based on estimates only and the necessary financial systems are still under development.

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
EXPENDITURE			
Outlays			
4,216,858	1. Current Defence Forces	4,487,894	4,489,545
1,905,029	2. Defence Development	2,060,136	2,129,043
485,878	3. DFRDB	566,648	562,839
735,803	4. Defence Support	746,445	739,178
438,817	5. Defence Corporate Services	594,039	556,707
7,782,385	Total Defence Function Outlays	8,455,162	8,477,312
Plus Receipts Offset Within Outlays			
98,073	1. Current Defence Forces	134,770	133,778
68,067	2. Defence Development	78,829	62,640
108,567	3. DFRDB	108,613	108,157
82,618	4. Defence Support	70,119	67,435
6,747	5. Defence Corporate Services	9,963	15,943
364,072		402,294	387,953
Plus Other Portfolio Transactions (net) Affecting Outlays			
-2	1. Current Defence Force	0	0
7,097	2. Defence Development	56,493	18,819
1,436	4. Defence Support	1,516	1,516
17,322	5. Defence Corporate Services	9,826	20,026
25,853		67,835	40,361
8,172,310	TOTAL DEFENCE EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	8,925,291	8,905,626
1,967	LESS Culture & Recreation Function Outlay (Young Endeavour Youth Scheme)	1,845	1,691
8,170,343	TOTAL DEFENCE PROGRAM EXPENDITURE	8,923,446	8,903,935

1(d)

PROGRAM STATEMENT

This Statement shows details of expenditure from annual and special appropriations for each program and sub-program administered by the Department. Each 'annual' appropriation item contributing to a sub-program is identified by its description followed by its appropriation code in brackets. 'Special appropriations are identified by reference to the legislation containing the special appropriation. Partial allocations of appropriation items to sub-programs are indicated by ('p') following the item. With respect to those sub-programs for which 'expenditure from appropriations' and 'outlays' differ, the Statement discloses information reconciling the amounts concerned. The Statement also shows details of revenue for each program (where applicable). This statement has not been subject to Audit as the amounts are based estimates only and the necessary financial systems are still under development.

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
1. CURRENT DEFENCE FORCES			
1.1 ADF Command			
44,394	Salaries & payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	46,121	47,820
13,867	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	25,822	25,122
0	Comp. & Legal Exps (230.02.07)(p)	2	0
24,097	Payments to University of NSW for operating the University College at ADFA (230.02.08)(p)	27,343	27,014
2,712	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	3,624	4,647
1,890	Defence Facilities; Property Ops (245.02)(p)	2,527	3,033
86,960	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	105,439	107,636
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
1,174	Rations & Quarters (000.35.20)(p)	1,277	1,327
1,448	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	902	1,476
2,622		2,179	2,803
84,338	PORTFOLIO OUTLAYS	103,260	104,833
	Plus Other Dept's:		
2	Attorney Generals	0	0
84,340	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	103,260	104,833
1.2 NAVY			
617,958	Salaries & payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	629,936	634,712
91,951	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	102,689	104,535
21	Payments under Audit Act s34 A(1) (230.02.03)(p)	21	27
5,608	Comp & Legal Exps (230.02.07)(p)	6,416	6,283
365,780	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	438,507	426,989
28,148	Defence Facilities; Property operations (245.02)(p)	36,421	37,688
1,109,466	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	1,213,990	1,210,234
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
7,573	Rations & Quarters (000.35.20)(p)	9,209	8,005
14,043	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	18,423	19,761
21,616		27,632	27,766
1,087,850	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	1,186,358	1,182,468

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
1.3 ARMY			
1,125,813	Salaries & payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	1,161,598	1,158,231
184,870	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	194,272	196,775
42	Payments under Audit Act s34 A(1) (230.02.03)(p)	26	35
16,902	Comp & Legal Exps (230.02.07)(p)	16,493	18,178
339,134	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	351,966	355,807
58,236	Defence Facilities; Property Operations (245.02)(p)	71,573	70,977
<u>1,724,997</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>1,795,928</u>	<u>1,800,003</u>
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
16	Rental of other than Defence props (000.35.15)(p)	16	12
20,306	Rations & Quarters (000.35.20)(p)	20,942	20,173
18,647	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	15,662	16,647
<u>38,969</u>		<u>36,620</u>	<u>36,832</u>
<u>1,686,028</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>1,759,308</u>	<u>1,763,171</u>
1.4 AIR FORCE			
735,953	Salaries & payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	760,071	765,119
149,841	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	160,319	157,132
37	Payments under Audit Act s34 A(1) (230.02.03)(p)	8	9
4,707	Comp & Legal Exps (230.02.07)(p)	5,890	5,754
451,088	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	509,187	505,303
51,880	Defence Facilities; Property Operations (245.02)(p)	71,832	72,133
<u>1,393,506</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>1,507,307</u>	<u>1,505,450</u>
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
0	Rental of other than Defence props (000.35.15)(p)	0	1
10,938	Rations & Quarters (000.35.20)(p)	11,561	12,019
23,928	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	56,778	54,357
<u>34,866</u>		<u>68,339</u>	<u>66,377</u>
<u>1,358,640</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>1,438,968</u>	<u>1,439,073</u>
TOTAL: CURRENT DEFENCE FORCES - PROGRAM 1			
<u>4,314,929</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>4,622,664</u>	<u>4,623,323</u>
<u>4,216,858</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>4,487,894</u>	<u>4,489,545</u>

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
2. DEFENCE DEVELOPMENT			
2.1 PROCUREMENT OF CAPITAL EQUIPMENT			
25,473	Salaries & payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	25,851	28,775
2,822	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	10,611	21,039
1,529,974	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	1,683,959	1,681,861
656	Defence Facilities; Property Operations (245.01) & (245.02)(p)	948	0
1,558,925	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	1,721,369	1,731,675
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
66,689	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	78,829	62,640
1,492,236	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	1,642,540	1,669,035
2.2 AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRY INVOLVEMENT			
195	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	0	0
21,828	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	33,139	15,649
6,837	Defence Production; Def Aerospace (including payments to relevant trust accounts .241.02)(p)	6,183	5,748
28,860	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	39,322	21,397
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
1,378	Rental of other than Defence prop'y (000.35.15)	0	0
27,482	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	39,322	21,397

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
2.3 PROCUREMENT OF CAPITAL FACILITIES			
5,550	Salaries & payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	5,085	6,691
3,870	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	4,467	3,949
0	Compensation & Legal Expenses (230.02.07)(p)	722	11
127	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	7	302
360,428	Defence Facilities; Property Ops (245.01)(p)	424,486	446,477
20,233	Defence Facilities; Property Ops (245.02)(p)	0	0
2,200	Capital Works Expenditure under National Capital Development Commission (249)	0	0
<u>392,408</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>434,767</u>	<u>457,430</u>
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
0	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	0	0
<u>392,408</u>	PORTFOLIO OUTLAYS	<u>434,767</u>	<u>457,430</u>
	Less Other Dept's Revenue:		
6,394	DAS-Sale of property (000.22)	56,493	18,819
703	Dept. of Arts, Sports, Environ't Tourism & Territories (000.24.70)	0	0
<u>7,097</u>		<u>56,493</u>	<u>18,819</u>
<u>385,311</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>378,274</u>	<u>438,611</u>
TOTAL: DEFENCE DEVELOPMENT - PROGRAM 2			
<u>1,980,193</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>2,195,458</u>	<u>2,210,502</u>
<u>1,905,029</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>2,060,136</u>	<u>2,129,043</u>
3. DEFENCE FORCE RETIREMENT & DEATH BENEFITS			
594,445	Expenditures (035.02.05)	675,261	670,996
<u>594,445</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>675,261</u>	<u>670,996</u>
	Less Receipts Offset Within Outlays		
108,567	Contributions (035.02.05)	108,613	108,157
<u>485,878</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>566,648</u>	<u>562,839</u>
TOTAL: DEFENCE FORCE RETIREMENT AND DEATH BENEFITS - PROGRAM 3			
<u>594,445</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>675,261</u>	<u>670,996</u>
<u>485,878</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>566,648</u>	<u>562,839</u>

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

<i>1988/89 Actual</i>		<i>1989/90 Additional Estimate</i>	<i>1989/90 Actual</i>
<i>\$,000</i>	<i>Notes</i>	<i>\$,000</i>	<i>\$,000</i>
4. DEFENCE SUPPORT			
4.1 NATURAL DISASTERS AND CIVIL DEFENCE			
1,816	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	2,024	1,887
562	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	520	512
4,832	Assistance to the States, N.T. and A.C.T. (230.02.04)(p)	5,039	5,038
256	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	297	250
181	Defence Facilities; Property Operations (245.02)(p)	222	113
<u>7,647</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>8,102</u>	<u>7,800</u>
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
0	Miscellaneous (00.35.97)(p)	0	0
<u>7,647</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>8,102</u>	<u>7,800</u>
4.2 DEFENCE HOUSING			
67,606	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	66,740	71,885
195,487	Defence Housing Authority (243)	255,742	253,229
707	Advances to States (248)	0	0
<u>263,800</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>322,482</u>	<u>325,114</u>
	Less Receipts Offset within Outlays		
55,633	Rental of married quars (000.35.10)	60,188	59,507
4,312	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	930	0
<u>59,945</u>		<u>61,118</u>	<u>59,507</u>
<u>203,855</u>	PORTFOLIO OUTLAYS	<u>261,364</u>	<u>265,607</u>
	Less Other Departments		
1,436	Department of Finance CSHA Repayments (000.42.08)	1,516	1,516
<u>202,419</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>259,848</u>	<u>264,091</u>
4.3 DEFENCE CO-OPERATION			
	Defence Co-operation (240)		
<u>60,596</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS AND DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>74,164</u>	<u>74,200</u>

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
4.4 DEFENCE PRODUCTION			
14,496	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	0	0
3,307	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	134	0
8	Payments to tertiary institutions and other bodies for Defence science research (230.02.02)(p)	0	0
120	Payments pursuant to Sub-section 34A(1) of Audit Act (230.02.03)(p)	0	0
12,043	Compensation & Legal Expenses (230.02.07)(p)	2,950	2,159
40,113	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	8,577	0
89,121	Defence Production: Munitions Production (241)(p) including payments to relevant trust accounts and costs for establishment of Australian Defence Industries Pty Ltd	50,494	48,665
21,190	Aerospace Technologies of Australia (242)	40,166	40,166
51,703	Australian Defence Industries (243)	87,446	87,445
29,691	ASTA Superannuation (Accrued liability)	0	0
2,106	Capital Advances and Loans - Working Capital Advances (244)	0	0
16,751	Defence Facilities; Property Operations (245.02)(p)	5,410	5,165
280,649	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	195,177	183,600
	Less Receipts Offset Within Outlays:		
24,833	Repay Working Capital	0	0
36,519	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	4,032	3,773
61,352		4,032	3,773
-43,301	Add Net Trust Account Movements	2,884	1,322
262,598	DEFENCE FUNCTIONS OUTLAYS	188,261	178,505

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
4.5 DEFENCE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY			
118,957	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	126,203	128,278
38,479	Administrative Expenses (230.01)(p)	41,905	42,230
440	Other Services (230.02)(p)	25	0
766	Payments to tertiary institutions & other bodies for Defence science research (230.02.02)(p)	900	900
6,400	Woomera Village; Operating Expenses (230.02.05)	0	0
1,029	Compensation & Legal Expenses (230.02.07)(p)	310	125
34,836	Equipment & Stores (234)	37,663	36,074
6,258	Defence Facilities; Property Ops (245.02)(p)	11,149	9,808
<u>207,165</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>218,155</u>	<u>217,415</u>
	Less Receipts Offset Within Outlays		
4,622	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	2,085	2,833
<u>202,543</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>216,070</u>	<u>214,582</u>
TOTAL: DEFENCE SUPPORT - PROGRAM 4			
<u>819,857</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>818,080</u>	<u>808,129</u>
<u>735,803</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>746,445</u>	<u>739,178</u>
5. DEFENCE CORPORATE SERVICES			
5.1 EXECUTIVE (Office of the Secretary)			
249	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	437	400
89	Administration expenses (230.1)(p)	103	86
<u>338</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS AND DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>540</u>	<u>486</u>

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
5.2 PERSONNEL, MANAGEMENT AND SUPPORT			
137,506	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	130,980	102,341
190,070	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	263,852	266,533
0	Payments under Audit Act s34 A(1)	50	13
18	Grant to Royal United Services Institute of Aust. (230.02.01)	19	19
60	Aboriginals and Torres Strait Islanders: Settlements of underpayments to WW II servicemen (230.02.06)	130	143
1,550	Compensation & Legal Expenses (230.02.07)(p)	1,965	2,317
1,967	Young Endeavour Program For Youth (230.02.10) 19	1,845	1,691
11	Contribution to Hedley Bull Memorial Fund (230.02.11)	0	0
0	75th Anniversary Gallipoli Landing (230.02.11)	25	25
10,259	Equipment & Stores (234)	12,249	13,330
37,669	Defence Facilities; Property Ops (245.02)(p)	80,723	73,624
379,110	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	491,838	460,036
	Less Receipts Offset Within Outlays		
6,747	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)	6,440	10,312
0	Plus Provision for Contingent Personnel Costs	8,000	0
372,363	PORTFOLIO OUTLAYS	493,398	449,724
17,905	Less Department of Administrative Services Revenue	18,900	200,810
354,458	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	474,498	428,914
5.3 STRATEGIC PLANNING			
24,650	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	28,479	42,402
9,380	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	13,361	8,895
0	Woomera Village Operating Expenses (230.02.05) 17	7,308	7,308
158	Compensation & Legal Expenses (230.02.07)(p)	63	0
0	History Research Project, West New Guinea (230.02.14)	50	50
4,523	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	6,829	24,252
725	Defence Facilities; Property Ops (245.02)(p)	1,779	87
39,436	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	57,869	82,994
	Less Receipts Offset Within Outlays		
0	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	1,204	3,055
39,436	PORTFOLIO OUTLAYS	56,665	79,939
	Plus Other Departments:		
	Dept. of Administrative Services		
583	Overseas Property Services (115)	1,074	784
40,019	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	57,739	80,723

PROGRAM STATEMENT (cont)

1988/89 Actual		1989/90 Additional Estimate	1989/90 Actual
\$,000	Notes	\$,000	\$,000
5.4 LOGISTICS			
19,085	Salaries and payments in the nature of salaries (230.1)(p)	40,322	37,783
20,321	Administration Expenses (230.1)(p)	16,249	7,551
335	Warnbro unexploded ordnance clearance projects; Payments to West Australian Government (230.02.09)	150	159
4,080	Equipment & Stores (234)(p)	6,565	3,424
181	Defence Facilities; Property Operations (245.02)(p)	295	243
<u>44,002</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>63,581</u>	<u>49,160</u>
	Less		
0	Rental of Defence Property (000.35.15)	900	1,276
0	Miscellaneous (000.35.97)(p)	1,419	650
0	Sale of Surplus Equipment	0	650
<u>44,002</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>61,262</u>	<u>46,584</u>
TOTAL: DEFENCE CORPORATE SERVICES PROGRAM 5			
<u>462,886</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>613,828</u>	<u>592,676</u>
<u>438,817</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>594,039</u>	<u>556,707</u>
TOTAL DEFENCE EXPENDITURE			
<u>8,172,310</u>	EXPENDITURE FROM APPROPRIATIONS	<u>8,925,291</u>	<u>8,905,626</u>
<u>7,782,385</u>	TOTAL DEFENCE OUTLAYS	<u>8,455,162</u>	<u>8,477,312</u>
	Less		
1,967	Culture and Recreation Function Outlays (Young Endeavour Youth Scheme)(Not Defence Function)	1,845	1,691
Plus			
NIL	Sale of Surplus Equipment	NIL	650
<u>7,780,418</u>	DEFENCE FUNCTION OUTLAYS	<u>8,453,317</u>	<u>8,476,271</u>

STATEMENT OF SUPPLEMENTARY FINANCIAL INFORMATION

This Statement has not been subject to audit.

1988-89 \$000	Notes	1989-90 \$000
Current Assets		
8 491	Cash on hand and at bank	11 226
14 144	Receivables (2)	8 227
Nil	Investments (3)	Nil
N/A	Work-in-progress (1(f))	N/A
N/A	Inventories (1(f))	N/A
Nil	Advances (4)	Nil
Non-current Assets		
Nil	Receivables	Nil
Nil	Investments	Nil
N/A	Inventories (1(f))	N/A
N/A	Fixed Assets - Administrative (20)	736 566
118 354	Advances (5)	206 397
Nil	Other	Nil
Current Liabilities		
107 524	Trade Creditors (5)	124 926
3 402	Other Creditors (5)	3 853
Non-current Liabilities		
Nil	Trade Creditors	Nil

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The figures shown in these notes are not subject to audit by the Auditor General except where specifically noted.

Note 1: Statement of Significant Accounting Policies (Audited)

- The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the *Financial Statements Guidelines for Departmental Secretaries* issued by the Minister for Finance.
- The financial statements have been prepared on a cash basis, with the exception of the Statement of Supplementary Information which includes certain accrual type information; and in accordance with the historical cost convention. They do not take account of changing money values or current values of non-current assets.
- Amounts shown in the Aggregate Statement of Transactions by Fund and the Detailed Statement of Transactions by Fund have been rounded to the nearest dollar. Other amounts have been rounded to the nearest \$1000 unless shown to the precise amount.
- Appropriation amounts shown are based on Additional Estimates figures including Advances from the Advance to the Minister for Finance and some renewal of limits. The figures do not show that appropriations (from Appropriation Act No 1) to an amount equal to the amount advanced by the Minister for Finance and the restoration of limits had to be foregone. Further an amount of \$500,000 appropriated under Appropriation Act No 1 had to be foregone at the time of Appropriation Act No 3. In effect these amounts were transferred from one vote item to another rather than simply added to the total amount available to Defence. This is reflected in the difference between the appropriated totals and actual amount expended.
- Amounts payable to and by the Department in foreign currencies have been translated to Australian currency at rates of exchange prevailing at 30 June. Transactions occurring during the year have been converted at the rate of exchange prevailing at the date of each transaction.
- The values of all Departmental assets have not been included in these statements due to the unavailability of comprehensive data at this time. Active investigations have been undertaken, and are continuing, to determine the most cost effective way of meeting this requirement in future years. Administrative assets shown are those controlled by Defence central, the seven Regional Secretaries and DSTO.

Note 2: Receivables

1988-89		1989-90
\$'000		\$'000
	Of the total amount of \$8,226,581.39 owing as at 30 June, the following amounts were overdue for:	
3 721	Less than 30 Days	2 012
5 893	Later than 30 Days but less than 60 days	1 066
4 530	Later than 60 Days	5 149

Note 3: Investments

- (a) The Department of Defence currently holds all the 96,100,538 issued shares of Aerospace Technologies of Australia Pty. Ltd.
- (b) Of the 16 issued shares in Australian Defence Industries Pty. Ltd., the Department of Defence holds eleven shares on behalf of the Commonwealth of Australia. This company became a public company with limited liability on 1 July 1990 and is now known as ADI.
- (c) The Defence Portfolio also includes the Defence Housing Authority which prepares separate financial statements.

Note 4: Advances

1988/89		1989/90
\$'000		\$'000
117 188	Defence Housing Authority (for capital works)	205 268
1 166	Townsville City Council (water supply to Laverack Barracks)	1 129
118 354		206 397

Note 5: Creditors

1988-89		1989-90
\$'000		\$'000
	Trade Creditors	
	Of the total amount of \$124,926,277 owing as at 30 June the following amounts were overdue for:	
97 923	Less than 30 Days	123 435
6 244	Later than 30 Days but less than 60 days	685
2 552	Later than 60 Days	807
	Other Creditors	
	Of the total amount of \$3,852,511 owing as at 30 June the following amounts were overdue for -	
3 222	Less than 30 Days	3 734
137	Later than 30 Days but less than 60 days	109
43	Later than 60 Days	9

Note 6: Forward Obligations

The Department has entered into the following forward obligations as at 30 June which are payable as follows:

1988/89		1989/90			Total \$000
Total	Item	Less than one year \$000	One to two years \$000	Later than two years \$000	
145 396	Administrative expenses and rent (230)	123 199	77 114	106 200	306 513
5 314 058	Major equipment projects (234-01)	1 064 377	1 047 271	6 528 389	8 640 037
1 947 629	Maintenance stores, equipment repair and minor capital (234)	1 107 367	473 323	491 878	2 072 568
97 347	Defence Co-operation (240)	75 588	19 982	1 740	97 310
1 058	Defence production costs (241)	2 137	200	133	2 470
533 043	Defence facilities incl. acquisitions, furniture and fittings (245)	196 586	187 621	237 628	621 835
58 899	Building repair (245)	60 993	12 319	Nil	73 312
8 167 177	Total	2 630 247	1 817 830	7 365 968	11 814 045

Note 7: Act of Grace Payments

The total number of payments made during the financial year 1989-90, pursuant to authorisations given under section 34A of the Audit Act 1901 was 21 and the amount of these payments was \$84,156.83.

Note 8: Waiver of Rights to Payments of Monies

The total number of payments waived during the financial year 1989/90 under subsection 70C(2) of the Audit Act 1901 was 9 and the total amount waived was \$15,431.20.

Note 9: Amounts Written Off

The following details are furnished in relation to amounts written off during the financial year 1989-90 under sub section 70C(1) of the Audit Act 1901.

	Up to \$1000		Over \$1000	
	Number	\$	Number	\$
Losses or deficiencies of public moneys	58	4 656	1	1 200
Irrecoverable amounts of revenue	104	17 171	2	2 070
Irrecoverable debts and overpayments	541	92 398	21	569 840
Revenue, debts & overpayments uneconomic to recover	247	5 951	0	Nil
Lost, deficient, condemned, unserviceable or obsolete stores	136 754	15 663 587	8288	38 442 955

Note 10: Losses and Deficiencies Etc in Public Monies and Other Property Investigated Under Part XIIA of the Audit Act

There were 929 cases investigated during the financial year 1989/90 under Part XIIA of the Audit Act 1901. The total value of the cases was \$46,231. In 570 of these, officers were determined to be liable, the value of these cases being \$35,561. Nine cases are still pending a decision on liability, the value of these cases being \$209. In the 350 cases where officers were not deemed liable the total value was \$10,461.

Part Three

Note 11: Free Resources

A list of resources provided to this Department by other Departments and Authorities at no cost to this Department is attached. No estimate of the value of these free resources is available for 1989/90 except where noted.

Note 12: Guarantees and Undertakings by the Commonwealth

No guarantees or similar undertakings remained current as at 30 June 1990.

Note 13: Contingent Liabilities

- (a) 1063 common law claims are held by the Department with a claim value of \$19.8M.
- (b) 83 claims from the Voyager disaster outstanding with a claim value of \$20.3M.

Note 13a: Indemnities

- (c) Under self insurance principles, the Department carries an extensive range of indemnities, often of a short term nature, relative to business and other arrangements involving contracts, agreements and other defence activities. Additionally, the transition of the Government Factories and Garden Island Dockyard to ADI and the nature of the activities undertaken have required a number of special indemnities. ADI however is required to bear the first \$1,000,000 in aggregate in any one year, of claims made under each category of indemnity.

GENERAL NOTES REFERENCED THROUGHOUT THE STATEMENT

Note 14 (Audited)

The 1988-89 Appropriation Act No 1 included Division 248 - *Housing for Members of the Australian Defence Force* through advances to the States under the control of the Department of Community Services and Health. From 1 January 1988, responsibility for the provision of all Defence housing transferred to the Defence Housing Authority and therefore there was no longer a need for this appropriation in 1989-90.

Note 15 (Audited)

Division 249 was for payments made to the National Capital Development Commission for expenditure under the *National Capital Development Commission Act* (under the control of the Department of the Arts, Sport, the Environment, Tourism and Territories). These expenditures are now managed through the Department of Administrative Services and funded as part of Division 245 and so Division 249 is no longer required.

Note 16 (Audited)

The Group 2 Trust Accounts for the Explosives Factory, Mulwala and Garden Island Dockyard have not yet been closed due to continuing negotiations with Australian Defence Industries relating to transfer of outstanding debtors. The balance in each account is zero. Outstanding advances remain at \$3,635,902 for the Explosives Factory and \$13,640,746 for Garden Island.

Note 17

Woomera Village was previously administered by the Defence Science and Technology Organisation and was therefore reported under Subprogram 4.5. It is now reported under Subprogram 5.3, Strategic Planning.

Note 18 (Audited)

All Group 2 Trust Accounts are subject to full reporting under the requirements of Sec 41D of the Audit Act, and audited financial statements are expected to be presented to the Minister by 31 December 1990.

Note 19

The Young Endeavour Youth Scheme was not included in Program 5.2 in 1988/89, but merely noted at the end of the accounts and included in totals. This year the data has been included in the body of the accounts and then deducted at the end of the Program Statement to arrive at Defence Outlay.

Note 20

Administrative assets shown here are those controlled by Defence Central, the seven Regional Offices and DSTO. It does not include any assets controlled by the three Services.

Note 21 (Audited)

The Trust account summary figures for 1988-89 differ from those published in 1989 due to the elimination of Trust Accounts closed on or before 30 June 1989 from this year's financial statements. The Trust Accounts no longer shown are: Ammunition Factory, Footscray; Government Clothing Factory, Coburg; Explosives Factory, Mulwala; Munitions Filling Factory, St Mary's; Ordnance Factory, Bendigo; Ordnance Factory, Maribymong; Small Arms Factory, Lithgow; and Garden Island Dockyard. (See also Note 16.)

Note 22: Trust Fund Investments as at 30 June 1990 (Audited)

The following investments are held in the corporate name of The Minister for Finance of the Commonwealth of Australia pursuant to subsection 62B (2) of the Audit Act 1901 on behalf of the following Trust Funds.

	<i>Face Value of investment</i>	<i>Cost of investment</i>	<i>Rate of interest</i>	<i>Date of maturity</i>
	\$	\$	%	
A. Endowment Trust Fund - Defence				
Australian Savings Bonds Series 29:				
Admiral Bernard Prize	400	400	13	1.8.1993
Otto Albert Prize	400	400	13	1.8.1993
R.A.N. College Jubilee Year Graduates				
Memorial Sword Prize	1 000	1 000	13	1.1.1993
Commonwealth Government Inscribed Stock:				
Ian McDonald Prize	600	600	5.4	15.5.2004
W.H.Harrington Prize	300	300	5.25	15.2.2004
Commonwealth Bank Term Deposits:				
Otto Albert Prize	1 200	1 200	14	26.9.1990
Burnett Memorial Trophy	700	700	14	27.8.1990
E.E.Mayo Prize	400	400	14	27.8.1990
Peter Wyatt Prize	200	200	14.1	1.9.1990
Herbert Lott Trust Fund	17 606.37	17 606.37	14	22.9.1990
Gowlland Memorial Medal	2 500	2 500	12.75	30.1.1994
Telecom Australia Inscribed Stock:				
R.J.Kilsby Prize	500	500	13.5	1.4.1991
Melbourne & Metropolitan Board of Works:				
Otto Albert Prize	200	200	17.2	6.7.1992
Total - Endowment Trust Fund	26 006.37	26 006.37		
A new endowment (Rosemary Rodwell Endowment) of \$1500 was invested, in a 6 months term deposit with Canberra Advance Bank at a rate of 15% maturing 19.10.1990, but not recorded correctly on the Finance Ledger System. This will be corrected in financial year 1990/1991.				
B. Fedorczenko Legacy Fund				
National Australia Bank Term Deposit	100 048.43	100 048.43	15.8	7.7.90

FREE SERVICES PROVIDED TO DEFENCE BY OTHER AGENCIES

Attorney-General's Department:

- assistance with security vetting procedures, security surveys and security equipment evaluation;
- training courses for security personnel;
- legal services from Australian Government Solicitor;
- provision of legal advice including interpretation of legislation;
- drafting of subordinate legislation and other instruments;
- drafting of bills by Office of Parliamentary Council;
- conveyancing;
- legal advice in relation to investigation and prosecution of suspected offences by Director of Public Prosecutions;
- verification of members' eligibility under HPSEA scheme;
- advice from Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission re settlement of discrimination claims;
- legal opinion on Commonwealth liability relating to industrial claims;
- legal advice on industrial property matters, collaborative memoranda of understanding, offset deeds of agreement, and contractual arrangements for the establishment of industrial capabilities;
- advice on customs provisions in overseas contracts.

Australian National Audit Office:

- provision of audit services to the Department (\$640,000).

Australian Federal Police:

- assistance with security vetting procedures.

Australian Taxation Office:

- advice and rulings on various taxation matters.

Department of Administrative Services:

- management of leases, acquisitions and disposals of land and buildings.

Department of Community Services and Health:

- checks on RAAF aircraft transiting to and from overseas;
- inoculation of Defence personnel.

Department of Employment, Education and Training:

- occasional use of country CES offices by Service recruiting staff;
- occasional use of radio 'job spots' and advertisements in country newspapers.

Department of Finance:

- provision of civilian payroll computing support, cheque paying and ledger systems to the Department;
- overseas salary payments;
- training courses for Defence personnel.

Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade:

- provision of common support services to Defence personnel in overseas missions;
- waiver of passport charges on Service personnel leaving the country;
- issue of passports/visas for Defence personnel and dependants;
- assistance with security vetting;
- use of communications network.

Department of Immigration, Local Government and Ethnic Affairs:

- assistance with security vetting procedures;
- translation services;
- checks on RAAF aircraft transiting from overseas.

Department of Treasury:

- exemption from FID and BAD taxes on bank accounts.

Department of Veterans' Affairs:

- storage facilities at Australian War Memorial.

Parliamentary Hansard Office:

- copies of hansard and parliamentary notice papers.

State Police (except S.A.):

- assistance with security vetting procedures.

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Act of Grace Payments: Section 34A of the Audit Act 1901 provides that, in special circumstances, the Commonwealth may pay an amount to a person notwithstanding that the Commonwealth is not under any legal liability to do so.

Administrative Expenses: Includes not just expenditure on office based activities but *all* operational expenditure (excepting salaries). The item includes both direct costs and overhead expenditure. It includes, inter alia, minor capital expenditure which is considered part of ordinary annual services; it does not include, inter alia, major capital expenditure, grants, loans or subsidies.

Advance to the Minister for Finance (AMF): The contingency provisions appropriated in the two Supply Acts and the two annual Appropriation Acts to enable funding of urgent expenditures not foreseen at the time of preparation of the relevant Bills. These funds may also be used in the case of changes in expenditure priorities to enable 'transfers' of moneys from the purpose for which they were originally appropriated to another purpose pending specific appropriation.

Annual Appropriations: Acts which appropriate moneys for expenditure in relation to the Government's activities during the financial year. Such appropriations lapse on 30 June.

Appropriations: Authorisation by Parliament to expend public moneys from the Consolidated Revenue Fund or Loan Fund for a particular purpose, or the amounts so authorised. All expenditure (i.e. outflows of moneys) from the Commonwealth Public Account must be appropriated, i.e. authorised by the Parliament. The authority for expenditure from individual trust accounts is provided under the Audit Act 1901 or an Act establishing the trust account and specifying its purposes. See also *Annual Appropriations* and *Special Appropriations*.

Appropriation Act (No 1): An Act to appropriate moneys from the Consolidated Revenue Fund for the ordinary annual services of Government.

Appropriation Act (No 2): An Act to appropriate moneys from the Consolidated Revenue Fund for other than ordinary annual services. Under existing arrangements between the two Houses of Parliament this Act includes appropriations in respect of new policies (apart from those funded under Special Appropriations), capital works and services, plant and equipment and payments to the States and the Northern Territory. Defence outlays are expressly excluded from Appropriation Act (No 2).

Appropriation Acts (Nos 3 and 4): Where an amount provided in an Appropriation Act (No 1 or 2) is insufficient to meet approved obligations falling due in a financial year, additional appropriation may be provided in a further Appropriation Act (No 3 or No 4). Appropriations may also be provided in these Acts for new expenditure proposals. Only Appropriation Act No 3 may be used for Defence outlays.

Appropriation (Parliamentary Departments) Act (Nos 1 and 2): Acts to appropriate moneys from the Consolidated Revenue Fund for the Parliamentary Departments.

Appropriations Classified as Revenue: Refers to Appropriations which are netted against receipts. They do not form part of outlays because they are considered to be closely or functionally related to certain revenue items or relate to refunds of receipts, and are therefore shown as offsets to receipts, e.g. refunds of PAYE tax instalments, working capital advance to the Government Printer.

Audit Act 1901: The principal legislation governing the collection, payment and reporting of public moneys, the audit of the Public Accounts and the protection and recovery of public property. Finance Regulations and Directions are made pursuant to the Act.

Commonwealth Public Account (CPA): The main bank account of the Commonwealth, maintained at the Reserve Bank in which are held the moneys of the Consolidated Revenue Fund, Loan Fund and Trust Fund (other than the National Debt Sinking Fund).

Consolidated Revenue Fund; Loan Fund; Trust Fund: The three funds comprise the Commonwealth Public Account (CPA).

Consolidated Revenue Fund The principal working fund of the Commonwealth, mainly financed by taxation, fees and other current receipts. The Constitution requires an appropriation of moneys by the Parliament before any expenditure can be made from the CRF. These follow two forms :

- (i) annual appropriations consisting of Supply Acts (Nos 1 and 2), the Supply (Parliamentary Departments) Act, the Appropriations Acts (Nos 1-4) and the Appropriation (Parliamentary Departments) Acts (Nos 1 and 2). The Supply Acts relate to the first five months of the financial year and are subsumed by the corresponding Appropriation Acts; and
- (ii) special or standing appropriations.

Loan Fund Authority for its establishment comes from the Audit Act. All moneys raised by loan on the public credit of the Commonwealth are credited to the Loan Fund. Expenditures from the Loan Fund require an appropriation by Parliament and are limited to the purpose(s) for which moneys were originally raised as specified.

Trust Fund Essentially comprises trustee funds (termed 'Heads of Trust') established under s.60 of the *Audit Act* (i.e. moneys held in trust for the benefit of persons or bodies other than the Commonwealth); trust accounts established under s.62A of the *Audit Act* (i.e. working accounts covering certain government agencies and certain other accounts in the nature of 'suspense accounts'); and trust accounts established under other Acts to meet future expenditure.

Payments into the Trust Fund may be by way of appropriation from the CRF or Loan Fund or direct credit of private moneys. Expenditure from the Trust Fund is appropriated for (and limited to) the specific purposes of each trust account, or head of trust, by the Audit Act or the Act establishing the trust account or head of trust. Unlike the unused portion of annual appropriations, trust account balances - as with 'special' or 'standing' appropriations - do not lapse at the end of the financial year.

Legal advice is to the effect that investments, and the liquidation of those investments, involve 'expenditure' and 'receipts' for the purposes of subsection 50(2) of the *Audit Act* and that the balances of the Trust Fund should be reduced by the amount of investments outstanding at 30 June. In the interests of informative reporting, the financial statements have been designed so as to include explicit investment information. In particular, information concerning expenditure and receipts has been split as between investment and non-investment activities so as to provide 'notional' balances taking into account the value of investments, and a 'cash' balance after account is taken of investment transactions.

Expenditure: The total or gross amount of money spent by the Department on any or all of its activities (i.e. the total outflow of moneys from the Commonwealth Public Account) (cf. *Outlays*). All expenditure must be appropriated, i.e. authorised by the Parliament (see also *Appropriation*).

Forward Obligations: Obligations existing at 30 June which create or are intended to create a legal liability on the Department to provide funds in future years and which have not been exempted from the forward obligations system. In special circumstances, arrangements which do not create a legal liability, but which require forward obligations cover for effective program management, may also be included in the forward obligations system, e.g. memoranda of understanding with other Governments and foreign aid arrangements. The following items are exempted from the forward obligations system:

- all items classified in Appropriation Acts as Running Costs (i.e. salaries, administrative and operating expenses);
- those items for which payment is authorised by special legislation where the amount and timing of payments are specified or clearly dictated by eligibility criteria (i.e. most, but not all, Special Appropriations); and
- those items which have been exempted by the Minister for Finance as a result of specific case-by-case requests from Departments.

Loan Fund: See *Consolidated Revenue Fund*. **Outlays:** An economic concept which shows the net extent to which resources are directed through the Budget to other sectors of the economy after offsetting recoveries and repayments against relevant expenditure items, i.e. outlays consist of expenditure net of associated receipt items. See also *Appropriation*; *Appropriations Classified as Revenue*; and *Receipts Offset Within Outlays*.

Outstanding Advances: Amounts provided to Defence Factories as working capital which are as yet not repaid.

Receipts: The total or gross amount of moneys received by the Department (i.e. the Commonwealth Public Account). Every receipt item is classified to one of the economic concepts of revenue, outlays (i.e. offset within outlays) or financing transactions.

Receipts Not Offset Within Outlays: Receipts classified as *revenue*. See also *Revenue*.

Receipts Offset Within Outlays: Refers to receipts which are netted against certain expenditure items because they are considered to be closely or functionally related to those items, e.g. receipts from computer hire charges are offset against the running costs of the Department's accounting and management information systems.

Revenue: Items classified as revenue are receipts which have not been offset within outlays or classified as financing transactions. The term 'revenue' is an economic concept which comprises the net amounts received from taxation, interest, regulatory functions, investment holdings and government business undertakings. It excludes amounts received from the sale of government services or assets (these are offset within outlays) and amounts received from loan raisings (these are classified as financing transactions). Some expenditure is offset within revenue, e.g. refunds of PAYE tax instalments and the operating expenditure of budget sector business undertakings. See also *Receipts*.

Special (Standing) Appropriations: Moneys appropriated by a specific Act of Parliament for a specific purpose (e.g. unemployment benefits, grants to States for schools). They may or may not be for a specific amount of money or particular period of time. Special Appropriations do not require annual spending authorisation by the Parliament as they do not lapse at the end of each financial year. A distinction is sometimes made between Standing and Special Appropriations. Standing Appropriations refer to an open-ended appropriation of the Consolidated Revenue Fund by the enabling Act of a legislatively-based program. The amount appropriated will depend on the demand for payments by claimants satisfying program eligibility criteria specified in the legislation. Special Appropriations can be regarded as somewhere between Standing and Annual Appropriations: while a specified amount is provided, it is included in a separate Bill authorising the particular program and can be specified for any number of years.

Trust Account Transactions Affecting Outlays: Refers to the movement in trust account balances. Outlays measure the net extent to which resources are directed by the Commonwealth Public Account (i.e. through the Budget) to other sectors of the economy. Accordingly, the transactions of the CRF, the Trust Fund and the Loan Fund are consolidated and inter-fund transfers disregarded. Thus expenditure from the CRF under an appropriation to a trust account would not in itself contribute to the level of outlays, but the expenditure undertaken from the trust account would. Consequently, in reconciling the level of outlays to the level of appropriations, it is necessary to adjust the latter for the movements in trust account balances which are classified to outlays.

Trust Fund: See *Consolidated Revenue Fund*.



Auditor-General

12 October 1990

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENCE
AUDIT REPORT ON FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

In accordance with sub-section 50(1) of the Audit Act 1901, the Secretary of the Department of Defence has submitted for examination and report the financial statements of the Department of Defence for the year ended 30 June 1990.

Sub-section 50(2) of the Act provides that the financial statements shall be prepared in accordance with financial statements guidelines issued by the Minister for Finance, and shall set out:

- (a) particulars of the receipts and expenditures of the Consolidated Revenue Fund, the Loan Fund and the Trust Fund during the financial year in respect of the Department, and
- (b) such other information (if any) relating to the financial year as is required by the financial statements guidelines to be included in the statements.

The parts of the financial statements prepared in accordance with paragraph 50(2)(b) of the Act are not subject to audit examination and report unless the Minister for Finance has declared that they are to be subject to full examination. At the date of this report the Minister had not made a declaration in respect of the Department of Defence.

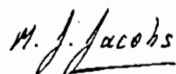
The parts of the financial statements prepared in accordance with paragraph 50(2)(a) of the Act which are subject to audit have been prepared in accordance with the policies outlined in Note 1 and have been audited in conformance with the Australian National Audit Office Auditing Standards which incorporate the Australian Auditing Standards.

In accordance with paragraphs 51(1)(a) and (b) and section 70F of the Act, I now report that the parts of the statements prepared in accordance with paragraph 50(2)(a) are, in my opinion:

- (a) in agreement with the accounts and records kept in accordance with section 40 of the Act, and

2.

- (b) in accordance with the financial statements guidelines issued by the Minister for Finance.

A handwritten signature in dark ink, reading "M. J. Jacobs". The signature is written in a cursive style with a horizontal line underneath the name.

M.J. Jacobs
Acting Auditor-General

INDEX

INDEX TO ANNUAL REPORT GUIDELINES

All departments are required to comply with parliamentary guidelines for the preparation of annual reports. The following summary is provided to assist readers to locate principal coverage of matters addressed in response to specific guidelines. Guidelines 1 to 8 cover general principles and are not included in the summary references.

Guideline reference	Subject	Pages
9. (a)	reference to legislation	iii
(b)	the Department's goals	3
(c)	the Department's structure	4
(d)	significant activities	17-132, 135
(e)	management of the Department	9-13, 98-118, 188-203
(f)	significant changes to business regulations	85
(g)	occupational health and safety	102
(h)	industrial democracy plan	87
(i)	equal employment opportunity plan	107
(j)	post separation employment cases	106
(k)	freedom of information	126-127, 177-186
(l)	significant judicial decisions	126
(m)	parliamentary committee/Auditor-General reviews	143-150
(n)	major reviews of objectives or structure of the Department	9-13
(o)	client complaints	n/a
(p)	other sources of information	143-157
(q)	statutory/non statutory bodies	137-141, 185-186
(r)	social justice	102
(s)	access and equity plan	107
(t)	purchasing reforms	50-52
10.	laboratory services	n/a
11.	impact of administrative reforms	11-13, 50-52, 99, 110, 112
Attachment:		
A.	management issues	9-13, 97-113
B.	financial statements	187-213
C.	staffing information	25-27, 100-101, 103-105, 111, 159-168

MAIN INDEX

access and equity plan	107	New Submarine Project	149
acquisition process		Report 20:	
contractor performance measurement	51	Finance Systems Redevelopment Project	149
implementation of purchasing reforms	50	Protective security	149
project management training	52	Depot stores	149
value management	51	Salaries and payments in the nature of salary	149
acts administered by the Minister for Defence	135	Defence Science and Technology	
ADF		Organisation - expenditure recording	149
<i>see</i> Australian Defence Force		Office of Defence Production - accounts and financial statements under section 41D of the <i>Audit Act 1901</i>	149
Air Force		Report 31: Office of Defence Production - financial statements under section 41D of the <i>Audit Act 1901</i>	150
<i>see also</i> recruiting centres		Report 33: Squirrel training helicopters - utilisation and maintenance	150
exercises	44, 122-123	Australian Army	
force structure	45	<i>see</i> Army	
logistic support	45	Australian Defence Force	
operational readiness	41	Academy Council	139
personnel management	46	assistance to the civil community	47
personnel statistics	25-27	command and control	19
projects	60	development	23
public relations offices	152-153	employment of women	131
recruiting	111	information systems policy	29
strategic development	45	<i>K89</i>	19
training	26, 46, 105	personnel management	24
air-to-air refuelling	60	personnel statistics	25-27
<i>see also</i> projects		recruiting	111
anechoic coatings for submarines	89	reserves	28
Anzac Ship	57, 71	retention	28
<i>see also</i> projects		training	105
archives and historical studies	114	Australian Defence Medical Ethics Committee	141
arms control		Australian frigates	58
<i>see</i> disarmament and arms control		<i>see also</i> projects	
Army		Australian Industry Involvement	62
<i>see also</i> recruiting centres		Australian Shipping Defence Council	138
exercises	39, 123	Black Hawk helicopters	61
<i>see also</i> <i>K89</i>		<i>see also</i> projects	
force structure	39	Brunei	
logistic support	40	<i>see</i> Asean countries	
operational readiness	36	capital	
peacekeeping	39	equipment	52-61
personnel and management	40	facilities	66-70
personnel statistics	25-27	chemical sensors	92
projects	59	chemical weapons convention	88
public relations offices	152-153	<i>see also</i> disarmament and arms control	
recruiting	111	Chinook helicopters	24
reserves	40	Citizens in Support of Reserve Forces Trust Fund	140, 182
strategic development	39	civilianisation	99
training	26, 37, 105	civil science organisations	92
Army Reserve		Collins Class submarines	58, 71, 95
Advisory Council	138	<i>see also</i> projects	
Recruiting Coordination Committee	182	colour periscope television for Swedish Navy	94
asbestos	35, 126	combustion test facility	91
Asean countries	82, 122	command support systems research facility	91
audit and review	113	commercialisation	93
Auditor-General's Reports	147		
Report 1: Overseas procurement - Europe	148		
Report 9: Post separation employment	148		
Report 11: Recruitment practices	148		
Report 18:			
Naval Supply Centre, Zetland	149		

- Committee for Employer Support of Reserve Forces 138
 committees
 see House of Representatives
 see Joint Parliamentary
 see non statutory bodies
 see Senate
 communications
 architectures 87
 corporate plan 22
 research 91
 compact tactical message switch 89
 composite crack patching 88
 conditions of service 24, 28-29, 34-35, 46
 consultants
 see external consultants
 Council of Defence 185
 counter disaster operations 76
 current Defence Forces program 17-48
 DDG modernisation 59
 see also projects
 Defence
 (Areas Control) Regulations 126
 assistance to the civil community 47
 civilian personnel statistics 100
 Committee 186
 Consultative Council 182
 cooperation 81
 Asean countries 82
 training in Australia 84
 Papua New Guinea 81
 regional activities 83
 South Pacific 83
 corporate services program 97-132
 development program 49-72
 housing 80
 and industry 71
 Industry Committee 137
 Industry Quality Forum 140, 183
 information services 113
 intellectual property and licencing agreements 64
 intelligence 125
 management improvement 101
 offsets 62
 portfolio statistical overview 6
 Press and Broadcasting Committee 139
 production 85
 program overview 3
 quality assurance 130
 regional support review 10
 satellite network 56
 see also projects
 science and technology 86
 Signals Directorate 125
 Standardisation Committee 183
 support program 75-96
 Support Centre Woomera 124
 Defence Force
 see also Australian Defence Force
 Discipline Legislation Board of Review 126
 Health Consultative Group 141, 182
 Retirement and Death Benefits 73-74
 Desine 30
 development
 Defence Force 23
 DSTO technology base 91
 civil infrastructure 130
 industry capabilities 63
 light armour 91
 program 49-72
 strategic infrastructure 66
 devolution of establishment powers 99
 DFRB, DFRDB
 see Defence Force Retirement and Death Benefits
 diamond-like coatings 91
 disarmament and arms control 124
 disaster awareness and information 78
 Discon 55
 see also projects
 doubly labelled water 89
 DSTO
 see also publications and audio-visual material
 commercialisation 93
 corporate management 86
 reorganisation 86, 87
 interaction with civil science organisations 92
 international cooperation 92
 Minister's award 87
 new equipment development 89
 policy advice 87
 problem solving and specialist support 88
 'steels' the new subs for Australia 95
 technology base development 91
 dual use technology
 controls on 65
 earthquakes
 see counter disaster operations
 EEO
 see equal employment opportunity
 Emergency Broadcasting Committee 137
 environmental protection 70
 equal employment opportunity 107, 108-109
 Europe 124
 exercise *Kangaroo 89*
 see *K89*
 explosive ordnance storage 69
 exports
 control 65
 facilitation 65
 external consultancies 159
 F-111C avionics update 61
 see also projects
 F/A-18 fighters 61, 71
 see also projects
 facilities 66-70
 FFG helicopter modification 59
 see also projects
 Five Power Defence Arrangements 122
 flooding
 see counter disaster operations

Part Three

FOI		Europe	124
<i>see</i> Freedom of Information		Japan	124
force structure		New Zealand	121
Air Force	45	Papua New Guinea	121
Army	39	South Pacific	122
Navy	32	United States	120
review	24		
FPDA		Japan	124
<i>see</i> Five Power Defence Arrangements		Jindalee	
fraud control		<i>see also</i> projects	
<i>see</i> audit and review		<i>and</i> K89	89
Freedom of Information	126	over-the-horizon radar	56, 91
arrangements for outside participation	182	over-the-horizon radar network	56, 87
authorised decision makers	177	Joint Consultative Council	183
categories of documents maintained	183	Joint Defence Facilities	121
facilities for access to documents	184	Joint Industrial Committee	183
functions and powers affecting the public	177	Joint Intelligence Organization	125
portfolio authorities	185	Joint Parliamentary Committees	
procedures and initial contact points	177	Australian Security Intelligence Organization	143
revenue and costs	127	Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade	
section 8 statement	127, 177	Defence Sub-Committee	28, 143
section 9 statement	127	Foreign Affairs Sub-Committee	143
		Sub-Committee on the National Safety	
grants for industrial research and development	92	Council of Australia (Victorian Division)	143
		Public Accounts	144
helicopters		Public Works	145
Black Hawk	61		
Chinook	24	K89	
Seahawk	58	air defence studies	89
Wessex	33	benefits	19
historical		conduct and results	19
collections and museums	114	Jindalee	89
studies	114	lessons	20
House of Representatives Standing Committees		Kariwara	56
Finance and Public Administration	146	<i>see also</i> projects	
Legal and Constitutional Affairs	147		
Environment, Recreation and the Arts	147	laser protection	89
Hydrographic Survey Program	183	legislation and litigation	126
		light armour developments	91
Indonesia		living-in accommodation	67
<i>see</i> Asean countries		logistics	128
industrial democracy		asset disposal	130
<i>see</i> industrial relations and consultation		development of civil infrastructure	130
industrial relations		information systems	130
<i>and</i> consultation	87	international aspects	129
DSTO	106	movements and transport	129
information systems	29, 35, 112, 130	organisation and management	128
inquiries, parliamentary		quality assurance	130
<i>see</i> parliamentary inquiries		rationalisation of explosives storage	129
intelligence		review of inventory holdings	129
Defence Signals Directorate	125	logistic support	
Joint Intelligence Organization	125	Air Force	45
international		Army	40
cooperation	92	Navy	34
collaboration	63		
decade for natural disaster reduction	79	magnetisation of submarine steel hull	92
logistics aspects	129	Malaysia	
policy	120	<i>see</i> Asean countries	
<i>see also</i> Defence cooperation		management of the Defence organisation	9
Asean countries	122	marine	
disarmament	124	fouling investigations	88

- surveys 33
- media releases 151
- Military Superannuation and Benefits Scheme 74
- mine countermeasures equipment 32, 89
- minihunter inshore 58
- see also* projects
- minesweeping 32
- Missile Technology Control Regime 124
- mine warfare 88, 92
- National Consultative Group of Service Spouses 140
- National Counter Disaster-Civil Defence:
 Training Policy Advisory Committee 183
- natural disasters and civil defence
- counter disaster operations 76
- disaster awareness and information 78
- support for state emergency services 78
- training 79
- Navy
- see also* recruiting centres
- exercises 31, 121-124
- see also* K89
- force structure 32
- logistic support 34
- management information systems 35
- marine surveys 33
- operational readiness 31
- personnel and management 34
- personnel statistics 25-27
- projects 57
- public relations offices 152-153
- recruiting 111
- reserves 35
- retention 34
- strategic development 32
- training 26, 35, 105
- Newcastle earthquake 76
- new submarines 58, 71, 95
- see also* projects
- New Zealand 121
- non statutory bodies 137
- Army Reserve Advisory Council 138
- Australian Defence Force Academy Council 139
- Australian Defence Medical Ethics Committee 141
- Australian Shipping Defence Council 138
- Citizens in Support of Reserve Forces
 Trust Fund 140, 182
- Committee for Employer Support
 of Reserve Forces 138
- Defence Force Health Consultative Group 141, 183
- Defence Industry Committee 137
- Defence Industry Quality Forum 140, 183
- Defence Press and Broadcasting Committee 139
- Emergency Broadcasting Committee 137
- National Consultative Group of Service Spouses 140
- North West Cape
- see* Joint Defence Facilities
- Nulka 91
- see also* projects
- Nurrungar
- see* Joint Defence Facilities
- occupational health and safety 35, 102
- operational readiness
- Air Force 41
- Army 36
- Navy 31
- organisational review
- civilianisation 99
- devolution of establishment powers 99
- management improvement 101
- structural efficiency principle 99
- resources savings 98
- orphans benefits 74
- over-the-horizon radar
- see* Jindalee
- P-3C Orion electronic support measures 60
- see also* projects
- Papua New Guinea 81, 121
- Parakeet 60
- see also* projects
- parliamentary committees
- see* House of Representatives
- see* Joint Parliamentary
- see* non statutory bodies
- see* Senate
- parliamentary inquiries
- access provisions of the Archives Act 143
- administration of Australian industry
 participation and offsets program 144
- Australian Customs Service 146
- Australia's relations with Papua New Guinea 143
- Australian Defence Force Reserves 143
- certain aspects of the pilots dispute 146
- compliance with guidelines for preparation of
 departmental annual reports 144
- departmental explanatory notes 146
- development of the Senior Executive Service 146
- environmental protection of Australian coastline 147
- equal opportunity and status for Australian
 women 147
- finance minutes 144, 145
- financial management improvement program 146
- guidelines for departmental annual reports 145
- operation of the doctrine known as 'Shield
 of the Crown' 146
- operations of the National Safety Council of
 Australia (Victorian Division) 143
- perestroika and the implications for Australia 145
- priorities for Australia's mine countermeasures
 needs 143
- safety of nuclear powered or armed vessels 120, 145
- safety principles for explosives 144
- supply systems redevelopment project 144
- very fast train 146
- PC9/A trainers 61
- see also* projects
- peacekeeping 39
- Perentie 60
- see also* projects
- periscope refurbishment 89
- personnel and management

Part Three

Air Force	46	<i>see also</i> publications and audio-visual material	
Army	40	public relations offices	152
Navy	34	recruiting offices	156
personnel policies and practices	102	public relations	
access and equity plan	107	DSTO	87
equal employment opportunity	107	offices	152
industrial relations	106	publications	151
occupational health and safety	102	strategy	114
post separation employment	106	publications and audio-visual material	
social justice	102	Acquisition and Logistics	154
recruiting for the ADF	110	Natural Disasters	154
training and development	102	Public Relations	151
personnel, resources management and support	98	Science and Technology	155
personnel statistics		purchasing reforms	50
ADF	25-27	radar	
civilian	100-101	<i>see also</i> Jindalee	
Pine Gap		ventures	94
<i>see</i> Joint Defence Facilities		warning receivers	88
post separation employment	106	rationalisation	
press releases		explosives storage	129
<i>see</i> media releases		logistics	69
production and maintenance infrastructure	69	Raven	59
program management and budgeting		<i>see also</i> projects	
devolution and decentralisation	13	recruiting centres	156-157
performance evaluation	13	reserves	26, 28, 35, 40, 143
program management arrangements	12	<i>see also</i> K89	
program structure	11	resources planning and management	110
progress of projects	52	asset reporting	112
<i>see also</i> projects		devolution	112
project approvals and expenditure		financial summary	115
capital equipment	53	reviews	
capital facilities	68	ADF stockholding policy	24
projects		ADF support flying	24
air-to-air refuelling	60	Central Office organisation	10
Anzac Ship	57, 71	DFRDB	74
Australian frigates	58	force structure	24
Black Hawk helicopters	61	Group Rent Scheme	80
DDG modernisation	59	higher ADF staff arrangements	9
Defence satellite network	56	inventory holdings and management	129
Discon	55	regional support	10
F-111C avionics update	61	revised higher Defence process	11
F/A-18 fighters	61, 71	strategic	119
FFG helicopter modifications	59	Royal Australian Air Force	
Jindalee	56, 87, 91	<i>see</i> Air Force	
Kariwara	56	Royal Australian Navy	
minehunter inshore	58	<i>see also</i> Navy	
new (Collins Class) submarines	58, 71, 95	Central Canteens Board	186
Nulka	57	satellite communications	56, 88
P-3C Orion electronic support measures	60	<i>see also</i> projects	
Parakeet	60	Seahawk helicopters	58
PC9/A trainers	61	<i>see also</i> projects	
Perentie	60	Secretary's review of Defence Central Office	
Raven	59	organisation	10
satellite communications facility	56	secure communications	55, 89
Seahawk helicopters	58	Senate Select Committees	
small arms	60	Certain Aspects of the Pilots' Dispute	146
sonobuoy	57	Senate Standing Committees	
video conferencing network	56	Finance and Public Administration	146
projects based on indigenous technology	56	Foreign Affairs, Defence and Trade	145
property acquisition and disposal	70		
public information	114, 151		

Legal and Constitutional Affairs	146
Transport, Communications and Infrastructure	146
separations	
ADF	27
civilian	101
ship noise and vibration	91
simulated operations	92
Singapore	
<i>see</i> Asean countries	
small arms	60
<i>see also</i> projects	
social justice	102
sonobuoy	57
<i>see also</i> projects	
South Pacific	83, 122
stack fragmentation trials	89
state and territory emergency services	78
State-Territory Emergency Services Directors	
Conference	183
Stirling engine	89
strategic	
communications projects	55
development of the Air Force	45
development of the Army	32
development of the Navy	32
infrastructure developments	66
planning	119
policy	119
stress analysis of composites	91
structural efficiency principle	99
structural review of higher ADF staff arrangements	9
T56 engine	88
Thailand	
<i>see</i> Asean countries	
thermal sensors	94
towed	
acoustic arrays	92
decoy	89
training	
natural disasters	79
<i>and</i> staff development	102, 103-105
tropical cyclones	
<i>see</i> counter disaster operations	
trustworthy computing	91
two ocean basing	
facilities	66
strategic development	32
United States	120
<i>see also</i> K89	
value management	51
video conferencing network	56
<i>see also</i> projects	
Voyager litigation	126
weapon systems	88
Woomera	
Defence Support Centre	124
instrumented range	94
Support Area Advisory Committee	183



Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Determination 2019

made under subsection 5C(1) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986*

Compilation No. 3

Compilation date: 6 April 2022

Includes amendments up to: F2022L00534

Prepared by the Department of Defence

About this compilation

This compilation

This is a compilation of the Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Determination 2019 that shows the text of the law as amended and in force on 6 April 2022 (the *compilation date*).

The notes at the end of this compilation (the *endnotes*) include information about amending laws and the amendment history of provisions of the compiled law.

Uncommenced amendments

The effect of uncommenced amendments is not shown in the text of the compiled law. Any uncommenced amendments affecting the law are accessible on the Legislation Register (www.legislation.gov.au). The details of amendments made up to, but not commenced at, the compilation date are underlined in the endnotes. For more information on any uncommenced amendments, see the series page on the Legislation Register for the compiled law.

Application, saving and transitional provisions for provisions and amendments

If the operation of a provision or amendment of the compiled law is affected by an application, saving or transitional provision that is not included in this compilation, details are included in the endnotes.

Modifications

If the compiled law is modified by another law, the compiled law operates as modified but the modification does not amend the text of the law. Accordingly, this compilation does not show the text of the compiled law as modified. For more information on any modifications, see the series page on the Legislation Register for the compiled law.

Self-repealing provisions

If a provision of the compiled law has been repealed in accordance with a provision of the law, details are included in the endnotes.

Contents

1 Name	1
3 Authority	1
5 Definitions.....	1
6 Warlike service	1
Schedule 1—Warlike service	2
1 Warlike service	2
Endnotes.....	8
Endnote 1—About the endnotes	8
Endnote 2—Abbreviation key	9
Endnote 3—Legislation history	10
Endnote 4—Amendment history	11

1 Name

This instrument is *Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Determination 2019*.

3 Authority

This instrument is made under subsection 5C(1) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986*.

5 Definitions

In this instrument:

Act means the Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986.

NATO means the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.

6 Warlike service

Schedule 1 specifies service in the Defence Force that is Warlike service for the purposes of the Act.

Schedule 1—Warlike service

1 Warlike service

For the purposes of the definition of **warlike service** in subsection 5C(1) of the Act, service in the Defence Force in an operation mentioned in an item of the following table is warlike service for the purposes of the Act if the service:

- (a) is in an area of operation mentioned in the item; and
- (b) occurs during a period mentioned in the item.

Warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
1	Vietnam		Vietnam (Southern Zone)	12 January 1973 – 29 April 1975
2	Jural	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to patrol the Iraq No-Fly-Zones.	Iraq	30 June 1991 – 12 January 2003
3	Provide Comfort	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to patrol the Iraq No-Fly-Zones	Iraq	11 August 1991 – 15 December 1996
4	Bolton	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to control the Iraq No-Fly-Zones	Iraq	31 August 1992 – 12 January 2003
5	Southern Watch	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to patrol the Iraq No-Fly-Zones	Iraq	31 August 1992 – 12 January 2003
6	Tamar	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Assistance Mission for Rwanda	Rwanda and the areas in Uganda, Zaire (Democratic Republic of the Congo), Burundi and Tanzania that are not more than 50 kilometres from the border with Rwanda.	25 July 1994 – 16 January 1996
7	Northern Watch	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to patrol the Iraq No-Fly-Zones	Iraq	1 January 1997 – 12 January 2003

Warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
8	Faber	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Advance Mission in East Timor	East Timor and the sea area that on 16 September 1999 was the territorial sea of Indonesia adjacent to East Timor.	16 September 1999 – 23 February 2000
9	Stabilise	Defence Force contribution to the International Force in East Timor	East Timor and the sea area that on 16 September 1999 was the territorial sea of Indonesia adjacent to East Timor.	16 September 1999 – 23 February 2000
10	Warden	Defence Force contribution to the International Force in East Timor	East Timor and the sea area that on 16 September 1999 was the territorial sea of Indonesia adjacent to East Timor.	16 September 1999 – 10 April 2000
11	Tanager	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Transitional Authority in East Timor	East Timor and the territorial sea of East Timor.	20 February 2000 – 19 May 2002
12	Husky	Defence Force contribution to the International Military Advisory and Training Team in Sierra Leone	Sierra Leone	15 January 2001 – 28 February 2003
13	Enduring Freedom – Afghanistan	US Global War on Terror	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	7 October 2001 – 31 December 2014
14	Slipper	Defence Force contribution to the International Coalition against Terrorism	(a) The area bounded by the following coordinates 48° 00'N 81°00'E 48° 00'N 35°00'E 12° 00'N 35°00'E 12° 00'N 81°00'E (b) The Diego Garcia land mass and territorial waters and the superjacent airspace out to 250nm radius (from Reference Point 07 18.6S 072 24.6E)	11 October 2001 – 30 July 2009

Warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
14A	Slipper	Defence Force contribution to the International Coalition against Terrorism	The area bounded by the following geographical coordinates: (a) 39°00'N 78°00'E; (b) 39°00'N 32°00'E; (c) 05°00'S 32°00'E; (d) 05°00'S 78°00'E	31 July 2009 – 19 February 2012
14B	Slipper	Defence Force contribution to the International Coalition against Terrorism.	The area bounded by the following geographical coordinates: (a) 39°00'N 32°00'E; (b) 39°00'N 78°00'E; (c) 23°00'N 78°00'E; (d) 23°00'N 68°00'E; (e) 11°00'S 68°00'E; (f) 11°00'S 38°00'E; (g) 17°00'N 38°00'E; (h) 17°00'N 32°00'E	20 February 2012 – 30 June 2014
14C	Slipper	Defence Force contribution to the International Coalition against Terrorism.	The area bounded by the land mass and superjacent airspace of Afghanistan	1 July 2014 – 31 December 2014
15	Ariki	New Zealand contribution to Operation Enduring Freedom – Afghanistan and the International Security Assistance Force mission in Afghanistan.	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	1 December 2001 – 31 December 2014
16	Citadel	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Mission of Support in East Timor.	East Timor and the territorial sea of East Timor	20 May 2002 – 17 August 2003

17	Falconer	Defence Force contribution in support of the US-led coalition operations to assist with the rehabilitation of Iraq and remove the threat posed to global security by Iraq's weapons of mass destruction capability.	The area bounded by the following geographical coordinates: (a) 38°00'N 68°00'E (b) 38°00'N 32°00'E (c) 10°00'N 32°00'E (d) 10°00'N 68°00'E	18 March 2003 – 22 July 2003
18	Palate	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Assistance Mission in Afghanistan.	Afghanistan	18 April 2003 – 5 July 2004
19	Catalyst	Defence Force contribution in support of the US-led coalition operations in Iraq in order to support the Australian whole-of-government effort to assist with the rehabilitation of Iraq and remove the threat posed to global security by Iraq's weapons of mass destruction capability	The total land areas, territorial waters, internal waterways and superjacent airspace boundaries of Iraq, Kuwait, Bahrain, Qatar, United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia (north of latitude 23°00'N) the Persian Gulf and the Strait of Hormuz.	16 July 2003 – 31 July 2009
20	Athena	Canadian contribution to the International Security Assistance Force mission in Afghanistan.	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	17 July 2003 – 31 December 2014
21	International Security Assistance Force	NATO-led security mission in Afghanistan.	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	11 August 2003 – 31 December 2014
22	Herrick	United Kingdom contribution to the International Security Assistance Force mission in Afghanistan.	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	1 September 2004 – 31 December 2014
23	Palate II	Defence Force support to the United Nations Assistance Mission in Afghanistan	Afghanistan's land territory, internal waters and superjacent airspace	27 June 2005 – 10 March 2017

24	Paladin	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Truce Supervision Organization.	Southern Lebanon bounded by 33° 12' N 35° 12' E 33° 10' N 35° 20' E 33° 19' N 35° 25' E, on the Litani River, then along the Litani River to 33° 25' N 35° 37' E 33° 22' N 35° 49' E, on the Syria-Lebanon border, then south to the junction of the Syria-Lebanon-Israel border, then east along the Lebanon-Israel border to the coast, then north along the coast to 33° 12' N 35° 12' E	12 July 2006 – 14 August 2006
25	Riverbank	Defence Force support to the United Nations Assistance Mission in Iraq.	Iraq	21 July 2008 – 14 December 2013
26	Kruger	Defence Force contribution to the provision of security to the Australian Embassy in Iraq.	Iraq	1 January 2009 – 9 August 2011
27		Defence Force contribution to the NATO no-fly zone and maritime enforcement operation against Libya.	Libya and its territorial waters and superjacent airspace	31 March 2011 – 31 October 2011
28	Okra	Defence Force contribution to the Iraq crisis.	The land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Iraq	9 August 2014 – 8 September 2015
28A	Okra	Defence Force contribution to the Iraq and Syria crisis.	The land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Iraq and Syria	On and after 9 September 2015
29	Highroad	Defence Force Contribution to the NATO-led Resolute Support Mission in Afghanistan.	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	1 January 2015 – 8 October 2021
30	Augury	Supporting the Defence Force's understanding of Islamist terrorist threats to Australia and the region.	Afghanistan and its superjacent airspace	On and after 28 April 2016

30A	Augury	Supporting the Defence Force's understanding of Islamist terrorist threats to Australia and the region.	The land territory and superjacent airspace of Iraq and Syria	On and after 1 December 2020
31	Steadfast	Defence Force contribution to the NATO Mission in Iraq	The land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Iraq	On and after 10 September 2018
32	Orenda	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Multidimensional Integrated Stabilization Mission in Mali.	The land area and superjacent airspace of the Republic of Mali.	On and after 1 April 2020

Endnotes

Endnote 1—About the endnotes

The endnotes provide information about this compilation and the compiled law.

The following endnotes are included in every compilation:

Endnote 1—About the endnotes

Endnote 2—Abbreviation key

Endnote 3—Legislation history

Endnote 4—Amendment history

Abbreviation key—Endnote 2

The abbreviation key sets out abbreviations that may be used in the endnotes.

Legislation history and amendment history—Endnotes 3 and 4

Amending laws are annotated in the legislation history and amendment history.

The legislation history in endnote 3 provides information about each law that has amended (or will amend) the compiled law. The information includes commencement details for amending laws and details of any application, saving or transitional provisions that are not included in this compilation.

The amendment history in endnote 4 provides information about amendments at the provision (generally section or equivalent) level. It also includes information about any provision of the compiled law that has been repealed in accordance with a provision of the law.

Misdescribed amendments

A misdescribed amendment is an amendment that does not accurately describe the amendment to be made. If, despite the misdescription, the amendment can be given effect as intended, the amendment is incorporated into the compiled law and the abbreviation “(md)” added to the details of the amendment included in the amendment history.

If a misdescribed amendment cannot be given effect as intended, the abbreviation “(md not incorp)” is added to the details of the amendment included in the amendment history.

Endnote 2—Abbreviation key

ad = added or inserted	o = order(s)
am = amended	Ord = Ordinance
amdt = amendment	orig = original
c = clause(s)	par = paragraph(s)/subparagraph(s) /sub-subparagraph(s)
C[x] = Compilation No. x	pres = present
Ch = Chapter(s)	prev = previous
def = definition(s)	(prev...) = previously
Dict = Dictionary	Pt = Part(s)
disallowed = disallowed by Parliament	r = regulation(s)/rule(s)
Div = Division(s)	
exp = expires/expired or ceases/ceased to have effect	reloc = relocated
F = Federal Register of Legislation	renum = renumbered
gaz = gazette	rep = repealed
LA = <i>Legislation Act 2003</i>	rs = repealed and substituted
LIA = <i>Legislative Instruments Act 2003</i>	s = section(s)/subsection(s)
(md) = misdescribed amendment can be given effect	Sch = Schedule(s)
(md not incorp) = misdescribed amendment cannot be given effect	Sdiv = Subdivision(s)
mod = modified/modification	SLI = Select Legislative Instrument
No. = Number(s)	SR = Statutory Rules
	Sub-Ch = Sub-Chapter(s)
	SubPt = Subpart(s)
	<u>underlining</u> = whole or part not commenced or to be commenced

Endnote 3—Legislation history

Endnote 3—Legislation history

Name	Registration	Commencement	Application, saving and transitional provisions
Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Determination 2019	13 September 2019 (F2019L01191)	14 September 2019	
Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Amendment Determination 2020 (No.1)	22 May 2020 (F2020L00601)	23 May 2020	
Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Amendment Determination 2021 (No.1)	16 April 2021 (F2021L00448)	17 April 2021	
Veterans' Entitlements (Warlike Service) Amendment Determination 2022 (No.1)	5 April 2022 (F2022L00534)	6 April 2022	

Endnote 4—Amendment history

Endnote 4—Amendment history

Provision affected	How affected
s2	rep LA s48D.
s4	rep LA s48C.
s6	am F2020L00601, F2021L00448 and F2022L00534.



Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019

made under subsection 5C(1) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986*

Compilation No. 4

Compilation date: 5 April 2022

Includes amendments up to: F2022L00516

Prepared by the Department of Defence

About this compilation

This compilation

This is a compilation of the Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019 that shows the text of the law as amended and in force on 5 April 2022 (the *compilation date*).

The notes at the end of this compilation (the *endnotes*) include information about amending laws and the amendment history of provisions of the compiled law.

Uncommenced amendments

The effect of uncommenced amendments is not shown in the text of the compiled law. Any uncommenced amendments affecting the law are accessible on the Legislation Register (www.legislation.gov.au). The details of amendments made up to, but not commenced at, the compilation date are underlined in the endnotes. For more information on any uncommenced amendments, see the series page on the Legislation Register for the compiled law.

Application, saving and transitional provisions for provisions and amendments

If the operation of a provision or amendment of the compiled law is affected by an application, saving or transitional provision that is not included in this compilation, details are included in the endnotes.

Modifications

If the compiled law is modified by another law, the compiled law operates as modified but the modification does not amend the text of the law. Accordingly, this compilation does not show the text of the compiled law as modified. For more information on any modifications, see the series page on the Legislation Register for the compiled law.

Self-repealing provisions

If a provision of the compiled law has been repealed in accordance with a provision of the law, details are included in the endnotes.

Contents

Name	1
Authority	1
Schedules	1
Definitions.....	1
Non-warlike service	1
 Schedule 1—Non-warlike service	 2
 Endnotes.....	 11

1 Name

This instrument is *Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019*.

3 Authority

This instrument is made under subsection 5C(1) of the *Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986*.

5 Definitions

In this instrument:

Act means the Veterans' Entitlements Act 1986.

NATO means the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.

6 Non-warlike service

Schedule 1 specifies service in the Defence Force that is non-warlike service for the purposes of the Act.

Schedule 1—Non-warlike service

1 Non-warlike service

For the purposes of the definition of *non-warlike service* in subsection 5C(1) of the Act:

- (a) service in the Defence Force in the Berlin Airlift operation is non-warlike service if:
 - (i) the service was as a member of the Royal Australian Air Force aircrew involved in the humanitarian aid operation conducted by the Western allies to assist West Berlin during the blockade of West Berlin by the Soviet Union; and
 - (ii) the service occurred during the period 15 September 1948 to 29 August 1949; or
- (b) service in the Defence Force in an operation mentioned in an item of the following table is non-warlike service if:
 - (i) the service was in an area of operation mentioned in the item; and
 - (ii) the service occurred during the period mentioned in the item in relation to that area of operation.

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
1	Banner	Defence Force contribution to the Cambodia Mine Action Centre and the United Nations Military Liaison Team	Cambodia and the areas of Laos and Thailand that are not more than 50 km from the border with Cambodia	8 October 1993– 4 October 1999
2		Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Observer Mission in Guatemala	Guatemala	13 February 1997– 12 May 1997
3	Vista	Defence Force withdrawal of non-essential Australian personnel from Cambodia	Cambodia	5 July 1997–14 July 1997
4		Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Survey Team in	Libreville (Gabon), Pointe Noire (Republic of the Congo) and Brazzaville (Republic of Congo)	25 July 1997– 7 August 1997

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
		Congo		
5	Bel Isi and Bel Isi II	Defence Force contribution to the Truce Monitoring Group or the Peace Monitoring Group	Bougainville Island, Buka Island and the territorial waters of Papua New Guinea surrounding those islands	20 November 1997– 26 August 2003
6	Pollard	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force in the Middle East	All sea, airspace and land North and West from 5°00'S, 68°00'E and encompassing the outer boundaries of Pakistan, Afghanistan, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Egypt, Sudan and Kenya	17 February 1998– 1 October 2001
7	Agricola		Federal Republic of Yugoslavia, Albania and the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	25 February 1999– 10 June 1999
8	Damask	Defence Force contribution to the Multi-national Maritime Interception Force	The area: (a) comprising all sea of the Arabian Gulf, the Gulf of Oman and the northern Arabian Sea bounded by latitude 20°00'N and longitude 61°50'E; and (b) including the ports adjacent to the area mentioned in paragraph (a), and the airfields and military facilities adjacent to those ports	18 March 1999– 19 October 2001
9	Allied Force	Defence Force contribution to the NATO operation against the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia	Federal Republic of Yugoslavia, Albania, the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, the Adriatic Sea and NATO bases in Italy	15 April 1999– 3 June 1999
10	Bolton	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to patrol the Iraq No-Fly-Zone	Saudi Arabia, Kuwait and the Incirlik airbase in Turkey	13 May 1999– 12 January 2003
11	Joint Guardian	United Nations Kosovo Force	Albania, Serbia, Montenegro and the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	11 June 1999– 12 December 2011

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
12	Faber	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Advance Mission in East Timor	East Timor and the territorial sea of Indonesia adjacent to East Timor	19 June 1999– 15 September 1999
13	Spitfire		East Timor and the territorial sea of Indonesia adjacent to East Timor	6 September 1999– 19 September 1999
14	Southern Watch	Defence Force contribution to the Coalition Force operation to patrol the Iraq No-Fly-Zones	Saudi Arabia, Kuwait and the Incirlik airbase in Turkey	23 September 1999– 12 January 2003
15	Plumbob		Guadalcanal Island and the waters extending 12 nautical miles from the low water mark of Guadalcanal Island	8 June 2000–24 June 2000
16	Trek		Solomon Islands and its territorial sea	On and after 4 November 2000
17	Pomelo	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Mission in Ethiopia and Eritrea	Ethiopia and Eritrea	15 January 2001– 31 May 2005
18	Paladin	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Truce Supervision Organization	The total land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace within the internationally recognised boundaries of Israel, Jordan, Syria, Lebanon and Egypt	21 April 2003– 11 July 2006
18A	Paladin	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Truce Supervision Organization	The total land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace within the internationally recognised boundaries of Israel, Jordan, Syria, Lebanon and Egypt, excluding the following area: Southern Lebanon bounded by 33°12'N 35°12'E, 33°10'N 35°20'E, 33°19'N 35°25'E, on the Litani River, then along the Litani River to 33°25'N 35°37'E, 33°22'N 35°49'E, on the Syria-Lebanon	12 July 2006– 14 August 2006

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
			border, then south to the junction of the Syria-Lebanon-Israel border, then east along the Lebanon-Israel border to the coast, then north along the coast to 33°12'N 35°12'E	
18B	Paladin	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Truce Supervision Organization	The total land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace within the internationally recognised boundaries of Israel, Jordan, Syria, Lebanon and Egypt	On and after 15 August 2006
19	Anode	Defence Force contribution to the Australian Government's Strengthened Assistance Framework Program in support of the Solomon Islands Government	The total land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace boundaries of the Solomon Islands	24 July 2003–30 September 2013
20	Citadel	United Nations Mission of Support in East Timor	East Timor and the territorial sea of East Timor	18 August 2003–26 June 2008
21	Spire	United Nations Mission of Support in East Timor	East Timor and the territorial sea of East Timor	20 May 2004–26 June 2008
22	Azure	United Nations Mission in Sudan	Sudan and its territorial waters and superjacent airspace	10 April 2005–31 December 2011
23	Astute	Defence Force stabilisation operation in support of the Government of East Timor	East Timor and its territorial waters and superjacent airspace	12 May 2006–19 April 2013
24	Ramp	Defence Force operation in the Middle East in support of the Australian whole of government response to the crisis in Lebanon	Lebanon and its territorial waters and superjacent airspace	20 July 2006–27 November 2008

Non-warlike service

Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
25	Quickstep	Defence Force mission in Fiji	Fiji and its land, internal waters, archipelagic waters, territorial sea and superjacent airspace and the exclusive economic zone of Fiji	31 October 2006– 22 December 2006
26	Quickstep Tonga	Defence Force operation to assist the Government of Tonga with the restoration of law and order in Tonga	The sovereign territory of Tonga, including the land territory, internal waters, territorial sea and superjacent airspace of Tonga and the exclusive economic zone of Tonga and its superjacent airspace	18 November 2006– 30 November 2006
27	Hedgerow	Defence Force contribution to the hybrid United Nations and African Union mission in Darfur	Sudan	28 July 2008– 23 June 2011
28		Defence Force contribution to the NATO no-fly zone and maritime enforcement operation against Libya	The international waters and superjacent airspace of the central southern Mediterranean Sea between 10°00'E and 28°00'E and south of 41°00'N, including portions of Italy, Greece, Turkey, Albania and all of Malta and north of Libya and its territorial waters and superjacent airspace	31 March 2011– 31 October 2011
29	Aslan	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Mission in the Republic of South Sudan	South Sudan and its superjacent airspace	On and after 23 September 2011
30	Accordion	Supporting operations in Bahrain, Qatar and the United Arab Emirates in relation to the Defence Force contribution to the International Coalition against	The area bounded by the land mass and superjacent airspaces of Bahrain, Qatar and the United Arab Emirates	On and after 1 July 2014

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
		Terrorism		
31	Manitou	Maritime operations, including counter-piracy operations	The area: (a) comprising all sea and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf, the Gulf of Aden, the Red Sea and the Arabian Sea north of latitude 11°00'S and west of longitude 68°00'E; and (b) including the ports adjacent to the area mentioned in paragraph (a), and the area within a 10 kilometre radius of each port	1 July 2014–13 May 2015
31A	Manitou	Maritime operations, including counter-piracy operations	The area: (a) comprising all sea and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf, the Gulf of Oman, the Arabian Sea, the Gulf of Aden, the Red Sea, the Gulf of Suez, the Gulf of Aqaba and the Indian Ocean north of latitude 15°00'S and west of longitude 68°00'E; and (b) including the ports adjacent to the area mentioned in paragraph (a), and the area within a 10 kilometre radius of each port	14 May 2015–13 November 2016
31B	Manitou	Maritime operations, including counter-piracy operations	The area: (a) comprising all sea and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf, the Gulf of Oman, the Gulf of Aden, the Gulf of Suez, the Gulf of Aqaba, the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea north of latitude 15°00'S and west of longitude 70°00'E and the Indian Ocean north of latitude 15°00'S and west of longitude 70°00'E; and (b) including the ports adjacent to the area mentioned in	On and after 14 November 2016

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
			paragraph (a), and the area within a 10 kilometre radius of each port	
32	Okra	Defence Force contribution to the Iraq crisis	The land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Bahrain, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Qatar and the United Arab Emirates, and the waters and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf	1 July 2014– 8 August 2014
32A	Okra	Defence Force contribution to the Iraq crisis	The land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Albania, Bahrain, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Jordan, Kuwait, Montenegro, Poland, Qatar, Romania and the United Arab Emirates, and the waters and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf	9 August 2014– 8 September 2015
32B	Okra	Defence Force contribution to the Iraq and Syria crisis	The following areas: (a) the land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Albania, Bahrain, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Jordan, Kuwait, Montenegro, Poland, Qatar, Romania and the United Arab Emirates; (b) the waters and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf; (c) the land territory of Turkey east of longitude 35°00'E, including superjacent airspace and territorial waters.	9 September 2015 – 14 November 2018
32C	Okra	Defence Force contribution to the Iraq and Syria crisis	The following areas: (a) the land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Bahrain, Cyprus, Jordan, Kuwait, Qatar and the United Arab Emirates;	On and after 15 November 2018

Non-warlike service				
Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
			(b) the waters and superjacent airspace of the Persian Gulf; (c) the land territory of Turkey east of longitude 35°00'E, including superjacent airspace and territorial waters.	
33	Augury	Supporting the Defence Force's understanding of Islamist terrorist threats to Australia and the region	Jordan and its superjacent airspace	4 July 2014–27 April 2016
33A	Augury	Supporting the Defence Force's understanding of Islamist terrorist threats to Australia and the region	The land area, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Jordan and the United Arab Emirates	On and after 28 April 2016
34	Hawick	Defence Force contribution to the whole of government response to the MH17 air disaster in Ukraine	Ukraine and its superjacent airspace	21 July 2014–18 May 2015
35		Defence Force contribution to efforts against global terrorism	The land, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Libya	16 May 2016–2 August 2016
36	Litten	Maritime operations in the Mediterranean Sea	Libyan territorial waters	31 August 2016–21 October 2016
36A	Litten	Maritime operations in the Mediterranean Sea	Libyan territorial waters	On and after 4 November 2016
37	Quadrant	Defence Force contribution to the maintenance of strategic stability in the wider Asia-Pacific region	The area bounded by the following geographical coordinates:	13 May 1997 – 30 June 2006
38		Defence Force contribution to	The land, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Libya	30 June 2017 – 5 June 2019

Non-warlike service

Item	Name of operation	Nature of operation	Area of operation	Period
		efforts against global terrorism		
39	Fortitude	Defence Force contribution to the United Nations Disengagement Observer Force	The land, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of Israel, Syria, Jordan, Arab Republic of Egypt and Lebanon	On and after 30 April 2019
40	Lilia	Defence Force contribution to stabilisation of the Solomon Islands	The land, territorial waters and superjacent airspace of the Solomon Islands.	On and after 25 November 2021

Note: Serbia and Montenegro, included in the area of operation for operation Joint Guardian (see table item 11), were united as the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia between 1992 and 2006.

Endnotes

Endnote 1—About the endnotes

The endnotes provide information about this compilation and the compiled law.

The following endnotes are included in every compilation:

Endnote 1—About the endnotes

Endnote 2—Abbreviation key

Endnote 3—Legislation history

Endnote 4—Amendment history

Abbreviation key—Endnote 2

The abbreviation key sets out abbreviations that may be used in the endnotes.

Legislation history and amendment history—Endnotes 3 and 4

Amending laws are annotated in the legislation history and amendment history.

The legislation history in endnote 3 provides information about each law that has amended (or will amend) the compiled law. The information includes commencement details for amending laws and details of any application, saving or transitional provisions that are not included in this compilation.

The amendment history in endnote 4 provides information about amendments at the provision (generally section or equivalent) level. It also includes information about any provision of the compiled law that has been repealed in accordance with a provision of the law.

Misdescribed amendments

A misdescribed amendment is an amendment that does not accurately describe the amendment to be made. If, despite the misdescription, the amendment can be given effect as intended, the amendment is incorporated into the compiled law and the abbreviation “(md)” added to the details of the amendment included in the amendment history.

If a misdescribed amendment cannot be given effect as intended, the abbreviation “(md not incorp)” is added to the details of the amendment included in the amendment history.

Endnote 2—Abbreviation key

ad = added or inserted	o = order(s)
am = amended	Ord = Ordinance
amdt = amendment	orig = original
c = clause(s)	par = paragraph(s)/subparagraph(s) /sub-subparagraph(s)
C[x] = Compilation No. x	pres = present
Ch = Chapter(s)	prev = previous
def = definition(s)	(prev...) = previously
Dict = Dictionary	Pt = Part(s)
disallowed = disallowed by Parliament	r = regulation(s)/rule(s)
Div = Division(s)	
exp = expires/expired or ceases/ceased to have effect	reloc = relocated
F = Federal Register of Legislation	renum = renumbered
gaz = gazette	rep = repealed
LA = <i>Legislation Act 2003</i>	rs = repealed and substituted
LIA = <i>Legislative Instruments Act 2003</i>	s = section(s)/subsection(s)
(md) = misdescribed amendment can be given effect	Sch = Schedule(s)
(md not incorp) = misdescribed amendment cannot be given effect	Sdiv = Subdivision(s)
mod = modified/modification	SLI = Select Legislative Instrument
No. = Number(s)	SR = Statutory Rules
	Sub-Ch = Sub-Chapter(s)
	SubPt = Subpart(s)
	<u>underlining</u> = whole or part not commenced or to be commenced

Endnote 3—Legislation history

Endnote 3—Legislation history

Name	Registration	Commencement	Application, saving and transitional provisions
Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019	25 Mar 2019 (F2019L00397)	26 Mar 2019 (s2(1) item 1)	
Veterans' Entitlements Amendment (Non-warlike Service) Determination 2019 (No.1)	13 Sep 2019 (F2019L01189)	14 Sep 2019	
Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Amendment Determination 2020 (No. 1)	18 March 2020 (F2020L00263)	1 July 2019	
Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Amendment Determination 2020 (No. 2)	22 May 2020 (F2020L00599)	23 May 2020	
Veterans' Entitlements (Non-warlike Service) Amendment Determination 2022 (No. 1)	4 April 2022 (F2022L00516)	5 April 2022	

Endnote 4—Amendment history

Endnote 4—Amendment history

Provision affected	How affected
s2	rep LA s48D
s4	rep LA s48C
s6	am F2019L01189, F2020L00263, F2020L00599 and F2022L00516.

INTERIM DIRECTIVE TO OFFICER COMMANDING
A RIFLE COMPANY
DETACHED TO AIR BASE BUTTERWORTH

General

1. The Australian Government has, with the agreement of the Malaysian and Singaporean Governments, decided to rotate a rifle company detached from the RAR Battalion serving with 28 Commonwealth Infantry Brigade, through Air Base Butterworth. The New Zealand Government has also signified its agreement to provide a relief company from 1 RNZIR when it is practicable to assist with this rotation. An ANZ company will normally be detached at Butterworth except on occasions when the ANZ ground force is training either at the Jungle Warfare School or elsewhere in West Malaysia.

Aim

2. The aim of this Directive is to provide you with the essential guidance for normal activities and for any contingency action which you may be required to carry out during your tour of duty.

Purpose of Detachment

3. The primary purpose of maintaining a detached company at Butterworth is to provide an Australian (and New Zealand) Army presence in Malaysia, to assist in enhancing ANZ political and diplomatic influence in the area and to assist in the development of Malaysia's military forces and foster co-operation with them.

4. In addition, in the event of civil disturbances and, when approved by HQ 28 Commonwealth Infantry Brigade, your company may be used to:-

- a. Supplement the normal protective security of Air Base Butterworth; and
- b. Assist with the protective security of RAAF Butterworth families, should such protection be necessary.

Length of Tour of Duty

5. Your company will be detached for a period normally not exceeding one month. The tour of duty will be on an unaccompanied basis.

Command and Control

6. During their tour of duty at Air Base Butterworth, your company will remain under command of your parent battalion and be under the officer commanding RAAF Butterworth for local administration.

7. Your company will at all times during its tour of duty be subject to Air Base Butterworth Standing Orders and will also abide by administrative instructions issued by the officer commanding RAAF Butterworth or Commanding Officer Base Squadron. You will promulgate a company routine order to this effect within 24 hours of your company's arrival at Air Base Butterworth and ensure that copies of the relevant orders and instructions are available to members of your company.

8. In the event of an emergency situation arising which threatens the security of the Air Base Butterworth or RAAF families on Penang, the officer commanding RAAF Butterworth is to request the approval of HQ 28 Commonwealth Infantry Brigade to assume operational control of your company. When it is impracticable to obtain approval of HQ 28 Commonwealth Infantry Brigade because of time, you are to comply with the orders and direction of the officer commanding RAAF Butterworth.

Limitation on Employment of the Company

9. Your company will be responsible for the domestic security of its own lines at Butterworth, but will not be called upon for other guard or security duties, except in an emergency situation.

10. Malaysia has undertaken responsibility for the general security of Air Base Butterworth and is responsible for security measures outside the perimeter of the Base. The company is not to be used in aid of the civil power for the maintenance of internal civil law and order in civil disturbances.

11. The company is to be prepared at all times to take measures to assist in the protection of British, Australian and New Zealand Service personnel and their respective Government's property. To these ends you are to co-operate as necessary in an emergency with the officer commanding RAAF Base Butterworth and with the Malaysians in the local defence of the shared facilities at Air Base Butterworth. Subject to the specific considerations in paragraph 12 below, your responsibilities will relate only to the area inside the perimeter of Air Base Butterworth.

12. The company may also be used to protect dependants of British, Australian and New Zealand forces. Further, you are to be prepared to co-operate if authorized by the Australian and/or New Zealand Governments in such measures as may be arranged for the evacuation in an emergency of Australian, British, New Zealand and other friendly nationals.

Training

13. Immediately on arrival in Butterworth you are to undertake appropriate training to prepare your company for its duties in accordance with Air Base Butterworth local defence plan.

14. Throughout its tour of duty, your company will continue unit training in accordance with the Training Directive issued by your parent battalion.

15. During periods of company training conducted outside the Air Base Butterworth, you will maintain wireless communications with the Base Control Tower.

Employment during Civil Disturbances

16. You may only employ your company in civil disturbances to supplement normal protective security duties within the perimeter of Air Base Butterworth or on Penang Island on orders of the officer commanding RAAF Butterworth. Such employment will be in accordance with the Air Base Butterworth local defence plan, the details of which you are to be aware of prior to your departure to Butterworth.

17. Should the employment of your company on protective security duties be approved, you are to observe the following requirements:-

- a. Your main task will be to assist in the protection of British, Australian and New Zealand Service personnel, their dependants and their respective Government's property.
- b. You will not become involved in direct action against local citizens, except to the extent necessary to discharge the task in (a) above.
- c. The method of employment, constraints, etc., will be in accordance with Air Base Butterworth local defence plan.

18. In all protective security duties, the use of minimum force in fulfilling all tasks is to be rigidly observed.

19. You are to ensure that all ranks know the actions sentries may take in normal circumstances when on duty in protected areas and places. A summary of a sentry's rights and responsibilities is attached at Annex A and troops to come under your command at Air Base Butterworth are to be familiar with those rules prior to departure for Butterworth.

Administration

20. Discipline. Your company will be a detachment from your parent unit whilst stationed at Air Base Butterworth and en route to Air Base Butterworth. For disciplinary purposes, as Officer Commanding, you will have all the powers and be able to perform all the functions of a Commanding Officer.

21. RAAF Responsibilities. While your company is located at Air Base Butterworth, the RAAF is to be responsible for providing barrack accommodation, ammunition, storage, messing, common user expense items, repair facilities, medical and dental treatment and postal facilities.

22. Army Responsibilities. Your parent unit is to remain responsible for personnel management, unit accounting and clothing and equipment.

23. Movement. Detail of the movement of your company to and from Butterworth are to be promulgated to you in a separate instruction.

(R.M. GURR)
Brigadier
Commander